OPEN CHRISTIAN PRESS

THE BUSINESS ENTERPRISE

CORE FUNCTIONS · INTEGRATED MANAGEMENT
AND EMERGING TRANSFORMATIONS

VOLUME II

2026

THE BUSINESS ENTERPRISE

VOLUME II

Markets
Operations
Finance

CHAPTERS 13–26

OPEN CHRISTIAN PRESS

THE BUSINESS ENTERPRISE

The Business Enterprise

Core Functions, Integrated Management,
and Emerging Transformations

VOLUME II

Markets, Operations, and Finance

Chapters 13–26

Sixbert SANGWA

VOLUME EDITOR

Prof. Dr. Placide MUTABAZI

OPEN CHRISTIAN PRESS

2026

PUBLICATION & COPYRIGHT

AUTHOR AND EDITOR

© 2026 Sixbert SANGWA, author; Placide MUTABAZI, volume editor.

EDITION

First published in 2026. Complete edition, November 2026.

PUBLISHER

Open Christian Press, a publishing imprint of Open Christian University and the Center for Faith and Work.

PERSISTENT IDENTIFIER

Book DOI: https://doi.org/10.65655/ocp.m30

COPYRIGHT LICENCE

The chapters are licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International licence (CC BY 4.0). Reuse requires appropriate attribution, a link to the licence and an indication of any changes. View the licence.

THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS

Third-party quotations, illustrations, trademarks and other credited materials remain subject to their respective rights and permissions. Their inclusion does not place them under the chapters' Creative Commons licence.

SCRIPTURE ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Scripture quotations marked CSB have been taken from the Christian Standard Bible®, Copyright © 2017 by Holman Bible Publishers. Used by permission. Christian Standard Bible® and CSB® are federally registered trademarks of Holman Bible Publishers.

PUBLISHER CATALOGUE

https://books.openchristian.education

ABOUT THIS VOLUME

Volume II contains Chapters 13–26, covering marketing, operations, procurement, supply chains, projects, accounting, finance and financial accountability. Its references appear at the end of this volume. The main-text pagination continues across the three-volume edition.

DEDICATION

To those who seek truth, practise their work faithfully,
and use knowledge in the service of others.

EPIGRAPH

"Honest balances and scales are the Lord's;
all the weights in the bag are his concern."

PROVERBS 16:11 (CSB)

Contents

List of Figures viii
List of Tables ix
Abbreviations and Acronyms xi
Preface xiii
Acknowledgements xv
Methodological and Editorial Note xvi
How to Use This Book xvii
Publication and Edition Note xviii

PART IV · MARKETING AND CUSTOMER VALUE CREATION 399

13 · Principles of Marketing and Market Orientation 401
14 · Consumer Behaviour, Market Research, and Customer Intelligence 438
15 · Product Management, Branding, and Pricing Strategies 471
16 · Sales, Distribution, Marketing Communications, and Digital Marketing 501

PART V · OPERATIONS, PROCUREMENT, SUPPLY CHAINS, AND PROJECTS 533

17 · Operations and Production Management 535
18 · Procurement, Purchasing, and Strategic Sourcing 566
19 · Supply Chain, Logistics, and Inventory Management 599
20 · Quality Management and Operational Excellence 628
21 · Project, Programme, and Portfolio Management 661

PART VI · ACCOUNTING, FINANCE, AND FINANCIAL ACCOUNTABILITY 693

22 · Financial Accounting and Corporate Reporting 695
23 · Management Accounting, Costing, and Budgetary Control 731
24 · Financial Management and Investment Decisions 763
25 · Banking, Financial Markets, and Financial Technology 793
26 · Taxation, Auditing, Internal Controls, and Financial Compliance 827

REFERENCES · VOLUME II 862

List of Figures

NO.	TITLE	PAGE
13.1	Marketing strategy as an evidence-and-response cycle	413
13.2	Accountable market orientation: A five-dimension decision diagnostic	433
14.1	Evidence-linked, recursive customer journey	446
14.2	Evidence-to-decision protocol for customer intelligence	450
15.1	Product-to-customer value and accountability chain	477
15.2	Hypothetical price–volume and operating-profit comparisons	484
16.1	The governed commercial funnel and core metric denominators	517
16.2	Accountable commercial exchange and feedback architecture	527
17.1	Operational process, bottleneck diagnosis and feedback	541
17.2	Capacity denominators in the hypothetical Kigali production case	543
17.3	Proposed operations-accountability synthesis	560
18.1	Controlled procurement decision and evidence flow	569
18.2	Supplier evaluation sensitivity to disclosed criteria weights	591
19.1	End-to-end enterprise supply network and reciprocal flow architecture	602
19.2	The supply-chain decision and accountability loop	623
20.1	An accountable plan-do-check-act (PDCA) learning loop	637
20.2	Ishikawa hypothesis map for weak package seals	638
20.3	Pareto chart of constructed defect-event frequencies and cumulative percentages	650
20.4	Illustrative p-chart with eleven baseline samples and one investigative signal	652
20.5	An integrated enterprise architecture for accountable quality capability	656
21.1	Accountability and benefits chain connecting enterprise strategy, temporary delivery and continuing operations	664
21.2	Activity-on-node project schedule for the hypothetical portal; red-bordered nodes identify the zero-float path A–B–D–F–H	671
21.3	Value pathway and evidence checkpoints for the hypothetical student-service portal	685
22.1	Controlled evidence-to-reporting chain and correction loop	702
22.2	Four-statement articulation in the constructed Kigali enterprise	724
23.1	Evidence-to-decision architecture for management accounting	734
23.2	Revenue and total relevant cost in the main fictional manufacturer's CVP model	743
23.3	Conditional management accounting decision model	757
24.1	The cash-conversion cycle as an interfunctional commitment	774
24.2	Sensitivity of the competing project NPVs to the assumed opportunity cost of capital	786
24.3	A finance decision architecture integrating value, survival and accountability	788
25.1	The enterprise-centred financial ecosystem	796
25.2	Digital-lending decision and accountability loop	821
26.1	Five-component internal-control architecture and linked operating responsibilities	842
26.2	Governance, operational ownership and differentiated assurance	845
26.3	Proposed compliance–assurance–learning dependency framework	857

List of Tables

NO.	TITLE	PAGE
13.1	Principal marketing perspectives, mechanisms and empirical cautions	406
13.2	Marketing strategy-to-evidence decision register	414
13.3	Minimum defensible marketing performance scorecard	422
13.4	Rwanda market-context evidence and disciplined marketing interpretation	427
13.5	STP canvas for the constructed Rwanda market-entry case	428
13.6	Constructed quarterly urban–nonurban market-entry model (RWF)	430
14.1	Core customer intelligence indicators: operational definitions and principal inference limits	457
14.2	Illustrative first-purchase cohorts and observed retention	457
14.3	Rwanda service-provider research design and evidence-quality matrix	463
14.4	Cross-functional customer-intelligence responsibility and evidence register	465
15.1	Product-portfolio decision matrix (analytical instrument)	475
15.2	New-product decision-gate protocol	480
15.3	Hypothetical one-month cost-plus and value-price comparison (RWF, excluding applicable taxes)	483
15.4	Cross-functional product and price assurance register	495
15.5	Key terminology and conceptual definitions	498
16.1	Comparative route-to-market choices	505
16.2	Measurement register for commercial analysis	518
16.3	Hypothetical channel decision, one period (RWF)	524
16.4	EAC market-entry stage gates for KAFD	526
17.1	Core operational metrics and interpretation controls	551
17.2	Responsible operations decision test	556
17.3	Context-sensitive comparison of the illustrative enterprise and documented Toyota principles	559
17.4	Essential terminology and distinctions	563
18.1	Spend-intelligence diagnostic for a procurement category	571
18.2	Conditional sourcing logic from the purchasing portfolio	574
18.3	Request-for-proposal completeness and audit checklist	578
18.4	Contract-execution responsibility and evidence instrument	580
18.5	Procurement performance scorecard and methodological cautions	588
18.6	Illustrative procurement risk register for a Rwandan institution	589
18.7	Illustrative supplier evaluation: weighted points on a ten-point scale	590
18.8	Capstone procurement decision-memorandum rubric	597
19.1	Comparison of inventory decision rules and limits	607
19.2	Logistics and inventory metric dictionary for an auditable scorecard	618
20.1	Illustrative monthly cost-of-quality bridge (RWF million)	642
20.2	Illustrative defect-event Pareto analysis for 12,000 packets	650
20.3	Sequential sample data for p-chart analysis, all groups n = 200	651
20.4	Illustrative corrective-action and evidence register	653
20.5	Proposed quality-improvement scoreboard and decision rules	654
20.6	Selected chapter glossary	658
21.1	Project-selection decision record for an enterprise portfolio	666
21.2	Compact work breakdown structure for the illustrative Kigali university portal	669
21.3	Constructed precedence network and critical-path calculations	670
21.4	Constructed work-package budget and funding logic (RWF million)	673

List of Tables · continued

NO.	TITLE	PAGE
21.5	Illustrative project risk and escalation register	675
21.6	Conditional fit of project delivery approaches	679
21.7	Benefits-realization and evaluation matrix for the constructed portal	680
21.8	Illustrative project charter and decision rights	683
21.9	Illustrative sponsor decision and change-control log	684
21.10	Suggested analytical assessment rubric for the Chapter 21 integrative capstone	691
22.1	Core accounting elements and typical evidence	700
22.2	Core ratio dictionary	714
22.3	Journal-to-ledger register, RWF '000	718
22.4	Selected adjusted trial-balance balances, RWF '000	719
22.5	Illustrative profit or loss, quarter ended 31 December 2026, RWF '000	720
22.6	Illustrative statement of financial position, 31 December 2026, RWF '000	721
22.7	Statement of changes in equity, quarter ended 31 December 2026, RWF '000	722
22.8	Direct-method statement of cash flows, quarter ended 31 December 2026, RWF '000	722
22.9	Indirect reconciliation, RWF '000	723
23.1	Cost lenses and their decision implications	737
23.2	Activity-based overhead attribution in the separate two-product scenario (RWF)	740
23.3	Main fictional manufacturer's contribution and break-even model	742
23.4	Make-or-buy memorandum: 4,000 sleeves per month (RWF)	744
23.5	Static budget, activity-adjusted budget and illustrative actuals (RWF)	749
23.6	Flexible-budget performance bridge for 12,000 packs	750
23.7	Cross-functional performance register for the illustrative manufacturer	751
23.8	International concepts and context-sensitive transfer to Rwanda	756
23.9	Key management-accounting terminology and decision significance	760
24.1	Financing alternatives and the evidence required for responsible selection	767
24.2	Operating-liquidity measure definitions	775
24.3	Illustrative thirteen-week direct cash forecast (RWF million)	777
24.4	Constructed investment cash flows and year-end discount factors	785
24.5	Capital-budgeting results for two mutually exclusive constructed projects	785
24.6	Fictional capital-structure stress case	787
25.1	Functions, instruments and failure modes in an integrated financial ecosystem	796
25.2	Enterprise-financing instrument suitability and competing constraints	802
25.3	Financial-journey diagnostic for a Rwandan household and enterprise	816
25.4	Interpreting Rwanda–international evidence without false equivalence	818
25.5	Reproducible hypothetical six-month lender sensitivity analysis (RWF million)	820
26.0	Chapter learning outcomes and evidence of achievement	828
26.1	Enterprise tax-obligation classification and the primary evidence required	832
26.2	Audit and assurance engagements: questions, authority and limits	838
26.3	Assertion-to-procedure design for a trading enterprise	840
26.4	Core control matrix for a cash-intensive Rwandan SME	843
26.5	Digital assurance tests and limitations	848
26.6	Rwanda tax-rule verification register, as checked on 2 November 2026	850
26.7	Illustrative Rwanda tax compliance calendar and control evidence	850
26.8	Fully disclosed case inputs, all amounts in FRW unless stated	853
26.9	Cumulative glossary of taxation, audit and internal-control terminology	859

Abbreviations and Acronyms

ABC activity-based costing (Ch. 23)
AC actual cost (Ch. 21)
AFR Access to Finance Rwanda (Ch. 14)
AHP analytical hierarchy process (Ch. 18)
AIIB Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank (Ch. 21)
APM Association for Project Management (Ch. 21)
APV adjusted present value (Ch. 24)
ASCM Association for Supply Chain Management (Ch. 19)
ASQ American Society for Quality (Ch. 20)
AUC area under the receiver-operating-characteristic curve (Ch. 25)
B2B business-to-business (Ch. 13)
BAC budget at completion (Ch. 21)
BAU business-as-usual (Ch. 21)
CAC customer acquisition cost (Ch. 13)
CBDC central-bank digital currency (Ch. 25)
CCC cash conversion cycle (Ch. 24)
CIT corporate income tax (Ch. 26)
CLV customer lifetime value (Ch. 13)
CMA Capital Market Authority (Ch. 25)
COQ cost of quality (Ch. 20)
CPFR collaborative forecasting, planning and replenishment (Ch. 19)
CPM critical-path method (Ch. 21)
CRM customer relationship management (Ch. 13)
CVP cost–volume–profit (Ch. 23)
DIO days inventory outstanding (Ch. 24)
DMAIC define–measure–analyze–improve–control (Ch. 20)
DPMO defects per million opportunities (Ch. 20)
DPO days payables outstanding (Ch. 24)
DPPO Data Protection and Privacy Office (Ch. 16)
DSO days sales outstanding (Ch. 24)
EBM Electronic Billing Machine (Ch. 26)
EIS Electronic Invoicing System (Ch. 26)
EOQ economic order quantity (Ch. 19)
ES earliest start (Ch. 21)
EV earned value (Ch. 21)
EVC economic value to the customer (Ch. 15)
EVM earned value management (Ch. 21)
EVSI expected value of sample information (Ch. 15)
FCFE free cash flow to equity (Ch. 24)
FCFF free cash flow to the firm (Ch. 24)
FEFO first-expire, first-out (Ch. 19)
FMEA failure mode and effects analysis (Ch. 20)
FTC Federal Trade Commission (Ch. 16)
IAASB International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (Ch. 22)
IASB International Accounting Standards Board (Ch. 22)
ICC International Chamber of Commerce (Ch. 19)
ICPAR Institute of Certified Public Accountants of Rwanda (Ch. 22)
IDA International Development Association (Ch. 21)
IMA Institute of Management Accountants (Ch. 23)
IMC integrated marketing communications (Ch. 16)
IRR internal rate of return (Ch. 24)
ISO International Organization for Standardization (Ch. 18)
ISO/IEC International Organization for Standardization/International Electrotechnical Commission (Ch. 20)
KAFD Kigali Assured Foods Distribution (Ch. 16)
LF latest finish (Ch. 21)
LGD loss-given-default (Ch. 25)
LPI Logistics Performance Index (Ch. 19)
MAE mean absolute error (Ch. 17)
MFCA material-flow cost accounting (Ch. 23)
MINECOFIN Ministry of Finance and Economic Planning (Ch. 21)
MTBF mean time between failures (Ch. 17)
MTTR mean time to repair (Ch. 17)
NAO National Audit Office (Ch. 21)
NBR National Bank of Rwanda (Ch. 25)
NCSA National Cyber Security Authority (Ch. 16)
NCTO Northern Corridor Transport Observatory (Ch. 19)
OAG Office of the Auditor General (Ch. 26)
OEE overall equipment effectiveness (Ch. 17)
OTIF on-time-in-full (Ch. 17)
PD probability of default (Ch. 25)
PDCA plan-do-check-act (Ch. 20)
PIT personal income tax (Ch. 26)
PMI Project Management Institute (Ch. 21)
PMO project management office (Ch. 21)
PV planned value (Ch. 21)
QMS quality management system (Ch. 20)
RFP request for proposal (Ch. 18)
ROAS return on advertising spend (Ch. 16)
RPO recovery point objective (Ch. 17)
RRA Rwanda Revenue Authority (Ch. 19)
RSB Rwanda Standards Board (Ch. 20)
RTO recovery time objective (Ch. 17)
RWA risk-weighted assets (Ch. 25)
RWF Rwandan francs (Ch. 25)
S&OP sales and operations planning (Ch. 17)
SAM serviceable available market (Ch. 13)
SKU stock-keeping unit (Ch. 15)
SLA service-level agreement (Ch. 18)
SOM serviceable obtainable market (Ch. 13)
TAM total addressable market (Ch. 13)
TCO total cost of ownership (Ch. 18)
TDABC time-driven activity-based costing (Ch. 23)
TFA Trade Facilitation Agreement (Ch. 19)
TMS transport management systems (Ch. 19)
TOC theory of constraints (Ch. 17)
TQM total quality management (Ch. 20)

VAT value added tax (Ch. 26)
WACC weighted-average cost of capital (Ch. 24)
WAPE weighted absolute percentage error (Ch. 17)
WBS work breakdown structure (Ch. 21)
WCO World Customs Organization (Ch. 19)
WIP work in process (Ch. 17)
WMS warehouse management systems (Ch. 19)
WTO World Trade Organization (Ch. 19)

Preface

A business can employ capable specialists and still make poor decisions as an enterprise. A promising sales contract may exceed production capacity. A profitable investment may place more immediate pressure on cash than the organization can bear. A new information system may accelerate reporting without improving the judgment exercised on the information it provides. Understanding such problems requires attention to the relationships among business functions and to the consequences of decisions across the whole enterprise.

This book examines those relationships while giving each principal function the sustained treatment it requires. Accounting involves more than interpreting a few ratios; people management extends beyond recruitment; marketing begins well before promotion. Strategy depends on operational knowledge, and operational choices carry financial, human and ethical consequences. The purpose of the book is to help readers understand these distinctive fields and bring their insights together in sound enterprise judgment.

The thirty-five chapters follow a deliberate progression. The opening part establishes the conceptual, economic, institutional and research foundations of business. Management, strategy and governance lead into the study of people, customers, operations, procurement, supply chains, projects and finance. Subsequent chapters examine entrepreneurship, information systems, artificial intelligence, international business and sustainability. The closing part considers risk, ethical responsibility, a biblical perspective on enterprise, and the practical demands of integrating business functions.

Rwanda and other African settings are integral to this discussion. The chapters consider enterprises operating under varied conditions of institutional capacity, firm size, informality, infrastructure and access to finance. Rwandan applications make abstract questions concrete and help readers examine the conditions under which ideas developed elsewhere remain useful. International comparisons broaden that inquiry while keeping differences in context and measurement in view.

The book addresses readers with different responsibilities and levels of experience. Students need clear explanations and opportunities to test their understanding. Lecturers need material that supports coherent teaching and meaningful assessment. Researchers need traceable sources, carefully bounded claims and questions open to further investigation. Managers and entrepreneurs need to recognize when an analytical tool is useful, what it assumes and where it can mislead. The chapter structure, learning activities and reference material are intended to support these different purposes.

Theory is developed alongside cases, calculations, diagrams and practical instruments. Documented cases and constructed teaching examples are identified as such. A numerical illustration can clarify a relationship without establishing how often it occurs in actual enterprises. Similarly, a conceptual framework can organize a difficult problem without constituting an empirically validated explanation. Readers are encouraged to follow the reasoning, examine the assumptions and assess the strength of the evidence.

Performance is a recurring concern. Profitability, liquidity, reliability, customer benefit, employment conditions, organizational learning and environmental effects raise related questions, but they cannot be reduced to a single measure. A favourable result in one area may accompany an unacceptable cost in another. The chapters therefore consider what an indicator measures, whose interests it represents, the time horizon it covers and the consequences it leaves outside the analysis.

Ethical integrity belongs within the work of every business function. Honest reporting, fair dealing, responsible authority and respect for people shape everyday decisions about prices, contracts, wages, investment and technology. Chapter 33 examines ethical traditions and stakeholder claims. Chapter 34 presents an explicitly Christian account grounded in Scripture, distinguishing biblical interpretation from empirical findings and

managerial judgment. This distinction allows readers to assess each argument according to its appropriate grounds.

Artificial intelligence, digital finance, automation, regional integration and environmental change appear throughout the book wherever they alter the conditions of enterprise decisions. Their opportunities and risks are considered alongside enduring concerns about credible information, capable institutions, responsibility and human judgment. The discussion of changing developments remains tied to the evidence and dates given in the relevant chapters.

The final chapter returns to the question that runs through the volume: how can specialized functions work together without losing the responsibilities that make each necessary? Its conceptual framework and capstone case provide opportunities for application, criticism and further research. My hope is that this book will help readers move confidently between specialist understanding and enterprise judgment, and apply both with competence, honesty and care for those affected by their work.

Acknowledgements

I gratefully acknowledge the scholars, educators and practitioners whose work has informed this book, together with the statistical agencies, professional bodies and public institutions that make reliable evidence available. Their contributions are identified in the citations and references. Careful attribution, attention to context and fair engagement with differing conclusions are essential expressions of that gratitude.

I thank Prof. Dr. Placide MUTABAZI for his contribution as volume editor and Open Christian Press for its role in bringing the work to readers. I also acknowledge the students, lecturers, researchers and enterprise practitioners for whom these questions matter in daily study and practice. The book is offered in service of their continuing work, with appreciation for the questions, criticism and careful application through which scholarship becomes more useful.

Methodological and Editorial Note

This book draws principally on published scholarship and secondary evidence. Its methods include critical literature synthesis, theoretical and conceptual analysis, comparison of documented cases, and interpretation of statistical, regulatory, professional and institutional sources. Individual chapters define their scope and provide the methodological qualifications relevant to their subject. The volume does not apply a single systematic-review protocol or a common empirical design to all thirty-five chapters.

Different forms of evidence serve different purposes. Theories offer explanations that depend on assumptions and conditions of application. Official statistics describe populations and periods defined by their originating sources. Laws and professional standards apply within specified jurisdictions, editions and effective dates. Documented cases concern particular circumstances. Constructed cases and numerical examples are teaching instruments whose results depend on their stated assumptions.

The conceptual frameworks developed in the book organize analytical questions, clarify relationships and identify propositions for further investigation. Their usefulness as teaching or decision instruments should be distinguished from empirical validation. Readers assessing a framework should consider its definitions, assumptions, possible alternative explanations and the evidence required to test its claims.

Quantitative examples specify the assumptions needed to interpret their results. Before applying a calculation, readers should identify the unit of analysis, time period, currency, treatment of uncertainty and relevant exclusions. Sensitivity analysis shows how a conclusion changes when its assumptions change. Monetary amounts in constructed cases are illustrative values unless expressly identified as observed data, market quotations or forecasts.

Ethical reasoning and theological interpretation are distinguished from descriptive and causal claims. Moral arguments require reasons concerning obligations, rights, consequences or character. Chapter 34 follows an explicitly biblical approach, attending to the text, context and interpretive steps supporting its conclusions. A theological commitment does not, by itself, establish an empirical claim about business performance, and a statistical relationship does not settle a moral question.

The complete edition retains the eight-part structure and the distinctive scope of each chapter. Publication details are presented at book level, while the references are brought together in one section. Figure and table numbers retain their chapter prefixes, allowing readers to identify their location without ambiguity. The contents, lists of illustrations, terminology crosswalk and subject index provide complementary routes through the volume.

Legal requirements, taxation, markets, technology and professional standards change over time. The evidence dates and qualifications given in the chapters remain relevant to interpretation. For a current operational or professional decision, readers should consult the applicable primary source and consider the circumstances of the enterprise concerned.

How to Use This Book

The eight parts provide a progression from enterprise foundations to specialized functions and their integration. Readers beginning the study of business will benefit from starting with Chapters 1–4, which establish the conceptual, economic, institutional and evidentiary foundations used throughout the volume. Later parts can be studied in sequence or selected to support a particular course, professional question or research interest.

Begin each chapter with its abstract, keywords and learning outcomes. These identify its main question, scope and intended learning. Follow the conceptual roadmap into the discussion, examining the diagrams and tables alongside the text. Reproduce numerical examples before interpreting their managerial implications. For a conceptual model, identify its assumptions and consider circumstances in which they might not hold.

The cases and learning activities support progression from understanding to application and critical evaluation. Students can use them to test explanations and defend decisions with evidence. Educators can select and adapt activities to their programme outcomes, qualification level and teaching time. Chapter 35 provides a capstone opportunity to bring several business functions into one analysis.

Practitioners may start with a decision and follow its implications across chapters. A proposed customer contract can require market analysis, capacity planning, procurement, working-capital assessment and consideration of employment obligations. Researchers can use the discussions of competing theories, limitations and research opportunities to develop a focused inquiry, returning to the original sources when assessing a particular claim.

The reference section brings together the works cited across the chapters. The lists of figures and tables locate visual material; the terminology crosswalk directs readers to disciplinary definitions; and the subject index identifies substantive discussions across the book. Chapter numbers remain consistent throughout the contents, headings and cross-references.

Preliminary pages use Roman numerals. The main text uses one continuous sequence of Arabic page numbers. Contents, figure and table lists, and the subject index refer to that sequence. In the print set, chapter and main-text page numbers continue across the three volumes.

Publication and Edition Note

The Business Enterprise was first published by Open Christian Press in 2026. This complete edition brings its thirty-five chapters together in an eight-part reference work, with common preliminary matter and coordinated navigation across the volumes.

The chapters were developed for separate publication as well as inclusion in the book. Earlier chapter versions remain part of the publication record and should be cited in the form consulted. This edition brings the work into a unified presentation, removes repeated publication details from chapter openings, and provides references for each printed volume.

The book's persistent identifier is https://doi.org/10.65655/ocp.m30. The publisher's catalogue provides the publication record and access to available chapter editions. Dates attached to the book, individual chapters and the evidence discussed within them refer to their respective publication or research contexts.

The print set preserves the complete work in three volumes. The division follows the book's eight-part structure and retains its chapter sequence. Each volume includes the references used in its chapters; the terminology crosswalk and subject index appear in Volume III.

PART IV

Marketing and Customer Value Creation

Customer value requires understanding, credible promises and reliable delivery. These chapters connect market orientation and customer intelligence with product decisions, brands, prices, sales, distribution and communication. The progression follows the formation of a commercial promise and the evidence and capabilities needed to fulfil it.

13 Principles of Marketing and Market Orientation

14 Consumer Behaviour, Market Research, and Customer Intelligence

15 Product Management, Branding, and Pricing Strategies

16 Sales, Distribution, Marketing Communications, and Digital Marketing

CHAPTER 13

Principles of Marketing and Market Orientation

ABSTRACT

Marketing is not synonymous with advertising or sales. It is an enterprise-wide discipline of understanding markets, identifying whose problems an organization can address, designing credible value propositions, and coordinating exchanges and relationships whose economic and social consequences remain defensible. This chapter critically examines the meaning, intellectual history, theories, processes, measurement and responsibilities of marketing, with market orientation as its central integrating construct. A purposive secondary-source synthesis connects exchange theory, industrial organization, segmentation–targeting–positioning, market-orientation research, relationship marketing, service-dominant logic and customer-value scholarship. Twelve domains develop environmental analysis, needs and perceived value, market selection, differentiation, strategic planning, marketing-mix coordination, organizational and nonprofit markets, retention economics, analytical inference, ethical safeguards and technologically mediated markets. Rwanda's 2022 population census, 2023/24 household living-conditions evidence, 2024 financial-inclusion survey and 2024 business-enterprise survey establish an empirical context for a transparently hypothetical urban–nonurban entry decision. Reproducible calculations illustrate addressable demand, contribution, market share, customer lifetime value and campaign incrementality; none represents observed firm performance. Original instruments include a marketing-strategy cycle, a theory-comparison matrix, an STP decision canvas and an evidence-to-action scorecard. The chapter argues that marketing effectiveness depends less on promotional intensity than on the fit among evidence, meaningful customer benefit, operational feasibility, economic durability and accountable treatment of affected stakeholders. The integrative framework offers propositions for testing, not claims of newly verified causality.

Keywords: marketing orientation; customer value; exchange; segmentation; targeting; positioning; marketing strategy; customer lifetime value; responsible marketing; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CHAPTER ROADMAP

After completing this chapter, readers should be able to: (LO1) distinguish marketing as an enterprise capability from advertising, selling and market research; (LO2) critically compare foundational marketing theories and their explanatory limitations; (LO3) define a relevant market and evaluate environmental, competitive and institutional influences; (LO4) develop and defend an evidence-qualified segmentation, targeting and positioning decision; (LO5) design a coherent marketing strategy, mix, budget and accountable performance system; (LO6) compute and interpret addressable market, share, contribution, acquisition and retention indicators; (LO7) compare Rwandan urban and nonurban approaches with international practice, identifying limits to transfer; and (LO8) evaluate digital and AI-mediated marketing against evidence, legal duties, privacy, fairness and sustainability.

The chapter proceeds from the intellectual meaning and evolution of marketing (13.1), through market boundaries and customer value (13.2–13.3), the segmentation–targeting–positioning architecture (13.4–13.5), planning and market offerings (13.6–13.7), organizational and relationship markets (13.8–13.9), research and measurement (13.10), responsibility (13.11), and market transformation (13.12). Sections 13.13–13.16 offer a documented Rwanda-based analysis, a reproducible decision case, cross-functional synthesis, research propositions and educator resources. Chapter 14 examines consumer psychology and research methods in

greater specialist detail; Chapter 15 develops product, brand and pricing choices; Chapter 16 treats sales, distribution, communications and digital execution. Accordingly, this chapter establishes the strategic logic connecting those functions rather than reproducing their technical content.

13.0 INTRODUCTION: FROM A SALE TO A DEFENSIBLE MARKET PROMISE

A hypothetical Kigali producer of shelf-stable, nutritionally formulated breakfast porridge receives inquiries from a supermarket chain and community retailers in an adjacent province. Its commercial officer proposes one national advertising campaign. Its operations manager questions whether distribution costs and product-life requirements allow reliable replenishment in both locations. The finance officer sees different working-capital and credit risks; a consumer advocate asks whether product claims are substantiated and understandable in the languages actually used by buyers. An increase in orders could therefore coincide with declining cash, disappointed customers or misleading promises. The managerial problem is not simply to persuade more people to purchase. It is to discover which people experience a sufficiently important problem, determine what an enterprise can reliably deliver, and justify the exchange after its full costs and consequences have been considered.

The American Marketing Association (n.d.) defines marketing in terms of activities, institutions and processes for creating, communicating, delivering and exchanging offerings that provide value to customers, partners and society. This wide formulation is more analytically useful than reducing the field to publicity, although it raises an unresolved question: value for whom, assessed over what period, and at whose expense? A purchase can be legally voluntary yet poorly informed; a high price may generate margin yet exclude a population for whom the product was ostensibly designed; a favorable customer score may reflect convenient respondents and neglect those who could not access the service. Marketing requires economic, interpretive and normative judgments that no single metric can settle (Bagozzi, 1975; Vargo & Lusch, 2004).

For the purposes of this chapter, marketing is the accountable organization of market understanding, value-proposition choice, exchange architecture and customer relationships in pursuit of feasible enterprise purposes. Market orientation is an organizational capacity to generate and interpret intelligence about present and prospective customers, competitors and contextual changes; disseminate it across functions; and respond through coordinated decisions. This definition builds on Kohli and Jaworski (1990), Narver and Slater (1990), and Day (1994), but preserves a critical distinction between listening to expressed preferences and deciding which market opportunities ought to be pursued. Businesses may learn accurately what buyers want and nevertheless decline a demand where fulfilling it would be harmful, unlawful or economically unsustainable.

13.0.1 Research design, source selection and limits of inference

This is a critical, purposive secondary-source synthesis of seminal marketing scholarship, selected peer-reviewed empirical and review studies, primary Rwandan institutional releases and relevant legal guidance. Sources were chosen for conceptual distinctiveness, capacity to challenge rival explanations, authority for a stated empirical claim, and relevance to the approved twelve-section scope. Searches undertaken on 31 October 2026 used author– title checks and combinations of “market orientation profitability meta-analysis,” “segmentation market differentiation,” “customer value service dominant logic,” “relationship marketing commitment trust,” “marketing analytics attribution,” “AI marketing strategy,” “Rwanda 2022 census urban rural,” “EICV7 2023/24,” “FinScope 2024,” “IBES 2024” and “Rwanda competition consumer protection 011/2026.” Publisher records and official NISR, government and regulatory pages were prioritized over derivative summaries. This is not a systematic review or meta-analysis; there was no preregistration, exhaustive database screen, flow diagram of retrieved records, independent survey, interview or causal estimation.

Four inferential levels are deliberately distinguished. Theoretical scholarship explains possible mechanisms; individual empirical studies provide estimates conditional on research design and sample; national statistics

characterize specified populations and periods; and the constructed marketing scenario teaches how assumptions affect decisions. The census counts people rather than customers of a specified category. FinScope reports financial-service access or use, not a percentage of persons who purchase via e-commerce. An enterprise survey describes business units under its statistical definition, not automatically a marketing channel universe. No causal effect or real-company profitability is attributed to these sources without an appropriate identification design. The illustrative calculations are fully disclosed for arithmetic replication; empirical replication of national estimates would require the survey data, weights, definitions and source documentation (National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda [NISR], 2024, 2025a, 2025d, 2026e).

13.0.2 Three philosophical questions at the foundation of marketing

Marketing's *epistemological* problem asks what customer preferences, intentions and responses can justifiably be known from statements, transactions and interactions. Expressed preferences can differ from realized behavior, while transactions record only the actions of people who had a feasible opportunity to buy. Its *economic* problem asks which allocations and exchanges create a surplus net of resources and opportunity costs. Its *normative* problem asks which forms of persuasion, access, product claims, data use and distribution can be justified to consumers and other stakeholders. These problems intersect without collapsing into one another. A campaign may be experimentally effective but manipulative; an ethically commendable offer may be financially nonviable; a profitable market selection may depend on an erroneous estimate of willingness to pay.

The chapter's governing argument is that market orientation must be understood as an accountable system of inquiry and response. A firm is not more market-oriented merely because it stores more customer data or repeats the phrase “customer first.” A more credible test asks whether evidence travels from real market problems through organizational decisions to verifiable outcomes, whether adverse signals can change strategy, and whether legitimate constraints remain operative. This view treats marketing as an enterprise function interdependent with operations, finance, governance, human resources, technology and strategy, consistent with the book's integrated enterprise perspective.

13.1 THE MEANING AND EVOLUTION OF MARKETING

13.1.1 Exchange, distribution and the historical development of the field

Marketing scholarship developed through attempts to explain distribution, exchange institutions, commodity flows, demand management and relationships. Early teaching frequently organized the field around commodities, the institutions moving them, and the functions required for trade. Mass production and expanding consumer markets encouraged a managerial focus on standardization, channels, mass communication and sales. Later work questioned whether managing products and promotional instruments adequately explained services, industrial networks, customer experience or long-term value. These perspectives coexist today: wholesale trade can demand rigorous physical distribution while a software service may depend principally on relational trust and continued use.

Bagozzi (1975) treats exchange as the intellectual center of marketing. Exchange is broader than a single monetary sale: parties may exchange resources, time, information, access, legitimacy or commitments. Nonetheless, not every interaction is a mutually advantageous bargain. Information asymmetry, dependency, discrimination and externalities can shape nominally voluntary transactions. A useful exchange analysis therefore asks who participates, what each party gives up, what alternatives are feasible, and whether consequences are borne by nonparticipants. The classical managerial problem of finding demand becomes the wider institutional problem of sustaining credible and fair exchanges.

The history of the discipline also calls for care about what is being historicized. A sequence moving from production to selling and finally to customer orientation describes influential managerial ideals, not the actual organization of every economy or a linear law of progress. Market intermediaries, household exchange,

cooperative trading and negotiated trust preceded modern corporate marketing departments and continue to coexist with sophisticated digital advertising. When marketing scholarship presents consumer choice as a property of mature market economies alone, it overlooks the long-standing institutional work of traders, producers and communities in making goods discoverable, comparable, transportable and credible. The appropriate historical unit may therefore be the marketing system, not simply the firm or campaign (Bagozzi, 1975; Sheth, 2011).

Modern business marketing inherited a further tension: its managerial vocabulary often presumes that an enterprise can choose its 'market' from outside, while market actors help constitute one another through standards, channels, consumer expectations and repeated interaction. A wholesaler that extends delivery routes changes which buyers can participate; a product standard changes what may credibly be claimed as comparable; and a payment interface changes the feasible terms of exchange. Marketing can thus be analyzed both as a set of managerial decisions inside an enterprise and as the institutional organization of exchanges beyond any single enterprise. Failure to distinguish the levels leads to overclaiming what an advertising department can control.

13.1.2 Production, product, selling, marketing and societal orientations

Textbook accounts commonly distinguish production orientation (availability and cost), product orientation (technical performance), selling orientation (persuasive conversion), marketing orientation (understanding and meeting market requirements) and societal or responsible marketing (longer-term stakeholder consequences). These labels are ideal types rather than a proven universal chronological sequence. Enterprises can simultaneously prioritize low unit cost, product reliability, customer insight and aggressive sales. Production efficiency is not obsolete in markets where reliable supply and affordability remain binding constraints. The defect arises when a managerial orientation becomes exclusive: a technically sophisticated product without a valued use, for example, or a sales target that rewards misleading transactions.

The marketing concept's normative appeal is that organizing activities around customer problems can discipline internally convenient but externally irrelevant decisions. Yet a business cannot simply maximize stated customer satisfaction: preferences differ, information is imperfect, some customers impose losses on others, and organizations must maintain solvency. Sheth (2011) argues that marketing concepts derived from industrialized markets may require reconsideration where infrastructure, informal competition, heterogeneous incomes and access limitations are consequential. Market orientation in such settings must include market development and the practical capacity to serve customers, not merely a richer set of preference measurements.

13.1.3 Competing explanations of market orientation

Kohli and Jaworski (1990) conceptualize market orientation behaviorally through organization-wide intelligence generation, dissemination and responsiveness. Its strength is operational visibility: managers can examine the procedures through which observations become decisions. Narver and Slater (1990) give greater emphasis to customer orientation, competitor orientation and interfunctional coordination as a culture of superior customer value. Their study of 140 business units found a positive association with profitability in its samples, but it cannot be generalized to every sector or treated as a universal intervention effect. Day (1994) recasts the discussion in capability terms, emphasizing market sensing and customer linking, thereby clarifying why cultural declarations are insufficient without organizational routines.

The rival emphases matter. A firm can collect customer feedback yet fail to share it with production; its behavioral market-orientation routines are deficient. Another firm may possess an admired customer-centric culture yet neglect competitive cost structure; its strategic market understanding is incomplete. A third can process analytics efficiently but have no authority to change product specifications. Jaworski and Kohli (1993) find that organizational arrangements and interdepartmental relationships matter to market orientation, while their performance results do not amount to a simple market-share law. Kirca et al.'s (2005) meta-analysis finds a generally favorable relationship between market orientation and performance, with differences across research

settings and measurement approaches. Self-reported performance and cultural context are not innocuous moderators; they call for stronger designs and careful transfer to African enterprises.

The explanatory competition among perspectives is clearest when a firm knows what customers report but repeatedly fails to adjust. The intelligence-processing model predicts weakness in dissemination or responsiveness; the cultural model predicts inadequate customer priority or interfunctional commitment; the capabilities account predicts absence of routines, complementary information or implementation skill. These diagnoses can be empirically separated. Researchers could trace when complaints were received, whether they reached the relevant decision maker, whether a feasible remedy was authorized, and whether the underlying capability existed. Survey items measuring managers' declared customer orientation alone are insufficient to establish which mechanism operated (Kohli & Jaworski, 1990; Day, 1994).

An additional concern is endogeneity. More profitable firms can fund superior market research, recruit experienced analysts and sustain better distribution, so a positive market-orientation–performance association may partly reflect reverse causation or omitted managerial quality. Differences between countries can also arise from survey translation, the selection of surviving firms and the meaning of performance measures. Kirca et al. (2005) synthesize cross-study evidence of association; their findings should not be turned into a numerical guarantee that a Rwandan enterprise will achieve a particular return by adopting an orientation scale. Morgan (2012) frames the more demanding question as the conditions under which marketing resources become capabilities, positional advantage and eventual financial performance. This mediating architecture is analytically stronger than asserting a direct, context-free link.

13.1.4 Relationship marketing and service-dominant logic

Grönroos (1994) criticizes the dominance of transaction-focused marketing-mix management for services and relationships. Morgan and Hunt (1994) propose commitment and trust as central mediators of successful relational exchange, testing their model among tire retailers. Their contribution lies in explaining why credible promises and cooperative behavior can matter beyond immediate price. The limitation is that continuity may also reflect lock-in, geographic exclusion or weak alternatives rather than freely sustained trust. Loyalty must therefore be interpreted alongside switching conditions and consumer welfare.

Vargo and Lusch (2004) advance service-dominant logic, proposing that economic exchange fundamentally involves the application of competencies for another's benefit and that value is co-created through resource integration and use. A sealed food package, for example, is not intrinsically valuable in the same way to every consumer: its value depends on preparation, convenience, nutrition, affordability and the user's circumstances. The perspective usefully challenges producer-centric assertions, but risks conceptual breadth if every successful outcome is redescribed as co-creation without specifying measurable mechanisms. Marketing inquiry must still identify who creates which contribution, who captures returns and when participation becomes burdensome rather than empowering (Prahalad & Ramaswamy, 2004).

Table 13.1. Principal marketing perspectives, mechanisms and empirical cautions

Perspective	Explanatory mechanism	Main managerial contribution	Critical boundary
Exchange theory (Bagozzi, 1975)	Reciprocal transfers among parties	Clarifies offering and counterparty value	Voluntariness need not imply fairness
Market orientation (Kohli & Jaworski, 1990)	Intelligence generation, diffusion, response	Links inquiry to cross-functional action	Routine counts do not establish response quality
Cultural orientation (Narver & Slater, 1990)	Customer, competitor and interfunctional focus	Shapes shared priorities and trade- offs	Correlation with profit is context-dependent
Capability approach (Day, 1994)	Market sensing and customer linking	Reveals underlying skills and routines	Capabilities may be costly or difficult to imitate
Relationship marketing (Morgan & Hunt, 1994)	Commitment, trust and cooperation	Illuminates retention and partnerships	Retention may also represent coercive lock-in
Service-dominant logic (Vargo & Lusch, 2004)	Resource integration and value in use	Recognizes customer participation and context	Needs operational definitions for causal tests

Note. Authorial analytical comparison based on cited original sources. The categories are not mutually exclusive, and no ranking of effectiveness is asserted.

13.2 MARKETS AND THE MARKETING ENVIRONMENT

13.2.1 Defining a market without confusing populations with demand

A relevant market can be defined by customers, problems solved, substitutable offerings, geography, access channels and time horizon. “All households in Rwanda” is a population, not a demonstrated market for a particular porridge. Market definition should specify the use occasion, buyer and user, budget constraint, availability, substitutes and switching conditions. A consumer may choose between packaged porridge, maize flour, bread, cassava, home-prepared breakfast or skipping the meal. The competitive set depends on the job to be accomplished, not merely the product category in an enterprise's catalogue. For business-to-business purchases, users, purchasers and financial approvers may be distinct organizations or roles.

A disciplined market hierarchy separates the total potential universe from people realistically reachable with an appropriate offer, and from sales the enterprise can plausibly capture. In practice, total addressable market (TAM), serviceable available market (SAM) and serviceable obtainable market (SOM) are scenario constructs, not precise official statistics unless the category, denominator and estimation method are reported. Multiplying all residents by a speculative purchase rate does not constitute market research. TAM may express a counterfactual upper bound; SAM must reflect product-market and channel feasibility; SOM requires an evidence-based proposition about adoption, capacity and rivalry. Data uncertainty should travel through all three calculations.

Market boundaries also depend on which decisions the definition is intended to inform. A competition-law analysis asks whether customers can substitute among products in response to changes in trading conditions; an innovation study may include emerging alternatives not yet sold; a marketing investment appraisal asks whether the enterprise can reach and serve a group profitably. These boundaries may overlap but need not be identical. For packaged breakfast foods, a retail category defined solely by ready-made porridge may be administratively convenient while overlooking bakery foods or home-cooked substitutes that matter to household choice. Every estimate should therefore record its category rule and the consequence of expanding or narrowing that rule.

A practical demand model distinguishes population, eligible use occasions, distribution reach, awareness, trial, frequency and realized net purchase. Multiplication can be useful when the components are independently defensible, but it can obscure correlation: awareness may be high precisely where retail access is strong, while households that trial a product may be more likely than others to purchase frequently. Scenarios should consequently vary conversion and frequency jointly where the evidence warrants, rather than reporting one exact total that creates unwarranted confidence.

13.2.2 Competition, substitution and industry structure

The competitive environment includes incumbent rivals, substitute solutions, suppliers, buyers, possible entrants, channel intermediaries and complementors. Porter (2008) explains how rivalry and bargaining relations shape potential industry profitability, but industry structure alone does not identify whether a given segment values the firm's offering or whether a particular enterprise has a cost or capability advantage. Conversely, an appealing customer problem does not guarantee appropriable returns when intermediaries control access, substitutes are close or imitation is easy. Hunt and Morgan (1995) interpret competition through comparative resources and capabilities, providing a useful bridge between market structure and heterogeneous enterprise responses.

Competitive mapping should record observable facts such as availability, price, pack size, claims, replenishment reliability and accessible channels. Perceptual positions inferred without customer evidence are hypotheses, not measured attitudes. In informal markets, competition may be unregistered or transacted through personal networks that commercial databases omit. Share estimates may be severely biased when the numerator records one firm's audited sales while the denominator excludes informal competitors. A market map is therefore a model of the competitive set, open to correction as procurement, customer and channel information accumulates.

13.2.3 Macro forces, institutions and exposure pathways

Economic conditions reach marketing through consumer real income, cost and availability of inputs, credit, employment, exchange rates and confidence. Social and demographic changes alter household composition, language use, mobility and service expectations. Technology changes search, comparison, transactions and fulfillment. Natural conditions affect agricultural availability and transport reliability. Law constrains claims, competition practices and personal-data use. These influences should be mapped to an operational decision rather than recited as an undifferentiated PESTEL list. The effect of an exchange-rate depreciation, for example, depends on imported inputs, rival pricing, buyer income and contract terms, not on its direction alone.

Rwanda's Law No. 011/2026 of 26 February 2026 on competition and consumer protection, published in the Official Gazette of 4 March 2026, is a relevant legal anchor for advertising and consumer transactions. The existence of statutory rules does not establish compliance by a named enterprise or settle how all implementing provisions apply. Rwanda's Law No. 058/2021 relating to personal data and privacy further requires marketers to treat customer-data operations as governed processing, not as an unlimited asset of the enterprise (Republic of Rwanda, 2021d, 2026a; Data Protection and Privacy Office, n.d.-f). A legal review should distinguish the text in force from regulator guidance, proposed reforms and cross-border rules rather than assuming one global standard.

Institutional effects on demand are not invariably direct or symmetric. A consumer-protection rule may increase administrative cost while also reducing uncertainty about product claims; an infrastructure upgrade may lower delivery cost yet intensify competition by enabling previously distant suppliers. Its outcome depends on the sequence of adaptation, sectoral conditions and enforcement credibility. The marketing analyst should specify whether a regulation is enacted and in force, what transactions it covers, whether guidance is binding, and which part of a customer promise it constrains. Treating regulatory compliance as an external box on a planning chart

is inadequate where law changes what can legitimately be sold, advertised, stored or collected (Republic of Rwanda, 2021d, 2026a).

13.2.4 Environmental scanning as a decision system

Useful scanning begins with a question: what could materially alter demand, contribution, access, trust or permissible conduct during the planning horizon? Each signal requires a source, observation period, expected mechanism, manager responsible, threshold for action and alternative explanation. For example, an increase in mobile-money use may support an investigation of payment convenience, but it does not prove that online purchasing has become common or that customers can bear delivery charges. Channel viability is determined jointly by demand, payment, last-mile costs, dispute handling and service reliability.

Scanning becomes meaningful when observations are converted into falsifiable exposure statements. A retailer's report that customers are abandoning a package size could reflect declining real income, a new substitute, intermittent stock, changed quantities or a reporting error. A useful review would compare sales and availability by outlet, inspect rival specifications and ask whether switching is concentrated in locations with altered distribution conditions. Managers should set a minimum evidence threshold before attributing a trend to consumer preference, especially when the proposed response would commit substantial inventory or promotional expenditure. Repeated signals matter when their measurement and provenance are credible, not because a dashboard contains many indicators.

For enterprises with limited analytical staffing, the process need not be technically elaborate. A monthly source log can record whether a finding comes from a customer statement, a verified transaction, a supplier announcement, an official release or a model prediction. Operations can then estimate feasible response times, finance can identify cash exposure and management can decide which uncertainty justifies a low-cost test rather than irreversible investment. Such a register preserves the spirit of organizational intelligence without pretending that all inputs have equal authority (Kohli & Jaworski, 1990; Day, 1994).

13.3 UNDERSTANDING CUSTOMER NEEDS AND VALUE

13.3.1 Needs, wants, demand and willingness to pay

A need denotes a condition or problem that people seek to address; a want is a context-shaped preference for a particular solution; demand is a willingness and ability to obtain an offering at relevant terms. These categories should not be rigidly separated into supposedly universal lists. Food security is a serious need, but choices of grain, preparation method, package size, timing, location and transaction medium depend on institutions and household practices. Willingness to pay is a conditional valuation influenced by budget, available alternatives, expectations, information and perceived risk. Its measured level can change with survey wording, actual payment requirements and the distribution of purchasing power.

Marketing should distinguish buyers, users, gatekeepers, influencers and those who bear costs. A parent may buy for children; a school may procure meals with public resources; a cooperative may aggregate orders for members. Observing the purchaser's expressed preference does not necessarily reveal beneficiaries' experiences. In business markets, the lowest invoice can impose substantial costs on service users if delivery is unreliable. The appropriate unit of customer analysis is therefore a specified decision process and use context, not a fictional universally rational buyer (Lemon & Verhoef, 2016).

13.3.2 Functional, economic, experiential and social value

Customer value can involve reliable function, time savings, convenience, dignity, enjoyment, status, social relationships and risk reduction. Price is only one sacrifice. Search time, travel, waiting, learning, repair, uncertainty and disposal may matter more in some segments. A simple illustrative customer-value inequality is **perceived relevant benefits > perceived total sacrifices**, conditional on credible information and feasible alternatives. This is not an objective cardinal measure: different people attach different meanings and weights to the components, and marketers should not infer that satisfaction gives them access to an individual's entire welfare function.

Value creation, value capture and value distribution must be separated. A low-cost product can provide consumers meaningful surplus while leaving a distributor with negative contribution after spoilage and travel costs. A high-margin product can reward shareholders while imposing waste disposal costs on communities. Service-dominant logic encourages examination of value in use, but economic viability still requires identifying who pays, when and how contractual and noncontractual obligations are fulfilled (Vargo & Lusch, 2004; Prahalad & Ramaswamy, 2004). Responsible marketing evaluates the entire exchange architecture rather than the slogan attached to the package.

Woodruff (1997) approaches customer value through the customer's desired attributes, consequences of use and underlying purposes. This hierarchy helps explain why ostensibly similar offers may solve different problems: one buyer values a low immediate payment, another predictable availability, and an institution may prioritize nutritional documentation or reliable procurement records. The approach is not a warrant to assign objective monetary weights to all dimensions. Meanings are situated, and evidence about a customer's experienced value should be collected at the appropriate time, especially where the cost of a poor purchase becomes visible only after use.

A related philosophical distinction concerns preference satisfaction and welfare. Preference-based models are useful for inferring trade-offs from choices under assumptions about information and feasible alternatives. They become morally incomplete when observed purchases are made under coercion, severe informational asymmetry or absence of credible alternatives. Neither the enterprise nor the researcher can infer that every revealed preference expresses fully informed autonomous endorsement. A rigorous account uses market behavior as evidence about choices made under constraints, then examines what constraints and third-party impacts the transaction leaves unmeasured (Baker et al., 2005; Laczniak & Murphy, 2019).

13.3.3 Methods of learning about customer problems

Qualitative observation, complaint records, interviews, ethnographic work, diaries, customer-journey mapping, purchasing records and experiments answer different questions. A small number of interviews can reveal previously unrecognized frictions but cannot establish national prevalence. Transaction records reveal realized actions among reachable buyers, not preferences among excluded households. A structured survey can estimate stated patterns under sampling and question-validity assumptions, while an appropriately randomized experiment can estimate the effect of a specific intervention in a defined population. The methodology of research design belongs principally to Chapter 14 and the book's Chapter 4; here the key requirement is fit between decision and evidence.

The customer journey connects search, evaluation, access, purchase, delivery, consumption, support and possible repurchase. Each stage creates expectations that another function must satisfy. Lemon and Verhoef (2016) describe the multi-touchpoint and temporally extended nature of customer experience. This perspective challenges a sales funnel that ends at conversion. A product claim made before purchase can increase orders while generating later complaint, refund and trust costs. Measuring the whole experience helps distinguish immediate revenue from sustainable demand.

13.3.4 Whose needs are not visible?

A central ethical and methodological difficulty is selection. Customers with internet access, bank accounts and favorable location characteristics are often easier to observe, while people facing disabilities, limited literacy, low incomes or rural distances may be absent from digital traces. A business model optimized only for observed buyers can reinforce exclusion while producing apparently impressive conversion metrics. In Rwanda, the urban–rural distribution and variations in multidimensional poverty provide reasons to test differentiated delivery and communication requirements, not grounds for stereotyping individual households (NISR, 2025b, 2025d). Ethical market intelligence requires testing whether the research frame systematically omits those affected by the enterprise's choices.

13.4 SEGMENTATION AND MARKET SELECTION

13.4.1 Segmentation as a hypothesis about meaningful heterogeneity

Segmentation partitions a defined market into groups expected to differ in the benefits they seek, barriers faced, responses to an offering or economics of service. Smith's (1956) account places heterogeneity at the core of alternative approaches to product differentiation and market segmentation. Segmentation is not an end in itself: it is worthwhile only when distinctions improve a consequential decision. A demographic split that produces no difference in need, reachable channel or economic response adds complexity without managerial value.

Geographic segmentation may reflect transport access, density, climate and retail structure; demographic segmentation may describe life stage and household size; behavioral segmentation may capture use occasion, purchase frequency or benefits sought; psychographic segmentation may explore values or lifestyle with particular measurement caution; and organizational segmentation may use firm sector, size, procurement procedure, risk tolerance or required service levels. None should automatically be treated as a stable essence of the person. Data-based clusters can be sensitive to algorithm choice, selected variables, standardization and sample frame. Segment descriptions must remain testable rather than self-confirming narratives.

13.4.2 Conditions for a useful segment and the danger of proxy variables

A useful segment should be identifiable, sufficiently differentiated, potentially accessible, economically consequential and actionable with the firm's capabilities. Long-term stability matters where major investments cannot easily be reversed, but overly static segments can conceal changing needs. Formal market surveys provide stronger population descriptions than a convenience sample of social-media followers, yet even official surveys may lack the product-specific variables required to infer purchase probability. Marketing should attach confidence ranges, validation stages and explicit “unknown” labels rather than report false precision.

Segmentation can also repackage inequality as a marketing opportunity. Income, residence and digital access may predict response partly because they proxy unequal services or historical exclusion. Using them to allocate scarce commercial effort may be economically defensible under specified constraints, but exclusion from essential products, unfair treatment or use of sensitive traits requires a separate legal and ethical assessment. An enterprise can design inclusive channels, accessible pack sizes or alternative payment arrangements without assuming every segment is equally profitable. Distinguishing an explanatory predictor from a morally legitimate targeting criterion is indispensable.

A segmentation model also requires temporal validation. The same person may occupy different segments across occasions, such as purchasing economical staples for a household yet premium products for an institutional event. Static labels can therefore overstate persistence. If segments were derived from a small retailer convenience sample, their prevalence and profitability must not be extrapolated to a national population without a sampling bridge. Segment stability can be examined by repeating the classification after a suitable interval and testing whether it continues to predict meaningful, out-of-sample differences in needs, channel use or contribution.

The ethical challenge is not solved by simply removing protected characteristics. Postal area, device type, transaction time and spending history can act as proxies for economic vulnerability, disability or uneven infrastructure. The analyst should examine how an apparently predictive variable arose, whether the resulting exclusion is necessary for a legitimate business purpose and what less harmful access architecture is feasible. Statistical predictiveness, commercial desirability and moral legitimacy are separate judgments, even when they concern the same variable (Baker et al., 2005).

13.4.3 From segmentation evidence to market selection

Market selection compares segments using consistent criteria: size or opportunity, problem intensity, contribution after service cost, access costs, competitive pressure, capacity requirements, growth uncertainty, regulatory feasibility, stakeholder effects and strategic fit. A weighted attractiveness score can facilitate discussion but should never conceal red-line obligations. If a segment's access strategy violates safety requirements, no high market-size score may compensate. Moreover, criteria are often correlated: urban density affects both channel cost and potential reach, so adding their scores risks counting one advantage twice.

A defensible selection decision presents a baseline option, at least one alternative, the assumptions that would reverse preference, and a phased way to gather more evidence. The best first target need not be the largest segment. An enterprise with limited working capital may choose a smaller segment with repeat orders and reliable payments while keeping a measured pathway to broader access. Conversely, exclusive concentration on wealthy buyers may sacrifice learning and legitimate social benefit. The decision is strategic, not merely numerical.

13.5 TARGETING, POSITIONING AND DIFFERENTIATION

13.5.1 Targeting strategies and resource constraints

Undifferentiated targeting uses a relatively common offering across a broad market; differentiated targeting adapts the offer for several groups; concentrated targeting focuses limited resources on one group; and individualized approaches tailor responses more granularly. These are contingent architectures, not a hierarchy in which personalization is always superior. Adaptation can improve fit but increases inventory complexity, communication costs and measurement burdens. Standardization may improve reliability and access. Sheth (2011) cautions against importing segmentation orthodoxy where market development, affordability and infrastructure are decisive.

A practical targeting memorandum should identify the customer problem, evidence supporting a distinct response, reachable channel, minimum contribution, feasible scale, required operational adaptation, rejected segments and indicators that would trigger revision. Its analytical strength comes from traceability between observed needs and chosen commitments. A firm that targets remote consumers with a reliability promise must also secure delivery capabilities; marketing cannot legally or ethically outsource responsibility for the truthfulness of the promise.

13.5.2 Positioning as a comparative, credible claim

Positioning concerns the distinctive place an enterprise seeks to occupy in the minds and choice situations of selected customers relative to alternatives. It is a proposed relationship between customer problem, frame of reference, differentiating benefit and credible reason to believe. A working structure is: “For [defined segment and occasion], [offering] provides [specific benefit] compared with [relevant alternative], because [verifiable evidence and capability].” The statement is a design hypothesis. Its truth depends on evidence that the benefit matters to buyers and can be delivered consistently.

A perceptual map may illustrate believed differences along two selected attributes, such as unit affordability and replenishment reliability. Without actual customer ratings, points are managerial hypotheses, not empirical

positions. Dimensions may miss the most important decision criteria or create an illusion that consumers share one perceptual space. Where competing offers are nearly indistinguishable, meaningful differentiation may come through availability, customer care, warranties, total cost, language accessibility or fair contracting rather than visual brand symbolism alone. Substantive product and pricing engineering are treated in Chapter 15.

Positioning should be tested at the level of a choice situation rather than judged from the elegance of its wording. An enterprise might ask buyers to compare two fully specified offers at observed retail prices and delivery conditions, then examine which attribute drives preference and which perceived claims prove inaccurate. This provides more informative evidence than asking respondents whether they generally value quality, affordability and convenience, because few consumers oppose those ideals in the abstract. The relevant task is to discover their actual trade-offs when several desired attributes cannot all be maximized.

Differentiation is also vulnerable to imitation and deterioration. A delivery advantage can vanish when competitors increase route frequency; a perceived ethical advantage becomes fragile when the supplier cannot trace relevant practices. Positioning strategy therefore needs an explicit credibility mechanism, such as audited product specifications, monitored service reliability or enforceable redress, as well as a time horizon over which the firm can maintain that distinction. A slogan lacking such a mechanism is promotional aspiration, not a defensible market position (Day, 1994; Morgan, 2012).

13.5.3 Positioning, brand promise and operational proof

A positioning claim is only as credible as the system behind it. A supplier advertising same-day delivery requires stock visibility, approval authority, dispatch capability and exception handling. A nutritious-food claim requires appropriate substantiation and quality controls. A community-oriented claim needs evidence about suppliers and business conduct. The relationship between promise and performance creates a feedback loop: marketing influences demand, demand stresses operations, delivered experience influences trust, and trust affects future demand. This is why market orientation belongs to the entire enterprise rather than to a communication department (Day, 1994; Homburg et al., 1999).

13.6 MARKETING PLANNING AND STRATEGY

13.6.1 Strategic logic: diagnosis, choice, action and adaptation

A marketing plan translates enterprise direction into market-facing choices across a defined horizon. It should state the decision problem, market and customer evidence, selected segments, defensible positioning, measurable objectives, chosen offer and channel architecture, resources, owners, constraints and revision schedule. Planning is not equivalent to forecasting because forecast errors will occur; a good plan specifies contingency responses to them. It should also document plausible rejected alternatives, preventing retrospective claims that every successful outcome was planned.

Marketing objectives require construct clarity. “Increase brand awareness” may be a legitimate intermediate objective when informed trial is the bottleneck, but it does not establish that customers benefited or that enterprise contribution improved. Objectives can distinguish reach, qualified inquiries, trial, repeat use, margin, complaint resolution and legitimate social access. For each target, record the baseline, denominator, observation period, data source, decision owner and potential perverse incentive. A sales target without gross margin or returns data can reward unprofitable growth; a lower acquisition-cost target can incentivize lower-quality leads.

Figure 13.1. Marketing strategy as an evidence-and-response cycle



Note. Original authorial synthesis based on market-orientation and marketing-accountability literature (Kohli & Jaworski, 1990; Day, 1994; Rust et al., 2004).

13.6.2 Resource allocation and opportunity cost

Marketing expenditure competes with product quality, worker training, working capital and distribution capacity. The relevant criterion is not simply the gross revenue attributed to a campaign but its incremental contribution after variable, service and program costs, subject to financing and ethical constraints. Budget choices can use marginal return comparisons where credible response functions exist; otherwise, controlled pilots and scenario ranges are preferable to arbitrary confidence. An additional RWF 1 million spent on advertising may be inferior to strengthening stock availability if customers already seek the product but repeatedly encounter shortages.

Marketing-mix effectiveness is interdependent. Promotional spending can raise demand beyond capacity, worsening delivery and retention. A price discount may increase order counts but destroy contribution if fulfillment has high fixed-route costs. A low-cost digital channel may generate leads that never convert because customers cannot inspect the product or rely on delivery. Economic appraisal must therefore use a systems boundary large enough to include foreseeable cross-functional consequences (Rust et al., 2004).

The connection to enterprise value merits a formal causal chain. Srivastava et al. (1998) distinguish market-based assets, such as customer and channel relationships, from the cash-flow consequences through which those assets might matter financially. The financial channels include earlier receipt of cash, greater or more durable cash flows, reduced vulnerability and credible residual value. These propositions connect marketing with finance but remain contingent: acquiring a customer database that is inaccurate, unlawfully obtained or too costly to maintain cannot be presumed to create an asset of positive net value. Marketing should account for its effects on both operating contribution and the timing and risk of cash collection.

A budget appraisal can therefore compare the incremental net present values of alternatives rather than equate expenditure with performance. If a promotional intervention brings future contribution forward but creates additional receivables, the company must finance the time difference. If channel development improves reliability and repeat purchase while requiring upfront fixed investment, a single-quarter campaign comparison understates its potential effect. Conversely, attributing every later repeat order to the original campaign would overstate its value. Where data cannot separate effects credibly, management should report ranges and the evidence needed to narrow them rather than manufacture precise marketing return-on-investment figures (Rust et al., 2004).

13.6.3 A minimum viable marketing governance process

In smaller enterprises, a founder may conduct marketing without specialist employees. Governance nonetheless requires explicit evidence and responsibility. A practical monthly review should reconcile order data with payments, quantify contribution by segment, inspect claims and complaints, distinguish repeat from first-time purchasers, and review capacity and cash requirements before authorizing expansion. An enterprise with greater scale may formalize a marketing steering committee involving operations, finance, customer service, legal or compliance, technology and management. The point is not organizational ceremony but the ability to challenge a marketing proposal when its costs or claims are incomplete.

Decision rights should follow the consequence of error. Routine edits to a factual outlet directory can be delegated to trained sales staff; nutritional, financial or environmental claims may require independent specialist verification before public release; a substantial budget commitment must be tested against liquidity and authorized under the enterprise's financial controls. A governance arrangement is effective when staff can stop a misleading campaign, not merely report after its completion. In a small enterprise, the same manager may hold several formal roles, making documented challenge from an independent adviser or qualified reviewer particularly valuable.

A decision record should retain the question considered, evidence available at the time, assumptions rejected or retained, interested parties, authorization, the next review date and the observed result. This is proportionate institutional memory rather than bureaucracy for its own sake. It also prevents the familiar hindsight error in which managers describe a successful campaign as inevitable while concealing the uncertainty visible before it was launched.

Table 13.2. Marketing strategy-to-evidence decision register

Decision element	Minimum evidence or assumption	Cross-functional responsibility	Revision trigger
Target segment	Problem, feasible reach, segment boundaries	Marketing; research; operations	Weak repeat trial or excluded relevant customers
Value proposition	Differentiating benefit and proof	Product; quality; marketing	Claims disputed or quality falls
Channel	Cost-to-serve, accessibility, dispute handling	Sales; logistics; technology	Failed deliveries or disproportionate cost
Campaign budget	Incremental contribution scenarios	Marketing; finance	Contribution below approved threshold
Customer data	Purpose, legal basis, retention and rights	Technology; compliance; marketing	Data incident or unlawful use concern
Performance review	Denominators, comparator, owner, method	Finance; analytics; governance	Data disagreement or metric gaming

Note. Original authorial decision instrument. Criteria are illustrative management controls, not a certification standard or legal checklist.

13.7 THE MARKETING MIX IN GOODS AND SERVICES

13.7.1 The four Ps as a coordination instrument

The familiar product, price, place and promotion framework provides a compact vocabulary for coordinating an offering. Product specifies the benefits and performance promised; price addresses the payment and financial conditions of exchange; place concerns access, distribution and availability; promotion concerns truthful information and the means through which an offer is made known. These categories should not be treated as independent levers. Changing pack size affects perceived affordability, handling cost, shelf space, margin and inventory. Altering delivery location affects both customer convenience and the total price of access. The four Ps are therefore most useful as a consistency test, not as a complete theory of markets.

The framework has limitations. It is supply-side and managerial in emphasis, can portray consumers as passive recipients, and fits recurring physical goods more readily than relational services or public purposes. Grönroos (1994) and Vargo and Lusch (2004) emphasize service processes, relationships and value experienced through use. A pragmatic response is not to discard mix decisions but to situate them inside customer problems, market institutions and operational capacities. Detailed brand, assortment and pricing decisions belong to Chapter 15; sales and communication mechanics belong to Chapter 16.

13.7.2 Services, process and evidence

Service marketing often adds people, process and physical evidence to the four Ps. People includes staff and users who shape interactions; process covers the sequence, waiting time and recovery arrangements through which service is delivered; physical evidence concerns observable cues by which customers infer quality before or during an intangible service. For a Rwandan repair service, appointment reliability, clear estimates, technician competence and documented completion may matter more than an attractive advert. For a digital payment provider, transaction security, dispute resolution and accessibility are essential components of customer experience rather than merely backstage operational details.

Service encounters reveal the problem of heterogeneous quality. Customers may receive different outcomes from formally identical offerings because tasks vary, staff exercise judgment, and service failures involve multiple providers. Quality measurement should therefore combine reliability, outcome evidence, complaint resolution and customer perspectives rather than infer objective excellence from one satisfaction item (Boulding et al., 1993). The enterprise may standardize basic safeguards while preserving discretion to respond to legitimate exceptional needs.

Services are often experienced as sequences of commitments rather than isolated transactions. A buyer may judge a repair provider first from the clarity of its diagnosis, then from the accuracy of its quotation, the care taken with property, the timing of completion and the fairness of subsequent remedy. This temporal sequence makes process failures part of the offering itself. It also complicates measurement: a high average satisfaction rating can conceal a small number of severe failures, while an improved complaint count may reflect withdrawal of an accessible reporting channel rather than better service.

The extended marketing mix consequently has to be interpreted relationally. Employees cannot deliver responsive care if staffing allocations make promised response times impossible; digital interfaces cannot provide credible evidence if transaction histories are inconsistent; and apparently impressive premises may suggest competence without establishing the quality of an intangible outcome. The marketing plan should specify a service blueprint at a level suitable for the decision, identify handoffs and exception ownership, and test the promise with actual task times. Specialist workflow engineering belongs to the operations chapters, but marketing must ensure that its service proposition is operationally representable.

13.7.3 Coordinating the mix under affordability constraints

In price-sensitive markets, reducing the nominal price is only one route to affordability. Smaller pack sizes can reduce immediate cash requirements but may increase the price per unit and packaging waste. A shared distribution point can lower logistics cost but increase customer travel. Agent networks can improve access but introduce commissions and fraud risks. Communication in accessible language can reduce mistaken purchases. Marketing evaluates these trade-offs with finance and operations rather than assuming a universal optimal product. The correct affordability measure includes quantity, quality, timing, access costs and financial risk to the buyer.

The distinction between immediate outlay and unit price can be demonstrated with a hypothetical packaged good of unchanged quality. A 200-gram pack sold for RWF 550 costs RWF 2,750 per kilogram, whereas a one-kilogram pack sold for RWF 2,300 costs RWF 2,300 per kilogram. The smaller pack reduces cash needed for one purchase but increases the unit-equivalent price by approximately 19.6%. Whether this is desirable depends on consumption patterns, preservation, cash timing and alternatives; the numbers are invented and do not describe actual Rwandan prices. The ethical obligation is to communicate quantities and unit comparisons intelligibly rather than equate a smaller nominal price with greater overall affordability.

The mix must also be examined for environmental and distributive consequences. Smaller packs may create additional packaging per kilogram; transporting supplies to a central collection point can reduce distributor expenses while imposing time and travel costs on customers. If a market selection concentrates only on easily served outlets, an enterprise may improve its accounting contribution while worsening access for some intended beneficiaries. The proper analysis makes those costs visible and explores feasible alternative designs rather than hiding them in a generic claim of customer-centricity.

13.8 BUSINESS-TO-BUSINESS AND PUBLIC/NONPROFIT MARKETING

13.8.1 Organizational demand and the buying center

Business-to-business (B2B) marketing concerns exchanges in which organizations obtain inputs, capital items, services, information or partnerships for further productive or institutional purposes. Organizational buyers often assess the total cost of ownership, service continuity, technical compatibility, supplier credibility, contractual risk and capacity to adapt. Demand can be *derived*: a packaging supplier's orders depend on downstream food sales and its customers' inventory policies. A fall in consumer sales may therefore be transmitted disproportionately through inventory reductions to upstream producers. This cannot be understood simply by surveying the preferences of the person signing the purchase order.

Organizational buying commonly involves initiators, technical users, financial approvers, procurement officials and risk or compliance gatekeepers. Their criteria may conflict: engineers prioritize reliability, finance prioritizes cash, users prioritize convenience, and procurement prioritizes defensible process and supplier eligibility. The buying center is a conceptual model of decision roles rather than a claim that every organization has identical committees. A small owner-operated shop may combine roles in one person; a public hospital may require several formally separated authorizations. Effective B2B marketing identifies the legitimate problem and decision rights of each role while respecting anti-corruption and procurement requirements.

13.8.2 Relationship exchange, key accounts and channel power

Long-term supplier relationships may reduce coordination costs, improve problem solving and support joint innovation. Morgan and Hunt's (1994) account explains why trust and commitment can improve cooperative outcomes; Day's (1994) customer-linking capability adds the organizational routines needed to retain that trust. Yet dependence can produce hold-up or exclusion. A supermarket may demand unfavorable payment terms from a small supplier, while a specialist supplier may exploit the buyer's switching costs. Relationship quality cannot be measured merely by duration or contract renewal; it also requires examining bargaining alternatives, mutual information, fulfillment and the distribution of risk.

In Rwanda, a processor seeking institutional or retail supply agreements should document unit specifications, batch traceability, lead times, returns, payment timing and complaint responsibilities before treating a signed purchase order as realized economic value. Distribution partners create access and operational risk simultaneously. Public procurement adds requirements of transparency, equal treatment and documented selection. The general marketing principle is to communicate genuine supplier capabilities and facilitate fit; the institutional procedure governing any particular tender belongs to the relevant procurement and legal framework, not a marketer's discretion.

13.8.3 Public, nonprofit and social-purpose markets

Marketing also helps public institutions, nonprofits and social enterprises understand beneficiaries, reduce participation barriers, explain legitimate services and assess whether intended users obtain value. The exchange is often indirect: a donor or government funds a service consumed by another group, and success cannot be inferred from revenue. A public health campaign may seek informed behavior rather than a sale; a university may have students, employers, funders and a wider public as distinct stakeholders. In such situations the terminology of customers requires care, because beneficiaries may possess rights that should not depend on purchasing capacity.

A coherent noncommercial marketing plan specifies the desired public or mission outcome, ethical boundaries, beneficiary involvement, service quality, delivery cost and measurement method. Counting event attendance or digital impressions is rarely a sufficient outcome measure. Organizations should ask whether access improved for the intended population, whether information was accurate and understandable, and whether the intervention displaced other valuable services. The challenge is not to convert public purpose into private profit logic, but to adapt market understanding and responsible communication to institutional objectives.

Nonprofit and public-sector marketing is especially susceptible to goal displacement if managers select measures primarily because they are easy to publicize. A university may attract more applicants with an appealing campaign while admitting students whose preparation does not match the programme. A health agency may improve message recall without changing harmful behavior; a charitable program may increase beneficiary registrations without establishing the quality of support. The distinction between outputs, intermediate outcomes and substantive mission outcomes must therefore be maintained throughout the marketing design. A funder's preference is material but cannot automatically replace the interests or rights of the people served.

Where different parties finance, authorize and use a service, marketing has to model several simultaneous accountability relationships. The same message can be informative to a donor but misleading to a beneficiary if it emphasizes aggregate success without practical eligibility conditions. The ethical solution is not to forbid persuasion in public-purpose institutions; it is to connect evidence, mission, accessible communication and the recipient's capacity to question and refuse.

13.8.4 Comparative institutional implications

Global key-account systems and customer relationship management (CRM) software can improve coordination where organizations possess stable client identifiers, formal purchasing systems and reliable databases. In African informal networks, contracts and customer identification may be less standardized, while personal relationships and mobile communications may carry greater weight. The proper response is neither to romanticize informal trust nor to require a complex multinational architecture of every SME. A basic, permission-respecting customer ledger, documented promises, reliable invoicing and an effective grievance route may deliver more useful market orientation than a high-cost technology suite (Sheth, 2011; Payne & Frow, 2005).

The relevant international lesson is consequently one of functional equivalence rather than technological resemblance. A customer-relationship system can be a sophisticated integrated platform, an accurate paper register or a permission-respecting mobile ledger. Each may support the same limited managerial purposes, such as recalling delivery promises or tracing unresolved complaints, under different cost and infrastructure conditions. The analyst should compare completeness, error rates, rights protection, staff burden and the speed with which information leads to corrective action. Purchase of software is not a suitable surrogate for these outcomes (Payne & Frow, 2005).

13.9 RELATIONSHIP AND RETENTION MARKETING

13.9.1 Acquisition, retention and the life-cycle of the customer relationship

Acquisition is the process of attracting and converting eligible new buyers; retention concerns continued purchasing or use over a defined interval; development concerns deepening mutually valuable relationships where appropriate; and recovery involves remedy following service failure. These are distinct economic processes. A firm can improve its acquisition rate while losing its established customers because service deteriorates. A retention campaign can preserve unprofitable transactions by distributing discounts to customers who would have returned anyway. Marketing therefore needs cohort-based tracking and a defensible counterfactual rather than treating repeat purchase as a universal good.

Relationship marketing does not license indefinite use of personal data or pressure on customers to remain. Genuine loyalty is compatible with reasonable exit and honest alternatives; coercive lock-in is not equivalent to trust. Retention mechanisms vary: consistent product quality, convenient access, fair handling of complaints, credible warranties and mutual adaptation may sustain choice. Incentive points can alter behavior temporarily but are vulnerable to breakage, complexity and perceived manipulation. The analytical focus should be the customer's continued value and the enterprise's incremental contribution, not the number of contacts stored in a CRM database (Morgan & Hunt, 1994; Payne & Frow, 2005).

13.9.2 Customer lifetime value: derivation, meaning and limitations

Customer lifetime value (CLV) estimates the present value of future contribution generated by an acquired customer under defined retention, margin and discount assumptions. In a simple stationary model, let m be expected contribution per active period after relevant variable servicing costs, r the conditional probability of remaining active from one period to the next, d the per-period discount rate, and A the acquisition cost paid immediately. If first contribution occurs at period 1 and retention is independent across periods, the discounted expected contribution stream is $\mathrm{CLV} = \Sigma \text{ from } t = 1 \text{ to infinity of } [m\, r\text{^}(t-1)/(1+d)\text{^}t] - A = m/(1 + d - r) - A$, provided $r < 1 + d$. The formula is pedagogical, not a universal property of customers: it assumes stable contribution, stable retention, an unbounded horizon, no contractual variation and appropriate treatment of service costs.

Consider an explicitly hypothetical monthly subscription-like service with contribution m = RWF 6,000 per active customer per month, retention probability r = 0.80, monthly discount rate d = 0.01 and immediate

acquisition cost A = RWF 12,000. Then CLV = 6,000/(1.01 − 0.80) − 12,000 = RWF 16,571.43. If retention falls to 0.70, CLV = 6,000/0.31 − 12,000 = RWF 7,354.84; if it rises to 0.90, CLV = 6,000/0.11 − 12,000 = RWF 42,545.45. These results demonstrate the model's sensitivity to retention assumptions, not a prediction about Rwandan consumers. The monthly discount rate is not inferred from a national interest rate and should be calibrated to the actual project risk and financing convention.

CLV is especially vulnerable to selection and attribution bias. Repeat customers may have lower acquisition costs and higher observed margins because of unobserved characteristics rather than a retention intervention. Historical retention is not a fixed behavioral law, particularly when economic conditions or competitive offers change. Negative externalities and customer welfare are not monetized in conventional CLV. Nor is aggregate CLV automatically shareholder value: capital needs, fixed costs, tax, risk and overlapping cohorts may remain. Gupta et al. (2004) demonstrate the financial relevance of customer valuation but also underscore why valuation methods must align with the business model and data actually observed.

The stationary CLV expression is an expected discounted contribution, not an empirical fact about any one customer. It assumes that each customer who remains active has identical expected contribution and the same constant conditional retention probability. In many product categories these conditions are unlikely: purchase frequency varies with season and income, retention changes with service reliability, and advertising or incentives affect both acquisition and servicing cost. A more appropriate cohort model can replace fixed m and r with period-specific expected contributions and survival probabilities, discounting each cohort's cash flows to the acquisition date. It should also separate uncertainty in customer counts from uncertainty in the money obtained from each purchase (Gupta et al., 2004).

The interpretation of 'lifetime' requires particular caution for household essentials. A calculated high CLV does not justify efforts to make departure difficult, obscure information or pressure financially vulnerable consumers. There is no ethical obligation for a customer to maximize a supplier's expected revenue. CLV serves a legitimate managerial purpose when it helps the enterprise avoid economically irrational promotions and preserve service quality, while consumer rights, fair exit and truthful communications remain prior constraints.

13.9.3 Complaint resolution, trust and relational accountability

Complaint handling provides a particularly revealing test of market orientation. A management team may record the number of complaints resolved while overlooking time to resolution, recurrence, severity or whether customers consider the remedy fair. A credible process identifies the problem, verifies the transaction, provides a proportionate remedy, corrects root causes and communicates outcomes without retaliation. For a distributor, damaged goods may reflect packaging, storage, transport, inaccurate promotional description or deliberate substitution. Assigning every complaint to the frontline salesperson destroys the information required to correct the system.

Trust should be measured through behavior and substantiated experience in addition to attitudes. A relationship may persist because consumers have no nearby alternative; an account may be “active” through a tiny periodic transaction; a response to a satisfaction survey may be inflated by courtesy or fear of negative consequences. Customer experience research emphasizes the combined influence of multiple contacts and functions (Lemon & Verhoef, 2016; Homburg et al., 2017). Accordingly, retention analysis should include accessibility, complaint fairness and meaningful options to leave.

13.10 MARKETING INTELLIGENCE AND ANALYTICS

13.10.1 An intelligence system rather than a dashboard

Marketing intelligence combines internally generated records, customer and competitor observations, external statistics, targeted research and managerial interpretation. Its purpose is to reduce uncertainty for a defined decision, not to accumulate a comprehensive archive of personal behavior. An evidence system distinguishes transactional facts, survey measures, derived scores, model outputs and managerial inferences. It also records coverage, missingness, denominator definitions and the time interval for each measure. The marketing department may own market questions, but operations, sales, finance, customer service and technology determine much of the underlying data quality (Wedel & Kannan, 2016).

An exemplary market dashboard separates leading process indicators (availability, qualified reach, response time), intermediate customer indicators (trial, observed repeat, complaint rate) and economic or mission outcomes (incremental contribution, accessible service, customer welfare). Each measure requires a method and owner. “Reach” should identify whether the platform reports unique people, accounts or impressions. “Conversion” must define a qualifying event and denominator. “Market share” requires a credible category definition and industry denominator. “Customer lifetime value” must specify gross or contribution margin and discount assumptions. Presenting mixed definitions as comparable Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) is a substantive measurement error, not merely a formatting defect.

13.10.2 Ratios and the interpretive limits of performance measures

Basic volume market share equals focal-firm units sold divided by total category units sold in the same market and period. Revenue share instead uses monetary sales, so the two differ when relative prices change. Customer acquisition cost (CAC) equals eligible incremental acquisition expenditures divided by the number of newly acquired qualifying customers during an appropriately aligned period. A simple retention rate equals customers present at the end of a period who were also present at its beginning, divided by the beginning cohort; new customers should not be counted in that numerator. Return on marketing investment has multiple industry definitions, so any calculation must disclose whether the numerator is attributed revenue, incremental gross profit or incremental contribution net of campaign spend (Rust et al., 2004).

For a hypothetical category with 80,000 units sold in one quarter, a firm that sold 4,800 units has 6.0% unit share. If the firm's units are priced higher than the category average, its revenue share may be above 6%, but this does not establish superior profit. If market size is estimated from a retailer sample excluding informal outlets, the denominator is incomplete and the reported share may be exaggerated. Benchmarking against previous years also requires consistent category scope, distribution coverage and seasonality. A reported 20% rise in orders from 100 to 120 is not the same as a 20-percentage-point increase in conversion rate.

13.10.3 Experimental incrementality and the attribution fallacy

A campaign's incremental effect is the difference between the outcome under exposure and the outcome that would have occurred without exposure for a comparable population. Last-click or platform-reported attribution generally allocates credit according to an accounting rule; it does not establish causation. Promotional messages may reach consumers already intending to buy, and a platform may report “conversions” that would have happened organically. Randomized holdouts, credible geographical experiments or well-designed quasi-experimental approaches can improve inference, but contamination, spillover, differential trends and changing measurement remain important threats (Wedel & Kannan, 2016; Kannan & Li, 2017).

Consider a constructed randomized pilot with 500 eligible customers assigned to a campaign and 500 to a holdout. If 95 exposed and 70 unexposed customers purchase, observed rates are 19.0% and 14.0%; the difference is 5.0 percentage points, or 25 additional purchases per 500 exposed customers. If contribution per additional purchase is RWF 4,000, estimated incremental contribution is RWF 100,000 before campaign

expenditure. With direct campaign cost of RWF 70,000, net incremental contribution is RWF 30,000. The estimate assumes random assignment was maintained, outcomes were completely observed and there was no material spillover. It does not establish statistical precision or effects beyond this pilot without interval estimation, which requires access to the underlying data and design.

Sampling uncertainty changes the interpretation of the constructed campaign. Under simple independent Bernoulli assignment and a conventional normal approximation, the standard error of the five-percentage-point purchase-rate difference is approximately sqrt[(0.19 × 0.81/500) + (0.14 × 0.86/500)] = 0.0234. An approximate 95% interval for the difference is 0.050 ± 1.96 × 0.0234, or roughly 0.004 to 0.096. Multiplying this range by 500 customers and RWF 4,000 contribution per incremental purchase gives a broad estimated incremental contribution range before campaign cost, roughly RWF 8,000 to RWF 192,000. Subtracting RWF 70,000 yields a net range that includes a loss. This is an illustrative Wald interval, not a claim of exact inference or protection against noncompliance, multiple testing or clustered responses. It demonstrates why a positive point estimate does not establish an adequately certain business case.

The next pilot should define in advance whether the decision depends on expected gain, probability of loss, a minimum contribution threshold or the value of additional information. Those objectives lead to different designs and stopping decisions. A larger sample may narrow sampling uncertainty but cannot repair biased measurement or a treatment delivered differently from the intended intervention. The decision record should distinguish randomized assignment, actual exposure, observed purchase, cash collected and returns, then make the analytical specification available for independent review (Kannan & Li, 2017).

13.10.4 Decision thresholds, data integrity and model risk

More sophisticated analytics are not necessarily better. A market-response model trained on platform users may underrepresent nonusers; an automated cluster can reflect an arbitrary choice of variables; an uplift model may overfit small samples; and a large language model may invent convincing consumer insights unsupported by transactions or research. Proper decision use demands out-of-sample validation, calibration where relevant, a documented intended use, uncertainty reporting and monitoring for changing conditions. Decisions affecting vulnerable customers require additional safeguards before the benefits of personalization are treated as sufficient justification.

Marketing analytics should disclose the costs of false positives and false negatives. Targeting an ineligible customer can waste subsidy, create harmful pressure or violate privacy; missing a suitable customer can sacrifice business and access. Decision thresholds should be tied to the cost and moral significance of error rather than chosen solely to maximize predictive accuracy. Digital systems can implement this discipline through audit logs and approval gates, but human responsibility remains necessary for complaints, disputed classifications and unanticipated harm (Huang & Rust, 2021).

Table 13.3. Minimum defensible marketing performance scorecard

Indicator	Calculation or evidence	What it can establish	Principal caveat
Unit market share	Own units / category units × 100	Relative sales volume in defined market	Category and informal denominator may be incomplete
Contribution per sale	Net receipts − attributable variable costs	Short-run economic value per transaction	Excludes fixed and some long-term costs
Acquisition cost	Incremental acquisition spend / new qualifying customers	Average cost per acquired customer	Cohort and causal attribution must match
Cohort retention	Original customers active at end / original customers	Observed repeat or continued use	Not necessarily voluntary loyalty
Complaint rate	Valid complaints / relevant fulfilled orders	Recorded service exception frequency	Silence and reporting barriers bias rates
Campaign incrementality	Outcome in treatment − outcome in valid comparator	Conditional effect of evaluated action	Requires defensible comparison and uncertainty
Customer access	Verified availability by relevant group or location	Reachability of the actual offering	Coverage does not demonstrate affordability or benefit
Claim integrity	Documented substantiation and correction record	Evidence governance over claims	Checking a file does not establish every claim is true

Note. Original authorial instrument drawing on marketing-accountability, analytical and customer-experience scholarship (Rust et al., 2004; Wedel & Kannan, 2016; Lemon & Verhoef, 2016). Metrics must be specified for the enterprise's actual context.

13.11 RESPONSIBLE MARKETING

13.11.1 Truthfulness, informed choice and the limits of persuasion

Marketing necessarily influences what people notice, know and compare. Influence is not inherently improper: accurate information can reduce search costs and allow buyers to make better choices. The moral problem arises when an enterprise knowingly exploits information asymmetry, obscures relevant limitations, creates false scarcity or encourages purchases through claims it cannot substantiate. A serious evaluation distinguishes truthful advocacy for an offering from deception; disclosed persuasion from hidden manipulation; and proportionate marketing from persistent pressure on vulnerable consumers. Profitability cannot by itself establish that a communication practice is ethically defensible.

Claims about product composition, nutrition, origin, safety, price, delivery, warranty and environmental benefit require evidence appropriate to their specificity. A general assertion that a product is “better” may be understood differently from a measurable comparative claim. Rwanda's 2026 competition and consumer protection statute expressly regulates advertising, including comparative advertising. Enterprises should obtain current jurisdiction-specific review of any proposed comparative or digitally presented offer rather than rely on templates from another country (Republic of Rwanda, 2026a). Legal analysis in Chapter 3 provides the wider institutional treatment; the marketing responsibility is to place verification inside claim design and approval.

13.11.2 Vulnerability, inclusion and customer autonomy

Potential vulnerability depends on a situation and decision, not simply membership in one demographic category. Children, people facing financial distress, consumers with limited literacy and buyers unfamiliar with digital systems can face heightened risks from complex terms, financing claims or behavioral pressure. Accessible design may involve clear Kinyarwanda wording, understandable units and pack information, reasonable complaint channels and alternatives for people unable to use smartphones. Such practices can improve market access and reduce errors, but their effects should be measured rather than assumed.

Responsible segmentation must distinguish legitimate suitability criteria from unfair exploitation. A firm may use transport cost to decide where to pilot distribution but should evaluate whether an alternative access design could serve excluded customers. Predictive targeting that identifies moments of acute financial stress for high-cost credit promotions may be commercially efficient but ethically indefensible. Consumer autonomy requires meaningful information, noncoercive options and the ability to challenge decisions that materially affect them. The same principles extend to educational, health and public-service marketing, where trust and vulnerability can be especially pronounced.

Baker et al. (2005) characterize consumer vulnerability as multidimensional and situational rather than an inherent defect attached to a demographic group. This matters for both research and practice. A technically sophisticated consumer can become vulnerable when buying an unfamiliar financial product under time pressure; a rural household may exercise substantial knowledge and agency despite limited formal retail access. Ethical marketing should therefore identify the transaction-specific conditions that impair informed control, such as unclear unit prices, asymmetric cancellation rights, inaccessible remedies or essential information presented in a language the buyer cannot readily understand.

A purely consequentialist business case may justify a practice by adding up estimated consumer and company benefits, yet overlook a deceptive process imposed on a minority. A duty-based account can insist on truthfulness and consent irrespective of the aggregate return; a fairness perspective asks whether unequal access or vulnerability imposes burdens without adequate reason. Laczniak and Murphy (2019) show why normative marketing ethics cannot be replaced with descriptive evidence of consumer attitudes. An acceptable review must consider outcomes and procedural constraints, specifying which obligations are non-negotiable and which distributional trade-offs remain contestable.

13.11.3 Privacy, cybersecurity and data governance

The availability of customer data does not establish permission for every use. Purpose limitation, lawful processing, adequate security, restricted access, retention controls and rights procedures must be built into marketing operations. In Rwanda, the Data Protection and Privacy Office identifies Law No. 058/2021 as the governing framework for personal-data protection, with the National Cyber Security Authority designated as supervisory authority (Data Protection and Privacy Office, n.d.-f; Republic of Rwanda, 2021d). Actual duties depend on the legal basis, processing operation, actor's role and any applicable implementing requirements. A digital campaign should therefore record what information is collected, why, on what lawful basis, who receives it, how long it is kept and how a person can exercise relevant rights.

Cybersecurity is also a trust and continuity issue. A compromised customer database can expose individuals to fraud and disrupt communications or payments. Marketing platforms may share data with multiple processors, complicating responsibility and cross-border transfers. Vendor contracts, data inventories, access controls, incident response and auditable deletion are not peripheral technical matters. They affect whether the enterprise can credibly promise a safe and transparent customer relationship. More data may add little analytical value while multiplying security, compliance and reputational exposure.

13.11.4 Sustainability claims, consumption and environmental trade-offs

Marketing can facilitate more resource-efficient consumption by explaining credible product attributes and reducing friction in adoption. It can also exaggerate environmental performance or promote wasteful consumption. Delmas and Burbano (2011) analyze organizational and institutional drivers of greenwashing; White et al. (2019) synthesize behavioral mechanisms through which consumers may shift toward sustainable choices. Neither literature allows an unsupported declaration that consumers always prefer green products or will pay a particular premium. The evidence base must be matched to the claim, use conditions and product lifecycle.

Consider the claim “fully sustainable packaging.” It is analytically weak unless the enterprise specifies the materials, relevant lifecycle boundary, collection infrastructure, comparative baseline and verified effects. A smaller package may lower buyer cash needs but increase packaging intensity per kilogram; a reusable container may require water and transport that change the impact calculation. Honest marketing communicates material qualifications and avoids implying that a single favorable attribute establishes overall environmental superiority. Governance requires the authority to withdraw a claim when its evidence fails, even if it generates significant sales.

13.11.5 Accountability beyond compliance

Legal compliance is a floor for legitimate marketing, not a complete ethical theory. Some techniques may be lawful yet undermine dignity, procedural fairness or transparent choice; conversely, additional consumer safeguards may be desirable even when a statute does not prescribe them in detail. A workable ethical review asks whether claims are true, relevant costs visible, data use justified, foreseeable harm proportionate, vulnerable persons protected, complaints remediable, and alternative approaches considered. The decision must identify whose interests are at stake and who has authority to stop or revise the practice.

The practical ethical test begins before an advertisement appears. The enterprise should identify what a reasonable consumer would infer from the whole message, including images, omissions, claims of scarcity and the prominence of qualifications. Technical truth can coexist with a misleading overall impression, particularly if a critical limitation is buried in small print. A reviewer then asks whether the information can be substantiated at the relevant level of specificity, whether the intended audience can understand it and whether foreseeable harm has been addressed. Where relevant rights are implicated, mitigation should be treated as a precondition of release rather than a possible use of future profits.

Accountability must continue after dissemination. New evidence can undermine an earlier substantiation, a price change can render comparative claims stale and a channel intermediary can alter what consumers actually see. The organization therefore needs a withdrawal, correction and remedy route. The relevant question is not simply whether an approval form was signed but whether evidence of error can reach a person empowered to act, including when sales incentives reward continued circulation of a disputed message (Laczniak & Murphy, 2019).

13.12 NEW MARKET DEVELOPMENTS

13.12.1 Omnichannel markets, platforms and changing access

Omnichannel marketing seeks coherent experience across physical, online, mobile and intermediary channels while acknowledging that buyers use different pathways to search, inspect, pay, receive and complain. Verhoef et al. (2015) distinguish this integrated view from simply operating several disconnected channels. A shop may advertise by messaging application, receive payment by mobile money, deliver through an agent and resolve complaints by telephone. Its central challenge is not owning every channel but preserving accurate information, authorized transactions and service accountability across them.

Platforms can lower discovery and coordination costs but may also control rankings, fees, customer information and dispute processes. A small supplier may gain reach while becoming dependent on a marketplace's terms. Platform exposure is not equivalent to profitable demand. Enterprises should calculate fees, return rates, working-capital cycles and data dependence before concluding that digital sales are automatically superior to wholesale or community-agent distribution. These trade-offs are particularly important when consumers combine online search with offline inspection or require cash-compatible options (Kannan & Li, 2017).

13.12.2 AI-supported segmentation, personalization and content production

AI systems can assist in classifying product feedback, forecasting demand, testing communication variants, summarizing records or proposing draft materials. Davenport et al. (2020) and Huang and Rust (2021) develop analytical frameworks for understanding prospective AI roles in marketing. The existence of a model capability is not proof of improved business outcomes. In particular, language models can produce fluent but false product specifications, and predictive tools may learn historical discrimination or infrastructure-related exclusion as if these were legitimate indicators of customer worth.

Responsible implementation requires an appropriate problem definition, lawful data access, independent output checks, clear human authority, evaluation against simpler alternatives and a stopping rule when material error occurs. The firm's account of AI benefits should distinguish actual measured improvements from vendor claims and hypothetical potential. For a small Rwandan enterprise with inconsistent stock records, correcting transaction data and training employees may produce greater value than installing a complex personalization engine. The principle is technological proportionality: the tool's sophistication should follow the economic and institutional problem, not determine it.

AI-generated recommendations raise two different evidence questions. Predictive validity asks whether a model reliably forecasts a defined outcome in a relevant population; intervention validity asks whether using its recommendation changes that outcome compared with a feasible alternative. A classifier can predict likely purchases while providing no incremental benefit if its selected customers would buy anyway. A content generator can produce well-written messages while increasing the rate of unsupported claims. Adoption claims should accordingly include comparison groups, a preselected outcome and error costs, not only faster content production or higher reported click-through rates (Davenport et al., 2020; Huang & Rust, 2021).

Data provenance is equally consequential. An enterprise can lawfully possess a historical customer record while lacking justification to repurpose it for sensitive predictions or automated profiling. Small or irregular datasets may amplify the omission of customers who buy offline, transact through family accounts or use shared devices. Where models are difficult to interpret, controls need to define who approves material claims, which outputs require independent verification, how suspected discrimination is investigated and when the system will be withdrawn. Technological competence does not extinguish the duty to explain a decision and remedy its effects.

13.12.3 Cross-border customer discovery and regional integration

Digital communication and regional trade arrangements may broaden the visible market for African enterprises, but market visibility is only one step in internationalization. Cross-border offers require product eligibility, customs and other rules, payment and currency procedures, channel partners, consumer redress, logistics and adaptation to language and market expectations. The African Continental Free Trade Area (AfCFTA) establishes an important regional integration agenda, yet no agreement by itself guarantees that a particular product has frictionless access or that national consumer and data protections disappear. A responsible market-entry model incorporates actual rules and costs relevant to the transaction, with specialist treatment of trade in Chapter 30.

The appropriate comparison is not digital versus nondigital, but alternative configurations of search, trust, access and fulfillment. The same enterprise may use regional digital discovery for institutional buyers while relying on local agents for household distribution. A successful international model is transferable to Rwanda only if its

enabling resources, customer practices, technical systems and institutional protections exist or can be established at acceptable cost.

13.12.4 Enduring principles under technological change

Market forms will continue to evolve, but several principles remain comparatively durable: define the customer problem precisely; distinguish willingness from ability to buy; maintain credible information and fulfillment; recognize alternatives and bargaining conditions; compare incremental benefits with full costs; preserve rights and fair remedy; and revise strategy as evidence changes. No plausible technological development eliminates these obligations. Digital tools can accelerate mistakes as readily as learning when data, incentives and decision rights are poorly designed.

These principles should not be confused with institutional stasis. AI systems may change how market hypotheses are generated, platforms may alter bargaining power, and regional integration may change feasible routes to customers. What persists is the obligation to distinguish observation from inference and promise from performance. A model-generated recommendation remains a proposal to act; its legitimacy depends on suitable evidence, cost, authorized purpose and correction mechanisms. Likewise, access to a much larger apparent market does not eliminate the constraint of actual fulfilment, suitable payment terms or enforceable rights.

For the manager, technological readiness is thus partly a question of institutional self-restraint. Before automating a customer-facing decision, an enterprise should know which decision the system will make, what errors would cause unacceptable harm, how the outcome is checked against a simpler approach and who can suspend its operation. Mature marketing is evidenced less by adoption of the newest tool than by the capacity to improve customer outcomes without losing truthfulness, financial discipline or control over the consequences of scale.

13.13 RWANDA-BASED APPLICATION AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON

13.13.1 What Rwanda's official evidence does and does not establish

The Fifth Rwanda Population and Housing Census counted 13,246,394 residents in 2022, including 3,701,245 urban residents (27.9%) and 9,545,149 rural residents (72.1%). The City of Kigali contained 1,745,555 residents, of whom 86.9% were classified as urban. These are resident-population classifications under the census methodology, not numbers of customers willing to buy a particular product (NISR, 2025d). They establish why an urban-only marketing frame risks overlooking a substantial share of the national population and why “Kigali” should not be assumed synonymous with all urban Rwanda.

The 2023/24 EICV7 evidence reports national poverty of 27.4% under its updated methodology and substantial variation across locations. Its multidimensional poverty measure records 14.8% incidence in urban areas and 36.7% in rural areas, demonstrating meaningful structural differences in measured deprivation without assigning a fixed purchasing preference to any resident (NISR, 2025a, 2025b). The 2024 FinScope survey found that approximately 86% of adults had used mobile-money services and 77% had a registered wallet in their name, but neither figure describes e-commerce purchasing frequency or ability to transact at a particular shop (NISR, 2024). The 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey estimated 278,060 enterprises and reported an informality rate of at least 87% within its business survey frame (NISR, 2026e). The conjunction of extensive informal activity and digital financial reach makes mixed-channel strategies worth investigating, not empirically proven.

Table 13.4. Rwanda market-context evidence and disciplined marketing interpretation

Indicator and period	Official result	Possible strategic relevance	Inference not permitted
2022 census population	13,246,394 total; 27.9% urban, 72.1% rural	Test urban and nonurban channel requirements	Neither group is equivalent to product demand
2023/24 EICV7 multidimensional poverty	14.8% urban; 36.7% rural	Investigate affordability and accessibility differences	Do not assume every rural buyer is poor
2024 FinScope	About 86% had used mobile money; 77% registered wallet	Consider payment convenience and agent partnerships	Not an online shopping adoption rate
2024 IBES	278,060 enterprises; at least 87% informal	Include informal rivals and distribution partners in mapping	Not the number of outlets selling this product

Note. 2022 population data: NISR (2025d); EICV7: NISR (2025a, 2025b); FinScope: NISR (2024); IBES: NISR (2026e). Each row has a different statistical population and measurement frame; figures cannot be multiplied together to obtain a defensible customer count.

13.13.2 Documented context and a hypothetical packaged-food entry decision

The application concerns an invented enterprise, **Umuseke Foods**, planning a fortified shelf-stable porridge product for adult household and selected institutional use. Its name, price, costs, capacities, segments, conversions and sales assumptions are entirely constructed for instruction. It is not presented as an actual Rwandan manufacturer and its product claims are not asserted to meet any regulatory standard. The policy question is whether the company should prioritize a Kigali retail pilot, a nonurban agent-based pilot or a simultaneous rollout. Official sources are used only to frame relevant questions about geography, affordability, payment access and the character of the business landscape.

The two hypothetical segments are deliberately specified by use and access constraints rather than by a categorical claim about people. Segment U includes eligible customers reachable through participating urban shops and workplace retail points, with repeat purchasing subject to shelf availability. Segment N includes eligible customers reachable through participating nonurban shops, community agents or weekly aggregation points. An urban route may have higher selling velocity but face shelf fees and competitor density; a nonurban route may require longer travel and more collection coordination but face unmet convenience needs. Neither result can be inferred from national poverty or census tables; field validation must establish them before investment.

13.13.3 A transparent segmentation–targeting–positioning canvas

The enterprise's position should remain a hypothesis until customer evidence is collected. Proposed positioning for Segment U is “a clearly labelled, reliable breakfast option available on the regular shopping route,” conditional on tested quality and actual availability. For Segment N it is “a dependable, fairly priced pack available through an accessible replenishment point,” conditional on the full cost of reaching the point. These are not claims that the product is objectively better or that customers have endorsed its benefits. The differentiated features are access and replenishment reliability, not unverifiable social stereotypes.

Table 13.5. STP canvas for the constructed Rwanda market-entry case

Decision field	Urban pilot (U)	Nonurban pilot (N)	Evidence needed before scale
Problem and occasion	Convenient, dependable breakfast purchase	Dependable local access and manageable cash outlay	Buyer/use interviews, actual observed trial
Proposed channel	Selected shops and workplace retail	Partner shops and aggregation agents	Outlet audit, delivery timing, payment feasibility
Hypothesized differentiator	Reliable shelf availability and clear labelling	Access reliability and understandable pack economics	Customer tests against substitutes
Operational risk	Shelf fees and rivalry	Route density and agent accountability	Documented cost-to-serve and quality controls
Ethical safeguard	Truthful claims and visible total price	No misleading unit-price or accessibility claims	Independent label and claim review
Provisional decision	Staged trial	Smaller parallel validation	Comparative incremental contribution and complaints

Note. Original authorial STP instrument. All enterprise-level assumptions are hypothetical; national evidence provides contextual background only.

13.13.4 Comparative international lessons and limits of transfer

An international comparator is the extensive empirical literature on market orientation and organizational capability, not a fabricated foreign-company success narrative. Narver and Slater's (1990) business-unit evidence indicates that customer and competitor orientation can be associated with profitability in the sampled firms; Kirca et al.'s (2005) meta-analysis supports a broader positive association while identifying contextual and methodological variation. Research on omnichannel retailing highlights the coordination of online and offline touchpoints, and on customer experience demonstrates the role of multiple functions (Verhoef et al., 2015; Lemon & Verhoef, 2016). These findings justify structured inquiry into Rwandan settings but do not yield transferable coefficients for local adoption, contribution or retention.

The relevant international comparison concerns mechanisms. Market sensing is needed both in a multinational retailer and in a Rwandan community shop, but the data-generating process can differ substantially. A multinational may possess integrated loyalty databases; a small Rwandan enterprise may rely on invoices, agent records, mobile transactions and direct customer dialogue. Formal programmatic personalization might improve relevance in one setting and exclude non-digital buyers in another. What travels is the need to define the decision, test evidence and coordinate delivery. The operational architecture must be locally established and evaluated rather than copied.

A documented distribution comparison is Hindustan Unilever's Project Shakti in India. The company describes a rural sales and training network involving women entrepreneurs, combining established distribution with direct village-level selling (Hindustan Unilever Limited, n.d.). This provides evidence of an organizational arrangement and its self-reported purposes, not independent proof of empowerment or its net economic effects. Hopkinson and Aman (2017) critically analyze the program's marketing discourse, arguing that depictions of entrepreneurship and empowerment can obscure commercial arrangements and reproduce forms of power. Reading the corporate account alongside the critical study demonstrates why a market-access initiative must be assessed by distribution performance, participant income and risk, autonomy, and the terms on which intermediaries operate.

Project Shakti is not a ready-made prescription for a Rwandan food producer. India's population density, retail networks, company scale, product portfolio and institutional history differ from Rwanda's, and the observed

source evidence concerns a large incumbent rather than a startup. Its transferable question is narrower: could trusted community agents lower discovery and replenishment barriers without imposing uncompensated stockholding, excessive travel, misrepresentation or exclusive dependency? Umuseke Foods could compare agent-operated and shop-operated pilots while recording actual cash earnings, stock losses, customer accessibility and dispute resolution. A claim of social benefit would require independently obtained evidence from affected participants, not a count of recruits or an attractive institutional narrative.

13.14 REPRODUCIBLE MARKET-ENTRY DECISION AND CROSS-FUNCTIONAL ECONOMICS

13.14.1 Market-size assumptions, selling units and operating contribution

The following quarterly model uses constructed values to make the decision auditable. It assumes 8,000 eligible prospects can be reached in Segment U and 5,000 in Segment N through identified pilot channels; these are hypothetical prospect counts, not estimates derived by multiplying census figures. Trial conversion is assumed at 12% in U and 8% in N. Every converted buyer is assumed to purchase three packs within the quarter, each purchased pack being counted once. Thus the modeled order volume is 8,000 × 0.12 × 3 = 2,880 packs in U and 5,000 × 0.08 × 3 = 1,200 packs in N, or 4,080 packs total. The transaction assumptions require subsequent empirical testing of distinct customers, repurchase and actual availability.

Suppose net receipts per pack after expected retailer concessions are RWF 2,500 in U and RWF 2,300 in N. Variable production and packaging costs are RWF 1,450 per pack in both segments, and additional segment-specific variable fulfillment costs are RWF 250 and RWF 350 respectively. Contribution is therefore RWF 800 per U pack and RWF 500 per N pack. Quarterly fixed pilot costs, including segment-specific market activation and distribution setup not already in variable costs, are assumed to be RWF 1,500,000 for U and RWF 450,000 for N, with a shared quarterly pilot oversight cost of RWF 300,000 if both channels operate. These figures are teaching assumptions, not quotations from suppliers or market-price observations.

Table 13.6. Constructed quarterly urban–nonurban market-entry model (RWF)

Variable	Urban U	Nonurban N	Total / interpretation
Reachable eligible prospects	8,000	5,000	Hypothetical accessible prospect bases
Trial conversion rate	12%	8%	Unvalidated assumptions
New purchasing customers	960	400	1,360 total
Packs per purchasing customer	3	3	Assumed within quarter
Packs sold	2,880	1,200	4,080 total
Net receipt / pack	2,500	2,300	RWF
Production plus packaging / pack	1,450	1,450	RWF
Segment-specific fulfillment / pack	250	350	RWF
Unit contribution	800	500	RWF
Total variable contribution	2,304,000	600,000	2,904,000 total
Fixed segment pilot expense	1,500,000	450,000	1,950,000 total
Segment pilot surplus before shared cost	804,000	150,000	954,000 combined
Shared pilot oversight	—	—	300,000
Combined modeled surplus	—	—	654,000 before financing, tax and other overhead

Note. Every input is fictional and included solely for teaching. Arithmetic assumes all modeled packs are sold and collected without spoilage or returns; actual managerial use would require allowance for these risks, additional overhead, capital and financing charges.

13.14.2 Decision logic, break-even and working-capital feasibility

The unit contribution approach shows why a high sales-volume objective can be misleading. The U pilot requires 1,500,000/800 = 1,875 packs to cover its segment-specific fixed pilot expenditure; N requires 450,000/500 = 900 packs. These break-even counts exclude shared overhead and assume the stated average contribution remains stable. If the joint pilot bears the RWF 300,000 shared cost, its modeled surplus is RWF 654,000; that is not corporate net profit because general administration, depreciation, interest, taxes, wastage and other omitted costs could change the conclusion. A complete investment decision must reconcile the pilot analysis with the enterprise's actual accounting and liquidity.

Suppose quarterly available working capital for production is RWF 5,000,000 and all 4,080 packs must be manufactured before customer receipts arrive. At RWF 1,450 each, the modeled upfront production and packaging outlay is RWF 5,916,000, creating a RWF 916,000 funding gap before transport and other obligations. This gap does not disappear because the contribution calculation is favorable. The enterprise could phase production, secure verified customer deposits, negotiate reliable supplier credit, shorten the order cycle or reduce the trial scale. These measures have costs and operational consequences and should be assessed by

finance and operations. The book's later chapters on operations, procurement, supply chains and financial management provide the full methods.

The economics of simultaneous rollout also depend on how the shared expense behaves under alternative scale choices. The RWF 300,000 oversight amount is stated to apply when both channels operate; it is not a universal charge that should be attributed in full to either standalone pilot. Under the displayed assumptions, the U-only segment surplus is RWF 804,000 before any standalone oversight cost; N-only produces RWF 150,000 before such cost. Both-channel surplus equals RWF 654,000 because the RWF 300,000 joint oversight is then incurred. Comparison would be incomplete if a U-only option required an additional unreported management cost or if entering N reduced the U route's contribution. A decision table should keep costs genuinely incremental to each alternative rather than allocate shared overhead simply to make segment ratios look comparable.

A second problem is that contribution and cash flow occur on different calendars. All-in production-before-receipt is a deliberately conservative timing assumption, not a prediction that no receipts will occur during the quarter. If batches can be made and sold sequentially, the peak working-capital requirement may be lower, but capacity, minimum order quantities, receivables and delivery schedules then become binding. The responsible recommendation is to model the maximum cumulative net cash outflow under feasible batch schedules, not to equate gross manufacturing expenditure with permanent financing need.

13.14.3 Sensitivity, demand uncertainty and a staged recommendation

The base result is sensitive to conversion assumptions that have not been observed. If U conversion falls from 12% to 10%, the model produces 800 customers, 2,400 packs and U segment surplus of RWF 420,000. If N conversion falls from 8% to 6.4%, it produces 320 customers, 960 packs and N surplus of RWF 30,000. After the same RWF 300,000 shared cost, the joint surplus becomes RWF 150,000. Under a more adverse illustrative case of 8% U conversion and 6% N conversion, the segments produce 1,920 and 900 packs, their segment surpluses become RWF 36,000 and zero, and the joint pilot loses RWF 264,000 before omitted overhead. These scenarios are not assigned probabilities because no defensible empirical distribution has been established.

The appropriate provisional recommendation is a staged, capacity- and cash-constrained test rather than immediate full rollout. Start with a well-controlled U pilot and a smaller N validation using representative local outlets and a clearly bounded inventory commitment. Predefine acceptable contribution, stockout, return, complaint, delivery and cash-conversion thresholds. Use comparable product conditions and record differences in channel practice before interpreting observed purchases as a location effect. Scale only where independent customer evidence and operating records jointly support the case. An urban-first sequence is a liquidity and learning decision under the supplied assumptions, not a claim that nonurban customers are less valuable or that nonurban markets should be abandoned.

13.14.4 Replication protocol for the illustrative calculation

A reader can independently reproduce the model using the following definitions. For each segment s, purchasing customers C_s = eligible reachable prospects E_s × assumed conversion q_s. Units $Q_s = C_s \times$ assumed packs per buyer b_s. Unit contribution u_s = net unit receipts p_s − variable production cost v_s − variable fulfillment cost f_s. Segment surplus $S_s = Q_s \times u_s$ − segment fixed pilot expense F_s. Joint pilot surplus $S = \Sigma\, S_s$ − shared expense G. The working-capital requirement for a fully prepaid manufacturing batch is $W = \Sigma(Q_s \times v_s)$. All quantities, assumptions and rounding conventions are stated in Table 13.6; the model has no estimated coefficients, survey respondents or concealed observations.

For reproducibility, the source of each hypothetical input should be recorded as 'assumed for instruction', not as an external observation. A real application would replace such entries with dated outlet records, verified price and cost schedules, a documented sampling frame for eligible prospects and reconciled receipts. Conversion should be defined as unique new purchasing customers divided by uniquely reachable prospects within the observation window, while units per buyer should be calculated from completed, nonreturned transactions.

Where the same household can buy through both channels, customer deduplication becomes necessary before the two segment counts are summed.

The calculated surplus is a deterministic accounting consequence of the assumed inputs. It is not a confidence interval, expected return or evidence that either market entry will succeed. A financially defensible decision would additionally estimate the peak cash deficit by period, product loss rates, uncertainty in both demand and costs, and the value of staging. These distinctions clarify how the illustrative model can be audited without being misrepresented as empirical research.

13.15 INTEGRATIVE DISCUSSION, RESEARCH AGENDA AND CONCLUSION

13.15.1 The enterprise-wide character of market orientation

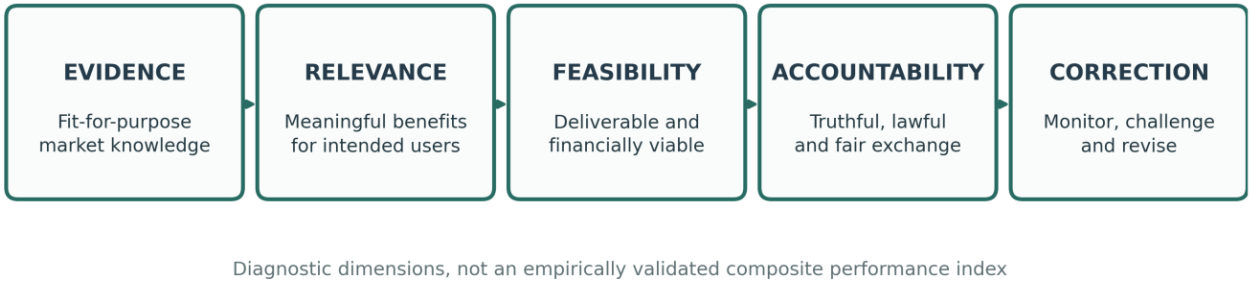
The preceding analysis supports a distinction between marketing *activity* and market orientation *capability*. Advertising, customer acquisition and branding may create immediate market visibility; they do not establish that an enterprise understands the market or can keep its promises. Market orientation links inquiry with operational response. Strategy specifies which problems deserve attention and which opportunities will be declined. Operations determines whether offerings can be produced and delivered at acceptable quality. Procurement and logistics shape supply availability and cost-to-serve. Finance establishes whether customer value can be sustained without a liquidity crisis. Human-resource systems create customer-facing competence, while governance and technology constrain data use and claims. Marketing thus provides a customer- and market-facing integrative perspective rather than a substitute for other functions.

The underlying relationships are complementary but not automatically positive. Better marketing intelligence can lead to more accurate targeting yet intensify discrimination if the firm optimizes on biased historical purchase records. Rapid acquisition can improve scale yet overwhelm service capacity. High retention can reflect trust or inadequate alternatives. A strong brand can convey reliable quality or disguise unverified claims. The explanatory task is to specify when, for whom and through which decisions a marketing capability improves substantive outcomes, not merely to describe desirable attributes.

13.15.2 An accountable market-orientation synthesis

This chapter proposes a five-part analytical test for a market-facing decision: **evidence adequacy**, whether the enterprise has warranted information about a defined problem; **customer relevance**, whether the proposed benefit matters to the affected users; **delivery feasibility**, whether operational and financial arrangements can realize the promise; **accountable exchange**, whether communication, payment, data and remedies are lawful and ethically defensible; and **adaptive correction**, whether feedback can change decisions before harm or waste persists. The five components are conceptual dimensions, not a validated index or a causal production function. Their value is diagnostic: a failure in one dimension identifies what additional evidence or control is needed before a particular action proceeds.

Figure 13.2. Accountable market orientation: A five-dimension decision diagnostic



Note. Original conceptual framework developed for teaching; relationships are proposed, not empirically validated.

The synthesis also exposes a tension between market responsiveness and normative independence. An enterprise that reflexively follows every observed preference can become captive to short-term demand or harmful consumption; one that disregards buyers in the name of managerial expertise can become irrelevant and paternalistic. The stronger position is reflective responsiveness: listening carefully, explaining trade-offs, declining unjustifiable practices and maintaining contestable decisions. This interpretation preserves the distinctive contribution of market orientation while recognizing the rights and interests of workers, suppliers, communities and future consumers.

The proposed dimensions must be understood in relation to competing scholarship. Evidence adequacy extends the intelligence-generation requirement of Kohli and Jaworski (1990), but adds attention to coverage and inference. Customer relevance reflects Woodruff's (1997) context-dependent view of value; delivery feasibility draws on Day's (1994) capabilities and Morgan's (2012) mediating resource logic. Accountable exchange responds to the normative inadequacy of treating all observed purchases as equivalent to welfare, while adaptive correction makes the response process contestable over time. The framework therefore reorganizes established ideas around a decision-audit question; it is not presented as a novel discovery or independently calibrated performance score.

Its possible empirical value lies in diagnostic disagreement. A firm may possess reliable customer evidence but lack financially feasible access; another may deliver a good product while collecting data without sufficient justification. If trained evaluators can distinguish those conditions consistently and the distinctions predict meaningful outcomes beyond an ordinary market-orientation scale, further research could support the framework's utility. Conversely, if the dimensions prove redundant or insensitive to local context, they should be revised or abandoned. Openness to refutation is a condition of scholarly value, not a weakness to conceal.

13.15.3 Research gaps and testable propositions

The literature on market orientation provides substantial conceptual and empirical foundations, but its findings cannot simply be transported to settings where informal enterprise, constrained liquidity, variable infrastructure and hybrid digital–physical exchange are prominent. First, the measurement of market orientation in informal and microenterprises needs validation: intelligence routines may be conversational rather than bureaucratically recorded. Second, the relationship between digital payment access and commercially meaningful online or omnichannel demand should be measured at a specific product-market level rather than assumed from national financial-inclusion rates. Third, retention models should distinguish voluntary loyalty from constrained choice, especially in areas with few providers. Fourth, sustainable marketing needs joint assessment of environmental effects, affordability and the real ability of customers to return or dispose of materials.

These gaps motivate falsifiable propositions. **P1:** At comparable resource levels, the association between customer intelligence and market performance will be stronger where cross-functional response authority is clearly assigned. **P2:** In constrained-access markets, the effect of physical availability on repeat purchasing will vary by travel and fulfillment costs after controlling for price and product characteristics. **P3:** The performance advantage of digital personalization will weaken or reverse where data coverage excludes a substantial part of the intended customer population. **P4:** Customer retention will predict customer welfare more reliably when complaint resolution and feasible switching alternatives are included in the measurement model. **P5:** Marketing investments designed with explicit operational capacity and liquidity checks will have lower rates of commercially damaging rollout than investments selected from attributed sales metrics alone. Each proposition requires an independently specified population, valid measures, appropriate comparison and attention to reverse causality, selection and time-varying confounding.

An empirical agenda for Rwanda could combine longitudinal outlet panels, properly sampled buyer research and administrative sales records under lawful data arrangements. Researchers should preregister hypotheses where feasible, define the market and counterfactual clearly, account for geographic clustering and seasonal conditions, and separate causal tests from descriptive mapping. Comparing urban and nonurban results requires measuring service exposure and market access, not merely residence. The proposed framework should be revised if evidence supports alternative mechanisms; its purpose is to organize questions, not to preordain conclusions.

13.15.4 Chapter synthesis and conclusion

The chapter has argued that the primary object of marketing is not persuasion but the organization of defensible exchanges and market-facing capabilities. An enterprise needs to discover what customers genuinely value while recognizing that observed purchasing behavior reflects unequal information and feasible alternatives. Segmentation and positioning are therefore hypotheses about meaningful differences, not self-validating labels. Their economic worth depends on the organization’s ability to deliver the corresponding promise, coordinate the marketing mix, and learn from discrepancies between advertised and experienced value. Market orientation becomes substantive when intelligence has an authorized route into decisions, and when those decisions remain open to correction.

Marketing performance must also be evaluated beyond the initial transaction. Retention can express continued customer benefit or constrained choice, campaign attribution can misrepresent causal gain, and apparently promising expansion can consume scarce liquidity before revenue arrives. Truthful claims, proportionate data use, fair customer remedy and credible environmental statements are not optional complements to an otherwise complete business case. The Rwandan illustration establishes why demographic, poverty, financial-inclusion and enterprise statistics are indispensable contextual sources but not direct estimates of category demand. The defensible conclusion is a conditional one: marketing creates durable enterprise value when market learning, operational feasibility, financial discipline and justified treatment of affected people remain mutually accountable. Chapter 14 develops the consumer and research processes needed to investigate those claims with greater methodological specificity.

13.16 GLOSSARY, ASSESSMENT AND EDUCATOR GUIDANCE

13.16.1 Key terminology

Term Meaning in this chapter

Acquisition cost Eligible incremental customer-acquisition expenditure divided by newly acquired qualifying customers under an explicit cohort definition.

Addressable market Defined product-market opportunity conditional on eligibility, category boundaries, feasible reach and the relevant period.

Attribution A rule assigning observed outcomes to contacts or channels, which need not estimate a causal effect.

Buying center Multiple actors and decision rights involved in organizational procurement.

Customer lifetime value Discounted expected customer contribution across the specified relationship horizon, net of stated acquisition and other included costs.

Customer value Benefits experienced or anticipated in a particular use context relative to monetary and nonmonetary sacrifices.

Differentiation A meaningful and credible feature or benefit distinguishable from relevant alternatives.

Exchange A transfer or reciprocal provision of value, resources or commitments among parties.

Incrementality An outcome difference attributable to an intervention against a defensible counterfactual.

Market orientation Organizational generation, dissemination, interpretation and coordinated response to market intelligence.

Market share Own volume or sales revenue divided by the corresponding defined market total in the same period.

Omnichannel Integration of customer experiences and operations across physical, mobile and digital access points.

Positioning The intended comparative meaning of an offering for a specified audience and use occasion.

Retention Continued purchasing or use by a defined initial cohort over a stated period.

Segmentation Analysis of decision-relevant differences among prospective or existing buyers.

Service-dominant logic Marketing perspective emphasizing applied competencies, resource integration and value in use.

STP The linked decisions of segmentation, targeting and positioning.

Targeting Selection and prioritization of segments for a feasible and justified enterprise response.

Total cost-to-serve Relevant fulfillment, servicing, distribution and relationship costs associated with an exchange or segment.

Value proposition Testable account of benefits to a defined customer and the capability that makes the claim credible.

13.16.2 Foundational and analytical questions

Question 1 (LO1–LO2). Using one real or defensibly constructed enterprise transaction, distinguish marketing from selling, advertising, market research and market orientation. Explain why confusing these functions can produce incompatible decision rights and misleading performance claims.

Question 2 (LO2). Critically compare the behavioral conceptualization of Kohli and Jaworski with the cultural account of Narver and Slater. Specify what evidence would allow an investigator to distinguish the two explanations in an enterprise that collects customer feedback but fails to respond.

Question 3 (LO3). Define the relevant market for a Rwandan institution purchasing packaged breakfast foods. Discuss substitutes, the separation of users and purchasers, relevant procurement requirements and at least two plausible alternative market boundaries.

Question 4 (LO4). Evaluate a proposed demographic segment using actionable variation, sampling validity, access, feasible contribution and the possibility of exclusion. Explain how a statistically predictive feature may remain ethically unacceptable as a targeting criterion.

Question 5 (LO5). Demonstrate how a campaign built on truthful claims can nevertheless damage a firm financially when it creates demand beyond fulfillment capacity or the available working-capital cycle. Propose an operational control that prevents the failure.

Question 6 (LO7–LO8). Explain why the proportion of adults who use mobile money cannot be directly substituted for an online retail conversion rate. State which additional customer, channel, transaction and access observations would be needed before a defensible estimate could be made.

13.16.3 Applied quantitative exercises

Exercise A (LO3, LO6). In a hypothetical quarter, a firm sells 7,200 units and a consistent category panel records 90,000 units. Calculate the firm's unit share and explain how omission of informal retail outlets could affect the estimate. If a pilot costs RWF 240,000 and leads to 60 incremental purchases with contribution of RWF 5,000 each, calculate its net incremental contribution before omitted overhead.

Exercise B (LO6). Calculate stationary-model CLV for a monthly contribution of RWF 7,500, conditional monthly retention of 0.75, monthly discount rate of 0.015 and immediate acquisition cost of RWF 10,000. Recalculate for retention of 0.65, interpret the sensitivity, and identify at least four assumptions that would need to be checked with a real customer cohort.

Exercise C (LO4–LO6). Recalculate the constructed market-entry model in Table 13.6 if nonurban fulfillment cost increases by RWF 120 per pack and urban trial conversion falls to 9%. Distinguish the model's contribution result from peak working-capital requirements and the independent obligation to substantiate product claims.

13.16.4 Advanced case and capstone assessment

Case challenge (LO3–LO8): Prepare a 2,500–3,500-word board memorandum for the fictional Umuseke Foods enterprise choosing a phased urban/nonurban market-entry strategy. The memo must define the customer problem and relevant substitutes, provide a defensible STP canvas, establish consistent mix choices, reproduce and stress-test at least two financial indicators, assess working capital, justify the minimum pilot evidence required, specify truthful claims and privacy safeguards, and establish stop-or-scale thresholds. Include a counterargument that could reverse the recommendation and identify which new evidence would be necessary. Treat all company figures as hypothetical and all official statistics according to their actual statistical units.

Independent research assignment (LO2, LO7, LO8): Critically compare a published market-orientation empirical study with Rwanda's enterprise and household statistical context. Specify theoretical mechanism, research design, outcome measure, main inference limit, external-validity considerations and an ethically credible empirical design for local testing. Do not represent proposed primary research as already conducted; obtain the required permissions and ethical approvals before collecting individual-level data.

13.16.5 Educator assessment guidance and indicative answers

Question 1 should demonstrate clear conceptual separation and interfunctional consequences, not a memorized dictionary sequence. Questions 2 and 4 require rival explanations and limitations, not endorsement of a preferred theory. Question 6 requires the distinction between financial-tool use and e-commerce purchasing. For Exercise A, market share is 7,200/90,000 = **8.0%**, and net incremental contribution is 60 × 5,000 − 240,000 = **RWF 60,000**, before omitted costs; incomplete market coverage may bias the share upward. For Exercise B, CLV is 7,500/(1.015 − 0.75) − 10,000 = **RWF 18,301.89** and at 0.65 retention it is 7,500/(1.015 − 0.65) − 10,000 = **RWF 10,547.95**. For Exercise C, N contribution falls from RWF 500 to RWF 380 and its modeled segment surplus becomes 1,200 × 380 − 450,000 = **RWF 6,000**; with U conversion of 9%, U volume is 2,160 and U surplus is RWF 228,000. Net joint pilot surplus becomes **−RWF 66,000** after shared cost, before financing and other overhead.

For the capstone, an appropriate rubric assigns 20% to sound market and theoretical diagnosis, 20% to segmentation and comparative strategic reasoning, 20% to reproducible economics and sensitivity, 15% to operational and interfunctional feasibility, 15% to ethical and legal safeguards, and 10% to clarity, evidence and reference accuracy. Strong answers distinguish population data from market demand, discuss alternatives, and specify observable triggers; weak answers simply maximize projected sales or infer local customer behavior directly from national averages. An educator should accept different recommendations where assumptions, opportunity costs and ethical constraints are explicit and internally consistent.

13.16.6 Suggested further reading

For market orientation and its limitations, begin with Kohli and Jaworski (1990), Narver and Slater (1990), Day (1994), and Kirca et al. (2005). To interrogate exchange and relational value, compare Bagozzi (1975), Morgan and Hunt (1994), and Vargo and Lusch (2004). For contemporary measurement and technological change, read Rust et al. (2004), Wedel and Kannan (2016), Kannan and Li (2017), and Huang and Rust (2021). Pair these with NISR's census, EICV7, FinScope and IBES publications so that local market claims remain tied to the proper population and year.

CHAPTER 14

Consumer Behaviour, Market Research, and Customer Intelligence

ABSTRACT

The presence of customer data does not establish that an enterprise understands its customers. Purchases are shaped by constrained choice, habits, identity, social relations, institutions, information quality, channel architecture and the experience that follows acquisition; research about these processes is itself vulnerable to selection, measurement, causal and ethical errors. This chapter develops a critical account of consumer behaviour, market research and customer intelligence as complementary but nonidentical activities. A purposive secondary-source synthesis assesses consumer decision models, the theory of planned behaviour, prospect theory, social influence, innovation diffusion, survey methodology, qualitative inquiry, experimentation and customer-value analytics. Twelve approved sections examine purchasing contexts, psychological and sociocultural influences, the customer journey, digital environments, research design, qualitative and quantitative methods, CRM, retention economics, consumer protection and AI-mediated research. Official evidence from Rwanda's 2024 FinScope survey is interpreted alongside Kenya's 2024 FinAccess findings without treating financial inclusion as online purchasing prevalence. Original contributions include an evidence-linked customer-journey model, a source-to-decision research protocol, metric definitions, an auditable cohort-retention example, and a Rwanda-based secondary-data research design for an illustrative service enterprise. The governing argument is that defensible customer intelligence requires behavioural explanation, fit-for-purpose evidence, accountable data governance and cross-functional action. It must remain open to correction, represent noncustomers and vulnerable consumers fairly, and distinguish observed relationships from experimentally identified effects. The proposed synthesis is conceptual and pedagogical, not a newly validated causal model.

Keywords: consumer behaviour; decision journeys; behavioural economics; social influence; market research; survey validity; customer relationship management; cohort retention; customer lifetime value; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

On completing this chapter, readers should be able to (LO1) distinguish consumer, household, organizational and institutional purchasing and identify their decision roles; (LO2) critically evaluate psychological, social, cultural and digital explanations of consumer decisions, including their limitations; (LO3) map an evidence-informed customer journey with its cross-functional dependencies; (LO4) formulate a feasible research question, suitable secondary-source strategy and explicit inference limits; (LO5) evaluate qualitative, survey, observational and experimental research for validity, sampling, bias and ethics; (LO6) design a proportionate first-party customer-information and CRM governance system; (LO7) calculate, interpret and challenge satisfaction, retention, churn and customer-lifetime-value measures using disclosed assumptions; and (LO8) defend an ethically responsible evidence-to-action plan for a Rwandan service provider with an international comparator.

The intellectual sequence moves from who buys and why (Sections 14.1–14.3), through the sequential and recursive customer experience (14.4–14.5), to the architecture of credible research (14.6–14.8), the organization and interpretation of customer records (14.9–14.10), and the limits established by rights, fairness and emerging technologies (14.11–14.12). Sections 14.13–14.16 connect Rwandan evidence, comparative application, cross-functional integration, a research agenda and educational exercises. Chapter 13 has already established

market orientation and marketing strategy; Chapter 15 owns product, branding and pricing decisions, while Chapter 16 owns sales, communication, channels and campaign execution. The present chapter therefore studies customers and the evidentiary warrant for decisions, without reassigning those neighboring subjects.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

14.0 Introduction and evidence approach	14.9 Customer intelligence and CRM
14.1 Consumer decision contexts	14.10 Satisfaction and retention metrics
14.2 Psychological influences	**14.11 Ethics and consumer protection**
14.3 Social and cultural influences	14.12 Emerging behavioural research
14.4 Consumer decision journey	**14.13 Rwanda and international comparison**
14.5 Digital consumer behaviour	14.14 Interfunctional dependencies
14.6 Market research formulation	**14.15 Critical synthesis and conclusion**
14.7 Qualitative marketing research	14.16 Key concepts and assessment

14.8 Quantitative marketing research

14.0 INTRODUCTION: A TRANSACTION DOES NOT EXPLAIN A CUSTOMER

Consider an illustrative Kigali provider offering a subscription-based household water-delivery and refill service. Its founder reports rising registrations after customers are invited to pay through mobile money. An analyst concludes that digital payment creates loyalty and recommends making all transactions cashless. Yet repeat orders differ sharply by neighborhood; some households share telephones, some customers register only to obtain an introductory discount, and some customers continue the service because alternatives have disappeared. Sales records reveal what registered accounts did, not necessarily who used the service, why a household selected it, whether excluded people would have wanted it, or whether digital payment caused repeat purchasing. This constructed case is not a study of an identified company. It exposes the central distinction between transactional visibility and consumer understanding.

Consumer behaviour concerns the situated processes by which persons and organizations recognize problems, interpret information, acquire, use, evaluate, share and discontinue offerings. Market research is the systematic design and appraisal of evidence to answer specified market questions. Customer intelligence is the governed transformation of relevant observations into contestable insights and decisions. Their intersection is substantial, but the terms are not synonymous. Psychological theory can suggest a mechanism without documenting its prevalence. A survey can describe attitudes without revealing actual purchases. A customer database can be operationally accurate while systematically excluding people who never registered. A randomized experiment may identify the effect of one interface change without explaining how that effect would transfer to another region or population (Bettman et al., 1998; Lemon & Verhoef, 2016; Kohavi et al., 2020).

Three intellectual commitments guide this chapter. First, consumer choice is neither a fully autonomous act of stable preference maximization nor an entirely manipulable output of marketing stimulus. Agency operates under financial, cognitive, institutional, cultural and technological constraints. Second, research quality is inferential: what matters is whether the design can support the precise claim managers wish to make. Third, commercial effectiveness does not settle ethical legitimacy. A profiling system can improve response rates yet infringe privacy, discriminate or exploit vulnerability. Responsible customer intelligence thus requires valid

inference and justified conduct at the same time. These propositions extend the enterprise-system reasoning in Chapter 1 and the evidence discipline in Chapter 4 into the specialist marketing function.

14.0.1 Evidence strategy, philosophical position and limits

This chapter uses a targeted, critical synthesis of original scholarly works, selected peer-reviewed empirical and methodological research, official national datasets, and primary legal or professional documents. The documentary cut-off is 31 October 2026. Source checks focused on original publication records for planned behaviour, prospect theory, constructive choice, customer journeys, online reviews, thematic analysis, measurement bias, CRM and customer lifetime value; official Rwanda FinScope and Kenya FinAccess releases; Rwanda's personal-data law and 2026 consumer-protection legislation; and NIST's AI risk guidance. The search expressions reflected these concepts and exact source titles. Inclusion emphasized explanatory significance, contrasts among research designs, source authority, verifiable identifiers and relevance to the twelve subsections. This is not a systematic review or meta-analysis: no comprehensive database coverage, preregistered screening, estimated pooled effect size, unpublished interviews or original survey is claimed.

The chapter adopts a fallibilist approach to explanation. Descriptive transactional observations, expressed attitudes, experimentally estimated effects, cultural interpretation and moral appraisal answer different questions. A useful theory must state a mechanism and conditions under which its predictions might fail; an empirical finding must retain its population, measurement, period and design; and an illustration must disclose that its figures are invented. The Rwandan and Kenyan official indicators reported later describe access to or use of financial services, not customer acquisition for any named enterprise. The cohort and financial data below are hypothetical and reproducible arithmetically, not empirical estimates or company disclosures. This stratification prevents a persuasive figure from acquiring evidentiary authority it has not earned.

14.0.2 Intellectual history and the boundaries of consumer knowledge

Earlier economic models typically represented a consumer as choosing among feasible bundles according to preferences and a budget constraint. Their virtue is analytical clarity: substitution, purchasing power and relative prices matter. Their weakness, when treated as a complete psychology, is to assume away how preferences arise, how people search, and what social structures determine the feasible set. Behavioural research demonstrated context-sensitive valuation and departures from expected-utility benchmarks, while information-processing studies explained choice strategies under bounded attention. Sociological work emphasized identity, distinction, social relations and cultural meanings; organizational-buying research located purchasing decisions within role structures and procurement procedures (Kahneman & Tversky, 1979; Bettman et al., 1998; Webster & Wind, 1972).

Digital records intensified an older temptation to substitute what is measurable for what matters. Search histories, location traces and completed purchases can be abundant but fail to capture unaffordable options, shared devices, mistrust, deliberate privacy protection or the reasons for nonadoption. The resulting methodological problem is not solved by choosing between qualitative and quantitative research. It requires specifying constructs, populations, selection mechanisms, counterfactuals and decision uses. Economic models, psychological theories and cultural interpretation should be placed in constructive tension, rather than assembled as an indiscriminate list of explanatory labels.

14.0.3 Epistemology, agency and the limits of commercial knowledge

Consumer inquiry involves at least three different objects of knowledge: what an individual reports, what an individual does in a specific situation, and what would have occurred under a different situation. These objects cannot be substituted without argument. Stated preferences may reveal meaningful values while remaining sensitive to wording and hypothetical stakes; observed transactions provide relatively strong evidence of executed choices but record only available offers and permitted participation; causal claims require an appropriate comparison between interventions. The philosophical error is to assume that greater observational precision necessarily produces a more complete understanding of the person. Data exhaust may be exact about time stamps and incomplete about opportunity, dignity and intention (Bettman et al., 1998; Hernán & Robins, 2020).

The ontological question is also consequential. Preferences may be treated as relatively stable dispositions, context-constructed responses, socially situated practices or aspirations constrained by institutions. These alternatives generate different explanations of nonpurchase. A stable-preference account asks whether the alternative provides sufficient marginal value; an information-processing account asks whether a buyer could compare it; a cultural account asks how identity and socially meaningful consumption shape the category; and an institutional account asks whether lawful access, payment instruments and service availability made purchase possible. A research programme that selects one account before inspecting rival mechanisms risks mistaking its preferred vocabulary for evidence. The chapter therefore adopts explanatory pluralism with a disciplined requirement: each explanation must generate a discriminating observation or explicitly state why such discrimination is currently impossible (Arnould & Thompson, 2005; Ajzen, 1991).

The normative status of consumer agency cannot be inferred from a conversion rate. A consumer who formally accepts a default subscription may be legally bound under specified circumstances, but that outcome does not demonstrate comprehension or fair choice. Equally, the absence of purchase does not imply incapacity to judge one’s interests. Commercial research should seek information that makes offers more responsive to legitimate needs while preserving the consumer’s capacity to reject, discontinue and challenge them. This approach differentiates the descriptive study of influence from the moral authority to influence, and is particularly important where household essentials, financial vulnerability or low-cost behavioral targeting make formal choice an inadequate measure of substantive freedom (Acquisti et al., 2016; Luguri & Strahilevitz, 2021).

14.1 CONSUMER DECISION CONTEXTS

14.1.1 Individuals, households and the distribution of decision roles

An individual purchaser may be the initiator, evaluator, payer, user and complainant in one transaction; the roles separate in many household purchases. A parent may initiate a school-transport search, an adolescent may influence the preferred provider, another adult may control the payment instrument, and several family members may use the service. For health, food, education, financial and utility services, the formally registered account holder may therefore differ from the affected user. Treating the account as the person makes behavioral inference unreliable and can obscure consent and vulnerability.

Consumer analysis must specify the unit of analysis. Purchase occasions, individuals, households, subscriptions and devices are not interchangeable denominators. If a household has two mobile-money wallets but buys one delivery service, two wallet identifiers should not become two customers. Equally, a service used by several household members can generate satisfaction or harm that the account holder never reports. In Rwanda, intergenerational support, shared transport and group-based finance may be relevant empirical hypotheses; none should be asserted as a universal cultural rule without suitable evidence. A research design should identify who decides, who can veto, who pays, who experiences performance and who can seek redress.

14.1.2 Organizational and institutional buying

Business-to-business and institutional purchasing involves multiple roles, formal specifications, budgets, authorized signatures and downstream users. Webster and Wind (1972) describe organizational buying as an interaction among environmental, organizational, interpersonal and individual factors. A hospital's cleaning-service procurement may involve a technical evaluator, finance officer, procurement committee, compliance reviewer and employees who use the service. The lowest quoted price may not be preferred if continuity, safety or auditability is important. Public institutions can also face procedural obligations that differ from private purchasing, with implications for the source of information and the timescale of decisions.

The distinction between straight rebuy, modified rebuy and new task is analytically helpful: a routine replenishment may depend on reliable records and contract performance, whereas unfamiliar equipment may require expert evaluation and higher perceived risk. Yet these are classificatory aids, not natural laws. Supplier dependence, professional judgment, emergency procurement, corruption risk and information asymmetry can change the process. Managers should not extrapolate consumer-brand attitude measures to an institutional tender without asking who holds decision rights and which rules govern admissible evidence.

14.1.3 Services, necessity, risk and inclusion

Search and evaluation differ according to whether an offering is standardized, experiential, credence-intensive, frequently purchased, urgent or difficult to reverse. A prepaid mobile service has recurring use and measurable transactions; a diagnostic medical service has high informational asymmetry; a funeral service may be purchased under emotional pressure. Household liquidity and transaction costs can make even an attractive offering infeasible. Where sellers infer weak demand from low recorded adoption, they must distinguish lack of interest from lack of income, connectivity, documentation, mobility or trust. Sampling only current users produces a different question from sampling all potentially eligible households.

This distinction has direct managerial consequences. A customer-journey map for an institutional buyer must include approvals and contract implementation; a map for a household essential service must include accessibility, language, payment capacity and after-service remedy. An enterprise that treats these journeys as identical may optimize sign-ups while neglecting delivery, complaints or nonusers. Customer intelligence begins with correctly identifying the decision-making setting rather than selecting a software package.

14.1.4 Informal exchange, institutional constraints and observed demand

A market is not exhausted by transactions recorded within a formal digital platform. Consumers may purchase through neighbourhood shops, rotating savings arrangements, informal intermediaries and direct personal networks, all of which can affect the meaning of an observed market share or adoption rate. This is not a claim that informal channels are uniformly superior or inferior. Such arrangements may reduce search and access costs through trusted relationships while also limiting recorded quality assurance and formal remedy. Whether the balance is positive depends on a defined offering, price, risk and regulatory context. A formal enterprise using only electronic sales data would systematically underobserve these alternatives and could mistakenly characterize noncustomers as uninterested rather than differently served.

For empirical study, analysts should construct a choice-set audit before interpreting demand. The audit identifies available alternatives, total delivered cost rather than listed price alone, distance and time costs, supply reliability, language accessibility, documentary eligibility and control of the payment instrument. Its purpose is not to treat every factor as another explanatory variable in a large regression. Rather, it establishes whether a recorded nonpurchase is plausibly a choice among accessible options. Once access constraints are recognized, sampling strategies and customer classifications can be designed around eligible persons and households rather than conveniently captured account holders.

14.2 PSYCHOLOGICAL INFLUENCES

14.2.1 Motivation, needs, cognition and perceived value

Motivation identifies forces making a goal salient; it does not guarantee a particular purchase. Needs such as food security, convenience, social belonging and financial safety interact with the available means and the meaning assigned to an offering. Perception filters stimuli through attention, expectations and existing knowledge. Two customers can encounter the same message yet infer different reliability or risk. Learning from direct experience, imitation and prior disappointments changes subsequent search and trust. Memory matters because recall is selective: a recently publicized failure can dominate numerous ordinary satisfactory transactions. These mechanisms render consumer knowledge situated and revisable rather than a fixed list of preferences.

Classical attitude models distinguish beliefs about an offering from affective evaluations and behavioral intention. In the theory of planned behaviour, attitudes toward the behavior, subjective norms and perceived behavioral control contribute to intentions; perceived control and intentions relate to performance where opportunities and skills permit (Ajzen, 1991). The model directs researchers to ask whether a prospective customer judges a service beneficial, anticipates approval, and believes that purchase is feasible. It does not license the inference that intention equals adoption. The intention–behavior gap can arise from changed circumstances, weak control, habitual alternatives and constraints not adequately measured (Sheeran, 2002). For cash-constrained buyers, a favorable attitude may coexist with an inability to pay.

14.2.2 Bounded rationality, constructed preferences and prospect theory

Bettman, Luce and Payne (1998) argued that people frequently construct preferences while making choices, adapting decision strategies to task complexity, time pressure and information format. This undermines the idea that every response to a survey reveals an enduring latent willingness to pay. A respondent forced to compare unfamiliar service bundles may produce a context-dependent ranking that changes under a different frame. The appropriate response is neither to abandon measurement nor to label consumers irrational, but to test stability, task comprehension, choice consequences and sensitivity to presentation.

Prospect theory offers a related but distinct account of risky choice. Kahneman and Tversky (1979) characterized evaluation relative to a reference point and documented asymmetries between gains and losses as well as nonlinear probability weighting. In customer decisions, a delayed delivery may be interpreted as a loss against a promised time rather than as an objective time interval; a temporary discount may reset reference expectations. These are hypotheses to assess in a specific category, not evidence that all consumers everywhere are loss averse to the same degree. The theory's original domain is risky choice, so translating it to marketing requires careful operationalization of reference points, probabilities and stakes.

14.2.3 Identity, habit, affect and ethical boundary conditions

Consumption can communicate identity, aspiration, membership or practical competence, but identities cannot be reconstructed reliably from a few clicks. Habit economizes attention in routine purchasing, creating inertia that could be mistaken for satisfaction. Affect can facilitate quick judgment, particularly under uncertainty, while raising sensitivity to fear-based messages and urgency cues. A household using the same mobile service for five years may display retention because of genuine value, a poorly understood exit process, scarce substitutes or interpersonal dependence. Customer research must test these alternatives rather than interpreting repeated transactions as unqualified endorsement (Oliver, 1999).

Psychological insight increases responsibility. Manipulating scarcity cues, overstating risks, disguising subscription conditions or relying on consumers' limited attention may generate an immediate conversion while violating informed choice. A practice should be evaluated through the accuracy of claims, the buyer's feasible alternatives, reversibility, proportionality and foreseeable harm. Ethical limits are thus part of the explanatory

model: an intervention that changes behavior without enabling informed agency is not automatically a desirable improvement in marketing effectiveness.

14.2.4 Competing predictions and discriminating tests

The models reviewed above are not simply different names for the same consumer response. Under a rational budget-constrained interpretation, a rise in the delivered price should change demand through opportunity cost and substitution, with variation arising from income and available alternatives. The theory of planned behaviour predicts that feasible action depends partly on attitudes, perceived norms and perceived control; a buyer may endorse an offering yet fail to act where control is limited. Constructive-choice research predicts additional sensitivity to the decision procedure and representation of attributes. Prospect theory directs attention to reference-dependent losses and risks, particularly where a change is framed relative to an established expectation. Socially situated accounts examine how preferences are linked to relationships, identity and material institutions. These explanations may coexist, but their relative empirical contribution cannot be assumed from an attitude question alone (Ajzen, 1991; Bettman et al., 1998; Kahneman & Tversky, 1979).

Consider a hypothetical household service with low repeat purchasing after a fee increase. An affordability explanation predicts stronger attrition among customers facing tighter liquidity and cheaper alternatives; a perceived-control explanation predicts that failed payment attempts and lack of access matter even after willingness to buy is considered; a reference-loss account predicts responses to how the change violates prior price expectations; and a service-quality account predicts a link with documented delivery failures. A credible research plan would distinguish these hypotheses using observations obtained before the outcome, clear outcome windows, evidence about alternative services and, where ethically feasible, a controlled intervention. It should resist post hoc labeling of whichever explanation seems intuitively compelling. The objective is neither psychological reductionism nor exhaustive prediction, but a decision that survives plausible rival interpretations.

14.3 SOCIAL AND CULTURAL INFLUENCES

14.3.1 Families, reference groups and social learning

Consumer decisions are embedded in relationships through which information, resources and approval circulate. Festinger's (1954) social comparison theory explains why individuals may evaluate opinions or abilities relative to others when objective standards are uncertain. Reference groups can provide evidence, establish norms or confer identity, but their influence depends on credibility, product visibility and the perceived costs of disagreement. For a new mobile financial service, a trusted relative's experience may carry more weight than a national advertisement; for a professional procurement decision, peer institutions and technical auditors may be more relevant. These mechanisms should be measured rather than asserted merely because a consumer lives in a particular country.

Rogers (2003) analyzes diffusion in terms of perceived innovation attributes, communication channels, time and social systems. Relative advantage, compatibility, complexity, trialability and observability offer practical hypotheses for adoption research. But diffusion models can become misleading when they imply that everyone who has not adopted is simply a late adopter. Structural exclusion, affordability, unfavorable contracts and rational distrust may explain nonadoption. Network effects may improve usefulness for connected groups while deepening exclusion for those outside them. A responsible market study examines both peer influence and unequal access.

14.3.2 Culture, language and contested generalizations

Culture operates through learned meanings, norms and practices, not through a fixed national personality. National aggregates can guide questions about service expectations, authority, privacy or trust, but they cannot be applied mechanically to individuals. Urban and rural customers, occupational communities, generations, migration histories and socioeconomic positions intersect; a language choice may indicate accessibility rather than identity. Cross-cultural measurement additionally requires evidence that translated questions retain comparable meaning and response behavior. A numerical difference between countries is not necessarily a difference in the latent attitude of interest.

The transfer of international consumer models to Rwanda requires particular caution. High-income online-panel studies frequently exclude people with intermittent connectivity, limited literacy or shared devices. Conversely, research grounded in local settings should not be romanticized as immune to selection or social desirability bias. The appropriate approach is theoretically informed local inquiry: define a behavior, test whether instruments work in Kinyarwanda and other relevant languages, compare contexts within the population, and report which groups the sample cannot represent.

14.3.3 Social networks, trust and influence identification

Observed similarity among connected consumers can result from social influence, selection into similar networks or exposure to the same conditions. A neighborhood may adopt a digital service after community members recommend it; it may also adopt because a new network tower or payment agent becomes available. Correlation among friends therefore cannot by itself establish interpersonal contagion. Identifying influence may require randomized invitations, timing-based natural variation or carefully justified quasi-experimental design, with appropriate protections for third parties. Managers should distinguish advocacy actually observed from inferred influence scores and avoid profiling people's social relations without a legitimate purpose.

Social and cultural explanation is most useful when it changes the quality of a decision. It can reveal why messages need accessible language, why service recovery may require family or community channels, and why familiar channels can be trusted even when technologically less efficient. But its value depends on empirical humility. Consumers are not representatives of immutable cultural types; they are agents acting within evolving social arrangements, and market practices can themselves change those arrangements.

14.3.4 Consumer culture and the external-validity problem

Consumer culture theory investigates how markets, social meanings and institutional histories shape projects of identity, consumption practices and marketplace communities. Arnould and Thompson (2005) show that interpretive research has explanatory interests that cannot be reduced to a demographic control variable or a laboratory framing effect. Its strength lies in examining how social practices organize experience and aspiration; its limits include the difficulty of making numerical prevalence claims from selectively recruited accounts and the danger of treating richly described groups as internally uniform. Applied to a Rwandan service, the relevant question is not what “Rwandan consumers” essentially believe, but how distinct households understand reliability, privacy, community recommendation and acceptable payment under actual conditions.

An additional limitation concerns the geographical location of much canonical experimental psychology. Henrich et al. (2010) documented the problem of broad behavioral generalization from samples disproportionately drawn from Western, educated, industrialized, rich and democratic societies. That critique does not mean that every established psychological mechanism fails in Africa, nor that locally recruited samples automatically offer national representativeness. It requires establishing measurement equivalence, choice-set similarity and relevant institutional conditions before transferring effect sizes or behavioral classifications. Likewise, Aral et al. (2009) empirically distinguished social influence from homophily in a particular large network, illustrating why peer similarity alone cannot identify contagion. International scholarship is most useful when it clarifies testable mechanisms and its own boundary conditions.

14.4 THE CONSUMER DECISION JOURNEY

14.4.1 A recursive rather than mechanically linear process

The conventional stages of problem recognition, information search, evaluation of alternatives, purchase, consumption and postpurchase evaluation remain valuable as questions for inquiry. They should not be mistaken for a compulsory chronology. Routine buyers may renew without active search; digital recommendations may trigger recognition of a previously unarticulated problem; an institutional buyer may reopen technical evaluation after procurement approval; and service delivery can alter preferences for a subsequent purchase. Lemon and Verhoef (2016) distinguish pre-purchase, purchase and post-purchase experiences, emphasizing multiple touchpoints across channels and actors. Their framework shifts analysis from a single marketing event to the temporally extended experience of the offering.

At problem recognition, research asks whose unmet need matters and what event made it salient. At search, it examines accessible information, trusted sources, nonuse of channels and search costs. At evaluation, it asks which attributes are considered, which alternatives are feasible and how risk is interpreted. At purchase, payment failure, stockouts and documentation can defeat a favorable intention. During consumption, product reliability and service behavior shape realized value; in evaluation, complaints, switching, recommendations, return or disposal provide different forms of feedback. Each stage may contain several people, organizations and digital systems. A journey map that merely lists advertising platforms while omitting payment, delivery, accessibility and remedy cannot explain overall customer experience.

Figure 14.1. Evidence-linked, recursive customer journey. *Original synthesis informed by Bettman et al. (1998) and Lemon and Verhoef (2016). Each transition is conditional; feedback, interruption, search and re-entry can occur at multiple points. The diagram identifies illustrative evidence types, not empirically verified paths or universal stage conversion rates.*



14.4.2 Touchpoints, moments of truth and journey evidence

Touchpoints are occasions when a consumer encounters an organization, partner, offering or representation of it. Some are owned by the enterprise, such as invoices and support calls; others are controlled by retailers, platforms or independent users. A practical journey map should record the customer's objective, actors involved, observed behavior, possible friction, outcome measure, data source and responsible enterprise function. It must also record the limits of each source. Search analytics may capture pages viewed but not information learned from a friend; support records capture recorded complainants but omit dissatisfied customers who never report; transaction records may not link correctly across shared household accounts. The phrase moment of truth is useful only when tied to a consequential expectation and evidence of its fulfillment. For an essential household service, failed delivery and an inaccessible complaint procedure may matter more to trust than a visually engaging checkout screen. Managers should avoid assigning higher priority to what is easiest to instrument. The denominator in a funnel also changes by stage: visitors, unique persons, eligible households, qualified inquiries, completed orders and active users are different populations. Conversion percentages have meaning only when the eligibility definition, observation window and identity resolution method are disclosed.

14.4.3 Postpurchase consequences, service recovery and circularity

Postpurchase inquiry includes actual use, continued fitness for purpose, unexpected costs, complaints, repair, return, switching, recommendation and end-of-life impacts. In recurring services, effective complaint resolution may restore confidence, but simply closing a ticket does not prove remedy. Consumers can retain a subscription despite unresolved harm when switching is difficult; others can leave for reasons unrelated to experience. Transactional retention must therefore be interpreted together with feasible alternatives, perceived value and grievance evidence (Oliver, 1999). Where goods create waste, product return and responsible disposal are also part of a credible journey, although detailed circular business models belong to Chapter 31.

Journey management necessarily crosses functions. Marketing may promise delivery, operations must perform it, finance designs accessible payment and credit controls, technology governs identity and data access, and customer service makes redress possible. Strategy sets the intended market; governance determines which risks are acceptable. The purpose of the journey map is not to assign all responsibility to marketing, but to make the interactions visible so that customers encounter one accountable enterprise rather than disconnected departments.

14.4.4 Journey measurement as a longitudinal inference problem

A customer journey is a conceptual representation, not an automatically observed sequence. A high-quality longitudinal design specifies entry rules, event time, observation windows, state transitions, identity resolution and the possibility that some consumers are never observed. Journey analytics can be biased by left truncation when prior experiences precede the available record, right censoring when the study ends before later purchases, and informative dropout when disengaged customers become difficult to contact. Customers using shared phones or alternating between physical and electronic channels may be counted as multiple entrants or falsely classified as lost. Each defect changes the meaning of a conversion or retention rate even if every recorded database operation is technically correct.

A decision-useful journey map therefore combines a conceptual path with an evidence audit. For each stage, the analyst defines the event that constitutes passage, the population eligible to enter, the time available to reach the next stage, the data-producing system, the sources of missingness and the process owner. Analysts should then compare documented customer experience with operational failures and complaint records, rather than inferring sentiment from funnel transitions. Such a map helps locate possible failures, but causal assignment to a particular touchpoint requires additional design. A customer who abandons payment may have encountered a confusing interface, insufficient funds, an unavailable network or a preferred alternative; the observed event alone does not determine the cause.

14.5 DIGITAL CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR

14.5.1 Search, visibility and ranking-mediated choice

In digital markets, a consumer's available options are shaped not only by prices and underlying quality but also by ranking, recommendations, sponsored placement and interface defaults. A high-ranking result may receive attention because it is relevant, because an algorithm prioritizes historical engagement, or because a seller has paid for visibility. These mechanisms complicate the interpretation of clicks. Click-through rates describe behavior conditional on what was displayed and to whom; they do not reveal the welfare of unexposed buyers or the intrinsic quality of alternatives. Ranking feedback loops can amplify providers that already receive attention, creating an apparent popularity advantage without equivalent differences in service performance.

Search results and price comparison sites may reduce information costs, but they can also increase cognitive load and channel dependency. Users facing unstable internet access, data charges or inaccessible interfaces may search differently from panel respondents with unlimited connectivity. A Rwandan service company should therefore measure not only digital reach, but successful completion by device, language, payment means and accessibility constraint. A digital funnel cannot be interpreted apart from its social and infrastructural setting.

14.5.2 Reviews, social commerce and influencer credibility

Online evaluations create evidence that firms do not fully control. In their study of online book reviews, Chevalier and Mayzlin (2006) found relationships between changes in review valence and relative sales within their investigated platforms; the authors also detected asymmetries across favorable and unfavorable reviews. Their study supports the importance of electronic word of mouth in a particular product and historical market; it does not establish that a modern Rwandan household service will exhibit an identical effect. Reviews may be authentic, strategically solicited, fake, selective or platform-filtered. Even genuine reviews disproportionately represent people willing and able to post them.

Social commerce combines social discovery, interpersonal endorsement, messaging and transactions. Influencers may provide useful demonstrations, but paid affiliations must be distinguished from independent evaluation. Influencer reach is not equivalent to trust, nor are impression counts equivalent to independently verified demand. In contexts where customers rely on messaging applications, a firm must distinguish informal discussion from an authorized sales or support channel. Screenshots circulated outside their source can amplify inaccurate claims, while unrecorded chat orders may weaken payment reconciliation and consumer remedy. The governance issue is therefore both representational and operational.

14.5.3 Attention design, personalization and dark patterns

Digital personalization can reduce irrelevant information and improve access, but it can also exploit predictable vulnerabilities. Countdown timers that reset without a genuine deadline, preselected paid options, deceptive cancellation flows and concealed recurring charges can alter measured conversion while reducing informed choice. Behavioral science cannot supply moral authorization for such practices. Ethical evaluation should ask whether information is truthful, salient and comprehensible, whether users can reject or exit without disproportionate friction, and whether the intervention exposes a vulnerable population to foreseeable harm.

Personalized systems require careful causal evaluation. A platform may report that high-engagement customers who receive tailored offers spend more than other users; those customers may already have had stronger demand. Comparing treated and untreated populations without addressing baseline differences risks attributing selection to algorithmic performance. Randomized assignment can improve causal identification when feasible and lawful; appropriately designed observational studies require explicit assumptions about confounding, overlap and interference. A technically accurate targeting model need not be an ethically legitimate targeting policy.

14.5.4 Empirical tests of manipulation, autonomy and disclosure

The ethical status of interface design can be investigated, rather than merely asserted. Luguri and Strahilevitz (2021) used experimental approaches to study dark-pattern effects and their implications for consumer decisions. Their findings reinforce the need to examine not only whether a design changes acceptance but whether users understand the choice, recognize costs and can exercise their actual preferences. Experimental results from a specific online setting should not be transferred as universal estimates for African markets, especially where devices, bandwidth, language and payment arrangements differ. Nevertheless, the study supports a general methodological distinction between a friction-reducing design that helps people complete an intended action and a deliberately confusing design that produces an action contrary to their interests.

For an enterprise evaluating personalization, an ethical test should predefine both effectiveness and agency-related outcomes. Effectiveness may include correct completion, fulfilled orders and complaint-free delivery; agency-related outcomes may include comprehension of recurring charges, ability to opt out, time to cancel, mistaken consent and adverse effects across access groups. Reporting only clicks, purchase rates or email openings suppresses material consequences. Marketing research should also examine whether targeted consumers could reach the same offer through a non-personalized route, and whether the optimization policy could systematically divert resources away from less observable or less profitable customers. This approach makes the limits on persuasive design part of the evaluation protocol instead of adding ethics after rollout.

14.6 MARKET RESEARCH PROBLEM FORMULATION

14.6.1 From management discomfort to an answerable question

A manager's statement that customers are 'not loyal' is a diagnosis, not a research question. It leaves unspecified whether the issue is a fall in repeat purchasing, changing contract terms, measurement failure, service quality or competitive entry. A defensible research question identifies the decision, target population, construct, reference period, feasible alternatives and evidence that would alter managerial action. For example: among households eligible for water delivery in three defined Kigali service zones during a stated quarter, what proportion recognized the provider, successfully completed a first order, and reordered within thirty days? That descriptive question is different from asking whether a reduced delivery fee would increase repeat orders, which is causal and requires an appropriate comparison.

Research begins by articulating a decision rule: what would management do differently if the answer were high, low or uncertain? If no feasible decision depends on the result, further data collection may be wasteful. A research brief should then distinguish exploratory questions about meaning and mechanisms; descriptive questions about prevalence, frequency or distribution; predictive questions about future events; and causal questions about effects of interventions. These warrant different designs. It is a methodological error to use an exploratory focus group to claim market-share prevalence, a cross-sectional attitude correlation to claim causal effectiveness, or an experiment on one channel to assert population-wide preference.

14.6.2 Constructs, hypotheses and counterfactual logic

Terms such as trust, perceived convenience, loyalty and satisfaction are constructs that require specification. If trust is understood as willingness to rely on a provider under vulnerability, a single item asking whether the logo is familiar does not measure it adequately. A hypothesis should connect defined variables through a reasoned mechanism and identify a plausible rival. For instance, 'shorter verified delivery intervals increase thirty-day repeat ordering among first-time users' is testable only if delivery exposure, outcome timing, confounders and customer eligibility are specified. Competing explanations include price, geographic distance, seasonality and household purchasing cycles.

For causal questions, the counterfactual is the outcome the same unit would have experienced under an alternative exposure, which cannot be directly observed at the same time. Randomization attempts to make

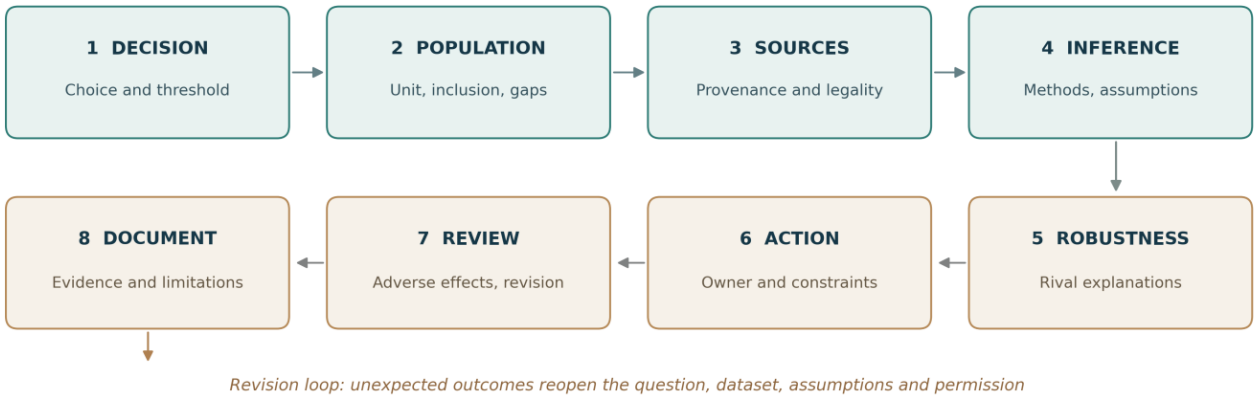
comparison groups exchangeable on average; a before–after difference alone does not. Researchers must also ask whether customers influence one another, whether an intervention is implemented as planned, and whether its effects persist. The proper estimand might be the intention-to-treat effect of *offering* a delivery reminder, not the effect of *reading* it, because reading is self-selected. The distinction is essential for practical rollout recommendations (Kohavi et al., 2020).

14.6.3 Secondary data appraisal and an auditable research brief

Secondary sources include official household surveys, census tables, administrative records, industry reports, published studies and enterprise logs collected originally for other purposes. Their advantages include scale, historical comparisons and lower collection cost; their weaknesses include mismatched populations, old classifications, missing constructs, inaccessible microdata and changes in collection methods. Rwanda FinScope 2024 can contextualize financial-service use; it cannot reveal the number of Kigali households willing to subscribe to a specific water-delivery provider. A bank's customer file may reveal payment failures among account holders but say nothing about cash-paying noncustomers.

The research brief should record the decision and intended claim, population and exclusions, variable definitions, original data producer and reference period, extraction location, quality risks, comparative design, legal basis for processing, planned analysis, sensitivity tests, disclosure restrictions, responsible reviewer and revision trigger. This audit trail is not bureaucracy for its own sake: it makes disagreements about meaning and evidence inspectable. The following protocol connects research to a decision without implying that every step requires primary fieldwork.

Figure 14.2. Evidence-to-decision protocol for customer intelligence. *Original analytical synthesis informed by Cochran (1977), Tourangeau et al. (2000), Braun and Clarke (2006), Podsakoff et al. (2003) and Kohavi et al. (2020). A decision is revised whenever new evidence undermines measurement, inference or lawful use.*



14.6.4 Construct-to-estimand alignment and a falsifiable research programme

The research brief becomes more useful when it explicitly maps the manager’s decision to an estimand. A descriptive estimand might be the proportion of eligible households that complete a valid first order during a defined quarter, whereas a causal estimand might be the difference in thirty-day repeat purchasing if all otherwise eligible households were offered an accessible payment reminder versus the usual process. The latter requires specification of the treatment, comparison condition, eligibility, follow-up and policy-relevant analysis population. A predictive estimand, by contrast, might be the probability of a verified future service lapse given information available before the lapse. Predictions can help allocate attention but cannot establish that outreach would prevent the event (Hernán & Robins, 2020).

A falsifiable plan states in advance what findings would challenge the preferred explanation. For example, if payment difficulty is proposed as a principal driver of attrition, the analysis should check whether failure-coded transactions precede lapses, whether the association survives plausible measurement changes, and whether affected customers have other documented service problems. If the internal data lack attempted orders or payment failures, no amount of modeling observed completed purchases can establish their prevalence. A responsible research programme can end with an identified information gap, a recommendation against costly action, or an ethically limited pilot. Intellectual rigor concerns the quality of warranted inference, not pressure to supply a positive answer to management.

14.7 QUALITATIVE MARKETING RESEARCH

14.7.1 Meaning, mechanisms and appropriate qualitative designs

Qualitative inquiry is indispensable when the question concerns how people interpret an experience, form trust, describe barriers or negotiate decisions. An in-depth interview can explore why a customer regards a mobile payment confirmation as insufficient assurance; a focus group can reveal shared vocabulary and disputed norms; observation can reveal a checkout barrier respondents overlook; and documentary analysis can trace the wording of complaints and contractual communications. The purpose is not necessarily to estimate prevalence, but to develop rich accounts of processes, distinctions and competing interpretations. The method must follow the question, not the assumption that qualitative work is an inexpensive preliminary stage before 'real' quantitative research.

Interviews require a defensible sampling strategy. Purposeful selection can maximize variation across service users, nonusers, payment practices or regions, while clearly describing who was and was not included. Convenience samples from loyal customers can systematically conceal dissatisfaction and exclusion. In focus groups, socially sensitive complaints may be silenced by hierarchy or fear, while a dominant participant can obscure disagreements. Observation captures situated action but requires caution about consent and observer effects. A responsible protocol defines a flexible topic guide, language and translation procedures, recording and storage arrangements, referral or withdrawal procedures, and a strategy for contradictory evidence.

14.7.2 Analysis, reflexivity and credibility

Thematic analysis involves attentive familiarization with material, coding, developing patterns and evaluating how those patterns answer the question. Braun and Clarke (2006) emphasize that themes are analytical interpretations rather than patterns automatically generated by software. A researcher should document code meanings, changes in interpretation, the relation between excerpts and claims, and the treatment of disconfirming accounts. If multiple coders are used, the team must decide whether it seeks agreement on a predefined codebook or recognizes interpretive diversity; calculating intercoder agreement is not an automatic requirement for every qualitative tradition.

Credibility depends on fit among research question, recruitment, data richness, analytic approach and disclosed positionality. An investigator employed by a service provider may hear more favorable accounts than an independent researcher, especially where service continuity appears contingent on cooperation. Translating from Kinyarwanda into English can flatten idioms of trust or embarrassment; bilingual review of quotations and clear documentation of translation decisions are therefore important. Researcher reflexivity is not a claim that any reading is equally defensible. It is an account of how assumptions and position might shape what is noticed and how competing interpretations were evaluated.

14.7.3 What qualitative findings cannot establish

A group of twelve interviewees can reveal an unexpected obstacle with profound design relevance; their comments cannot, without additional assumptions, establish the proportion of all customers who experience that obstacle. Repeated mention should not be converted into a numerical percentage of the market. Nor does apparent thematic saturation demonstrate that excluded groups or rare harms were understood. Data richness and sampling adequacy are substantive judgments, not consequences of achieving an arbitrary number of participants. Qualitative findings can specify potential causal mechanisms, improve survey wording, expose blind spots and generate testable propositions, but they do not by themselves estimate the treatment effect of removing a barrier.

For this chapter's Rwanda service case, a secondary-data-only phase can analyze published findings, consumer-protection guidance and publicly documented service complaints where lawful and available. It cannot claim to have interviewed customers. A future primary-data phase would require a real protocol, appropriate authorization and consent procedures, including explicit safeguards for vulnerable participants. This distinction protects scholarly integrity while preserving the legitimate methodological contribution of interpretive research.

14.7.4 Analytical transparency and critical interpretation

Qualitative rigor depends on a coherent relationship between the research question, epistemological orientation and treatment of evidence. A descriptive content analysis that seeks consistent categorization of complaint types places different demands on coding reliability from a reflexive thematic study that interprets how customers construct trust and obligation. Forcing one tradition’s reliability coefficient upon another may create the appearance of objectivity without strengthening validity. Conversely, invoking interpretation cannot exempt an analyst from preserving evidence excerpts, disclosing contradictory cases and showing how conclusions developed. The strongest report explains why alternative readings were rejected or retained, whether translation changed relevant meanings, and what contextual features determine transferability (Braun & Clarke, 2006).

Secondary qualitative material requires equal care. Public reviews, regulatory filings and social-media posts can provide documentary evidence, but their authors and publication conditions may be highly selected. An inflammatory online complaint may indicate serious harm worth investigating without quantifying national prevalence. A company response may document an official position without independently proving that a dispute was remedied. Researchers should also consider the ethical status of material that is technically public yet contextually sensitive. Quoting an identifiable consumer’s experience without necessity may expose that person to harm; paraphrase, careful redaction or aggregate description can sometimes preserve analytical meaning with lower risk.

14.8 QUANTITATIVE MARKETING RESEARCH

14.8.1 Populations, sampling frames and survey errors

Quantitative research enables estimates of defined distributions and contrasts, provided that the sampling and measurement support them. A probability sample permits design-based inference when units have known, nonzero inclusion probabilities and the analysis incorporates the sampling design. A sample of followers responding to a social-media poll does not become nationally representative because it contains thousands of responses. Coverage error arises when the frame misses relevant people; nonresponse error arises if respondents differ systematically from nonrespondents; measurement error arises when questions fail to elicit the intended construct. Weighting can adjust for observed discrepancies, but it cannot necessarily repair missing groups or unobserved nonresponse mechanisms (Cochran, 1977; Tourangeau et al., 2000).

For an illustrative large-population simple random sample estimating a proportion, the familiar normal-approximation planning expression is $n_0 = z^2p(1 - p)/e^2$, where z is the normal critical value, p the

anticipated proportion and e the desired absolute margin of error. Under z = 1.96, p = 0.50 and e = 0.05, n_0 = 384.16, conventionally rounded up to 385 completed responses. For a simple random sample without replacement from N = 5,000 eligible units, the finite-population adjustment gives $n = Nn_0/(N + n_0 - 1) \approx 356.8$, rounded to 357. If anticipated response is 60%, approximately 595 invitations would be needed to achieve 357 completions under an *unrealistically uniform response assumption*. These are teaching calculations, not a recommended sample for a real Rwandan study: clustering, stratification, unequal weights, anticipated subgroup precision and nonresponse bias can materially change design requirements.

14.8.2 Question design, scales and measurement invariance

A survey item should measure one clearly stated concept within a specified time period and with response options that cover plausible answers. 'How satisfied are you with price, reliability and delivery?' confounds three attributes; 'How many times did you use the service last month?' requires an unambiguous month and a definition of use. Question order, interviewer identity, recall demands, response categories and translation can influence answers (Tourangeau et al., 2000). A Likert-type response to an attitudinal item is ordinal as observed; averaging several such items can be a defensible approximate score under an articulated measurement model, but arithmetic precision does not prove construct validity.

Reliability concerns consistency under defined conditions; validity concerns whether interpretation and use of scores are justified. Internal consistency alone cannot establish dimensionality, content coverage or cross-cultural equivalence. Multi-item scale development ordinarily requires conceptual specification, expert review, cognitive pretesting, appropriate dimensionality assessment and evidence of convergent and discriminant validity (Netemeyer et al., 2003). When comparing groups, researchers should examine whether item functioning or measurement structure differs. A difference in response scale use may be produced by translation or interviewer context rather than a difference in genuine satisfaction.

14.8.3 Experiments, identification and decision relevance

Randomized controlled experiments are valuable when a feasible intervention can be assigned and tracked without violating rights. For example, eligible new customers could be randomly offered two accurately described payment-confirmation formats; the primary outcome might be successful first-order completion within a specified window. The comparison must be defined before analysis, include those assigned but not exposed where intention-to-treat is the estimand, and monitor safety outcomes such as failed payments or misleading confirmations. Treatment contamination, repeated testing, data leakage, unequal exposure and interference can invalidate results. Statistical significance is not equivalent to commercial or moral importance (Kohavi et al., 2020).

Observed differences between existing users of two payment instruments are not experimental estimates. Customers self-select into instruments because of income, access, preferences, neighborhood and provider availability. Regression adjustment or matching may help under measured-confounding assumptions, but an unrecorded factor can remain decisive. Quasi-experiments, interrupted time series or difference-in-differences designs also require documented assumptions and diagnostics. Responsible reporting includes effect size, uncertainty, sample exclusions, multiple-comparison considerations, implementation fidelity, temporal durability, segmentation concerns and the possibility of adverse impacts on underrepresented groups.

14.8.4 Integrated methods and the distinction between evidence and certainty

Qualitative and quantitative approaches can be combined sequentially or concurrently when their distinct contributions are explicit. Interviews may identify unrecognized barriers, then a probability survey can estimate prevalence, and an ethically approved experiment can test one remedy. Alternatively, a transaction analysis may reveal anomalous regional attrition, followed by interpretive inquiry about why it occurred. Triangulation is valuable when independent sources address compatible constructs and conflicting results are investigated rather than averaged away. A high survey satisfaction score alongside rising complaints may indicate selective response, an altered denominator or a true coexistence of good average experiences and severe failures among a minority.

The decisive output of research is not a claim of comprehensive certainty. It is a bounded, traceable recommendation specifying what is known, what remains unidentified, which decision is feasible, whose interests are affected and how the enterprise will learn after implementation. This standard connects specialist research to accountable enterprise management without pretending that a dashboard or p-value can substitute for judgment.

14.8.5 Statistical precision, nonresponse and causal credibility

Survey sample size should not be used as a synonym for representativeness. The simple random-sampling formula above concerns nominal sampling variance under its assumptions, not error from frame exclusion, strategic misreporting or selective nonresponse. Groves and Peytcheva (2008) synthesized methodological evidence showing that nonresponse bias depends on relationships between participation and the survey variables, not merely on a single response-rate threshold. A large opt-in panel can yield narrow conventional confidence intervals around a biased estimate. A smaller probability sample with sound coverage, appropriate weights and documented nonresponse assessment may warrant a more defensible population inference. Design effects, clustering and domain-specific precision must also be reported when relevant.

For experimental research, a statistically significant result is not sufficient evidence of practical value. An estimated treatment effect requires attention to pre-specified primary outcomes, confidence intervals, attrition, multiple testing, possible spillovers and costs of implementation. A result can be precise and commercially trivial, or economically large but imprecisely estimated. The experiment also answers an effect question only for the intervention and population actually studied; an offered reminder is different from an opened reminder, and the intention-to-treat effect generally differs from an effect among those who complied. When outcomes include access to essential services, decision criteria should include pre-specified safety and exclusion indicators alongside economic returns, rather than treating harms as incidental (Hernán & Robins, 2020; Kohavi et al., 2020).

14.9 CUSTOMER INTELLIGENCE AND CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP MANAGEMENT

14.9.1 From first-party records to governed intelligence

Customer relationship management (CRM) encompasses the strategic, organizational and technological capabilities used to manage customer interactions and their economic and service consequences over time. It is not a synonym for a contact-list application. Kumar and Reinartz (2018) distinguish information infrastructure from the wider process of identifying, acquiring, developing and sustaining economically and relationally appropriate relationships. A firm may install expensive software yet achieve little improvement if customer identifiers are unreliable, information cannot be interpreted across departments, or incentives reward indiscriminate messaging. Conversely, a modest service provider can maintain useful intelligence through properly governed transaction histories, consent preferences, complaint registers and a disciplined review routine.

First-party data are obtained through the enterprise's direct relationship with users, such as orders, payments, support contacts and voluntarily supplied preferences. They are not automatically accurate, comprehensive or free from privacy duties merely because the enterprise collected them itself. Transaction logs contain behavioral traces conditional on the channels offered; self-reports depend on comprehension and recall; and complaints depend on the ease and safety of reporting. Third-party demographic datasets or platform-derived audiences may have different consent, quality and contractual limitations. An evidence register should document collection purpose, original source, time stamp, unit, population, transformations, accuracy checks, retention rule and permitted use.

14.9.2 Identity resolution, data quality and segmentation

A CRM system must distinguish customers, accounts, orders, subscriptions, devices, addresses and households. Merging these incorrectly creates phantom customers, erroneous attrition and accidental disclosure. A stable identifier can be helpful, but linking mobile numbers, location, transaction details and inferred household relationships increases privacy risk. Identity resolution should therefore be proportionate: management needs sufficient precision to issue correct invoices and resolve problems, not a complete profile of every person's life. Data-quality controls include uniqueness, completeness, valid time sequence, standardized definitions, error reconciliation, permissions and an audit trail for correction.

Segmentation analytics may use observable behavior, geography, service requirements and documented preferences, but segment labels should not be treated as inherent identities. Recency–frequency–monetary measures can describe transactional patterns, while cohort analysis groups customers by a defined starting event, such as first completed purchase. Neither by itself explains why people behave as observed. Frequent purchasers may be a profitable segment, a financially vulnerable group overusing a costly service, or households that share an account. Predictive segments require out-of-sample calibration, temporal validation, bias assessment and consideration of whether their use is lawful and fair. Chapter 13 develops market-selection strategy; here the question is whether the underlying evidence and classification are trustworthy.

14.9.3 CRM governance as an interfunctional arrangement

Useful CRM governance assigns specific responsibilities. Marketing defines analytically relevant questions and permitted communication purposes; sales records commitments accurately; operations records whether services were actually delivered; finance reconciles payment and contribution; customer support preserves the substance and outcome of complaints; information-security personnel govern access, retention and incident response; and designated leadership authorizes high-risk uses. The governance board should be able to answer why each field is collected, who can access it, what inaccurate values would cause, and how customers can correct records. Centralization without such arrangements can concentrate risk as effectively as it concentrates information.

A practical customer-intelligence release should contain the business question, population and period, data lineage, definitions, descriptive findings, alternative explanations, uncertainty or exclusions, affected groups, proposed action and a review date. Individual-level disclosure should be avoided where aggregation is sufficient. Management should distinguish operational decisions that require an identified customer, such as refunding an incorrect invoice, from analytical decisions that can use appropriately de-identified or aggregated records. Such purpose limitation protects customers and improves organizational focus.

14.9.4 Economic value, data stewardship and the identification problem

CRM frequently creates an apparent conflict between information value and data minimization. More detailed records can improve service reconciliation and error diagnosis, but they can also increase exposure to breach, re-identification, unauthorized secondary use and unequal treatment. Acquisti et al. (2016) show why privacy has no single universally adequate market-price representation: information asymmetry, externalities, context and imperfect decision-making complicate both individual choice and social welfare. A firm should therefore distinguish information essential to fulfilling an explicit contract from information merely convenient for future prediction. The gain from an additional variable should be weighed against its measurement error, operational cost, legal basis and the risks imposed on the person it describes.

The financial contribution of CRM should not be inferred from the fact that high-value customers receive more contacts. Selection is often endogenous: sales teams are more likely to call customers already expected to purchase, and established customers usually have richer records. An observational association between contact frequency and revenue may therefore reflect prior demand rather than an outreach effect. Where appropriate, randomized service improvements or carefully designed phased rollouts can estimate incremental value while protecting essential entitlements. The relevant business question is whether governed use of customer knowledge produces an additional, demonstrable benefit net of service costs and risks, not how many fields have been populated or how sophisticated the segmentation algorithm appears.

14.10 CUSTOMER SATISFACTION AND RETENTION METRICS

14.10.1 Satisfaction, experience, complaints and loyalty

Customer satisfaction is a post-experience evaluation relative to expectations and perceived performance, but its operationalization varies. A transaction-specific satisfaction question measures a different object from overall relationship satisfaction; respondents may also evaluate recent failures or social expectations rather than a stable average. Fornell (1992) advanced customer satisfaction measurement as an interrelated system rather than an isolated item. Oliver (1999) explains why satisfaction and loyalty are connected without being equivalent: loyalty can involve cognitive preference, affective attachment, intention and action, while constraints, habits and social bonds influence continued purchasing. A customer can be satisfied and nevertheless change providers; another can be dissatisfied yet remain because switching is prohibitively difficult.

Complaint counts require a denominator and reporting-channel analysis. Ten complaints per 1,000 orders differ from ten per 100 orders, but a lower rate may also reflect closure of the complaint channel. Time to acknowledgment, substantiated resolution, repeat incidents, safety escalation and unresolved cases deserve measurement alongside volume. A customer-effort measure may capture difficulty in resolving a problem, yet it still depends on whom the firm asks. No composite score should conceal severe, low-frequency harms behind a favorable mean.

14.10.2 A decision-useful metric dictionary

Table 14.1. Core customer intelligence indicators: operational definitions and principal inference limits. *Formulas are generic unless a service contract defines a different risk set; original synthesis informed by Fornell (1992), Oliver (1999), Fader et al. (2005), Gupta et al. (2004) and Kumar and Reinartz (2018).*

Indicator	Definition or calculation	Decision value and interpretive limit
First-order conversion	Eligible prospects completing a first valid order ÷ eligible prospects exposed	Denominator, deduplication and attribution must be specified; not evidence of causality.
CSAT	Respondents meeting a stated satisfaction threshold ÷ valid respondents	Response and threshold selection can distort generalization.
Complaint incidence	Valid complaints ÷ defined transactions or active customers	Reporting ease and severity change interpretation; count serious harms separately.
Period retention	At-risk starting customers still active at end ÷ at-risk starting customers	Define active, cohort, cancellations, reactivation and observation window.
Period churn	At-risk starting customers lost during period ÷ at-risk starting customers	Equals 1 − retention only when same mutually exclusive risk set is used.
Repeat-purchase rate	Eligible first-time buyers making a subsequent order within a fixed window ÷ eligible first-time buyers	Censoring and different purchase cycles undermine naïve comparisons.
Net Promoter Score	% of 9–10 ratings minus % of 0–6 ratings on 0–10 recommendation scale	Not automatically superior to other growth or loyalty indicators.
Customer lifetime value	Expected discounted future contribution attributable to a customer less defined acquisition/service costs	Model depends on survival, horizon, margins, discounting and identification.
Resolution success	Substantiated resolved cases ÷ cases eligible for resolution	'Closed' is not the same as the customer's problem being remedied.

Reichheld (2003) popularized a single recommendation score as a predictor of business growth, but Keiningham et al. (2007), examining longitudinal data, challenged claims of its clear superiority over other indicators. Consequently a Net Promoter Score may be reported as a defined attitudinal indicator, not promoted to a universal sufficient statistic for customer loyalty or profitability. Managers should triangulate perception, behavior, financial contribution and the consequences of failures, then ask whether the proposed intervention can plausibly influence the measured outcome.

14.10.3 Worked cohort-retention analysis

Table 14.2. Illustrative first-purchase cohorts and observed retention. All counts are hypothetical unique customers. Time zero denotes first completed order; each later month records members continuously active in every intervening month, without lapses or reactivation. This deliberately restrictive convention makes later counts nested subsets of earlier counts. Blank cells are not yet observable, not zero outcomes.

Acquisition cohort	Month 0	Month 1	Month 2	Month 3	Month-1 retention
January 2026	120	96	78	60	80.0%
February 2026	100	80	66	Not observed	80.0%
March 2026	80	61	Not observed	Not observed	76.25%

Under the explicitly assumed uninterrupted-activity definition, the first-month retention proportions are 96/120 = 80.0%, 80/100 = 80.0% and 61/80 = 76.25%. Pooling numerators and denominators gives (96 + 80 + 61)/(120 + 100 + 80) = 237/300 = 79.0%, not an unweighted average of cohort rates. For January, second-month retention relative to initial acquisition is 78/120 = 65.0%, while the conditional transition from month 1 to month 2 is 78/96 = 81.25% because the 78 customers are stipulated to be a subset of the preceding 96. Without that nesting assumption, a monthly repeat-purchase table allowing reactivation would not identify the transition probability. Third-month initial-cohort retention is 60/120 = 50.0%. These are distinct statistics; confusing them would exaggerate or understate changes in behavior.

This teaching table assumes an uninterrupted retained-customer state, a consistent definition of qualifying activity and comparable months, none of which is established in real data. A less restrictive active-in-month indicator permits customers to lapse and return; its marginal monthly counts cannot be divided to recover a conditional continuation rate without customer-level transitions. Some customer categories purchase seasonally, and account-linked orders might not represent separate people. The March cohort has a shorter observation history, so a comparison of month-three results across all cohorts is impossible. If the business intends to analyze true active-subscription churn rather than repeat transactions, it must reconstruct a different risk set that distinguishes subscriptions continuing, canceling, lapsing and reactivating. Cohort retention can reveal a pattern; it cannot identify whether a payment intervention, service deterioration or competing offer caused it.

14.10.4 Discounted customer lifetime value and sensitivity

A simplified constant-contribution model illustrates what retention assumptions imply for investment. Let m be contribution per active monthly period after variable service costs, r the constant probability that an active customer remains active into the next period, d the monthly discount rate, and A the acquisition cost paid at time zero. Assume the first period's contribution is received immediately, future continuation follows a stationary geometric process, and there is no reactivation, expansion, contract breakage or correlated customer heterogeneity. The expected net customer lifetime value is then:

$$\mathbf{CLV = \Sigma_{t=0}^{\infty} [m \times r^t/(1 + d)^t] - A = m(1 + d)/(1 + d - r) - A}, \text{ provided } r < 1 + d.$$

For wholly illustrative assumptions of m = RWF 6,000, r = 0.80, d = 0.01 and A = RWF 8,000, gross expected discounted contribution is RWF 6,000 × 1.01/(1.01 − 0.80) = RWF 28,857.14; net CLV is approximately RWF 20,857.14. If r decreases to 0.70 with all else fixed, net CLV falls to about RWF 11,548.39; if r increases to 0.90, it rises to about RWF 47,090.91. The model is highly sensitive to retention and assumes away the very heterogeneity that may dominate a small service enterprise. It is an accounting-conditional illustration, not evidence that investing in retention will generate those returns.

Fader et al. (2005) provide a probabilistic alternative for repeat purchase settings by modeling heterogeneity in transaction rates and dropout processes; Gupta et al. (2004) demonstrate a valuation perspective based on discounted customer earnings. These frameworks illuminate why simple CLV formulas require careful behavioral assumptions. A practical investment decision should compare incremental contribution under plausible intervention effects with incremental delivery, support, credit, privacy and technology costs. Increasing observed retention by making cancellation difficult would produce an ethically distorted improvement and possibly future regulatory liabilities. The relevant outcome is economically and ethically defensible customer value over time, not maximization of a single retention ratio.

14.10.5 Financial interpretation, incremental value and model validity

A CLV estimate can support acquisition and retention decisions only after its unit economics are coherent. Contribution must deduct incremental costs attributable to serving the relationship, rather than equating revenue with margin. Acquisition cost must use an explicit allocation rule, and contractual refunds, bad debt, service recovery, discounts and payment fees must be treated consistently. For recurring services, different customers may have distinct survival hazards and margin trajectories, so the stationary geometric expression should be treated as a benchmark rather than a universal forecasting law. If customers can reactivate after lapses, the transition model requires states and probabilities beyond one continuation parameter. Even the meaning of “active customer” must be reconciled with the cohort definition used earlier.

A deliberately simple payback illustration reinforces this point. If a hypothetical acquisition costs RWF 8,000 and yields RWF 6,000 contribution in each active month, acquisition cost is covered after two actual contributed months in a realized uninterrupted relationship. This statement is not a prediction that all accounts will pay back in two months: some may never return and some may generate costly complaints. Under the Section 14.10.4 probabilistic assumptions, the gross expected discounted contribution after the first two potential periods is only RWF 6,000 + (0.80/1.01 × RWF 6,000) = approximately RWF 10,752.48, of which RWF 8,000 recovers acquisition cost. An intervention costing an additional RWF 3,000 per acquired account would require a defensible estimate of incremental survival or contribution, not merely the observation that highly retained customers have higher CLV.

Model validation should report at least a time-based holdout comparison between predicted and realized activity, calibration across meaningful cohorts, sensitivity to marginal-cost allocation, and whether prediction errors are systematically greater among customer groups with incomplete records. Presenting a precise currency estimate without these qualifications is a form of false precision. A model can be useful even when its point forecast is uncertain, provided that the recommended decision is robust across plausible parameter ranges and the expected gains are not purchased through deceptive cancellation obstacles or discriminatory service withdrawal.

14.11 RESEARCH ETHICS AND CONSUMER PROTECTION

14.11.1 Legal authorization, consent and legitimate data purposes

In Rwanda, Law No. 058/2021 of 13 October 2021 relating to the protection of personal data and privacy supplies the principal statutory framework for relevant processing. Its provisions distinguish several lawful grounds; consent is important but is not the only possible legal basis. Where consent is relied upon, it must meet applicable requirements concerning information, specificity and withdrawal. The law contains additional provisions for children's personal data, including parental-responsibility consent when a controller knows that information concerns a child under sixteen, subject to statutory qualifications. It also addresses controller–processor duties, data-subject rights and security (Republic of Rwanda, 2021d; Data Protection and Privacy Office [DPO], n.d.-d). A researcher should verify the precise current legal instrument and applicable implementation rules rather than assume that an internal business policy substitutes for the law.

Rwanda's Law No. 011/2026 of 26 February 2026 relating to competition and consumer protection, published in the Special Official Gazette of 4 March 2026, provides an additional consumer-facing legal context (Republic of Rwanda, 2026a). It should be consulted when designing claims, online terms, disclosure, marketing and redress. In a European Union setting, Regulation (EU) 2016/679 identifies multiple lawful bases for personal-data processing, including but not limited to consent; its application depends on the controller, data subjects and territorial rules. Importing EU legal assumptions into Rwanda without jurisdictional analysis is as mistaken as assuming that every international firm has identical obligations. This chapter provides scholarly orientation, not a substitute for transaction-specific legal advice.

14.11.2 Substantive ethics beyond compliance checklists

Even a technically lawful collection can raise concerns about power, dignity and manipulation. Collecting every available location event may not be necessary to improve order delivery; combining financial need with an inferred emotional vulnerability to target urgent offers may be exploitative. The proportionality test asks whether the legitimate question can be answered with less intrusive data, whether use is understandable to affected persons, whether people can challenge adverse conclusions, and whether benefits justify residual risks. Consumers who decline tracking should not be silently treated as uninterested or inferior customers.

Children, people under financial stress, consumers with limited literacy or access, and those facing urgent health or household needs warrant special care. Research recruitment must avoid presenting voluntary participation as a condition of essential service. Survey questions about debt, medical history, family relationships and location should be justified by a genuine research need rather than by their potential predictive power. Informing people in a language they understand is a matter of substantive agency, not merely a formal check box. Where algorithmic decisions affect price eligibility or service access, companies should provide meaningful oversight, correction and pathways of remedy appropriate to the impact.

14.11.3 Fairness, interpretability and retention of research data

Statistical fairness is not achieved merely by excluding sensitive attributes from a prediction model. Postal code, device type, transaction regularity and network connectivity can proxy for protected or disadvantaged characteristics. Group outcome differences may be legitimate, harmful or confounded; determining which requires examining the decision's purpose, alternatives and effects. Managers should review both false exclusions and erroneous inclusions, alongside calibration, the availability of appeals and the provenance of labels used as 'ground truth.' A churn model trained on customers who can be contacted may classify disconnected customers as less loyal when they simply have less reliable connectivity.

Data minimization and retention limits also improve inferential discipline. Duplicated stale records amplify mistakes; unnecessary linkage makes errors difficult to trace; unrestricted access increases opportunities for misuse. Ethical intelligence therefore includes a destruction schedule, role-based access, separation between research and sales activation, documentation of consent or other legal basis, and incident escalation. An independent reviewer should be able to reconstruct why a dataset was used and who authorized consequential decisions.

14.11.4 Rights, welfare and responsible behavioral intervention

Consumer-protection questions can be approached through several competing normative frameworks. A welfare analysis asks whether the practice creates benefits net of costs and harms; a rights-based analysis asks whether certain forms of deception, coerced disclosure or unfair exclusion remain unacceptable even when aggregate benefit appears positive; a procedural account asks whether affected consumers receive intelligible reasons, fair opportunities to object and accessible remedy. These approaches need not produce the same judgment. For example, an aggressive default may increase completed payments while benefiting the provider and some consenting customers, yet remain problematic if it predictably misleads less attentive users. Identifying that disagreement is analytically preferable to declaring all profitable personalization either beneficial or exploitative (Acquisti et al., 2016; Luguri & Strahilevitz, 2021).

A proportional decision rule should therefore ask four linked questions. Is the commercial purpose legitimate and specified? Does credible evidence indicate that the intervention actually advances it? Is there a materially less intrusive or less manipulative means? Can the residual burdens be justified to those most exposed, including children, persons with disabilities and consumers facing financial pressure? These questions must be answered with the relevant jurisdiction’s requirements in view, but legal permission and ethical justification are separate claims. Where a business cannot verify that an interface provides comprehensible information or an effective opt-out, deferring deployment is a defensible decision even in the absence of established monetary harm.

14.12 EMERGING BEHAVIOURAL RESEARCH

14.12.1 Generative AI, synthetic participants and the problem of empirical substitution

Generative AI can help refine exploratory questions, summarize large textual corpora, compare candidate survey wording and assist with reproducible code. These uses are not equivalent to collecting valid observations from people. A language model instructed to 'answer as a low-income consumer in Kigali' produces text shaped by training data and prompting, not a sampled respondent with firsthand experience. Boelaert et al. (2025) found serious limitations when language models were used to emulate opinion-survey respondents, including biases and insufficient response variation. Their evidence concerns the models and designs examined and should not be made into a timeless claim about all future systems. It nonetheless provides a strong reason not to substitute synthetic responses for population-representative field evidence without rigorous independent validation.

Synthetic records can be useful for testing survey software, evaluating a reporting pipeline or exploring hypothetical scenarios when clearly marked and separated from evidence. They must not be counted as actual participants, appended to a real dataset without disclosure, or used to imply observed customer preferences. Research that uses AI-supported coding should retain the original permissible data, human review rules, prompt or model version where relevant, validation sample and a record of disagreements. A multilingual customer-support classifier may have materially different performance on Kinyarwanda language varieties from its performance on English; acceptable deployment requires testing against locally relevant examples and harms.

14.12.2 Privacy-preserving analytics, federated systems and limits of de-identification

Privacy-preserving approaches include aggregation, strict access controls, secure computation, federated analysis and differential privacy. Dwork (2006) formalized differential privacy as a mathematical approach to limiting how much an output can reveal about an individual's inclusion in a dataset. Its guarantees depend on a stated privacy parameter, mechanism, data processing and composition across releases. It does not make an arbitrary table anonymous, eliminate the need for a lawful basis or guarantee that a poorly designed analysis is unbiased. Removing names alone is not sufficient when rare purchase combinations or location histories can re-identify people through auxiliary information.

A small Rwandan service provider should not adopt complicated privacy technology merely because it is fashionable. The first questions concern what must be recorded for service delivery, what can be aggregated, how long records should survive, whether access is limited, and whether information leaves the organization. Technical architecture belongs principally in Chapters 28–29; here the point is that the statistical usefulness and privacy implications of customer intelligence must be evaluated together. In some cases a small, high-quality, securely governed dataset is more valuable than a large customer graph built through opaque aggregation.

14.12.3 Prediction, causal explanation and human oversight

Machine-learning models can predict churn or likely service demand from patterns in historical observations. Prediction can guide capacity allocation but does not establish that a suggested intervention will alter outcomes. High predicted churn may be driven by prior service failure, region, purchasing cycle or a change in account coding. A policy that targets predicted 'high value' customers may systematically withhold support from new or poorly measured users. The appropriate governance sequence includes a clearly defined prediction target, temporal validation, subgroup review, documented decision rule, human appeal, controlled intervention testing where feasible and monitoring for drift or unintended consequences (Huang & Rust, 2021; Tabassi, 2023).

The most important technological distinction is between an analytical recommendation and delegated authority. A model can rank cases for further investigation without being authorized to deny service, increase prices or expose private information. Human oversight must be meaningful: a supervisor who automatically approves model output is not a credible safeguard. Emerging tools should be assessed against error costs, institutional capability, governance, local language performance, accessibility and recourse. The enduring principle is not

that more automation makes research more scientific, but that claims become more defensible when data, methods, assumptions and consequences remain open to challenge.

14.12.4 Validation against real-world populations and institutional capacity

AI-assisted consumer research creates a distinctive problem of construct validity. A system may score highly on a convenient benchmark yet fail when local consumers use code-switching, informal terms, dialect variations or low-connectivity devices. External validation requires performance evidence drawn from real, lawfully obtained target-population materials, not only model-generated test responses. Sampling must deliberately include rare but consequential failures and groups likely to be underserved. Measures should reflect the use case: transcription accuracy, meaning-preserving translation, false complaint closure, inappropriate inference of intent and harmful disparities may all matter more than an aggregate classification score. The implementation decision must distinguish acceptable assistance with research administration from authority over sensitive decisions.

Synthetic participants offer an instructive contrast. Boelaert et al. (2025) found systematic distortions when large language models simulated opinion-poll respondents, illustrating why generated text is not an observed response from a defined sampling frame. Research teams can use such text as a hypothetical stimulus for instrument testing, but should disclose its provenance and test any proposed substitution against independent human responses on the same constructs. Privacy-enhancing computation similarly requires concrete threat models and verification; a formal privacy guarantee does not establish measurement quality or remove legal duties. In constrained enterprises, robust access control, a defensible retention schedule and competent human review may deliver more reliable protection than sophisticated but poorly administered technologies.

14.13 RWANDA-BASED APPLICATION AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON

14.13.1 What official secondary evidence can establish

Rwanda's FinScope Survey 2024, produced by Access to Finance Rwanda with public and private partners, provides a credible documented case of research that distinguishes financial-service access, use and inclusive-finance concerns. The national research sampled 14,000 households and reports approximately 13,994 completed individual interviews, with a stratified, multistage selection design and questionnaire translation into Kinyarwanda. It concerns eligible people aged sixteen years and above in its defined household frame, not every child or individual living in an institution. The official summary reports financial inclusion of 96% in 2024 compared with 93% in 2020; 92% were formally included. About 86% reported owning or having used mobile money, while the percentage holding a registered mobile-money wallet in their own name rose from approximately 60% in 2020 to 77% in 2024 (Access to Finance Rwanda [AFR], 2024; National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda [NISR], 2024). The distinction between 'owning or using' and holding an account in one's own name is central: these are different constructs and should not be merged into one customer-acquisition figure.

The results establish substantial financial-service engagement within the survey's measurement framework, but they do not establish that 86% of people buy products online, that the same percentage can afford a household delivery subscription, or that any particular firm has achieved high retention. Nor does the increase between survey rounds alone identify the causal effect of a specific public policy or technology. For a service operator, the evidence supports a more modest conclusion: mobile financial infrastructure is relevant to research and service design, and the contrast between access and usage deserves investigation. The public documentation of its questionnaire, sampling and data dictionary offers opportunities for secondary inquiry subject to access, confidentiality and weighting requirements. It does not authorize an investigator to claim analysis of microdata that have not been retrieved and analyzed.

Kenya's 2024 FinAccess Household Survey provides a meaningful but non-equivalent regional comparator. The Central Bank of Kenya, Kenya National Bureau of Statistics and Financial Sector Deepening Kenya report that

formal financial access reached 84.8% in 2024, while 9.9% were excluded from financial services (Central Bank of Kenya et al., 2024). The Kenyan survey sampled people aged sixteen and above but its published analysis was based on those aged eighteen and above; Rwanda FinScope's reported population concerns people aged sixteen and above. The survey constructs, financial-sector categories, time frames and sampling weights also require assessment before substantive cross-country inference. It is therefore invalid to subtract 84.8 from Rwanda's 96 and interpret the 11.2-percentage-point difference as a measured national advantage in online buying, payment convenience or digital loyalty. Such a subtraction compares distinct definitions and cannot identify the reason for any observed national difference.

14.13.2 A secondary-data research plan for a Kigali service business

Return to the wholly hypothetical household water-delivery and refill enterprise introduced in Section 14.0. Management must decide whether to offer mobile-money payment as the default, maintain equivalent cash and agent alternatives, and invest in an inclusive service-recovery system. Its first decision is not whether the national mobile-money statistic is high. It must identify whether payment choice affects successful ordering, whether payment failures contribute to attrition, and whether access barriers are concentrated among particular eligible households. A defensible initial phase can be completed with *secondary evidence and existing lawfully held administrative records*, without claiming to survey or interview anyone. The proposal below is a prospective research plan, not an account of analysis already performed.

Table 14.3. Rwanda service-provider research design and evidence-quality matrix. *Sources identified are public or organizational categories; no customer-level data access, analysis or approval is implied.*

Decision question	Candidate secondary evidence	Unit and intended inference	Main limitation and safeguard
How widespread is financial-service access?	AFR FinScope 2024 report, questionnaire and NISR survey metadata	Eligible national individuals, not paying service customers	Respect age, sampling frame, survey weights and use-versus-ownership definitions.
Which local areas could plausibly be served?	NISR 2022 census geography (NISR, 2025d) and relevant local service records	Area population and infrastructure, not observed willingness to buy	Do not count residents as addressable subscribers; confirm spatial resolution.
Where do payment attempts fail?	Existing authorized, aggregated payment-reconciliation logs	Attempts by method, date, location and error class	Excludes cash-only nonusers and may contain sensitive transaction identifiers.
Why might first buyers not return?	Authorized cohort summaries, complaint codes and service-failure histories	Defined first-order accounts and qualifying follow-up events	Correlation does not identify cause; preserve account/household distinction.
What consumer safeguards apply?	Rwanda DPO guidance and primary 2021/2026 statutes	Legal duties for specified processing and market conduct	Verify applicability, current instruments, lawful basis and sector obligations.
What can a regional comparator establish?	Kenya FinAccess 2024 report and methodological documentation	Financial-access indicators within the Kenyan adult analysis frame	Harmonize definitions before comparing; no cross-country causal inference.

A first-stage documentary protocol would specify the source file, issuing institution, reference date, survey universe, variable interpretation and exact table or extract location. The analytical team would then build a concept-to-source crosswalk showing which questions are supported by public data and which require internal operational records. For internal analysis, the finance and service teams would reconcile valid first-order transactions, payment attempts, refunds, deliveries, complaints and cancellations. If permission and data adequacy permit, a stratified cohort analysis could compare payment instruments while explicitly

acknowledging selection. A descriptive result should not be promoted into a causal recommendation without a credible identification design.

A second-stage inquiry would seek falsification rather than a comforting positive pattern. If mobile-money users appear to retain longer, are their transactions concentrated in areas with faster delivery, more reliable telephones or higher incomes? Does the association persist when the definition of active customers changes? Were refunds processed similarly across methods? How many eligible households attempted to register but could not complete the process? If nonusers are missing from company records, the research should say so. The methodological response is to identify evidence gaps and, only if necessary and separately authorized, design ethically appropriate primary inquiry rather than fabricate missing behavior from digital traces.

A third-stage decision memo would compare alternatives: maintain all current payment options with improved reconciliation; provide clear payment confirmation and a human escalation route; or test a redesigned payment process on a limited, adequately monitored basis. Every alternative would be assessed for incremental cost, accessibility, fraud exposure, customer experience, operational feasibility and lawful data processing. The recommended intervention would include a defined baseline, pre-specified outcomes, stopping conditions for harm, an accountable decision owner and a review interval. What makes this plan rigorous is not the quantity of data it proposes to collect, but the alignment of its questions, available evidence, feasible decisions and limits of inference.

14.13.3 Transferability and institutional realism

International examples demonstrate mechanisms, not ready-made coefficients. An online review effect identified for books in the United States cannot be copied into a Rwandan essential-service forecast; a customer-lifetime model fitted to high-frequency subscription purchases should not be assumed to describe irregular household purchases. Infrastructure, spending capacity, literacy, institutional trust, competition, consumer protection and service reliability alter the mechanisms through which attention, search and repeat use operate. Yet contextual adaptation need not imply abandoning general principles. Measurement validity, clear decision rights, truthful disclosure, counterfactual reasoning and fair complaint resolution remain defensible requirements across settings, even when suitable instruments and thresholds differ.

The strongest African application is therefore comparative and interrogative rather than celebratory. FinScope and FinAccess show how careful survey designs can identify financial-service participation within well-defined populations. A business can build upon that evidence only after identifying the missing bridge to a specific purchase process. Ignoring that bridge leads to inflated market estimates and weakly founded investment; respecting it makes market knowledge both more useful and more honest.

14.13.4 Source reconciliation and the boundary between survey inference and business decisions

The primary FinScope 2024 publication deserves a specific source-reconciliation qualification. Its survey methodology reports a target of 14,000 households and 13,994 completed interviews, and its headline percentages of 96% total inclusion, 92% formal inclusion, approximately 86% mobile-money use and 77% personally registered mobile-wallet ownership are repeatedly stated. However, different narrative passages attach different absolute population counts to the 77% registered-wallet estimate, including approximately 5.8 million and 6.3 million. Because the reported counts cannot both be the same estimate under one denominator, this chapter retains the consistently reported percentage while not reproducing a disputed absolute count as an independently verified fact (AFR, 2024, pp. 11, 38, 72). A replicating analyst should consult the original weighted tabulations and survey documentation before reusing the absolute number.

The Kenya comparison adds a second denominator problem rather than resolving the first. Kenya FinAccess sampled persons aged sixteen and above but primarily reported financial-access findings for those aged eighteen and above, while Rwanda FinScope reports a sixteen-and-above adult frame. The construct called formal access

may also be operationalized differently by country. Accordingly, the two published rates are presented as separately documented context, not as a harmonized ranking. In a firm-level research memorandum, the crucial next step would be a source crosswalk identifying household versus individual units, reference dates, weights, age restrictions, formal versus informal classifications, and the product-market assumptions needed to move from an access estimate to an addressable-market estimate. That translation must be argued, never assumed.

14.14 INTERFUNCTIONAL DEPENDENCIES AND RESPONSIBLE CUSTOMER VALUE

14.14.1 A common evidence contract across enterprise functions

Customer intelligence operates at the interfaces among marketing, strategy, operations, finance, technology and governance. Market researchers may identify a preference for rapid delivery, yet operations must determine whether speed can be achieved safely and finance must assess working-capital consequences. CRM records may show customers 'lost' after late deliveries, but a complete diagnosis requires service capacity, inventory availability, route reliability, credit terms and data-quality checks. Customer experience is thus a system-level outcome. Improving one channel metric while transferring costs to workers or concealing product limitations does not constitute integrated enterprise performance.

The interfunctional relationship is reciprocal. Operations data can reveal whether customers received the promised offering; accounting distinguishes recognized revenue from cash collected and contribution after variable costs; people management shapes service competence and the psychological safety needed to report failure; information systems determine what can be measured reliably; governance sets permissible uses of personal data and makes remediation enforceable. The customer should not become an abstract 'asset' whose economic value legitimates unrestricted extraction. Rather, customer relationships create reciprocal obligations and require the enterprise to manage information as entrusted, context-dependent evidence (Kumar & Reinartz, 2018; Lemon & Verhoef, 2016).

Table 14.4. Cross-functional customer-intelligence responsibility and evidence register. *Original managerial instrument for accountable implementation.*

Function	Distinct decision responsibility	Evidence or control	Critical failure to monitor
Marketing/research	Define question, construct and inferential claim	Research brief, sampling and analysis note	Promoting correlations as causal answers
Sales/customer service	Record promises, feedback and remedy	Accurate contact and case history	Silencing or prematurely closing complaints
Operations	Validate actual service performance	Deliveries, quality and failure classification	Optimizing speed while neglecting safety
Finance	Reconcile receipts and contribution	Payment reconciliation and unit economics	Confusing booked revenue with realized value
Information systems	Preserve identity, access and lineage	Access logs, retention rules and audits	Unauthorized linkage or stale customer records
Governance/legal oversight	Authorize use and resolve high-risk conflicts	Legal-basis register and escalation decisions	Treating technical capability as authorization

The resulting analytical claim is conditional: customer understanding contributes to enterprise value when a valid observation is linked to an identifiable decision mechanism, feasible operational response, financial sustainability and justified treatment of stakeholders. It can fail at each link. Better research will not remedy a

provider's inability to deliver; excellent delivery records do not establish customer understanding if dissatisfied nonusers remain invisible; and a profitable personalization system is indefensible if it relies on unlawful or manipulative practices. This interdependence prepares the transition to Chapters 15 and 16 without reproducing their technical ownership of offerings, pricing, selling and channel execution.

14.14.2 Integrating evidentiary authority with operational responsibility

Cross-functional integration requires a shared evidence contract rather than a large centralized dashboard. Each function should agree on the customer unit, event definition, temporal cut-off, source lineage and the kind of inference the indicator permits. The marketing team cannot describe a payment failure as customer dissatisfaction without corroboration, while finance cannot treat a transaction as an economically valuable retained relationship before refunds and service costs are considered. Operations must have authority to correct documented quality failures, and the privacy function must be able to contest uses of data that exceed the stated legitimate purpose. A decision record should name the owner of the proposed intervention, the evidence that supports it, the evidence that could overturn it and the resulting responsibilities for customer remedy.

The resulting configuration is a conceptual proposition rather than an observed universal best practice. It predicts that accountability will be more defensible where research definitions, operational events and decision rights are reconciled before performance claims enter executive reporting. Testing that proposition would require variation in governance arrangements and measured service outcomes, with credible attention to company size, technological capability, market conditions and prior performance. Its practical use in the meantime is diagnostic: it reveals where research conclusions cannot be acted upon, where operational outcomes are absent from the data, and where no named authority can correct a foreseeable harm.

14.15 CRITICAL SYNTHESIS, RESEARCH AGENDA AND CONCLUSION

The chapter's theoretical traditions disagree about the stability and location of preferences. Economic choice models emphasize feasible alternatives and trade-offs; planned-behavior accounts highlight attitudes, norms and perceived control; behavioural economics identifies framing and reference dependence; constructive-choice research treats preferences as partly formed during the decision; sociological and diffusion approaches expose social relationships and institutional conditions. These theories should not be collapsed into one predictive formula. Their value lies in making different observable implications explicit. If customers endorse a service yet fail to adopt it, the researcher must examine control, transaction costs and alternatives rather than presume a single psychological deficiency. If purchases persist despite complaints, switching constraints, habit and relationship commitments offer rival explanations. The explanatory achievement is discrimination among plausible mechanisms, not a universal catalogue of factors.

A parallel disagreement concerns what customer data can establish. Attitude surveys can measure constructed responses under particular instruments; administrative records capture selected transactions; qualitative accounts illuminate situated meaning; experiments estimate identified treatment effects when their assumptions hold; and AI predictions characterize statistical regularities in the data-generating system. Each can contribute, yet none alone warrants all the descriptive, causal and normative conclusions management might wish to draw. A defensible customer-intelligence system makes these differences explicit and revisable.

14.15.1 Boundary conditions and proposed integrative model

A useful integrative model should be explicit about its analytical boundaries. This chapter proposes that customer intelligence becomes decision-worthy only if four tests are satisfied together: construct adequacy, inferential warrant, operational feasibility and justified treatment of affected people. Construct adequacy asks whether the measured quantity corresponds to the consumer phenomenon the decision requires; inferential warrant asks whether the sampling and design support the proposed descriptive, predictive or causal claim; operational feasibility asks whether the enterprise can deliver the recommended change at sustainable cost; and justified treatment asks whether the decision respects relevant duties, fair participation and rights of remedy. The tests are neither assumed independent nor offered as a validated numerical index. Failure of any one test can undermine a recommendation even when the others appear strong.

The model is deliberately asymmetric. Evidence that a measure is invalid cannot be compensated for by a promising return-on-investment projection; an unlawful use of customer information cannot be validated by forecasting accuracy; and a legally permissible intervention can remain ineffective or unaffordable. This differs from a single weighted managerial scorecard in which an attractive value on one dimension can conceal an unacceptable failure on another. The analytical contribution is thus a set of non-substitutable conditions for responsible managerial inference, suitable for critical comparison and future empirical testing rather than a claim of theoretical novelty beyond the existing literatures on evidence, customer relationships and accountable governance.

The synthesis yields several propositions suitable for future empirical assessment. First, improved identity resolution should reduce measured duplicate-customer error, but the net benefit will depend on privacy risks and shared-account prevalence. Second, complaint accessibility may initially increase recorded complaint rates while improving substantive accountability, so short-run complaint counts may be inversely related to governance quality. Third, the association between digitally recorded engagement and retention may weaken after accounting for channel access, service reliability and household sharing. Fourth, decision quality may improve when the research brief requires alternative explanations and pre-specified action criteria, although the size and generality of any effect remain unknown. Fifth, AI-assisted classification could improve workflow speed while worsening subgroup validity where language or customer representation is inadequate. These are *research propositions*, not demonstrated findings.

A rigorous future programme could use licensed, anonymized administrative panels to assess retention measurement; harmonized survey modules to examine access and nonadoption; qualitative process tracing to study trust and complaint resolution; pre-registered field experiments to compare service interventions; and institutional documentary analysis to assess rights and enforcement. Designs should disclose selection and attrition, plausible counterfactuals, temporal limitations, appropriate uncertainty and the possibility that vulnerable populations may be less observable. Research in Rwanda and comparable African markets should not simply replicate imported questionnaires: it should establish locally meaningful constructs, accessible language, valid denominators and defensible theories of institutional context.

The central conclusion is that customer intelligence deserves to be treated as a disciplined organizational responsibility rather than an inventory of data or a formula for persuasion. Its minimum intellectual conditions are clearly specified decision contexts, behavioural explanation, valid measurement, explicit uncertainty and opportunities for correction. Its minimum ethical conditions are truthfulness, proportionality, privacy, fairness and effective remedy. When those conditions hold, enterprise decisions can become more informed without reducing the people served to clicks, predicted revenue or manipulable psychological variables. That conclusion is both a specialist contribution to marketing research and a necessary part of the book's account of responsible, integrated enterprise performance.

Taken together, the analysis establishes a hierarchy of responsibilities rather than a checklist of techniques. Purchasing decisions must first be situated within the correct individual, household or institutional unit; theories

must then be tested against the feasible alternatives and explanatory mechanisms of that setting. Observations require valid measurement and defensible population boundaries before they can support managerial inference. Customer records, retention estimates and economic valuations need explicit identity, timing and cost assumptions, while national financial-inclusion figures must remain measures of financial participation rather than proxies for product demand. Finally, the proposed action must be operationally feasible and open to correction without sacrificing consumer privacy, fair access, comprehensible information or effective remedy. The intellectual contribution lies in preserving these distinctions across functional boundaries.

14.16 KEY CONCEPTS, EDUCATIONAL ASSESSMENT AND FURTHER READING

14.16.1 Key concepts and working definitions

The following operational glossary preserves the distinctions needed for research design and managerial interpretation. Terms that are closely related in ordinary business usage are separated when they imply different measurement units or forms of evidence.

Term	Working definition
Consumer behaviour	Situated selection, acquisition, use, evaluation and discontinuation of offerings.
Buying centre	Individuals and roles involved in specifying, authorizing, influencing and using an organizational purchase.
Construct	An attribute whose meaning must be specified before it can be measured.
Causal estimand	The explicitly defined effect of one intervention relative to another in a stated target population.
Customer journey	An analytically mapped and potentially recursive sequence of customer touchpoints and experiences.
Customer intelligence	Evidence-based, governed interpretation of customer-relevant observations for accountable decisions.
Customer relationship management (CRM)	Coordinated processes and technologies for managing interactions, service quality and enduring relationships.
Cohort	Population identified by a qualifying common start event and time origin.
Retention and churn	Continued qualifying participation and corresponding defined loss from a shared at-risk population.
Customer lifetime value (CLV)	Expected discounted contribution net of specified costs under disclosed assumptions.
Selection bias	Systematic distortion when the observed units are not representative for the intended inference.
Measurement validity	Evidence that scores or observations justify the specific interpretation and decision use.
Differential privacy	A formal framework that bounds the disclosure of information from statistical computations under a specified mechanism.
Censoring	Incomplete observation of a unit’s future event history during a defined study window.

14.16.2 Questions for conceptual and critical assessment

Foundational questions. Explain why a registered mobile-money account and a distinct paying customer are not equivalent statistical units. Contrast attitude, intention, behavior and loyalty with a concrete service example. Reconstruct the customer journey and explain two circumstances in which a buyer may bypass conventional stages. Distinguish the inferential purpose of an interview, a probability survey and a randomized interface experiment. Explain why greater complaint reporting can coexist with better organizational accountability.

Advanced discussion. Critically evaluate the explanatory reach of the theory of planned behaviour and prospect theory for a recurring essential-service purchase. Assess the claim that a 96% national financial-inclusion estimate proves that an online-only retail model is feasible. Defend or reject the proposition that an enterprise should maximize predicted CLV, taking account of survival modeling, vulnerable consumers, privacy and cross-functional costs. Explain how shared household accounts challenge customer-level CRM analytics and propose a proportionate correction process. Evaluate whether a language model's simulated responses can replace real respondents, stating the empirical evidence that would be required before making such a claim.

14.16.3 Applied cohort and research-design exercises

Exercise A: cohort arithmetic (LO7). Using Table 14.2, recompute each first-month retention percentage, the pooled first-month rate, January's month-two retention relative to acquisition, and the conditional month-two transition. Explain why March's month-three outcome is missing, not zero. Recalculate net CLV under the stated formula when the acquisition cost increases to RWF 11,000, and state which assumptions would invalidate the result for a seasonal buyer.

Exercise B: inferential audit (LO4–LO6). A company observes 65% thirty-day repeat purchasing among mobile-money customers and 52% among cash customers. Without assuming the company randomly assigned payment method, develop at least three rival explanations, specify the data needed to investigate each and design an ethical comparison. Your answer must distinguish the observed 13-percentage-point difference from a causal effect and specify how device access, location and service quality affect interpretation.

Capstone assessment: Rwanda research memorandum (LO1–LO8). Prepare a 2,500–3,500-word decision memorandum for the hypothetical Kigali household service provider. Use only sources you can document: AFR FinScope 2024, NISR survey/census documentation, Kenya FinAccess 2024, relevant primary Rwandan legal instruments and appropriate peer-reviewed methods. Define the decision, eligible population, key constructs, research questions and precise boundaries of available evidence; formulate a secondary-data analysis protocol; produce one journey map and one metric dictionary; audit two plausible sources of bias; and recommend a proportionate pilot with explicit measures of effectiveness, fairness and remedy. Any illustrative assumptions must be labeled as such; no primary research or customer-specific result may be invented.

14.16.4 Educator guidance and scoring criteria

For the capstone assessment, a 100-point analytic rubric allocates 15 points to accurately specifying purchasing context and comparing theories, 20 to construct quality and source provenance, 15 to methodological validity and counterfactual reasoning, 15 to reproducible cohort and discounted-value calculations, 15 to Rwanda-specific interpretation and international comparability, 10 to consumer rights and inclusion, and 10 to coherent evidence-based scholarly argumentation. An excellent submission recognizes that official financial inclusion does not measure online purchase demand, that self-selection prevents causal attribution from the payment-method contrast, and that aggregate CRM performance cannot establish the circumstances of excluded customers. Mathematical correctness is necessary but not sufficient: learners should be credited for identifying when a calculation answers the wrong question.

For assessment alignment, LO1–LO3 are tested through decision-role maps and theory-based journey interpretations; LO4–LO5 through the research brief, sampling critique and experimental reasoning; LO6

through CRM and legal-basis analysis; LO7 through the fully disclosed cohort and discounted-value exercise; and LO8 through the capstone memorandum's integrated recommendation and revision plan. Instructors should require students to cite the exact edition and population definition of national datasets, disclose sources not accessed, and differentiate observed figures from constructed examples.

Selected further reading. Bettman, Luce and Payne (1998) provide a sophisticated account of constructed preferences; Lemon and Verhoef (2016) offer a cross-touchpoint customer-journey synthesis; Kohavi, Tang and Xu (2020) explain experimental design and diagnostic failures; Kumar and Reinartz (2018) develop CRM as a management system; and the original AFR (2024) and Kenya FinAccess (2024) reports illustrate the importance of sampling frames, conceptual definitions and careful comparison.

CHAPTER 15

Product Management, Branding, and Pricing Strategies

ABSTRACT

An enterprise's offering is neither its physical output alone nor a marketing promise detached from delivery. Product management establishes which benefits will be designed, tested, maintained and withdrawn; branding organizes the meanings and expectations attached to those benefits; pricing determines the conditions under which value is exchanged and economic returns can sustain its provision. This chapter develops a theoretically critical and practically usable account of these interdependent decisions. Drawing on a purposive synthesis of foundational marketing economics, consumer research, service design, innovation management, pricing science and authoritative regulatory documents, it examines twelve domains from product architecture and portfolios to revenue management, business-to-business contracts, post-purchase service, consumer protection and algorithmic offers. Rwanda's business-establishment evidence and specialty-coffee institutions provide a contextual foundation, while comparative international scholarship tests the limits of transferring practices developed for large, data-rich enterprises. A fully disclosed hypothetical Rwandan packaged-food case contrasts cost-plus and customer-value pricing through contribution, break-even, elasticity and stress testing. Original instruments comprise a product-to-customer-value chain, product-portfolio decision matrix, launch-gate protocol, pricing model and accountable-price review. The central argument is that responsible product performance depends on credible alignment among experienced customer benefit, operational capability, brand claims, contractual rights, affordable access and sufficient contribution to sustain the enterprise. No causal effect is attributed to the constructed case, and the integrated decision model is offered as an analytical synthesis rather than a validated prediction.

Keywords: product management; service design; product portfolio; brand equity; brand credibility; new-product development; price elasticity; value-based pricing; revenue management; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

By completing the chapter, readers should be able to (LO1) distinguish products, services and solutions and specify their core, actual and augmented benefits; (LO2) evaluate product portfolios and life-cycle narratives without treating descriptive stages as deterministic forecasts; (LO3) design evidence-informed product concepts, prototypes and launch gates; (LO4) diagnose brand identity, equity and credibility through meaningful measures and potential sources of bias; (LO5) compute and critically compare cost-plus, contribution-based, value-based, competitive and capacity-sensitive prices; (LO6) assess pricing in consumer, business-to-business and public-procurement settings with full lifecycle costs and contractual risks; (LO7) construct a defensible post-purchase, product-claims and dynamic-pricing governance arrangement; and (LO8) integrate Rwandan and international evidence in a cross-functional product-and-price recommendation with transparent assumptions and sensitivity tests.

The argument progresses from the nature of the market offering (15.1), its portfolio and life-cycle implications (15.2), user-centred design (15.3), brand credibility (15.4) and disciplined innovation (15.5) to the economic logic of price (15.6), pricing methods (15.7), perishable capacity (15.8), organizational purchasing (15.9), service and recovery (15.10), ethical and statutory constraints (15.11), and digitally mediated offerings (15.12). Sections 15.13–15.16 develop a documented Rwandan application, an auditable teaching case, interfunctional and philosophical synthesis, and an assessment package. Chapters 13–14 own market orientation and

customer-intelligence methodology; Chapter 16 owns communications, selling and channels; Chapter 23 develops cost-accounting architecture. This chapter owns the decisions that translate evidence about a market into a trustworthy offering and a defensible price.

15.0 INTRODUCTION: WHEN AN ATTRACTIVE PRODUCT DESTROYS VALUE

Suppose an enterprise in Kigali has developed a shelf-stable, nutritionally formulated breakfast product. A local retailer praises its packaging; consumer testing suggests that preparation time matters; the production supervisor wants standardized ingredients; the marketing team proposes a premium brand; and the owner considers pricing each pack by adding 30 per cent to estimated full cost. The apparent simplicity disappears as soon as the enterprise faces actual decisions. The total cost depends on volume; the chosen price changes that volume; the product's claimed health benefits require evidence; returns and complaints may consume the margin; and an identity designed for affluent urban shoppers may exclude households for whom affordability is most consequential. A successful product concept can fail commercially or ethically when its design, representation and price are decided independently. The firm described here is entirely hypothetical.

Product management is the continuing coordination of an offering's purpose, requirements, development, commercial performance, risk, evolution and eventual retirement. Branding concerns the distinctive identifying and interpretive associations that enable audiences to recognize an offering, form expectations and judge its credibility. Pricing is the structured determination of monetary consideration and associated conditions of exchange. These activities overlap but are analytically different. Quality can be engineered without being recognized; a recognized brand can make promises the organization fails to satisfy; a price can cover unit manufacturing cost while failing to recover the cost of customer service, working capital or legally required remediation. Conversely, a low price may improve accessibility but make continued supply impossible (Zeithaml, 1988; Keller, 1993; Anderson et al., 2006).

The underlying problem combines knowledge, coordination and legitimacy. The epistemic question asks how a company can establish what benefit people experience rather than merely what they say they prefer. The economic question asks which design and price sustain a feasible production and service system. The normative question asks what claims and terms of exchange are justified when consumers have unequal knowledge, incomes and bargaining power. A price that maximizes a short-run spreadsheet objective may reduce trust or transfer risk to vulnerable buyers. A supposedly ethical price, however, is not sustainable unless the enterprise can reliably finance the service and compensate its contributors. Product and pricing governance must therefore be assessed jointly, using explicitly stated criteria rather than one unexamined maximand (Kahneman et al., 1986; Bolton et al., 2003).

15.0.1 Evidence design, source hierarchy and limits

This chapter uses a targeted, critical synthesis of secondary literature and primary institutional documents rather than a registered systematic review, original consumer survey or enterprise field experiment. Source identification combined the author–title searches for seminal contributions on perceived value, brand equity, signaling, service blueprinting, product development, fair prices and revenue management with topical retrievals for Rwanda's business enterprise survey, specialty coffee, competition and consumer-protection legislation, data privacy, and international responsible-pricing guidance. The documentary reference date for this manuscript is 1 November 2026. Sources were selected for explanatory distinctiveness, bibliographic traceability, institutional authority, relevance to the chapter's subject and ability to support a bounded claim. No comprehensive database screening, invented PRISMA counts or pooled effect sizes are represented.

The evidence hierarchy is deliberately discriminating. Foundational theory proposes mechanisms conditional on assumptions; an experiment or observational study supports only the inference warranted by its research design; an official law describes operative rules within a defined jurisdiction and period; an official statistical release

describes its population and definitions; and an agency's report of an industry promotion establishes that the activity was reported, not that it caused subsequent earnings. All monetary figures and demand observations in the Kigali teaching case are constructed assumptions. Their arithmetic is reproducible, but no conclusion about actual consumer willingness to pay, production costs or profitability of an identified Rwandan enterprise follows from them. This distinction is a methodological obligation, not a qualification to be removed during typesetting.

15.0.2 Intellectual genealogy and the unit of analysis

The intellectual genealogy runs from classical utility and price theory to marketing's distinction between tangible goods and services, information economics, strategic brand management, customer-experience research and platform-mediated product systems. Early product classification tended to organize goods by physical attributes and distribution; later frameworks differentiated functional benefits, symbolic meaning, service processes and relationship-specific solutions. Nelson's (1970) distinction between qualities observable before purchase and those learned through use shows why information affects product choice. Zeithaml (1988) explains why perceived quality, sacrifices and value cannot be reduced to factory specifications. Vargo and Lusch (2004) sharpened attention to service and value co-creation, although their emphasis does not remove the need to account for material constraints, ownership rights or unequal power.

The appropriate unit of analysis changes with the decision. A stock-keeping unit (SKU) describes a distinct inventory specification; a product line describes related variants; a brand can cover many lines; a service blueprint describes an experience across interactions; a price quote applies to a particular customer, quantity, channel, period and contractual condition; and a portfolio includes interdependent offerings competing for scarce resources. Mixing these units generates familiar managerial errors, such as reporting average product margin across incompatible services or inferring brand equity merely from company revenue. The chapter therefore asks of each model: what does it measure, for whom, under what boundary conditions, and with which counterfactual?

15.1 DEFINING PRODUCTS, SERVICES AND SOLUTIONS

15.1.1 From core benefit to augmented offering

A product is an organized set of attributes and promised benefits that can be offered for consideration, whether physical, digital, experiential or hybrid. The core benefit is the problem solved or outcome sought: nourishment, dependable movement, timely information or reliable equipment uptime. The actual product consists of tangible and functional specifications, such as ingredients, performance, design, name and packaging. The augmented product includes delivery, guidance, warranty, repairs, financing, training, accessible support and dispute resolution. These layers are useful for design decisions, but the boundaries are not fixed: what was formerly a premium supplement, such as remote support, may become a minimum expectation after competitors normalize it.

A packaged breakfast product can be described by calorific and nutritional specifications, package size and shelf life, yet its use value also depends on preparation time, access to clean water, safe storage, clear instructions and affordability. For a software service, the analogous layers include the core task enabled, the interface and computational functionality, and onboarding, reliability, security patches, portability and continuity commitments. A customer buying a hospital diagnostic device may be acquiring an availability guarantee and operator training, not merely equipment. Product managers should consequently translate the user's desired outcome into measurable performance specifications and explicit service obligations, then identify the resources necessary to deliver each of them (Shostack, 1984; Bitner et al., 2008).

15.1.2 Goods, services, hybrid solutions and the problem of value realization

Goods commonly involve transferable physical objects, whereas services involve performance processes, access or transformation; most enterprise offerings combine both. The older services taxonomy emphasizes intangibility, heterogeneity, inseparability and perishability, but these are tendencies rather than universal distinctions. Software may be standardized, physical goods may require intensive customization, and capacity in professional services can be reserved or sold in advance. The more important choice is whether quality can be evaluated before purchase, during use or only imperfectly even afterwards. Search, experience and credence characteristics create different information and assurance requirements, making claims, trials, guarantees and independent standards important in distinct ways (Nelson, 1970; Zeithaml, 1988).

The word *solution* is justified only when the enterprise can identify a customer’s operational problem, a bundle of complementary resources and a measurable outcome. Selling machinery plus maintenance is not a solution simply because the invoice contains two components. A more defensible specification states the expected uptime, availability of spare parts, response time, qualifications of technicians, data requirements, exclusions and remedy after failure. The solution should also identify which party controls complementary factors outside the seller’s reach. This avoids attributing results solely to the seller when the buyer supplies labor, power, security or operating discipline.

15.1.3 Product requirements, evidence and stakeholder consequences

A useful requirements document distinguishes must-have constraints, desirable attributes, compliance requirements and deliberately excluded features. Quality requirements include safety, reliability, accessibility, durability and environmental performance where material. Commercial requirements include target segment, expected quantity, allowable cost envelope, service capacity and price range; governance requirements include product owner, claims approver, recall authority and complaint channel. Requirements should be versioned because changes in ingredients, software model, product promise or operating context can invalidate earlier tests. The document’s role is not to predict every user preference but to make trade-offs visible before the firm locks in costly commitments.

The philosophical distinction between *value proposed* and *value realized* matters here. A manufacturer can control certain attributes and make truthful claims about tested performance. It cannot guarantee each consumer’s subjective experience. Equally, a consumer’s satisfaction does not establish that a product is safe or that its externalities are acceptable. A product evaluation should therefore join validated technical requirements, interpreted user experience and separately assessed societal effects. No single customer-satisfaction score can do all three jobs.

A useful product specification also identifies the distinction between measurable conformity and customer acceptability. Conformity asks whether the product meets a defined requirement, such as a permitted ingredient range or software response-time limit. Acceptability asks whether it performs the intended task adequately in the user's setting. The two are not equivalent: a technically compliant product may be inaccessible to people with disabilities or impractical where electricity, water, language support or spare parts are unreliable. Conversely, popularity cannot establish safety. A rigorous product owner assigns each requirement an evidence type, acceptance threshold, accountable verifier and review date. That practice converts an attractive design narrative into an inspectable decision record.

The same discipline applies to disposal and retirement. A product may generate attractive purchase-period margins while leaving consumers with unsafe waste, stranded data or unrepaired equipment. Lifecycle stewardship requires the enterprise to specify expected useful life, repair or update availability, withdrawal criteria and feasible end-of-life treatment. These considerations become commercial decisions when warranties, return logistics, supplier contracts and future brand trust are incorporated rather than excluded from unit

economics. The wider ecological frameworks are developed in Chapter 31, but product managers must supply their technical and contractual inputs.

15.2 PRODUCT PORTFOLIO AND LIFE CYCLE

15.2.1 Portfolio structure, variety and resource allocation

A product portfolio is the collection of offerings competing for shared capital, production capacity, management attention, distribution effort, service resources and reputation. Portfolio analysis asks not only whether a SKU is profitable in isolation, but also whether it attracts new buyers, protects a complementary service, substitutes for another product or imposes complexity costs. Product-line breadth enables market coverage; excessive variants create inventory, forecasting, training and quality-control burdens. Variety can be sought for its own sake, but observed switching need not indicate dissatisfaction with an existing product (McAlister & Pessemier, 1982).

The Boston Consulting Group's growth–share classification remains a useful conversation starter about growth and relative market position, but its two axes cannot determine cash generation, contribution, customer welfare or resource priority. A high-share product in a weakly protected market may lose money; a low-share specialty service may yield strong contribution and strategic learning. Managers should replace automatic quadrant prescriptions with a multi-criterion portfolio review that includes incremental contribution, strategic fit, cannibalization, lifecycle obligations, operational complexity and potential harm. A product may merit retention even with a low standalone margin if a carefully evidenced complementarity outweighs its avoidable cost.

Table 15.1. Product-portfolio decision matrix (analytical instrument)

Portfolio state	Evidence to examine	Plausible decision	Important counterargument
High contribution, credible differentiation	Contribution by segment; repeat demand; quality incidents	Protect capacity and improve the offer	Competitors may imitate; growth can dilute service
Low contribution, high strategic complementarity	Joint-purchase and incremental-retention evidence	Retain selectively; redesign the bundle	Cross-subsidy may conceal chronic loss
High sales, weak margin and high complexity	SKU-level avoidable costs; working capital; returns	Simplify or reprice	Withdrawal may shift customers to rivals
Emerging offer, uncertain demand	Validated problem; prototype outcomes; staged cost	Pilot with a learning budget	Early sales can understate adoption or overstate novelty
Mature offer, declining need or unacceptable harm	Substitutes; failure rates; regulatory status	Reformulate, migrate, retire or recall	Withdrawal costs and replacement access matter

Note. Original decision matrix synthesizing portfolio economics, product development and responsibility principles. Categories are diagnostic, not externally validated performance classes.

15.2.2 The product life cycle as description, not destiny

Introduction, growth, maturity and decline describe recognizable sales patterns, yet they are not universal stages that every product passes through in order. A single product's trajectory may vary by geography, cohort, channel or technological compatibility; aggregate category growth may hide the decline of individual brands; and regulatory change can alter demand abruptly. Dhalla and Yuspeh (1976) warned against treating an observed sales plateau as sufficient evidence that an offering is inevitably mature or declining. Their criticism remains important in an era of rapidly changing digital interfaces and platform access, where observed sales may reflect changes in ranking, default settings or subscription accounting rather than intrinsic exhaustion.

Lifecycle reasoning becomes useful when it is recast as a set of hypotheses. A decline might be due to substitution, deteriorating quality, changed customer budgets, inappropriate prices, competitor entry or distribution failure. The analyst must distinguish market growth from market share, contribution from sales, and permanent structural change from temporary noise. The operational response depends on the diagnosis: investigate defects where returns rise; repurpose an underused feature where users reveal an unmet need; or retire a hazardous variant regardless of short-run profitability. Exit decisions require plans for service, warranties, safe disposal, remaining inventory and customers dependent on the product.

Innovation-diffusion scholarship provides a different explanatory vocabulary from the descriptive product life cycle. Rogers (2003) examines relative advantage, compatibility, complexity, trialability and observability as properties affecting adoption within a social system. Bass (1969) formalized a diffusion mechanism in which adoption timing may reflect both influences external to previous purchasers and interactions among adopters. Neither theory establishes that sales will follow a smooth S-curve in a newly observed category. Bass-type forecasts depend on assumptions about market potential, repeated versus first purchases, stable diffusion parameters and the comparability of historical analogues; estimates may be unstable before sufficient adoption has occurred. A Rwandan processor should therefore distinguish trial, first purchase, repeat purchase, stockist orders and actual consumption rather than fit a diffusion curve to a short sales series and call the resulting forecast validated.

This contrast has practical importance for product withdrawal. A life-cycle label describes the shape of an aggregate outcome; a diffusion model proposes mechanisms for adoption; a portfolio model compares resource consequences. A fall in one SKU's sales could reflect substitution toward another variant within the same firm, reduced shelf availability, a defective batch or a shift in household purchasing power. These explanations imply different interventions. Before relaunching or discontinuing the product, the enterprise should reconcile the physical sales ledger, its distribution coverage, customer cohorts, complaints and channel inventory. Only then is the time pattern meaningfully interpretable.

15.2.3 Cannibalization, complementarity and portfolio contribution

If a new variant adds 2,000 sales but diverts 1,400 from an existing product, the relevant *incremental* volume may be only 600 units, before accounting for different contribution rates and any newly acquired customers. A simple calculation is incremental portfolio contribution = new-product contribution minus displaced contribution minus incremental launch and service costs. Because customers may otherwise have purchased from a competitor, cannibalization cannot be identified merely from overlapping purchases; a credible analysis requires a counterfactual, such as matched-region rollouts, comparable customer cohorts or a justified structural model. Premature portfolio cuts can destroy complementarities that are invisible in stand-alone profit reports. Conversely, invoking strategic complementarity without evidence can perpetuate economically unsustainable complexity.

15.3 CUSTOMER-CENTRED PRODUCT DESIGN

15.3.1 Voice of customer without the illusion of representative listening

Customer-centred design begins with tasks, constraints, experiences and unmet outcomes rather than a predetermined list of features. Interviews, ethnographic observation, complaint analysis, usage logs, participatory workshops and research with noncustomers can each contribute, but none automatically yields a representative demand forecast. A sophisticated urban app-user panel may omit households without reliable connectivity; vocal enterprise buyers may not represent workers who use the purchased service; a digital feedback form systematically misses people who cannot reach it. Chapter 14 develops research methods in detail. The product manager’s additional task is to translate credible evidence into implementable requirements, trade-off decisions and validation criteria.

A useful hierarchy separates observed behavior, articulated problem, inferred cause and proposed design response. Suppose customers report that a package is inconvenient. The underlying cause could be portion size, resealing difficulty, storage space or an instruction written in an inaccessible language. Asking whether users ‘like the new design’ before identifying the problem risks confirmation bias. Small prototypes can test competing causal explanations at lower cost than a full launch. The product team should document the inclusion criteria, design assumptions and minimum evidence required to proceed, rather than treating enthusiasm expressed by a few participants as purchase demand.

15.3.2 Prototypes, minimum viable products and testable value

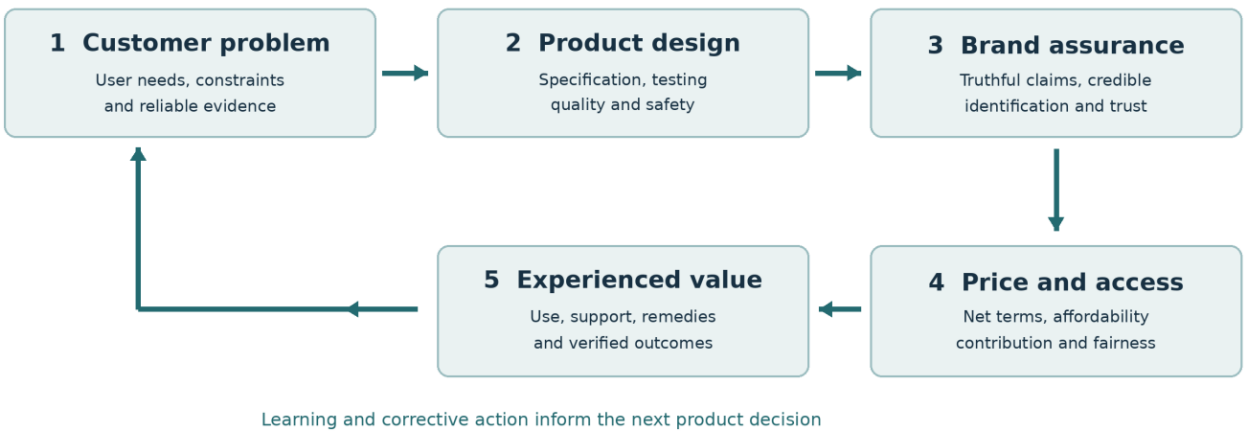
A prototype makes a hypothesis observable: a physical mock-up tests handling and comprehension; a service simulation tests sequencing; an interface prototype tests task completion; a limited offering tests operational and commercial feasibility. A minimum viable product should not mean a knowingly unsafe or unlawful offering. ‘Minimum’ concerns features needed to test a stated proposition while preserving safety, truthful disclosure, data rights and contractual reliability. Early adoption is subject to selection effects: enthusiasts may tolerate deficiencies mainstream customers will reject. Gourville (2006) usefully distinguishes the perceived benefit of an innovation from the behavioral change it asks buyers to make. Better technical specifications do not necessarily overcome habit, learning costs or social norms.

Tests should identify the unit of randomization where feasible, a primary performance measure, a plausible minimum effect, a stopping condition and the likely harms of testing. For a package redesign, relevant outcomes might include comprehension, successful use, wasted contents, repeat demand and objectively measured seal failure. For a subscription tool, decision quality, error rates, perceived control, cancellation difficulty and unexpected charges should be tested separately. Product managers should resist declaring a win from the one metric that improved when other predefined outcomes deteriorated.

15.3.3 Service blueprinting and the cross-functional interface

Shostack (1984) and Bitner et al. (2008) explain service blueprinting as a means of displaying customer actions, visible contact, backstage activities and supporting processes. A useful blueprint marks handoffs and failures that are hidden in a customer-interface screen. In a Kigali packaged-food subscription, visible stages may be selecting an order, receiving confirmation, paying and collecting a package. Backstage tasks include batch traceability, inventory allocation, payment reconciliation, handling damaged units and responding to a complaint. A redesigned interface cannot repair a stock-control error unless the blueprint connects customer promises with physical and financial systems. The design should identify who can stop fulfillment, authorize a remedy and notify affected customers.

Figure 15.1. Product-to-customer value and accountability chain



Note. Original conceptual diagram informed by Zeithaml (1988), Keller (1993), Cooper (1990), and Bitner et al. (2008). Arrows represent proposed dependencies and feedback, not estimated causal coefficients.

Service blueprinting is most valuable when operational failures are converted into explicit test cases. The line of visibility separates what users encounter from backstage activities, while the line of internal interaction shows dependencies that a single function cannot resolve. Each critical handoff should have a trigger, information payload, owner, maximum tolerable delay and escalation path. In a refill or delivery service, a payment confirmation without a corresponding stock reservation is not a minor interface inconsistency: it creates an enforceable promise with no assured fulfillment. Testing should therefore follow a complete transaction from order acceptance to financial settlement and, when necessary, complaint and remedy, including exceptional cases rather than only the ordinary happy path (Bitner et al., 2008).

15.4 BRAND IDENTITY, EQUITY AND TRUST

15.4.1 Brand as an identifying system and a bundle of expectations

A brand identifies a source of offerings and organizes expectations about quality, conduct and experience. Brand identity is the deliberately articulated set of naming, visual, verbal and behavioral commitments; brand image is the set of associations held by audiences; brand positioning is the comparative claim of difference in a particular market. Identity does not guarantee image: consumers can interpret signals differently, and experienced harm can overpower carefully crafted narratives. Brand architecture decides whether the corporate identity, a product-line brand, an endorsed brand or distinct brands best communicates accountability and fit. Portfolio decisions must consider how a failure in one offering affects the credibility of others.

Keller’s (1993) customer-based brand-equity model locates value in differential consumer responses associated with brand knowledge, while Aaker (1991) emphasized assets and liabilities linked to names and symbols. Both frameworks illuminate commercially consequential intangibles. Neither should be interpreted as proving that an admired brand is ethically legitimate or that a numerical brand valuation directly measures experienced customer welfare. High recall may result from controversy; willingness to pay may partly reflect market power or scarcity; favorable surveys may omit dissatisfied former users. Triangulation is essential: awareness, consideration, verified repeat purchasing, complaint patterns and willingness to recommend have different inferential properties.

15.4.2 Signaling under uncertainty: when credibility deserves a premium

Where buyers cannot inspect quality fully before purchase, a brand may operate as a signal that reduces expected search and failure costs. Erdem and Swait (1998) develop brand equity as a signaling phenomenon: consistency and perceived credibility can change information costs and choices. Rao and Monroe’s (1989) meta-analysis found positive effects of price and brand name on perceived product quality within the examined consumer-product experimental settings, while also finding design sensitivity. The important implication is not that raising price improves objective quality. It is that buyers sometimes use price as a cue when more diagnostic information is incomplete or costly. Such cues can mislead when sellers have incentives to mimic premium positioning.

A credibility premium is defensible where signals are costly to counterfeit or backed by repeatable performance, independent testing, transparent remedies and enforceable commitments. A Rwanda-origin specialty-food brand may gain credible differentiation from traceable sourcing and verifiable quality, but a generic national-origin label does not prove the ingredient, labor or environmental attributes of every package. Nor does a country-of-origin narrative by itself justify the claim that a greater share of the retail price reaches farmers. Such distributive claims require an auditable cost-and-payment chain. Brand trust is built partly by admitting limitations and correcting errors, not simply by maintaining a consistent aesthetic.

Akerlof's (1970) analysis of quality uncertainty identifies an uncomfortable possibility for branding strategy: when inferior quality can imitate superior quality and purchasers cannot reliably discriminate, the market may fail to reward the investments that make good products better. Credible brands, warranties, independent certification and repeat dealings can mitigate this information problem, but they may also advantage incumbents able to finance costly signals. Brand equity must consequently be analyzed as both a possible information-efficiency mechanism and a possible barrier to entry. The empirical question is which association corresponds to dependable delivered quality; the normative question is whether the resulting advantage informs buyers fairly or merely shelters an incumbent from contestable competition.

Origin and sustainability claims pose a special identification challenge. Traceable sourcing may support an assurance claim, but geographical provenance is not a sufficient proxy for safe labor, favorable environmental impact or equitable income distribution. A label whose underlying verification covers only a fraction of the supply chain cannot justifiably imply complete compliance. The product manager should distinguish a verified characteristic, an inference about likely quality and a broader moral claim, retaining the evidence and qualifying the message accordingly. This distinction is particularly consequential when small suppliers face an uneven burden of proving what larger brands can more easily signal through advertising expenditure.

15.4.3 Measuring brand performance without circular reasoning

A brand scorecard should distinguish exposure, meaning, behavior and business effect. Unaided awareness measures accessibility of the name; association studies reveal attributed characteristics; consideration indicates stated possibility; conversion records purchases among people exposed to an opportunity; retention and complaint resolution indicate experience across time. These indicators are not interchangeable. A correlation between brand preference and margin cannot identify the causal value of branding when stronger firms invest more in branding and simultaneously improve quality, distribution or bargaining power. Incremental effects require credible experiments, natural variation or careful longitudinal estimation with confounding addressed. A brand-health survey should separately report sample coverage, response mode, uncertainty and excluded groups.

The broader moral problem concerns whether differentiation clarifies consumer choice or exploits an information deficit. Brands can lower search costs and reward consistent suppliers, yet also create barriers to entry, obscure common manufacturing sources or capitalize on misleading aspirations. A responsible brand portfolio makes promises that product, operations and after-sales teams are authorized and funded to honor.

Managers should not combine these measures into an opaque composite score before testing whether they actually represent the same construct. Brand awareness can rise while trust falls; premium willingness to pay can increase among continuing purchasers while total access declines; online sentiment may reflect only engaged users. A stronger evaluation links precisely defined brand measures to pre-specified outcomes, records market and channel changes and reports uncertainty. For example, a randomized exposure test can estimate the short-run contribution of a truthful information message to recall or choice, but cannot by itself establish long-run brand equity, customer welfare or product safety. The validity of an instrument must be assessed for the decision it is being asked to support.

15.5 NEW-PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT AND INNOVATION GOVERNANCE

15.5.1 From ideation to launch: experimentation within accountable gates

New-product development coordinates problem discovery, solution concepts, technical design, economic feasibility, validation, launch and post-launch learning. Cooper's (1990) stage-gate system was influential because it introduced explicit cross-functional decisions about whether to commit further resources. Its enduring contribution is governance of uncertainty, not the proposition that innovation is a linear pipeline in which every concept must wait for a formal committee at each stage. Iterative software development and fast-changing services may cycle rapidly between design and deployment, yet safety, evidence standards and financial responsibility remain essential. Kahn et al. (2012) assess new-product-development practices across strategy, process, research, project climate, metrics and commercialization, reinforcing the need to treat innovation as an organizational system rather than the work of an isolated inventor.

At the discovery gate, a product owner should identify the underserved outcome and sources of evidence. At concept validation, alternative designs should be tested against the current feasible option, not only against an imagined ideal. Feasibility integrates technical performance, supply reliability, relevant permissions, staffing, full delivered costs, privacy and service burden. A controlled pilot evaluates demand and operational failure under realistic use. A launch authorization identifies the decision owner, approved claims, maximum exposure and recall or rollback triggers. Post-launch review separates temporary learning costs from persistent unviability. Gates should be proportionate: a ten-person firm may assign one accountable manager to multiple functions, while independent expert review becomes crucial for safety-critical claims.

Table 15.2. New-product decision-gate protocol

Gate	Decision question	Minimum evidence	Decision and stop rule
G0 Problem	Is an important and addressable problem established?	Defined users, unmet outcome, alternative explanations	Reject if problem or intended user is unspecified
G1 Concept	Does the design plausibly outperform the incumbent?	Comparative prototype, usability and safety screen	Revise if user benefit or risk profile fails threshold
G2 Feasibility	Can the full offering be delivered and financed?	Supply, capacity, unit economics, law, service plan	Do not authorize if essential compliance is unresolved
G3 Pilot	Is there evidence of responsible adoption and reliability?	Valid demand signal, defects, returns, complaints, cash effect	Stop or correct on predefined safety or financial triggers
G4 Release	Are accountable approvals and rollback arrangements ready?	Claims register, readiness evidence, sign-offs, remediation	Launch with explicit volume, monitoring and review limits
G5 Review	Should the product scale, change, persist or exit?	Cohort outcomes, incremental contribution and harms	Reallocate with documented counterfactual and obligations

Note. Original governance protocol adapted conceptually from Cooper (1990), Kahn et al. (2012), and responsible service-design principles. Thresholds are enterprise-specific and must be specified before testing.

15.5.2 Innovation selection, real options and organizational learning

Under severe uncertainty, the decision to postpone scale may be valuable even where an expected-value calculation suggests a promising average. Small pilots buy information and limit irreversible losses. That does not justify endless experimentation: delay can sacrifice learning-by-doing, customer trust or seasonal access. A rigorous stage decision compares the expected net value of immediate commitment, the expected value of additional information and the cost of waiting. The relevant investment includes tooling, training, marketing commitments, packaging stock, regulatory validation and working-capital exposure, not only product-development salaries. Because probabilities of disruptive events are often weakly known, scenario analysis and clear stopping rules may be more honest than spurious precision.

Product-development success should not be equated with the percentage of concepts launched. A disciplined firm may reject many ideas early, preserve capital and improve eventual welfare. Nor can a failure rate taken from another sector be imported as the probability of failure for a particular Kigali enterprise. Evaluation must separate the quality of the decision under information available at the time from the ex post outcome. A commercially unsuccessful pilot may still be an effective, ethically managed learning investment if its objectives, costs, safeguards and interpretations were honestly specified.

The value of a pilot can be articulated using expected value of sample information (EVSI). Let V_0 be the greatest expected net value available without further testing, V_1 the expected value of the best action chosen after receiving a proposed signal, and K the full testing and delay cost. The pilot is economically attractive under the model only when $EVSI = V_1 - V_0$ exceeds K, subject to non-negotiable safety and legal constraints. This decision rule does not require pretending that the signal will be perfectly informative. In fact, a small convenience sample may have little capacity to distinguish rival market states. Managers should specify the distribution of likely signals, how each could change the launch decision and which irreversible expenditure is genuinely postponed.

Organizational politics may distort even a technically sound gate. Advocates can select favorable metrics, finance managers may demand certainty incompatible with innovation, and senior executives may interpret cancellation as reputational failure. An accountable review therefore separates the project sponsor from material risk approval when feasible, preserves negative evidence and records the rejected alternative. For resource-constrained enterprises, proportionality is vital: independent testing can be pooled through industry laboratories or shared associations, while extensive committee structures may impose costs greater than the informational benefit. Such arrangements require effective accountability rather than the ceremonial reproduction of large-company processes.

15.6 ECONOMIC FOUNDATIONS OF PRICING

15.6.1 Price, marginal choice and the financial boundary of the offer

Price communicates an exchange condition and generates revenue, but it is not a direct measure of cost, value or fairness. From the producer’s viewpoint, the economically relevant question is whether incremental revenue exceeds the incremental costs and opportunity costs associated with a feasible change in quantity or service level. From the buyer’s viewpoint, acquisition entails money, time, effort, risk and possible losses from poor performance. Zeithaml (1988) therefore distinguishes what the consumer receives from the sacrifices perceived. The organizational challenge is to estimate both sides while recognizing that neither willingness to pay nor accounting contribution is a comprehensive welfare measure.

For one homogeneous offering over a specified period, let P denote realized net selling price per unit, $Q(P)$ the quantity sold at that price, v the incremental variable cost per unit, and F the avoidable period fixed costs. Under the deliberately simplifying assumptions of constant unit variable cost, no binding capacity constraint, no stock effects and a stable demand schedule, period operating contribution after these fixed costs is:

Equation 15.1. $\Pi(P) = [P - v]Q(P) - F$.

The equation clarifies why increasing units, price or percentage margin independently does not necessarily maximize profit. A higher price increases contribution per retained unit but may reduce units sold. A larger volume may require overtime, waste, customer support or a capacity expansion that invalidates the constant-*v* assumption. Accounting cost allocation can be useful for long-run recovery, yet assigning a share of fixed costs to a product does not turn those costs into avoidable marginal costs. Full cost may guide sustainability targets; marginal cost and opportunity cost govern many short-run choices. A price decision should also consider taxes, refunds, payment fees, credit losses and distribution terms using a consistent net-of-tax basis. Detailed cost behavior and absorption procedures belong to Chapter 23.

Three often-confused measures should be defined precisely. Unit contribution is $P - v$. Contribution margin ratio is $(P - v)/P$. Cost markup is $(P - C)/C$, where C is the specified cost base. A 30 per cent markup on a cost of RWF 3,300 produces a price of RWF 4,290; the associated margin on that full-cost base is 990/4,290, or approximately 23.1 per cent, not 30 per cent. In a differentiated, multiproduct firm, incremental product decisions also require consideration of cannibalization, capacity displacement and contract-specific support obligations.

15.6.2 Elasticity, incremental revenue and the limits of local estimates

Own-price elasticity of demand captures the proportional response of quantity to a proportional price change, conditional on other influences. In continuous notation, $\varepsilon = (dQ/dP)(P/Q)$; for ordinary downward-sloping demand it is negative. When two observed or assumed points are compared, an arc calculation avoids privileging one of them as a denominator:

Equation 15.2. $\varepsilon_arc = [(Q_2 - Q_1)/((Q_1 + Q_2)/2)] \div [(P_2 - P_1)/((P_1 + P_2)/2)]$.

When demand is differentiable and the simplified cost assumptions hold, the interior first-order condition for a profit-maximizing price can be expressed as the Lerner relation (Lerner, 1934), $(P - v)/P = -1/\varepsilon$, where ε is the local elasticity at the candidate optimum and its magnitude exceeds one. This is a conditional theoretical benchmark, not an instruction to calculate a universal markup from a category average. Heterogeneous customers, multi-product substitution, discrete prices, capacity, market power, dynamic learning and legal limits complicate the relationship. A two-point arc elasticity cannot be inserted as though it were the exact local slope at a selected price, and an elasticity estimated during a promotion may contain advertising, stock and seasonality effects (Rao & Monroe, 1989; Talluri & van Ryzin, 2004).

Reference prices further complicate demand. Buyers compare quoted terms with past purchases, rival offers, expectations and an inferred ‘fair price’. Bolton et al. (2003) show that consumers draw on several such reference points and may misunderstand sellers’ full costs. This does not justify manipulating reference anchors. It requires careful distinction between an empirical description of consumer judgments and a normative defense of a pricing practice. A price forecast should also identify the time horizon: a discount may increase first purchases while changing later willingness to pay, perceived credibility and customer composition.

Lerner's (1934) price–cost index provides the theoretical origin of the markup relationship, which is sometimes presented without its restrictive conditions. For a single-product decision, differentiable downward-sloping demand and a constant marginal cost, the first-order condition is obtained from $d[(P - v)Q(P)]/dP = Q(P) + (P - v)Q'(P) = 0$. Dividing by P and substituting $\varepsilon = Q'(P)P/Q(P)$ yields $(P - v)/P = -1/\varepsilon$. The expression is a property of the specified local optimum, not an empirical estimate of market power from a single observed accounting margin. It does not specify an optimum under binding capacity, customer interdependence, uncertain supply or regulatory price ceilings; using it without those conditions can lend false mathematical legitimacy to an inappropriate price.

Identification of elasticity requires more than correlating recent sales and prices. Managers frequently change prices in response to anticipated demand, promotions, inventory pressure or competitive actions. Such

simultaneity can bias a naive regression, while a product's posted price may differ from its actual net realized price after discounts and fees. A defensible estimation plan distinguishes randomized price variation, quasi-experimental shocks and observational controls; specifies substitution across the portfolio; and reports confidence or credible intervals rather than one deterministic coefficient. Where experiments would unfairly expose buyers or violate applicable rules, the analyst must consider ethically acceptable alternatives and communicate their inferential limits (see Chapter 4).

15.6.3 Fully worked Rwandan pricing comparison

The following case is a **constructed teaching scenario**, not a report of a market study or of prices and costs at a real company. ‘Kigali Nourish’ is a hypothetical producer of a 500-gram packaged breakfast mix. It plans for monthly capacity of 12,000 units, with constant assumed incremental cost of RWF 2,800 per unit and period fixed cost of RWF 6,000,000. The variable-cost assumptions comprise ingredients RWF 1,450, packaging 420, direct incremental labor 520, distribution 300, and variable returns/support provision 110. These sum to RWF 2,800. The decision horizon is one month; all prices are net of any tax that might be collected on behalf of government. No claim is made about actual Rwandan nutrition-product price levels, VAT status or market demand.

At planned output, allocated fixed cost per unit is RWF 6,000,000/12,000 = RWF 500, creating a planning full cost of RWF 3,300. A conventional 30 per cent full-cost markup implies **RWF 4,290**. For comparison, a proposed value-based price is RWF 4,900. The enterprise hypothesizes that its differentiated convenience and packaging support a premium over an appropriately comparable alternative. Such a hypothesis would need evidence on buyer alternatives, realized performance and willingness to pay; here it is assumed only to illustrate a calculation. At RWF 4,290, assume 11,200 monthly sales; at RWF 4,900, 9,000. Both are within designed capacity.

Table 15.3. Hypothetical one-month cost-plus and value-price comparison (RWF, excluding applicable taxes)

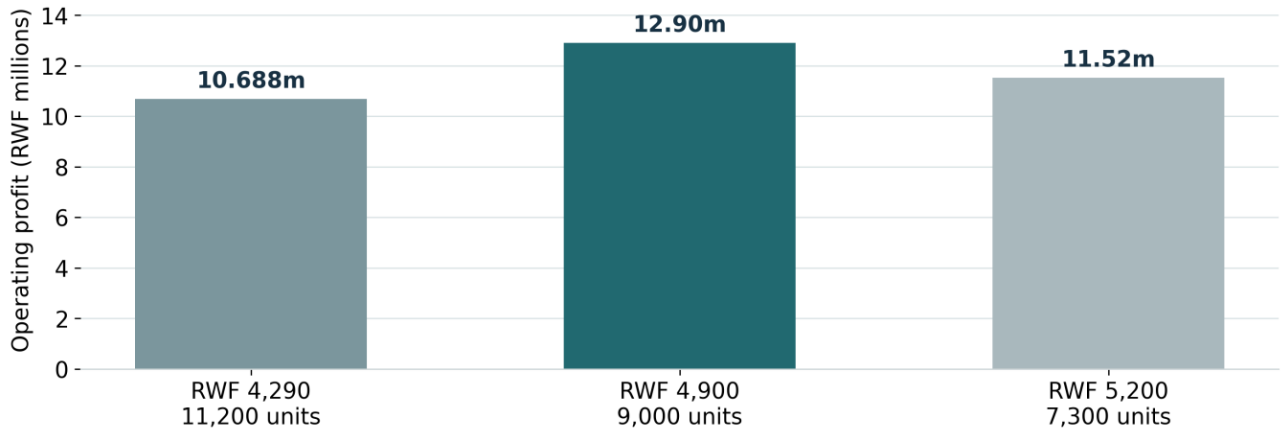
Measure	Cost-plus option	Value-price option	Meaning
Net price per unit	4,290	4,900	Stated assumed offer price
Units sold	11,200	9,000	Assumed responses, not observations
Variable cost per unit	2,800	2,800	Same design and service specification
Unit contribution	1,490	2,100	Price minus unit variable cost
Total contribution	16,688,000	18,900,000	Unit contribution × actual units
Period fixed cost	6,000,000	6,000,000	Common assumed period cost
Operating profit	10,688,000	12,900,000	Contribution minus fixed cost
Contribution margin	34.7%	42.9%	Contribution divided by revenue
Break-even volume (ceiling)	4,027	2,858	Fixed cost divided by unit contribution

Note. Entirely illustrative model; quantities, costs and prices are inputs to a teaching exercise, not measurements of Kigali firms. Break-even units use the next higher whole unit. The companion editable workbook reproduces calculations and stress tests.

The value-price scenario yields RWF 2,212,000 more period operating profit under these assumptions even though it sells 2,200 fewer units. The observed-looking precision does not confer empirical validity on the assumed demand levels. The implied arc elasticity between the two scenarios is approximately −1.64: the midpoint relative quantity change is −2,200/10,100 = −21.78 per cent; the midpoint relative price change is 610/4,595 = 13.28 per cent; the ratio is −1.64. The corresponding total-revenue change should be computed

explicitly rather than assumed from the elasticity label: at RWF 4,290 revenue is RWF 48,048,000, while at RWF 4,900 revenue is RWF 44,100,000. Thus the value-price option increases assumed contribution and operating profit **despite lower revenue**. This is precisely why revenue growth and profit optimization must not be equated.

Figure 15.2. Hypothetical price–volume and operating-profit comparisons



Note. Original calculations under the hypothetical assumptions in Table 15.3; no observed market response is implied. Units sold appear beneath each price.

Sensitivity is equally important. If sales at the RWF 4,900 price fall 20 per cent below the assumed 9,000 units, operating profit becomes (4,900 − 2,800) × 7,200 − 6,000,000 = **RWF 9,120,000**. If variable cost rises 15 per cent, to RWF 3,220, while volume remains 9,000, profit is also RWF 9,120,000. If both adverse conditions occur, profit is (4,900 − 3,220) × 7,200 − 6,000,000 = **RWF 6,096,000**. The scenarios are not probability-weighted forecasts. They demonstrate that a positive base-case premium can coexist with substantial exposure to demand error and cost inflation. A separate price of RWF 5,200 at an assumed 7,300 units would yield RWF 11,520,000, less than the RWF 4,900 option. The choice is therefore not simply ‘charge more’.

The managerial next step is to **test**, not to declare RWF 4,900 optimal. The firm would need comparable observations on alternative prices, allocation to variants or cohorts where ethically and technically permissible, separate treatment of retailer discounts and returns, and sensitivity to competitors’ changes. It must also specify whether the capacity, cash conversion and service promises remain viable after a demand shift. The responsible decision is the price-and-service bundle supported by the best available evidence and legitimate constraints, revised when the evidence changes.

15.7 PRICING APPROACHES: WHAT EACH OPTIMIZES AND CONCEALS

15.7.1 Cost-plus, target-return and contribution-based pricing

Cost-plus pricing adds a specified markup to a defined cost base. Its virtues are administrative transparency, budgeting convenience and a visible path to recovery where product costing is reliable. Its weakness is conceptual: cost does not establish the buyer’s valuation or the price a competitor will charge. A fixed percentage may produce too high a price for price-sensitive buyers and too low a price for a specialized offer. When expected units depend on price, allocated fixed cost per unit is endogenous. Cost-plus pricing therefore needs iterative volume assumptions and reconciliation against market evidence; otherwise the enterprise has hidden a demand forecast inside a cost calculation. Hinterhuber (2008) distinguishes cost-based, competition-based and customer-value-based approaches while examining practical barriers to the latter.

Target-return pricing uses an explicit investment or profit objective to derive a provisional price given expected volume and costs. It is useful for disciplined planning but circular if demand is subsequently assumed to hold at

the resulting price. Contribution-based pricing compares incremental revenue with avoidable incremental cost for specified orders, subject to opportunity cost, risk, capacity and long-run recovery. A one-off order may rationally be accepted below an allocated full cost while still contributing to fixed-cost recovery, yet repeated acceptance at that level can undermine the enterprise. Governance should therefore distinguish temporary, documented exceptions from a default price architecture.

15.7.2 Customer-value-based and competition-referenced pricing

Value-based pricing starts with a defined buyer alternative and estimates the incremental benefits and sacrifices attributable to the focal offer. In organizational purchasing, one might estimate fewer machine stoppages, lower energy consumption, faster processing, reduced defects and credible cost of switching. The economic value to the customer (EVC) can be expressed in a simplified form as **EVC = reference alternative price + monetary value of incremental benefits − monetary value of incremental disadvantages**, provided all amounts share a unit and time horizon. A defensible value claim specifies the measurement procedure and which benefits the seller can credibly deliver. Anderson et al. (2006) warn that business-market propositions commonly assert superiority without demonstrating it. A seller cannot infer that its feasible price equals the entire quantified customer surplus; competition, bargaining, information, affordability and the customer’s rightful share in joint gains constrain capture.

Competition-referenced pricing uses observed rival offers as comparators, which can be essential in markets with transparent substitutes. A published price may nevertheless conceal delivery charges, volume terms, warranty limits, reliability, financing and tax. It should not be assumed to equal the rival’s realized transaction price. Managers also need a lawful boundary: coordinating price levels or future movements with competitors can violate competition law, and an algorithm collecting rivals’ public prices does not confer an exemption from that law. Price surveillance is an information input, not an authorization for tacit alignment.

Economic value to the customer is an estimate of attributable benefit, not a license to appropriate the buyer's entire surplus. Consider an equipment buyer whose alternative incurs RWF 600,000 in expected annual downtime and whose proposed replacement plausibly reduces that loss by RWF 250,000. A value claim should establish the period, baseline failure probability, number of affected operating hours and degree to which reduced downtime is actually controlled by the seller. It should discount future benefits where material and compare them with the supplier's incremental services and risks. A vendor quoting the full assumed saving as a premium may leave no buyer incentive for switching and create exposure if the estimate proves optimistic. The defensible contract divides uncertain value through transparent price, service obligations and verifiable remedies.

15.7.3 Bundles, versions, subscriptions and lifecycle price architecture

A bundle combines offerings at a joint price; versioning differentiates functional or service levels; subscriptions charge for continuing access or replenishment. Each can lower transaction costs, accommodate heterogeneous needs or stabilize revenue. The same mechanisms can obscure component prices, lock customers into unwanted services, penalize low-volume buyers and increase the difficulty of cancellation. A bundle should be evaluated against separately available alternatives and its incremental cost, not simply against the arithmetic sum of nominal list prices. A subscription model needs cohort-level measures of contribution after service, cancellations, defaults, refunds and support. Growth in registered accounts is insufficient when many are inactive or loss-making. Customer lifetime value calculations should disclose survival, retention, discounting, gross contribution and customer-acquisition costs rather than treat recurring revenue as permanently guaranteed (Gupta et al., 2004).

Penetration and skimming approaches also require contextual caution. An introductory low price may accelerate trials but establish a difficult reference point or attract customers with weak retention; a high entry price may recover development costs but suppress diffusion and access. Price endings, thresholds and promotions affect

perceptions, yet a psychological response found in one category cannot justify a universal ‘9-ending’ rule. Managers should define a price architecture encompassing price book, eligible discounts, channel fees, payment terms, tax treatment, refund policy and approval rights. Consistency of that architecture is often more valuable than chasing a single supposedly optimal number.

A practical subscription analysis must account for customers as time-varying cohorts rather than extrapolate one period's recurring revenue indefinitely. In a simplified constant-contribution, constant-retention model, an initial customer's expected contribution before acquisition cost is $m\Sigma_{t=0}^{T} [r/(1 + i)]^t$, where m is contribution per active period, r is retention probability, i is the period discount rate and T is the chosen finite horizon. An infinite-horizon expression is inappropriate where the product, regulation or customer population is unstable. It is also invalid to apply a retention rate estimated from surviving accounts without considering censoring and the differing experience of newly recruited users. This is one reason why attractive subscription revenue can coexist with weak lifetime economics (Gupta et al., 2004).

15.8 REVENUE MANAGEMENT, PERISHABLE CAPACITY AND FAIRNESS

15.8.1 Time-sensitive capacity and the allocation problem

Revenue management is particularly relevant when capacity is costly, fixed or perishable over a selling period and demand varies across booking times or customer groups. An unused hotel room-night or airline seat cannot generally be stored and sold in the same form tomorrow. Talluri and van Ryzin (2004) integrate quantity- and price-based approaches to this problem. Their methods distinguish capacity allocation from unrestricted price increases: rejecting a low-fare reservation can be rational when it preserves capacity for a probable later high-value booking, but only if the expected gain exceeds the risk of leaving capacity unsold. A physical inventory of shelf-stable food differs because stock can sometimes be carried, although spoilage and working-capital costs still matter.

Consider an illustrative training venue with 40 seats for one date. Twenty seats can be reserved now at RWF 20,000 each; expected later demand for premium seats at RWF 30,000 is uncertain. If capacity is binding, acceptance today consumes an option that may have value tomorrow. A simplified decision compares RWF 20,000 immediate contribution with the probability-adjusted net contribution from reserving a seat, using a defensible demand distribution and allowing for no-shows, cancellation terms and variable service cost. This is not equivalent to arbitrarily multiplying all quotes by an observed scarcity factor. Rigorous revenue management specifies the capacity unit, offer class, time horizon, forecast error and protected minimum service obligations.

The decision can be expressed using the opportunity cost of scarce capacity. For a single remaining seat, suppose the later premium sale would provide a contribution of RWF 26,000 and, based on an explicit forecast, has probability 0.60 of materializing. Retaining the seat has expected contribution of RWF 15,600 before risk adjustments. A certain immediate booking yielding RWF 17,000 contribution would therefore dominate reservation under risk-neutral expected value; if the premium-sale probability rises above 17,000/26,000 ≈ 65.4 per cent, the simple ranking reverses. The probabilities and contributions are hypothetical and exclude customer goodwill and cancellation rights. This threshold makes the economic logic auditable and demonstrates why 'premium later' is not a sufficient justification for rejecting today's customer.

Actual capacity-management systems need dynamic controls because one seat or room can be part of a multi-date itinerary, reservations may cancel, and demand distributions change. Overbooking may reduce idle capacity but expose consumers to serious harm when promised service cannot be supplied. The ethically legitimate objective is not expected revenue alone: a policy must define the cost and remedy of involuntary denial, accessibility needs, clear contractual disclosures and the authority to stop automated allocations. A small Rwandan training venue may rationally prefer transparent booking bands and manual review over a sophisticated black-box system whose forecasts cannot be audited.

15.8.2 Segmentation, price differentiation and legitimacy

Price differentiation occurs when buyers pay different net prices for comparable offerings and the differences are not solely explained by differences in incremental cost. Economists distinguish forms associated with individualized prices, quantity menus and identifiable segments, but real markets contain hybrid contracts. Differential pricing can expand access if discounts reach buyers who would otherwise be excluded, and it can redistribute surplus toward sellers or favored segments. Neither welfare consequence follows automatically. Price sensitivity is not a morally sufficient basis for exploitation, particularly when personal information exposes vulnerable circumstances. Legal permissibility also depends on jurisdiction, market power, protected characteristics, consumer disclosures and contract rules.

Haws and Bearden (2006) show how dynamic pricing can produce fairness concerns that affect satisfaction. Kahneman et al. (1986) documented reference-dependent judgments of price and wage fairness; their survey findings describe a social norm in their study settings, not a binding Rwandan legal test. A responsible revenue-management policy uses understandable criteria such as time of booking, refundable flexibility or demonstrable service differences, limits surprise changes, protects essential access where relevant and makes human review available when automated outcomes appear erroneous. Revenue improvement should be audited alongside complaints, cancellation friction, exclusion and reputational effects.

Distributional analysis should distinguish vertical differentiation, in which products have genuinely different service attributes, from charging dissimilar customers different prices for an otherwise equivalent offer. A lower off-peak fare may improve the utilization of genuinely idle capacity and permit access that a uniform high price would exclude. The same policy can disadvantage people who cannot shift work or family responsibilities. Evaluation therefore requires both overall welfare and the incidence of gains and losses across relevant groups. An identical allocation rule may be formally neutral while producing systematically unequal access; conversely, a proportionate concessionary tariff may be fair even when buyers do not pay identical amounts. No general theorem licenses the equation of algorithmic efficiency with distributive justice.

15.8.3 Algorithmic price coordination and the governance boundary

Dynamic pricing software can respond rapidly to capacity, demand and input costs; it can also amplify errors, reproduce discriminatory patterns or facilitate anti-competitive interaction. The OECD (2017) discusses how algorithmic systems complicate the distinction between lawful independent pricing and prohibited coordination. A pricing model should therefore be constrained by competition-law advice, data minimization, audit logs, approval thresholds, override authority and separation from competitors’ nonpublic intentions. A machine-generated recommendation does not displace managerial responsibility for the price actually offered. Sudden surges, opaque personalized differences or erroneous stock signals are governance events as well as technical incidents.

15.9 PRICING IN BUSINESS-TO-BUSINESS AND PUBLIC CONTEXTS

15.9.1 Negotiated contracts and total customer economics

Business-to-business (B2B) pricing often concerns an integrated contract rather than one posted unit. Relevant terms include agreed volume, delivery location, service levels, payment period, currency, price-adjustment formula, acceptance tests, warranty, spare parts, penalties and termination rights. A low nominal price may be expensive once equipment downtime, training and maintenance are included. Conversely, a high-priced offer may deliver a lower total cost of ownership when performance is credible. Shapiro and Jackson (1978) emphasized the need to relate industrial prices to buyer requirements; Anderson et al. (2006) stress documented value differentiation. An enterprise should therefore maintain an itemized economic value model that distinguishes the supplier’s verified performance from benefits controlled by the purchaser.

For illustration, suppose machine A costs RWF 9 million and is expected to require RWF 1.8 million annually in upkeep, while machine B costs RWF 11 million but requires RWF 1.1 million. Over three years, without residual value and ignoring discounting, total costs are RWF 14.4 million and RWF 14.3 million respectively. At a 12 per cent annual discount rate, the present-value factor for three end-year equal payments is about 2.4018; total present cost is approximately RWF 13.323 million for A and RWF 13.642 million for B. Under these particular assumptions, A is cheaper in present-value terms despite B's lower undiscounted total cost. The example demonstrates that comparative ranking depends on timing and discount assumptions, not a claim about actual supplier offerings. Reliability, expected failure losses and terminal value would need explicit treatment before procurement approval.

Lifecycle costing must preserve a consistent unit of analysis. A purchaser comparing machines should specify whether maintenance is paid at the beginning or end of each year, whether energy and downtime effects vary with utilization, whether residual values differ and which risks each party bears. If uncertain costs are included as expected values, the analyst must avoid charging the same failure again through a blanket risk premium. Sensitivity to discount rates is not merely a mathematical formality: capital-constrained firms may face a higher financing cost than buyers in well-developed credit markets, but a higher hurdle rate does not automatically justify neglecting future safety or environmental obligations. Contract design should distinguish expected economic costs from mandatory performance standards.

15.9.2 Public procurement, tenders and fairness to competing bidders

Public purchasing creates special constraints because the price decision interacts with transparency, value-for-money evaluation, competition, procedural equality and accountability for public resources. Bid preparation should distinguish a compliant technical offer from the financial offer, identify total cost, avoid contingent promises the enterprise cannot honor and document the authority to approve discounts. In a fixed-price contract, inflation and exchange-rate shocks may fall on the supplier; in an indexed agreement, adjustments need objective, auditable and lawful terms. The relevant procurement rules and standard bidding documents must be verified in the jurisdiction and at the tender date, rather than inferred from general marketing practices. This chapter describes price economics and contractual interfaces, not the detailed Rwanda procurement-law process, which belongs with Chapter 18.

A supplier should not interpret a competitor's tender price as permission to coordinate bids or exchange future pricing intentions. Nor is the 'lowest bid' necessarily the economically least costly solution when lifecycle performance is contractually relevant. Credible procurement evaluation identifies measurable quality outcomes, service obligations, price comparability, delivery and integrity controls. Product managers contribute truthful specifications; finance verifies working-capital and credit exposure; operations confirms deliverability; and governance reviews conflicts of interest. These dependencies make tender pricing a cross-functional assurance activity.

15.9.3 International terms, currency and institutional asymmetry

Cross-border B2B pricing introduces exchange-rate, customs, logistics, destination-standard and legal-enforcement risks. A Rwanda-based processor may invoice a regional distributor in a foreign currency, yet incur labor and packaging costs in Rwandan francs. A quote should specify exchange-rate convention, quote validity, delivery term, quality specification, payment guarantee, dispute forum and the allocation of damage risk. An apparently attractive foreign-currency price may become unprofitable if currency depreciation, transport delays or rejection costs occur. AfCFTA or EAC membership does not mean that every good automatically receives preferential treatment or that labeling, origin documentation and market-access conditions have disappeared. The seller must establish product-specific eligibility and actual destination requirements before adopting a regional price. Chapter 30 handles the detailed trade architecture.

15.10 SERVICE QUALITY AND POST-PURCHASE VALUE

15.10.1 Quality is experienced across the full promise

Post-purchase quality includes whether the offering works, whether failures are handled promptly, whether guarantees are intelligible and whether customers can obtain appropriate support without disproportionate effort. Service quality is commonly assessed through expectations and performance dimensions, but expectations vary by segment, culture, price and prior experience. The attribution problem is substantial: satisfaction may change because promised standards changed, because the customer population changed or because complaints became easier to report. Anderson et al. (1994) and Rust et al. (1995) connect satisfaction or quality investments to economic performance while highlighting the need to analyze costs and benefits rather than assume every additional quality expenditure is justified.

A strong after-sales architecture identifies which promise was made, which evidence demonstrates a breach, who may approve replacement or repair, how the customer can contest a decision and how recurring faults inform product changes. Warranty provisions require a realistic reserve for expected remediation and independent attention to safety. A company cannot ethically advertise an extensive warranty while designing the claim process so that consumers rarely succeed in using it. In digital products, support further includes software updates, access continuity, migration, security correction and clear notification of material functionality changes. In essential goods or services, abrupt withdrawal may create harms beyond a refund.

Service quality has at least two analytically distinct dimensions. Technical quality concerns what the customer receives, while functional quality concerns how the process is performed; corporate image can influence the interpretation of both (Grönroos, 1984). A repaired machine that resumes functioning after repeated delays may meet an eventual technical outcome but still fail the agreed response-time promise. Equally, cordial personnel cannot compensate for unsafe equipment or inaccurate information. This distinction suggests separate indicators for objective outcomes, process reliability and customer experience. Their interpretation should consider expectations and selection: demanding users may complain more precisely, while disadvantaged users may be less able to complain at all.

15.10.2 Complaints as diagnosis, not merely reputation management

Complaint frequency has a denominator problem. Ten complaints among 1,000 deliveries is not equivalent to ten among 10,000, and a reduction in complaints could mean more satisfied buyers or a blocked reporting channel. A useful dashboard separates incidents per completed order, severity, time to acknowledgment, time to remedy, repeat failures, recurrence by production batch and evidence of customer effort. Complaint coding should distinguish product defect, misinformation, delay, payment problem and misuse rather than automatically attribute every dissatisfaction to customer conduct. Managers should protect staff who report defects and preserve the ability to escalate a safety-critical event irrespective of sales targets.

The economics of service recovery require an incremental perspective. If a replacement costs RWF 1,500 and plausibly preserves a recurring customer’s contribution, remediation may be economically justified; if the product is unsafe, remediation may be obligatory regardless of financial return. A retention correlation cannot establish the causal return from a guarantee. Robust evaluation compares treated and untreated cases with attention to severity, customer selection and timing. Ethical remedies should not be withheld merely because predictive models forecast that a particular complainant will not purchase again.

A strong failure-response system treats the complaint as an event in a traceable quality process rather than a reputational nuisance. It records the sold product and batch or software version, relevant contract terms, claimed harm, time to response, corrective action, root-cause hypothesis and final remedy. Patterns should be reviewed across channels because retailers, online platforms and direct purchasers may have different opportunities to report defects. A reduction in visible complaints following an interface change is not evidence of better quality until reporting access is held reasonably comparable. Where a hazard is credible, the firm must separate

immediate containment from slower causal analysis, and its governance system must authorize precautionary suspension without waiting for a favorable financial evaluation.

15.11 PRICE AND BRAND ETHICS: FAIRNESS, TRUTH AND VULNERABILITY

15.11.1 Truthful pricing and the problem of manufactured reference points

A transparent price includes material charges and conditions before commitment. False ‘was’ prices, undisclosed compulsory fees, fabricated scarcity, misleading strike-through discounts and subscription terms that are easier to enter than leave can distort consumer choice. A price can be computationally accurate yet misleading if its context omits mandatory charges or if the comparison is not genuine. Fairness additionally concerns whether a sudden increase reflects a real change in cost, scarcity or service, and whether disadvantaged buyers have meaningful alternatives. Behavioral findings on fairness illuminate expectations but are not a substitute for legal duties or explicit ethical argument (Bolton et al., 2003; Haws & Bearden, 2006).

Rwanda’s **Law No. 011/2026 of 26 February 2026 relating to competition and consumer protection**, published in the Official Gazette of 4 March 2026, provides a directly relevant legal framework. Its provisions cover false or misleading representations (Article 26), unfair business practices (Article 28), price display (Article 34), labeling (Article 35), advertising (Articles 36–37), guarantees (Article 39), after-sales services (Article 40), and e-commerce obligations in a separate chapter. These are the subjects of the enacted provisions, not a conclusion that every conceivable pricing tactic is categorically lawful or unlawful. A company planning personalized prices, discount campaigns or online subscriptions must consult the full instrument and any applicable implementing rules at the decision date (Republic of Rwanda, 2026a).

15.11.2 Brand claims, sustainability and vulnerable buyers

Claims about nutrition, safety, origin, organic production, recycled content, climate impact and fair payment to producers are factual assertions that require proportionate substantiation. The US Federal Trade Commission’s Green Guides provide one influential comparative framework cautioning against broad, unqualified environmental benefits claims; they are not Rwandan law. The European Union’s Directive (EU) 2024/825 establishes another jurisdiction-specific approach to misleading environmental and durability claims, with implementing measures applicable in Member States from 27 September 2026, following the Directive’s 27 March 2026 transposition deadline. Neither foreign framework should be copied as if universally binding. Their comparative significance is that an attractive environmental narrative cannot be a substitute for evidence, qualification and analysis of trade-offs (Federal Trade Commission, 2012; European Parliament & Council, 2024).

Vulnerability can arise from age, disability, limited literacy, financial distress, dependence on a service or information asymmetry. Responsible product design makes warnings intelligible, provides accessible remedies and avoids using behavioral data to extract the maximum price a vulnerable person might tolerate. At the same time, equitable access does not imply that every price difference is unfair: transparent student discounts, geographic cost differences and volume terms can be justified when evidence, purpose and proportionality are clear. The ethical assessment should ask who benefits, who bears risk, whether consent is meaningful and whether the rule could be explained without deception to those it affects. The criteria should be documented before marketing a controversial differential offer.

15.11.3 A practical ethical authorization test

A proposed product claim or price should pass at least five distinct questions. **Truth:** Is the description correct in ordinary customer understanding, not merely technically defensible under a strained interpretation? **Evidence:** Can the material claim be verified through an appropriate source, test or record? **Fairness:** Do the terms exploit a hidden vulnerability or unjustifiable asymmetry? **Feasibility:** Can the enterprise deliver, support and remediate the offering without shifting undisclosed harm to others? **Accountability:** Is a named decision maker authorized to stop, correct, compensate and disclose? Passing an accounting-profit threshold answers none of these questions by itself. Nor is a favorable intention sufficient if outcomes are not measured. These criteria represent a normative governance instrument, not a claim that a five-item score has been psychometrically validated.

These questions reflect a tension between procedural and substantive legitimacy. A well-documented approval process can still authorize exploitative practices if it treats consumer understanding as irrelevant. Conversely, a manager's favorable ethical intention cannot replace evidence that customers understand recurring charges or that protective controls actually work. The authorization record should therefore identify the affected groups, foreseeable harms, alternative designs, independent objections and revision triggers. Particular caution is warranted where an essential good is sold to buyers lacking meaningful alternatives, because nominal freedom to reject a transaction may coexist with practical dependence. Such analysis is consistent with the chapter's distinction between economic explanation and moral justification; neither may be substituted for the other.

15.12 ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND DIGITAL PRODUCT ECOSYSTEMS

15.12.1 Digital products, platforms and changing product boundaries

Digital offerings can be updated continuously, bundled with complementary services and distributed through platforms whose rules determine visibility and access. Their boundaries are consequently more fluid than those of a sealed physical package: a feature can change after purchase, a third-party API can fail, and ranking algorithms can determine which offerings a customer sees. Product analytics may record feature use, error rates and completion times, but digital observations represent people with access and consent under particular platform configurations. A decline in usage may signal poor design, seasonality, a new competing offer or a change in measurement. Platforms also redistribute decision power toward operators who control search ranking, payment rails, customer data and terms of service. Small African suppliers may gain market access while becoming dependent on opaque rules or expensive switching.

Recommendation systems and generative AI can assist product discovery, content drafting, customer support, segmentation and early prototyping. Their usefulness depends on task, training data, validation design and human capability. Brynjolfsson et al. (2025), studying a staggered AI-assistant introduction among customer-support agents, report productivity benefits within the studied setting and heterogeneous effects by experience; that finding should not be converted into a universal claim that AI raises the profitability of product innovation or the accuracy of every recommendation engine. Models can recommend unsafe combinations, create misleading descriptions, reproduce biased exposure and hallucinate warranty promises. Product management must distinguish generated suggestions from approved product facts.

Digital products additionally challenge conventional notions of ownership and product stability. A purchaser may experience a service as a single offering even when it depends on cloud infrastructure, a payment intermediary, training data, an app store and an outsourced identity provider. Changes in any one component can undermine performance without a visible modification by the seller. Product requirements consequently need dependency maps, change-notification rules, continuity alternatives and explicit responsibility for customer-facing failures. The design question is not simply who wrote the software, but who can prevent, detect and remedy an unacceptable change in the delivered service.

15.12.2 Human oversight, privacy and accountable experimentation

The National Institute of Standards and Technology's AI Risk Management Framework and its generative-AI profile offer voluntary governance guidance for identifying, assessing and managing trustworthiness risks (Tabassi, 2023; Autio et al., 2024). Their relevance is methodological, not a declaration of Rwandan statutory compliance. Rwanda's Law No. 058/2021 on personal data protection and privacy is directly material where product analytics or individualized offers process personal information (Republic of Rwanda, 2021d). A company must identify the lawful basis, purposes, access controls, retention schedule and relevant rights under that law, rather than assume that product-personalization value justifies unrestricted collection.

A proportionate AI product-control register should record the feature owner, intended decision support, affected population, data provenance, model version, benchmark dataset, error types, safety limits, human approvals, logging and withdrawal triggers. Prices and product claims require an approval layer distinct from unconstrained model output. Experiments should test not merely click-through or transaction rates but customer understanding, error severity, disparities among meaningful groups, complaints and reversibility. A human-in-the-loop claim is credible only when the assigned person has time, relevant information and actual authority to reject an automated recommendation.

AI-enabled product tests also raise the problem of evaluation contamination. When a generative system drafts both product claims and the examples against which those claims are assessed, superficial agreement may be mistaken for independent validity. A defensible evaluation keeps verified product specifications separate from generated text, measures error categories and severity, includes representative edge cases and records human disagreement. Product managers should require evidence of calibration and performance drift under changing populations, not merely an attractive average accuracy. Human review must be sampled and audited for actual intervention rather than reported as a procedural checkbox (Tabassi, 2023; Autio et al., 2024).

15.12.3 Digital trust, security and long-term product accountability

Digital product failure can arise from cyber incidents, inaccessible services, broken third-party integrations or a supplier's abrupt change of terms. Trust is thus tied to availability, secure data handling, promised interoperability and remedies after loss, not only to interface design. New feature releases should consider backward compatibility, non-discriminatory migration, data portability and notice periods. Subscription churn may appear commercially beneficial to a platform if users remain locked into payments; consumer welfare requires independent measures of informed choice and cancellation ease. The more a firm automates individualized offers, the stronger the need to preserve evidence of what was offered, accepted, charged and remedied. These records also support accounting, governance and statutory audit without authorizing unlimited retention of personal data.

15.13 RWANDA-BASED APPLICATION AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON

15.13.1 What official Rwanda evidence can and cannot establish

Product strategy in Rwanda must be read against the structure of enterprise activity rather than presumed conditions of large multinational firms. The National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda (NISR) reports an estimated **278,060 business enterprises in 2024** in its Integrated Business Enterprise Survey (IBES), with informality accounting for at least **87 per cent** in the survey's defined business landscape (NISR, 2026e). The survey's formal/informal classification and nonagricultural economic scope must be retained when using these figures. They do not show how many enterprises sell breakfast foods, the willingness to pay for a premium brand, or the magnitude of any particular local price elasticity. They do indicate why many firms may lack specialized product teams, sophisticated cost-accounting systems or stable access to capital and external quality services. Those conditions make simple, transparent tools relevant, but they do not excuse unsafe products or unverifiable claims.

The same official release reports that **62.6 per cent of surveyed manufacturing companies** were not using their full production capacity, with cited constraints including demand and input-supply reliability (NISR, 2026e). This observation makes product-market fit and reliable sourcing important questions, but it does not establish that pricing is the cause of underutilization. Low utilization may reflect seasonality, production interruptions, infrastructure, input scarcity or measurement assumptions. An enterprise seeking to lower price to 'fill the factory' must therefore establish whether demand is elastic, which costs remain avoidable, whether quality would be compromised, and whether higher volume would absorb working capital more quickly than receipts arrive. The national descriptive statistic does not supply these firm-specific answers.

Rwanda's specialty-coffee industry provides a documented example of product quality, origin association and price differentiation operating together, without permitting simplistic causal inference. The National Agricultural Export Development Board (NAEB) reported that Rwanda exported **23,860 tonnes of green coffee in 2025**, earning over **US$148.6 million**, compared with 17,142 tonnes worth over US$89.8 million in 2024 (NAEB, 2026b). Its account attributes the expansion to several factors, including higher volume, international prices and market-development activities. A researcher cannot isolate the contribution of branding, quality competitions or a particular pricing choice from these aggregate data. The distinction matters because attributing the entire export-revenue increase to a national brand campaign would confound global commodity-price movements, crop supply, market composition and promotional effort.

In a separate account, NAEB reported that the 2026 Best of Rwanda specialty-coffee competition selected **25 coffees from 320 samples**, with winning lots offered for an October 2026 auction (NAEB, 2026a). This is evidence of an organized quality-recognition and market-signaling mechanism. The documented cupping and selection process helps distinguish specialty lots, while a transparent auction creates a context in which buyers can reveal valuations for specific, differentiated lots. However, competition selection does not itself measure the incremental net income received by each grower or guarantee that every coffee sold under a Rwanda-origin description meets an identical quality specification. A complete value-chain study would require farm-gate receipts, processing and export costs, contract terms, quality scores, buyer payments and a suitable nonselected comparator.

15.13.2 Product claims, legal obligations and market institutions

A Rwanda-based processor designing a product brand must connect identity with labeling, product safety, traceability and redress. The 2026 competition and consumer-protection law is particularly relevant to truthfulness of product descriptions, visible price terms, guarantees and after-sales service (Republic of Rwanda, 2026a). The Rwanda Standards Board operates product-certification mechanisms, including published directories of certified products (Rwanda Standards Board, n.d.-d), but the applicability of any standard and the current status of a specific certificate must be verified against the actual product and the latest records. Sector-specific authorization may be needed depending on the item; registration of an enterprise, protection of a trademark and product-market authorization are not interchangeable activities. Because these duties differ by product category, the present case avoids asserting an unverified universal food-label specification and instead incorporates a jurisdiction-specific pre-launch compliance check.

The Rwandan coffee example illuminates an economic issue that cannot be settled by a price premium alone: how value is distributed among farmers, processors, exporters, roasters and retailers. A premium may reflect better quality, scarce supply, international preferences, logistics and negotiating power in different proportions. A responsible brand narrative should not promise fair distribution without chain-level evidence. For smaller suppliers, cooperatives and microenterprises, traceability and independent quality certification can improve trust, yet compliance costs, testing access and documentation may restrict participation. The relevant policy and management question is how assurance arrangements can be both credible and proportionate, not whether formal labels always increase welfare.

15.13.3 Comparative international lessons and transferability

The international evidence offers mechanisms rather than ready-made numerical parameters. The US-based experimental literature on price and quality cues demonstrates why branding and price sometimes influence perceptions (Rao & Monroe, 1989), but it does not establish Rwandan consumers' elasticities or the affordability of imported quality-signaling techniques. European requirements concerning environmental claims illustrate increasingly explicit expectations of substantiation (European Parliament & Council, 2024), but their jurisdictional reach and implementation obligations must be examined for any specific export product. The established revenue-management techniques used in airlines and hotels are relevant to perishable capacity (Talluri & van Ryzin, 2004), yet a small producer selling stockable food cannot apply airline seat-protection rules without accounting for storage, spoilage, retailer bargaining and credit.

The strongest lesson from comparison is methodological: the enterprise must establish which *mechanism* plausibly transfers. A specialty coffee exporter can learn from markets that reward traceability, but must test whether target buyers recognize its distinguishing characteristics. A service provider can learn from international recovery frameworks, but needs a complaint channel accessible through its customers' actual languages and communication modes. A digital pricing system can improve responsiveness where data and governance capacity are strong, but it may amplify inequity and errors where records are incomplete. Transferability therefore depends on the joint configuration of customer alternatives, infrastructure, institutional enforcement, scale, capital and organizational capabilities, not on the prestige of the foreign comparator.

A more disciplined Rwanda–international comparison distinguishes capabilities that are transferable at modest cost from arrangements that presume specialized staff and extensive transaction histories. Transparent product specifications, batch traceability, clear warranties and a rudimentary contribution model can be implemented with basic records and accountability. Automated individualized demand curves, complex revenue-management software and real-time experimental platforms assume a data infrastructure that may not be available or appropriate. Their transfer should be staged: first establish reliable units and product records, then test basic segmentation and forecasting, and only thereafter consider automation if the incremental value exceeds its full governance and switching costs. This sequencing is a conditional managerial interpretation, not a measured estimate of adoption effects.

15.14 CROSS-FUNCTIONAL INTEGRATION AND A RESEARCH AGENDA

15.14.1 The product–value–viability–accountability configuration

This chapter proposes an integrative analytical configuration with four linked requirements. **Use value** concerns whether the offering solves a relevant problem through characteristics customers can experience. **Economic viability** concerns whether the value offered can be delivered with sustainable contribution, working capital and investment. **Credible identity** concerns whether claims and signals correspond to consistent, substantiated performance. **Accountability** concerns whether the enterprise detects and remedies failures while respecting enforceable rights and justified stakeholder interests. No requirement substitutes for the others. A technically superior product may lack a viable market, an economically attractive price may rely on misleading claims, and a trusted brand may become fragile when its support system is neglected. The configuration synthesizes distinct literatures, not a newly estimated causal model (Zeithaml, 1988; Keller, 1993; Cooper, 1990; Bitner et al., 2008).

Product and pricing decisions are among the clearest illustrations of enterprise interdependence. Research and customer intelligence (Chapter 14) establish the evidentiary warrant for desired outcomes; marketing strategy (Chapter 13) defines meaningful market boundaries and positioning; operations and quality management (Chapters 17 and 20) establish what can be produced or performed reliably; procurement and supply-chain systems (Chapters 18–19) shape input variability, delivery risk and total fulfillment cost. Management accounting (Chapter 23) clarifies cost behavior, while financial management (Chapter 24) assesses cash

conversion, capital commitment and investment viability. Governance and law (Chapters 3 and 8) determine authorizations, rights and responsibilities; specialist digital systems and AI (Chapters 28–29) implement but do not legitimate algorithms. Chapter 16 subsequently develops the communications and channels through which the approved product and price reach buyers. The connections are causal hypotheses to be examined in specified settings, not a license to claim that every function has the same influence in every firm.

Table 15.4. Cross-functional product and price assurance register

Decision interface	Required information	Principal decision owner	Failure signal / corrective action
Product and customer intelligence	Tested outcome, segment, counterfactual and exclusions	Product lead with research function	Low use or harms: redesign and retest
Brand and legal claims	Evidence ledger, approvals and expiry/review dates	Brand lead and compliance authority	Unsubstantiated claim: suspend and correct
Operations and supply	Capacity, defects, input variability and traceability	Operations and procurement leads	Failure concentration: stop batch or revise supplier
Finance and pricing	Net realized price, variable costs, cash exposure and scenarios	Finance with commercial owner	Margin or cash stress: reprice, redesign or stage scale
After-sales and remedies	Complaints, warranty liability, accessibility and response time	Service owner and governance	Repeat unresolved incidents: escalate and remedy
Digital features and automation	Data purpose, model performance, audit trail and override	Product/IT owner with risk oversight	Drift, discrimination or error: pause automation

Note. Original managerial instrument. Named roles may be combined in a small enterprise, but accountabilities should not disappear. Related conceptual ownership lies across Chapters 3, 8, 14, 17, 18, 20, 23, 24 and 29.

15.14.2 Competing explanatory interpretations and identification challenges

Three theoretical disagreements remain consequential. First, the economic approach foregrounds price, elasticity and surplus, while consumer-research perspectives emphasize imperfect information, reference points, meaning and habits. A behaviorally informed price model can predict responses more richly, but greater complexity does not guarantee better external validity or moral justification. Second, brand-resource approaches emphasize accumulated intangible assets, whereas signaling interpretations stress credible reduction of information costs. A powerful brand may be partly a consequence of superior product delivery, distribution access or advertising expenditures; causal attribution to ‘brand’ requires a defensible counterfactual. Third, stage-gate innovation emphasizes organized screening, while iterative approaches privilege rapid learning and flexibility. A rigid gate may suppress experimentation; an ungated process may externalize safety and privacy risks. Appropriate governance depends on the irreversibility, harm potential and uncertainty of the intervention.

Empirical research must identify the level at which the hypothesized relationship operates. A product-level price experiment needs consistent treatment of competitor and channel conditions; a brand study must distinguish exposure from changes in underlying quality; a portfolio model must account for substitution among offerings; and a policy study must separate legal adoption from implementation and enforcement. Research using only purchasers risks excluding people priced out of the market. Using only formal enterprises may systematically underrepresent informal and hybrid operations. These are not peripheral limitations: they can change the direction and welfare interpretation of conclusions, especially in settings where income, network access and enterprise formalization are heterogeneous.

An additional disagreement concerns the meaning of customer value. Conventional economic models often represent a buyer as an individual with a stable willingness-to-pay schedule; service-oriented scholarship emphasizes value realized through use and co-production; critical institutional analysis asks which parties possess the resources and bargaining power to participate. These perspectives cannot be resolved by declaring one vocabulary universally superior. Their productive synthesis begins with a specific claim and its unit: a demand experiment may estimate purchasing response, a process study may describe realized service outcomes, and a contractual audit may establish who captured the monetary returns. The evidence must be joined through a theory of mechanism rather than averaged across incompatible constructs (Akerlof, 1970; Vargo & Lusch, 2004; Zeithaml, 1988).

15.14.3 Explicit propositions for future empirical work

Proposition P15.1. Conditional on comparable core quality, rival choice and past brand strength, transparent assurance and dependable post-purchase remedies are expected to reduce perceived purchase risk and support more durable price premiums. A suitable test would compare otherwise similar product cohorts with differing independently verified assurance exposure while recording product failures, prior purchasing and promotional intensity.

Proposition P15.2. Enterprises that jointly evaluate cost, demand, capacity and service consequences when changing price are expected to obtain more stable economic returns than otherwise comparable enterprises relying exclusively on constant cost markup. An evaluation must separate the effect of the decision process from the pre-existing scale, skill and data advantages that make sophisticated pricing more likely.

Proposition P15.3. The commercial and welfare effects of algorithmic personalization are expected to vary with data quality, consumer understanding, distributive fairness and effective override capability. A defensible field design would report conversion, realized contribution, errors, complaints and heterogeneous treatment effects, not simply uplift in the average transaction value.

Proposition P15.4. Among financially constrained enterprises, proportionate product assurance coupled with iterative market validation may improve survival of viable innovations compared with unconstrained full launches. The possible countermechanism is that certification and testing costs may prevent entry by capable small suppliers. Research should therefore measure both failure reduction among entrants and exclusion before entry.

Proposition P15.5. Traceability-based differentiation may increase buyers’ willingness to pay without proportionately increasing farmers’ or small suppliers’ net receipts where contractual bargaining power and verification costs are unevenly distributed. Testing requires linked transaction values across successive value-chain stages, a credible comparison group and adjustment for product quality and world-market price changes.

None of these propositions has been independently validated within this chapter. An appropriate research programme would preregister definitional choices where feasible, triangulate field records with customer-level evidence, distinguish outcome periods, disclose missing data and use randomized or credible quasi-experimental comparisons when causal claims are intended. For P15.5, researchers would require chain-level transactions and a distributional model rather than national export receipts alone. For P15.3, a field experiment should incorporate pre-specified accuracy and welfare safeguards, not optimize conversion first and assess harm only afterwards.

15.15 INTEGRATIVE DISCUSSION, CHAPTER SYNTHESIS AND CONCLUSION

The principal insight is that an offering cannot be assessed adequately as an object, a story or a price in isolation. Product design specifies the promise; operational systems give that promise substance; branding makes it recognizable and potentially credible; and pricing allocates part of the jointly created value while affecting demand and access. Product portfolios then determine which promises the enterprise can continue to finance, and after-sales practices determine how it responds when those promises fail. The cycle repeats under technological, institutional and competitive change. A sophisticated technique becomes valuable only when it improves the quality of a decision that remains accountable to evidence and affected people.

The relationship among these lessons is reciprocal. Better customer evidence can justify redesign, which changes unit cost and the feasible price; a better price can sustain product quality, which in turn strengthens brand trust; and effective remedies can reveal weaknesses that neither a sales report nor a technical test detects. Conversely, a misleading claim may inflate immediate demand while eroding later trust and imposing unrecorded remediation costs. The chapter therefore rejects a simple sequence in which product design ends, branding begins and pricing follows as an isolated calculation.

The analysis establishes three connected lessons for product and price decisions. The first concerns epistemic responsibility: customer outcomes should take precedence over feature accumulation, and observed sales trajectories must be interpreted in relation to substitution, market access and quality rather than assigned automatically to a presumed life-cycle stage. The second concerns economic integration: product portfolios, brand commitments and price schedules must be evaluated using incremental contribution, credible demand responses, capacity, service obligations and working-capital exposure. A margin, a market-share figure or a brand-awareness index is informative only within the decision and measurement framework from which it was produced. The third concerns legitimate authority: differentiated prices and automation can support efficiency, but they remain constrained by truthful communication, accessible redress, fair treatment, lawful information practices and accountable human judgment.

For Rwanda and comparable African settings, the imperative is neither to imitate the most data-intensive pricing practices of global corporations nor to romanticize informal methods. Enterprises need measures proportionate to their scale, access to trustworthy standards, legitimate buyer information, basic unit-economics discipline and protection against the misuse of price and brand claims. The documented growth and differentiation of Rwanda’s coffee exports show why quality, origin and market access deserve examination, while also demonstrating how easily aggregate outcomes can be wrongly assigned to branding alone. An intellectually defensible enterprise responds to that uncertainty by testing assumptions, measuring trade-offs, preserving rights and revising decisions. The chapter thus completes the product–brand–price component of marketing and prepares the next chapter’s analysis of selling, distribution, communications and digital channel execution.

15.16 KEY TERMINOLOGY, QUESTIONS, APPLICATIONS AND EDUCATOR NOTES

15.16.1 Selected key terms

Table 15.5. Key terminology and conceptual definitions

Term	Conceptual definition and qualification
Augmented product	The assistance, access and assurance accompanying the central offering, including support, delivery, warranties and remedies that shape realized use value.
Brand equity	The incremental response or asset value attributable to brand knowledge, associations or identifiers under an explicitly chosen measurement framework.
Brand credibility	The perceived reliability and truthfulness of a seller’s brand-related information and commitments, which must be distinguished from objectively verified product quality.
Cannibalization	The diversion of purchases toward a new offering from another product owned by the same enterprise, measured against a counterfactual without that launch.
Contribution margin	The difference between realized net price and relevant incremental variable cost; the ratio expresses that difference as a proportion of realized price.
Customer economic value	An estimate of the buyer’s incremental net benefits relative to a specified feasible alternative over a clearly defined unit and time horizon.
Dynamic pricing	The adjustment of prices over time or across circumstances through pre-specified decision rules, which may be manual or algorithmically implemented.
Own-price elasticity	The proportional change in demand quantity associated with a proportional change in the offering’s own price, conditional on other relevant factors.
Price differentiation	Differences in realized net prices across buyers or transactions, whose justification depends on costs, service terms, competitive conditions and applicable law.
Product portfolio	The set of interdependent offers competing for shared enterprise capabilities, investment, attention and customer demand.
Service blueprint	A process representation connecting customer actions, frontstage interaction, backstage operations and supporting systems across service handoffs.
Stage gate	An explicit evidence-and-authority checkpoint governing whether a product concept advances, changes, pauses or exits.
Value proposition	A credible, testable explanation of the benefits and sacrifices of an offering for a defined customer relative to a genuine alternative.
Yield management	Pricing and allocation of capacity that cannot be stored for later sale, taking uncertain future demand and customer obligations into account.

15.16.2 Questions for conceptual understanding and advanced critique

Question 1 (LO1–LO2). For a Rwandan agricultural-input supplier, distinguish the product’s core outcome, physical specification and augmented after-sales obligations. Develop two competing explanations for a decline in orders and explain why a product-life-cycle classification alone is insufficient to authorize withdrawal.

Question 2 (LO3–LO4). Compare customer-based brand equity, credible signaling and Akerlof’s quality-uncertainty account. Identify what each theory predicts, the data required to distinguish their mechanisms and one circumstance in which a costly signal might worsen rather than improve market access.

Question 3 (LO5). Explain mathematically why a 30 per cent markup is not a 30 per cent contribution margin. Show how a change in price could reduce revenue but increase period operating profit, specifying assumptions about costs, demand and capacity that must hold.

Question 4 (LO6–LO7). Evaluate a proposed personalized price for an essential, time-sensitive service through efficiency, distributional fairness, consumer understanding, privacy and applicable law. Separate empirical predictions about demand from the moral basis for the proposed pricing rule.

Question 5 (LO8). Explain why growth in national coffee export earnings cannot establish that a branding initiative increased farm-level incomes. Propose a comparative empirical design and specify how international prices, product quality, buyer selection and value-chain costs would be addressed.

15.16.3 Applied quantitative exercises

Exercise A (LO5). Using the companion pricing workbook, reproduce Table 15.3, calculate both break-even volumes and the arc elasticity, and reconcile the counterintuitive result that the higher-price option earns lower revenue but greater assumed operating profit. Then test a 10 per cent increase in variable cost and a 15 per cent demand shortfall independently and together. Report the break-even conditions, the worst-case monthly operating profit among the tested scenarios and the economic assumptions most likely to fail in actual use.

Exercise B (LO2, LO5). A hypothetical enterprise introduces a new item selling 1,500 units at contribution RWF 1,200 each. Assume 900 units would otherwise have been sold of an existing product at contribution RWF 1,000 each, while incremental introduction and support cost totals RWF 400,000. Compute incremental portfolio contribution and explain which assumptions would need evidence. *Expected calculation:* RWF 1,800,000 − 900,000 − 400,000 = **RWF 500,000**. Discuss how the result changes if half the displaced purchases would have been lost to a competitor anyway.

Exercise C (LO6). Recalculate the three-year B2B equipment example in Section 15.9 using discount rates of 0, 6 and 18 per cent. Explain whether the ranking of A and B changes and what evidence on maintenance risk, residual value and delivery would be required for an actual tender. Include an ethical note on unsupported performance claims and the rights of competing bidders.

15.16.4 Integrative case and research assignment

Capstone assignment (LO1–LO8). Prepare a 2,500–3,500-word product and pricing decision memorandum for the entirely hypothetical Kigali Nourish enterprise, with appendices containing a requirements register, product-portfolio assessment, prototype validation plan, brand-claims evidence ledger, three-price scenario model, adverse-sensitivity matrix and post-purchase remedies procedure. Address Rwanda's applicable 2026 competition and consumer-protection framework at a level justified by the primary statutory text. Compare the domestic offer with a plausible EAC market-entry alternative without inventing legal clearance, customer data or transport prices. State what can be concluded now, what requires research and what would trigger a no-launch or recall decision. The recommendation must explicitly reconcile consumer benefit, economic sustainability, affordability, worker/supplier impacts and governance authority.

15.16.5 Educator guidance and assessment rubric

The foundational questions test conceptual distinctions; Exercises A–C test arithmetic and inference; and the capstone tests evidence-based synthesis and judgment. The proposed rubric assigns 20 per cent to problem and product specification, 20 per cent to theory and credible secondary evidence, 25 per cent to transparent and correct economic analysis, 15 per cent to ethical/legal and service-accountability reasoning, 10 per cent to interfunctional integration and 10 per cent to scholarly presentation and reference accuracy. Award no credit for invented empirical company findings presented as observations. A defensible answer may reject the higher-profit base scenario if its demand assumption is too weak or if its promises cannot be reliably delivered; learners should be assessed on reasoned evidence, not agreement with a predetermined price.

15.16.6 Further reading and evidence transparency

A productive reading sequence begins with Zeithaml (1988) for perceived value, Keller (1993) and Erdem and Swait (1998) for brand equity and signaling, Cooper (1990) and Bitner et al. (2008) for development and service design, Hinterhuber (2008) for pricing practice and Talluri and van Ryzin (2004) for revenue management. For context, consult the primary NISR (2026e) enterprise survey, NAEB (2026b, 2026a) coffee releases, the 2026 Rwandan consumer-protection statute, and the source-specific EU, FTC and NIST documents rather than relying on undated derivative summaries.

The analytic tables and figures in this chapter are author-developed conceptual or teaching instruments. The Kigali Nourish financial scenarios use disclosed invented values; their arithmetic can be reproduced from Equations 15.1–15.2 and the accompanying model, but the inputs are not measurements of real firms or consumers. The Rwandan institutional and export evidence is documentary and descriptive. Accordingly, the chapter makes no original causal estimate, experimental claim or assertion that its integrated framework has undergone empirical validation.

CHAPTER 16

Sales, Distribution, Marketing Communications, and Digital Marketing

ABSTRACT

Commercial success depends not only on a defensible product and price, but also on the ability to reach customers, negotiate appropriate exchanges, communicate verifiable benefits and deliver what has been promised. This chapter critically examines sales, distribution, marketing communications and digital marketing as an interdependent commercial execution system. Drawing on a transparent, purposive synthesis of channel economics, relationship marketing, adaptive selling, diffusion theory, integrated marketing communications, digital-platform scholarship and causal advertising measurement, it develops twelve domains from route-to-market architecture through cross-border selling and algorithmically mediated communication. Official Rwandan business and financial-inclusion evidence is distinguished from purchase behaviour and enterprise-level performance. A constructed Kigali wholesaler case compares domestic direct supply, intermediary distribution and phased East African expansion using auditable assumptions about contribution, collections, returns, capacity and promotional incrementality. Original pedagogical instruments include a route-to-market decision matrix, a defined sales funnel, a channel contribution bridge, a communication assurance protocol and an integrated commercial accountability map. The central argument is that revenue, exposure and engagement are not sufficient evidence of customer benefit or enterprise value: credible commercial performance requires coordinated access, truthful communication, suitable contracting, dependable fulfilment, incremental contribution and legitimate treatment of information and stakeholders. The synthesis offers analytically testable propositions, not a new empirically validated causal model.

Keywords: route-to-market design; distribution channels; relationship selling; sales management; integrated marketing communications; digital marketing; marketing attribution; omnichannel commerce; consumer protection; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

After completing this chapter, readers should be able to (LO1) distinguish and evaluate direct, intermediary, hybrid and platform-mediated routes to market; (LO2) design an ethical end-to-end sales process with clear qualification, negotiation, account-development and service controls; (LO3) calculate, interpret and challenge pipeline, conversion, territory and channel performance indicators; (LO4) construct an integrated communications programme with defensible objectives, messages and evidence requirements; (LO5) compare retail, wholesale, omnichannel and digital commerce models in terms of access, cost, fulfilment, channel power and customer experience; (LO6) design a proportionate data-governance and experimental measurement approach for digital campaigns; (LO7) assess a proposed Rwandan-to-East African distribution expansion against market, contractual, institutional and financial constraints; and (LO8) defend a commercial plan that integrates contribution, causal evidence, consent, fair dealing and cross-functional accountability.

The argument begins with the institutional and intellectual foundations of commercial access (16.0), moves from distribution design to sales process and oversight (16.1–16.3), then develops communication, promotion and retail integration (16.4–16.6). Digital infrastructure, content and analytics (16.7–16.9) lead to cross-border choices, ethical obligations and emerging algorithmic systems (16.10–16.12). A Rwanda-based case (16.13), critical synthesis and research agenda (16.14), and educational resources (16.15–16.16) complete the chapter. Chapters 13–15 own market orientation, customer research, product design, branding and pricing; the present

chapter owns market access, selling and communication execution. Physical network engineering is developed in Chapter 19, and financial accounting and investment valuation in Chapters 22–24.

16.0 INTRODUCTION: A MARKET PROMISE IS NOT A COMPLETED EXCHANGE

A hypothetical Kigali wholesaler sells packaged staple foods to small shops and institutional buyers. Marketing proposes online advertising after inquiries increase on messaging applications. The sales manager promises next-day delivery to major accounts, while the distribution partner serves outer districts only twice weekly. A retailer requests thirty-day credit; the finance officer notes that the supplier must be paid within ten days. A promotional video describes the product as “guaranteed healthy”, although no evidence supporting the implied health claim has been assembled. Each proposal might appear locally reasonable. Together they create a possible system of uncollectible sales, disappointed customers and misleading communication. This constructed situation illustrates why commercial execution cannot be identified with either persuasion or the arrival of an order.

Sales refers to the organized interpersonal or technology-mediated processes through which an enterprise identifies suitable buyers, investigates requirements, negotiates terms, secures commitments, supports delivery and develops legitimate customer relationships. Distribution denotes the arrangements through which offerings become available for purchase and use, including intermediaries, channel governance and market access. Marketing communications concerns the purposeful design and coordination of messages and interactions that inform, persuade or remind audiences in accordance with the evidence supporting an offering. Digital marketing applies these activities through networked infrastructure, data and platform-mediated environments. The four fields overlap, but they answer distinct questions: who can buy, what is being promised, how agreements are made, and how those claims and agreements become observable outcomes (Anderson & Narus, 1990; Batra & Keller, 2016; Morgan & Hunt, 1994).

This distinction raises an epistemological problem: what does the enterprise actually know when it observes a click, a lead, an order, a repeat purchase or a favourable review? These events differ in contractual meaning and causal interpretation. A click can reflect curiosity or accidental interaction; an order may be cancelled; revenue can be recognized before cash arrives; a repeat transaction may result from lack of alternatives rather than affection for a brand. The managerial question is correspondingly plural. Commercial activity must create reachable exchange opportunities, safeguard claims and consent, coordinate operational promises, cover its true incremental costs and produce evidence robust enough to improve decisions. No single conversion percentage or advertising return supplies all those answers (Blake et al., 2015; Gordon et al., 2019).

16.0.1 Intellectual history, competing explanations and analytical stance

Classical distribution economics emphasizes specialization, distance, assortments and transaction costs. Intermediaries assemble heterogeneous products, provide local stock and reduce the number or complexity of individual exchanges. Transaction-cost reasoning asks when a producer should internalize sales and distribution rather than rely on independent agents; relational exchange scholarship asks how repeated cooperation, power, trust and specific investments change those choices. These perspectives are complementary but not entirely harmonious. Cost minimization may recommend one dominant distributor; dependence and hold-up risk may make a redundant channel more prudent. Channel reach may rise while the producer loses influence over information, prices or service quality (Williamson, 1985; Anderson & Narus, 1990).

Personal-selling research subsequently challenged the idea that standardized scripts suffice in complex encounters. Adaptive-selling theory treats diagnosis and the capacity to alter explanations as important mechanisms, while commitment–trust theory explains why durable business relationships require more than repeated transactions (Spiro & Weitz, 1990; Morgan & Hunt, 1994). Diffusion theory explains why exposure, peer communication, perceived compatibility and trialability may influence adoption, but diffusion does not demonstrate that a particular campaign caused uptake or that adoption is socially beneficial (Rogers, 2003).

Integrated marketing communications (IMC) approaches address the coherence of contact points rather than the mechanical repetition of a slogan; their effectiveness depends on how audiences process combinations of media over time (Kliatchko, 2008; Batra & Keller, 2016).

Digital platforms alter the organization of access by combining discovery, rankings, advertising, payment interfaces, customer feedback and sometimes fulfilment. Yet they do not abolish the older problems of asymmetric information, capacity, power or trust. A marketplace can expand reach while concentrating gatekeeping rights in a platform. Detailed behavioural traces can sharpen measurement but also compound selection bias, privacy exposure and commercial dependence. An effective theoretical synthesis therefore treats the channel not merely as a physical path but as a governed configuration of transactions, information, commitments and remedies. That synthesis is a conceptual proposal requiring empirical testing, not an established universal causal law.

16.0.2 Sources, method and limits of inference

This chapter uses a critical, purposive secondary-source and documentary synthesis. Selection privileges original theoretical works on transaction governance, channel relationships, adaptive selling, integrated communications and diffusion; peer-reviewed studies capable of substantiating specified empirical statements; and primary Rwandan legal, statistical and regulatory materials. Targeted verification on 1 November 2026 used source-specific combinations including “distribution partnerships Anderson Narus 1990”, “adaptive selling Spiro Weitz 1990”, “integrating marketing communications Batra Keller 2016”, “paid search effectiveness eBay 2015”, “advertising measurement Facebook 2019”, “Rwanda IBES 2024”, “Rwanda FinScope 2024”, “competition consumer protection 011/2026”, “personal data protection 058/2021”, “EAC trade customs union” and “AfCFTA digital trade protocol”. Publisher and issuing-body records were preferred to secondary summaries. This was not a registered systematic review, exhaustive screening exercise, meta-analysis, new interview study or evaluation of an identifiable wholesaler; no search yield or causal coefficient is invented.

Evidence is interpreted at the level that generated it. National surveys characterize sampled people or enterprises under published definitions, not a particular company's demand. Statutes establish authoritative texts subject to jurisdiction, commencement and implementing arrangements, not evidence that enforcement always occurs. Field experiments identify effects in their studied campaigns, customers and periods, not invariant returns to marketing. All monetary calculations and business decisions in the constructed case are teaching assumptions, disclosed so that arithmetic can be replicated. The documentary cut-off is 1 November 2026; subsequent legal changes, data revisions or platform terms require a new date-specific check.

A critical synthesis also requires attention to what commercial success is taken to mean. Its descriptive dimension concerns verifiable exchanges and their distribution across customers, channels and periods; its explanatory dimension asks which structures, messages and incentives generated those exchanges; its evaluative dimension asks whether the resulting arrangements are economically durable and justified to affected persons. These inquiries cannot be reduced to one optimization problem. An enterprise may expand reach by delegating selling to intermediaries yet lose the information necessary to detect coercive conduct. Conversely, insisting on full proprietary control may exclude customers whom a trusted local intermediary can serve more economically. The defensible object of analysis is an accountable commercial arrangement, not maximum channel penetration or persuasion intensity in isolation. The distinction draws on the transaction-governance and relationship traditions, but remains a proposed synthesis whose relative explanatory value needs comparative evaluation (Williamson, 1985; Frazier, 1999; Morgan & Hunt, 1994).

There is also a temporal problem. Advertising can create demand before production can fulfil it; a distributor can increase current shipments while building unsold inventory; discounted orders can be followed by unusually weak sales; and a customer's initial conversion may impose later warranty or service costs. Consequently, observations at different stages must be reconciled to a declared time horizon. Short-run incrementality, medium-run cash realization and longer-run customer welfare are not automatically commensurable. The

chapter uses explicit observation units, contractual definitions and scenario assumptions rather than presuming that every commercial outcome has a single measurable cause. This approach is compatible with evidence-based managerial judgment, but does not establish a completed systematic review or a new validated performance index.

16.1 ROUTE-TO-MARKET DESIGN

16.1.1 Channel architecture and the economic purpose of intermediaries

A route to market is the set of organizational relationships, points of access, commercial rights and supporting processes by which an intended customer may discover, purchase, obtain, use and, when necessary, return an offering. A direct route allows the producer to transact with end users through personnel, owned outlets or proprietary websites. An indirect route allocates one or more commercial functions to agents, distributors, wholesalers, retail chains or other intermediaries. Hybrid routes combine arrangements; platforms create multi-sided access rules under which the enterprise may control the offering but not the entire discovery and transaction environment. The relevant unit of analysis is the complete exchange journey rather than the last organization to invoice a buyer.

An intermediary can create genuine value by aggregating fragmented demand, holding local assortments, providing trade credit, offering demonstration or service and consolidating information. Its margin is not automatically waste. The test is whether the intermediary's contribution to reach, service, risk bearing and total cost exceeds the economic value of what it charges or controls. Conversely, direct-to-consumer commerce may provide richer first-party information and some price control, but requires expenditure on customer acquisition, payments, returns, fulfilment and dispute resolution that an existing retail network already performs. The comparison must therefore use contribution after channel-specific costs, not gross selling price alone (Williamson, 1985; Anderson & Narus, 1990).

Channel structures also create distinct forms of coordination cost. An agent who introduces customers without taking title may leave inventory and credit exposure with the principal; a wholesaler buying for resale can absorb inventory and local collection risks but may obscure the ultimate customer experience; a platform can efficiently match participants while controlling search prominence, service rules and access to transaction data. Classifying routes merely as 'direct' or 'indirect' therefore loses economically material differences. Governance analysis should record who acquires title, who sets the final consumer price, who finances stock, who bears returns and defects, who owns or can lawfully use customer records, and whose decision can resolve a dispute. Frazier (1999) emphasizes how the organization of distribution channels poses managerial questions not reducible to a simple sequence of resellers. The implication is a contract-and-capabilities comparison, rather than an assumption that fewer organizations means fewer frictions.

16.1.2 Coverage, governance, power and conflict

Distribution intensity describes the intended availability of an offering: intensive placement seeks wide accessibility, selective placement limits outlets according to suitability, and exclusive or narrowly authorized arrangements emphasize specialized service or control. A higher outlet count does not necessarily imply effective coverage. The relevant denominators may be eligible outlets within a segment, weighted category sales, geographic travel times or the proportion of customer demand supportable under available inventory. For small Rwandan suppliers, a network that offers dependable replenishment and visible payment records may be more valuable than nominal listing in many distant shops.

Channel governance must allocate territories, service standards, permitted representations, credit authority, return obligations, complaints, inventory information, data access, payment collection and dispute escalation. Channel power arises when one party controls a scarce route to customers, a valuable brand, financing, platform ranking, logistics capacity or irreplaceable market knowledge. Resource asymmetry can be efficient if it enables

coordinated investment, yet it can also facilitate opportunistic changes in terms, forced exclusivity, misleading discounts or arbitrary delisting. Exclusivity, resale restrictions and territorial provisions require jurisdiction-specific competition-law assessment rather than general assertions of legality.

Table 16.1. Comparative route-to-market choices

Model	Principal value	Principal exposure	Appropriate diagnostic
Direct sales / owned digital	First-party learning, offer control, account intimacy	Higher acquisition and fulfilment burden	Contribution after acquisition, delivery, returns and collections
Wholesaler/distributor	Aggregated demand, local stock, trade access	Margin sharing, opaque sell-through, dependency	Effective coverage, receivables, sell-through and service exceptions
Retail partnership	Local convenience, demonstration, trusted outlet	Shelf competition, promotions and stockout risk	Weighted availability, replenishment and verified consumer sell-out
Marketplace/platform	Search and transactional reach, scalable discovery	Fees, ranking dependence, counterfeit listings, restricted data	Incremental profit net of fees, returns and platform concentration
Hybrid/omnichannel	Choice and continuity across journeys	Cannibalization, inconsistent prices or promises	Customer-level service continuity and deduplicated channel contribution

Note. Original comparative synthesis informed by channel-governance and relationship literature (Anderson & Narus, 1990; Williamson, 1985). These are conditional analytical trade-offs, not empirical rankings of channels in Rwanda.

Channel breadth and depth should be measured separately. Numeric distribution measures the share of eligible outlets that stock a product, whereas weighted distribution recognizes that outlets contribute unequal proportions of relevant category turnover. Availability within an outlet also depends on assortment, on-shelf presence, stockout frequency, display quality and service. Ailawadi and Farris (2017) explain why the move to multichannel and omnichannel systems requires carefully selected distribution measures rather than uncritical reliance on outlet counts. For illustration, distribution in 40 of 100 stores gives 40% numeric coverage; if those 40 stores account for 65% of measured category sales in the defined territory, the same placement has 65% category-sales-weighted coverage. Neither percentage establishes profitability or physical accessibility to every household. The category-sales weights, product availability and time period must be documented before the comparison can inform allocation.

Channel conflict may be vertical, where producer and reseller disagree over prices, promotions or service obligations, or horizontal, where resellers operating at the same level contest territory, lead ownership or perceived preferential treatment. Hybrid systems create another form: an enterprise's own website may undercut an independent retailer while relying on that retailer to provide pre-sale advice or local returns. Not every conflict should be eliminated, since differentiated routes may serve distinct needs. What matters is a fair and enforceable mechanism for allocating accounts, calculating service compensation, disclosing promotional terms and resolving ambiguous orders. Where partner investments are relationship-specific, an enterprise that can unilaterally change access terms may induce underinvestment even if its formal agreement is legally valid.

16.1.3 A decision rule beyond gross margin

Let expected net channel contribution over a stated period equal revenue earned from expected fulfilled transactions, less product variable cost, channel fees, trade promotions, incremental fulfilment and returns, expected uncollectible receivables not already netted from the revenue estimate and attributable servicing expenditure. Shared fixed overhead should be evaluated separately and not arbitrarily loaded into a short-run incremental choice. Because demand, transaction cost and disputes depend on the channel chosen, a valid comparison needs plausible response scenarios rather than assuming all routes generate identical volume. Long-term learning and market access can justify modest near-term expense, but the opportunity cost and timing of that investment must be explicit. A constrained enterprise may deliberately retain two routes if redundancy protects continuity, even though the lowest-cost route would dominate in a single-period calculation.

16.2 SALES PROCESSES AND CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIPS

16.2.1 Prospecting through qualification

A defensible sales process begins with defining a legitimate customer problem and recognizing when the enterprise should decline a sale. Prospecting identifies organizations or people plausibly served; qualification establishes whether they have an actual need, purchasing authority, an attainable timetable, appropriate ability or willingness to pay, and compatible technical, legal and operational requirements. Modern pipeline frameworks often capture these dimensions through mnemonic systems, but their value lies in the quality of evidence rather than their acronyms. An apparently promising lead that cannot lawfully be contacted or served within the available territory is not an opportunity at its reported face value.

Lead sources differ in intentionality. A buyer requesting an institutional quotation is not informationally equivalent to a social-media follower or a third-party list contact. Consent and provenance must remain attached to records; outreach cannot be justified simply because a personal identifier is technically available. Screening should also protect customers from being persuaded into unsuitable contracts. In institutional selling, discovery must include user needs, procurement rules, technical specifications, payment authority, service-level requirements and the risks borne by the customer when the supplier fails.

Lead qualification is not merely a filter for finding customers likely to spend. Its epistemic task is to separate the evidence that a prospect is suitable from a salesperson's desire to count the prospect as an opportunity. An institutional buyer may have strong expressed interest but lack procurement authorization; a household may satisfy a digital scoring rule yet not understand financing obligations; an informal retailer may have genuine demand but limited formal records. Different evidence is needed for identity, need, authority, payment capacity and lawful contact. A decision log should distinguish 'not yet verified' from 'rejected', allow corrections and record why an opportunity was advanced. This is particularly important when predictive models make qualification appear objective while reproducing the omissions of earlier sales records.

16.2.2 Consultative, adaptive and relationship selling

Consultative selling seeks to diagnose the customer's situation before proposing an offering. Adaptive selling adjusts the presentation, questions and implementation proposal to what is learned during the interaction rather than assuming one script fits every buyer. Spiro and Weitz (1990) supplied an operational measure of adaptive selling, but self-reported adaptability is not proof of customer welfare or superior causal performance. A salesperson may adapt skilfully in order to manipulate rather than assist. The practical distinction is whether claims are relevant, testable, understandable and appropriately bounded.

Relationship selling emphasizes repeated exchanges and the credibility of future commitments. Morgan and Hunt (1994) theorized commitment and trust as important mediators of cooperative behaviour; Palmatier et al. (2006) found heterogeneous relationships between relationship-marketing investments and performance across the studies in their meta-analysis. The implication is not that a customer should be cultivated regardless of cost.

It is that strong relationships can lower uncertainty and support joint adaptation where customers value reliability and service. Trust also requires measurable conduct: accurate quotations, documented exceptions, predictable complaint handling, restitution and transparent incentives.

The benefits of adaptive or relationship selling must be evaluated against both measurement and power problems. Self-assessed adaptability can be inflated by impression management, while long-standing accounts may enjoy better recorded outcomes because the firm has already allocated its best staff and service capacity to them. Payne and Frow (2005) treat customer relationship management as a cross-functional process encompassing strategy, value creation, multichannel integration, information and performance assessment, not as a technology purchase. Applied to business-to-business selling, this means the firm should document the customer's use requirements, economic constraints and service experience, then evaluate the account over its relationship horizon. It should also protect against dependence: a supplier's strategic account may demand credit extensions or exclusivity that make the apparent commercial partnership less sustainable for workers, smaller customers or the supplier itself.

16.2.3 Negotiation, closing and after-sale accountability

A sale is concluded when the parties agree on authorized terms, not when a salesperson records an enthusiastic conversation. Negotiation should address product specification, quantity, delivery window, taxes and charges where relevant, payment and credit, returns, service obligations, warranties, exclusions and the resolution of disputes. In business-to-business transactions, authority limits and written confirmation protect both the customer and the selling enterprise. Aggressive closing tactics that exploit confusion about penalties, scarcity or cancellation may increase recorded orders but generate dissatisfaction, refunds, legal exposure and expensive service recovery.

The sequence does not end at signature or cash receipt. Account development includes onboarding, fulfillment verification, responsive service, periodic suitability reviews and differentiated investment in relationships based on both customer value and fairness. A failed promise is an information event. The effective salesperson should know how to initiate a corrective action across operations, logistics and finance rather than conceal the failure to defend a quota. Customer complaints and product returns should feed documented learning, not merely a “save the sale” tactic.

16.3 SALES MANAGEMENT AND CONTROLS

16.3.1 Organization, territories, quotas and incentives

Sales management allocates selling capacity, establishes objectives, directs account coverage and creates controls capable of distinguishing productive effort from gaming. Geographic territories are often convenient but can hide unequal opportunity: two equal-sized districts may differ in purchasing power, outlet density, travel time, competitive intensity and account potential. Account-based specialization can improve knowledge but increase travel and coordination costs. Territory design should therefore combine feasible call frequency, travel effort, service demands and estimated opportunity, with explicit adjustments for disadvantaged or emerging markets.

Quotas can mobilize attention but distort conduct if they privilege immediate bookings, volume or new-account counts over realizable contribution, customer suitability and collectability. A salesperson rewarded for invoicing may extend unauthorized credit; one rewarded for new logos may neglect renewals; a manager rewarded for a short-term conversion rate may delete difficult leads from the denominator. Robust scorecards couple outcome measures with quality safeguards, such as overdue balances, complaint resolution, discounts outside authority, order cancellations and documented customer acceptance. Variable compensation requires oversight for discriminatory allocation, forced sales, unauthorized promises and conflicts of interest.

16.3.2 Pipeline discipline, forecasting and CRM

A pipeline is a dated collection of opportunities with defined stages, expected value, ownership and evidence. A forecast is an uncertain prediction of recognized or collected commercial outcomes over a specified horizon. The two are not interchangeable. Weighted pipeline estimates are useful when stage probabilities are based on appropriately comparable historical cohorts. A salesperson's subjective probability, multiplied by an invoice value, cannot establish expected cash receipts if late payment, partial fulfillment and correlated deal failure are ignored.

For opportunity i, a simple probability-weighted bookings forecast can be written as $F = \Sigma(p_i V_i)$, where p_i is the conditional probability that opportunity i closes within the forecast horizon and V_i is its authorized contract value. This identity is not a causal model; its reliability requires stable stage definitions, calibration and no systematic omission. When five opportunities each have expected invoice value RWF 2,000,000 but close probabilities of 0.10, 0.25, 0.40, 0.60 and 0.80, the weighted total is RWF 4,300,000, not RWF 10,000,000. The forecast remains inadequate for treasury planning until conversion to deliveries, invoicing and cash is modelled, including the timing of each step.

Customer relationship management (CRM) combines processes for initiating, maintaining and, where warranted, ending customer relationships with suitable records and responsible coordination. Reinartz et al. (2004) found a moderate positive association between CRM process implementation and performance in their studied settings. Their evidence does not establish that purchasing software alone creates this effect. A small enterprise may begin with a secure, structured account register containing consent provenance, contact role, quotations, action ownership, delivery and payment states, rather than buying an elaborate system whose fields no one reliably maintains. Governance requires role-based access, retention schedules, correction procedures, audit trails and reconciliation of CRM reports with operations and financial records. Forecast calibration can be examined without sophisticated software. Suppose opportunities assigned a 40% closing probability by a sales team historically close only 20% within the nominated quarter. The problem is not necessarily individual dishonesty: stage definitions may have drifted, customers may be delayed by procurement approval, or the forecast population may be selectively updated. A transparent calibration review groups opportunities by probability range and vintage, compares predicted and realized closure within the same observation window, and separately examines value-weighted error, overdue stage age and collection delay. The forecast should include low, central and high realizable-cash scenarios with explicit assumptions about cancellations and receivables. This is preferable to improving an apparently precise forecast by mechanically reducing every probability without understanding why the model miscalibrated.

16.3.3 Sales control as a causal learning system

Management should distinguish activity (calls, visits), throughput (qualified leads, proposals), outcomes (fulfilled orders, collected contribution) and safeguards (returns, complaints, adverse credit events). Differences across territories may arise from lead quality, demand composition or stock availability rather than seller competence. Evaluating a new incentive or sales script therefore requires a comparison design, ideally random assignment or a credible staggered implementation where feasible. Otherwise performance reviews should report associations and competing explanations instead of attributing the entire change to sales management. Where sample sizes are small, operational records, customer narratives and process exceptions may be more decision-useful than unstable percentage changes.

Sales accountability is intrinsically cross-functional. A sales team may be penalized for a low fulfilment rate caused by warehouse shortages, while an operations team may be judged harshly for late deliveries on orders accepted outside authorized lead times. A useful control system therefore assigns ownership at the handoff and distinguishes avoidable seller conduct from conditions outside the seller's authority. Exception reviews should test the order's original terms, capacity confirmation, credit approval, dispatch date, customer's acceptance and eventual correction. Where incentives span many accounts, the enterprise should review whether rewards shift

employees toward affluent or easy-to-serve customers. Outcomes that appear individually rational may collectively weaken geographic access and customer trust (Payne & Frow, 2005).

16.4 MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS STRATEGY

16.4.1 From commercial objectives to audience decisions

A communications strategy explains whose knowledge, interpretation or behaviour the organization seeks to influence, why the influence is legitimate, which message can be substantiated, how channels will be combined and what evidence would establish progress. Commercial objectives such as sales growth, reducing perceived risk or introducing a new service should not be collapsed into advertising metrics. Awareness, comprehension, consideration, inquiry, trial, conversion, renewal and advocacy can all be relevant, but a programme must identify the stage it is reasonably able to change and the time horizon in which that change could become visible. Communications cannot correct an unsuitable product, absent availability or an unsustainable price without creating new reputational costs.

Audience design extends beyond demographic targeting. Roles differ in organizational purchasing: a user values functionality, a technical evaluator verifies compatibility, a financial officer assesses total cost and a purchasing authority checks compliance and terms. A small retailer may assess shelf turnover and returns, while a household may prioritize clear instructions and predictable availability. Communications should distinguish existing buyers, prospects, channel partners, employees, regulators and affected noncustomers, rather than assume one campaign is intelligible and justified to all. Inclusion requires examining language, literacy, disability access, connection cost and the conditions under which messages are actually encountered. A communications brief should establish a mechanism rather than simply select a media platform. For a new food product, the relevant barrier may be lack of familiarity, doubt about safety, inability to understand preparation instructions or uncertainty about local availability. Awareness advertising may address the first barrier but not the other three. If the diagnosis concerns trust in product quality, demonstrable certification or an accessible explanation from a trained seller may be a better intervention than repeated exposure. The enterprise should define the intended change, an appropriate comparator and a feasible observation period before committing money. This discipline separates the strategic purpose of communication from the metrics convenient for the advertising contractor to report.

16.4.2 The logic and limitations of integrated marketing communications

Integrated marketing communications is a coordinated approach to managing audiences, content, contact points and evaluation, rather than simply reproducing identical artwork on every channel. Kliatchko (2008) emphasized an audience-centred, channel-aware and results-oriented understanding of integration; Batra and Keller (2016) reviewed how different media may play complementary roles across customer decision processes. A radio explanation can establish initial familiarity, a product demonstration can reduce functional uncertainty, an online page can provide detailed terms and a trained salesperson can resolve specific objections. Integration occurs when these contacts are consistent in substance and complementary in function, not when their formats are artificially uniform.

Theories of communication processing complicate simple prescriptions. Repetition may aid recall but can generate irritation or false familiarity; emotional appeals may increase attention but obscure qualifications; social evidence can reduce uncertainty but magnify misinformation. The manager should formulate a plausible mechanism linking an intervention to a specified response and identify potential unintended effects. For a safety-relevant product, higher reach is not a sufficient success criterion if viewers misunderstand instructions. For a financial service, a successful campaign cannot be defined independently of informed consent and comprehension of charges.

An important tension arises between coherence and useful differentiation. A technically demanding product may need detailed written conditions for institutional purchasers but short audio explanations for first-time consumers. Literal message uniformity would not necessarily produce equivalent comprehension. Integrated communication should preserve the truth conditions of the offering while allowing language, sequence and format to differ by audience. The accessibility of essential qualifications becomes part of message validity. Consequently, integration requires a controlled evidence base and approved boundaries on adaptation, not centralization of every sentence. Batra and Keller (2016) offer complementary media-processing perspectives; whether a particular combination changes behaviour remains an empirical question for the defined audience and commercial setting.

16.4.3 Message substantiation and communication governance

The governing message brief should identify one customer problem, the promised benefit, the evidence for that benefit, necessary conditions or exclusions, approved terminology, intended placement and responsible signatories. An objective claim such as a measured performance improvement needs documentary support appropriate to the population and conditions described. A comparative “best” claim requires a defensible comparison set; a health or environmental claim may need specialist validation. An emotional or aspirational message must not convey a misleading factual impression merely because its literal words contain no explicit quantitative statement.

Production controls should record versions, accessibility checks, translation review, disclosure requirements and withdrawal procedures. Channel partners and commissioned creators should receive the approved claims register. Marketing, sales, product, legal and quality functions must have authority to halt distribution of inaccurate content. A sales presentation should not evade a qualification the written advertisement discloses. Equally, a customer-service team must be able to explain any advertised guarantee or remedy in the languages and channels actually used by buyers. Consistency is therefore an organizational control and a test of the firm's operational honesty, not only an exercise in brand aesthetics.

16.5 ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION

16.5.1 Paid, owned, earned and shared attention

Advertising involves sponsored communication through selected media, with a defined degree of advertiser control and financial commitment. Owned media include a company's website, catalogues, labels and customer messages; earned media comprise independently generated coverage, mentions and reviews; shared or networked spaces mediate conversations among organizations, customers and communities. These categories are useful for budget design but do not establish independence: sponsored content may appear as editorial material, and an apparently organic endorsement may have a concealed commercial relationship. Every media plan must therefore identify who controls placement, pays for exposure, validates the claims and can correct errors.

Reach counts the defined people or accounts potentially exposed; frequency represents repeated exposure; impressions count delivery events rather than necessarily attentive individuals; and verified viewability does not establish understanding. Media buyers should compare cost, audience fit, geographical coverage, attention quality, inclusion, creative context and suspected invalid traffic. A low cost per impression is economically uninformative if the audience cannot obtain the product or lacks a lawful route to purchase. In Rwanda, accessible radio, community relationships, retail demonstrations and mobile-friendly messages may outperform an elaborate video campaign for some product segments, but this is a conditional design judgment, not a general performance claim.

16.5.2 Promotions, sponsorship, public relations and creative testing

Sales promotions include time-limited price offers, bundles, samples, trade allowances, loyalty incentives and demonstrations. A promotion can induce trial or clear excess inventory, but recorded sales lift may consist largely of purchases shifted forward from later periods or customers who would have purchased anyway. The economic measure is incremental contribution net of promotional expense, cannibalization, extra returns and any change in future willingness to pay. Trade promotions can also transfer margin from producers to retailers without securing intended consumer-level benefits if pass-through is unverified.

Sponsorship links organizational resources to an event, programme or person; public relations communicates institutional actions and responds to legitimate public scrutiny; earned media is shaped by editors and audiences beyond full corporate control. Responsible practice separates legitimate reputation-building from purchasing unlabelled favourable commentary. A crisis statement should address what is known, what remains uncertain, affected customers and remedy rather than solely limit reputational exposure. The communications manager must recognize that publicity outcomes can be economically valuable while the underlying conduct remains improper.

Creative testing has several inferential levels. Qualitative pretests can identify confusing terminology, misleading impressions and culturally inappropriate symbols. Small randomized message experiments can estimate relative responses within the assigned audience and duration. Observational click-through rates cannot distinguish the creative from audience composition or platform selection without appropriate design. When performance differences are small, confidence intervals, sample size, platform delivery rules and multiple comparisons matter. A test that optimizes clicks but ignores complaints, consent and subsequent fulfilment can promote the wrong creative. Claims about effectiveness should be proportional to the design's actual inferential strength.

Promotion economics requires explicit treatment of timing and substitution. A retailer offered a temporary allowance may order more immediately without increasing the consumer's total purchases, creating inventory pressure after the promotion ends. A consumer coupon may be redeemed by frequent customers who would have bought at full price, reducing contribution without generating equivalent additional demand. A trial should therefore observe both purchase during the promotion and an adequate post-promotion window. Where a randomized comparison is unavailable, managers should report a scenario range that recognizes stockpiling, substitution across products and pre-existing demand rather than equate shipment growth with causal lift. The same analysis should include the accessibility and fairness of the promotion's material terms.

16.5.3 Evidence from advertising field experiments

Blake et al. (2015), using large-scale eBay field experiments, found that paid-search returns were much weaker than conventional observational estimates; brand-keyword advertising produced no measurable short-term benefits in their setting, while effects varied considerably across types of users. This does not prove that branded search never works. It demonstrates that buyers who search for a brand may already intend to purchase, so observed conversions can overstate advertising-induced sales. Gordon et al. (2019) compared observational approaches with 15 Facebook advertising experiments and showed that commonly available observational data frequently failed to recover experimental effects. Taken together, these findings undermine a widespread inference that platform-reported attribution is an unbiased measure of incremental return.

The managerial response is neither to abandon advertising nor to worship randomized experiments. Experiments may be infeasible for small enterprises with low transaction volumes, overlapping exposure and limited budgets. Geo-level holds, randomized eligible-account exposure, matched-market tests with transparent assumptions and timed rollouts can produce useful evidence when designed carefully; each has spillover and selection risks. The important discipline is to report what was observed, what causal conclusion the design can sustain, and what

incremental financial outcome would justify the expenditure. A positive dashboard return based solely on last-touch credit is, at most, an accounting attribution under specified rules.

16.6 RETAIL, WHOLESALE AND OMNICHANNEL COMMERCE

16.6.1 Intermediaries as service and information institutions

Retailers serve end purchasers through assortments, convenience, advice, availability, transactions and after-sales contact. Wholesalers commonly purchase and consolidate goods for resale to businesses; distributors may combine storage, market development, transport coordination, trade credit and account service, depending on contracts. These functions are economic activities rather than merely legal labels, and a single enterprise may perform several of them. Producers often possess better knowledge of manufacturing quality, while retailers understand local purchase patterns and demand shocks. Designing the interface between these complementary forms of knowledge is central to channel effectiveness.

Small stores differ in records, shelf space, trading cycles, liquidity and the proportion of sales observed through formal digital systems. Replenishment plans based on wholesale shipments may misinterpret sell-in as final consumer sell-through. For example, a manufacturer that invoices 1,000 cases to distributors has documented a sale into the channel, not necessarily 1,000 cases purchased by consumers. If 400 remain in intermediaries' stock and 100 are returned, the true pattern of consumer uptake is materially different. Reconciliation requires inventory data, periodic retailer sampling, returns information and clear title-transfer terms.

16.6.2 Omnichannel coordination and service recovery

Multichannel provision allows customers to use several channels; omnichannel commerce deliberately coordinates information, promises, service rights and transitions across them. A customer may learn about an offer through radio, compare specifications on a mobile page, ask questions by phone, pay through mobile money and collect the purchase at an outlet. The resulting journey has multiple service owners even when the buyer perceives one supplier relationship (Lemon & Verhoef, 2016). If each contact point carries different prices, return policies or stock visibility, the enterprise has multiple channels but not a coherent experience. Omnichannel design is especially demanding where customers share devices, internet access is intermittent and business records are partly paper-based. Verhoef et al. (2015) frame this shift as a broader reconfiguration of customers' movement across channels, while Lemon and Verhoef (2016) show why experiences should be understood across touchpoints rather than owned by one department.

Technical integration can include common stock identifiers, customer-reference numbers, payment reconciliation, order status and returns authorization. The design must minimize duplicated customer records, avoid unnecessary surveillance and distinguish a person from a household, device or retail account. Companies should not require customers to consent to unrelated promotional profiling as a condition of remedying a delivery problem. A single complaint case identifier and clearly assigned escalation ownership may improve customer trust more than an expensive interface whose underlying departments remain disconnected.

The five challenges identified by Neslin et al. (2006), namely data integration, understanding cross-channel behaviour, channel evaluation, resource allocation and coordination, remain relevant even where most transactions are not online. For example, a customer may see a product demonstrated at a rural retail outlet, place an order through a shared telephone and pay by mobile money into an account controlled by another household member. If the firm assumes that the telephone, wallet, customer and purchasing decision maker are identical, its journey analytics will be wrong and its personalization may be intrusive. Customer identifiers must consequently support legitimate service without demanding more identity data than the transaction needs. An integrated channel can succeed with modest technology when service owners and record-matching rules are clear; technical complexity alone does not produce integration.

16.6.3 The operational economics of retail access

Retail display charges, trade discounts, stock returns, spoilage, travel, packaging, credit and collection all influence channel-level profitability. A route that delivers strong invoice volume can consume working capital and generate losses through slow receipts. Conversely, a geographically expensive route may satisfy a strategic access objective and create future demand if its expected learning and development benefits are clearly specified. Allocation of shared costs requires care: marginal channel choices should consider avoidable costs, while long-run viability requires the enterprise eventually to recover common capacity and governance costs. Decisions to close outlets or withdraw from low-income areas demand consideration of customer access and the feasibility of alternative service arrangements, not only current averages.

A documented African comparator clarifies why distribution design is more than choosing an online storefront. Jumia Technologies AG's 2025 Form 20-F describes a marketplace connecting third-party sellers with customers, coordinated logistics partners, pickup locations and payment interfaces in several African markets. As at 31 December 2025, the company reported approximately 2,422 customer pickup stations and 230 logistics partners across its then operating footprint (Jumia Technologies AG, 2026). These are company-reported operational counts, not independent estimates of service quality or benefits for individual sellers, and Jumia did not list Rwanda among the nine countries in that annual-report footprint. The case illustrates a potentially complementary configuration of digital discovery and physical access, while warning against assuming that an enterprise without comparable transaction density, contracts or investment can replicate the arrangement at low cost. The commercial mechanism is transferable as a question for design; the organizational scale and observed outcomes are not.

16.7 DIGITAL MARKETING INFRASTRUCTURE

16.7.1 Search, websites and conversion architecture

Digital discovery consists of several related systems: search-engine results, paid search, business listings, owned websites, social feeds, marketplaces, email and mobile communications. Search optimization can make accurate product information discoverable through relevant structure, accessible pages, useful content and technically sound indexing. Paid placements purchase an opportunity for attention under auction or negotiated conditions; they cannot ethically substitute for accurate titles, truthful descriptions or a functioning transaction process. A well-designed commercial site should state who is selling, what is offered, final material terms, available payment methods, stock or fulfilment conditions and accessible contact and remedy procedures.

Website performance must be evaluated from the customer's perspective, including low-bandwidth access, accessible text, loading time, navigation in appropriate languages and compatibility with common devices. Conversion friction can arise from irrelevant forms, hidden charges, mandatory account creation, inability to use available payment instruments or unclear delivery geography. Removing such friction may improve legitimate purchase completion; removing essential information or making opt-out difficult is not a responsible optimization. The relevant success metric should therefore incorporate customer comprehension and downstream disputes as well as completion rate.

Digital marketing should be conceptualized as a set of connected information and exchange processes, not a collection of applications. Kannan and Li (2017) locate digital technologies across the consumer-facing marketing process and the firm's strategic decision architecture. A search result, website, conversational message and payment page form a sequence in which failure at one point can invalidate expenditure at another. A discoverable page that is unreadable on a low-cost handset is not meaningfully accessible; a high-performing advertisement linked to outdated inventory creates misleading availability; and a frictionless checkout that conceals a material return condition is not a responsible conversion success. A practical audit therefore tests the accuracy, usability and transaction continuity of the entire customer route under realistic connection, language and device conditions.

16.7.2 Email, messaging and marketing automation

Direct digital communication is attractive because it can be personalized and inexpensive per message. Yet a purchased list, an old contact obtained for a different purpose or a default-prechecked marketing box does not automatically establish a lawful basis for outreach. Data governance begins with source provenance, purpose specification, lawful processing condition, applicable consent and objection rights, and retention limits. Automation should preserve a record of why a person was contacted and how they can stop nonessential communications. Frequency controls should reflect burden on recipients rather than only the sender's short-term open rate.

International research also shows that privacy restrictions can change advertisers' ability to target audiences, while the size and interpretation of those changes remain specific to the policy and study design (Goldfarb & Tucker, 2011). Automation may support abandoned-cart reminders, quotation follow-ups, service messages, renewal notifications and account support. Service messages should be segregated from advertising where practicable. A reminder about a customer's contractual delivery is substantively different from an unrelated promotion, even when both use the same channel. Automated segmentation can introduce proxy discrimination if location, device, language or expenditure histories are treated as fixed measures of ability, worth or vulnerability. Enterprises require transparent rules, human correction procedures and periodic reviews of exclusion as well as successful conversion.

Automated messaging also creates a problem of classification. A requested payment receipt or delivery notification serves a pre-existing transaction; a personalized recommendation seeks an additional purchase; a request for a public testimonial may involve both service and promotional processing. Combining all three under one communication permission can defeat the purpose of customer choice. A well-controlled system records the message category, processing basis, source record, recipient, dispatch rule, suppression condition and responsible owner. Where customers receive multiple communications across an outlet, salesperson and platform, suppression must work at the relevant account level without falsely assuming that unrelated household members share one consent decision. The organizational burden of these controls should be evaluated alongside any labour-saving claim attributed to automation.

16.7.3 Privacy, security and jurisdictional obligations

Rwanda's Law No. 058/2021 of 13 October 2021 relating to the protection of personal data and privacy establishes a national framework for processing personal information (Republic of Rwanda, 2021d). The Data Protection and Privacy Office describes consent requirements, withdrawal rights, controller and processor obligations, and registration responsibilities under the law (National Cyber Security Authority [NCSA], 2021; Data Protection and Privacy Office [DPPO], n.d.-d). Consent is one legal basis relevant to processing, and should not be wrongly described as the exclusive basis for all processing; a concrete operation requires analysis of the provisions applicable to its purpose and context. The enterprise should verify the lawful basis, rights notices, vendor arrangements, data minimization and relevant rules on storage and transfers rather than assume an analytics tool is lawful merely because other firms use it.

Operational safeguards include role-based access, authentication, encryption where appropriate, secure configuration, data minimization, incident response, log integrity and deletion controls. Analytics vendors, email-service providers and marketplaces may receive or process personal information: commercial contracts cannot eliminate the enterprise's own statutory obligations. A consent log is meaningful only if withdrawal is implemented across connected systems, not merely recorded in one marketing database. Cybersecurity and data-protection capabilities must be proportionate to the sensitivity and scale of records; specialist architecture belongs to Chapters 28–29.

Rwanda's FinScope 2024 survey reports that 86% of adults owned or had used mobile money and 77% had a registered mobile wallet in their own name (National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda [NISR], 2024). These

indicators substantiate extensive financial-service contact, not the claim that the same percentage shop online, own smartphones or are reachable through digital advertising. The survey also reports barriers and differences in use. A marketer who substitutes mobile-money access for online-purchasing intent has committed a measurement error with potentially costly inclusion consequences. Sound digital route design combines payment research, local service observation, connectivity assessment and customer testing rather than drawing a causal market forecast from one national percentage.

16.8 CONTENT, COMMUNITY AND SOCIAL COMMERCE

16.8.1 Content as customer education rather than a persuasion loophole

Content marketing can explain products, help users compare options, demonstrate safe operation, answer common questions and maintain relationships before and after transactions. Its strongest professional justification is reduced information cost and improved decision quality. Educational content is not automatically neutral. A supplier choosing which comparisons to publish, which drawbacks to mention and which alternatives to omit is exercising editorial power. A credible content programme should label sponsorship, cite the evidence underlying objective claims, distinguish explanation from sales advocacy and update time-sensitive technical advice.

Content effectiveness should be interpreted across the customer journey. An informative comparison guide may attract people who do not purchase immediately but later seek advice through a retailer. Last-click measurement can credit the retailer and ignore earlier content; conversely, attributing every later purchase to exposure to the guide may exaggerate its causal influence. Content should also be examined for comprehension, accessibility, safe use and complaints, not only for pageviews or engagement. A useful editorial schedule records responsible authorship, subject expert approval, revision date and trigger events requiring correction.

16.8.2 Communities, electronic word of mouth and social commerce

Social commerce integrates socially mediated discovery, interpersonal recommendation, transactional interaction and sometimes purchasing within a platform. Li et al. (2021) describe several distinct social-media marketing configurations rather than a single universal maturity path. In practice, communities can provide valuable product feedback and peer assistance, but they can also amplify rumours, harassment, discriminatory commentary or pressure to purchase. Social proof is especially unreliable when reviews are bought, selectively suppressed, generated synthetically or posted by people with undisclosed connections to the seller. Stephen (2016) likewise situates digital and social-media interactions within wider consumer-behaviour processes; neither engagement nor exposure alone reveals why a particular purchase occurred.

A business should distinguish unsolicited customer testimony from paid advocacy and from content created by employees, distributors or contracted creators. Material connections must be disclosed in intelligible proximity to the endorsement, and evidence supporting extraordinary claims should be retained. The United States Federal Trade Commission's revised 2023 endorsement guidance, though not Rwanda's binding law, provides a useful comparative treatment of material-connection disclosure, manipulated reviews and virtual influencers (Federal Trade Commission [FTC], 2023). Local legality must be tested against Rwandan provisions rather than imported mechanically from US guidance. The deeper ethical principle is that audience trust cannot legitimately be built through concealed authorship or fabricated consensus.

Influencer and community-based commerce poses a distinct credibility problem because commercial persuasion may be embedded in relationships that audiences ordinarily regard as independent. Whether a recommendation is suitable depends on the endorser's actual experience, the connection to the sponsoring enterprise, the substantiation of objective statements and the audience's opportunity to recognize promotional intent. A payment, free sample, employment relationship or other material incentive can affect credibility even when the endorser's opinion is sincere. The correct managerial response is neither to ban all advocates nor to treat

follower numbers as evidence of trust. Contract terms should require clear disclosure, prevent invented experiences, prohibit unsupported technical claims, preserve complaint escalation and specify corrective publication when misleading material reaches an audience. Comparative FTC (2023) guidance is instructive without being substituted for controlling Rwandan law.

16.8.3 Community governance and customer trust

Community management requires transparent participation rules, moderation policies, correction notices, service escalation and responsible handling of complaints. Removing harassment or disclosing commercial sponsorship may support trust; secretly deleting substantiated safety complaints to preserve engagement metrics undermines it. Firms should disclose when they moderate, when content is automated and how users can challenge errors. Customer-generated information can improve product design, but it is not unrestricted corporate property: reuse may raise privacy, consent, copyright and contextual-integrity questions. The accountability criterion is whether the community remains a useful, fair and contestable space, not simply whether platform activity rises.

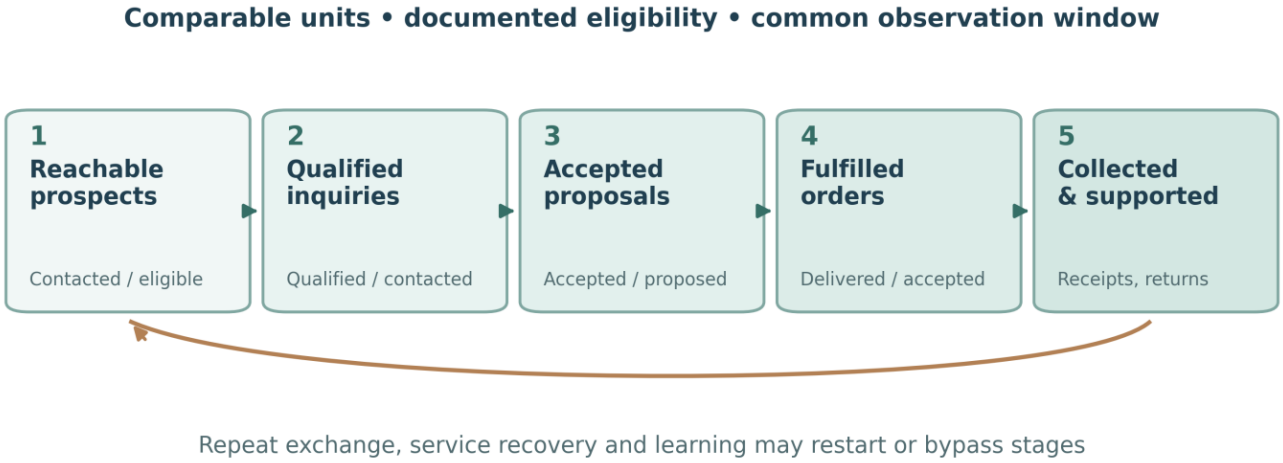
16.9 SALES FUNNEL AND CHANNEL ANALYTICS

16.9.1 Funnel definition and denominator discipline

A sales funnel is a representation of observed progression through explicitly defined commercial states over a stated time horizon. It is neither a law of consumer psychology nor proof that persons move monotonically through stages. Some buyers return, bypass stages, purchase through an intermediary or leave no digitally visible trace. The analyst must therefore specify whether the unit is an individual, household, organization, opportunity, account, order or session. Mixing these units produces seductive but meaningless conversion percentages.

For a cohort, stage-conversion rate equals the number advancing to the specified next stage divided by the number eligible at the earlier stage, using consistent identifiers, eligibility rules and observation windows. Lead-to-customer conversion may be customers divided by qualified leads, or customers divided by all inquiries; these are different measures and should be named accordingly. Customer acquisition cost (CAC) is the specified acquisition expenditure divided by newly acquired customers attributable within a relevant cohort, but its interpretation depends on whether sales salaries, discounts, onboarding and shared expenditure are included. Cost per click cannot substitute for CAC. Retention and repeat purchase require customer-level cohorts, defined eligibility and handling of delayed purchasing and censoring.

Figure 16.1. The governed commercial funnel and core metric denominators



Note. Original pedagogical schematic. Each stage requires a stable observation unit and timestamp; transitions are descriptive, not causal effects. Identifiers must be deduplicated before division, and completed sales must be reconciled with returns and collections.

16.9.2 Commercial measures and economic interpretation

Revenue should be separated from gross merchandise value, accepted orders, delivered orders and collected cash. Contribution margin equals revenue less avoidable variable costs attributable to the relevant decision. Return on advertising spend (ROAS), often reported as attributed revenue divided by advertising expenditure, does not deduct product cost, fulfilment, discounts, returns or the revenues that would have occurred anyway. A campaign may report ROAS = 5 yet destroy money if only a small share of attributed revenue is incremental and contribution margins are low. Incremental return on marketing investment should be calculated against an explicit counterfactual and should use incremental contribution, not gross revenue, as the numerator before subtracting campaign expenditure.

Useful indicators include qualified-lead rate, stage ageing, proposal-to-order rate, average realized price, order completeness, net channel contribution, bad-debt rate, delivery performance, complaint incidence, refund cycle time and paid-media incrementality. None should be optimized without checking another: higher conversion achieved through aggressive discounting can reduce contribution; improved cash collection obtained through unfair terms can harm customers; lower complaints can reflect an inaccessible complaint channel rather than improvement. A balanced measurement system connects commercial outcomes to customer outcomes and independent operational records.

Table 16.2. Measurement register for commercial analysis

Indicator	Formula / operational definition	Common inferential hazard
Qualified lead conversion	New purchasing accounts / qualifying accounts in same cohort	Qualification rules and time lags change denominator
Proposal win rate	Signed, accepted proposals / proposals eligible for decision	Incomplete exclusions and opportunity value heterogeneity
Collection ratio	Cash received on due invoices / cash contractually due	Timing, disputes and partial payments
CAC	Specified acquisition expenditure / verified new customers	Attribution, omitted labour and shared-media spend
Return rate	Returned delivered units / delivered units eligible for return	Short windows, channel reporting and damaged goods
ROAS	Platform-attributed sales value / advertising spend	Correlation with purchase intent, not incrementality
Incremental campaign contribution	(Treatment sales − counterfactual sales) × contribution/unit − campaign cost	Contamination, nonrandom exposure and changing margins
Net channel contribution	Collected channel revenue − variable product, trade, service, loss and delivery costs	Credit, returns, joint costs and delayed expenses

Note. Original measurement framework; the distinction between attribution and causal incrementality is informed by Blake et al. (2015) and Gordon et al. (2019). Operational definitions and observation windows must accompany every reported KPI.

Profitability measures also require consistency between economic accruals and cash flows. For an incremental channel decision, the firm should start with revenue that is expected to be earned from fulfilled transactions, deduct the relevant marginal production, trade, service, return and collection-loss costs, and separately construct the cash timing needed to finance those transactions. Calling revenue 'collected' at the start of a contribution calculation while later deducting a generic credit-loss provision can double count the same risk; conversely, recording invoiced sales as cash can conceal a working-capital shortage. The measurement register should therefore identify whether a KPI concerns bookings, recognised revenue, expected contribution or realised cash. Wedel and Kannan (2016) make a related methodological point: the availability of granular data widens analytical opportunities without removing the need to define constructs, uncertainty and privacy limitations.

16.9.3 Attribution, experimentation and data-quality audits

Attribution allocates observed conversions among observed contacts according to a rule, such as first touch, last touch, time decay or a model. It is a bookkeeping convention unless supplemented by a credible identification strategy. A multichannel buyer may have seen offline posters, attended a retailer demonstration and then searched a brand name; a last-click system will allocate credit to search while missing the earlier contacts and pre-existing preference. Model-based attribution can be sensitive to missing cross-device links, consent refusal, platform reporting boundaries and identity errors. More complex models can conceal rather than remove those biases.

Experimental incrementality asks what purchases or contribution would have occurred if otherwise comparable customers or geographic units had not received the intervention. Random assignment is valuable because it breaks, in expectation, the association between exposure and prior purchase propensity. The resulting estimate still depends on adherence, spillovers, outcome coverage, adequate power and appropriate horizon. In low-volume enterprises, a feasible decision may rely on ranges and staged experimentation instead of a falsely

exact effect. Reporting should retain the analysis population, excluded records, cost ledger, date range, assumptions and reasons for stopping or extending an intervention (Blake et al., 2015; Gordon et al., 2019).

Data-quality controls should reconcile lead sources, deduplicate accounts, verify stage dates, test missingness by channel, validate monetary units, identify refunds and filter suspicious traffic. A customer who calls three times is not necessarily three leads; a mobile device is not invariably one person; a new account may belong to an established buyer; and a transaction recorded in two platform systems is not two sales. Measurement errors can change channel rankings. When platform data are incomplete, managers should publish bounds or defensible sensitivity scenarios rather than silently treating observed records as a complete population.

There are additional statistical hazards in small commercial experiments. If accounts influence one another, a treatment assigned to one retailer may affect orders from a nearby untreated outlet; the simple independent-unit variance formula will then understate uncertainty. Repeated experimentation with many audience slices can generate apparently impressive winners by chance. An analysis plan should define its principal outcome, intervention unit, exposure rules, observation window, handling of missing or disputed orders, treatment of clusters and intended stopping rule before examining outcomes. If randomization is unavailable, a matched-market or interrupted-series design requires an argued counterfactual, sensitivity to common shocks and a candid statement that unobserved selection may persist. Sophisticated platform dashboards do not exempt the enterprise from these requirements (Blake et al., 2015; Gordon et al., 2019).

16.10 CROSS-BORDER SALES AND MARKET ENTRY

16.10.1 The commercial, institutional and contractual dimensions of entry

Cross-border sales require a credible customer proposition and a route through the legal, physical, financial and informational conditions of another market. An exporter may employ an overseas importer-distributor, appoint an agent, sell directly to institutional buyers, transact through an international marketplace or develop a local affiliate. The chosen mode allocates costs and risks differently. An importer can supply market knowledge and local service, but may control retail relationships and later bargaining positions. Direct selling can preserve customer intelligence yet require product registration, foreign-currency administration, payment-risk mitigation, returns handling and jurisdiction-specific dispute arrangements. A digital storefront does not remove these obligations.

The East African Community (EAC) Customs Union and Common Market have created regional frameworks for trade and economic integration, but the existence of a regional agreement is not proof that a particular consignment will clear without documentation or delay. The exporter must verify origin, tariff treatment, classification, standards, labeling, food-safety rules if relevant, applicable taxes, contracting terms, currency settlement and restrictions for the destination and product at the time of shipment (East African Community [EAC], n.d.-h). The African Union adopted its Protocol on Digital Trade under the AfCFTA in February 2024, but adoption must be distinguished from the commencement and domestic application of particular obligations (African Union, 2024). Neither instrument should be treated as a universal waiver of national requirements.

16.10.2 Localization and transaction friction

Localization is more than translating an advertisement. It concerns product vocabulary, measurement units, service expectations, claims that remain supportable in the destination market, local support language, payment acceptance, cultural context and complaint mechanisms. Small firms may overestimate digital cross-border addressability by counting all internet-connected people as potential customers. Actual addressable demand requires a lawful and serviceable offering, reachable decision-makers, feasible delivery costs, payment acceptance and tolerable dispute exposure. An attractive market-size statistic cannot replace this commercial feasibility test.

Payment and contracting often create hidden costs: exchange-rate movements between quotation and settlement, banking or mobile-money interoperability gaps, fraud checks, late remittances, credit concentration, and customer demands for return or performance guarantees. The enterprise should assign contract currency, Incoterms where applicable, insurance responsibilities, order acceptance, risk transfer, payment security and remedies unambiguously. Standard international trade terminology may help allocate carriage and risk but does not itself settle title, tax or dispute rights in every contract. Specialist trade and logistics execution remain within Chapters 19 and 30.

The practical boundary of an export channel is set by the most restrictive feasible obligation, not by the total size of a neighbouring population. A distributor may accept commercial terms but lack product-specific registration; an attractive delivery quotation may exclude border clearance or reverse logistics; or the buyer may request a payment arrangement that exceeds the seller's financing capacity. A disciplined entry assessment therefore separates legal admissibility, verified customer demand, transport and service feasibility, contracting and collections, and the cost of exiting an unsuccessful pilot. Regional policy creates potential opportunities, but without product classification, origin evidence, effective-date checks and destination-specific advice, an exporter cannot infer the tariff or consumer-remedy position of a particular shipment merely from membership in the EAC (East African Community, n.d.-h).

16.10.3 A staged expansion protocol

A defensible sequence is to establish destination-specific customer problems, select suitable distributors, verify institutional prerequisites, test a limited shipment, audit delivery and collections, and expand only when evidence meets predefined thresholds. Market-entry gates should include documented customer acquisition costs, realized contribution after cross-border costs, product and label compliance, timely cash realization, complaints and channel dependency. A channel partner promising very large orders without verifiable identity, payment history or inventory capability represents uncertainty, not confirmed demand. The firm should preserve an exit and recovery mechanism for unsold stocks, customer data, disputed returns and brand assets.

16.11 SALES AND COMMUNICATIONS ETHICS

16.11.1 Truthful representation, informed consent and procedural fairness

Ethical evaluation must distinguish empirical effectiveness, legality and justified treatment of persons. A false claim may be profitable in the short term and still be indefensible. A legally ambiguous pressure tactic may be commercially effective while exploiting vulnerability. Conversely, an ethically well-intentioned marketing effort may be economically unsustainable and incapable of delivering its promised benefit. A defensible approach asks whether buyers receive materially accurate information, have a meaningful opportunity to understand and decline the exchange, are protected against arbitrary treatment and can obtain accessible remedy when a promise fails.

Rwanda's Law No. 011/2026 of 26 February 2026 relating to competition and consumer protection, published in the Official Gazette on 4 March 2026, is a central primary source for domestic sales and marketing controls. Its e-commerce provisions include Article 47 on consumer rights in electronic commerce, including access to terms before a transaction and the ability to review information and correct errors before accepting it (Republic of Rwanda, 2026a). The precise applicability of additional provisions, enforcement processes and sector-specific rules must be checked against the legally controlling text and any subsequent amendments. The law should not be summarized as merely a digital advertising code: it covers wider competition and consumer-protection matters with potential consequences for distribution agreements and commercial conduct.

The philosophical basis of responsible persuasion merits explicit treatment. Respect for customer agency requires more than obtaining a formal acceptance; the customer must receive materially accurate terms in a comprehensible setting and retain meaningful opportunities to question, reject and seek remedy. A

consequentialist assessment asks whether an action produces net benefits and harms, but risks overlooking unfair burdens on vulnerable minorities. A rights-based assessment constrains manipulative collection or undisclosed processing even where average conversion rises. A relational assessment examines how the practice changes trust and bargaining power over time. These perspectives can conflict: a highly personalised sales process may lower search costs yet intensify surveillance. The chapter adopts no claim that one mathematical score can settle the conflict; it calls for reasoned, documented judgments consistent with applicable law and legitimate stakeholder interests.

16.11.2 Commercial persuasion, exclusion and predatory conduct

Predatory commercial practices include knowingly selling unsuitable products, concealing material conditions, inventing scarcity, threatening unwarranted penalties, exploiting dependency or systematically targeting people unable to assess risk. Risk is especially acute when customers face limited alternatives, low financial literacy, poor connectivity or unequal bargaining power. Personalization can be useful for relevant information, yet its legitimacy does not follow from an improved conversion probability. A model trained to identify people least likely to dispute fees, for example, would optimize exploitation rather than customer benefit.

Ethically defensible negotiation does not require sellers to abandon legitimate interests. A retailer may bargain for discounts and a producer may reject orders that threaten solvency. Fair practice requires that material terms and risks be intelligible, promises feasible and contractual discretion contestable. Sales compensation, distributor incentives and campaign optimisation must be designed so employees are not materially rewarded for deceiving customers or concealing returns. Managers need safe escalation routes and should protect personnel who correct inaccurate claims, even when the correction reduces near-term sales.

16.11.3 Transparency, remedy and institutional accountability

A practical communications ethics review asks who benefits, who bears risk, what evidence substantiates the central claim, which information is withheld, whether identifiable groups are disadvantaged, how consent or other lawful processing conditions are established, and how customers obtain correction or compensation. Records should preserve approved creative versions and the evidence supporting them. Platform advertising decisions need sufficiently intelligible explanations to permit meaningful internal challenge. Independent verification matters where a campaign promotes health, environmental impact, financial return, safety or another technically consequential proposition.

Ethics is operationally cross-functional. Product management must approve what is deliverable; marketing must communicate it accurately; sales must contract on consistent terms; operations and logistics must fulfil it; finance must assess credit without unfair discrimination; and legal, data and governance teams must supervise rights and remedy. The enterprise cannot demonstrate responsible conduct through a code of ethics if its quotas, purchasing contracts, campaign approvals or complaints processes produce incompatible incentives. Ethical quality is observable, in part, through traceable decisions and responsive correction, rather than statements of intention alone.

The current Rwandan consumer-protection framework makes these obligations concrete rather than aspirational. Chapter VI of Law No. 011/2026 addresses e-commerce enterprises and online intermediaries, and Article 47 specifies several consumer rights, including pre-transaction access to terms, correction of transactional errors and remedies for goods or services that are damaged, defective, not as ordered, not as advertised or unfit for purpose (Republic of Rwanda, 2026a, arts. 41–47). Those provisions must be read with the law's exact conditions and any subsequent instruments; they should not be paraphrased as unlimited cancellation or return rights in every commercial circumstance. Enterprises should maintain dated legal obligations registers linking each requirement to checkout design, evidence of disclosure, order records, complaint handling and escalation authority.

16.12 THE EMERGING COMMUNICATIONS ENVIRONMENT

16.12.1 Generative AI, synthetic media and content provenance

Generative artificial intelligence can draft product descriptions, adapt language, propose campaign variants, summarize inquiries and assist customer service. Huang and Rust (2021) distinguish automation of repetitive tasks from more elaborate analytical and interaction-oriented applications, while Libai et al. (2020) examine how AI changes customer acquisition, development and retention. Neither conceptual framework establishes that a particular deployment is accurate or fair. Its capacity to generate fluent material is not a guarantee of factual fidelity. A synthetic demonstration may depict features a product does not possess; automated translation may alter a warranty condition; invented testimonials may create apparently independent evidence; a plausible response may hallucinate a legal entitlement or delivery status. The appropriate control is task-specific verification before publication, with accountable human approval of claims that materially affect safety, rights or financial decisions.

For AI-assisted marketing, a risk register should identify the model or provider, intended task, authorized input data, source of factual claims, output review, record retention, disclosure standard, escalation owner and withdrawal pathway. Synthetic depictions of people, institutions or endorsements require special scrutiny for impersonation, consent and deceptive impression. The NIST AI Risk Management Framework offers nonbinding governance concepts that can help organize validity, reliability, safety, security, transparency and accountability; it should not be mischaracterized as Rwandan statute or a certification that a particular model is safe (Tabassi, 2023).

The governance question is not only whether a generated statement contains a factual error, but whether an organization can identify the evidence and accountable decision behind every material claim. A suitable content-provenance record links an intended audience, approved claim, underlying product or legal source, version, editor, language, placement and withdrawal date. Automated translations of measurements, health qualifications or warranties warrant the same substantive scrutiny as original copy. Human approval should be allocated according to the consequences of error: low-risk layout variations may justify sampled review, whereas financial, safety, medicinal or legally binding statements require qualified prior authorization. Disclosure of AI assistance may be ethically relevant, but a generic disclosure does not cure fabricated endorsements, discriminatory targeting or demonstrably false claims (Huang & Rust, 2021; Tabassi, 2023).

16.12.2 Ranking systems, gatekeeping and platform dependence

Algorithmic recommendation and advertising systems determine which content is shown, to whom, at what price and under what changing contractual conditions. Their optimization criteria may reflect engagement or auction revenue rather than truth, accessibility or customer welfare. Platforms also mediate reviews, payment access and sometimes returns. This concentration of information and transaction rights can benefit small suppliers through lower entry barriers while creating commercial lock-in. An apparently excellent channel contribution can disappear following an increase in fees or a ranking change that the seller cannot inspect.

Enterprises should measure concentration by the share of qualified leads, net contribution and customer communication dependent on each external platform, not merely by traffic volume. Contingency measures include maintained first-party relationships where lawfully appropriate, independent product records, alternative points of discovery, exportable commercial data subject to platform contracts, and procedures for service continuity during suspension. Platform diversification has a cost, so it must be justified through scenario analysis rather than pursued as a slogan. Similarly, investments in first-party databases are not inherently ethical if they encourage surveillance or disregard consent.

Platform power has two often-confused effects. It can reduce entry costs by aggregating audiences and transactions, while simultaneously limiting independent access to buyers and setting conditions that smaller sellers have little power to negotiate. A defensible platform strategy therefore estimates not only fees and

acquisition costs, but also the concentration of revenue, the reversibility of data migration, terms-of-service exposure, dependence on rankings and the cost of restoring contact with affected customers after suspension. A seller might rationally choose one large platform at launch while planning a gradual complementary owned channel when sufficient cash, staff capability and lawful customer relationships exist. The proposition is contingent: diversification has costs, and excessive duplication of platforms can create an illusion of resilience without any improvement in fulfilment or customer rights.

16.12.3 Environmental responsibility and the durability of commercial models

Digital commerce has physical consequences through devices, energy, warehousing, last-mile transport, packaging, product returns and waste. United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD, 2024) cautions that environmental effects of e-commerce depend on the relevant fulfilment and consumption arrangements rather than on the digital form alone. Repeated small deliveries, unnecessary replacement shipments and environmentally damaging promotional bundles can outweigh efficiencies from consolidated ordering. Managers should examine route density, failed delivery, returns and packaging alongside commercial performance, while avoiding carbon claims unsupported by an appropriately bounded life-cycle assessment.

An enduring principle survives changes in media technology: the commercial system must make credible information available to suitable buyers and organize exchange on terms the enterprise can fulfil and justify. New technologies alter the speed, granularity and distribution of those activities, but not their underlying need for evidence, economic viability, lawful governance and correction. The research challenge concerns how these mechanisms change under platform mediation and AI, not whether traditional commercial accountability can be dispensed with.

16.13 INTEGRATED RWANDA–EAC APPLICATION: A CONSTRUCTED WHOLESALER CASE

16.13.1 Empirical context and case boundaries

Rwanda's Integrated Business Enterprise Survey 2024 reports an estimated 278,060 enterprises and a business landscape with at least 87% informality under the survey's classification (NISR, 2026e). The survey reports that 3.6% of formal and 0.06% of informal enterprises engaged in exports, indicating the importance of examining actual cross-border capability rather than assuming every domestic retailer is ready for regional expansion. These measures describe enterprises under the survey's methodology; they do not measure the export capacity, profits or marketing practices of the hypothetical firm below. FinScope 2024 reports extensive mobile-money use among adults, but the statistic is not a measurement of business-to-business digital-order penetration or consumer e-commerce conversion (NISR, 2024).

Consider **Kigali Assured Foods Distribution (KAFD)**, an invented Rwandan wholesaler selling standardized cases of shelf-stable packaged food to registered and informal retail outlets and institutional buyers. It is used solely to demonstrate decision reasoning. KAFD is assumed to have documented product specifications, a basic order and payment register and a small service team. Its primary domestic channel uses direct account representatives and a delivery arrangement, while prospective distributors could serve more geographically dispersed retailers. Managers also consider a pilot with a distributor in an EAC partner state. The numerical parameters are hypothetical decision inputs, not estimated Rwandan market averages.

These national figures call for two related cautions. First, Rwanda's Integrated Business Enterprise Survey identifies non-agricultural business enterprises within a particular statistical design, while FinScope samples adult financial-service users; neither offers a direct denominator for the number of retail accounts able and willing to purchase the case product. Second, the survey's formal and informal enterprise categories do not imply that every informal outlet is untrustworthy, that every formal outlet has sufficient cash or that electronic payment is a substitute for collections control. McKenzie and Woodruff (2017), drawing on microenterprise

evidence from multiple developing countries including Kenya and Ghana, show that business practices such as marketing, record keeping and inventory management vary and are associated with firm outcomes. Their multi-country associations provide reasons to take simple commercial records seriously, not causal estimates for a Rwandan wholesaler.

16.13.2 Alternative channel economics and feasibility

Assume KAFD sells a case directly at RWF 30,000, incurs variable product cost of RWF 18,000, incremental delivery of RWF 2,000, payment costs of RWF 300 and expected return/service cost of RWF 500. Direct contribution is therefore RWF 9,200 per delivered and paid case. Through a domestic distributor, the wholesale price is assumed to be RWF 24,000 per case, product cost RWF 18,000, consolidated delivery RWF 700, expected returns RWF 300 and expected collection loss/financing provision RWF 400. Distributor contribution is RWF 4,600 per case. Both figures are expected contributions conditional on the assumptions and after channel-specific variable costs; neither includes long-term central overhead.

Suppose the direct route can serve at most 1,000 cases in the relevant period due to sales and delivery constraints. It requires RWF 3,000,000 in avoidable period expenditure. A distributor-only option could serve 2,400 cases and requires RWF 1,900,000 in period management and activation costs. A hybrid option is assumed to serve 900 direct cases and 1,400 additional, nonoverlapping distributor cases, incurring RWF 3,800,000 in combined fixed channel costs. These sales quantities are independent scenarios, not estimates of demand, and the hybrid calculation assumes that distributor volumes do not cannibalize the stipulated direct accounts.

Table 16.3. Hypothetical channel decision, one period (RWF)

Channel option	Feasible cases by route	Total case contribution	Avoidable channel fixed cost	Expected net contribution
Direct only	1,000 × 9,200	9,200,000	3,000,000	6,200,000
Distributor only	2,400 × 4,600	11,040,000	1,900,000	9,140,000
Hybrid, nonoverlapping	(900 × 9,200) + (1,400 × 4,600)	14,720,000	3,800,000	10,920,000

Note. Constructed educational data. Values are expected period contributions before corporate fixed overhead, tax and capital charges. The direct route's 1,000-case capacity constraint is binding. No outcome is observed in a real company.

Under these assumptions, the feasible hybrid exceeds distributor-only expected net contribution by RWF 1,780,000 and direct-only by RWF 4,720,000. It is not necessarily the correct decision if channel volumes overlap, the firm lacks cash to finance stock, or the incremental distributor arrangement reduces direct-account purchasing. For example, 100 of the 1,400 distributor cases might be purchases that could instead be served through the unused direct capacity. Each such substitution reduces case contribution from RWF 9,200 to RWF 4,600, an opportunity difference of RWF 4,600 per case or RWF 460,000 in aggregate. Displacing more than 100 cases would exceed the stipulated unused direct capacity and would require an additional capacity and cost scenario. The original hybrid advantage could narrow materially without any change in headline shipment count.

A second constraint concerns cash. If a domestic retailer receives 30 days of credit but the producer settles suppliers in ten days, the wholesale venture must fund stock and operating costs before collection. Expected credit losses also rise when order volumes grow faster than payment verification. The financial forecast must therefore reconcile bookings, delivered units, invoices, overdue balances and receipts. A cash-flow stress test can overturn the period contribution ranking; that is not a contradiction in accounting but a distinction between profitability and liquidity.

16.13.3 Campaign experimentation, ethical review and ROI

Suppose KAFD considers an advertising and sampling programme for eligible retailers. In a hypothetical randomized test, 500 comparable eligible outlets are assigned to receive a documented campaign and 500 to a holdout. Over the same observation period, 120 treated outlets and 90 control outlets place a first order. The observed treatment conversion is 24%, control conversion is 18%, and the absolute difference is 6 percentage points. If each incremental newly purchasing outlet orders three fully collected direct-channel cases in the study period, and every additional case realizes RWF 9,200 contribution, incremental contribution is estimated as (120 − 90) × 3 × RWF 9,200 = RWF 828,000. Against a campaign cost of RWF 600,000, estimated net incremental contribution is RWF 228,000, or 38% of campaign cost.

This calculation is internally reproducible but is not a report of an actual experiment. It assumes random assignment, no inter-outlet interference, equal eligibility, complete outcome capture, no adverse displacement of other products or later orders, equivalent returns and collections, and a valid common contribution per additional case. If only 20 incremental new buyers are established after adjustment for sampling uncertainty or leakage, the net becomes 20 × 3 × 9,200 − 600,000 = −RWF 48,000. If 40 are established, the net is RWF 504,000. The break-even incremental buyer count equals 600,000 ÷ (3 × 9,200) ≈ 21.74, so at least 22 otherwise nonpurchasing outlets must buy under these assumptions. A practical report should additionally present interval uncertainty and postcampaign repeat-purchase consequences; arithmetic alone cannot supply those quantities.

The campaign itself must undergo a claims and consent review. Suppose a proposed social advertisement describes the product as having a scientifically proven nutritional effect but the only available documentation is an ingredient list. The claim should not run until a suitable substantiation review is completed. Assume further that field agents copied telephone numbers from retailers' purchase books into a promotional messaging list. The firm must establish a lawful processing basis and respect applicable notice and objection or withdrawal requirements; the availability of the numbers is not equivalent to permission for any future marketing purpose. An attractive projected 38% return does not nullify these obligations. A controlled pilot with accurate product information, approved outreach records and a complaint route is the ethically defensible alternative.

The hypothetical experiment permits an explicit, albeit approximate, uncertainty calculation. Treating the 500 outlets in each arm as independent Bernoulli units, the unpooled standard error of the difference between 0.24 and 0.18 is √[(0.24 × 0.76 ÷ 500) + (0.18 × 0.82 ÷ 500)] ≈ 0.02569. A simple normal-approximation 95% interval for the six-percentage-point difference is therefore approximately 0.96 to 11.04 percentage points. Multiplying those limits by 500 gives an approximate range of 5 to 55 incremental purchasing outlets in a population of 500 eligible outlets of the same defined type. At three cases and RWF 9,200 contribution per additional customer, that range corresponds to about RWF 138,000 to RWF 1,518,000 before the RWF 600,000 campaign cost, or about −RWF 462,000 to +RWF 918,000 net. This calculation demonstrates why a positive point estimate is not an assured financial return. The interval is approximate, ignores interference and multiple testing, and is presented solely for a hypothetical experiment; a real study should use its prespecified analysis plan and appropriately account for clustering, noncompliance and sampling design.

16.13.4 Staged EAC expansion and the international comparator

For an EAC destination, suppose KAFD anticipates a distributor price of RWF 27,000 per case, product variable cost RWF 18,000, cross-border delivery and documentary expenditure of RWF 2,000, expected returns RWF 400, credit and collection exposure RWF 600 and currency-related transaction costs RWF 250. Expected contribution is RWF 5,750 per case before an illustrative RWF 4,500,000 of fixed market-entry and partner-development costs. At 1,200 fully realized cases, net contribution would be RWF 2,400,000; break-even volume is 4,500,000 ÷ 5,750 ≈ 782.61, or 783 cases. If sales reach only 600 cases, the pilot would produce a loss of RWF 1,050,000 on these assumptions, before common overhead. The calculation has no implied tariff treatment or legal clearance: applicable origin, tax, labeling, standards, border and payment requirements must be independently verified for the actual goods and destination.

Internationally, large retailers and digitally integrated distributors may share transaction-level sell-through, automated replenishment and near-real-time order visibility. Such arrangements can improve forecasting when the underlying data are reliable, but they require contracts, technical integration, institutional trust and capital not uniformly available to Rwandan microenterprises. Copying their systems without regard to scale may increase fixed cost and dependency while leaving essential collection, retailer support and service problems unsolved. A more transferable principle is to establish minimum reliable data fields, partner accountability, controlled pilot volume and a documented escalation path before pursuing expensive integration. The international comparison is thus between mechanisms and institutional capabilities, not an unsupported claim that one country's technology automatically produces better results.

Table 16.4. EAC market-entry stage gates for KAFD

Gate	Evidence required before progression	Stop / revision trigger
Institutional feasibility	Destination-specific origin, standards, label, tax and import requirements confirmed	Missing approval or uncertain lawful route
Partner due diligence	Registration, ownership, service capability, creditworthiness and references checked	Unverifiable buyer identity or undisclosed controlling relationship
Trial economics	Written unit contribution bridge; returns, payment and currency scenarios	Negative net expected contribution under plausible downside
Pilot execution	Traced order, delivery, acceptance, collection and complaint records	Material service breach, unexplained losses or nonpayment
Scale decision	Reproducible cohort demand and adequate working capital	Apparent growth dependent on promotion or unusable credit

Note. Original decision instrument; EAC trade arrangements establish a regional framework but do not certify the legality of a particular consignment (EAC, n.d.-h; African Union, 2024). The gate values and enterprise are hypothetical.

The documented Jumia comparator sharpens the distinction between an organizational mechanism and a performance claim. The company's 2025 annual filing describes a marketplace predominantly supplied by third-party sellers, complemented by logistics partners, customer pickup stations, payment services and return handling; it also identifies Kenya and Uganda among the markets in its 2025 operating footprint (Jumia Technologies AG, 2026). The filing is a primary corporate disclosure suitable for describing the architecture and reported scale, but not proof that any individual seller earns more because it participates. Unlike the hypothetical KAFD, Jumia can spread integration and platform expenditure across a large multiseller network. A Rwandan food wholesaler should thus consider the strategic principle of linking commercial discovery with reliable collection and physical fulfilment, while testing smaller partner agreements appropriate to its own volumes, product constraints and destination requirements.

16.13.5 Teaching interpretation: what should management actually decide?

The hypothetical evidence supports a conditional domestic hybrid pilot, not an irreversible nationwide rollout. The hybrid scenario has the highest expected contribution of the three feasible alternatives, but its lead depends on volumes being incremental, on receivables being collectible and on consistent service quality. A prudent manager would reserve direct capacity for accounts requiring technical consultation or more complex service, test geographically appropriate distributor coverage and monitor whether customers shift between routes. The marketing budget should be authorized in stages using a causal measurement plan; communications approval must remain separate from sales incentives so misleading claims do not become the price of reaching targets.

The EAC option warrants due diligence and a limited reversible trial only if documentation, partner verification, collection security and cash requirements can be established. The apparent net return of RWF 2,400,000 at 1,200 cases is a scenario, not evidence of 1,200 buyers or assured tariff preferences. The case therefore shows why a

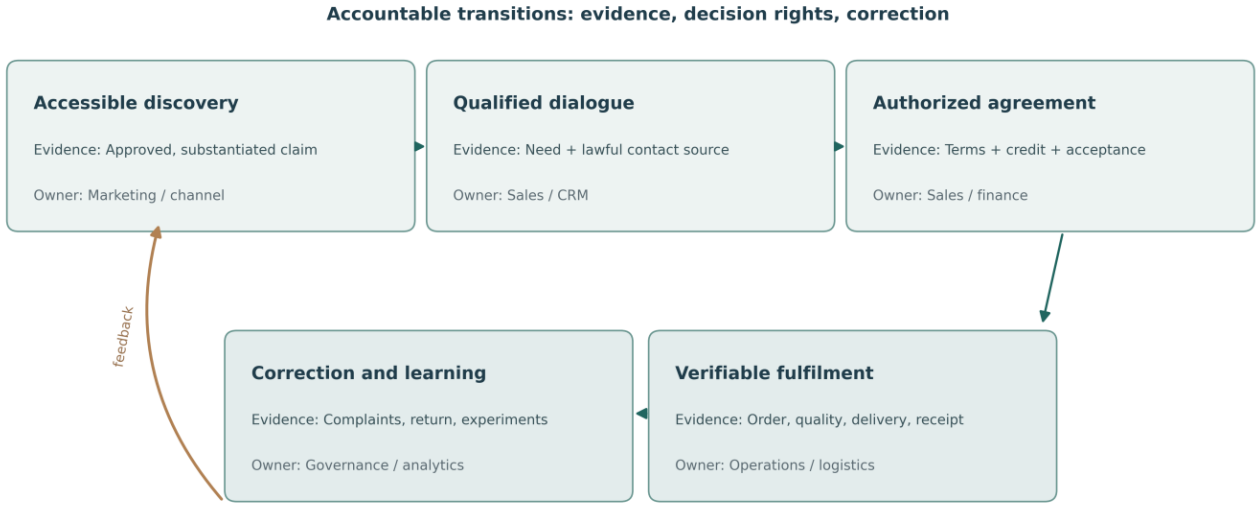
responsible route-to-market recommendation is a portfolio of contingent commitments, safeguards and learning triggers rather than the channel with the largest projected sales total.

16.14 INTEGRATIVE SYNTHESIS, THEORY CRITIQUE AND RESEARCH AGENDA

16.14.1 An accountable commercial exchange framework

The preceding discussion supports a proposed **accountable commercial exchange framework** joining five linked functions: accessible discovery, qualified and consent-respecting dialogue, truthful agreement, verifiable fulfilment and collection, and corrective learning. At each transition, the enterprise should retain an evidence object: substantiated message, appropriately sourced lead, authorized terms, delivery and payment record, or resolved complaint. The framework is not intended as an additional claim that every customer follows a linear funnel. Its purpose is to identify what the enterprise must be able to explain and correct when a commercial exchange crosses functional boundaries.

Figure 16.2. Accountable commercial exchange and feedback architecture



Note. Original conceptual synthesis derived from channel relationships, commitment–trust theory, integrated communications and causal measurement scholarship (Anderson & Narus, 1990; Morgan & Hunt, 1994; Batra & Keller, 2016; Gordon et al., 2019). Arrows denote proposed dependencies and accountability pathways, not empirically estimated causal effects.

This interpretation modifies several familiar managerial prescriptions. First, channel efficiency is not determined by the fewest intermediaries but by the lowest legitimate cost of delivering a reliable experience under suitable constraints. Second, a salesperson's performance is not exhausted by booked revenue because suitable contracting, collection and after-sales accountability condition its value. Third, integrated communications is not universal message repetition but coherence across complementary contact points. Fourth, digital measurement is not causal merely because individual behaviour is timestamped. Finally, legal conformity is a necessary constraint in many decisions, but moral scrutiny extends to pressure tactics, exclusions and claims that exploit asymmetry without necessarily violating an easily identified statutory provision.

16.14.2 Theoretical contradictions and boundary conditions

Transaction-cost theory can recommend tighter control of intermediaries where opportunism and asset specificity are high, while relational perspectives emphasize commitment and trust as means of reducing exchange hazards. These are not mutually exclusive, but they imply different priorities when one distributor is simultaneously indispensable, knowledgeable and capable of imposing unilateral terms. A governance arrangement combining performance evidence, negotiated remedies, relationship investment and an exit option may outperform either pure hierarchy or unqualified trust. The relevant mechanism must be investigated rather than asserted.

Adaptive-selling research values responsiveness to buyer differences, but data-intensive personalization can reproduce harmful profiles or asymmetries. Diffusion theory helps explain adoption through communication networks, but desirable diffusion cannot be equated with faster sales. Integrated communications seeks consistency, yet algorithmic optimization may deliver different messages to audience groups in ways central managers cannot fully inspect. Advertising experiments challenge observational attribution, but their own results can lack transportability across geographies, products and retail institutions. An intellectually responsible synthesis retains these tensions; it does not turn each theory into a universal managerial command.

Context also matters. Large consumer brands may purchase representative lift experiments and negotiate platform terms; a twenty-person wholesaler may work with sparse records, shared phones, informal retail channels and uncertain collections. This does not justify lowering standards of truthful communication or data stewardship. It requires simpler, inspectable controls and analytical humility. A paper register of approved accounts, a consistent delivery reference and periodic cash reconciliation may provide more reliable accountability than a sophisticated dashboard built on duplicated identities and unverifiable attribution.

16.14.3 Testable propositions and future research

Several bounded propositions follow from the conceptual synthesis. **P1:** The relationship between wider channel coverage and realized contribution is conditional on service reliability, working-capital capacity and the ability to observe downstream stock. **P2:** Sales compensation that includes returns, customer complaints and collections may reduce revenue-inflating behaviour relative to revenue-only rewards, subject to the risk of discouraging legitimate difficult customers. **P3:** The effect of integrated communications on comprehension and trust depends on claim consistency across sellers, physical channels and digital contacts, not on expenditure alone. **P4:** Advertising attribution is more likely to overstate incremental effect where pre-existing purchase intent strongly predicts exposure. **P5:** Data-minimizing, consent-respecting commercial processes may improve trust and reduce legal risk, but may also change reach and measurement precision. Each proposition requires an appropriate theory of change, comparison group, validity tests and institutional boundary conditions before causal claims are warranted.

Useful Rwandan and regional research could compare direct and intermediary sell-through using audited inventory and cash records; evaluate the effect of compliant communication on comprehension among multilingual and low-connectivity audiences; study sales-incentive changes with feasible comparison groups; assess digital-platform delisting and fee shocks; and identify how cross-border payment and documentary friction affect SME entry. Designs should account for informality, exposure spillovers, sparse outcomes and common shocks. A rigorous study could combine administrative transaction records, pre-specified coding of content claims and qualitative process evidence, but the present chapter undertakes none of those primary-data procedures. The research agenda is therefore an invitation to test mechanisms, not a declaration that they have already been demonstrated.

A credible programme of subsequent inquiry should also specify estimands and identification strategies. For channel expansion, the relevant outcome might be incremental collected contribution per eligible retail territory over twelve months, with service failures and bad debts treated as outcomes rather than omitted operational

noise. A phased market introduction could permit a comparison across suitable territories if scheduling is determined independently of expected demand, while a randomized outlet campaign could estimate an intention-to-treat effect when contact and outcome records are complete. In either case researchers must document unit of assignment, interference risks, preperiod trends, instrument validity, missing records and the generalizability limits of selected outlets. Qualitative accounts from distributors and affected customers may illuminate mechanisms but cannot be represented as observations unless such fieldwork has actually been conducted and approved.

16.14.4 Chapter synthesis and connection to subsequent functions

Seven conclusions govern the chapter. Market access is a service-and-governance capability rather than a count of outlets. Effective selling requires diagnosis, authorization and remedy, not pressure alone. Sales controls should reward collected contribution and suitable contracts rather than activity or bookings in isolation. Communications must integrate substantiated promises across differing touchpoints. Digital data improve decisions only when their denominators, provenance and causal limitations are understood. Regional expansion depends on specific institutional and cash-flow feasibility, not the existence of an integration treaty alone. Finally, responsible commercial performance is inseparable from accurate claims, privacy, fair treatment and dependable fulfilment.

These claims connect directly to other enterprise functions. Operations determines the feasible quantity and quality of orders (Chapter 17); procurement and logistics affect availability, fulfillment and returns (Chapters 18–20); accounting and finance determine channel contribution, receivable risk and investment feasibility (Chapters 22–24); information systems and artificial intelligence shape commercial records and platform exposure (Chapters 28–29); and governance and ethics constrain the exercise of commercial power (Chapters 8, 32–34). Chapter 16 completes the marketing sequence begun in Chapters 13–15 by showing how market knowledge, offering design and pricing become accountable transactions. It also establishes the commercial demand interface for the operations chapters that follow.

16.15 KEY TERMINOLOGY, LEARNING ACTIVITIES AND EDUCATOR GUIDANCE

16.15.1 Key concepts

TERM	PRECISE WORKING DEFINITION
Channel governance	Allocation, monitoring and correction of commercial rights, responsibilities, information and remedies among channel participants.
Route to market	Complete arrangement through which an offering is discovered, contracted for, delivered and supported.
Direct distribution	Producer-to-buyer sale without an independent reseller taking responsibility for resale.
Indirect distribution	Market access through agents, distributors, wholesalers, retailers or other intermediaries.
Channel conflict	Incompatibility of incentives, promises, territories or responsibilities among distribution participants.
Adaptive selling	Adjustment of a sales interaction based on diagnosed buyer circumstances and appropriate evidence.
Customer relationship management (CRM)	Cross-functional processes and governed data supporting the development, servicing and evaluation of customer relationships.
Integrated marketing communications (IMC)	Coordinated, substantively consistent communication across audiences and contact points.
Omnichannel commerce	Deliberate continuity of information, offers, purchase and service rights across channels.
Customer acquisition cost (CAC)	Defined acquisition expenditure divided by verified newly acquired customers in a specified cohort.
Return on advertising spend (ROAS)	Revenue attributed to advertising divided by advertising expenditure; not inherently an incremental or profit measure.
Incrementality	The difference between an outcome under an intervention and its credible counterfactual.
Data provenance	Traceable record of data origins, lawful conditions, processing history and transformations.
Synthetic media	AI-generated or manipulated representations that may imply people, events, products or endorsements not actually observed.

16.15.2 Questions and practical assignments

Foundational comprehension. Explain why a distributor margin cannot automatically be classified as avoidable waste. Contrast direct, selective and hybrid distribution in two different customer contexts. Distinguish a booked sale, delivered sale, paid sale and incremental campaign-induced sale, showing why the denominators differ (LO1–LO3).

Analytical application. Use Table 16.3 to recalculate route rankings if direct delivery costs rise by RWF 600 per case and distributor credit provisions rise by RWF 500. State which volumes remain feasible, calculate the new expected net contributions and explain whether the ranking is sensitive to channel cannibalization. Separately determine how many incremental retailers are needed for the campaign in Section 16.13.3 to break even if each places only two qualifying cases rather than three (LO3, LO6, LO8).

Communications ethics review. A retailer proposes that KAFD fund five local influencers to describe the packaged food as “medically proven to improve children's health,” publish reviews under invented customer names and direct prospects to a landing page whose cancellation conditions are shown only after payment.

Prepare a 1,000-word response identifying claims requiring evidence, possible statutory implications, disclosure, consumer-review, data and remedy concerns, and a lawful alternative communications plan. Avoid inventing the requirements of an unexamined destination country's law (LO4, LO5, LO8).

Advanced integrative capstone. Acting as commercial director, prepare a decision memorandum comparing domestic direct, distributor and hybrid routes with a reversible EAC pilot. Provide a two-year scenario and sensitivity table, a cost-and-cash bridge, a channel-partner due-diligence protocol, a one-page content approval register, an experimental marketing design with threats to identification and stop rules, and a critical explanation of the institutional and sustainability assumptions. Evaluate benefits and harms for customers, retailers, workers and owners. Reject at least one alternative and explain what new evidence would change the recommendation (LO1–LO8).

16.15.3 Educator scoring guidance and indicative solutions

The foundational response should distinguish economic functions of intermediaries from their legal form and from the financial margin they receive. The numerical sensitivity task yields direct contribution RWF 8,600 per case after the additional RWF 600 delivery cost, so direct-only net becomes RWF 5,600,000. Distributor contribution falls to RWF 4,100 per case after the extra RWF 500 provision, so distributor-only net becomes RWF 7,940,000. Under the stated hybrid volumes and unchanged fixed costs, its net becomes (900 × 8,600) + (1,400 × 4,100) − 3,800,000 = RWF 9,680,000. The expected ranking remains hybrid, distributor, direct under these specific assumptions. When each incremental customer buys only two direct cases, the break-even count equals 600,000 ÷ (2 × 9,200) ≈ 32.61, or at least 33 new customers.

A high-quality ethics response identifies factual claims that need independent substantiation, distinguishes Rwandan legal obligations from comparative guidance, requires accurate influencer disclosure, rejects fabricated testimony and hidden material conditions, and develops an accessible complaint and cancellation pathway. The capstone may be graded on theoretical accuracy (20%), source and legal discipline (20%), reproducible economics and sensitivity analysis (25%), causal measurement and data governance (15%), cross-functional and stakeholder judgment (15%), and editorial clarity with APA citation integrity (5%). The rubric rewards justified uncertainty and meaningful rejected alternatives rather than a predetermined channel selection.

16.16 SUGGESTED FURTHER READING

Readers seeking deeper investigation of channel partnerships should begin with Anderson and Narus (1990) and Williamson (1985), comparing their explanations of cooperation, dependency and contract design. Spiro and Weitz (1990), Morgan and Hunt (1994), and Palmatier et al. (2006) provide complementary foundations for relationship-based selling, including tensions between relational benefits and the costs of investment. Batra and Keller (2016) and Li et al. (2021) extend communication and social-media analysis without treating all contact points as interchangeable. For methodological scrutiny of digital performance metrics, Blake et al. (2015) and Gordon et al. (2019) should be read together. Rwandan applications require direct consultation of NISR's 2024 FinScope and Integrated Business Enterprise Survey publications, the 2021 data-protection statute and the 2026 competition and consumer-protection law. For regional expansion, consult the EAC's current trade materials and the African Union's primary AfCFTA instruments, checking ratification, commencement and destination-specific requirements before operational use.

PART V

Operations, Procurement, Supply Chains, and Projects

The promises made to customers must be translated into coordinated work. This part examines production, sourcing, flows of materials and information, quality, and the management of temporary initiatives. It follows the practical interfaces through which capacity, cost, time, reliability and change become enterprise-wide decisions.

17 Operations and Production Management

18 Procurement, Purchasing, and Strategic Sourcing

19 Supply Chain, Logistics, and Inventory Management

20 Quality Management and Operational Excellence

21 Project, Programme, and Portfolio Management

CHAPTER 17

Operations and Production Management

ABSTRACT

Operations and production management concerns the design, coordination and control of processes through which enterprises transform resources into dependable goods and services. Its analytical difficulty lies in managing interacting constraints: demand is uncertain, capacity is finite, variability creates queues, physical assets deteriorate, and apparently efficient decisions may impose costs on workers, customers and the environment. This chapter develops a critical and applied treatment of twelve approved operations domains, integrating operations strategy, process analysis, the theory of constraints, lean production, forecasting, queueing, maintenance and sustainable operations. Through a transparent, purposive synthesis of seminal research, peer-reviewed studies, standards and official secondary evidence, it interprets Rwanda's 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey and 2026 national accounts without confusing sectoral aggregates with individual enterprise performance. An explicitly hypothetical Kigali food producer illustrates capacity, overall equipment effectiveness, bottleneck improvement, location economics and operational measurement; a service counter demonstrates the nonlinear consequences of high utilization under stated queueing assumptions. The chapter offers original process and accountability diagrams, an operations-metric register, management decision instruments, and a Rwanda–Toyota comparative interpretation. It argues that operational excellence is not the maximization of utilization or elimination of every buffer. Rather, it is a context-sensitive capacity to meet legitimate demand reliably, learn from variation, protect people and resources, and maintain economically and ethically defensible performance. Proposed integrative relationships are conceptual and require empirical testing.

Keywords: operations management; production systems; process mapping; demand forecasting; capacity planning; bottlenecks; queueing theory; lean operations; operational resilience; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

On completing the chapter, readers should be able to (LO1) explain an operations system and critically compare its principal theoretical explanations; (LO2) map processes and identify constraints, rework, handoffs and flow-time risks; (LO3) build and evaluate demand forecasts with reproducible error measures; (LO4) distinguish design, effective and realized capacity and calculate utilization, throughput and equipment effectiveness; (LO5) evaluate facility location, layout, scheduling, buffers and automation as contingent decisions; (LO6) design an integrated operational scorecard that addresses quality, cost, delivery, flexibility, safety and resource productivity; (LO7) interpret Rwanda-specific evidence against international operational practice without unsupported generalization; and (LO8) defend a responsible operations improvement using explicit assumptions, alternatives, sensitivity tests and measurement safeguards.

The analytical progression begins with the scope and strategic meaning of operations (17.0–17.1), then follows the flow of work from process design and forecasting to capacity, space, scheduling and buffers (17.2–17.7). Technology, measurement, service operations, reliability and responsibility develop the control and adaptation problem (17.8–17.12). A Rwanda–international analysis, integrative conceptual propositions, glossary and assessment activities conclude the chapter. Chapter 16 established the promises made by sales and distribution; the present chapter asks how productive and service systems make those promises feasible. Procurement contracting belongs principally to Chapter 18, logistics and detailed inventory policy to Chapter 19, comprehensive quality systems to Chapter 20, project management to Chapter 21, costing to Chapter 23, digital infrastructure to Chapter 28 and enterprise-wide risk to Chapter 32.

17.0 INTRODUCTION: WHEN DEMAND EXCEEDS THE RELIABILITY OF A PROCESS

Consider a Kigali enterprise making shelf-stable food products for independent retailers and institutional buyers. The sales team celebrates a new monthly order; finance approves working capital; production managers know that the filling and sealing station is already unreliable. Raw-material preparation appears efficient and the kitchen has unused hours, yet packaging queues grow, small batches are reworked and dispatch becomes unpredictable. The owner proposes a second cooking vessel because the kitchen looks busy. A more exact diagnosis could show that the proposed investment increases unfinished work without increasing saleable output. This case is constructed solely for teaching. Its purpose is to isolate a recurring managerial error: treating utilization of separate resources as a proxy for performance of the entire value stream.

Operations management is the disciplined design, operation, improvement and responsible renewal of the processes by which resources are transformed into products and experiences. Production management is its historically manufacturing-focused component, although production also occurs in farms, professional services, hospitals, schools and digital platforms. Every operation has inputs, an arrangement of activities, a transformation logic, controls, and outputs. However, not every output is valuable, not every reported unit is saleable, and not every productive arrangement is sustainable. A restaurant prepares meals while customers participate in the service; a manufacturer may produce goods before the customer is known; an online service combines software infrastructure with human review. The appropriate unit of analysis is therefore the operational system, not merely a machine, employee or department (Slack et al., 2022; Frei, 2006).

The governing question is how organizations design and control processes that convert resources into reliable goods and services under uncertainty. Three connected judgements are necessary. The technical judgement asks what flow, capacity, time, safety and quality performance can be achieved. The economic judgement asks what options cost, which bottlenecks determine incremental return, and what liabilities accompany growth. The normative judgement asks whether deadlines, labor intensity, environmental burdens or customer exposure are justified. No isolated overall-equipment-effectiveness percentage, order count or automation forecast resolves all three. A defensible decision joins a realistic operations model with the capacity for correction, human voice and proportional risk controls.

17.0.1 Research design, source hierarchy and inferential limits

This chapter uses a purposive, critical secondary-source synthesis rather than a systematic review, original survey, plant audit or randomized intervention. Original operations scholarship was selected for distinctive mechanisms concerning manufacturing strategy, flow laws, constraints, variability, lean practices, maintenance and sustainability. Peer-reviewed empirical research was used to test where practice-based claims are stronger or weaker; primary institutional and professional sources were used for standards and Rwanda-specific descriptive context. Targeted searches on 2 November 2026 covered publisher and journal records for Skinner (1969), Little (1961), Kingman (1962), Ferdows and De Meyer (1990), Hopp and Spearman (2004), Shah and Ward (2007), McKone et al. (2001) and Kleindorfer et al. (2005), with official NISR, Toyota, ISO, ILO and UNIDO sources. Search expressions included “operations strategy manufacturing competitive priorities,” “Little law throughput lead time,” “lean production measures empirical,” “Rwanda Integrated Business Enterprise Survey 2024 capacity utilization,” and “operations management sustainable manufacturing.” This is a disclosed targeted search, not a claim of exhaustive retrieval or PRISMA-compliant screening.

The evidence date is 2 November 2026. The National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda (NISR) reports statistics for its specified population and observation period, not audited capacity for any named business. Toyota's official production-system description documents its stated methods but cannot independently establish the effect size of those methods in Rwanda. Peer-reviewed studies support conclusions within their samples and designs; transfer depends on product variety, supply reliability, human skills, regulation, finance and

infrastructure. All numerical teaching cases below are invented and transparently calculated. Their arithmetic can be reproduced from stated values; they are not disguised observations of a real enterprise. The review distinguishes operational accounting identities, approximations dependent on queueing distributions, causal claims supported by study designs, and normative proposals requiring managerial justification.

For reproducibility, the numerical examples report inputs, denominators and assumptions in the main text. A calculation can be independently recomputed without access to confidential firm data, but this does not make the resulting economic proposition an empirical estimate. The cases intentionally distinguish observed national statistics, theoretical identities, conditional stochastic models and constructed management choices. Searches were targeted rather than exhaustive; consequently, this chapter cannot quantify the prevalence of competing operations practices, resolve publication bias in the wider literature or claim that all relevant studies were retrieved. These limitations are substantive, because published factory studies often overrepresent formal organizations with record-keeping capacity, while Rwanda's smaller and informal businesses may face different constraints.

17.0.2 Historical development and the philosophical meaning of efficiency

The history of operations cannot be reduced to a succession from craft work to mass production to automation. Interchangeable parts, the division of labor, scientific management, standardization, statistical control and assembly lines gradually increased the visibility and measurability of tasks, while also creating concerns about worker discretion, quality and institutional power. Postwar operations research developed mathematical approaches to queues, scheduling and inventory; Japanese production research popularized just-in-time, autonomation and continuous improvement; service and digital operations later exposed the limits of models built around stable physical inventory. These methods coexist. A Kigali bakery may use handwritten planning, mobile payments and modern packaging equipment in the same workflow, without being accurately described by one technological generation.

Efficiency has at least three meanings that should not be confused. *Technical efficiency* compares feasible output with inputs; *allocative efficiency* asks whether resources are assigned to their highest-value available use under an assumed objective; and *institutionally legitimate efficiency* additionally evaluates whose costs are excluded from that objective. A process that reduces measured labor hours by transferring unrecorded work to unpaid family members is not necessarily socially more efficient. Likewise, requiring workers to bypass a machine guard to raise hourly throughput may increase immediate output while compromising safety and continuity. Skinner (1969) showed that manufacturing arrangements constrain strategic options; later research on cumulative capabilities questioned the universality of simple quality–cost trade-offs (Ferdows & De Meyer, 1990; Hayes & Pisano, 1996). The operational imperative is disciplined improvement under stated constraints, not an unqualified pursuit of speed.

The ethical consequences of standardization illustrate why the philosophy of efficiency remains disputed. Taylorist analysis could make hazardous or inconsistent work measurable and therefore improvable, yet time standards can also become instruments of coercive intensification when employees lack bargaining power. Reviewing early lean production research, Landsbergis et al. (1999) found reasons to question whether the practices described in automobile workplaces consistently increased workers' autonomy; their review also noted demands and work-intensity risks. Those findings should neither be universalized to every lean implementation nor ignored because a process achieves superior defect or inventory indicators. A mature theory of operations must specify the distribution of control and gains, the mechanisms protecting workers, and whether reported improvement persists after accounting for fatigue, health and quality losses.

17.1 OPERATIONS AS A VALUE-CREATING FUNCTION

17.1.1 The transformation system and its boundaries

An operations system converts material, information, energy, labor, equipment time and supplier services into goods or service outcomes. Its design must specify what enters, which transformations occur, who authorizes movement between stages, what constitutes acceptable completion, and what happens to residuals. A packaged-food process may receive cleaned ingredients, packaging, utilities and customer specifications; preparation, cooking, filling and sealing alter these inputs; inspection and dispatch establish whether a saleable product exists. In a clinical service, the flow unit is an encounter and the output is not simply the number of patients seen: correct decisions, continuity, consent and waiting burden are part of the operational outcome. Defining the flow unit prevents misleading ratios, such as comparing gross kilograms processed with finished retail packs without adjusting for weight or yield.

Operational boundaries are managerial constructions. A producer may count only production time inside the factory, whereas the customer experiences lead time from order acceptance to receipt; managers may optimize the former while the latter deteriorates. The operating system must therefore be mapped at the level appropriate to the decision. The internal transformation boundary is necessary for line control; the order-to-delivery boundary is essential for customer promises; a life-cycle boundary is necessary when waste and energy burdens matter. A useful framework distinguishes a process's *physical flow*, *information flow*, *financial commitments* and *rights and obligations*. These are causally connected without having identical owners or measurement frequencies.

17.1.2 Competitive priorities and cumulative capability

Cost, conformance quality, dependability, speed, flexibility and responsible resource use commonly conflict in specific short-run decisions. More product variety may require additional setups; tighter delivery promises may need reserve capacity; a faster cycle may increase energy intensity or errors. Yet these are conditional relationships, not fixed laws of nature. Eliminating recurring defects can simultaneously reduce rework, lead time and unit cost. Ferdows and De Meyer (1990) argue that capabilities can accumulate, challenging a rigid trade-off interpretation. Their cumulative perspective must not be turned into a guarantee: resource-constrained enterprises can still face hard near-term budget, skill and equipment limits. The manager's task is to distinguish improvements that remove waste from choices that shift genuine trade-offs across stakeholders or periods.

Operations strategy links selected customer promises to investments in capacity, people, process technology, location, maintenance, planning and learning (Skinner, 1969; Hayes & Pisano, 1996). If customers value predictable delivery more than rapid customization, a stable repeating process and sensible capacity reserve may outperform equipment designed for maximum product changeability. If a public clinic must serve complex cases fairly, throughput objectives cannot displace triage and clinical safety. The operations strategy should therefore state the competitive or public-service priority, its measurable condition, and nonnegotiable legal or safety constraints rather than merely announcing “world-class efficiency.”

17.1.3 Theory and managerial interpretation

The theory of constraints (TOC), associated with Goldratt and Cox (1984), directs attention to the system element limiting throughput: identify the constraint, exploit it safely, subordinate nonconstraints, elevate capacity when justified and repeat the diagnosis as the limiting factor moves. TOC is a useful diagnostic discipline, but a constraint need not be an identifiable machine. It may involve regulatory release, unreliable power, insufficient demand, a specialist's authorization, or an upstream supplier. Lean thinking emphasizes waste reduction, stable flow, problem visibility and learning; Hopp and Spearman (2004) refine the distinction by defining pull principally through limiting work in process and lean through minimizing the cost of buffering variability. Treating either approach as an unqualified mandate to eliminate reserves mistakes its mechanism. When supply or demand variance cannot be reduced economically, well-chosen inventory or spare capacity may be essential.

The empirical record also cautions against equating the adoption of operational tools with causal performance improvement. Shah and Ward (2007) identify several components of lean practice rather than a single universally measured treatment; plants scored as 'lean' may differ in training, supplier arrangements, management capability and production technology. In a randomized management intervention among large Indian textile plants, Bloom et al. (2013) reported a 17% first-year productivity increase through improvements including quality, efficiency and inventory management. The study is powerful evidence for the studied intervention and firms, not a transferable 17% uplift for a Rwandan SME. Its value for operations scholarship is more precise: deficient information and managerial routines can be binding constraints, and rigorous improvement evaluation requires an identified comparison rather than a post-adoption success narrative.

17.2 PROCESS MAPPING AND ANALYSIS

17.2.1 Process architecture, flow units and evidence

A process map is an explicit representation of the sequence, decisions, responsibilities and waiting states through which a defined unit moves. The analyst first chooses the unit and start/end events, then observes or documents activities, decision gates, queues, transfers, rework loops and exceptions. A *flowchart* makes the logical sequence visible, a *swim-lane map* shows accountability across departments, and *value-stream mapping* adds time, inventory and information. No map should be taken as a truthful observation solely because it is neat. It must be checked against transaction records, actual work practices, exceptions and workers' explanations. Formal procedures can be followed only under normal conditions, while informal workarounds dominate during shortages or peak loads (Spear & Bowen, 1999).

Process time is the actual time spent performing an operation; waiting time occurs when the unit cannot advance; transfer time is required for physical or informational movement; rework time corrects rejected work. Throughput time includes all relevant components between declared boundaries. Cycle time is ambiguously used in practice: it can mean time between consecutive completed units or processing duration for one unit. A defensible document defines the chosen meaning. Here, *output interval* denotes the average time between successive completions at a station, while *flow time* denotes time spent by one unit in the system. This avoids the mistaken conclusion that a four-minute bottleneck output interval implies only four minutes of end-to-end completion time.

17.2.2 Identifying bottlenecks and hidden constraints

In a serial process with no parallel stations, no starvation, identical output units and adequate supporting resources, the sustainable maximum rate is constrained by the slowest stage. If preparation requires 2.5 minutes per batch, cooking 3 minutes and sealing 4 minutes, nominal eight-hour capacities are 192, 160 and 120 batches respectively. The sealing station is the nominal physical bottleneck. Yet an operating system rarely meets these simplifying assumptions. Setup losses, breaks, material shortages, first-pass yield, maintenance and demand mix can shift the constraint. A station with the longest nominal cycle may not be the realized constraint when upstream variability or downstream inspection repeatedly blocks flow. Bottleneck diagnosis must therefore pair engineering standard times with actual time-stamped production, queues and reasons for stoppage.

An improvement at a nonconstraint can increase local efficiency without increasing final throughput. If preparation is raised from 192 to 220 batches per day while sealing remains capable of only 120, the extra preparatory capacity cannot raise finished output. Unless work is deliberately restrained, it will increase work in process, handling, spoilage exposure and working-capital needs. The practical lesson is not to neglect nonconstraints, which may require preventive maintenance and protective capacity, but to evaluate investment at the level of end-to-end, good-quality production. The limiting factor should be reassessed after any genuine improvement, because the constraint migrates.

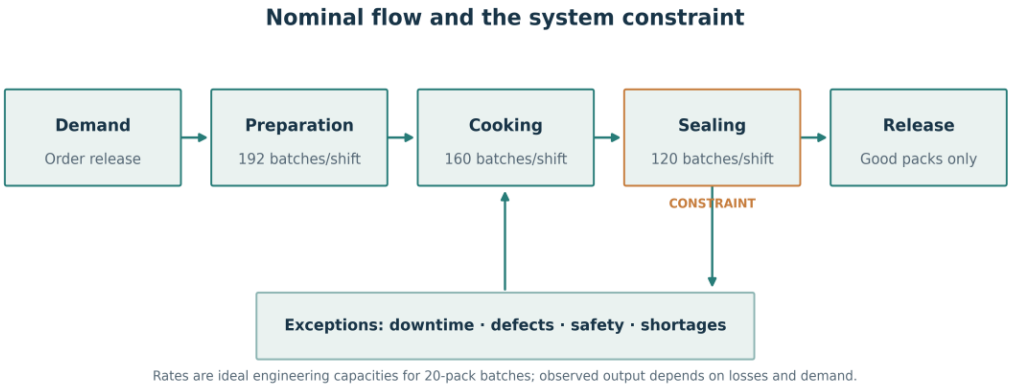
A process engineer should also distinguish the apparent bottleneck from the active bottleneck under the prevailing product mix. For the illustrative line, preparation, cooking and sealing have respective ideal rates of 192, 160 and 120 twenty-pack batches per eight-hour shift. The seal station sets the ideal whole-line rate, but this conclusion changes if cooking requires allergen-changeover cleaning, an inspection officer is available for only part of the shift, or the material recipe adds variable batch sizes. Figure 17.1 accordingly includes both engineering rates and a release and exception-feedback loop. The diagram is deliberately a nominal diagnostic, not a claim that actual plant flow always follows an uninterrupted serial sequence.

17.2.3 Little's law and the relation among work, throughput and time

Little (1961) established a powerful long-run flow relationship: $\mathbf{L = \lambda W}$, where L is average number of flow units in a stable system, λ is the average throughput rate in flow units per unit of time, and W is average time spent by a unit inside the same boundaries. In a stable packaged-food workflow averaging 240 packs in process and releasing 120 good packs per hour, average flow time equals 240 / 120 = 2 hours. This relationship does not identify why the time is long, and the averages must use matching unit boundaries and observation periods. It is not a universal formula for transient operations whose input rate persistently exceeds output or whose queues grow without bound. Nevertheless, it reveals a managerial consequence: increasing unfinished units without increasing throughput ordinarily lengthens time in the system.

The flow relationship is frequently confused with a prescriptive rule to minimize inventory to zero. Buffering can prevent starvation during material interruptions and protect essential service levels. The analytically sound objective is to choose the least costly and most responsible configuration of inventory, time and protective capacity under actual variability. Hopp and Spearman (2004) show why the meaning of pull becomes clearer when specified as a work-in-process control rather than as a ceremonial use of just-in-time terminology. Figure 17.1 expresses this chapter's operational accountability cycle; the diagram is an original synthesis rather than an empirically estimated causal model.

Figure 17.1. Operational process, bottleneck diagnosis and feedback



17.3 DEMAND FORECASTING AND OPERATIONAL PLANNING

17.3.1 Sources of demand uncertainty and forecast meaning

A forecast is a conditional statement about an uncertain future quantity given available information, a specified horizon and a prediction method. Operations require forecasts for materials, staffing, machine time, service appointments and capacity investment. Short-horizon predictions often rely on recent orders and known promotions, while long-horizon capital decisions depend on structural scenarios and institutional changes. Demand may combine trend, seasonality, calendar effects, sporadic institutional purchases, promotions, weather and exceptional disruptions. Aggregated sales cannot always be treated as unconstrained demand: a stockout records what was sold, not necessarily what customers sought; rejected orders may reveal demand that the enterprise could not serve. Decisions built on sales data alone can therefore perpetuate under-capacity.

The *naïve forecast* carries forward the most recent observation; a moving average smooths recent values; exponential smoothing places declining weights on older observations; more sophisticated approaches can model trend, seasonality and covariates. Complexity should be justified by out-of-sample accuracy, available data and decision cost rather than prestige. Hyndman and Athanasopoulos (2021) emphasize exploring series properties, specifying training and test periods, and selecting error measures appropriate to the purpose. A model that minimizes average error across ordinary weeks may perform poorly at festival peaks when the cost of missed orders is greatest. Prediction intervals and alternative scenarios are indispensable where occasional shortages have nonlinear consequences.

17.3.2 Worked forecast and evaluation

Suppose monthly orders, in thousands of packs, are 10, 12, 11 and 14. A three-period moving-average forecast for month 5 is (12 + 11 + 14) / 3 = 12.33 thousand packs. This is a baseline, not a confidence bound and not a forecast that the factory can automatically satisfy. To demonstrate retrospective error evaluation, a one-step naïve forecast for months 2, 3 and 4 would be 10, 12 and 11 thousand packs, whereas actual values are 12, 11 and 14. Absolute errors are 2, 1 and 3, yielding mean absolute error (MAE) = (2 + 1 + 3) / 3 = 2 thousand packs. Weighted absolute percentage error (WAPE) = (2 + 1 + 3) / (12 + 11 + 14) × 100 = 16.22%. Because this is a four-observation illustrative series, it has no power to establish comparative superiority of one model or seasonality.

Managers should retain at least a simple benchmark, track signed errors to detect systematic underforecasting, evaluate by relevant product and horizon, and state how unusual periods are handled. Mean absolute percentage error can behave poorly when actual quantities are zero or near zero; WAPE can obscure weak performance in low-volume categories; a single aggregate measure may conceal severe errors for essential clients. Forecast quality must be judged against the decision: a 10% miss may be tolerable for a low-cost buffer but catastrophic

for perishable regulated inputs. Records of demand censoring, promotional interventions and uncertainty should accompany forecasts, not be erased during management reporting.

17.3.3 From forecast to sales and operations planning

Sales and operations planning (S&OP) reconciles market expectations with resource feasibility across a medium-term horizon. In a mature process, commercial managers present demand and its uncertainty; operations assesses bottlenecks and feasible schedules; procurement reports input availability; HR assesses skill and shift constraints; finance tests cash, contribution and risk; executive authority resolves trade-offs. The process should produce an agreed, version-controlled plan, not an artificial “consensus forecast” created by averaging political demands. Lapide (2004) identifies disciplined meetings, clear preparation and cross-functional participation as important process conditions. The evidentiary limit is that S&OP quality cannot be established by the existence of meetings alone; adherence, exceptions, plan stability and outcomes must be tracked.

Scenario planning is preferable to false precision where weather, exchange rates, fuel costs or large contracts dominate variability. The base case can be compared with demand shocks, supplier interruptions and operational recoveries, using explicit trigger thresholds. A food producer might adopt base, downside and upside monthly order levels of 38,000, 32,000 and 44,000 packs, each paired with an admissible production, staffing and financing response. These values are hypothetical. A useful S&OP decision specifies the smallest feasible action for each state, the lead time to enact it, the constraint it relaxes and the evidence that will trigger reconsideration. No demand scenario should be silently treated as a realized sales commitment.

An effective review must distinguish forecast generation from decision approval. At a monthly S&OP meeting, commercial leaders might propose 44,000 packs in an upside state, while the current sealing process supports only about 41,970 first-pass acceptable packs under the modeled operating factors. That difference cannot be erased by labeling the forecast 'agreed'. The legitimate options include verified overtime within lawful and safe limits, supplier-supported subcontracting, revised customer delivery dates, additional productive capacity, or declining low-contribution orders. Each option changes working capital, quality assurance and the distribution of risk. Management should record which trade-off was accepted and monitor the forecast separately from the feasibility of its chosen response.

17.4 CAPACITY PLANNING, UTILIZATION AND QUEUES

17.4.1 Capacity concepts and operational denominators

Design capacity is the theoretical maximum output under the stated engineering schedule and ideal conditions; *effective capacity* adjusts for planned maintenance, setups, staffing, quality controls and known operating constraints; *actual output* is the observed result in a specified period. A common teaching convention defines utilization as actual output divided by design capacity and efficiency as actual output divided by effective capacity, but terminology varies across organizations. An analyst must disclose denominator and time basis. A plant running at 95% of an assumed design capacity may experience serious overtime, quality losses or equipment failure; another with 65% utilization may intentionally reserve capacity for variable demand. There is no universal economically optimal utilization percentage independent of variability, risk, contracts and the cost of spare capacity.

Capacity planning spans different time horizons. Long-term decisions concern sites, equipment scale and product architecture; medium-term decisions concern shifts, staffing, outsourcing and maintenance windows; short-term decisions concern sequencing, overtime and rationing. The cost of undercapacity includes missed demand, long queues and reduced service reliability; the cost of excess capacity includes capital charges and ongoing facilities, insurance and staffing commitments. Capacity pooling can reduce the reserve required when demand variations are not perfectly correlated, whereas tightly specialized resources may provide high technical

productivity but limited reallocation options. Choice therefore depends on demand composition and the economic consequences of shortage, not only average volume.

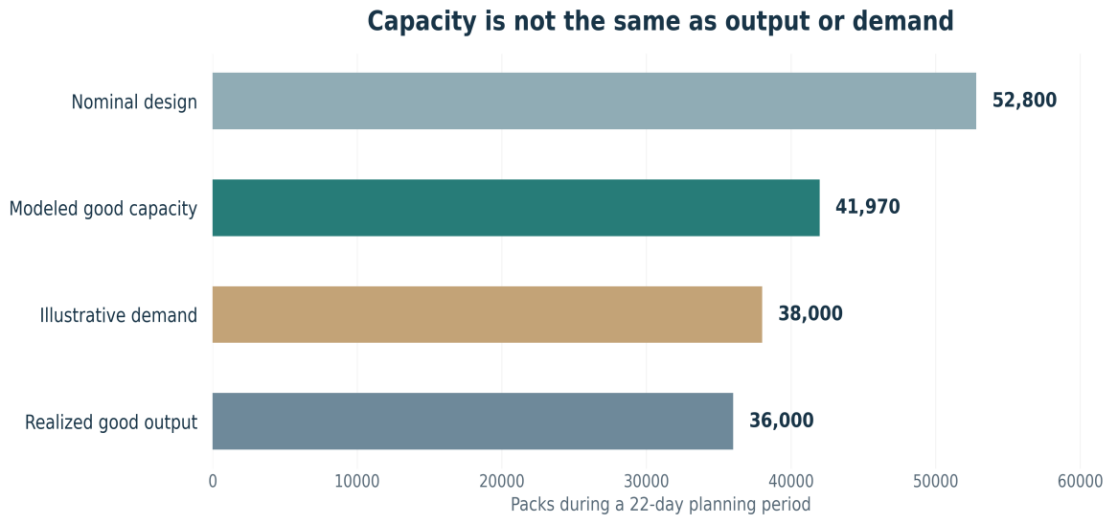
17.4.2 Reproducible capacity and overall equipment effectiveness

Take a hypothetical Kigali food-packaging line operating eight hours daily for 22 days per month. A sealing station takes four minutes per batch, each batch contains 20 packs, and nominal ideal output is (480 / 4) × 20 = **2,400 packs per day**, or **52,800 packs over 22 days**. Assume availability 90%, running-speed performance 92% of ideal, and first-pass good-pack fraction 96%. Overall equipment effectiveness (OEE), as defined for this exercise, equals availability × performance × quality = 0.90 × 0.92 × 0.96 = **79.488%**. Under the stated constant-mix assumptions, good-output capacity becomes 2,400 × 0.79488 = **1,907.712 packs per day**, or **41,969.664 packs per month**. This is a theoretical planning estimate, not observed production. The fraction may be used in calculations but finished packs must be counted as whole units in actual reporting.

Suppose actual first-pass good output is 36,000 packs during that month. Utilization relative to design capacity is 36,000 / 52,800 = **68.18%**, while achievement relative to modeled good-output capacity is 36,000 / 41,969.664 = **85.78%**. The different percentages describe different denominators; neither alone diagnoses why output was limited. Demand may be insufficient, staffing incomplete or packaging unavailable. Managers should disaggregate OEE losses, observe schedules and separate planned production from unplanned stoppages. If demand is 38,000 good packs, modeled good-output capacity appears sufficient, although the actual system's 36,000 output suggests an execution or scheduling gap. Buying an additional cooking vessel would be unjustified before identifying that gap.

A second productivity denominator makes the labor consequences inspectable. Assume, solely for this teaching calculation, four operators are present for all eight scheduled hours on each of the 22 days, with all their hours counted and no additional outsourced or unpaid labor. The line uses 4 × 8 × 22 = 704 operator-hours; realized first-pass labor productivity is therefore 36,000 / 704 = 51.14 good packs per scheduled operator-hour. Reaching the same verified 38,000-pack demand with unchanged, safe hours would raise the ratio to 53.98. Neither figure is a national productivity benchmark or a claim about a real workforce, and neither captures capital, energy or indirect support labor. The comparison demonstrates why a productivity statement is meaningful only when its numerator, labor boundary and quality gate remain fixed.

Figure 17.2. Capacity denominators in the hypothetical Kigali production case



Note. Illustrative calculations: design = 52,800; good-output capacity = design × 0.90 × 0.92 × 0.96 ≈ 41,970; actual = 36,000; assumed demand = 38,000 packs. Not empirical company data.

17.4.3 Bottleneck improvement economics and sensitivity

Assume an engineering modification reduces the sealing standard from four to 3.5 minutes per batch without increasing risk or lowering yield. Its nominal capacity becomes (480 / 3.5) × 20 = 2,742.86 packs per day. Holding the illustrative OEE factors constant yields around **2,180.24 good packs per day**, above the baseline 1,907.71. Across 22 days, this is an additional modeled capability of approximately 5,996 good packs. Yet an actual forecast of only 38,000 packs against 36,000 achieved implies at most 2,000 incremental sales attributable to meeting this specific demand, unless new orders are demonstrated. If each extra sale contributes RWF 650 after truly variable costs, incremental monthly contribution is 2,000 × 650 = RWF 1,300,000, not 5,996 × 650. For a RWF 6,000,000 modification with incremental monthly support cost RWF 150,000, an undiscounted illustrative payback is 6,000,000 / (1,300,000 − 150,000) ≈ **5.22 months**. This is not a capital-budgeting recommendation: collection risk, returns, tax, lifetime, opportunity cost, service disruptions and the realized increment in sales could overturn it.

Sensitivity analysis exposes the assumption carrying the business case. If only 1,000 extra packs sell, net monthly incremental contribution becomes 1,000 × 650 − 150,000 = RWF 500,000 and simple payback becomes 12 months. If added output increases rejected packaging or injury exposure, the technical and ethical constraints fail even when nominal payback is attractive. An improvement proposal should therefore separate (a) physically achievable additional good units; (b) demand that can actually be served and collected; (c) full incremental costs; and (d) safety and legal thresholds. The distinction links this chapter to customer analysis (Chapter 14), pricing (Chapter 15), management accounting (Chapter 23) and financial investment appraisal (Chapter 24).

17.4.4 Queueing: why high utilization can undermine service

Queueing introduces a nonlinear element absent from simple average-capacity arithmetic. Kingman's (1962) heavy-traffic analysis explains why expected delay grows sharply as a variable system approaches saturation. As a fully specified illustrative *M/M/2* service model, suppose a counter has two parallel employees, independent Poisson arrivals averaging eight customers per hour, exponentially distributed service durations averaging twelve minutes per customer, first-come-first-served discipline, unlimited waiting capacity and no abandonment. Each employee has service rate μ = 5 customers/hour; aggregate nominal capacity is 10/hour and utilization ρ = 8 / (2 × 5) = 0.8. Using the Erlang-C formula yields a probability of delay of approximately 0.7111 and mean queue waiting Wq = 0.7111 / (10 − 8) = 0.3556 hours, or **21.33 minutes**; mean total system time is 21.33 + 12 = **33.33 minutes**.

If arrivals were seven/hour with the same servers and assumptions, utilization falls to 0.7 and Erlang-C mean waiting becomes approximately **11.53 minutes**. A 12.5% reduction in the arrival rate lowers modeled waiting time by roughly 46%, demonstrating a nonlinear effect, not a prediction for an identified Rwandan service provider. Actual appointment systems, customer heterogeneity, batching, priority rules and staff breaks violate the simplified distributional assumptions and require other methods. No waiting-time target can be set responsibly without considering customer vulnerability and service safety. The practical point is that spare capacity at a variable service interface may create legitimate value through shorter delays, whereas maximizing measured staff occupancy can degrade the very experience being delivered.

The M/M/2 result can be reconstructed rather than accepted as a black-box software output. Set $a = \lambda/\mu = 8/5 = 1.6$ and $\rho = a/2 = 0.8$. The empty-system probability is $P_0 = [1 + a + a^2/\{2(1-\rho)\}]^{-1} = 1/9 = 0.1111$. The probability that an arrival waits is $C = [a^2/\{2(1-\rho)\}]P_0 = (6.4)(1/9) = 0.7111$. Finally $Wq = C/(2\mu-\lambda) = 0.35556$ hours, or 21.33 minutes. The calculation presumes stationary independent Poisson arrivals, exponential service times, identical servers and no abandonment. At $\lambda = 7$, the same construction gives $C \approx 0.5765$ and $Wq \approx 11.53$ minutes. It follows neither that waiting is always well modeled by these distributions nor that an observed queue should automatically be attributed to insufficient staffing.

17.5 FACILITY LOCATION AND LAYOUT

17.5.1 Location as an irreversible configuration of access and cost

Facility location decisions determine access to labor, suppliers, utilities, markets, transport links, skills and institutional services over a horizon often much longer than any individual forecast. A production site near Kigali can reduce delivery distance to some customers but may impose higher premises costs, limited expansion room or dependence on specific infrastructure. A site farther from the principal market may offer lower rent and closer agricultural inputs but expose finished products to higher transport, temperature-control or schedule risk. For a hospital or service desk, proximity, accessibility, disability access and continuity may be more important than the lowest land cost. Location must be evaluated against the actual service promise and full operational exposure, not merely a generalized comparison between urban and nonurban land prices.

Quantitative location screening can combine cost–volume analysis with weighted criteria, but neither method removes managerial judgment. Suppose two hypothetical sites have annual fixed costs of RWF 24 million and RWF 33 million respectively, and variable processing-related costs of RWF 760 and RWF 610 per saleable pack, holding all other comparable factors constant. At annual output Q, modeled costs are **CA = 24,000,000 + 760Q** and **CB = 33,000,000 + 610Q**. The accounting crossover is Q = (33,000,000 − 24,000,000) / (760 − 610) = **60,000 packs**. For output below 60,000, A is lower cost; above that, B is lower cost under the given assumptions. This result is only a screening identity. If B requires higher working capital, has unreliable water or adds delivery losses, the stated unit-cost function is incomplete. A robust location memorandum records land tenure, permits, safe water, power quality, occupational access, waste arrangements, expected growth and contingency alternatives.

Location should also be analyzed as a risk-portfolio decision. Concentrating all critical operations in one site may gain economies of scale but increase exposure to floods, localized power outages or social disruption. Dispersing facilities may reduce geographic concentration while creating duplication, governance complexity and transport costs. The business continuity analysis should identify the costs and lead times of restoring minimum essential service, not assume that a second facility is universally prudent. A site selected through a narrowly financial spreadsheet can impose irreversible burdens on nearby communities or workers; environmental and social screening must therefore enter before investment approval, with obligations verified under current applicable local law.

17.5.2 Layout, process type and material handling

Layout translates the operating strategy into spatial and informational relationships. In a *product or line layout*, stations are sequenced around a high-volume repetitive flow; a *process or functional layout* groups similar equipment or specialist capabilities for flexible, diverse orders; a *cellular layout* brings resources together for product families with shared routings; and a *fixed-position layout* keeps a large immovable output in place while resources move to it. Services may use customer-facing zones, back-office cells, self-service interfaces and hybrid digital-physical arrangements. No layout is intrinsically superior; its effectiveness depends on demand volume and variety, variability, safety, setup costs, flow distance and future change. A highly specialized line may offer low unit processing cost at volume but become brittle when product variety or input dimensions change (Slack et al., 2022).

A practical layout study records travel distance, handling frequency, crossing flows, storage conditions, supervision, waiting areas, emergency access and infection or contamination pathways where relevant. A food-processing plant must prevent problematic intersections between raw and finished goods and preserve cleaning and inspection accessibility. A clinic must accommodate privacy and triage rather than optimize waiting-room seating as a simple throughput problem. Digital information layout also matters: a form requiring four approvals may create a virtual queue even when physical movement is efficient. Layout evaluation should

combine visual mapping with time and safety observations, worker consultation and realistic change costs, including disruption during installation.

A common failure is choosing the minimum-distance layout without regard to adverse consequences. Compressing walkways can shorten material-handling time but obstruct evacuation; relocating a hazardous workstation closer to packaging can reduce movement while increasing contamination exposure. Conversely, redesign that reduces unnecessary lifting may lower both injury risk and handling waste. When comparing alternatives, managers should report at least cost, feasible output, time, flexibility, safety and resilience. Weighted scoring can discipline the discussion, but an unsafe option must not become “acceptable” simply because it receives a high aggregate score on cheaper criteria.

Facility alternatives also differ in option value. A low-cost site with no adjacent expansion space may become expensive once growth requires a second location; a modular layout could preserve flexibility at an initially higher installation cost. These effects warrant scenarios rather than a single extrapolated annual production volume. In a public-service context, relocation can improve managerial operating costs while increasing clients' transport time or excluding people with mobility limitations. Such uncompensated costs are relevant to the decision even when they do not appear in the facility's accounting ledger. Local consultation and transparent criteria therefore improve both informational quality and procedural legitimacy.

17.6 SCHEDULING AND RESOURCE ALLOCATION

17.6.1 From aggregate capacity to executable commitments

Scheduling assigns specific work to limited equipment, personnel, space and time within precedence, availability and deadline constraints. Aggregate capacity calculations can show that total monthly output is possible while concealing infeasibility on particular days or shifts. Orders may compete for one specialist machine, packaging format or quality-release officer. A credible schedule specifies job quantities, release times, required sequence, setup families, completion deadlines, resource calendars and contingency authority. Production control then compares actual progress with the committed schedule and records reasons for replanning. Planning rigidity is inappropriate where suppliers or patient demand are volatile, but continuous improvised rescheduling can also undermine reliability and conceal chronic undercapacity.

Common sequencing rules optimize different objectives. First-in-first-out privileges arrival order; earliest-due-date may improve deadline protection; shortest-processing-time tends to reduce mean completion time when all jobs are immediately available on one machine and other simplifying assumptions hold; critical-ratio rules compare remaining time to required work. There is no ethically neutral “optimal schedule” without an objective and constraints. A hospital cannot use shortest service time to displace urgent cases; an enterprise may need a legally mandated rest break even when a solver would otherwise assign overtime. Scheduling should represent skill coverage, fatigue, maintenance windows and customer priority rights as explicit constraints, not as discretionary exceptions after optimization.

17.6.2 A transparent sequencing illustration

Five hypothetical jobs require 2, 6, 3, 7 and 4 processing hours on one machine; all are ready at time zero, without setup or interruption. First-in-first-out in that order generates completion times 2, 8, 11, 18 and 22 hours, with mean flow time **12.2 hours**. Ordering jobs by shortest processing time, 2, 3, 4, 6 and 7 hours, generates completion times 2, 5, 9, 15 and 22 hours, with mean **10.6 hours**. Thus the latter reduces average flow time by 1.6 hours in this special case. It does not establish better on-time delivery if due dates differ, nor equitable treatment of long, urgent or socially essential jobs. The correct decision requires a stated service policy and sensitivity to actual arrival times, sequence-dependent setups and priority exceptions.

Finite-capacity scheduling should not confuse jobs on a spreadsheet with available capacity in a shift. If an eight-hour shift includes a planned 30-minute sanitation shutdown and a required break, assigning eight net

production hours would generate systematic lateness. A practical scheduling system maintains versioned calendars and exceptions, assigns ownership of changes, and reports adherence both to the frozen schedule and to the originally promised customer date. A revised due date may make internal schedule attainment appear high without restoring the customer's experience. Distinguishing commitment changes from actual performance is therefore essential.

17.6.3 Bottleneck sequencing, flexibility and human constraints

At a constrained station, sequencing choices have system-wide effects because upstream work waits for the resource and downstream resources may be starved. Grouping similar products can reduce setup time but delay small urgent orders. Releasing all orders at once may create excessive work in process; releasing only when the bottleneck has available capacity can stabilize flow, provided input reliability is adequate. Cross-training offers flexibility, but “flexible staffing” can conceal overwork if minimum staffing, competence and safe working hours are ignored. Boudreau et al. (2003) demonstrate why the interface between operations and human resource management is analytically central: human responses are not simply random noise added to mathematical machinery.

Detailed project-network techniques are developed in Chapter 21. Here it is sufficient to distinguish precedence-constrained production jobs from projects: operational scheduling repeats interdependent resource assignments, while a one-off capital installation may require a project critical path before it can change productive capacity. A practical production plan records who owns dispatch authorization, shortage responses, priority overrides and the restoration of normal scheduling after disruptions. Escalation mechanisms prevent urgent sales requests from silently overriding health, safety or inspection duties.

For a more complete scheduling diagnosis, managers should record both flow and lateness distributions instead of only the average completion time. In the five-job illustration, the shortest-processing-time sequence reduces average flow time, but the last job still completes at hour 22 and may violate an earlier contractual due date. If a job requires a different sealing temperature or package type, setup times become sequence-dependent, and the apparent ranking can reverse. Robust scheduling therefore requires a calendar-accurate model, realistic setup families, transparent exception rules and a managerial authority that accepts the consequences of priority changes. Human availability cannot be represented as an unlimited fungible machine-hour resource.

17.7 INVENTORY–PRODUCTION RELATIONSHIPS

17.7.1 Why inventory and spare capacity are both buffers

Inputs, work in process (WIP) and finished goods serve different operational purposes. Raw-material availability decouples production from supplier delivery; WIP can protect downstream resources against short-term interruptions; finished-goods stocks decouple customer service from manufacturing time. All inventories consume finance, storage, handling and information capacity, and some deteriorate or become obsolete. Spare capacity is an alternative or complement to stock: excess staffing or equipment availability can absorb variation without holding as much physical inventory. Time is also a buffer, since promising a longer lead time gives a system room to respond. Hopp and Spearman (2004) characterize lean in terms of controlling the cost of buffering variability, a more useful framing than declaring all inventory inherently wasteful.

A flow constraint changes the meaning of inventory. An extra ton of input material does not improve shipped output when downstream processing is already saturated; instead it can raise holding costs or spoilage. At the same time, zero input stock may stop the bottleneck during ordinary supply interruptions. The control objective is therefore to provide deliberately sized buffers at points where their marginal reliability benefit is justified. The appropriate size depends on replenishment lead time, demand variability, supplier reliability, shelf life and the financial consequences of shortage. Detailed reorder-point, economic-order-quantity and network inventory models belong to Chapter 19; this chapter owns their production-flow implications.

17.7.2 Push, pull and hybrid control

Push systems release work according to a plan, whereas *pull* systems authorize replenishment or work release based on a downstream consumption signal or a cap on WIP. These categories have variants; an actual enterprise may use planned purchases upstream, a WIP-limited production cell and order-specific packing downstream. Hopp and Spearman (2004) caution against defining pull solely by the presence of a kanban card. A genuine pull-control rule must say what quantity can enter the system, when release is permitted, and who maintains the signal's integrity. A kanban label applied to an unlimited release process does not create the expected flow discipline.

A practical work-in-process limit should be grounded in the quantity the constrained line can release without either starving downstream work or congesting the floor. For example, an operational pilot may cap released work at a defined number of batches, monitor the queue immediately before sealing, and authorize more work only when the same number has cleared the control boundary. This is a control protocol, not a universal numerical kanban prescription; the limit must be revised when lead-time variation, planned maintenance, the product mix or material availability changes. An excessive cap can generate starvation and lost demand, whereas a nominal cap that staff routinely bypass does not actually restrain flow.

In a Rwandan SME dependent on agricultural ingredients, the stability assumptions behind low-stock systems may be difficult to sustain during seasonal shortages, inconsistent input quality or delayed transport. This does not invalidate lean principles. It implies that variance reduction, supplier development, prudent buffer design and truthful forecasts precede aggressive stock reduction. Internationally benchmarked inventory turns without comparable product mix, financing costs and procurement lead times provide weak evidence. Businesses should also quantify the cost of food spoilage, discarded packaging, emergency purchases and customer service failures before claiming a reduction in inventory as a net improvement.

17.7.3 Work-in-process discipline and financial consequences

WIP is a physical queue and an accumulation of cash commitments. A growing production queue ties up purchased inputs, wages and overhead before customers pay. If the average WIP is 500 batches and output is 125 batches per day, Little's law implies an average four days in process under stable-flow assumptions. Reducing releases to align with the bottleneck, while protecting it from starvation, can shorten that time without necessarily requiring an additional machine. But finance should not presume that every reduction in WIP becomes immediate cash: contract terms, material purchase quantities, minimum pack sizes and accounting policies matter. The operational measure must be linked to cash-conversion realities rather than translated into a fabricated financial benefit.

The practical production–inventory interface requires one authoritative material status, clear ownership of physical counts, quarantine rules for suspect goods, traceability where safety requires it, and agreement on production priorities. A shared spreadsheet may suffice for a small operation if changes are controlled and reconciled; a costly enterprise-resource-planning platform cannot repair ambiguous product codes or unreliable counting. The wider data architecture is examined in Chapter 28. Inventory accuracy and service consequences matter because an apparently efficient production schedule may be unexecutable if the recorded inputs do not exist.

17.8 PROCESS TECHNOLOGY AND AUTOMATION

17.8.1 Technology as a sociotechnical redesign, not a machine purchase

Operational technology includes processing machinery, sensors, programmable controls, industrial software, barcode identification, condition monitoring, computer vision and robotics. Technology selection must begin with the task and bottleneck to be addressed. If errors originate in unclear labels and inconsistent master data, installing a robot may increase the speed at which errors propagate. If the constraint is a legally required manual review, automating an unconstrained preparatory operation may simply expand a queue. Modern information systems can improve visibility and traceability, but the reliability of data definitions, staff judgment, maintenance and permissions determines whether such visibility improves decisions. Operational transformation is therefore sociotechnical: a change in machines also changes responsibilities, competencies, failure modes and governance (Boudreau et al., 2003; Slack et al., 2022).

The relevant alternatives range from work-method redesign and simple jigs to automation or outsourcing. A make-or-buy comparison must specify total acquisition and installation cost, required utilities, spare parts, vendor support, training, cybersecurity, consumables, downtime during installation, operational lifespan and disposal obligations. Two machines with identical nameplate throughput may have very different economic performance when one requires imported proprietary components or specialized calibration. For a small enterprise, serviceability and continuity may outweigh marginal differences in ideal speed. The supplier's benchmark under favorable test conditions should be treated as vendor evidence to be validated through acceptance trials rather than automatically as the firm's forecast.

17.8.2 Digital production systems, sensors and industrial analytics

Industrial Internet of Things (IoT) systems collect operational signals such as temperature, vibration, energy draw, count, stoppage and quality exceptions. Properly governed, these observations enable condition monitoring, traceability and earlier diagnosis of failures. Yet timestamp drift, sensor calibration, network outages and ambiguous machine states can create false precision. A dashboard showing “90% availability” is not useful until managers can reproduce the numerator and denominator from approved downtime definitions. Predictive models trained on another factory's equipment may perform poorly under different loads, raw materials and maintenance patterns. AI-assisted operations can help forecast failures or scheduling conflicts, but model recommendations require validation and accountable human override, particularly when safety or food integrity is at stake. Specialist AI lifecycle and security controls belong to Chapter 29.

An incremental implementation pathway is often more defensible than wholesale digitalization: define the operational decision, establish a clean manual baseline, identify minimum data required, pilot with a holdout or comparable historical period where feasible, measure error and unintended effects, then authorize expansion. A safety-critical automatic shutdown requires a higher evidentiary standard than a nonbinding recommendation to move a low-risk order. Adoption must include a fallback manual procedure and the capacity to maintain data and hardware over time. Otherwise, a system built to raise efficiency may become a single point of operational failure.

17.8.3 Implementation economics and fairness

Technology value should be evaluated by incremental good-output contribution, service reliability, risk reduction and lifecycle cost, not by vendor claims of “hours saved” alone. Time released from an operation creates financial benefit only if it enables valuable redeployment, avoids a genuinely variable cost, prevents losses or supports attainable sales. Savings cannot be counted twice as both increased throughput and eliminated wages if staff remain employed to deliver that throughput. Equally, labor reduction is not ethically justified simply because a system automates a task: training opportunities, consultation, safe redeployment and lawful employment obligations must be examined. Chapter 12 develops workforce learning and Chapter 11 employment rights. The operational argument is that technology acquires value through an accountable redesigned work system rather than through adoption itself.

A technology business case is especially vulnerable to double counting. Suppose a sensor system reduces unscheduled downtime and the line sells additional good packs. Incremental contribution should be calculated from verified added and collectible units, net of consumables, recurring licences, training, maintenance and the installation outage. If the model also claims a wage saving for the same operators who are needed to produce those extra packs, that saving is not independently realizable. Sensitivity should include vendor response time, false alarms, production mix and a downside case in which throughput fails to change. Approval ought to follow a pilot with documented acceptance criteria, independent safety assessment where relevant, cybersecurity responsibility and a funded fallback method. Capital valuation is treated in Chapter 24; the operational discipline here is to establish credible physical and organizational effects before applying a discount rate.

17.9 OPERATIONS PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT

17.9.1 Measuring the system without rewarding local distortion

Performance measurement translates operating commitments into explicit evidence. Measures should be selected from the causal and ethical logic of the process, not merely from what the current system captures conveniently. The six common perspectives of output, quality, speed, dependability, flexibility and cost should be complemented by safety and resource productivity where material. An enterprise may raise its output-per-labor-hour indicator by deferring maintenance, accumulating uninspected goods, using excessive energy or requiring undocumented overtime. The apparent productivity improvement would be a measurement artifact or an unsustainable transfer of costs. The correct question is what output is counted, whether it is acceptable, which input is included, what time window applies, and what harms remain outside the ratio.

Table 17.1. Core operational metrics and interpretation controls

Measure	Definition and calculation	Essential interpretation caution
Good-output throughput	First-pass acceptable units released / period	State product mix and unit; avoid counting defective or unreleased work
Design-capacity utilization	Actual good units / theoretical design units × 100	Reveals denominator-specific loading, not overall efficiency or welfare
Schedule adherence	Committed operations completed as scheduled / scheduled operations × 100	Record frozen schedule and approved changes; cannot replace customer on-time delivery
First-pass yield	Units accepted without rework / units initially processed × 100	Define inspection gate and whether rework is counted twice
Flow time	Mean elapsed interval from agreed process entry to exit	Include queues, transfers and returns; separate process time
Labor productivity	Acceptable output / direct and relevant indirect labor hours	Correct for quality, case mix, outsourced labor and unpaid effort
Availability	Actual running time / planned production time × 100	Specify planned stops and classify downtime consistently
On-time-in-full (OTIF)	Orders delivered on promised date and quantity / eligible orders × 100	Use original customer commitment, not revised promise alone
Energy intensity	Metered energy use / good units produced	Control product mix, load, source and waste streams
Safety performance	Exposure-based incidents plus preventive leading indicators	Low reported incidents can reflect weak reporting rather than low risk

Define acceptance gate, yield, rework and defect categories consistently

Defect fraction First-pass rejected units / total units initially processed × 100

Declare case mix, inclusion of abandonment and queue priority

Upper-tail service waiting 90th or 95th percentile of arrival-to-service delay

Note. This table is an original measurement instrument developed from operations-management concepts (Slack et al., 2022), flow reasoning (Little, 1961), maintenance evidence (McKone et al., 2001), and safety principles (ILO, 2022b). Indicators require documented definitions and organizational validation; no universal benchmark is proposed.

17.9.2 A balanced operational scorecard and metric governance

A robust scorecard uses a manageable hierarchy: strategic promises, operational outcome indicators, process diagnostic indicators and leading safeguards. The strategic layer might specify reliable food supply and sustainable cost. Outcome measures can include first-pass good packs, original-promise OTIF, customer complaints, cash-constrained contribution, and harm indicators. Diagnostic measures can then track bottleneck availability, sanitation downtime, label errors, input shortages and changeover duration. Leading controls include preventive-maintenance completion, operator training, calibration status and unresolved hazards. Each measure needs an owner, source, unit, data lineage, review frequency, threshold and authorized response. An operational KPI without a defined action may be informational but not yet a control.

Measurement also creates behavioral incentives. If rewards are attached solely to good output, workers may conceal defects, narrow product mix or postpone proper cleaning. If call-center staff are evaluated only on average handling time, complex customers can be disadvantaged. Controls should combine result measures with

process checks, worker voice, exception audits and independent customer evidence. Goodhart-like distortion becomes more likely when targets are treated as exact representations of complex organizational purposes. A defensible evaluation therefore considers whether improvement remains after adjusting for mix, demand, quality and exposure and whether persons affected by the process can challenge the data.

17.9.3 Diagnosing variation and establishing causal improvement

Performance varies because of random events, systematic changes and measurement errors. A manager observing lower defects after a new machine does not automatically know whether the machine caused the improvement: product mix, training, supplier inputs or inspection sensitivity may also have changed. The evaluation should specify a baseline period, comparable output unit, intervention date, exposure denominator and competing explanations. Where feasible, staggered rollout or a matched comparison line is preferable to an uncontrolled before-and-after claim. Process-control principles can help detect unusual variation, but detailed statistical quality control is developed in Chapter 20 and causal inference in Chapter 4. Here the managerial contribution is to ensure that improvement claims retain a counterfactual interpretation and that uncertainty is not hidden behind attractive charts.

An operational evaluation can be specified as a small decision protocol. Define the target estimand as the change in first-pass acceptable output per scheduled production hour attributable to the proposed maintenance procedure, not the change in nominal machine speed. Fix the outcome definition before the pilot; log daily input quality, product mix, staffing, downtime and rejected packs; and compare the treated line with a credible unaffected line or with repeated pre-intervention observations if comparison capacity is unavailable. Weekly control charts may reveal instability, but their use does not automatically establish a causal effect. A reduction in defects following a new check could simply reflect fewer batches inspected. An improvement claim is stronger when independent inspection coverage, customer returns and downtime support the same interpretation.

17.10 SERVICE OPERATIONS AND CUSTOMER EXPERIENCE

17.10.1 Customer participation and service variability

Service operations differ from many manufacturing systems because the customer may be present, provide essential information, contribute work and experience waiting or treatment as part of the output. A customer arriving late, bringing incomplete documents or requiring an interpretation changes the work requirement. Frei (2006) identifies multiple sources of customer-introduced variability, including arrival, request, capability, effort and preference. These sources should not be treated automatically as faults to be eliminated. A public institution must remain accessible to people with different capacities; a hospital must allow complex cases; a university cannot grade its service purely by the number of students processed per hour. The design question is how to absorb legitimate variation through appointments, triage, flexible staffing, accessible information and differentiated service pathways without unfair exclusion.

Services have both *frontstage* and *backstage* activities. A customer sees reception, communication and resolution, but the outcome depends on internal records, verification, approvals, payment and specialist support. A service blueprint can make these layers and their handoffs visible. If a bank changes its front-counter staffing while back-office authorization remains saturated, observed queue movement may simply shift delay to a less visible stage. Digital self-service can reduce repetitive work for digitally capable clients but transfer burdens to customers who lack access, language support or reliable connectivity. Service design must therefore count failed attempts, abandoned requests, accessibility barriers and recovery time alongside completed transactions.

17.10.2 Waiting, priority and service recovery

Service capacity matching requires more than averaging customers per employee. Demand peaks, appointment no-shows, service-time variation, staff breaks and urgent exceptions determine waiting experience. The queueing example in Section 17.4 illustrates why an operation can have nominal capacity above average arrivals while still producing unacceptable delays. Alternatives include adding temporary capacity at predictable peaks, reducing administrative steps, separating simple from complex work, managing appointments or improving information before service begins. Each alternative has distributional effects. An exclusive fast queue may raise revenue while disadvantaging urgent or low-income users; prioritized triage is appropriate when it reflects legitimate need rather than arbitrary purchasing power.

Service recovery is the operational response when delivery fails: acknowledge the problem, protect safety, determine an appropriate remedy, correct records and learn from root causes. The promise should be proportionate and enforceable. A manager who automatically offers replacements without verifying inventory may increase customer disappointment; one who measures complaint closure by marking tickets resolved before remedy may manufacture apparent service quality. Customer-experience evidence should be linked to operational events such as lost orders, delayed authorizations and wrong documentation. Chapter 14 explains customer research, while Chapter 16 addresses communication and channel promises; this chapter concerns the actual reliability and recovery architecture that those promises require.

17.10.3 Designing equitable service productivity

Frei's (2006) service-operations analysis is more directly relevant: customer-introduced variability can sometimes be accommodated through better process architecture rather than suppressed by making services inaccessible. Such changes may increase productivity and access simultaneously, but their effects depend on which variation is legitimate, which process steps are standardized and which risks shift to customers.

The distinction between operational equality and equitable service is particularly important for public-facing and essential services. Identical processing-time targets for every user may appear impartial while penalizing clients who need interpretation, disability accommodation, complex verification or confidential support. Managers can separate standardized administrative steps from legitimately variable professional judgment, then measure outcomes within relevant case categories. For example, an average five-minute reduction may coexist with a rising 90th-percentile wait among vulnerable users. Such a distributional comparison should be interpreted only after recording case mix and privacy-protective group sizes; it is a diagnostic requirement, not a justification for intrusive identification or disparate treatment.

17.11 RELIABILITY, MAINTENANCE AND CONTINUITY

17.11.1 Reliability as a time-dependent operational capability

A machine's capacity is not fixed by its label once it enters service. Wear, calibration drift, contamination, operator error, electrical interruption and repair delays alter productive availability and output quality. Reliability engineering studies the probability and consequences of successful operation over a specified period; maintenance organizes inspection, servicing, repair, replacement and learning. *Corrective maintenance* responds after failure; *preventive maintenance* uses planned intervals or conditions; *condition-based maintenance* acts on measured asset state; and *predictive maintenance* employs models to estimate future failure risk. Each approach is rational in some settings: an inexpensive noncritical tool may be repaired on failure, while a safety-critical seal or cold chain requires much stronger preventive controls.

An asset register should identify equipment, criticality, age, maintenance history, responsible persons, spares, support contracts and failure consequences. ISO 55001:2024 presents asset-management-system requirements that connect asset decisions with value and organizational objectives (International Organization for Standardization, 2024b). Such standards support management discipline but are not, by themselves, evidence

that a particular machine is safe or that the enterprise is legally compliant. McKone et al. (2001) report significant relationships between total productive maintenance practices and manufacturing outcomes in their studied settings, including indirect relationships involving just-in-time practices. Their observational structural-equation design cannot establish universal causal benefits or eliminate the need for local evaluation.

17.11.2 Maintenance indicators and criticality-based prioritization

Reliability indicators include mean time between failures (MTBF), mean time to repair (MTTR), availability, repeated fault rates and overdue preventive work. If a machine runs for 180 hours between four recorded failures in a specified period, an illustrative operating-time MTBF is 180 / 4 = **45 hours**. If total corrective downtime is ten hours, MTTR is 10 / 4 = **2.5 hours**, and a simple steady-state availability approximation is MTBF / (MTBF + MTTR) = 45 / 47.5 = **94.74%**. The computation assumes comparable failure episodes and excludes planned downtime; it is not equivalent to line OEE or total calendar availability. Definitions must be standardized before comparing assets or periods. Failure probabilities can differ by operating regime, so averages are diagnostic summaries rather than permanent physical constants.

A useful prioritization begins with the consequence of failure, not only its frequency. An infrequently failing critical safety valve may deserve stronger maintenance attention than a frequently failing but noncritical office device. A risk register should identify safety, service, financial, environmental and regulatory consequences, current controls, detection options, spare-part availability and acceptable restoration times. Redundancy, condition monitoring and preventive inspection each have costs and failure modes. Operators should have clear authority to stop unsafe equipment without fear of retaliation, while managers distinguish genuine safety stops from avoidable breakdowns through proper review rather than suspicion of staff motives.

17.11.3 Continuity, disruption and recovery decisions

Operational resilience is the ability to maintain or restore essential processes within tolerable harm, time and cost when disturbances occur. This requires mapping dependencies on electricity, water, transportation, digital access, critical people, materials and regulatory permissions. A continuity plan prioritizes outputs that must be preserved, specifies safe shutdown and restart procedures, establishes alternative resources and rehearses communication. A generator is not a complete continuity plan if fuel, maintenance, ventilation or changeover safety is unaddressed. Outsourcing a critical function can diversify capacity yet introduce new supplier dependence. Because detailed enterprise-wide risk management belongs to Chapter 32, the present concern is process-level recovery: minimum safe operating state, restoration sequence, validation of product quality and accountability for lessons learned.

Continuity should be expressed in operationally testable terms. Recovery time objective (RTO) is the target duration for restoring a defined essential process, while recovery point objective (RPO) expresses the maximum tolerable interval of data loss in an information-dependent process. A bakery may require validated temperature records and retained batch identities before releasing product after a power interruption; restoring electricity alone is not recovery. For a digital service counter, an apparently functional screen may still conceal missing transactions requiring reconciliation. These objectives are internal planning assumptions that must be justified against customer, safety and legal requirements, not copied from generic templates.

A meaningful rehearsal should test one plausible disruption pathway end to end. Managers would simulate a sealing-machine failure during a peak order period, identify safe shutdown and product quarantine, confirm a spare-part source, trace the effect on the next delivery commitment and authorize restart only after required checks. The exercise should document actual restoration time, missing information, role ambiguity and the cost of temporary alternatives. A business unable to finance full geographic redundancy may nevertheless improve resilience through reliable maintenance records, cross-training, calibrated spare parts and a candid customer notification protocol. The resulting preparedness is demonstrated by tested recovery capability, not by the mere existence of a continuity document.

17.12 RESPONSIBLE AND SUSTAINABLE OPERATIONS

17.12.1 People, prevention and legitimate operational limits

Operational decisions redistribute exposure to physical, psychosocial and financial risks. Managers decide line speed, staffing, shift pattern, guarding, cleaning time, training access and whether a near miss is investigated. A process that reaches target throughput only when workers disregard safe operating procedures is not reliably capable at that target. The International Labour Organization (ILO, 2022b) recognized a safe and healthy working environment as a fundamental principle and right at work. ISO 45001:2018 offers a management-system framework including leadership, worker participation, hazard assessment and improvement; the standard's existence does not replace national legal verification, competent technical assessment or actual prevention. The appropriate operational measure is output achieved *within* nonnegotiable safety and rights constraints.

Human dignity matters even when a worker's exposure is not captured in an injury count. Fatigue, repetitive strain, coercive overtime, exclusion from reporting channels and opaque algorithmic assignments may undermine productivity and lawful work over time. Worker consultation is operationally valuable because frontline knowledge exposes rare failures and workarounds not visible in dashboards, but employee voice is also a legitimate interest independently of financial returns. Chapter 11 develops the enforceable employment relationship, while this chapter requires every production design to make safe work an explicit feasibility condition rather than an afterthought.

17.12.2 Resource productivity and the limits of green labels

Sustainable operations evaluates energy, water, material losses, emissions and disposal across a meaningful system boundary, in addition to economic output and human consequences. Kleindorfer et al. (2005) establish the importance of linking environmental, health and safety considerations with operational design rather than treating them as external reporting issues. ISO 50001:2018 provides an energy-management-system framework; it does not certify that every product made by a participating organization is environmentally benign. A facility reporting lower kilowatt-hours per good pack may still consume more total energy if volume increases, or may have shifted energy-intensive steps to suppliers. Both intensity and absolute impacts should therefore be reported where relevant, with clear scope and method.

A numerical intensity measure makes the boundary problem explicit. If the constructed processor consumes 1,200 kWh of metered electricity to produce 36,000 first-pass acceptable packs during a month, recorded intensity equals 0.0333 kWh per pack. If output rises to 38,000 packs while electricity increases to 1,250 kWh, intensity falls to approximately 0.0329 kWh per pack even though total use rises by 50 kWh. Both results can be true and neither establishes a life-cycle emissions reduction without the energy-source mix, displaced processes and relevant upstream impacts. Responsible reporting should therefore disclose absolute resource flows, intensity ratios, system boundaries and credible uncertainty rather than selecting whichever metric appears more favorable.

ISO 14040:2006 sets out the goal-and-scope, inventory, impact-assessment and interpretation structure for life-cycle assessment (International Organization for Standardization, 2006a). Its application requires specifying a functional unit, inventory boundaries, allocation choices and uncertainty rather than calculating only the factory's electricity bill. Even a narrowly defined cradle-to-gate study can be informative if its limitations are made explicit; it should not be portrayed as a complete cradle-to-grave account. The comparative question is whether a proposed operational change reduces the relevant burden for a functionally equivalent product, rather than merely moving emissions or waste into the supplier's activities.

Material-yield improvement can reduce both costs and waste. Suppose a hypothetical processor receives 1,000 kilograms of inputs and obtains 820 kilograms of acceptable product. Material yield is 82%, while the 180 kilograms difference includes moisture changes, trims, rejected material and other losses that must be identified

separately. Describing all 180 kilograms as avoidable waste would be incorrect without a material balance and process analysis. Likewise, recycling a material does not automatically establish net environmental improvement if collection and reprocessing generate substantial burdens. A cradle-to-gate or life-cycle assessment, where feasible, offers a stronger basis for claims than an isolated packaging label. Detailed circular-economy frameworks are developed in Chapter 31.

17.12.3 Rwanda-specific resource and safety implications

The NISR 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey reports limited solar use, at 7.4% of formal and 6.0% of informal businesses, according to its published summary (NISR, 2026e). These proportions are descriptive for the survey's definitions, not evidence that every business without solar is financially inefficient or unwilling to adopt renewable energy. Economic suitability depends on tariffs, load shape, capital access, equipment support and alternative energy reliability. The same survey reports different patterns of paid waste disposal between formal (78.1%) and informal (51.7%) businesses. These figures should not be interpreted as full compliance rates or direct estimates of ecological harm; they identify a measurement and service-access question requiring closer analysis.

Food manufacturing demands attention to sanitation, ingredient traceability, contamination control and response to suspected unsafe batches. Rwanda Standards Board (n.d.-e) describes RS 184 as a HACCP-based food-safety system standard that applies to relevant food-chain organizations. The description supports the relevance of hazard-based design, but it is not sufficient to assert that a hypothetical facility holds certification or meets all Rwanda FDA requirements. The World Health Organization's five keys to safer food provide general prevention guidance (World Health Organization, n.d.), while the precise legal and technical obligations of an enterprise require current source verification in its subsector. Operations managers should therefore maintain documented control points, verification records, withdrawal/recall procedures and clear duties for stopping distribution when safety is uncertain, without overstating what a generic operating checklist can guarantee.

Table 17.2. Responsible operations decision test

Decision dimension	Evidence required before authorization	Stop or revise condition
Customer and mission	Demand segment, promised delivery, demonstrated use and customer consequences	Plan depends on deceptive claims or unserviceable commitments
Process feasibility	Flow map, bottleneck capacity, input and labor availability, quality gate	Required output exceeds safe feasible good-output capacity
Economic viability	Incremental contribution, total costs, cash exposure and sensitivity	Decision fails plausible downside or creates unfinanceable obligations
People and safety	Hazard assessment, competent staffing, consultation, lawful work conditions	Uncontrolled serious hazard or coercive labor requirement
Environmental stewardship	Energy, water, material flows, waste destination and relevant compliance	Material harm is unmeasured or knowingly shifted outside boundary
Evidence and accountability	Baseline, owner, data provenance, control thresholds and review date	No credible mechanism to detect failure, correct records or remedy harm

Note. Original integrative decision test based on the chapter's theory and reviewed standards (ILO, 2022b; International Organization for Standardization, 2018c, 2018d; Kleindorfer et al., 2005). The table proposes a governance protocol; it is not a legally authoritative test or empirically validated scale.

17.13 RWANDA-BASED APPLICATION AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON

17.13.1 What official national evidence does and does not show

Rwanda's business-enterprise structure is an essential boundary condition for operations theory. NISR's Integrated Business Enterprise Survey 2024 describes a business landscape with at least 87% informality in the published summary, and reports that **62.6% of manufacturing companies did not use their full capacity** in the survey reference year (NISR, 2026e). The summary identifies weak demand and input-supply reliability among reported reasons for underutilization. A firm may therefore remain idle because its market cannot absorb output, not because equipment is technically deficient. An indiscriminate policy of capital subsidies or additional machinery would fail to address demand, market access or supplier consistency in some cases. The percentage is a descriptive survey result; it does not measure idle machine-hours per industry, prove that a specific firm is mismanaged, or estimate causal effects of government policy.

In the second quarter of 2026, NISR reported real GDP growth of 9.4% year on year, industry growth of 18% and manufacturing growth of 10%; within manufacturing, food processing grew by 2% in the published activity breakdown (NISR, 2026c). These measures have different economic scope and must not be conflated. Sectoral output growth does not establish capacity utilization, demand for one brand, unit profitability or the reliability of a named factory. A prudent Rwandan operations analyst joins national context to enterprise-specific evidence by specifying products, orders, seasons, process constraints and financial terms. Growth statistics supply a context for inquiry rather than an operational forecast. Likewise, a national energy or labor indicator should not replace on-site meters, contractual power data or actual skills audits.

Comparative small-firm scholarship helps interpret what these constraints mean without extrapolating from national aggregates. McKenzie and Woodruff (2017) examined managerial practices such as stock-keeping, recording transactions, marketing and financial planning across micro and small businesses in seven developing countries, including Ghana, Kenya and Nigeria. They found associations between better practices and firm outcomes, but their observational estimates are not randomized treatment effects and the sampled countries do not include Rwanda. Read alongside the Indian textile experiment of Bloom et al. (2013), this evidence suggests a defensible but testable priority: establish reliable everyday operating records before assuming that sophisticated capital equipment will resolve an enterprise's main constraint. The policy relevance lies in comparing mechanisms and constraints, not importing a universal productivity coefficient or treating all African enterprises as equivalent.

The enterprise survey's sampling frame also constrains comparison. NISR's IBES covers defined non-agricultural business activity, and its operational classifications must not be equated with a census of all farms or all unregistered productive work (NISR, 2026e). The reported 62.6% refers to manufacturing enterprises indicating incomplete utilization, not an estimate that 62.6% of Rwanda's manufacturing capacity lies idle. Its denominator counts enterprises rather than homogeneous machine-hours and does not state a common amount of unused productive potential. Further research would need firm-level orders, asset hours, utilization definitions and product mix before estimating a national capacity gap or recommending equipment investment.

The United Nations Industrial Development Organization (UNIDO, 2024) places industrial capabilities, skills, innovation and resource efficiency within a wider development agenda. This supports examining operational productivity as an institutional and technological capability rather than a problem of worker effort alone. However, international policy narratives must still be tested against local transaction costs, market size, financing and implementation capacity. A small food processor may achieve more from stable supplier specifications, safe cleaning routines, better demand records and an achievable maintenance plan than from expensive autonomous production technology. The ranking of interventions depends on the particular bottleneck and evidence, not a presumption that simple practices are always sufficient.

17.13.2 Hypothetical Kigali food enterprise: operational diagnosis

The constructed food enterprise has one eight-hour production shift and 22 nominal workdays per month. Its preparation, cooking and sealing standards are respectively 2.5, 3 and 4 minutes per 20-pack batch. The bottleneck is sealing at 120 batches/day before losses. Baseline good-output capacity is approximately 41,970 packs/month under the separately stated availability, performance and quality factors. Actual first-pass good output is 36,000 packs, and plausible demand is 38,000 packs. Because the modeled capacity exceeds demand while observed output falls short, the case cannot justify buying capacity merely from order counts. A first managerial intervention is to reconcile daily time losses, sealing stoppages, input shortages, planned versus actual production time and rejected packs, while obtaining evidence that orders are genuine, collectible and legally serviceable.

A disciplined thirty-day pilot would begin by approving one consistent unit definition and recording hourly starts, good completions, scrap, duration of stoppages, reasons for interruption, staff hours, energy use and missed orders. The production supervisor and worker representatives should review the first week for incorrect definitions; a maintenance specialist should test whether seal temperature instability or delayed changeovers accounts for recurrent interruptions. The team should separately examine market feasibility and packaging supply, because improved cycle speed cannot correct absent demand or materials. The intervention's first test is whether the process can meet the known 38,000-pack requirement safely and dependably with existing assets. Only after that result is reproducibly demonstrated should management consider the RWF 6 million equipment modification modeled earlier.

The case's financial and human dimensions must remain linked. Delivering 2,000 extra packs at RWF 650 contribution each yields RWF 1.3 million before incremental support cost, but this depends on saleable demand and cash collection. If output improvement requires unpaid overtime or greater contamination risk, the decision has failed the responsible feasibility test even if contribution rises. If reducing late deliveries also lowers customer complaints and emergency transport, those may be additional benefits, but they require independent measurement and cannot be invented into the calculation. A credible post-pilot review compares observed output and complaints to the pre-intervention baseline, documents demand and material conditions, and treats uncontrolled coincident changes as alternative explanations.

17.13.3 Hypothetical Kigali service operation: a different form of constraint

An illustrative walk-in service center has two employees, each taking twelve minutes per eligible transaction on average. Under the deliberately stylized M/M/2 assumptions in Section 17.4, an arrival rate of eight customers per hour produces predicted mean queue waiting of about 21.33 minutes despite nominal aggregate capacity of ten customers per hour. A manager relying solely on 80% occupancy may overlook that waiting burden. Capacity is not the only remedy: better appointment communication, separation of simple and complex services, clear documentation before arrival, and suitable peak staffing may reduce variance or actual work. These measures must be tested locally rather than selected from a simplified queue model alone.

If real service time has a heavy right tail or customers have priority needs, an M/M/2 model may underestimate or mischaracterize delay. Its assumptions are useful precisely because they are visible and falsifiable. A service manager should record arrival times, service durations, abandonments, staffing, peak patterns and fairness-relevant categories with proportionate privacy safeguards. The service case also illustrates why total productivity cannot be reduced to quick closure: an accurate, respectful and accessible resolution may legitimately require more time. The contrast with food production shows that a common flow vocabulary can illuminate different operations without forcing the same technical intervention.

17.13.4 Documented Toyota production-system comparator

Toyota Motor Corporation describes its Toyota Production System as resting on two pillars, *jidoka*, the immediate detection and response to abnormality, and *just-in-time*, synchronizing production with what is needed when needed (Toyota Motor Corporation, n.d.-b). Its official account also emphasizes worker involvement in continuous improvement. Spear and Bowen (1999), analyzing the system as a structure of explicit work specifications, direct connections, clear pathways and experimental improvement, interpret its effectiveness as organizational learning rather than the mere possession of kanban cards. This provides a documented international comparison. The evidence does not justify attributing a particular unverified financial return to Toyota or claiming its arrangements can be copied without adaptation.

For the hypothetical Kigali processor, the transferable principle is to make abnormalities observable and authorize competent workers to stop, diagnose and correct unsafe or defective flow. The less readily transferable feature is the assumption of reliably synchronized replenishment, high-quality supplier communication, sophisticated technical support and stable infrastructure. A low-stock arrangement that depends on punctual deliveries may amplify rather than reduce risk where transport and input reliability are variable. The Toyota comparison therefore supports learning from underlying mechanisms while rejecting superficial imitation. It also underscores a tension: “lean” practices can strengthen worker problem-solving when authority and training are real, but intensify work or conceal vulnerability when implemented solely as labor compression.

The comparison must also address the employment side of process design. Toyota presents jidoka and kaizen as involving human judgment and abnormality response, whereas the independent review of lean work organization by Landsbergis et al. (1999) describes evidence of intensified demands in some automotive settings. These are not logically inconsistent observations: worker authority can be genuine in one design and merely rhetorical in another. The transferable criterion is whether frontline employees have the time, training and protected discretion to signal defects and stop unsafe flow, and whether managers repair the process rather than punish the messenger. Cost or inventory statistics alone cannot demonstrate that this criterion has been met.

Table 17.3. Context-sensitive comparison of the illustrative enterprise and documented Toyota principles

Analytical aspect	Constructed Kigali operation	Documented Toyota production principles	Transferability test
Process visibility	Simple daily stoppage and first-pass yield log	Explicit abnormality detection and visible process signals	Can workers record and act on accurate exceptions?
Flow control	Bottleneck-limited release with selected material buffers	Synchronization of production to need, just-in- time	Are inputs sufficiently reliable to reduce stock safely?
Defect prevention	Seal integrity checks and stop authority	Jidoka and immediate correction of abnormality	Is stop authority supported by skills and management?
Improvement discipline	Thirty-day pilot with documented outcomes	Repeated hypothesis testing and continuous improvement	Are baselines, resources and review time available?
Governance context	SME finance, skills and infrastructure constraints	Firm-specific accumulated processes and supplier network	Which capabilities must be built before imitation?

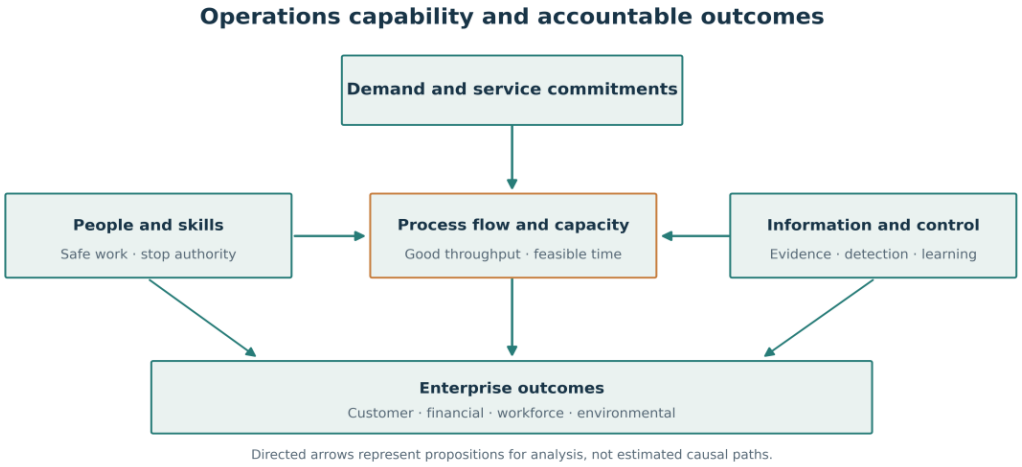
Note. The Kigali case is hypothetical; Toyota's principles are drawn from Toyota Motor Corporation (n.d.-b) and critically interpreted using Spear and Bowen (1999). The comparison does not report measured performance differences.

17.14 INTEGRATIVE DISCUSSION, CRITICAL SYNTHESIS AND RESEARCH AGENDA

17.14.1 An accountable operations-capability synthesis

The preceding analysis suggests an operations system should be understood as an adaptive configuration of *demand commitments*, *flow and capacity*, *resource and labor capability*, *information and control*, and *institutional and ecological constraints*. Outcomes emerge through these interfaces rather than as a simple sum of individual machine efficiencies. Marketing promises determine required service, but production defines what can be delivered; procurement contracts affect input consistency, while inventory buffers absorb some variability; HR practices determine whether staff possess the capabilities and authority to detect abnormality; finance defines the feasible capital and working-capital envelope. The resulting synthesis is conceptually compatible with the broader enterprise-systems perspective established in Chapter 1, but its suggested causal links remain propositions for empirical inquiry, not an independently validated model.

Figure 17.3. Proposed operations-accountability synthesis



Note. Original conceptual synthesis drawing on the operations strategy, flow, human resources and sustainable operations literature discussed in Sections 17.0–17.14. Relationships are analytical propositions, not statistically validated paths.

This framework has an important epistemological implication. Operations indicators are not neutral representations of an object independent of management; they depend on boundaries, counting rules and intervention choices. A “capacity deficit” can be a false diagnosis caused by demand volatility, missing skills, erroneous product classifications, unrecorded downtime or socially necessary safety controls. A “productivity gain” can arise from reclassifying defects or moving unpaid labor outside the accounting boundary. Consequently, diagnostic accountability must accompany managerial authority. Operations should retain the possibility that its favorite model, process map or improvement technique has been falsified by evidence, and that a legitimate stakeholder constraint changes the admissible objective.

17.14.2 Cross-functional consequences and irreducible trade-offs

First, the link to marketing and commercial execution is reciprocal: sales cannot make dependable promises without credible available-to-promise capacity, while operations cannot optimize its product mix without defensible demand signals and customer-value priorities (Chapters 13–16). Second, the link to procurement and logistics is temporal: supplier reliability affects buffers and schedules, while a production release plan changes warehousing and delivery requirements (Chapters 18–19). Third, the link to employees and finance is simultaneously causal and normative: staffing, safety, competence and maintenance alter good-output capacity, while investment, pricing and cost allocation determine which improvements are economically sustainable (Chapters 9–12 and 22–24). Digitization can support all these exchanges but cannot substitute for agreed definitions and decision rights (Chapters 28–29).

Some apparent trade-offs are artifacts of badly designed processes and can be reduced through better coordination. Fewer defects may improve speed and material yield at the same time; faster information exchange may reduce both waiting and unnecessary inventory. Other trade-offs persist because the system is truly constrained: a small enterprise may be unable to finance all desired resilience measures immediately, and a public service cannot simultaneously guarantee instant service for everyone with fixed specialist staff. Critical scholarship should resist both fatalistic “everything is a trade-off” reasoning and promotional “every efficiency measure benefits everyone” claims. Operations decisions are defensible when they make boundary conditions, winners and losers, legal limits and uncertainty explicit.

17.14.3 Testable propositions and empirical agenda

Proposition 17.1 (constraint-focused investment): After controlling for demand, product mix, baseline capacity and financing conditions, investments directed at a verified system constraint will be associated with larger improvements in good-output throughput than equal-cost investments at unconstrained resources. The proposition requires longitudinal process data and explicit treatment of managerial selection into investments; simple comparisons of “lean” adopters and nonadopters would be confounded.

Proposition 17.2 (variability and reserve capacity): In service operations with comparable variability and service standards, lower planned resource utilization, or equivalent variability-reduction mechanisms, will be associated with disproportionately shorter waiting times near saturation. A credible test must measure actual arrival and service processes, peak congestion and customer abandonment rather than apply heavy-traffic formulas without checking their assumptions.

Proposition 17.3 (worker voice and abnormality response): The relationship between operational standardization and quality will be moderated by worker competence, authorized stop-and-correct procedures and protection against retaliation. Research could use multi-site longitudinal interventions and independent safety and quality measures, recognizing that better incident reporting may initially raise recorded near misses.

Proposition 17.4 (context and lean transfer): The effect of low-inventory flow controls on service reliability will depend on supplier reliability, transport variability, financing conditions and product perishability. This invites context-rich African manufacturing and service studies that directly measure these moderators rather than treat formalization or geography as sufficient proxies.

Proposition 17.5 (sustainable output): Improvements in good-output yield will be more robust predictors of environmentally adjusted operational performance when absolute energy, water and material impacts are measured alongside intensity ratios. Tests need system boundaries that detect outsourced impacts and avoid equating unit-cost savings with ecological benefit.

A feasible research programme would combine official secondary data with well-documented enterprise-level operating records where lawful access permits, and might use matched longitudinal comparisons or staggered process interventions. Systematic reviews should separately classify field experiments, observational studies, analytical queueing models and practitioner case descriptions. Data gaps in informal enterprises, service

organizations and African regional supply networks remain consequential. Without comparable measurement of quality, time, work and environmental burden, cross-country rankings of operations excellence may reward reporting capacity rather than underlying performance.

17.14.4 Chapter synthesis and conclusion

Operations is the function through which enterprise commitments confront physical, temporal, human and institutional limits. Its fundamental concepts are durable: every operation transforms inputs, every flow has constraints, demand is uncertain, variability needs buffering, assets need maintenance, and measures need well-defined denominators. The technical means of addressing these problems change through automation, analytics and new operating models, but the underlying need for judgment does not disappear. In Rwanda, where the national survey documents widespread informality and substantial reported manufacturing capacity underutilization, a blanket prescription for more machinery or leaner inventory cannot substitute for a diagnosis of demand, input reliability, skills, finance and actual process variation.

The most important educational conclusion is that local optimization and enterprise value are different objects. A fully occupied machine can generate excessive queues; a faster preparatory station can increase unfinished work; a low inventory ratio can conceal inadequate protection against predictable interruptions; a high output count can coexist with unsafe labor or defective goods. Effective operations management therefore coordinates reliable customer benefit, genuinely saleable throughput, stable financial performance, human protection and ecological responsibility through explicit decision rights, sound data and revisable hypotheses. It prepares the conceptual foundation for procurement (Chapter 18), supply-chain and inventory systems (Chapter 19), quality management (Chapter 20) and project delivery (Chapter 21), while retaining its own distinct ownership of process design, productive capacity and operational control.

Seven connected insights follow from the analysis. Operations performance begins with a defensible definition of the good or service delivered; effective capacity depends on the process constraint rather than isolated station efficiency; forecasting must be separated from the financial and technical ability to meet demand; variable flows need suitable buffers and capacity reserves; automation creates value only through a validated sociotechnical redesign; performance indicators need explicit counterfactuals, rights and environmental boundaries; and institutional context determines whether apparently successful international practices can be replicated responsibly. These conclusions are conceptual guides for disciplined inquiry, not universal prescriptions independent of enterprise circumstances.

17.15 KEY TERMINOLOGY AND PROFESSIONAL INSTRUMENTS

Table 17.4. Essential terminology and distinctions

Term	Operational meaning and necessary qualification
Bottleneck	Resource or policy constraining system throughput under specified conditions; can move after improvement
Capacity	Feasible maximum output over a declared period; distinguish design, effective and observed output
Cycle/output interval	Time between completed units at a station; distinguish from an individual unit's flow time
First-pass yield	Acceptable units without rework divided by initial units at a defined control gate
Flow time	Elapsed time a unit spends within an explicitly bounded process
Just-in-time	Synchronization of production or delivery to requirement; not a guarantee that zero inventory is prudent
Little's law	Long-run identity $L = \lambda W$ for a stable flow with matched boundaries and units
OEE	Availability × performance × quality under documented and consistent operational definitions
Pull control	Work release constrained by downstream demand or WIP authorization, not merely a visual label
Queue	Accumulation awaiting service or processing; highly sensitive to variability near saturation
Service recovery	Authorized diagnosis and appropriate remedy for service failure, including corrective learning
Throughput	Rate of completed flow units; specify whether gross or first-pass acceptable output
WIP	Units that have entered but not completed the defined productive process

Effective capacity Practical feasible output under the specified calendar, planned losses, staffing, mix and controls

Sales and operations planning: documented reconciliation of expected demand with attainable supply, finance and commitments

S&OP

Available production time divided by required output; demand-paced reference, not a measured station processing time

Takt time

RTO Recovery time objective: approved target duration for restoring an essential operational process

Note. Terminology synthesizes Little (1961), Hopp and Spearman (2004), Slack et al. (2022) and the operational definitions explicitly adopted in this chapter.

An implementable operations decision record should contain the decision date, problem statement, product or service unit, boundary, baseline, supporting evidence, alternative explanations, assumptions, nonnegotiable legal and safety requirements, options and full costs, threshold for success, accountable approver, pilot period, stop conditions and review date. For each formula, the record must identify the period, data owner, unit, denominator and rounding convention. For each external claim, it should preserve the issuing source and observation period; for a hypothetical case, it should retain the label “illustrative.” This modest instrument is intentionally usable by a small enterprise with basic records, although larger operations may implement the same principles through integrated information systems.

17.16 LEARNING, APPLICATION AND EVALUATION PACKAGE

17.16.1 Foundational and conceptual assessment

Question 1 (LO1–LO2). Distinguish operations management from production management and show, using one manufacturing and one service example, why the appropriate process boundary changes the meaning of productivity. Explain why high utilization is not sufficient evidence of effective operations.

Question 2 (LO1, LO5). Compare Skinner's manufacturing-strategy argument, the cumulative-capabilities interpretation of Ferdows and De Meyer, the theory of constraints and Hopp and Spearman's account of pull. Identify the assumptions and strongest criticisms of each approach, rather than merely listing their prescriptions.

Question 3 (LO3). A firm forecasts monthly product orders using a three-period moving average. State how the method handles trend, structural shocks and stockout-censored historical sales; propose a defensible evaluation protocol and explain why forecast error cannot be inferred from one attractive month.

17.16.2 Numerical and analytical exercises

Exercise 1: Bottleneck and capacity (LO2, LO4, LO8). A process has three serial stations taking 5, 3 and 4 minutes per batch. Work is scheduled for 450 available minutes daily, and 12 packs are produced per batch. First-pass yield is 95%, with no other losses. Calculate nominal station capacities in batches/day, theoretical bottleneck good-output capacity in packs/day, and expected daily good units under the stated simplified assumptions. Then assess whether spending on the second station would raise end-to-end throughput and list data needed before approval.

Exercise 2: Forecast and service (LO3–LO4). Recorded weekly customer orders are 75, 80, 70 and 95 units. Calculate a three-week moving-average forecast for week 5 and a naïve one-step forecast's MAE for weeks 2–4. For an M/M/1 system with arrivals $\lambda = 4$/hour and service rate $\mu = 5$/hour, calculate utilization, average waiting in queue and average time in system; explain why these values should not be used as unconditional predictions for a real public service.

Exercise 3: Location and responsibility (LO5, LO6, LO8). Two candidate facilities have costs $C1 = 18{,}000{,}000 + 550Q$ and $C2 = 24{,}000{,}000 + 430Q$ (RWF/year). Identify the crossover volume and recommend a location for 40,000 annual units while making explicit three nonfinancial constraints that could reverse the recommendation.

17.16.3 Case-based critical and integrative assignments

Case assignment (LO2–LO8). Using the constructed Kigali processor in Section 17.13, develop a 2,000-word operations diagnostic memorandum containing a flow map, capacity reconciliation, loss register, forecast assumptions, worker and safety review, alternatives appraisal, trial design, KPI definitions and a stop-or-scale decision. Your conclusion must separate physically available capacity, expected additional sales, net contribution, rights and environmental requirements. Include at least one plausible explanation that would falsify your preferred intervention.

Advanced seminar (LO6–LO8). Compare the claims made by Toyota Motor Corporation with the interpretations of Spear and Bowen and Hopp and Spearman. Discuss whether a manufacturing system can be transferred across institutional settings by copying observable tools. Use Rwanda's IBES 2024 results carefully, without turning a survey percentage into a causal estimate or treating an invented firm as a national sample.

Capstone exercise (LO1–LO8). Design an operations system for a small enterprise combining an affordable packaged-food line and a direct customer-collection service. Deliver a defensible month-by-month capacity plan, simple service queue policy, facility/layout justification, maintenance and data protocols, operational scorecard, ethical safeguards and comparison with one international practice. Record all assumptions and design a monitoring approach that could reveal a mistaken forecast or unsafe workflow.

17.16.4 Educator's calculation notes and performance criteria

For Exercise 1, nominal station capacities are 450/5 = 90, 450/3 = 150 and 450/4 = 112.5 batches/day; Station 1 constrains at 90 complete batches, corresponding to 90 × 12 × 0.95 = **1,026 first-pass good packs/day** in expectation under the simplified model. A fractional capacity value is theoretical rather than a feasible partial physical batch. Adding capacity to Station 2 will not increase the stated system bottleneck rate. Students should earn more credit for identifying yield, variability, starvation, labor and planned-break assumptions than for arithmetic without interpretation.

For Exercise 2, the three-week average is (80 + 70 + 95)/3 = **81.67 units**. One-step naïve forecasts for weeks 2–4 are 75, 80 and 70, against actuals 80, 70 and 95; MAE = (5 + 10 + 25)/3 = **13.33 units**. For the stylized M/M/1 queue, $\rho = \lambda/\mu$ = **0.8**; $W = 1/(\mu-\lambda)$ = **1 hour**, $W_q = \lambda/[\mu(\mu-\lambda)]$ = **0.8 hours = 48 minutes**. These values depend strongly on exponential and steady-state assumptions; an applicant who identifies this limitation demonstrates the intended higher-order competence.

For Exercise 3, C1 = C2 at Q = 6,000,000/120 = **50,000 units**. At 40,000 units, C1 = RWF 40 million and C2 = RWF 41.2 million; Site 1 is lower modeled cost by RWF 1.2 million. A safe-water deficit, inaccessible transport, labor risk or critical utility unreliability could reverse the admissible decision. A suggested rubric weights conceptual and theoretical reasoning (25%), correct quantitative methods and interpretable units (25%), evidentiary quality and contextual transferability (20%), integrated ethical and financial judgment (20%), and clarity, reproducibility and citation discipline (10%). These weights are proposed teaching guidance, not an externally validated assessment instrument.

17.16.5 Further reading

Readers seeking deeper technical treatment should consult Hopp and Spearman (2004) for variability and pull controls; Little (1961) and Kingman (1962) for flow and delay; Hyndman and Athanasopoulos (2021) for responsible forecasting; Shah and Ward (2007) for lean measurement; McKone et al. (2001) for the limits of maintenance–performance evidence; and Kleindorfer et al. (2005) for the foundations of sustainable operations scholarship. NISR's official IBES 2024 publication and the 2026 quarterly national accounts provide contextual evidence that should be read alongside their definitions and reference periods rather than as proxies for the operating records of an individual organization.

CHAPTER 18

Procurement, Purchasing, and Strategic Sourcing

ABSTRACT

Procurement determines how an enterprise converts a need into an accountable commitment to external resources, capabilities and relationships. Its performance cannot be established from a purchase-price discount or tender-compliance checklist alone: specifications shape competition, supplier selection affects operational continuity, contracts allocate uncertainty, and payment practices redistribute risk. This chapter develops a critical, practically detailed account of purchasing, procurement governance and strategic sourcing across twelve domains. It compares transaction-cost economics, purchasing-portfolio analysis, agency theory, the relational view and responsible-sourcing scholarship, distinguishing explanatory mechanisms from normative requirements and conditional empirical results. A transparent targeted synthesis combines original academic contributions with Rwanda's public-procurement legislation, procurement-authority guidance, 2024 enterprise evidence and international procurement standards current to 2 November 2026. A constructed Rwandan institutional tender supplies auditable demand, total-cost, evaluation, conflict-of-interest and sensitivity calculations; its figures do not describe an actual award. A supplier-segmentation matrix, end-to-end decision map, request-for-proposal checklist, risk register and controlled evaluation scorecard translate theory into professional practice. Comparative discussion considers Rwanda's UMUCYO architecture alongside the World Bank's risk-based project-procurement framework and OECD competition principles. The central argument is that procurement creates durable value only when legitimate needs, credible market access, technically valid comparison, enforceable relationships, proportionate controls, human-rights considerations and supply resilience are jointly governed. This integrated account is conceptual and pedagogical, not a validated causal model.

Keywords: procurement governance; strategic sourcing; category management; total cost of ownership; supplier evaluation; competitive tendering; contract management; procurement integrity; responsible sourcing; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

On completing the chapter, readers should be able to demonstrate the following assessable competencies. The learning outcomes build from conceptual distinction to critical procurement evaluation and auditable professional judgment.

Outcome	Demonstrable capability
LO1	Distinguish procurement, purchasing, strategic sourcing, category management and contract management; reconstruct requisition-to-pay controls.
LO2	Evaluate demand and supplier expenditure, identifying category, specification, data-quality and consolidation risks.
LO3	Defend make-or-buy and supplier-market decisions using capabilities, transaction costs, lifecycle economics and resilience.
LO4	Design transparent eligibility, supplier assessment and tender procedures with controls against conflicts and collusion.
LO5	Calculate and test vendor scores, lifecycle costs and operational performance under stated assumptions.
LO6	Interpret Rwandan procurement law and institutions, distinguishing international guidance from binding domestic obligations.

Outcome	Demonstrable capability
LO7	Critically evaluate digital and AI-assisted procurement, labor and environmental due diligence, and supplier development.
LO8	Prepare a defensible procurement decision memorandum connecting economic value, legality, fairness, risk and remedies.

The argument begins with the governance of external acquisition (18.0–18.1), develops demand intelligence and the economic boundaries of sourcing (18.2–18.3), interprets supply markets and choice (18.4–18.5), and examines competition and exchange governance (18.6–18.7). Controls, public procurement, digital systems, responsibility and resilience then qualify what counts as success (18.8–18.12). A substantial Rwandan teaching case, international comparison, integrative propositions, glossary and assessment apparatus conclude the discussion. This chapter develops the operational requirements established in Chapter 17 and the commercial commitments of Chapter 16; downstream physical logistics, warehouse operations and inventory rules belong principally to Chapter 19, detailed quality management to Chapter 20, project contracting to Chapter 21, costing to Chapter 23 and statutory taxation and audit to Chapter 26.

18.0 INTRODUCTION: BUYING WELL IS NOT SIMPLY BUYING CHEAPLY

A hypothetical Rwandan educational institution is preparing to acquire fifty classroom computers, installation and three years of support. The finance officer requests the lowest quotation, teachers require accessible software and reliable devices, the information-technology unit anticipates cybersecurity and maintenance risks, and the procurement committee must preserve fair competition. One offer is materially cheaper but omits service coverage outside Kigali; another provides strong warranties but creates dependence on proprietary components. If the institution awards on price alone, it may acquire equipment that fails its educational purpose. If it awards solely on an attractive technical narrative, it may spend public or charitable resources without a contestable justification. The relevant decision is the choice of a defensible configuration of requirements, suppliers, contractual protection and implementation evidence. The example is constructed and is not an account of a real procurement.

Procurement is the governed process of identifying organizational needs, obtaining external goods, services or works, selecting and contracting with providers, confirming performance, making payment and evaluating resulting value. Purchasing refers more narrowly to the operational activities of ordering, receiving, paying and administering transactions. Strategic sourcing evaluates supply markets, alternative supplier configurations, contractual arrangements and long-term capabilities for significant categories of external expenditure. These distinctions matter because the person who processes an invoice should not be assumed to possess authority to rewrite a product specification, declare a bid compliant or waive a contract penalty. Procurement is an enterprise system of decisions and accountability, not the property of a single office (Monczka et al., 2020; Kraljic, 1983).

Three tensions shape its theory and practice. Economically, buyer organizations seek favorable cost, quality and availability in markets characterized by search costs, asymmetric information and sometimes concentrated supply. Institutionally, they exercise delegated purchasing power that can produce favoritism, corruption and exclusion unless constrained by transparent roles, review and remedy. Normatively, procurement can produce attractive accounts for the buyer by transferring excessive burdens to poorly paid workers, small suppliers or communities. A defensible account must retain these distinct dimensions: efficiency does not prove integrity, procedural compliance does not prove value, and a morally ambitious sourcing policy does not prove that a supplier can perform (Coase, 1937; Jensen & Meckling, 1976; OECD, 2015a, 2023b).

18.0.1 Scholarly method, source-selection protocol and inferential limits

The chapter is a critical, purposive secondary-source synthesis, not a registered systematic review, meta-analysis, primary enterprise investigation or legal opinion. The source strategy deliberately contrasts original work on transactions, agency, portfolio choices and interfirm relations with empirical research on supplier development, disruption and environmental assessment, and with normative and binding documents issued by institutions. Targeted verification on 2 November 2026 covered source titles and DOIs at journal and publisher records; Rwanda's Law No. 031/2022, Ministerial Order No. 001/23/10/TC, RPPA guidance, the 2024 sustainable public procurement policy and 2026 parliamentary communications; and OECD, ISO, ILO, NIST and World Bank primary materials. Search terms included 'purchasing portfolio Kraljic measurement', 'supplier development social capital performance', 'upstream supply disruption complexity', 'Rwanda UMUCYO procurement law 031/2022', 'bid rigging procurement OECD 2025', 'sustainable procurement ISO 20400' and 'AI procurement risk'. The selection privileges explanatory distinctiveness, institutional authority, identifiable bibliographic metadata and relevance to the chapter’s scope, not presumed exhaustiveness.

An official national survey can describe the distribution of enterprises in its declared statistical frame but cannot establish the performance of an unnamed bidder. An enacted law has legal authority within its defined scope; a government policy, standard or OECD recommendation has a different normative status. Peer-reviewed associations and case studies identify contingent mechanisms, not guaranteed returns from a managerial intervention. All bid figures, supplier scores and savings reported in the teaching case are constructed, and their arithmetic can be reproduced from disclosed assumptions. Claims about particular tenders, irregularities or legal sanctions are not inferred from generic risk indicators. The treatment of procurement legislation is an orientation subject to the authoritative text, subsequent amendments and procuring-entity legal review.

18.0.2 A conceptual synthesis: the warranted-acquisition principle

The proposed organizing principle is *warranted acquisition*: a purchase is defensible when an identifiable and legitimate need has been translated into a proportionate specification, a contestable market decision, a justified full-cost commitment, an enforceable delivery arrangement and preserved evidence of actual performance and remedy. The sequence is recursive rather than mechanically linear. Supplier dialogue can reveal a better technical specification; contract experience can revise demand; an integrity red flag can suspend an apparently attractive evaluation. This synthesis integrates established scholarship rather than asserting the discovery of a new empirical law. Its usefulness lies in asking, at each gate, who makes the decision, which evidence warrants it, whose interests are exposed and what would trigger correction.

The principle does not infer that procedures are valuable solely because they are documented. A complete audit trail may preserve a defective specification, and a technically excellent purchase may lack legitimate authorization. Warrant is therefore relational: justification must connect the object acquired with the organizational end it actually serves, the opportunity cost of public or private resources, the evidentiary basis for distinguishing offers, and the foreseeable effects on persons not represented in the contract. This structure places procurement between instrumental rationality, which compares means, and institutional legitimacy, which disciplines the ends and authority of organizational action (Coase, 1937; OECD, 2015a).

For application, the procurement dossier should identify five distinct assertions: the requirement is necessary; the market test is fair and sufficiently informative; the choice is economically warranted within the disclosed method; the contract can be delivered and monitored; and affected parties have meaningful opportunities for review and correction. Their evidence differs. Requiring a single score to represent all five would substitute numerical convenience for sound professional judgment.

18.1 PROCUREMENT AND PURCHASING DEFINITIONS

18.1.1 The requisition-to-pay architecture and its decision gates

A standard requisition-to-pay sequence begins when an authorized user documents the needed outcome, quantity, expected consumption period, budget and permissible substitutes. Procurement validates the requirement and market approach; the competent official or committee approves sourcing; bids or quotations are solicited and assessed; contract or purchase order obligations are recorded; the receiving authority independently confirms the goods or service; accounts payable checks the relevant evidence; payment is approved; and performance information returns to the next planning cycle. Different institutions combine or separate these stages, but each transition should establish authority, evidence and a traceable decision. The process is often called procure-to-pay when it includes the ordering-to-payment system, while source-to-contract more specifically refers to upstream market engagement and contract formation (Monczka et al., 2020).

A requisition is not an order and an order is not proof of receipt. A purchase order expresses an authorized commitment under agreed terms; a delivery note is a claim of delivery; acceptance establishes that defined requirements were met, usually subject to warranties and later remedies; an invoice states the supplier's payment claim. A three-way match compares purchase order, receipt and invoice, with documented treatment of tolerances and exceptions. For services, the equivalent evidence may include an approved timesheet, milestone report, user acceptance test or quality assurance certificate. Paying solely because an invoice exists makes an enterprise vulnerable to fictitious services, duplicate invoices and unauthorized changes.

Figure 18.1. Controlled procurement decision and evidence flow



Note. Original conceptual synthesis informed by procurement process scholarship and COSO's internal-control approach (Monczka et al., 2020; COSO, 2013a). Arrows are sequential within each transaction, while performance feedback can reopen earlier gates.

18.1.2 Procurement governance, authority and accountability

Governance establishes the goals, policies, delegations, challenge rights and records through which procurement power is exercised. The requesting function owns the business need, specialists define safety and technical requirements, procurement designs and administers the competition, finance checks funding and full cost, legal counsel reviews contractual exposure, and receiving staff verify delivery. The board or accountable head sets tolerances for high-value or high-risk commitments and investigates exceptions. A small enterprise may lack separate departments, but can still use an independent second approver, periodic owner review and supplier confirmation to avoid complete self-certification.

The economic and legal validity of a purchase can be undermined by weak decision rights. An engineer who specifies a unique compatible component without disclosing a financial interest can turn technical expertise into supplier favoritism. Conversely, an official who forbids all supplier interaction in the name of integrity may produce a specification that excludes genuine alternatives or cannot be fulfilled. The better institutional approach permits documented, equal-access clarification and market research before the tender, while separating legitimate information gathering from unequal disclosure of confidential evaluation plans. Agency theory

explains the conflict between entrusted powers and personal incentives, but may understate professional norms and the capacity of relational trust to support responsible conduct (Jensen & Meckling, 1976; OECD, 2015a).

18.1.3 Procurement objectives and trade-offs

Traditional procurement has been judged by the familiar 'right' item, quantity, condition, source, time and price. These are useful operational criteria but incomplete when carbon emissions, labor abuses, cyber exposures or supplier insolvency are material. An enterprise needs a hierarchy of constraints rather than assuming all goals can be compensated through an averaged score. Legal eligibility, safety and minimum functional capability should normally operate as non-negotiable gates. Among qualified alternatives, economic contribution, service continuity, delivery, innovation and life-cycle impacts can be evaluated through transparent weights, sensitivity tests and explicit managerial judgment. This distinction between eligibility and ranking prevents a cheap but unlawful bid from 'winning' by numerical compensation.

The trade-offs are not symmetrical. A buyer can legitimately sacrifice a small price advantage for verified warranty coverage or improved repairability, but cannot ordinarily trade away an essential safety standard merely because the offered discount is large. Equally, a locally preferred supplier should not be described as more resilient without investigating its upstream dependency, financial capacity and enforceable delivery arrangements. A procurement strategy should therefore distinguish hard constraints, continuously valued attributes and residual uncertainties that require informed decision rather than arbitrary weighting.

Organizational objectives also vary by financing and mission. A cooperative may prioritize member access and long-run local capability, a hospital may treat continuity of critical supplies as a stringent service requirement, and a manufacturing company may rank downtime exposure above unit-price variation. These differences do not excuse undisclosed post hoc criteria. Instead, they require a legitimate authority to establish material priorities at the planning stage, explain their connection with the enterprise purpose and preserve evidence for later revision.

18.2 SPEND AND DEMAND ANALYSIS

18.2.1 Spend visibility, taxonomy and source-data reliability

Spend analysis reconstructs what an organization bought, from whom, for which cost centers, at what contracted and paid prices, over which period and against which internal and supplier identifiers. Its evidentiary unit is usually the invoice line or purchase-order line, not merely a general-ledger total. Common sources include enterprise resource planning systems, purchase orders, invoices, expense claims, payment files, corporate cards and contract registers. Cleaning is necessary because the same supplier may appear under multiple trading names, different suppliers may share an agent, taxes may be inconsistently included, and identical product categories may be coded differently. Missing records are themselves an analytical finding, not a reason to fabricate completeness.

A useful classification distinguishes direct inputs incorporated into offerings, indirect operating purchases, capital equipment, services and public works. Category hierarchies must be stable enough to reveal aggregation but specific enough to preserve technical requirements. For example, combining laboratory reagents, drinking water and software under 'general supplies' hides wildly different risk profiles. A repeatable spend cube connects category, supplier, business unit, period, currency and geographic origin. Procurement should document classification rules, currency-conversion date, returns, rebates and whether expenditure represents commitments or cash payments. Identical currency totals do not imply comparable purchasing power or equivalent service levels.

18.2.2 Pareto diagnostics, leakage and demand consolidation

ABC analysis ranks categories or suppliers by expenditure. The 80/20 heuristic can direct attention to high-spend categories, but its ratio is not an empirically guaranteed distribution and should never define the sole risk threshold. A low-spend chemical, unique equipment seal or security-system component can halt a high-value operation. Procurement therefore overlays expenditure with criticality, substitutability, lead time and consequences of failure. Contract leakage is expenditure made outside valid negotiated arrangements or without approved authority; it is not automatically recoverable 'savings', because purchases may respond to shortages or an unsuitable contract specification.

Demand aggregation can secure economies of scale, reduce duplicated tender work and improve data consistency. However, consolidated awards may exclude capable microenterprises unable to finance national coverage or absorb delayed payments. The appropriate response may be lots, framework agreements, regional delivery schedules, consortium participation or supplier-development measures, provided these are consistent with applicable law and competition rules. The economic trade-off is between scale benefits and the costs of supplier concentration, inventory, financing and exclusion. The specification process should record current consumption, avoidable usage, seasonality, substitutions, disposal and service-demand changes before volumes are locked into a contract.

Table 18.1. Spend-intelligence diagnostic for a procurement category

Test	Evidence required	Failure risk	Appropriate action
Identity and completeness	Invoice lines reconciled to ledger and vendors	Duplicate or missing supplier spend	Normalize vendor IDs and reconcile totals
Demand legitimacy	Forecast, historic use, user justification	Overbuying or artificial demand	Test volumes, alternatives and demand reduction
Contract compliance	Contract ID, rate, term and change approvals	Uncontrolled leakage and unauthorized variation	Verify root causes; correct contract or conduct
Supply exposure	Lead times, alternatives, origin, financial health	Single-source interruption	Qualify contingencies, avoid automatic consolidation
Social and ecological impact	Risk-screened source, credible evidence	Low-priced harm externalized to others	Apply proportionate due diligence and remediation

Note. Original diagnostic instrument; analytical concepts are drawn from category management, transaction-cost and responsible-business scholarship (Kraljic, 1983; Williamson, 1985; OECD, 2023b).

18.2.3 Strategic category management

Category management treats families of requirements as linked decisions with shared market knowledge, rather than isolated requisitions. The category manager maintains a demand forecast, stakeholder map, sourcing objectives, contracts, market intelligence, renewal calendar, supplier development plan and risk indicators. IT equipment may require cybersecurity assurance, spare parts and software support; energy acquisition may require tariff and emissions analysis; outsourced cleaning needs workforce-safety and wage safeguards. Category decisions are best revisited at meaningful triggers, such as changing technology, recurrent exceptions, new suppliers or an altered user need, rather than only upon contract expiry.

The category plan should be analytically explicit about both the purchasing unit and the demand-generating activity. A higher classroom-computer budget, for example, may reflect increased enrolment, replacement of unusable units, more stringent accessibility requirements or avoidable duplication. Treating all four as an identical purchasing trend obscures the mechanism that managers should address. A defensible plan

distinguishes the baseline quantity from its causal drivers, checks whether a substitute or repair achieves the required learning outcome, and records the opportunity cost of acquiring new assets.

Category governance also requires a periodic review of bargaining and dependency. Procurement may identify the supplier and market structure, but finance must verify payment capability, the technical unit must determine acceptable substitutes, and end users must validate the functional need. Where these interests conflict, the decision record should identify the authorized trade-off and its testable conditions. A category strategy is therefore a governed hypothesis about how a class of external resources will sustain organizational capability, not simply a list of preferred vendors.

18.3 MAKE-OR-BUY AND SOURCING DECISIONS

18.3.1 Transaction costs and organizational boundaries

Coase (1937) asked why activity is organized through firms when markets can coordinate by prices. Williamson (1985) subsequently emphasized uncertainty, bounded rationality, opportunism, asset specificity and transaction frequency as determinants of governance. Applied to procurement, the central question is not whether an external supplier quotes less than internal production cost, but whether contracting, monitoring, adaptation, switching and potential hold-up are cheaper or more capable than coordinated internal provision. A buyer may outsource routine facilities maintenance while retaining control of proprietary calibration because a failure would compromise core knowledge. Yet integration can create bureaucratic inefficiency, obsolete competencies or a lack of competitive comparison.

Transaction-cost analysis is most useful when a category entails specific investment. If a supplier installs dedicated tooling usable only for one buyer, the relationship can create quasi-rents and renegotiation exposure. Safeguards include credible minimum-volume commitments, shared investment clauses, termination compensation and alternative qualification. Treating every risk as evidence for insourcing would be mistaken: the buyer may not possess the expertise, capital or scale to perform the activity safely. The relational view instead identifies gains created between firms through complementary capabilities, relation-specific assets, joint learning and governance (Dyer & Singh, 1998). These explanations conflict where intensive collaboration enhances value but increases dependency; the managerial task is to govern that contradiction rather than declare one theory universally superior.

18.3.2 Resource and capability logic

Make-or-buy analysis must ask which capabilities are strategically valuable, hard to imitate, safety critical or necessary for retaining decision autonomy. Outsourcing cafeteria operations may be sensible for a university; outsourcing the entire capacity to verify academic accessibility and software-security compliance is more questionable if the institution loses the ability to challenge its contractor. Conversely, a small manufacturer with irregular equipment failure may obtain higher reliability from a specialist repair provider than from an expensive in-house department. Capability retention can be modular: retain requirements definition, risk ownership and acceptance, while contracting specialist implementation. This approach preserves informed buyer control without assuming that every technical activity should be performed internally.

The analytical unit is the capability system rather than the invoice item. A university purchasing a cloud service may outsource hosting, routine upgrades and monitoring while remaining responsible for data classification, educational accessibility and the lawful interpretation of assessment records. If it loses the competence to challenge service reports or plan a secure exit, an initially economical contract can convert operational savings into long-term dependence. The retained capability to specify, verify and switch is itself part of the sourcing cost.

An adequate make-or-buy comparison therefore includes at least an internal-performance counterfactual, a credible external-market option, transition and governance expenditures, and the consequences of failure under

plausible stresses. This need not imply elaborate numerical models where data are scarce. Clear qualitative thresholds concerning safety, confidentiality, specialist competence and strategic autonomy can be more defensible than assigning invented probabilities to events that have not been estimated. Resource-based reasoning and transaction-cost analysis are most useful when tested against one another, because a valuable internal capability may also be costly to maintain (Williamson, 1985; Dyer & Singh, 1998).

18.3.3 Total cost of ownership and discounted lifecycle valuation

Total cost of ownership (TCO) includes acquisition expenditure and material costs of searching, contracting, transporting, installing, operating, maintaining, financing, downtime, returning and disposing of an offering, net of any defensibly recoverable residual value. The relevant boundary must be declared. An annual service contract may include reliability guarantees, while an equipment price may exclude power, licensing and repairs. Discounting is appropriate when alternatives distribute cash flows differently over time; financing and tax treatment require care to avoid double counting. For constant annual operating cost C, initial price P, residual value R in year n and discount rate r, a simplified present-cost model is: $PV(TCO) = P + \Sigma_{t=1}^{n} [C_t/(1+r)^t] - R/(1+r)^n$. This is a decision model, not a standardized accounting number. When externality prices are unknown or ethically unacceptable as monetary substitutes, assess these impacts separately rather than inventing false precision.

An illustrative procurement compares machine A, purchase price RWF 18 million and annual maintenance and electricity of RWF 3 million, with machine B at RWF 21 million and annual costs of RWF 2 million. Assume a three-year life, zero salvage, identical outputs, risk and quality, end-year cash flows, and 10% discount rate. The annuity factor is $1/1.1 + 1/1.1^2 + 1/1.1^3 = 2.48685$. Present costs are $18 + 3(2.48685) =$ RWF 25.461 million for A and $21 + 2(2.48685) =$ RWF 25.974 million for B. Machine A is less costly by about RWF 0.513 million under these restricted assumptions, despite the higher recurring expenditure. If B prevents downtime worth more than RWF 0.513 million in present value, the comparison reverses. The analysis therefore requires verified operational assumptions and a scenario analysis, not simply a life-cycle arithmetic ranking.

18.3.4 Outsourcing hazards and governance design

Outsourcing contracts create exposure to hidden subcontracting, confidentiality breaches, unequal bargaining power, staff displacement, supplier lock-in, service deterioration and inadequate exit plans. Public value-for-money considerations may also make contract flexibility and audit access necessary even when private bargaining would favor confidentiality. Procurement should specify service outcomes, continuity duties, subcontractor oversight, intellectual-property and data access, orderly handover, dispute resolution, termination rights and responsibility for regulatory obligations. It should not prescribe detailed operational methods unnecessarily where supplier innovation can meet performance outcomes more effectively. The proportionate governance choice balances verification against the costs of intrusive monitoring.

The governance design should also distinguish subcontracting arrangements that are economically essential from unauthorized transfers of responsibility. In a maintenance contract, an accredited external specialist may provide capabilities that the prime supplier lacks. The relevant question is whether the buyer knows the responsible party, controls site and data access, verifies qualifications and retains recourse if performance fails. Prohibiting all subcontracting can reduce competition, whereas allowing an unrestricted chain of intermediaries can make warranty, labor and information-security obligations practically unenforceable.

Exit conditions deserve the same care as entry. Contract managers should identify the records, spare parts, documentation, access credentials and residual intellectual-property rights needed to transition without interrupting core services. They should also verify whether suppliers have enough time and working capital to meet agreed milestones. A contract that appears to transfer every risk to a financially weak supplier may increase the buyer's actual probability of failure. The distinction between legal wording and workable capability is central to responsible outsourcing.

18.4 SUPPLY MARKET ANALYSIS

18.4.1 Market structure, supplier concentration and information asymmetry

Supply markets differ in the number and independence of capable suppliers, entry barriers, input scarcity, geographic exposure, product standardization, switching cost, currency sensitivity and innovation. A tender with five submissions may still represent only one economic source when bidders rely on the same exclusive importer. Counting legal bidders is therefore insufficient. Procurement must identify upstream producers and authorized distributors where material, examine whether genuine alternatives exist, assess capacity and financial durability, and avoid making unsubstantiated claims about competition. Industrial-organization reasoning can clarify market power, but actual price competitiveness must be established from contestable quotations or credible benchmarks, not from market labels alone.

Information asymmetry operates in both directions. Buyers cannot fully observe quality, compliance or financial distress before award; suppliers may not know a buyer's true specifications or payment reliability. Effective market sounding reduces these gaps through publicly documented questions, demonstrations, transparent technical testing and reasonable information disclosure. Confidential information provided by one bidder should not be shared improperly, but clarification affecting common requirements should reach competitors on equivalent terms. Early engagement can improve specifications while creating bias if the incumbent effectively authors requirements that no rival can satisfy.

18.4.2 Purchasing portfolios and their limits

Kraljic (1983) organized purchasing categories by supply risk and profit impact. In the traditional two-by-two matrix, routine items warrant efficient transaction control; leverage items permit competitive aggregation where genuine alternatives exist; bottleneck items require continuity protection despite limited expenditure; and strategic items call for intensive market intelligence and relationship governance. The matrix is a starting hypothesis, not a universal rule. A category's position can change with technology, border restrictions, supplier investment or product redesign. Gelderman and van Weele (2003) documented persistent measurement and strategy problems, reminding analysts that seemingly objective risk-impact scores depend on chosen definitions and managerial judgment.

Table 18.2. Conditional sourcing logic from the purchasing portfolio

Category	Typical condition	Primary managerial question	Suitable response and caution
Routine	Low supply risk; modest value	Can transactions be simplified safely?	Catalogues or frameworks; retain controls against small repeated fraud
Leverage	Competitive suppliers; significant expenditure	Are bids genuinely substitutable?	Competitive sourcing and demand leverage; avoid destructive supplier pricing
Bottleneck	Restricted availability; limited expenditure	What would interruption cost?	Substitution engineering, qualified buffer or alternative; avoid complacency
Strategic	High impact and supply risk	Which combination sustains performance and autonomy?	Joint planning, safeguards and dual-source feasibility; monitor dependence

Note. Conceptual adaptation of Kraljic (1983) with measurement qualifications from Gelderman and van Weele (2003). Category positions must be justified from current evidence.

18.4.3 Market mapping in Rwanda and comparable African environments

Rwanda's official Integrated Business Enterprise Survey estimates 278,060 business enterprises for 2024 and reports that 241,354 (86.8%) as informal enterprises and 36,706 (13.2%) as formal enterprises, within the survey's non-agricultural scope and official classification (National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda [NISR], 2025f). These facts do not identify procurement-ready suppliers or prove that informal firms are unreliable. They do caution against systems that equate competence with possession of sophisticated digital records or historic contracts. Where the applicable legal regime permits, better market access may involve proportionate qualification, fair payment terms, multilingual information, supplier training, subdivision into functional lots and verifiable rather than merely voluminous documentation. In safety-critical procurement, reduced paperwork must not mean reduced proof of product safety.

Geography and regional integration introduce further distinctions. A distributor located in Kigali may be commercially responsive but import nearly all upstream components; an apparently regional alternative may face common border, foreign-exchange or manufacturer dependence. Supplier mapping should therefore distinguish the first contractual tier from the actual origin of critical inputs. Regional sourcing can increase options but introduces customs, standards recognition, payment, warranty and enforcement questions. These interfaces belong analytically to the sourcing decision here, while detailed border-logistics instruments are developed in Chapters 19 and 30.

The underlying IBES report identifies the 2024 enterprise frame as non-agricultural economic activities classified in ISIC sections B–S, excluding agriculture and certain public-administration or extraterritorial activities. Its formal/informal definition is not equivalent to a tendering register or a census of all potential suppliers. The report also identifies manufacturing capacity underutilization as a material issue, reinforcing the possibility that purchasing, specification and demand failures interact with productive resources rather than sitting in a separate administrative function (NISR, 2025f). Inferences about how many enterprises could meet a particular tender require procurement-category and eligibility evidence beyond national firm counts.

18.5 SUPPLIER EVALUATION AND SELECTION

18.5.1 Eligibility, qualification and comparative evaluation

Supplier selection is a constrained multi-criteria decision rather than an unqualified ranking of attractive proposals. Eligibility establishes whether participation meets relevant legal, financial, licensing and conflict requirements; qualification asks whether a supplier has the personnel, competence, capacity, track record and controls to fulfil the defined requirement; technical responsiveness establishes whether the proposed offering meets mandatory specifications; and evaluation ranks technically compliant, eligible offers using the previously disclosed method. Combining all four in one discretionary score creates opportunities to rescue a preferred but ineligible bidder or invent criteria after bids are opened. For an innovative solution, an outcome-based specification may be more suitable than a brand-specific description, provided mandatory safety, interoperability and accessibility requirements remain explicit.

Qualitative evidence requires the same skepticism as price data. A 'years in business' requirement can privilege incumbency without establishing relevant capability, while a website assertion of sustainable practices does not demonstrate labor conditions in subcontracted workshops. Evidence can include accredited test results, demonstrations, audited financial information proportionate to the risk, references verified by authorized contact, sampled quality records, formal certification where justified, and site assessments conducted on the same terms. Prequalification can reduce later evaluation burden but may suppress competition if requirements are disproportionate. The highest-scoring proposal is never automatically the most defensible purchase unless the scoring model, eligibility gates and real operating assumptions themselves withstand scrutiny.

18.5.2 Weighted scoring and compensability

A weighted additive model records criterion weights w_j summing to 1 and bidder performance scores s_ij on a declared common scale: S_i = Σ[j=1..m] w_j s_ij. It is transparent and easily audited, but assumes that performance differences are commensurable and that strength on one criterion can compensate for weakness on another. That assumption is often indefensible for legal eligibility, cybersecurity, essential safety or absolute delivery deadlines; such criteria should first be defined as pass/fail gates. Weight assignment should be completed before submissions are opened, based on decision consequences and authorized stakeholder input. The scale must describe observable quality levels rather than invite unconstrained examiner impressions.

A second limitation concerns correlated criteria. Assigning separate weights to 'delivery reliability', 'lead-time consistency' and 'on-time delivery' may triple-count one capability. A third concerns normalization: converting bid prices to a zero-to-ten score with an undocumented formula can change awards when a new outlier bid is added. A fourth is robustness: a small change in weights or reasonable scoring may reverse a close ranking. Analytical hierarchy process (AHP) and outranking methods can articulate complex preferences, but more complicated mathematics do not remove invalid input data or delegated responsibility. Handfield et al. (2002) illustrate AHP in environmental supplier assessment; Schramm et al. (2020), in a review of 82 studies, identify the compensation effect as an important concern in multicriteria approaches. These methods can clarify trade-offs, but no mathematical procedure resolves arbitrary thresholds, biased inputs or inappropriate ethical substitution.

18.5.3 The value-versus-risk frontier

Selection should distinguish the lowest evaluated compliant price from the least expected total cost and from the highest defensible public or organizational value. In a routine standardized acquisition, competitive price may dominate after minimum capability is verified. In specialized software or maintenance, migration, failure consequences and information security can outweigh initial discounts. When supplier performance is uncertain, expected cost can be expressed as bid price plus the probability-weighted cost of relevant failures, but probabilities must not be invented as empirical estimates. Scenario analysis is often preferable to pseudo-precise risk-adjusted scoring where the evidence is sparse. No mathematically appealing procurement solution is acceptable if it violates binding award rules or a previously disclosed evaluation method.

The frontier is especially important where outcomes are multidimensional and partly irreversible. An unsuitable medical device, compromised student-information system or hazardous chemical cannot be made safe by a lower evaluated price. The buyer should first establish the minimum performance envelope, then estimate the differential cost of alternatives that remain inside it. Where operational differences can be credibly monetized, discounted lifecycle comparisons help reveal whether an initial price premium prevents later expenditure. Where effects concern basic rights or uncertain severe harm, the appropriate response is an explicit constraint and mitigation requirement rather than a fictitious currency conversion.

Uncertainty should be addressed through thresholds and sensitivity. In a weighted decision, analysts can ask the magnitude of a legitimate pre-award weight or score difference that would reverse the supplier ordering, and whether the evidence supporting a leading score is reproducible. This identifies a decision that is robust to plausible differences in judgment as distinct from one that merely wins under a single arbitrary configuration. In public procurement, sensitivity analysis is a governance check on criteria design and reasoning; it is not permission to reweight after tender opening.

18.5.4 Contracting with supplier-development potential

An emerging supplier may not meet every desirable efficiency benchmark but can still supply reliably if development investments and risk controls are justified. Krause et al. (2007) relate supplier development, commitment, social capital and performance improvements, without proving that any single workshop universally raises quality. Buyer interventions can include shared quality planning, clearer specifications, forecast visibility, prompt payment and phased volume increases. These arrangements can strengthen local productive capacity, but buyers should avoid using supplier development as a pretext for undisclosed favorable treatment or indefinite dependence. Public awards must respect their governing competition and preference provisions; private procurement must preserve its own stated fairness and related-party constraints.

Supplier development presents a difficult distributive question. A powerful buyer may require expensive certification or technology investment while offering only short, unpredictable orders; the resulting costs are transferred to the supplier without a credible opportunity to recover them. A more defensible arrangement identifies the capability gap, agrees which party finances training or equipment, specifies milestones and verifies improvement through independent acceptance evidence. The programme should include a transparent exit path if objectives are not met and should not entrench a relationship whose performance remains inadequate.

In Rwanda, the relevance of this approach is conditioned by the large informal-enterprise segment documented by NISR (2025f). Formal status is material where required by procurement and tax law, but absence of a sophisticated tender portfolio is not equivalent to absence of skill. The analytic objective is to identify lawful, proportionate methods for assessing actual competence. Public buyers must preserve the equal-treatment and preference provisions that apply to the particular tender; private buyers should prevent supplier assistance from becoming a disguised related-party transfer.

18.6 TENDERING AND COMPETITIVE PROCEDURES

18.6.1 Procurement planning and the request for proposal

A defensible tender starts well before publication. The accountable user certifies the need and funding; procurement documents market conditions, procurement method, package design, delivery milestones and evaluation methodology; technical officers approve performance specifications; and the competent approval authority authorizes solicitation. A request for proposal (RFP) should clearly state the buyer, purpose, scope, deliverables, implementation schedule, mandatory thresholds, required technical and financial submission formats, clarification procedure, questions deadline, evaluation weights or method, contract conditions, bid validity, submission rules, confidentiality expectations, treatment of variants and method for communicating the decision. In public procurement, exact requirements are determined by the current law, regulations and authorized standard documents, not by this generic educational checklist.

The specification should be neutral unless compatibility or another objectively justified condition requires restriction. A brand-specific request can impede competition, yet an artificially generic technical specification may produce unusable outcomes. Functional requirements should be testable, with measured dimensions, tolerances, cybersecurity obligations, service levels or acceptance tests as relevant. In consulting, a detailed terms of reference must define expected outputs, competence requirements, assumptions and evaluation of methodology without rewarding jargon. Good tender design prevents later disputes by making both offer preparation and decision review possible using the same published information.

Table 18.3. Request-for-proposal completeness and audit checklist

RFP control field	Minimum documentary evidence	Review question
Need and authority	Approved requisition, budget, named owner	Is the request necessary, authorized and sufficiently funded?
Scope and acceptance	Measurable deliverables, tests, locations and dates	Can all bidders understand and price the same outcome?
Market access	Notice or invitation, rational packaging, clarification channel	Are capable bidders treated on equivalent terms?
Qualification and thresholds	Proportionate eligibility, conflict, capacity and compliance tests	Are pass/fail conditions published and justified?
Evaluation procedure	Preapproved weights, scoring anchors and financial formula	Can an independent reviewer reproduce the award?
Contract and remedies	Draft terms, warranty, variation, payment, security and dispute path	Can the buyer enforce an acceptable result?
Data and ethical safeguards	Confidentiality, privacy, labor and environmental provisions	Are material harms addressed without empty declarations?
Records and challenge	Minutes, timestamps, decision notices, applicable review route	Will the decision remain accountable after the award?

Note. Original template informed by OECD (2015a, 2025a), World Bank (2025b) and Rwanda Public Procurement Authority (RPPA, 2024b) guidance. It must be adapted to the mandatory rules of each jurisdiction.

18.6.2 Bid receipt, opening, clarification and award

The fairness of a tender depends partly on the defensibility of its information architecture. Submission deadlines must be equal, bids protected against premature access, evaluator identities and conflict declarations controlled, and clarifications logged. Clarification should resolve an ambiguity in an already submitted offer only to the extent legally permitted; it must not become unequal negotiation or an opportunity to replace a noncompliant bid after the deadline. Evaluation minutes should identify evidence, consensus or individual assessments, reasons for disqualification and treatment of arithmetic discrepancies. A recommendation is not an award until the authorized decision and any prescribed notifications, standstill, challenge or contract-formation steps are completed.

Competitive procedures are a means of discovering qualified alternatives and reducing discretionary favoritism; they are not an assurance of honest competition. The OECD (2025a) identifies cover bidding, bid suppression, rotation and market allocation as forms of collusion. Warning signs include repeated winners despite apparently competitive tenders, unusual bid similarities or suspicious withdrawals. Such patterns warrant confidential preservation of evidence and referral through competent channels, not untrained public accusations against individual suppliers. Pro-competitive tender design should avoid predictable restrictions or unnecessary disclosures that facilitate coordination among bidders while preserving lawful transparency.

18.6.3 Procedure choice under differentiated requirements

Open competition generally provides broad market access when requirements can be sufficiently specified and suppliers can be compared. Restricted procedures can be reasonable for specialized markets where law permits and selection is justified. Requests for quotations can be proportionate for lower-value standardized goods; multi-stage negotiation or competitive dialogue may address complex solutions under appropriate rules. Single-source and emergency procedures can be necessary where continuity or exclusivity is genuine, but urgency created by avoidable poor planning should not automatically excuse noncompetition. The choice of method is itself a governance decision with a documented legal basis, market justification and reviewable record.

In publicly financed development projects, donor or treaty conditions can also govern. The World Bank's September 2025 seventh-edition *Procurement Regulations for IPF Borrowers* establishes an identifiable international framework for projects within its scope, emphasizing risk-proportionate market approaches and 'fit for purpose' procurement design (World Bank, 2025b). These regulations do not override Rwandan domestic law for every purchase; their applicability depends on the financing arrangement and relevant legal instruments. The public procurement professional must therefore maintain a hierarchy of applicable requirements instead of copying an international template without checking the funding and jurisdiction.

18.7 CONTRACTING AND SUPPLIER RELATIONSHIPS

18.7.1 Contract architecture and allocation of risk

The contract translates a selection into enforceable promises. Its operative elements typically include parties and authority, statement of work, technical specifications, pricing and taxes, quantities, delivery or service milestones, inspection and acceptance, warranties, correction periods, service levels, payment, confidentiality, ownership of information and intellectual property, data handling, subcontracting conditions, performance security where justified, variation control, force majeure or other excusable events as defined by law, termination, dispute procedures and governing law. These terms need to be mutually coherent. A warranty with no accessible service provider, an uptime commitment with no measurement rule, or an unlimited 'penalty' without legal review may offer little usable protection.

Risk allocation should follow controllability and information, without treating the stronger party's bargaining power as moral entitlement. A supplier may reasonably control production quality but not a buyer's changing classroom schedule; the buyer may control site access but not a genuine upstream factory failure. Contracting cannot eliminate uncertainty, so the agreement should explain who must notify whom, what evidence is required, which corrective alternatives are permissible and which losses or extensions are recognized. Procurement management must avoid both habitual adversarialism and uncritical partnership rhetoric. The former invites litigation, hidden contingencies and withheld information; the latter may mask underperformance and incumbent advantage (Williamson, 1985; Dyer & Singh, 1998).

18.7.2 Service-level agreements and measurable acceptance

A service-level agreement (SLA) specifies observable service dimensions, thresholds, measurement, review periods, exclusions, remedies and escalation. For a managed IT contract, availability must identify the measurement window, planned maintenance exclusion and source of monitoring evidence; '99% uptime' without a denominator is ambiguous. For school equipment, acceptance can test the required operating system, accessibility functionality, warranty documentation, network integration and safe installation. For cleaning, square meters serviced is not equivalent to hygiene quality; inspection protocols should distinguish visible completion from the substantive service outcome. Remedies must be proportionate and enforceable, and persistent failure should trigger root-cause review rather than automatic payment withholding without contractual authority.

Table 18.4. Contract-execution responsibility and evidence instrument

Contract event	Accountable role	Primary evidence	Escalation trigger
Mobilization	Contract manager	Signed contract, implementation schedule, security and contacts	Failure to mobilize by agreed date
Delivery or milestone	User or technical acceptance officer	Test result, inspection or approved deliverable	Material nonconformity or missed critical milestone
Variation	Authorized contract signatory	Written variation and budget justification	Scope, price or time changes beyond authority
Invoice and payment	Finance/payables reviewer	Invoice, PO or contract and acceptance record	Duplicate, mismatch or overdue justified payment
Supplier review	Procurement/category manager	Scorecard, incidents and corrective action	Repeated failure, dependency or safety incident
Closeout or exit	Contract manager and owner	Warranties, asset handover, final reconciliation and access revocation	Incomplete transition or unresolved liability

Note. Original practical instrument, drawing on transaction governance and internal-control principles (Williamson, 1985; COSO, 2013a).

Measurement design can materially change the apparent quality of the same contract. Suppose a service platform is observed for a hypothetical 30-day period of 720 hours, of which 12 hours of scheduled maintenance are validly excluded by the contract. A 99.5% availability threshold then allows no more than $0.005 \times 708 = 3.54$ hours of qualifying downtime. If an operator excludes an additional eight hours without contractual authority, reported availability becomes artificially favorable. The denominator, event definitions and independent logging mechanism are therefore elements of the commercial bargain, not minor technical annexes.

Acceptance should also distinguish initial conformity from sustained performance. A device may pass installation testing but fail repeatedly after deployment; a short inspection is not proof that warranty promises have been fulfilled. The contract manager should specify evidence retention, incident categorization, cure periods, user reporting and corrective action. For safety-critical requirements, escalation must allow timely containment even before financial responsibility is finally resolved.

18.7.3 Negotiation, influence and relational governance

Negotiation is most defensible when the buyer has already defined the economic and technical value of alternatives and knows which dimensions can legitimately change. Price should not be bargained independently of quality, risk, intellectual property, warranty, delivery, liquidity and the effect of payment terms on a supplier's working capital. In repetitive private-sector sourcing, joint forecasting and gain-sharing may create value beyond one-time discounts; in a regulated public tender, post-submission negotiation may be limited or prohibited except under designated procedures. The procurement team must therefore distinguish commercial possibilities from lawful discretion.

Relational governance develops through credible communication, reciprocal performance, fair handling of disputes and long-term learning. Dyer and Singh (1998) explain how knowledge-sharing routines and complementary assets may produce relationship-specific advantage. Yet relationship duration can also generate complacency, dependence and barriers to entry. The mature contract-management function maintains independent market intelligence, rotates evaluators where appropriate, reviews prices and alternatives against performance, and avoids equating longstanding familiarity with proven integrity. Supplier relationship management is thus a governed complement to competition, not an exemption from it.

18.8 PROCUREMENT PROCESS CONTROLS

18.8.1 Segregation of duties, approvals and exception governance

Procurement control is the design of reasonable assurance over authorization, recorded obligations, actual receipt, correct payment and compliant conduct. The Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO, 2013a) integrated framework treats controls as an organization-wide system involving control environment, risk assessment, activities, information and monitoring. A purchasing control structure should prevent the same individual from independently inventing the need, selecting a supplier, confirming receipt and authorizing payment. Perfect separation is unrealistic in small entities, but a second-person review, bank verification, exception report and periodic independent reconciliation can meaningfully reduce exposure. Control intensity should reflect transaction size, complexity, irreversibility and fraud opportunity, rather than imposing one administrative burden on all purchases.

Approvals ought to be linked to delegated financial limits and substantive decision rights, not a ritual collection of signatures. Split purchases around approval thresholds, sequential emergency purchases to the same supplier, revised purchase orders after delivery and retrospective authorizations are signals requiring explanation. The purpose of an exception process is to preserve continuity with explicit accountability, not to transform an unauthorized transaction into a compliant one by adding signatures after the fact. Every material exception needs its triggering event, authorized basis, mitigating action, independent review and closure evidence.

18.8.2 Conflicts of interest, beneficial influence and procurement misconduct

A conflict of interest exists when a procurement decision maker's personal, financial or relational interests could improperly influence entrusted judgment, even before actual corruption is proved. A relative employed by a bidder, ownership through another entity, an offered gift or consultancy relationship may require declaration, recusal, reassignment or independent assessment depending on applicable rules. A disclosure is not always a cure: if the interested person defines the scoring criteria, withdrawal only from the final committee may be too late. The timing, substantive control and documentation of mitigation determine whether the conflict has been managed.

Misconduct also includes kickbacks, confidential information leakage, collusive tendering, supplier substitution after award, false acceptance and duplicate or fictitious invoices. Fraud red flags should guide further verification, not constitute proof of individual guilt. A fair response protects records, limits unnecessary circulation of allegations, preserves the rights of those implicated and uses competent investigative and remedial channels. Procurement staff should have accessible reporting and anti-retaliation safeguards; suppliers should have lawful review routes. Neither ethics declarations nor software alerts are substitutes for independent institutional follow-through (OECD, 2015a, 2025a).

18.8.3 Transaction analytics as an assurance technique

Digital controls can detect duplicate invoice numbers, unusual price variation, repeated awards near thresholds, missing receipts, weekend approvals, rapid contract variations and supplier banking-detail changes. The interpretation is conditional: duplicate references may arise from supplier numbering practices, bank changes may be legitimate, and repeated awards may reflect genuine capacity constraints. Useful analytics report denominator, detection rule, false-positive burden, investigation outcome and corrective action. An automated high-risk label must be reviewed by persons authorized to understand context and handle sensitive data. Performance targets should reward justified prevention and correction, not the mere number of suspected cases produced.

To evaluate anomaly detection fairly, reviewers should maintain an adjudication dataset that records alerts examined, confirmed exceptions, false positives, unreviewed cases and their costs. In a deliberately constructed example, 100 alerts produce 12 substantiated problems after documented review. The observed positive

predictive value is 12/100 = 12% among reviewed alerts. This does not measure the false-negative rate because the number of genuine problems outside the flagged population is unknown. An apparently impressive detection model can therefore generate administrative workload without demonstrating adequate coverage.

Controls should be tested for consequence rather than only technical accuracy. An alert that stops a legitimate urgent purchase may carry serious service costs, while a rule that fails to detect a fictitious supplier may expose the institution to fraud. Thresholds require category-specific calibration, lawful handling of personal and commercial data, an appeal or correction process, and independent review of unintended patterns. AI-assisted systems introduce additional concerns because historical evaluation data may encode prior bias and outputs may be difficult to explain. Automation should make professional responsibility more traceable, not obscure it.

18.9 PUBLIC VERSUS PRIVATE PROCUREMENT

18.9.1 Different accountability structures and common economic problems

Private enterprises normally acquire inputs for commercial or mission-related performance under corporate, contractual, competition, employment and other applicable law. Their procurement departments may have greater latitude to negotiate, retain confidential supplier information or form strategic partnerships, though owners, lenders and stakeholders can impose reporting and integrity obligations. Public procuring entities spend entrusted funds in pursuit of legally designated public purposes and must follow statutory methods, transparency, accountability, contestability, remedies and budget controls. They frequently serve multiple beneficiaries who are not equivalent to paying customers. For both sectors, the underlying need, opportunity cost, quality, supplier capability and contractual enforcement remain real; the authorized objectives and procedural constraints differ.

Public procurement ought not be understood as mechanically purchasing from the lowest bidder regardless of cost consequences. Conversely, a vague appeal to 'best value' cannot justify altering published criteria or bypassing competition. Public value includes public-service reliability, defensible access, lawful stewardship and, where authorized, proportionate environmental and social objectives. The mix must be operationalized ex ante, with auditability and consistency. Private buyers also face real ethical responsibilities and may voluntarily adopt public-style competitive safeguards for high-value related-party transactions. Tadelis (2012) develops the consequential distinction between relatively complete, standardized specifications and complex projects requiring adaptation. His argument supports differentiated contract-design analysis, not an unrestricted entitlement to negotiate outside statutory procedures.

18.9.2 Rwanda's currently governing legal and institutional context

On the official legal materials consulted through 2 November 2026, Rwanda's central public-procurement statute is Law No. 031/2022 of 21 November 2022 governing public procurement, published in the Special Official Gazette of 22 November 2022. It repealed the earlier Law No. 62/2018. Ministerial Order No. 001/23/10/TC of 10 October 2023 establishes implementing regulations, and RPPA has issued guidance clarifying key provisions. Ministerial Order No. 001/26/10/TC of 13 February 2026 addresses modalities for public tenders related to innovation. Accordingly, treating the superseded 2018 statute as current would be a material legal error (Republic of Rwanda, 2022b, 2023f, 2026b; RPPA, 2024b). Exact applicability, thresholds and procedural deadlines must always be confirmed from the authoritative instruments and current notices, rather than copied from historical manuals.

The Rwanda Public Procurement Authority develops guidance, monitoring and oversight functions, including scrutiny of market research, procurement plans, noncompetitive procedures, contract changes and compliance; UMUCYO is the country's electronic public-procurement system (RPPA, n.d.-b). A portal can improve traceability and participation while still depending on sound specifications, user competence, connectivity and substantive oversight. The formal availability of electronic records is not evidence that every procurement was

competitive or that all suppliers had equitable practical access. A legally compliant award also requires sound contract execution, asset receipt, service results and payment discipline, which a published bid notice alone cannot prove.

18.9.3 Rwanda's 2024 sustainable procurement policy and 2026 reform debate

Rwanda's Cabinet approved a Sustainable Public Procurement Policy Framework on 18 October 2024. RPPA describes its ambition to incorporate economic, social and environmental criteria and life-cycle assessment into purchasing decisions, including local enterprise development (RPPA, 2024b). Policy approval and procurement-law implementation are analytically different events. On 12 February 2026, Parliament reported a Public Accounts Committee review noting challenges including delayed implementing regulations, project preparation problems and frequent contract amendments. On 2 April 2026, Parliament called for a revision of Law No. 031/2022, specifically identifying an alignment gap between the sustainable procurement framework and the law, local-preference and implementation concerns, and outdated standard bidding documents (Parliament of Rwanda, 2026b, 2026a). These communications document parliamentary criticism and proposed reform; they do not establish that an amendment had already come into force. An accurate legal analysis must avoid treating reform demands as operative entitlements for bidders.

The institutional implications are consequential. Sustainable procurement requires a legally competent method for converting ecological, workforce and local-development objectives into transparent specifications and award criteria. Without a regulatory pathway, officials may face incentives either to ignore policy objectives or to apply them inconsistently. Conversely, overambitious documentary demands could exclude smaller firms without materially improving sustainability. Reform should be assessed by the clarity, contestability, implementation cost and actual results of approved criteria, not merely by the presence of 'green' language in a tender.

18.9.4 International comparison: OECD and World Bank procurement disciplines

The OECD's 2015 Recommendation on Public Procurement articulates an integrated governance approach encompassing transparency, integrity, access, efficiency, electronic procurement, capacity, evaluation, risk, accountability and integration with public finance. Its 2025 bid-rigging guidelines develop tender-design and detection practices against collusion (OECD, 2015a, 2025a). The World Bank's September 2025 procurement regulations govern their specified investment-project-financing operations and articulate a structured, risk-based project-procurement approach (World Bank, 2025b). These frameworks are influential reference points but should not be presented as direct Rwandan domestic statutes or as proof that one identical design works in every market.

The transferable intellectual lesson is disciplined proportionality. Procurement rules should support competitive access while ensuring the award process fits the technical risk and public purpose. However, international procedures can assume institutional capacity, reliable company information, documented prior contracts and digital connectivity that smaller local suppliers may lack. Comparative learning therefore asks not 'which country has the most elaborate tender system?' but 'which safeguards demonstrably protect fair opportunity, value and accountable execution at feasible administrative cost?'. The unresolved empirical question is how to identify these effects without confounding regulation with public-administration resources and economic structure.

The seventh edition of the World Bank regulations is also a useful example of changing institutional priorities rather than a timeless benchmark: its 2025 revision includes requirements concerning local labor participation in relevant internationally competitive works contracts, within its specified scope (World Bank, 2025b). This illustrates how procurement governance can incorporate social participation through precise conditions, but it also underscores why a Rwandan public buyer must determine whether a given financing and contract arrangement actually triggers the requirement. The same phrase, local participation, cannot be assumed to carry

identical legal effects across a national-policy statement, donor-financed works contract and private supplier agreement.

18.10 DIGITAL PROCUREMENT

18.10.1 Transaction systems, electronic sourcing and data architecture

Electronic procurement comprises digital tools used to plan requirements, identify suppliers, solicit and compare bids, issue orders, execute agreements, monitor receipts and process invoices. An e-sourcing tool supports market events and evaluation; an e-procurement or procure-to-pay platform supports operational purchase approvals and transactions; a contract lifecycle system manages negotiated obligations, expiries and variations; and supplier portals exchange qualifications and performance data. Such distinctions matter because installing an online bid portal does not automatically integrate approvals with the financial ledger or ensure that acceptance evidence reaches accounts payable. Data governance requires common supplier identifiers, role-based access, procurement-category codes, event logs, secure integration with financial systems and documented retention and deletion rules.

Rwanda's UMUCYO platform illustrates a concrete public-sector commitment to electronic tender administration (RPPA, n.d.-b). Its institutional importance lies partly in making stages and interactions recordable rather than wholly reliant on paper. Nonetheless, actual transparency depends on equal supplier access, the integrity of entered data, independent scrutiny of evaluations and functioning review channels. Digital traceability can expose an irregular sequence; it cannot determine by itself whether an engineering requirement was deliberately biased or whether promised equipment performs safely. Accessibility matters as well: firms facing connectivity limits, unfamiliar tender formats or financial constraints can be excluded by burdensome technical requirements even when the portal is nominally open.

18.10.2 Automation, machine learning and generative AI

Automation can classify expenditure, check required bid fields, detect invoice anomalies and route approvals against policy. Predictive analytics can flag supplier distress or demand patterns; generative AI may summarize proposals, draft specifications or suggest contractual terms. These are different kinds of assistance. A rule-based duplicate invoice check can be directly validated against records, while a generative model may invent a compliance claim, misread a contract exclusion or implicitly favor wording associated with incumbent providers. Models trained on past awards may reproduce historic exclusion and collusion patterns. A procurement professional must therefore retain authority over eligibility, evaluation, discretionary trade-offs and binding commitments.

Tabassi's (2023) voluntary National Institute of Standards and Technology AI Risk Management Framework distinguishes governance, mapping, measurement and management of AI risks. Applied to procurement, a sensible decision protocol documents the model's purpose, source-data rights, information classifications, validation tests, privacy measures, explainability for affected bidders, audit logs, human review and procedures for challenge. Confidential bids should not be uploaded to an uncontrolled external AI service. An AI-generated scoring rationale should never replace evidence actually supplied by a bidder or silently introduce an unpublished criterion. In a regulated tender, even an apparently objective algorithm can be procedurally invalid when its weighting, data sources or error rates were not incorporated into the lawful award design.

18.10.3 Cybersecurity, continuity and vendor-platform dependence

Digital procurement expands the attack surface through supplier credentials, email instructions, invoice attachments, payment details and integration with banking systems. Common threats include business-email compromise, impersonated bank-detail changes, altered purchase orders, credential theft, fraudulent supplier onboarding and ransomware affecting contract records. Controls include secure identity verification, multifactor authentication, dual confirmation of bank changes through an independently known channel, least-privilege access, encrypted transfer of confidential bids, backup and recovery testing, supplier cybersecurity due diligence and alerts for anomalous modifications. System administrators must not be able to alter closed award records without monitored authorization. A business-continuity procedure should specify how urgent lawful procurement proceeds if the platform is unavailable and how resulting transactions are later reconciled.

The choice between a comprehensive procurement platform and modest tools also requires lifecycle economics. Subscription, configuration, integration, training, data migration, supplier onboarding, change management and future switching costs can exceed the headline software fee. For small firms, standard templates and careful financial reconciliation may produce more benefit than complex automation. Conversely, fragmented messaging and spreadsheets may become unsafe as volume, delegated authority and regulatory complexity increase. Digital investment should follow the decision-control problem and organizational capability, not technological fashion.

18.11 RESPONSIBLE SOURCING

18.11.1 Responsibility beyond the first-tier contract

Responsible sourcing seeks to prevent or address material adverse impacts of acquisition decisions on workers, customers, communities and natural systems, while maintaining legitimate enterprise and public purposes. The OECD Guidelines for Multinational Enterprises on Responsible Business Conduct (2023) address risk-based due diligence across human rights, labor, environmental performance, corruption and technology. The UN Guiding Principles on Business and Human Rights establish expectations concerning state protection, enterprise respect and access to remedy (Ruggie, 2011). The ILO's 1998 Declaration, amended in 2022, identifies five fundamental principles and rights at work, including a safe and healthy working environment (ILO, 2022a; OECD, 2023b). These sources have different authority and applicability; a voluntary guidance document must not be described as a universally binding domestic statute.

Supplier declarations alone are insufficient. Due diligence involves identifying salient harms, prioritizing severity and likelihood, considering the buyer's involvement or leverage, preventing or mitigating impacts, tracking outcomes, communicating responsibly and enabling remedy where appropriate. For agricultural procurement, material questions can include safe chemical handling, land tenure, wage practices, forced or child labor and climate exposure. For construction, subcontracting and occupational safety may be central; for electronic equipment, worker conditions, mineral sourcing, energy efficiency and responsible disposal are relevant. Direct suppliers may not know every upstream tier, but this uncertainty calls for graduated inquiry and transparent boundaries rather than fabricated assurances of complete traceability.

18.11.2 Life-cycle costing, environmental evidence and green claims

ISO 20400:2017 provides guidance for integrating sustainability into procurement and remained published and confirmed in its 2023 review (International Organization for Standardization [ISO], 2017b). It is guidance, not an all-purpose certification that a product is sustainable. Life-cycle reasoning examines acquisition, use, repair, energy and water consumption, consumables and end-of-life handling, while acknowledging uncertain data and context-specific trade-offs. An energy-efficient device imported through a carbon-intensive route may still have lower total life-cycle impacts than a less efficient local alternative, or may not; the result depends on measured electricity mix, useful life, repair rates, transport and disposal. Assertions such as 'eco-friendly' or 'carbon neutral' need a defined boundary, method and credible verification. Kozuch et al. (2024) report positive practice–performance relationships in a meta-analysis of 22 empirical studies of green procurement, but the evidence does not establish that every individual acquisition has a positive financial return or that observational associations eliminate selection and reporting biases.

Sustainable criteria can be designed as minimum technical thresholds, separately disclosed award criteria, performance clauses or contract-development requirements depending on governing law. Setting unverifiable aspirational conditions may encourage polished but empty proposals. A more defensible approach requests specified evidence, applies materiality tests, assesses small-supplier feasibility and monitors post-award performance. The buyer should also examine its own practices: unrealistic lead times, last-minute design changes and chronic late payment may make compliance difficult while shifting hidden costs to the supplier's workers (Carter & Rogers, 2008; OECD, 2023b).

18.11.3 Local content, small-enterprise access and fair supplier treatment

Local sourcing can strengthen domestic productive capabilities, shorten some supply relationships and provide economic participation, but these are conditional possibilities, not guaranteed outcomes. A local distributor may resell imported materials, and a distant supplier may employ local maintenance and logistics services. The proper policy question is which legitimately authorized local-value criterion can be defined, verified and enforced without violating procurement law or concealing superior alternatives. In Rwanda, the 2026 parliamentary debate explicitly identified implementation gaps around local preference and the alignment of sustainable procurement policy with current law (Parliament of Rwanda, 2026a). It would therefore be misleading to assume that all desired local-content preferences are already operationally authorized in every tender.

For small and informal enterprises, the challenge is balancing market inclusion with performance assurance. Financial guarantees, historic-turnover requirements, complex portal entry and payment delays can exclude capable providers. Equitable procurement can explore proportionate lots, clear specifications, accessible clarification, lawful alternative guarantees, prompt payment, skills support and objective quality testing. The goal is not to waive safety, encourage nominal bidding or allocate contracts regardless of performance. It is to remove barriers that do not meaningfully predict performance while retaining genuinely necessary protections. Supplier development is most defensible when outcomes and cost-sharing are explicit and performance can be evaluated independently (Krause et al., 2007).

18.11.4 Ethical tensions and the limits of buyer leverage

Supplier responsibility is not exhausted by punitive audits or termination. A buyer may uncover serious worker-safety concerns at an important supplier. Immediate disengagement might stop the buyer's contribution to harm, but can also jeopardize workers' livelihoods if no remediation pathway is considered. Conversely, continued purchasing without credible corrective action can perpetuate serious abuse. The governing judgment involves severity, immediacy, the buyer's involvement, available leverage, the feasibility of remediation and legal obligations. A documented escalation plan should address time-bound improvements, independent verification, worker participation and circumstances requiring suspension or termination. Claims of ethical procurement require outcomes and remedy, not simply a supplier code of conduct.

This problem is not settled by a purely consequentialist calculation of expected monetary loss. Serious violations of bodily integrity or freedom from forced labor have a normative significance that a buyer cannot legitimately offset by a small unit-price advantage. Yet a rigid rule of immediate disengagement can deprive affected workers of income and eliminate the buyer's leverage to support remedy. Responsible judgment therefore requires a sequence of inquiries: identify the severity and immediacy of harm, establish what the buyer caused or contributed to, consult affected workers where safely possible, evaluate credible remediation, and specify observable conditions for continued engagement or withdrawal (Ruggie, 2011; OECD, 2023b).

Operational consistency matters. An ethical supplier clause may have little practical force when purchasing managers impose unachievable deadlines or routinely delay payment. Buyers should examine the pressures created by their own forecasts, specifications and price negotiations before attributing all deficiencies to the supplier. The objective is a remedy-oriented account of responsibility in which documented corrective outcomes, rather than certificates or public declarations alone, can support a claim of improvement.

18.12 PROCUREMENT PERFORMANCE AND RESILIENCE

18.12.1 Why purchase-price savings are an incomplete performance measure

Procurement dashboards commonly report negotiated savings relative to a baseline. Such figures can be informative but are vulnerable to inflation of initial estimates, shifts in specifications, counting price reductions on quantities never purchased, changes in exchange rates or double counting of benefits already included in budgets. *Realized* savings should be reconciled to actual comparable purchases, contractual quality and financial reporting. *Cost avoidance* concerns a justified comparison against a credible expected increase; it should not be automatically represented as cash saved. An efficient sourcing event that leads to unusable equipment, stockouts or supplier insolvency is not evidence of enterprise improvement.

A balanced performance system combines cost and realized value with service reliability, product conformity, delivery timeliness, competition quality, procurement cycle time, contract compliance, supplier continuity, integrity exceptions, timely payment and material sustainability outcomes. Each measure requires an owner, numerator, denominator, time period, data source, segmentation and interpretation limit. Delivery-on-time rate can be defined as accepted deliveries by the contractually due date divided by deliveries due in the period; in-full performance is a different construct. 'Supplier diversity' can measure participation, award distribution or value paid, which should not be conflated. A falling audit-flag count may signal improvement or simply weaker detection.

Table 18.5. Procurement performance scorecard and methodological cautions

Performance dimension	Operational indicator	Interpretation boundary
Economic value	Comparable realized net saving; lifecycle cost variance	Must reconcile quantity, scope, inflation and quality
Timeliness	Accepted orders on time / orders due	Define delays, tolerance, partial deliveries and exclusions
Quality	Accepted units or milestones / inspected units or milestones	Define defects, severity and post-acceptance warranty claims
Competition	Eligible responsive bidders per competitive event	Multiple legal bidders may share an upstream source
Contract discipline	Approved and supported contract variations / all variations	A zero-variation target may induce concealment
Integrity	Material allegations substantiated and remediated	Investigation quality matters more than raw alerts
Supplier resilience	Critical categories with tested recovery or alternatives	Backup source must be technically qualified and usable
Responsibility	Salient supplier harms tracked to verified corrective outcomes	Codes and certificates are inputs, not outcomes

Note. Original scorecard. Measures should be adapted to the procurement category and jurisdiction; their causal effects are not assumed.

18.12.2 Risk identification, treatment and interdependence

Procurement risk spans supplier failure, quality nonconformity, price and currency shocks, fraud, dependence, cyber compromise, human-rights harm, extreme weather, political disruption and unsuitable specifications. Ranking requires more than multiplying arbitrary 'likelihood' and 'impact' integers. A qualitative matrix can establish attention priorities, but multiplication of ordinal scores has no defensible expected-loss interpretation unless numerical scales are calibrated. Where evidence permits, expected loss is probability times financial consequence, with scenario dependence and correlation recognized. Risk treatment can include prevention, qualification, alternative suppliers, contractual protection, financial reserves, redesign, monitoring and a credible contingency activation authority. Some harms, such as severe safety violations, must not be accepted merely because their expected monetary cost seems small.

Supply resilience is a contingent capacity to anticipate, withstand, adapt to and recover from disruption while maintaining justified service levels. Multi-sourcing can reduce dependence on one supplier but may sacrifice scale or create common upstream dependencies. Bode and Wagner (2015) report empirical evidence associating several forms of upstream supply complexity with disruption frequency, a caution against assuming diversification always decreases risk. A second distributor sourcing from the same manufacturer may provide little protection during the manufacturer's shutdown. Evaluating alternatives requires shared-failure mapping, realistic switch times, qualification costs, inventory implications and contractual commitments, not supplier-count targets.

18.12.3 A practical risk register and intervention logic

Table 18.6. Illustrative procurement risk register for a Rwandan institution

Risk event and pathway	Indicative early warning	Preventive or contingent control	Owner and review point
Single upstream manufacturer fails	Missed upstream confirmations; prolonged replenishment	Qualified substitute; verified alternative supply origin	Procurement and IT; quarterly
Bid evaluation improperly influenced	Undeclared links; scoring revisions after opening	Declarations before specification/evaluation; independent review	Governance officer; each tender
Contract variations conceal cost escalation	Repeated scope changes and poor initial surveys	Baseline specification; change-control authority; cost reconciliation	Contract manager; each variation
Invoice or bank substitution fraud	New account and urgent payment request	Independent callback; dual approval; reconciliation	Finance; before disbursement
Inadequate device security	Unpatched firmware or unsupported components	Security tests and post-award update obligations	IT security; acceptance and periodic
Supplier labor or ecological harm	Contradictory declarations; unresolved worker concerns	Risk-based due diligence and time-bound remedy plan	Procurement and compliance; periodic

Note. Original illustrative register. No event or probability is represented as having occurred at a real Rwandan institution.

Risk ownership must remain explicit. Procurement can manage selection and contract evidence but cannot alone determine the classroom's learning requirement, test software-security configurations, recognize accounting liabilities or decide board-level risk tolerance. The institutional mechanism that matters is a decision right linked to information, challenge and remedy. In the simplest useful governance loop, demand owners identify outcomes, procurement makes supply alternatives contestable, technical teams validate capability, finance tests affordability, compliance evaluates legitimacy, and contract managers track outcomes. A defect discovered after payment should reopen an accountable corrective pathway rather than disappear into a departmental handoff.

A usable register is not a static catalogue of hazards. Each risk should specify the exposed procurement objective, the causal pathway, the evidence for its current status, the consequence threshold, an accountable decision owner and a review or activation date. For supply interruption, the practical test is whether an alternate provider is approved, technically interchangeable and capable of delivering before operational reserves are exhausted. A second supplier name in a spreadsheet does not establish that condition. The record should also disclose correlated risks, such as multiple distributors depending on the same importer or bank.

Risk review should be linked to contract performance and the enterprise's control environment. Changes in ownership, security breaches, repeated minor variations and payment delays can each justify intensified monitoring, but the response should be proportional to verified exposure. High-level governance must distinguish acceptable operating variation from events that threaten safety, legal compliance, critical service or institutional legitimacy. These are different kinds of thresholds and should not be collapsed into one ordinal risk multiplication.

18.13 RWANDA-BASED INTEGRATIVE CASE AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON

18.13.1 Case assumptions and lawful procedural boundary

The following scenario is entirely hypothetical. A Rwandan educational institution plans to acquire fifty networked teaching devices with installation and three years of basic support. Its approved maximum present-value budget is RWF 62 million. All offers are assumed received in one legally permissible, properly advertised competitive procedure, with the same documented specification and due date. The devices are assumed to meet mandatory safety, interoperability, accessibility and minimum cybersecurity tests, and the bidders are assumed otherwise legally eligible. No assertion is made that the selected evaluation method or weight distribution is authorized for every Rwandan public tender. In actual public procurement, the method and financial evaluation must be those established by Law No. 031/2022, the applicable ministerial order and tender documents; if this teaching instrument differs, the legally required procedure governs.

The institution has adopted, for illustration only, four graded technical criteria and one price criterion on a ten-point scale: verified functionality and quality 35%; service and warranty capability 20%; delivery and implementation reliability 15%; substantiated social and environmental provisions 10%; and comparative bid price 20%. The evaluation team documented anchored scoring descriptors before opening bids. All bidders passed mandatory thresholds; otherwise, no additive score could make a failed bid eligible. Prices are evaluated excluding identical tax effects, and the price score equals 10 × the lowest eligible bid price divided by the bidder's price. No supplier name is identifiable; A, B and C are invented alternatives.

18.13.2 Reproducible weighted vendor comparison

Table 18.7. Illustrative supplier evaluation: weighted points on a ten-point scale

Criterion (weight)	Supplier A	Supplier B	Supplier C
Functional quality (0.35)	8	9	7
Warranty/service (0.20)	8	9	6
Delivery reliability (0.15)	7	8	9
Social/environmental (0.10)	7	8	6
Bid price in million RWF	50	55	45
Price score, 10 × 45 / price (0.20)	9.000	8.182	10.000
Total weighted score (maximum 10)	7.950	8.586	7.600

Note. All bids, ratings and prices are constructed. For example, B = 0.35(9) + 0.20(9) + 0.15(8) + 0.10(8) + 0.20(8.1818) = 8.5864, rounded to 8.586. The result is valid only for the disclosed model, minimum thresholds and authorized rules.

Figure 18.2. Supplier evaluation sensitivity to disclosed criteria weights



Note. Constructed educational data; original and price-heavy weights are stated in Section 18.13.2. The diagram shows how ranking is contingent on prior policy choices and does not authorize changing tender criteria after receipt.

Supplier B ranks first, even though its quoted acquisition price exceeds C's by RWF 10 million. This is a conditional result, not an invitation to spend more whenever a supplier has a polished presentation. The evaluator should preserve underlying test evidence and signed individual score sheets, explain disagreements, and test whether revised but plausible criteria or estimates change the decision. The original scoring criterion 'warranty/service' requires verifiable local support access, response time and spare parts, not an evaluator's impression. If the apparently superior service cannot be established, the score must be corrected rather than defended by managerial intuition.

A stress test transfers 30 percentage points of weight from functional quality to price, yielding weights 0.05, 0.20, 0.15, 0.10 and 0.50, respectively. With unchanged supplier assessments, A scores 8.250, B scores approximately 8.341, and C scores 8.500, so C becomes first. Such a dramatic reweighting cannot lawfully be imposed after bids are received: the calculation is an *ex ante* design diagnostic showing how priorities determine outcomes. Modest changes should also be tested, and close results should be discussed as sensitivity rather than falsely precise superiority. The appropriate governance conclusion is to settle legitimate priorities and scoring anchors before the contest, not manipulate them to achieve a desired bidder.

18.13.3 Discounted total-cost and budget test

Assume annual maintenance and service cash outflows, paid at year-end for three years, of RWF 4 million for A, 1.5 million for B and 6 million for C. Assume comparable devices and three-year use, zero residual values, a 10% annual discount rate and no incremental downtime cost in the baseline. The three-year annuity factor is 2.486852. The corresponding present-value total costs are A: 50 + 4(2.486852) = RWF 59.947 million; B: 55 + 1.5(2.486852) = RWF 58.730 million; and C: 45 + 6(2.486852) = RWF 59.921 million. Each falls within the illustrative RWF 62 million ceiling, but B is lowest on this particular lifecycle model despite the highest purchase price. These costs should not be added to the weighted score as though independent unless the evaluation method clearly specifies and controls for double counting.

The cost advantage of B relative to A is about RWF 1.217 million over three years and relative to C about RWF 1.191 million. Neither estimate includes differences in quality-related downtime or economic consequences of failed installation. A sensitivity threshold is informative: B's annual operating cost could rise from RWF 1.5 million to about RWF 1.989 million before its TCO equalled A's, holding other assumptions fixed: solve 55 + 2.486852 C = 59.947408. The calculation exposes the limited headroom of the conclusion. A plausible adverse

service-cost revision, foreign-exchange shock, or lower actual equipment life could change the ranking. These should be documented as reasons for verification, not concealed in a single award statistic.

The bid-price criterion in the illustrative weighted score and the later present-value TCO test describe different comparisons. In a live regulated tender, a procuring entity cannot first publish a price-only financial formula and then substitute an undisclosed TCO ranking as the legal basis for award. The TCO exercise here is a planning and critical-review diagnostic illustrating a possible design improvement for future tenders, subject to applicable rules and appropriate disclosure. If lifecycle cost is an authorized award criterion, its included cash flows, discount rate, exclusions and evidence requirements must be specified before bid receipt. Using both acquisition price and TCO in one additive score would otherwise risk double counting.

The sensitivity can also be examined at less extreme discount assumptions. At 5%, the three-year annuity factor is approximately 2.72325 and discounted costs are A = RWF 60.893 million, B = RWF 59.085 million and C = RWF 61.340 million. At 15%, the factor is about 2.28323 and the same costs are A = RWF 59.133 million, B = RWF 58.425 million and C = RWF 58.699 million. Supplier B remains least costly under these restricted variations, but the advantage over C becomes much smaller at 15%. The exercise tests only the discount rate; it cannot independently establish maintenance-cost accuracy, equipment reliability or funding adequacy.

18.13.4 Conflict-of-interest protocol and award integrity

Suppose, separately and hypothetically, an evaluator discloses that a close family member works for Supplier B. The disclosure does not prove that B's bid is false or that its ranking is invalid. It establishes a decision-integrity risk requiring immediate application of the prescribed conflict rules. The review must establish whether the person influenced needs definition, specification, tender packaging, clarification access, scoring design or individual evaluation. Depending on the governing rules, appropriate measures can include recusal, removal from confidential access, independent re-scoring, a formally recorded reassignment or, where material contamination cannot be remedied, lawful suspension or recommencement. A mere declaration after scoring would not necessarily restore confidence if the person had already shaped the criteria.

The conflict record should contain the nature and date of disclosure, affected phases, authorized decision, replacement evaluator, preservation of original and revised score sheets, independent reviewer sign-off and communication consistent with confidentiality obligations. Supplier B should not be automatically punished for an evaluator's relationship without evidence or legal ground, nor should the institution conceal an unresolved conflict because B appears to offer superior value. The objective is an impartial, reviewable award that survives both price scrutiny and a credible institutional challenge.

18.13.5 Rwanda and international lessons from the case

The case translates Rwanda's documented public procurement architecture into questions about procedural competence, rather than asserting that this constructed tender has occurred under UMUCYO. The 2026 parliamentary observations about contract preparation, frequent variations and incomplete implementation of sustainable procurement are especially relevant. Poorly specified equipment can prompt variations that erase an advertised saving; vague green criteria can create unenforceable promises; limited supplier access can conceal dependence. The OECD's 2025 bid-rigging guidance adds a competition-risk lens, and the World Bank's 2025 regulations provide a comparative example of risk-proportionate project procurement. Neither comparator supplies a valid substitute for the controlling law or the actual tender documents in Rwanda (Parliament of Rwanda, 2026b, 2026a; OECD, 2025a; World Bank, 2025b).

A private Rwandan enterprise could adapt the same assessment logic with less statutory procedural formality while still documenting rights, financial controls and supplier treatment. A cooperative might assign authorization to member-accountable bodies and weigh agricultural supplier development as part of its purpose; a university purchasing through donor financing may need additional applicable funding conditions. The shared principle is not one universal scorecard. It is the capacity to explain why the acquisition is necessary, the

supplier comparison is technically and procedurally sound, the full costs are affordable, serious harms are constrained and actual results can be reviewed against the original promise.

18.14 INTEGRATIVE DISCUSSION, CRITICAL SYNTHESIS AND RESEARCH AGENDA

18.14.1 The limits of five major theoretical explanations

Transaction-cost economics explains why asset specificity, uncertainty and verification costs make some contracts fragile, but it does not independently determine what distribution of risk is fair. Agency theory identifies incentives for opportunism and the necessity of oversight, but can underestimate trust, professional identity and collective obligations. Kraljic's purchasing portfolio turns heterogeneous categories into managerial priorities, yet its two dimensions simplify unstable markets and require subjective calibration. The relational view explains jointly produced capability, but can overlook market exclusion and dependence on favored incumbents. Responsible procurement theory places social and environmental impacts inside acquisition decisions, yet normative commitments still require valid measurement and feasible implementation (Williamson, 1985; Jensen & Meckling, 1976; Kraljic, 1983; Dyer & Singh, 1998; Carter & Rogers, 2008).

The most defensible synthesis is neither purely adversarial contracting nor uncritical relational collaboration. Good procurement uses competitive discovery when substitution is real, relational governance when knowledge and specific investment matter, technical evidence to test performance, independent control to constrain delegated power and risk-based due diligence to address harms beyond the buyer's accounting boundary. These mechanisms are contingent and can conflict. Competition can erode cooperative learning; supplier concentration can improve quality consistency but create common-cause vulnerability; strict documentation can enhance auditability while excluding qualified small providers. The function's intellectual maturity consists in naming and governing these tensions rather than promising their disappearance.

The distinction between design completeness and adaptation provides a further empirical challenge to one-size-fits-all procurement. Tadelis (2012) argues that standardized transactions and complex projects can require different contract incentive and award arrangements: fixed-price competition gives strong cost incentives when requirements are defined, whereas unanticipated adaptation can make rigid forms costly. This insight must be read alongside the institutional need for transparency and impartiality in publicly funded decisions. It does not establish that negotiations outperform tenders in all complex cases or that flexibility can bypass Rwandan procurement law.

The wider research record also counsels theoretical pluralism. Flynn and Davis (2014) document limitations in the extent of explicit theoretical grounding in public-procurement scholarship, indicating why administrative prescriptions should not be mistaken for explanatory laws. A governance framework is strongest when it identifies the causal mechanism being proposed, the actual unit of observation, the institutional boundary and the kind of evidence capable of refuting its conclusion.

18.14.2 Cross-functional consequences and information interfaces

Procurement affects operations by determining input conformity, arrival and production continuity, thereby extending Chapter 17's flow and capacity analysis. It affects marketing and customer value because supply choices constrain whether promised availability, quality and warranty support in Chapters 13–16 are credible. Finance determines the cost of funds, payment terms, exposure and affordability; human resources supplies competences, ethical training and workload capacity; information systems protect contract records; and corporate governance constrains conflicts and related-party influence. An integrated enterprise should monitor these interfaces through a shared requisition owner, category plan, acceptance test, contract register, financial reconciliation and feedback route rather than relying on separate functional dashboards.

This also shows why procurement cannot be evaluated exclusively at the moment of award. A bid's technical merit becomes meaningful only when users accept a conforming output, operations can employ it, finance meets justifiable payments and affected stakeholders have available remedy. Management should therefore compare promised, contracted, received and experienced value. An 'award-to-outcome' trace is a practical diagnostic: it links the original business need to the actual operational effect and discloses where assumptions or governance failed. It is proposed here as a transparent analytic instrument, not as an empirically tested index.

18.14.3 Research propositions and feasible secondary-data designs

An initial research proposition is that supplier-specific investment moderates the relationship between tender intensity and realized lifecycle value through contractual adaptation and technical verification capability. The predicted mechanism is not that competition becomes undesirable, but that contract incompleteness makes post-award learning and adjustment relatively important. A secondary-data study could connect tender characteristics with award prices, variation histories, acceptance failures and completed-service costs, while matching technically comparable categories. It would need to confront the selection process through which unusually complex projects receive different procurement methods (Tadelis, 2012).

A second proposition is that electronic procurement can improve traceability without necessarily improving supplier quality, honest competition or service outcomes. Platform adoption may coincide with training, changes in approval authority and new audit procedures. A defensible evaluation could compare staggered procurement units and examine pre-adoption differences, missing transaction records and changes in detected irregularities. An increase in reported exceptions may reflect improved detection, not worsening integrity. The outcome should therefore be specified as audit-trail completeness, value, performance or verified misconduct, rather than a generic concept of digital success.

Third, proportionate qualification and reliable supplier payment may improve effective participation by smaller domestic enterprises, conditional on technical and capital requirements. Bid submission alone is insufficient evidence of inclusion; bid eligibility, technical responsiveness, award distribution, payment timeliness and contract performance should be analyzed together. Administrative records could support a category-adjusted panel design, provided changes in tender size, local supplier availability and procurement rules are controlled as far as possible.

Fourth, multiple sourcing is expected to reduce disruption only when alternative suppliers are independent at material upstream tiers and the buyer can switch within the available recovery window. Tender records and contracting data should be combined with mapped upstream manufacturing relationships and recovery observations rather than interpreted from the number of legal vendors alone. Finally, risk-based social and environmental due diligence may predict verified remediation more strongly than checklist completion. Such a finding would remain vulnerable to differences in buyer resources, detection intensity and supplier selection. These propositions define feasible research agendas, not effects established by the present secondary-source synthesis.

Proposition 3: Proportionate qualification and supplier-payment practices will predict greater effective participation by small domestic providers, subject to category-specific safety and capital constraints. A defensible test would compare bid participation, technical responsiveness, award rates, payment delay and contract performance by size after adjusting for category, market availability and procurement value. Proposition 4: Dual sourcing will reduce disruption only where alternatives are genuinely independent at critical upstream tiers and the buyer can operationally switch. Network mapping and time-to-recovery evidence are more informative than a simple count of contracted suppliers. Proposition 5: Risk-based human-rights and environmental due diligence will be more closely associated with verified remediation than checklist completion, but such association may reflect stronger firms self-selecting into better governance. These remain hypotheses; the current documentary synthesis does not establish causal effects.

18.14.4 Ethical and philosophical conclusion

Procurement is a revealing site of organizational moral agency because significant consequences are often attributed to impersonal procedures. The market did not 'choose' a supplier independently of the buyer's specification; a weighted model did not 'decide' which harms were compensable; a digital platform did not itself establish justice. Persons and institutions made those design choices. A sound ethical account therefore evaluates the legitimate purpose of acquisition, the fairness of access, the truth of representations, the burdens transferred to suppliers and workers, and the availability of correction. Efficiency is necessary for responsible stewardship of limited resources, but it is not sufficient to justify concealed favoritism or preventable harm. Equally, ethical rhetoric cannot substitute for technical competence and financial sustainability. Procurement integrity becomes credible when it can be demonstrated in records, outcomes and remedies.

Three forms of justification remain analytically independent. An epistemic justification asks whether the decision rests on credible and relevant evidence; an instrumental justification asks whether the chosen contract offers an efficient and technically feasible path to a legitimate objective; and a moral and institutional justification asks whether the objective, procedure and allocation of burdens respect rights, fair opportunity and accountable authority. An acquisition can pass one test and fail another. A low-priced bid may be feasible but procured through favoritism; a fair tender may yield technology that cannot be maintained; an environmentally attractive product may make unsubstantiated labor claims. No aggregate score can erase these distinctions.

The practical significance is a conception of procurement professionalism as disciplined judgment within constraints. Fairness does not mean that all prospective suppliers must win or that every bidder deserves an identical outcome. It requires intelligible rules, relevant qualification, equal application of disclosed criteria and legitimate review. Stewardship does not mean buying the cheapest object. It means explaining how scarce resources have been committed to verifiable purposes while accounting for delayed, distributed and potentially irreversible harms. Under this view, procurement is neither morally neutral administration nor a vehicle for untested social ambition; it is a governed site where organizational power must continually provide reasons for its decisions.

18.15 CHAPTER SYNTHESIS, KEY TERMS AND TEACHING APPARATUS

18.15.1 Seven core conclusions

The first conclusion is conceptual: procurement is a governed acquisition and assurance system, not a synonymous label for ordering or low-price purchasing. Its starting point is an authorized and justified organizational requirement; its endpoint is observable delivery, lawful payment, learning and remedy. The quality of this system depends on reliable demand and spending evidence, appropriate technical specifications, access to genuinely capable markets and a contract that allocates uncertain responsibilities coherently. Make-or-buy decisions, purchasing portfolios and market sourcing are consequently conditional judgments about capabilities, transaction costs and resilience, not routine choices dictated by a universal matrix.

The next conclusions concern institutional legitimacy and durable value. Supplier qualification must preserve non-negotiable legal and functional thresholds; comparative scoring must use disclosed criteria and withstand plausible sensitivity tests. Public procurement adds binding procedural and public-accountability duties to the commercial concerns shared by private buyers. Digital tools can make decisions more traceable while reproducing bias or administrative weakness; responsible sourcing is credible only where material harms are investigated and remediated. The final test is retrospective: managers must compare the promised, contracted, received and experienced outcome, including the burdens borne by suppliers, workers and users. A defensible procurement system is therefore as capable of correcting failure as it is of authorizing expenditure.

18.15.2 Cumulative glossary

Term	Precise working definition
Procurement	Governed cycle for acquiring externally supplied goods, works and services and assuring results
Purchasing	Ordering, receipt, invoice and transactional administration within procurement
Strategic sourcing	Analysis and selection of supply markets, suppliers and contract arrangements for sustained value
Category management	Coordinated decision management of a related family of purchasing requirements
Spend analysis	Classification and interpretation of documented organizational procurement expenditure
Total cost of ownership	Declared lifecycle boundary of acquisition, use, risk and end-of-life costs net of allowed residuals
Asset specificity	Investment whose value in alternative uses is substantially lower than in a focal relationship
Supply risk	Exposure to failure, interruption, inaccessibility or adverse change in external provision
Bid rigging	Collusive coordination among ostensibly competing tender participants
Conflict of interest	Private or relational interest capable of improperly affecting entrusted procurement judgment
Three-way match	Comparison of authorized order, evidence of receipt and supplier invoice before payment
Supplier development	Buyer-supported improvement in supplier capability and performance under accountable arrangements
Due diligence	Risk-based identification, prevention, mitigation, tracking and communication of material adverse impacts
Resilience	Capacity to anticipate, absorb, adapt to and recover from disruption while sustaining justified services

Note. Chapter-specific definitions synthesize the cited procurement, governance and responsible-business literature; related finance and logistics terms are elaborated in Chapters 19, 23 and 24.

18.15.3 Foundational and critical questions

Question 1 (LO1–LO2). Explain the difference between a requisition, purchase order, acceptance record and invoice. Why should the person approving the requirement not also be the sole person authorizing payment?

Question 2 (LO3). What assumptions must hold before buying from a lower-priced external specialist is genuinely more efficient than retaining an internal capability?

Question 3 (LO4–LO5). Why should legal eligibility, minimum cybersecurity protection and essential product safety not be treated as ordinary weighted criteria?

Question 4 (LO6–LO7). Distinguish the 2024 sustainable-procurement policy, Law No. 031/2022 and the 2026 parliamentary call for legal revision. What type of authority and implementation evidence does each establish? Question 5 (LO7–LO8). Compare the strengths and limitations of Kraljic's matrix, agency theory and the relational view for a strategically important sole-source supplier.

18.15.4 Applied quantitative and institutional exercises

Exercise A: price and lifecycle interpretation (LO3, LO5). Recompute all three present costs in Section 18.13 at discount rates of 5% and 15%, preserving year-end cash-flow conventions. Identify when the difference between B and the next-best alternative becomes immaterial and specify which additional evidence would govern the final decision. **Exercise B: tender and integrity audit (LO4, LO6, LO8).** Use Tables 18.3 and 18.7 to construct a full evaluation file. An evaluator discloses a family relationship with Supplier B after scoring; identify every procedural phase requiring review and specify what the committee must not assume about culpability. **Exercise C: responsible-sourcing diagnosis (LO2, LO7).** A cooperative purchases packaging through a Kigali distributor whose raw material comes from one external manufacturer. Draw the two-tier dependency, specify the verification needs and design a feasible corrective supplier-development plan without treating a self-reported certification as proof of outcomes.

18.15.5 Capstone assignment and educator marking guidance

Capstone procurement memorandum (LO1–LO8). Prepare a 3,000–4,000-word decision memorandum for a fictitious Rwandan institution acquiring a critical service. State the legal and funding assumptions, formulate functional requirements, build a documented supplier-market map, propose a lawful sourcing method, justify mandatory eligibility gates, present an auditable weighted matrix with a sensitivity test, calculate lifecycle cost, design a conflict-control and tender-record protocol, draft essential contract provisions, construct a risk register and propose a post-award evaluation. Compare the approach against one credible international procurement framework and identify what cannot transfer without adaptation. All assumed numerical values must be labelled; law and source claims must be evidenced.

Assessment should reward a reasoned, reproducible decision rather than the appearance of mathematical complexity. The rubric below offers a consistent 100-point basis for judging the capstone memorandum. A script that alters criteria after observing the bids, passes invented statistics as evidence, misstates the force of a legal instrument, or leaves a material conflict unresolved should require substantive correction regardless of its mechanical score.

Table 18.8. Capstone procurement decision-memorandum rubric

Assessment dimension	Points
Need, authority and legality, with justified scope and budget	15
Theoretical reasoning and supplier-market analysis	15
Reproducible scoring, lifecycle economics and sensitivity testing	25
Competition integrity, declared conflicts and auditability	15
Contract execution, controls and supplier resilience	15
Rwanda–international comparison, ethics and evidence quality	10
Academic expression, source accuracy and APA 7 referencing	5

18.15.6 Selected further reading and bridge to Chapter 19

For the analytical history of purchasing, Kraljic (1983) remains an instructive starting point, best read alongside Gelderman and Van Weele's (2003) critique of operational measurement. Williamson (1985) and Dyer and Singh (1998) provide competing explanations of contract dependence and collaborative value. Monczka et al. (2020) develops applied purchasing procedures, while OECD (2025a) is essential for contemporary bid-rigging safeguards. The reader should consult the current national legal instruments before applying any procedural advice. Chapter 19 proceeds from the sourcing and contractual decision into the physical and informational management of supply networks, transport, warehouse operations and inventory under uncertainty. The distinction is deliberate: procurement can arrange a right to receive goods; downstream coordination establishes whether those goods are available where and when productive activity needs them.

CHAPTER 19

Supply Chain, Logistics, and Inventory Management

ABSTRACT

A supply chain is not simply the movement of purchased goods between independent firms. It is a governed network of physical, informational and financial commitments whose performance emerges from coordination across organizational and territorial boundaries. This chapter critically develops supply chain, logistics and inventory management through twelve interdependent domains, encompassing network design, demand amplification, inventory economics, warehousing, transport, trade facilitation, resilience, relational integration, information systems, performance measurement, circular logistics and emerging technologies. A targeted, transparent synthesis connects foundational operations research and interorganizational theory with peer-reviewed resilience and sustainability scholarship, professional standards and dated Rwandan institutional evidence. Rwanda's 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey and 2025 Northern Corridor measurements contextualize the distinctive conditions of small enterprises and landlocked regional trade, without implying firm-level causal effects. A fully hypothetical Kigali distribution case demonstrates economic order quantity, safety stock, reorder points, expected shortages, cash exposure and a quantified border-disruption response. An end-to-end network model, decision matrices, a metric dictionary and an accompanying formula-based inventory workbook make the analysis inspectable. The argument is that supply chain effectiveness cannot be inferred from lowest freight cost, high asset utilization or minimum inventory alone: it requires conditional alignment among service reliability, total cost, liquidity, adaptability, informational credibility and legitimate stakeholder interests. The proposed integration is a pedagogical and analytical synthesis, not an empirically validated causal model.

Keywords: supply chain management; logistics network design; demand amplification; inventory control; economic order quantity; trade corridors; supply chain resilience; traceability; circular logistics; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

By the end of this chapter, readers should be able to: **LO1** distinguish supply chain, logistics, procurement and operations and map a multi-tier network with material, information and financial flows; **LO2** critically evaluate supply chain integration, bullwhip, network-design, global-value-chain and resilience perspectives; **LO3** calculate and qualify economic order quantities, replenishment points, safety stocks, service levels and working-capital exposure; **LO4** design defensible warehouse, transport and cross-border distribution decisions subject to physical and institutional constraints; **LO5** diagnose disruptions and quantify continuity alternatives using scenario analysis and explicit assumptions; **LO6** define, compute and critically audit inventory, reliability, cost, carbon and traceability indicators; **LO7** compare documented Rwandan corridor and enterprise conditions with international evidence without presuming transferability; and **LO8** defend a cross-functional logistics improvement plan addressing economic viability, technical feasibility, environmental responsibility and human dignity.

The twelve domains progress from network scope (19.1), coordination (19.2), inventory policy (19.3), storage (19.4), transportation (19.5), and border interfaces (19.6) to disruption management (19.7), collaboration (19.8), data infrastructure (19.9), metrics (19.10), sustainability (19.11) and future systems (19.12). A Rwandan scenario, comparative analysis, research synthesis, terminology and assessments complete the chapter. Chapter 17 established internal operations, while Chapter 18 explained acquisition and sourcing governance. This

chapter takes responsibility for the physical and informational flows between supply, storage, production and delivery. Specialist supplier award decisions belong to Chapter 18, quality assurance to Chapter 20, accounting for full product costs to Chapter 23, trade-policy analysis to Chapter 30 and enterprise-wide crisis governance to Chapter 32.

19.0 INTRODUCTION: THE VALUE OF A PROMISE DEPENDS ON THE NETWORK

Imagine a Rwandan producer that sells shelf-stable foods to clinics, small retailers and institutional buyers. Its production manager reports sufficient installed capacity, procurement has negotiated a favorable price for imported packaging, and the sales team promises delivery within seven days. The packaging has not cleared the border, however, and the warehouse's digital balance fails to record damaged stock. A truck is available but cannot be dispatched before quality release. The customer may receive the order late even though production, buying and transport managers each appear to have met their local performance targets. This is an explicitly constructed teaching scenario, not an allegation about an identifiable business.

Supply chain management concerns the design, governance and coordination of interdependent organizations, facilities, activities and relationships involved in obtaining inputs, transforming them, and making products or services available to users, including the return or recovery of materials. Logistics is the specialized planning and control of goods and associated information in movement and storage. Inventory management decides what stock should be held, where, in what condition, under which replenishment rules and with what financial and service consequences. Procurement creates governed external acquisition commitments (Chapter 18); operations transform resources (Chapter 17); logistics and inventory make timely exchange physically achievable. The three terms should not be collapsed, although one person may perform all three functions in a small enterprise.

The intellectual question is how decentralized actors can achieve coordinated outcomes when information is imperfect, incentives differ, uncertainty changes through time and risk cannot be eliminated. A stock reduction might release cash yet increase emergency transport, spoilage, missed health-service deliveries or upstream pressure on suppliers. More inventory might improve local availability while masking inaccurate records or consuming funds needed for wages. Thus the defensible object of optimization is a declared system and set of constraints, not an isolated stock-keeping unit, warehouse, department or quarterly margin. Fisher (1997) linked supply chain design to heterogeneous demand and product characteristics; Lee et al. (1997) explained endogenous amplification of orders; Christopher and Peck (2004) and Ivanov and Dolgui (2020) expanded the analysis of vulnerability from efficient chains to resilient and viable networks. Each is indispensable but incomplete.

19.0.1 Evidence design, source hierarchy and analytic boundaries

The chapter uses a critical, purposive synthesis of published literature, professional standards and official secondary documentation available by 2 November 2026. It combines landmark articles establishing distinct mechanisms, selected empirical and conceptual studies challenging managerial prescriptions, and primary institutional sources for Rwanda and international rules. Particular searches verified the original publication records for Lee et al. (1997), Christopher and Peck (2004), Hendricks and Singhal (2005), Tang (2006), Seuring and Müller (2008), Ivanov and Dolgui (2020), and the respective standard-setting bodies. Institutional source selection included the National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda (NISR), the East African Community (EAC), the Northern Corridor Transport Observatory (NCTO), Rwanda Revenue Authority (RRA), the WTO, ICC, ISO and the World Bank. Selection is targeted rather than exhaustive: it entails no preregistered systematic search, PRISMA screening totals, meta-analysis, interviews, original survey, or new causal estimation.

Four categories of warrant remain distinct throughout: mathematical identities and optimization results hold subject to stated assumptions; peer-reviewed studies describe findings in their actual study designs; institutional

statistics refer to documented measurement populations and observation windows; and all enterprise-level numerical values in the Kigali case are hypothetical. A formal standard establishes a published specification, not automatically a legal duty or evidence of certification. Neither LPI scores nor corridor travel-time averages measure the delivery reliability of the illustrative enterprise. Causal claims cannot be inferred from descriptive differences between corridors, years or firms. The methodology privileges traceable definitions, dated and sourced indicators, units, sensitivity and transparent limits over artificially precise comparisons.

19.0.2 Intellectual genealogy and the competing explanatory traditions

Operations research gave supply chain analysis a rigorous treatment of stock replenishment, transportation, flows and capacity allocation. The classical economic order quantity model identifies a cost-minimizing lot size when annual demand, ordering and holding costs are known, supply is available and the relevant cost structure is stationary (Harris, 1913). Its deductive result is analytically exact inside its assumptions and potentially misleading when lead-time tail risks, quantity discounts, product expiry or variable transport costs dominate. Network optimization extends the calculation by assigning facilities, flows and capacities, often expressing total cost as a constrained mathematical programme. Those models make opportunity costs explicit but cannot themselves establish trustworthy data or fair allocation of shortages.

Interorganizational perspectives question the assumption that firms are simply points on a physical network. Information sharing can be strategically distorted; long-term commitments can create both joint capabilities and dependence; outsourcing may transfer assets without transferring accountability. Lee et al. (1997) demonstrate how individually understandable ordering rules can generate collectively excessive variation. Collaboration scholarship identifies trust, incompatible incentives and organizational culture as substantive constraints rather than obstacles that software alone can remove (Barratt, 2004; Fawcett et al., 2008). Fisher's (1997) distinction between functional products and innovative products offers a useful contingency lens: predictable, price-sensitive items more readily justify efficient chains, whereas demand-uncertain items may require responsiveness. Binary product classifications nevertheless oversimplify enterprises with hybrid portfolios, seasonal shifts and combined service requirements.

Resilience scholarship challenges purely expected-cost designs because rare but consequential disruptions can collapse the feasibility of an ostensibly optimal network. Christopher and Peck (2004) associate vulnerability with tightly coupled, globally extended networks; Chopra and Sodhi (2004) classify different supply risks and emphasize tailored mitigation; Ivanov and Dolgui (2020) conceptualize viability as sustaining essential provision across intertwined networks. Empirical work by Hendricks and Singhal (2005) reports adverse performance associations for firms announcing supply chain glitches, but announcement-based samples and observational controls do not establish the causal return on a particular buffer for every enterprise. Sustainable-supply-chain scholarship further argues that cost, service and resilience scores can conceal environmental degradation or exploitation borne outside the focal firm's accounting boundary (Seuring & Müller, 2008; Carter & Rogers, 2008). The integrated position advanced here is contingent pluralism: different decision mechanisms illuminate different aspects of performance, and proposed remedies must be evaluated jointly against measurable economic, social and ecological constraints.

These traditions also imply different conceptions of what constitutes a supply chain. The optimization perspective treats the chain as a set of measurable flows subject to constraints; the relational perspective views it as an arrangement of contracts, expectations and power; the institutional perspective emphasizes the lawful permissions and informal practices through which exchange becomes possible; and the resilience perspective treats it as a temporally evolving system exposed to common shocks. None has an exclusive claim to explanatory adequacy. A model identifying an optimal shipment quantity can be valid within its assumptions while failing as an account of why a supplier conceals a delay or why emergency relief should take precedence over a commercial order. The appropriate ontology is consequently neither a purely physical pipeline nor an

abstract network of contracts, but an interconnected socio-technical and institutional system whose boundaries must be specified for the question being investigated.

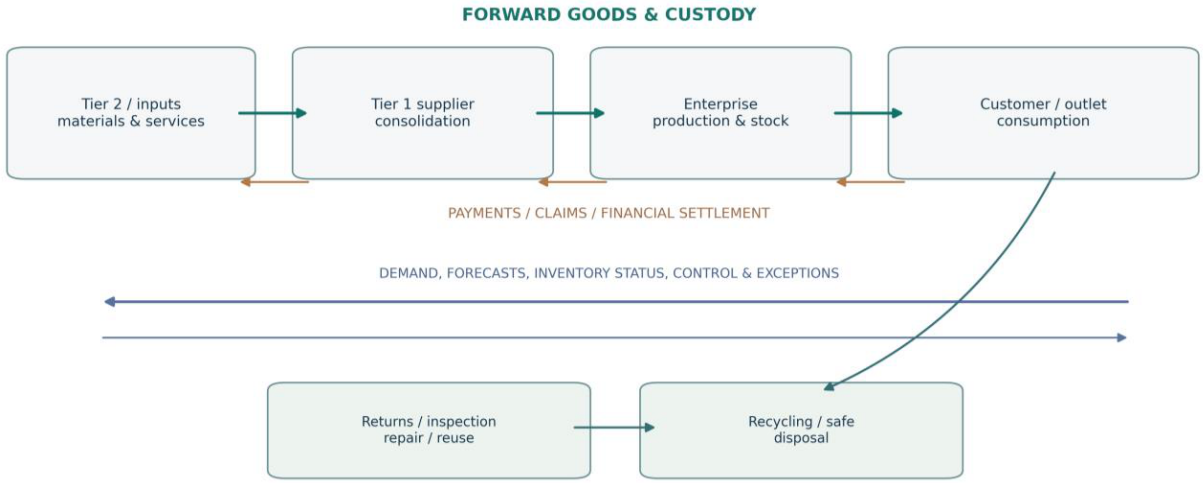
A related epistemological problem concerns the difference between observing a transaction and knowing its underlying state. Warehouse balances, customs timestamps, advertised lead times and supplier declarations are records produced by fallible actors and technical systems. Their apparent precision does not certify their completeness, comparability or independence. Managers need reasons to trust observations, and researchers need an inferential design appropriate to the claims drawn from them. This is especially important where digital data are abundant but physical verification is infrequent. Finally, supply chain choice is normatively irreducible to cost minimization: a resource allocation may be mathematically efficient under an assigned objective and still be unjust if it externalizes occupational risk, conceals unsafe substitutions or denies indispensable goods to a vulnerable user. Ethical constraints are not a decorative addition to optimization but part of defining what choices are admissible.

19.1 SUPPLY CHAIN SYSTEMS AND NETWORK DESIGN

19.1.1 Boundaries, actors, tiers and the three-flow system

The supply network is best represented as a directed, multi-tier structure. Nodes include raw-material producers, processing plants, suppliers, subcontractors, consolidation centres, ports, customs agencies, warehouses, retailers, service providers, customers, recyclers and waste processors. Arcs represent permitted flows among nodes, while inventory at a node is a state variable, not itself a shipment.

Figure 19.1. *End-to-end enterprise supply network and reciprocal flow architecture.*



Note. Original conceptual visualization. Material flows toward customers, financial settlement and information have distinct directions, and returns feed recovery. Informed by the ASCM SCOR Digital Standard and Christopher and Peck (2004); not an empirical map of a named firm.

Upstream connections refer to successive sources of inputs and capability; downstream connections refer to customer-facing transformations, distributors and eventual users. A tier-one supplier contracts directly with the focal enterprise; tier-two and deeper suppliers supply preceding tiers. Mapping beyond the contractual first tier matters when different apparent suppliers depend on one port, origin, subcontractor, energy source or digital service.

Physical flows include raw inputs, work-in-process, finished goods, reusable containers, returns and by-products. Information flows include orders, demand signals, availability, shipment milestones, forecasts, compliance documents, product identifiers and exceptions. Financial flows include customer payments, supplier settlements, credit, duties, insurance and claims. They need not travel in the same direction or at the same speed.

The goods may move from a supplier toward a buyer, payment in the reverse direction, and inventory-record corrections in either direction. Ownership, control and liability also change at contractually specified points. The frequently repeated expression that supply chains are simply 'linear' is particularly misleading once reverse logistics, shared transport, subcontracting and alternative suppliers are represented.

19.1.2 Configuration, facility location and operational decisions

Network design has at least three decision horizons. Strategic decisions determine markets served, facility locations, capacities, redundancy, major transport links and whether to own or contract for warehousing. Tactical decisions allocate inventories, carrier capacity, territories and replenishment rules across periods. Operational decisions release orders, pick shipments, assign trucks and resolve exceptions. The boundaries blur because a poor daily workaround can become an enduring network dependency. Decision rights should therefore specify which deviations require finance, safety or commercial approval.

A general capacitated network model selects nonnegative shipment flows x_ij from node i to node j, optional facility openings y_j, and potentially inventory positions I_j. One simplified objective minimizes Σc_ij x_ij + Σf_j y_j + Σh_j I_j + penalty for unmet demand, subject to origin supply, destination demand, warehouse capacity, balance equations and service constraints. Costs c_ij and f_j must use compatible periods and currency; binary opening variables y_j are constrained to zero or one. This formal expression is a decision aid, not an automatic recommendation, because social access, emergency service, border risk and environmental burdens may be invisible to a narrowly specified objective. A least-cost central warehouse can be undesirable when a regional service failure is socially unacceptable or local access matters.

In practice, managers should first map actual flows and customer promises, then identify the relevant network boundary and counterfactual choices. A two-warehouse proposal should compare fixed space and supervision costs with changes in route length, inventory pooling, promised lead time and service during interruption. Inventory pooling can reduce safety stock when geographically separated demand streams are imperfectly correlated; it does not necessarily lower total cost if the centralized warehouse lengthens delivery or concentrates catastrophe exposure. Decision quality therefore depends on the distribution of demand, not simply its mean, and on the credibility of emergency alternatives. The diagram must also record data ownership and who can correct erroneous shipment status.

A more rigorous design distinguishes decisions that can be reversed cheaply from those that create durable commitments. A temporary cross-dock can be trialled over one demand season, whereas a long-term lease, dedicated cold store or exclusive transport agreement may lock the enterprise into a particular demand geography. Let F represent annual fixed facility cost, V the annual variable handling and transport cost, K the annual economic cost of additional stock, and P expected penalties for unmet service. The decision compares F + V + K + P for each feasible alternative, while preserving legally required and ethically justified minimum-service constraints. An option with a lower expected total can still be unacceptable if plausible extreme delays prevent the delivery of critical supplies. The relevant recommendation should consequently report the feasible frontier between cost, reliability and worst-case continuity rather than conceal these dimensions in one unexamined score.

Network pooling deserves equal caution. If two markets exhibit imperfectly correlated demand, a centralized reserve may reduce aggregate safety-stock requirements, but only when replenishment from that node is dependable and the inventory is genuinely substitutable. Shared forecasting errors, common floods and border closure can make nominally independent markets fail together. A location model should therefore record correlations, service windows, operating-day calendars and the option value of a second route. For microenterprises, geographical consolidation through a cooperative may have lower fixed cost than wholly owned depots, but governance of access, custody, liability and payment becomes an additional network-design variable.

19.1.3 Network governance and business-function interfaces

The board and strategy team determine risk appetite and market scope; procurement governs supplier commitments; operations controls transformation and release; logistics schedules movement and storage; finance funds inventory and credit; marketing defines customer service promises; information systems maintain shared records. A logistics manager can control dispatch but cannot ethically alter a patient's product requirement, waive statutory inspection or promise supplier payment without authority. Interface rules must therefore answer which event transfers custody, which evidence confirms condition, who bears shortage costs and which decision rights enable rapid yet accountable recovery.

For small Rwandan enterprises, the economically relevant network may rely on a handful of people, mobile telephones, owner-managed vans and cash or mobile-money settlements. Such organizations do not require the same software architecture as a multinational, but they still require functional clarity: consistent stock identifiers, dated stock balances, customer delivery promises, and a written escalation procedure for border or vehicle disruptions. The 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey estimates 278,060 businesses and reports extensive informality; this describes a sampling frame and macro-level structure, not proof of any particular firm's logistics competence (NISR, 2025f). A context-sensitive model therefore begins with low-cost record integrity and decision accountability before prescribing sophisticated optimization software.

19.2 DEMAND AND SUPPLY COORDINATION

19.2.1 Demand is not the same as orders or sales

Demand represents the quantities customers would seek under specified prices, service conditions, periods and availability. Recorded sales equal fulfilled transactions, not necessarily true demand: stock-outs censor observations, promotions shift purchase timing, and institutional tenders concentrate orders. The distinction matters when projecting the number of trucks, purchase orders or storage locations required. A forecast should state its time horizon, stock-keeping-unit definition, customer segment, loss function and intervention assumptions. Aggregating demand can improve signal-to-noise ratios but may conceal the particular item or location whose failure would damage a critical service.

A sales and operations planning (S&OP) cycle reconciles commercially expected demand, production and procurement capabilities, constrained supply, inventory availability and financial resources at a common cadence. Its intellectual value is not that a forecast eventually becomes exact, but that assumptions become visible and incompatible commitments are resolved before money or capacity is spent. Sales may favor availability, operations stable utilization, procurement large purchasing batches and finance low inventory. A disciplined monthly decision records the consensus baseline, authorized alternatives, constraints, responsible managers and leading indicators for revising the plan. Exception-led weekly reviews are appropriate where demand and transit times change faster than the monthly cadence.

19.2.2 The bullwhip effect and its measurement

The bullwhip effect describes amplification of upstream order variability relative to downstream consumer demand. Lee et al. (1997) identify demand-signal processing, order batching, price variation and rationing/shortage gaming as mechanisms. An enterprise responding to one large retailer order may infer durable demand, order a full truck to save freight cost, and trigger additional supplier capacity adjustments. If each tier sees only its immediate buyer's order, not final consumption and genuine inventory, plausible local responses can create network-wide excess and subsequent shortage.

A descriptive indicator is $B = \mathrm{Var}(Q_{upstream}) / \mathrm{Var}(D_{downstream})$, using the same observation frequency and appropriately aligned time window. For a hypothetical 52-week observation window in which weekly retailer demand has standard deviation 20 units and wholesale orders have standard deviation 35 units, $B = 35^2 / 20^2 = 3.0625$. The statistic indicates variance amplification for those measured series; it neither proves the cause

nor implies that each upstream actor behaved irrationally. A variance ratio below one may arise from smoothing or constrained replenishment; it is not sufficient evidence of a healthy chain. The time aggregation, stock-out censoring, price promotions and nonstationarity must be disclosed.

Coordination instruments include sharing point-of-sale quantities instead of only downstream orders, shorter and more consistent replenishment cycles, stable pricing, explicit treatment of promotions, credible allocation during shortages, vendor-managed inventory and collaborative forecasting, planning and replenishment (CPFR). Their benefits are conditional. Sharing data can expose commercially sensitive information or reveal identifiable customers; lower batch sizes can increase transport emissions or border transactions unless consolidated; collaborative planning can entrench an unequal dominant buyer. Where customer information is incomplete, managers should compare forecast errors by item and horizon rather than promising 'real-time visibility' from inaccurate source records.

19.2.3 A coordination diagnostic

A practical demand–supply diagnostic records the consumer demand series, orders to each tier, forecast release dates, replenishment rules, batch constraints, promotion calendars, stock-outs, lead-time variation and financial approval delays. The decisive analytical step is to distinguish forecast disagreement from operational inability to implement a shared forecast. An inaccurate common forecast may synchronize all firms into the same mistake; independent local information can sometimes create beneficial diversity. Consequently, information sharing is valuable when it changes decision quality and incentives, not merely when dashboards become identical (Lee et al., 1997; Barratt, 2004).

Coordination also requires an explicit forecast-quality protocol. A comparable baseline may use seasonal naive demand, with more elaborate models judged through holdout periods matching procurement or dispatch decisions. Mean absolute error is the average absolute difference between forecast and realized demand; a scale-adjusted error permits comparisons across products, but ratio-based percentage errors become unstable near zero consumption. Bias should be monitored separately from error magnitude because persistent underforecasting can systematically disadvantage low-volume customers even when average accuracy appears strong. A decision-oriented review should test whether the forecast improvement changes replenishment choices, avoidable inventory, stock-outs or service loss. Forecast accuracy alone is not the business outcome, and sales suppressed by stock-outs should not be treated as an uncensored measure of demand.

In institutional settings, the timing of budgets and authorizations is itself a source of demand amplification. Quarterly purchasing ceilings can create end-of-period order clusters unrelated to final consumption. A defensible S&OP process therefore reconciles not only physical capacity but also procurement lead times, funds release, client acceptance dates and the information available to decision makers. It records dissenting forecasts where uncertainty is material instead of manufacturing false agreement around a single point estimate.

19.3 INVENTORY POLICIES AND ECONOMICS

19.3.1 Inventory as a buffer, asset and liability

Inventory comprises raw materials, work-in-process, finished products, spare parts and goods in transit; items may additionally be cycle, seasonal, anticipatory, safety, decoupling or obsolete stock, depending on why they are held. The operational classification and the accounting classification need not coincide. Pipeline stock covers material in transit, while safety stock protects against uncertainty in demand or lead time. Decoupling stock limits the propagation of variability between activities. Seasonal inventory anticipates predictable timing; speculative inventory is held in anticipation of prices or supply restrictions. Hazardous, perishable and regulated goods also impose storage, traceability and disposal obligations.

A stock decision exchanges distinct economic exposures. Ordering too frequently generates administration, handling or setup costs. Ordering too much consumes working capital, storage capacity, insurance and

deterioration, and may lower flexibility when preferences change. Insufficient inventory creates backorders, lost contribution, emergency freight, breach of contract, disruption of production or harm to service users. These consequences differ fundamentally across business settings. A hospital supply chain should not price a critical medicine stock-out only at the item's sales margin; a seasonal fashion retailer may rationally tolerate some lost demand to avoid severe markdowns. Neither lowest inventory nor maximum availability is an unconditional managerial objective.

19.3.2 EOQ, assumptions and full derivation

The standard economic order quantity (EOQ) balances annual fixed ordering cost and annual proportional holding cost. Let D be annual demand in units per year, S be fixed cost per replenishment order in RWF/order, H be annual holding cost per unit in RWF/unit/year and Q be the lot size in units. When demand is stationary, replenishment is instantaneous, stock-outs are excluded and purchase price is unchanged with Q, the variable annual cost is $C(Q) = (D/Q)S + (Q/2)H$. Differentiating gives $dC/dQ = -DS/Q^2 + H/2 = 0$; hence $Q^* = \sqrt{(2DS/H)}$. The second derivative $2DS/Q^3$ is positive for positive values, establishing a minimum of this defined cost function. Purchase expenditure D×unit price is constant and therefore excluded from the lot-size optimization, but must be included in full cash planning.

Worked example 19.1 (entirely hypothetical). A Kigali packaged-food distributor forecasts annual demand D = 24,000 cartons, pays S = RWF 18,000 per standard replenishment order, and estimates annual holding cost H = RWF 1,200 per carton. Then $EOQ = \sqrt{(2\times24{,}000\times18{,}000/1{,}200)} = \sqrt{720{,}000} =$ **848.53**, or approximately **849 cartons** per order, subject to packaging multiples and truck constraints. The resulting annual order frequency is 24,000/848.53 = 28.28 orders; expected cycle inventory averages 424.26 cartons. Annual ordering cost and annual cycle-stock holding cost are each approximately **RWF 509,117**; their sum is **RWF 1,018,234**. At an illustrative purchase price of RWF 4,000 per carton, the annual purchase expenditure is RWF 96 million, and the average cycle-stock purchase value is approximately RWF 1.697 million. The latter is inventory capital at one point in the cycle, not an additional expense on top of the annual procurement bill. All values exclude taxes, duties, financing details and extraordinary disruption losses.

The assumptions matter more than cosmetic decimal precision. If orders must be in cases of 25, the manager compares costs at 825 and 850, rather than mechanically ordering 849. If a truckload discount changes unit purchase price, the candidate total cost must include purchase costs and freight. If cartons perish, an expiry constraint may cap Q. If a supplier accepts orders only weekly, an optimal continuous-review Q may be infeasible. A sensitivity result, $Q^* \quad 1/\sqrt{H}$, means that doubling the holding rate reduces the theoretical EOQ by about 29.3%, not by half. The accompanying spreadsheet is structured so readers can change the assumptions without mistaking hypothetical quantities for surveyed data.

19.3.3 Reorder points, demand variability and service definitions

An EOQ answers how much to order, not when. Under a continuous-review fixed lead time L in operating days and deterministic daily demand d, the reorder point is ROP = dL, defined in the same units as inventory position. When demand during replenishment is variable, a conventional normal-approximation policy sets $ROP = dL + z\sigma_LT$, where σ_LT is the standard deviation of demand over lead time and z is a quantile for a declared cycle-service probability. When daily independent demand has standard deviation σ_d and lead time is fixed at L days, $\sigma_LT = \sigma_d\sqrt{L}$. If lead time L also varies independently of daily demand, a common approximation is $\sigma_LT = \sqrt{(L\ \sigma_d^2 + d^2\sigma_L^2)}$, where L and σ_L are the mean and standard deviation of lead time. Dependence, serial correlation and extreme events invalidate casual use of these formulas.

In the hypothetical firm, 24,000 cartons are demanded during 300 operating days, so d = 80 cartons/day. Assume $\sigma_d = 20$ cartons/day, mean lead time = 8 days, lead-time standard deviation = 2 days, and independence for the illustration. Then $\sigma_LT = \sqrt{(8\times20^2 + 80^2\times2^2)} = \sqrt{28{,}800} =$ **169.71 cartons**. For a nominal 95% cycle-service target, $z \approx 1.645$, giving safety stock 279.17 cartons and ROP ≈ 919.17 cartons. Under the model, the firm orders

when inventory position, defined as available stock plus open orders minus committed backorders, falls to approximately **920 cartons**. Reorder triggers based on physical on-hand stock alone can lead to double ordering when deliveries are already in transit. Policy units, lead-time conventions and stock validity must be written down before deployment.

Cycle-service level is the probability of no stock-out during one replenishment cycle; item fill rate is the share of demand quantity satisfied immediately from available stock. They are not equivalent. With normally approximated lead-time demand, expected shortage per cycle is $\sigma_{LT}[\varphi(z) - z(1 - \Phi(z))]$, where φ and Φ are standard-normal density and distribution functions. At $z = 1.645$, the expected shortage is approximately 3.54 cartons per cycle; dividing by $Q \approx 848.53$ gives a model-based fill rate near **99.58%**. That figure is conditional on the stated distribution, lost-sales/backorder conventions and fixed-order policy; it cannot be interpreted as the actual customer's observed experience. Delivery timeliness and product condition are separate requirements.

19.3.4 Working capital, stock segmentation and policy choice

At a hypothetical unit purchase cost of RWF 4,000, the safety reserve of 279.17 cartons ties up roughly RWF 1.117 million in addition to cycle stock; the total mean on-site inventory under the simple model is approximately 703.43 cartons, valued at RWF 2.814 million. This capital is economically consequential to an enterprise with limited access to short-term credit. In a stress case where transit lead time increases from eight to twelve days with the same variable demand assumptions, mean lead-time demand rises from 640 to 960 cartons. A reorder point calibrated for the old mean and uncertainty cannot be assumed adequate. Whether additional stock is justified depends on disruption frequency, available emergency supply, product margins, replenishment lead-time distribution and the social cost of unfilled orders.

ABC classification ranks items by chosen importance, conventionally annual consumption value D×unit cost. It should not be confused with clinical or operational criticality: low-price spare parts can shut down a high-value line. XYZ analysis classifies demand predictability or variability, but definitions vary and must be specified. A defensible segmentation combines value, criticality, shelf life, demand uncertainty, lead-time variability, substitution and recovery options. Continuous review is preferable for critical or expensive stock when reliable transaction records are available; periodic review may be efficient for many low-value items or suppliers with fixed delivery calendars. Two-bin visual replenishment can suit microenterprises when its bin quantities are calibrated and its exceptions logged. Newsvendor models are more appropriate for single-period perishable demand; material requirements planning links component needs to a bill of materials and production schedule. Selection follows the economic structure of the problem rather than fashion.

Table 19.1. *Comparison of inventory decision rules and limits.*

Policy	Decision logic	Suitable conditions	Material limitations
EOQ with continuous review	Fixed Q; reorder at inventory-position threshold	Recurrent, stable demand; known ordering and holding costs	Misspecifies discounts, expiry and long-tail lead-time risk
Periodic review/order-up-to	Inspect every T days; order up to target S	Scheduled supplier routes; many low-cost stock items	Protects review period plus lead time; may require more buffer
Newsvendor/single-period	Trade expected shortage and leftover costs	Seasonal/perishable one-shot purchase	Depends heavily on demand distribution and salvage value
Materials requirements planning	Explode scheduled output through bill of materials	Interdependent components and reliable production records	Planning errors and nervousness propagate without controls
Criticality-weighted buffer	Extra protection for high-consequence shortages	Health, safety and continuity-critical items	Governance required to define consequences and funding

Note. Original synthesis of standard inventory control logic. Policy boundaries must be checked against the enterprise's actual constraints; the row descriptions are not universal prescriptions.

A periodic-review policy makes the review interval part of the protection period. If inventory is reviewed every T days and replenishment takes L days, the order-up-to target covers demand over approximately T + L days, not L alone; under suitable independence and distribution assumptions, a buffer may be based on the variability of demand over that combined horizon. Thus two firms facing identical daily demand and lead time can require different reserves because one orders continuously and the other only on scheduled market days. Similarly, single-period inventory with uncertain demand is better represented by the newsvendor problem. With underage cost Cu for one unit of unmet demand and overage cost Co for one unused unit, the continuous-demand optimum satisfies $F(Q^*) = Cu/(Cu + Co)$, provided the stated demand distribution F and linear marginal costs are justified. Salvage proceeds, expiry, substitution and social consequences change these costs. Neither model should be presented as a universal prescription for all stock.

Inventory arithmetic should also distinguish the unit used for ordering from the unit used for financial valuation and physical picking. A carton, case, kilogram and pallet may coexist in one enterprise; unit conversion errors can overwhelm optimization gains. A minimal stock master identifies each stock-keeping unit, base measurement, packaging multiple, usable shelf life, lead-time clock, approved supplier, cost basis and criticality. An inventory policy is operationally credible only when staff can execute the rule with available data, transport schedules and authorization rights. The finance function should monitor the cash conversion cycle and supplier settlement terms alongside days on hand, because a reserve financed by overdue supplier payments may merely displace fragility upstream.

19.4 WAREHOUSING AND STORAGE

19.4.1 Storage as a controlled transformation, not an idle location

A warehouse is simultaneously a physical location, a custody regime, a data system and a point of operational transformation. Receiving confirms identity, quantity, condition and entitlement; put-away allocates a safe and traceable location; storage protects quality; picking and packing assemble customer orders; dispatch establishes transfer evidence; returns processing determines re-entry, quarantine, repair, recycling or disposal. Cross-docking minimizes dwell by directing eligible inbound loads toward outbound dispatch, but only when item, destination, timing and quality information are dependable. A warehouse cannot compensate indefinitely for incoherent upstream forecasts or unapproved order changes.

Layout decisions reconcile accessibility, travel distance, handling safety, product compatibility and security. Fast-moving items are often placed near dispatch, but velocity-based slotting should be qualified by weight, fragility, packaging dimensions and risk. Food and medicines require appropriate temperature and hygiene controls; hazardous materials require verified compatibility, labeling, ventilation and worker safeguards. FIFO allocates oldest receipt first and FEFO prioritizes earliest expiry where relevant. Neither solves a stock ledger whose batches are not recorded correctly. Cycle counts can target high-value or error-prone locations rather than waiting for one annual inventory closure.

Storage becomes especially consequential when condition deteriorates with time, temperature, humidity or handling. For a cold-chain product, a recorded arrival temperature is insufficient evidence of continuous protection during transport and storage. The system needs specified permissible ranges, calibrated monitoring, excursion records, segregated quarantine, authorized disposition and traceable batch linkage to the customer. Where power reliability is uncertain, backup supply and a documented holdover response must be appraised against realistic failure duration rather than assumed adequate. The required controls vary with the product and applicable standards; this general framework neither certifies a facility nor substitutes for technical, pharmaceutical or food-safety requirements.

Warehouse flow also creates capacity queues. A receiving dock that can process deliveries rapidly in a typical hour may nevertheless generate substantial delay when several inbound vehicles arrive together. Managers should therefore measure arrival variability, unloading and inspection time, put-away capacity and release constraints, rather than interpret floor space alone as effective warehouse capacity. Cross-docking can reduce inventory and dwell time, but concentrating arrival and dispatch schedules too tightly may reduce the margin for recovery when quality release or border clearance runs late.

19.4.2 Accuracy, shrinkage and human safety

Book-to-physical accuracy must distinguish several indicators: count-line accuracy is the share of counted lines whose recorded quantity lies within a defined tolerance; quantity variance measures the absolute or signed unit discrepancy; value accuracy weights by unit cost; and location accuracy asks whether a physically present item is where the system says it is. A firm could report 98% line accuracy and still have critical expired product in one uncorrected location. Variances arise from receiving errors, unrecorded damages, unconfirmed transfers, theft, unit-of-measure confusion and deliberate manipulation. An accountable process isolates each discrepancy, reconstructs transaction history, corrects records under authorization and examines root causes. Simply resetting the balance conceals failure.

Worker safety and productivity are joint design variables. High racks without appropriate loading and handling controls, congested aisles, excessive manual lifting, unsafe pedestrian–vehicle interactions and long shifts can produce injury risk even when the dispatch dashboard improves. The choice between manual shelves, forklifts, barcodes and automated sorting should therefore be evaluated against throughput, error rates, training, maintenance, energy, capital availability and contingency when power or connectivity fails. Warehouse-management-system integration can reduce duplicate transactions but creates new failure modes if stock is not updated at the event of physical movement. An employee's ability to report and isolate unsafe or damaged goods without retaliation is an essential quality and governance mechanism.

An auditable count procedure begins with a frozen transaction timestamp, independent or blind count for selected items, documented discrepancies, recount thresholds and controlled ledger adjustment. Sampling must not systematically exclude inconvenient locations; high-consequence stock deserves greater attention even when its accounting value is low. Root-cause findings should distinguish process error from theft or misconduct to avoid punitive responses based only on variance. Pick accuracy, receipt-to-available time, stock ageing, preventable damage and worker injuries should be examined jointly, since maximizing picks per hour can conceal growing rework or unsafe handling. The economic test of an automation investment must include human training, integration, maintenance, power interruptions and the possibility of continuing manual operations during failure.

19.5 TRANSPORT AND DISTRIBUTION

19.5.1 Mode selection as a multi-objective decision

Transport creates time and place utility by connecting supply and demand, but its performance depends on much more than distance. Modes include road, rail, air, inland water and maritime transport, combined in intermodal services where infrastructure and handling interfaces permit. Road affords relative flexibility and final-mile reach, though road freight is exposed to traffic, fuel prices, vehicle breakdown, pavement and security conditions. Rail can move heavy consolidated loads efficiently where routes, terminals and service schedules fit the shipment; air prioritizes speed or high-value urgency at generally higher cost and different environmental implications. Shipping containers improve interchangeability across modes but do not eliminate customs procedures, terminal congestion or last-mile constraints. In Rwanda, the immediate feasibility of modes differs from that in a coastal port city. A nominally cheap overseas ocean freight rate cannot be evaluated without the inland corridor, border handling, insurance and inventory implications.

Transport mode choice can be formulated as a comparison of generalized landed and service costs. Let C_k denote quoted freight and terminal charges for alternative k, T_k expected delivery lead time, V the cargo value, r the relevant annual financing rate, and E_k expected service/disruption losses. One simplified comparison is G_k = C_k + V(rT_k/365) + E_k, with common currency and calendar days. Actual decision-making may additionally require taxes and duties, damages, perishability, carbon impacts, insurance, loading, labor, contractual penalties, security and credible tail-risk estimates. The expected monetary sum is not the full ethical decision when a late delivery could endanger people or violate a legal standard. For an illustrative cargo valued at RWF 12 million and financing cost 18% annually, an additional seven-day delay generates an approximate incremental carrying cost of 12,000,000×0.18×7/365 = RWF 41,425, before any lost sales or spoilage. This calculation clarifies the financial mechanism; it does not establish a typical Rwandan interest rate.

19.5.2 Routing, load consolidation and last-mile design

Vehicle routing is a constrained optimization problem with customers, delivery windows, capacities, road availability, driving-time rules, vehicle limits and return destinations. Its simplest distance-minimization variant differs from a realistic routing problem in which deliveries have time windows, refrigeration needs, loading priorities and client service guarantees. A feasible route must also accommodate driver rest, occupational safety, weight restrictions and proof of delivery. Repeated demand can support fixed milk-run routes, while highly variable orders may require dynamic dispatch. Combining smaller deliveries into well-planned routes can improve vehicle utilization but lengthen the wait for customers who would otherwise receive direct service.

Last-mile operations often experience high delivery cost per unit because shipments fragment, addresses or receiving arrangements are imprecise, and unsuccessful delivery requires costly repeat visits. In practice, a manager should compare consignment value, drop density, route time, first-attempt success and claims rather than simply average cost per kilometre. A motorcycle courier may outperform a large truck for small urgent urban deliveries without being suitable for bulk cargo, temperature-sensitive freight or unsafe load weights. Consolidation points, agreed delivery windows, pickup arrangements, verified phone confirmation and electronic proof of delivery can reduce avoidable trips. These improvements remain conditional on customer accessibility, digital inclusion and safe labor practices.

Route design additionally raises a distributional question: which customers should receive scarce vehicle capacity when deadlines conflict? A pure revenue-maximization model can deprioritize remote or low-margin users, while a strict first-come rule may ignore essential-service criticality. Enterprises should disclose the hierarchy of contractual due dates, product deterioration, safety urgency and equitable access before allocating shortages. A route plan then becomes an accountable decision, not just a shortest-path calculation. Comparing alternative routes requires consistent treatment of the return journey, partial loads, unsuccessful delivery attempts, vehicle maintenance, tolls and the hours worked by drivers. Scenario-based routing should include a contingency for flooding, congestion, fuel disruption and manual dispatch if the digital platform fails.

19.5.3 Freight allocation, ownership and claims

Freight arrangements distribute more than the price of a vehicle. Contracts should identify pickup and delivery locations, loading and unloading responsibilities, insurance, custody, temperature and security requirements, delay notification, demurrage exposure, proof of delivery, loss/damage claims and dispute handling. For international trade, Incoterms® 2020 contain eleven trade rules allocating selected tasks, costs and the point of risk transfer in sales of goods. The ICC explicitly cautions that they are not the entire sales contract; they do not by themselves determine ownership transfer, payment terms or all legal remedies (International Chamber of Commerce [ICC], 2020). A commercial contract stating “CIF Kigali” is especially problematic: CIF is limited to sea or inland-waterway carriage and uses a named port of destination, whereas Kigali is inland. A multimodal consignment may instead require careful consideration of CIP or another appropriate rule, with the named place, insurance and risk allocation expressly agreed (ICC, 2020). The competent logistics manager coordinates legal counsel, purchasing and finance before a shipping term is accepted.

The practical compliance question is which documentary event the contracting parties will accept as proof of each obligation. A consignment note, bill of lading, electronic proof of delivery, temperature record and insurance certificate evidence different facts; none alone establishes that goods were conforming, correctly valued and free from loss. Freight claims should record condition at collection, seal and packaging integrity, custody transfer, timely notice and the applicable liability limit or exclusion. A dispute often involves several contracts, including the sale, carriage, insurance and customs agency arrangements, so the parties must not infer title or insurance entitlement from an Incoterms designation alone. An ethical claims system should preserve evidence fairly, prevent opportunistic deductions from small carriers and authorize prompt correction where the enterprise itself caused damage.

19.6 CROSS-BORDER LOGISTICS AND TRADE FACILITATION

19.6.1 The institutional chain beyond the border gate

Cross-border logistics combines physical movement with regulatory authorization. Importers and exporters must verify applicable tariff classification, customs valuation, rules of origin, technical requirements, sanitary and phytosanitary controls where applicable, conformity documentation, transit arrangements and destination-specific permissions. A typical consignment may require a commercial invoice, packing list, transport document, origin evidence, insurance records, customs declaration and product-specific permits. This is a functional checklist, not a claim that every document is legally required for every Rwandan shipment. Procedures vary by product, origin, destination and the current legal instruments. Incorrect harmonized-system classification or unsupported declarations can create delay, penalties and unfair treatment of market participants.

The WTO Trade Facilitation Agreement (TFA) seeks more predictable, simplified and transparent border procedures. Article 10.4 requires members to *endeavour* to establish or maintain a single window, a deliberately qualified treaty formulation rather than an unconditional guarantee of one portal functioning perfectly (World Trade Organization [WTO], 2017). The World Customs Organization's Revised Kyoto Convention sets out principles of transparency, simplified declarations, risk management, information technology and coordinated border interventions (World Customs Organization [WCO], n.d.). Trade facilitation does not mean abandoning legitimate health, security or revenue controls. Rather, properly designed risk assessment should allocate inspection effort toward relevant risk instead of imposing universal friction. Customs digitalization also cannot repair impassable roads, port congestion or incomplete supplier documentation upstream.

19.6.2 Rwanda as a landlocked economy dependent on external corridors

The EAC identifies the Northern Corridor from Mombasa and the Central Corridor from Dar es Salaam as principal regional transport routes, serving several interior countries including Rwanda (East African Community [EAC], n.d.-g). Their economic significance extends beyond geographic length. Port performance, border inspections, road closures, terminal transfer, trucking competition, fuel costs and political relations influence not only freight charges but the variance of replenishment lead times. When inventory crosses several borders, a small factory may face cash tied up in goods that have been invoiced but cannot yet be transformed or sold. Contracting, documentary quality, customs procedure and replenishment-buffer design thus form one problem. A comparative decision should assess credible alternative route costs and times for the actual commodity rather than assuming one corridor is universally superior.

The NCTO's *Northern Corridor Quarterly Performance Dashboard, July to September 2025* reported the Mombasa–Kigali route's average transit time as 168 hours (seven days) across July, August and September 2025, with the monthly values 168, 154 and 181 hours respectively and a listed route distance of 1,693 kilometres (Northern Corridor Transport Observatory [NCTO], 2025, Table 5, p. 13). These published values describe an operationally defined corridor indicator based on the underlying reporting system, not the distribution of all importers' delivery times. Averaging monthly figures hides extreme delays, and the route's reported 'average' is not a parcel-level service guarantee. The quarterly series offers context for a hypothetical eight-day planning lead time but does not validate that parameter for an actual distributor. A useful managerial response is to record shipment-by-shipment port, customs, border, carrier and warehouse timestamps to construct the relevant enterprise-level distribution.

RRA states that the Rwanda Electronic Single Window was launched in 2012 and supports a single declaration and information sharing among the trading community and relevant authorities (Rwanda Revenue Authority [RRA], n.d.-f). Its announced evolution toward a Single Transactions Portal is a stated institutional development rather than a verified prediction of future savings. The distinction between electronic submission and physically released, deliverable goods is crucial. Reconciled clearance status, carrier dispatch and receiving information should drive the inbound plan; mere confirmation that a form has been lodged does not mean goods are available to production. Firms must keep electronic records and exception procedures in place while maintaining compliant alternatives during network outages.

The measurement protocol for the quoted corridor series deserves precision. The NCTO table reports RRA-sourced average transit time for a defined route in July, August and September 2025, not a statistically identified probability distribution for all freight or an end-to-end import clearance time from the ship to usable warehouse stock. In particular, cargo may incur port dwell, inspection, unloading or quality-release time outside the clock represented by a given published indicator. For inventory policy the enterprise needs its own timestamps from authorized order release to physically usable stock, reconciled to invoices, carrier events and customs decisions. The regional source is useful precisely because it highlights the possibility of temporal variation without supplying the firm-specific parameters needed for a safety-stock calculation.

19.6.3 Trade integration, corridor diversification and affordability

Regional integration can reduce certain documentary or market-entry frictions, yet enterprises must not confuse accession to a regional trade arrangement with automatic eligibility for a duty preference or immediate border clearance. Preferential treatment depends on applicable rules of origin and the specific agreement; product standards and national implementation remain consequential. A manufacturer considering the EAC or AfCFTA should separate market-access strategy (Chapter 30) from the logistics decision: how freight and inland handling will actually reach the consignee, who bears transit risk, and how return shipments and after-sales obligations are funded. A regional network expands potential demand, but can also expand exposure to currency, congestion, compliance and working-capital conditions.

Rwandan microenterprises and cooperatives may encounter scale disadvantages when moving small consignments over long corridors. Pooling loads through trusted consolidators or cooperative facilities can reduce unit freight cost, but adds handling, governance and distributional issues: which producer receives scarce vehicle space, who verifies quality and whose shipment is delayed when documentation fails? Policy analysis should identify genuine market failures and proportional institutional remedies rather than assuming either deregulation or digital platforms automatically solve the landlocked constraint. The relevant comparison is between achievable service systems with transparent costs and risks, not between idealized open markets and an undifferentiated description of 'African logistics'.

19.7 SUPPLY CHAIN RISK AND RESILIENCE

19.7.1 Disturbance, exposure, robustness, resilience and viability

Risk concerns uncertainty about outcomes relevant to an objective, with disturbances including demand shocks, supplier failure, vehicle breakdown, cyberattack, climate-related hazards, border closure, labor interruption, contamination and financial insolvency. Exposure is the extent to which a disruption can affect a network; robustness is the capacity to withstand disturbance without major structural change; resilience is the capacity to anticipate, respond, recover and adapt; viability concerns continued provision of essential functions under more profound system changes. These concepts intersect but are not synonyms. An enterprise may be robust to a one-day transport strike and unable to adapt to a sustained closure; it may restore internal throughput while its most vulnerable customers remain unserved.

Chopra and Sodhi (2004) argue that distinct risks require distinct mitigations. Christopher and Peck (2004) describe how complexity and reduced slack may increase vulnerability. Sheffi and Rice (2005) differentiate redundancy, such as reserved stock or spare capacity, from flexibility, such as the ability to switch a supplier or reallocate production. Ivanov and Dolgui's (2020) viability account broadens the system boundary to socially critical network provision. None implies that every firm should maximize redundancy: maintaining alternatives carries purchase, qualification, relationship, information, environmental and cash costs. The appropriate level of preparedness follows the severity, uncertainty, substitutability, lead time and distribution of consequences for each critical item.

19.7.2 Mapping concentration and hidden common-mode failures

A supplier list displaying three independent company names may conceal one shared regional port, subcontractor, data provider or origin of essential inputs. The relevant risk unit is not merely supplier count, but dependence across underlying components, facilities and geographic hazards. Managers can map critical tier-one and deeper suppliers, port/corridor dependence, alternative stock availability, qualification lead time and contract termination conditions. Concentration indicators such as a Herfindahl index of supplier expenditure shares can describe spend distribution but do not directly measure probability or impact of disruption. The analysis must include common-mode failures and the time needed to activate alternatives.

A structured risk register combines specific scenario, event pathway, earliest observables, probability evidence (when defensible), exposure, estimated consequence, mitigation owner and review trigger. An illustrative risk can be scored for screening, but multiplication of ordinal 1–5 'likelihood' and 'impact' scales is not cardinal expected loss. Monetary expected loss is $E[L] = \Sigma p_s L_s$ only when probabilities p_s are meaningful, mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive for the modeled cases. Stress testing is preferable where tail probabilities cannot be defensibly estimated. For perishables, tail events may dominate average cost even when frequent delivery is reliable. For essential clinical supplies, a social minimum-service constraint may be justified independent of the enterprise's immediate expected margin.

19.7.3 Border disruption and continuity economics: a transparent scenario

Consider the constructed distributor from Section 19.3 with d = 80 cartons/day. Suppose an unanticipated corridor interruption could extend replenishment lead time by six days. Without substitutes or an earlier shipment, **480 cartons** of additional demand arise during the extension, above the mean forecast for the original lead-time window. This is a deterministic incremental-exposure calculation, not a probability of shortage. Assume an emergency alternative can deliver the 480 cartons at an incremental premium of RWF 220 per carton plus RWF 45,000 dispatch/setup, for a total **RWF 150,600**. A second option is to finance and hold 480 additional cartons at an annual holding cost of RWF 1,200 each, i.e., **RWF 576,000 annually**, assuming continued maintenance of the incremental stock and ignoring initial stock value as an expense. The solutions are not directly comparable until disruption frequency, financial liquidity, supplier reliability, stock perishability and applicable decision horizon are stated.

For an explicitly hypothetical one-year case, suppose a disruption requiring the response has probability 0.30, occurs at most once, and the alternative supply is always available. Expected additional annual emergency cost is 0.30×150,600 = **RWF 45,180**, below RWF 576,000 in additional annual holding expense. Under these assumptions, permanent 480-carton buffering solely for this scenario is not cost-minimizing. However, this expectation changes if the emergency alternative disappears when the same corridor fails, if lost customer contribution is not recoverable, if delays last longer, or if the product has nonmonetary criticality. Holding a buffer could still be defensible for operational or ethical reasons. The calculation is intentionally simple: a real policy would optimize a distribution of lead times and correlated disruptions, with a feasible plan for simultaneously disrupted suppliers.

The emergency-versus-buffer comparison has an important decision-theoretic limitation. The emergency alternative is modeled as perfectly available whenever required, although a supplier drawing on the same port or corridor might fail in exactly the same event. This dependence is a common-mode risk, not an independent inconvenience that can be ignored after multiplying premium by probability. A realistic comparison would include the probability of alternative-supply failure conditional on the original disruption, the resulting forgone contribution or consequential harm, and the delay required to qualify substitute material. The expected-cost calculation is therefore a restricted benchmark, not proof that minimum inventories are universally superior. Where probabilities are highly unreliable, a stress-tested maximum acceptable service interruption may be more defensible than an apparently precise expected loss.

19.7.4 Continuity command and accountable recovery

Effective continuity preparation specifies signals and decision thresholds before a disruption. The procurement lead verifies alternate availability and specification equivalence; logistics confirms routing, carrier and border conditions; operations reschedules product mix; sales communicates revised delivery dates; finance authorizes emergency expenditure; quality verifies damaged or substituted inputs; and senior management protects legal and safety constraints. During an event, an auditable incident log records timestamps, stock, customer prioritization, workaround approvals, communication and remediation. Recovery review should compare planned and actual outcomes, identify avoidable harm, and update assumptions without converting a single dramatic event into an unsupported general law.

The recovery process should differentiate restoration of volume from restoration of legitimate service. A factory might resume production while a vulnerable customer group continues to experience shortages, a substitute product awaits conformity approval or suppliers are carrying uncompensated emergency costs. Managers should therefore define recovery time and recovery point objectives for critical records, together with minimum service quantities, safe substitution rules, decision authority and customer-notification thresholds. A post-incident review should preserve the chronology of warnings, rejected alternatives, emergency expenditures, physical inventory, quality holds and actual customer consequences. That record enables the organization to distinguish

errors of foresight from errors of execution and to evaluate whether additional redundancy, greater flexibility or better institutional coordination would have produced a meaningfully different outcome.

19.8 SUPPLIER AND CUSTOMER INTEGRATION

19.8.1 Coordination beyond transaction exchange

Supply chain integration joins internal decision-making with selected interorganizational processes without requiring full corporate ownership. Shared forecasts, vendor-managed replenishment, synchronized delivery schedules, common product identifiers, collaborative performance reviews and joint risk exercises can lower information latency and conflicting signals. CPFR provides a family of collaborative forecasting and replenishment practices rather than a single mandatory software product. Supplier relations are not universally cooperative, however: commercial parties have different margins, bargaining positions and incentives to reveal sensitive data. Integration is justified when there is a demonstrable cross-boundary interdependence that can be managed more effectively together than apart.

Barratt (2004) argues that collaboration depends on cultural, strategic and operational fit rather than technology adoption alone. Fawcett et al. (2008) identify process and social impediments that make high-profile collaboration hard to sustain. These arguments qualify a naive transaction-cost prescription to share all information with all partners. A producer may share aggregated forecasts while retaining customer identities, and may grant a logistics carrier shipment milestone access without disclosing purchase margins. Contracts should specify data minimization, timing, auditability, performance exceptions and allocation of adjustment costs. Buyer power can make data requests coercive when smaller suppliers have little capacity to refuse; procedural fairness and proportionate technology burdens consequently matter.

19.8.2 Governance instruments and failure conditions

A practical integration charter records the business problem, authorized participants, common item definitions, order cutoff times, forecast versions, revisions, exception response, system access, confidentiality, data retention and dispute resolution. It also identifies the indicators by which collaboration will be evaluated, rather than assuming meetings are valuable because they are frequent. Joint improvement should use a relevant baseline and account for simultaneous price or demand changes. If a pilot reduces visible backorders but increases emergency supplier labor, the network may have shifted rather than removed cost. Governance must include remedy for late payment, rejected conforming goods, inaccurate buyer forecasts and abrupt demand changes.

Customer integration should likewise respect differences among retail, institutional and vulnerable users. A hospital may require documented product traceability and minimum continuity stock; a small shop may need manageable pack sizes and reliable collection arrangements; a digital customer may demand accurate order visibility and reasonable return handling. The commercial relationship is made sustainable not by abstract 'customer centricity' alone but by a credible set of mutually understood commitments, including what happens when availability fails.

Incentive compatibility is central to collaboration. A retailer that frequently revises forecasts may benefit from rapid upstream replenishment while transferring all write-off costs to the producer. Conversely, a producer whose incentives reward shipment rather than saleable delivery may overfill a retailer and report artificially attractive service levels. Governance can address these asymmetries through agreed forecast horizons, shared exception evidence, equitable allocation of obsolete stock and timely dispute procedures. Agreements should not grant the more powerful party unlimited access to smaller partners’ customer or employee information. Success is better demonstrated by improvements in joint service and cost-to-serve, with adverse effects documented on both sides, than by the volume of data exchanged.

19.9 SUPPLY CHAIN INFORMATION SYSTEMS

19.9.1 Digital records as an operational control architecture

Enterprise resource planning (ERP) connects purchasing, stock, production, sales and accounting records; warehouse management systems (WMS) manage bin-level and task-level movements; transport management systems (TMS) support carrier selection, dispatch and tracking; application programming interfaces or electronic data interchange may transmit orders and shipment statuses between firms. Barcode or radio-frequency identification can improve identity capture, while telemetry and Internet-of-Things (IoT) devices can measure vehicle location or storage temperature. These systems answer different questions and depend on aligned item masters, units of measure, location codes, timestamps and approval responsibilities. Adding sensors to fundamentally incorrect inventory records can multiply rather than remove confusion.

The ASCM SCOR Digital Standard classifies supply chain activities across orchestrate, plan, order, source, transform, fulfill and return, enabling process comparison without implying that every organization should acquire a comprehensive enterprise suite (Association for Supply Chain Management [ASCM], n.d.). A useful minimum viable digital architecture for a small firm may be a controlled item register, transaction-level receipts/issues, regularly reconciled stock balances, a shipment milestone log and an escalation channel. Larger firms may require integrated batch genealogy and multiple warehouse systems. Decisions should reflect transactions per period, system uptime, training capacity, auditability, integration cost, network reliability and recovery procedures.

19.9.2 Traceability, cybersecurity and the limits of digitization

Traceability connects identifiers and events to establish the origin, movement, transformation and custody of a specified item or batch. A traceable production lot might require supplier lot identifier, production date, packaging batch, storage location, dispatch manifest and consignee record. Visibility is not equivalent to traceability: a vehicle location does not prove which sealed goods are inside, whether a temperature threshold was breached or whether the declared origin is true. Claims of provenance require verified event capture and controls against tampering. An immutable record of an untrue input remains untrue; technology cannot substitute for physical inspection, credible institutions or accountability.

Cybersecurity is a direct supply-risk category because ransomware, credential theft, unauthorized changes to master data and compromised third-party integrations can interrupt both planning and shipment authorization. ISO 28000:2022 supplies a published security-management-system reference relevant to supply chains, although the existence of a standard is not evidence of an enterprise’s certification or legal obligation (International Organization for Standardization [ISO], 2022e). Access should be role-based; high-risk changes need approval; critical records require backup and tested recovery; external integrations should be reviewed; and staff should know manual fallback procedures. The principle of least privilege may conflict with flexible exception handling during outages, so emergency access must be bounded, logged and retrospectively reviewed. Data protection matters when shipment histories reveal identifiable persons, household locations, employees or commercially sensitive customers. The balance to seek is sufficient information for a defined operational purpose, not unlimited visibility.

19.9.3 Evaluating the business case for a digital logistics intervention

A digital investment should specify its causal mechanism and a measurable counterfactual: improved barcode capture might reduce stock discrepancies, enabling fewer emergency orders and more dependable fill rates. Capital costs, subscriptions, scanners, network costs, training, transaction cleanup, operational disruption, cybersecurity, downtime recovery and vendor dependence all belong in the evaluation. A dashboard may show higher recorded accuracy because exceptions are automatically suppressed; independent stock counts and complaint audits are needed before interpreting this as improved physical control. Waller and Fawcett (2013) explain the research significance of data science in supply chains while acknowledging the importance of domain competence. This warrants serious experimentation, not the conclusion that algorithmic recommendations are superior merely because their data volume is large.

A proportionate evaluation may begin with a deliberately limited pilot: one warehouse zone or a selected group of stock-keeping units is assigned a barcode and controlled receipt procedure while a comparable zone retains current practice. Independent counts and archived transaction data establish baseline error, then observation periods cover normal and peak demand. Because pilots are rarely randomized and zones differ in throughput and staff, estimated differences require caution; a staggered implementation may provide stronger comparison if contamination and seasonality are addressed. Cost analysis must separate one-off data cleaning from recurring software fees and account for recovery time after power or connectivity failure. Employees should retain an intelligible process for challenging erroneous automated adjustments, with an authorized audit trail.

19.10 LOGISTICS AND INVENTORY METRICS

19.10.1 Valid metrics require numerators, denominators and clocks

Performance measurement must begin by deciding what event counts as the unit of service. Unit fill rate measures the share of eligible demand quantities satisfied immediately; order-line fill rate counts lines complete; order-complete rate counts whole orders fully supplied. They may differ sharply where a large institutional order consists of dozens of items. On-time-in-full (OTIF) normally requires both timeliness against an agreed delivery date and the ordered quantity, but organizations must disclose whether delivery is measured at carrier dispatch, customer receipt or agreed proof of delivery, and whether acceptable substitutions count. A perfect-order measure extends completeness and timeliness to damage-free and documentation-accurate fulfillment; differences in definition prevent naive benchmarking.

Inventory turnover commonly equals annual cost of goods sold divided by average inventory valued on a consistent accounting basis; days of inventory outstanding may be estimated as 365/turnover (or using the organization's chosen day-count convention). Calculating turns with sales revenue in the numerator and inventory at cost in the denominator produces misleading values. Stock accuracy requires reconciled physical evidence. Dock-to-stock time measures receiving elapsed time from a declared start to available-stock status, not merely the time a truck waits at a gate. Transport cost per delivered unit, cost per tonne-kilometre and capacity utilization describe different levels of output; a carrier can improve truck fill but reduce route flexibility and increase emissions through detours. A balanced measurement system must make service, economic cost and physical consequences mutually visible.

Table 19.2. *Logistics and inventory metric dictionary for an auditable scorecard.*

Indicator	Operational definition	Interpretation and audit caution
Inventory turns	Annual COGS ÷ average inventory at cost	Exclude unlike accounting bases; disclose period and inventory averaging
Days inventory held	Days in reporting year ÷ inventory turns	Approximation; not an item-level replenishment lead time
Unit fill rate	Units delivered immediately ÷ eligible units requested	Requires explicit treatment of substitutions, cancellations and backorders
OTIF	Orders meeting both agreed timing and quantity ÷ eligible orders	Freeze original or mutually revised promise consistently
Perfect-order rate	Orders complete, on time, undamaged and document-correct ÷ eligible orders	Criteria and event timestamps must be specified
Stock-record accuracy	Correct physical-count lines ÷ counted stock lines	Define tolerance and stratify critical items; guard against count selection
Freight cost intensity	Total transport cost ÷ delivered units or tonne-km	Assign mode, fixed/variable and returns costs consistently
Cash-to-cash cycle	Inventory days + receivables days − payables days	Company-level liquidity measure with accounting and period assumptions
Transport GHG intensity	Defined transport-chain CO2e ÷ tonne-km or units	Report boundary, factors, allocation and method under ISO 14083 where used

Note. Original metric definitions synthesized from conventional inventory analysis and ASCM's SCOR Digital Standard (ASCM, n.d.). Indicators are useful only if event definitions, data lineage and interpretation are controlled.

19.10.2 Reproducible example and a warning about gaming

Suppose a hypothetical firm fulfilled 950 of 1,000 eligible orders on time and in full, yielding OTIF = 95.0%. If 920 orders additionally met damage-free and accurate-documentation requirements, perfect-order performance = 92.0%, provided the 920 belong to the same eligible cohort. If 19,200 cartons were filled immediately out of 20,000 requested, the unit fill rate is 96.0%; the fact that this exceeds order-level OTIF is neither anomalous nor self-contradictory. These three indicators answer separate questions and should not be averaged into a new score without an explicit theory of how their dimensions matter.

Metrics can generate adaptation and gaming. A manager may redefine 'on time' as arrival at the carrier's depot rather than delivery to the user; staff may split large orders so partially fulfilled lines appear as successful transactions; a warehouse may exclude the stock location most likely to show discrepancies. These are measurement-governance problems, not simply software defects. The remedy is a controlled metric register, periodic independent re-performance from source records, a documented exception taxonomy, stable definitions and consultation with the customers and workers affected. Change in a KPI following a new policy does not establish that the policy caused the change; the counterfactual and concurrent changes must be examined (see Chapter 4).

A decision-oriented scorecard should be read as a configuration rather than a league table. A 95% OTIF may be unsatisfactory for a critical medical delivery but economically wasteful as an indiscriminate target for every nonessential low-margin item. The appropriate service benchmark depends on the product, contractual purpose and consequences of failure, and it must be compared with the incremental cost of improvement. Similarly, inventory turnover can rise because demand strengthens or because inventory collapses and stock-outs increase.

Before endorsing any improvement, management should reconcile physical availability, demand lost to shortages, cash tied up in goods in transit, worker safety and returns. A scorecard becomes a governance instrument when a responsible manager can interrogate anomalous results and authorize correction.

19.11 SUSTAINABILITY AND CIRCULAR LOGISTICS

19.11.1 Environmental impacts travel beyond enterprise boundaries

A logistics system uses fuels, electricity, packaging, roads, buildings and land; it generates emissions, congestion, noise, damaged or discarded products and occupational risks. Transport emissions must be assessed over a declared boundary: vehicle operation, purchased transport service, terminals or more extensive life-cycle processes are not interchangeable. ISO 14083:2023 provides a methodology for quantifying and reporting greenhouse-gas emissions from passenger and freight transport-chain operations (ISO, 2023). It is a methodological standard, not a blanket assertion that a transport route is climate-neutral or that each enterprise must legally adopt it. A credible report defines shipment allocation, activity data, fuel or energy estimates, emission factors, data quality and the scope of uncertainties.

Per-unit emissions can fall when vehicle load factors rise, yet total emissions can increase if the business expands volume or induces longer trips. Centralizing warehouses can reduce building energy while increasing final-mile distances; changing to lighter packaging can reduce freight weight but increase product spoilage if protection is inadequate. Environmental reasoning must therefore use relevant system boundaries and counterfactuals instead of praising any single packaging label or technology. Carter and Rogers (2008) and Seuring and Müller (2008) emphasize the interdependence of economic, environmental and social objectives; their frameworks do not remove the need for empirical comparisons of particular alternatives.

19.11.2 Returns, repair, reuse and closed-loop design

Reverse logistics moves returned, defective, obsolete or reusable items toward inspection, repair, resale, remanufacture, recycling or safe disposal. Its economics depend on collection density, condition uncertainty, disassembly labor, market value of recovered material, transport distance and regulatory duties. A refillable container can reduce single-use packaging but impose reverse transport, washing-water, sanitation and deposit-accounting costs. Enterprises should model expected recovery fractions and quality, not assume every returned unit is reusable. Where returns contain confidential customer data or hazardous substances, secure handling and compliant treatment become part of material recovery.

Circular business models require coordination with design and marketing: products should be distinguishable by batch and ownership; customers need accurate deposit and return terms; finance must record the liability attached to deposits; warehouse staff need a defined quarantine and re-entry process; and the public should receive truthful environmental claims. The design question is not simply whether a recycling programme exists, but whether it demonstrably reduces adverse impacts relative to feasible alternatives while preserving financially sustainable and dignified work. Prior research in sustainable operations indicates the relevance of closed-loop flows and health, safety and environmental integration (Kleindorfer et al., 2005).

Circularity can be evaluated through an explicit unit economics boundary. For example, suppose a hypothetical reusable crate costs RWF 6,000, survives ten effective return cycles, and requires RWF 180 per completed cycle for washing and reverse handling. Ignoring losses, financing and final disposal for illustration, its allocated acquisition and cleaning cost is 6,000/10 + 180 = RWF 780 per effective use. This must be compared with the actual price and impacts of a compliant single-use alternative and adjusted for loss probability, sanitation, transport and breakage. If only six cycles are achieved, the analogous amount rises to RWF 1,180. The difference demonstrates why claims of circular superiority cannot be inferred from the visible use of a returnable container alone. An environmental comparison must also specify vehicle-load changes, product protection and the method used to assign emissions.

19.11.3 Human rights, local access and distributional impacts

Supply networks distribute benefits and burdens unequally. A powerful buyer can improve its stock turnover by transferring inventory carrying costs to small suppliers; relentless delivery deadlines can intensify unsafe driving and unpaid overtime; a route optimized solely for paying demand may leave low-income or distant communities underserved. These are not arguments against efficiency, but reasons to identify the parties whose costs have been excluded. A responsible logistics decision protects lawful wages and rest, safe loading, truthful transport documentation, fair supplier payment arrangements and access to remedy. It should record unavoidable trade-offs and resist claims that one favorable environmental metric cancels serious labor or safety harm. The enterprise's moral legitimacy is not a numerical residual after the freight budget is balanced.

A serious due-diligence process asks where harm may occur in the network, who has the power to prevent it, and whether those affected can obtain remedy. Subcontracted truck drivers, warehouse agency workers, informal loaders and small suppliers may be economically invisible in the focal enterprise’s payroll yet central to its service. Contractual obligations to comply with labour law should be combined with proportionate verification of driving hours, loading practices, remuneration, grievance access and correct handling of dangerous goods. Remedial action should protect affected people rather than merely remove a noncompliant supplier and transfer the risk elsewhere. Environmental improvements require equivalent scrutiny of distributional effects: emission-reduction decisions may shift costs to less-capitalized contractors, while service consolidation can burden isolated communities. Accountable stewardship means stating these trade-offs, identifying lawful minimum protections and evaluating the consequences of feasible alternatives rather than declaring every cost reduction an improvement.

19.12 FUTURE SUPPLY CHAIN MODELS

19.12.1 AI forecasting and decisions under model uncertainty

Artificial intelligence may support demand forecasting, shipment anomaly detection, routing, warehouse slotting, document extraction and maintenance prediction. Its value depends on a defined decision problem, reliable training data, feasible interventions and an appropriate benchmark. A forecasting model that reduces mean absolute error can still worsen service where errors are concentrated in critical low-volume items; a routing algorithm can improve estimated distance while imposing unsafe schedules; and automated purchase orders can reproduce outdated vendor prices. Forecast accuracy must be measured against transparent naive or current-process baselines, on holdout periods appropriate to the decision horizon, with attention to intermittent demand, shocks, nonstationarity and the error distribution. Demonstrating a predictive improvement is not the same as demonstrating financial or societal benefit after implementation.

A robust adoption programme first cleans item and location masters, documents the chosen planning decision, collects representative operational data, and pilots a bounded alternative against a meaningful comparator. Human oversight must be specific: who can override, on what evidence, how errors are logged and who has authority to discontinue the system. Where model monitoring identifies distribution shift, procurement and operations must consider reverting to a simple rule. Waller and Fawcett (2013) anticipated valuable roles for analytics but equally emphasized domain expertise; the principle remains relevant even as generative systems and foundation-model applications are introduced. The future is not determined by a technology category but by verifiable design choices.

AI procurement and routing tools additionally pose problems of objective specification and institutional power. An algorithm optimized to minimize measured kilometres may encourage dangerously narrow rest schedules or suppress low-priority stops; a purchasing system optimized to historical acceptance data can preserve exclusionary vendor practices. Responsible evaluation should test differential service across geographies, unusual demand weeks and small suppliers, in addition to aggregate prediction accuracy. Automated recommendations should operate within documented delegated powers: the system may flag an exception, while

an identified person remains responsible for approving a legally consequential substitution, hazardous shipment or customer-priority change. Such controls are not evidence that the technology is ineffective; they specify the conditions under which its use is legitimate and reviewable.

19.12.2 Autonomous logistics, digital trade and infrastructural preconditions

Automated material handling and advanced driver assistance are already used in selected settings; more ambitious autonomous freight operations depend on infrastructure, weather, road conditions, insurance, lawful authorization, maintenance and emergency control arrangements. In a Rwandan urban warehouse, narrow aisles, inconsistent packaging and unreliable electricity can affect the economics differently from those in a large high-throughput distribution centre. Cloud tracking may aid regional shipments but fail at the precise point where roaming or border data services deteriorate. Digital trade documents can reduce repeated submission where agencies exchange trustworthy information, yet their benefits depend on legal acceptance and practical interoperability, as the TFA single-window language recognizes (WTO, 2017).

Regional and global restructuring is often described as a move toward 'nearshoring' or 'friendshoring'. Those labels are descriptive strategies, not universal evidence of improved cost or resilience. Concentrating production in a politically aligned region can reduce some exposures while creating common climate or supplier risks; dispersed sourcing can improve option value while increasing coordination burdens. Managers should compare explicit route-, supplier- and lead-time scenarios and avoid assuming either globalization or regionalization is inherently the safest model. Dated monitoring of international standards and geopolitical developments is necessary, but long-run decision principles remain: maintain truthful records, protect essential service, quantify trade-offs, preserve feasible alternatives and govern information.

19.13 RWANDA-BASED APPLICATION AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON

19.13.1 What the official evidence establishes and what it does not

NISR's 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey reports 278,060 business enterprises and states that at least 87% of the business landscape was informal. It also reports that 62.6% of surveyed manufacturing companies did not use full production capacity, with low demand and problems affecting input availability among the reported explanations (NISR, 2025f). These figures establish that enterprise scale, recordkeeping and demand conditions must be considered when designing inventory systems. They do not measure aggregate warehouse stock accuracy, true stock-out risk, national digital-traceability penetration or the return on ERP investment. A chain-wide model designed for a large listed multinational is therefore an analytic starting point, not an operating template to be imposed indiscriminately.

The 2025 NCTO corridor measurements, summarized in Section 19.6, provide a second kind of evidence: observed administrative transport indicators. The reported Mombasa–Kigali monthly averages of 168, 154 and 181 hours should be understood as a time-bounded route measurement, not a forecast for a food-processing consignment in 2026. The dispersion among monthly averages indicates that a single constant lead time may be an inadequate planning representation, but the available aggregate data alone cannot identify parcel-level variance or the precise cause of a given delay. A sound case therefore uses the published observations to motivate firm-level data collection without pretending that public data determine a particular firm's optimal ROP.

19.13.2 Fully constructed teaching case: Kigali packaged-food distribution

The teaching enterprise imports cartons and food-safe packaging via a regional transport corridor and sells packed household food products to retailers and institutional users. It has no identified name and no asserted employees, managers or financial statements. Its illustrative parameters are the D, S, H, d and uncertainty values in Section 19.3, plus the six-day exceptional delay scenario in Section 19.7. Sales promises an eligible order service target, operations requires packaging by a specified production date, and finance imposes a capital ceiling. The logistics manager must reconcile the approximately 849-carton EOQ and 920-carton ROP with warehouse capacity, pack size and the sensitivity to long lead times.

The baseline recommendation is a controlled continuous-review pilot using inventory position rather than physical stock alone, approximate 850-carton replenishment lots after checking actual packaging constraints, a nominal 95% cycle-service safety buffer of roughly 279 cartons under the assumed independent normal model, and systematic reconciliation of receipts, transit orders and exceptions. Before implementation, the firm must establish that the cost of RWF 18,000 is per order rather than per unit, that RWF 1,200 includes an appropriate annual capital and storage allowance, and that the lead-time data actually warrant independence and normality. Where orders arrive in full truckload or fixed pallets, compare feasible order quantities by total cost. Where shelf life is binding, an inventory ceiling and expiry policy may dominate the EOQ recommendation.

The disruption exercise is not a recommendation to eliminate redundancy. Under its intentionally narrow one-event probability assumption, an expected RWF 45,180 annual emergency premium is below the RWF 576,000 annual holding cost for a standing 480-carton reserve. The enterprise nevertheless requires an operationally credible alternative supply source and an explicit service-priority rule. If available funds are too limited to hold incremental stock but substitute shipments are unreliable, a hybrid plan could allocate a smaller critical buffer and maintain qualified alternative carriers. Selecting the hybrid requires new evidence rather than a numerical answer invented here. The appropriate deliverable is a management memorandum disclosing both the cost comparison and its fragility under correlated border disruptions.

19.13.3 International transferability: comparisons of mechanism, not prestige

International practice offers at least three useful comparators. The SCOR Digital Standard provides a process taxonomy and performance dimensions that can organize a Rwandan firm's measurement vocabulary (ASCM, n.d.). Fisher's (1997) functional/innovative product framework illustrates why predictable staples and fashion or innovation-sensitive goods should not share a single replenishment policy. The World Bank's 2023 Logistics Performance Index (LPI), covering 139 economies, identifies border control, infrastructure, logistics services, timeliness and tracking as system-level logistics dimensions (World Bank, 2023). These sources do not establish that a selected country's technology or ranking can be reproduced by purchasing identical software in Kigali.

The relevant transfer test asks whether the source setting and local setting share the proposed mechanism's prerequisites. Automated picking depends on volume, standardized units, maintenance and energy; vendor-managed inventory depends on credible shared transactions and negotiated rights; near-zero-stock production depends on replenishment reliability and capable recovery; high-frequency direct delivery depends on density and transport economics. In a country whose imports require inland transit from maritime gateways, tail lead-time risk may justify a larger strategically selected buffer than a coastal comparison. Conversely, severe liquidity constraints may make trusted consolidation or shared storage more attractive than expensive redundancy. The lesson is conditional transfer with explicit feasibility tests, not the rejection of international theory or its unquestioned adoption.

The 2011 Great East Japan Earthquake provides a documented international comparison of structural interdependence and recovery. Toyota reported that disruption to its parts suppliers and infrastructure interrupted production following the 11 March earthquake. Its April 22, 2011 announcement projected staged normalization, with different timelines for Japan and overseas plants; its later regulatory reporting recorded that

factories recovered earlier than initially anticipated (Toyota Motor Corporation, 2011a, 2011b). These are organizational disclosures, not independent causal estimates of the value of particular resilience investments. Their value here is analytical: production sites that were not themselves destroyed still depended on components and capabilities located elsewhere, and restoration required coordination across supplier tiers, plants and regions.

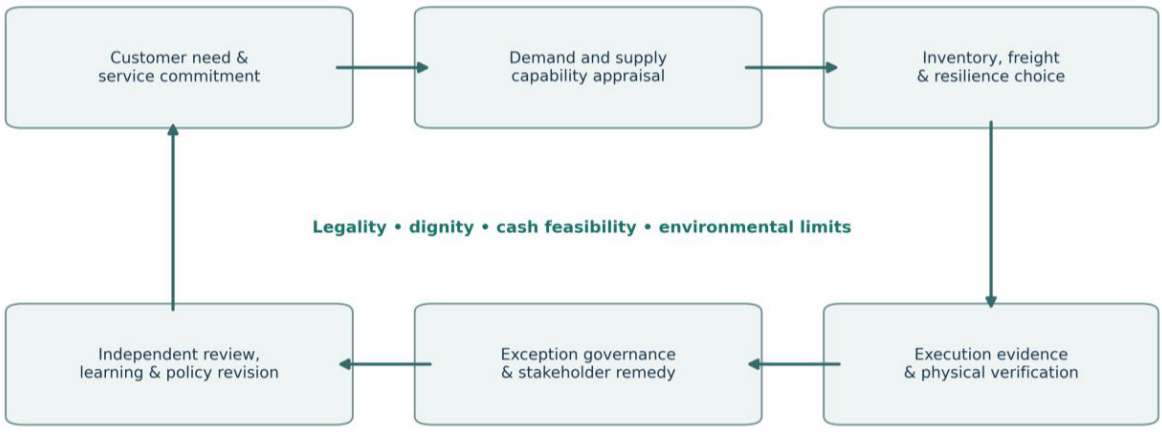
The transferability lesson is not that a Rwandan food distributor should replicate Toyota's supplier network or hold the same level of redundancy. Scale, product criticality, capital access, production technology and institutional conditions are different. The transferable mechanism is the need to identify hidden common dependencies, specify recovery authority and build feasible alternatives before an interruption. Toyota's experience also cautions against presenting lean production as synonymous with zero resilience: the relevant question is how buffer placement, flexibility and information interact in a particular network, not whether an entire managerial philosophy should be accepted or rejected because of one major disruption. Comparing a multinational manufacturing network with a small landlocked distributor is therefore a test of conditions and mechanisms, not corporate prestige.

19.14 CROSS-FUNCTIONAL SYNTHESIS, ETHICS AND RESEARCH AGENDA

19.14.1 Integrated supply-chain value as a set of constraints

The foregoing analysis supports an analytical framework comprising six linked capabilities: **network intelligibility** (knowing nodes and dependencies), **demand interpretation** (distinguishing consumption from orders), **stock discipline** (declared replenishment rules and valid records), **execution reliability** (warehousing, transport and borders), **adaptive capacity** (credible response and recovery), and **legitimate governance** (lawful, fair, environmentally responsible and accountable decisions). Their relationship is not claimed to be a newly validated structural model. It is a testable synthesis suggesting that an improvement in one capability produces durable value only when the other capabilities do not impose a binding contradiction.

Figure 19.2. *The supply-chain decision and accountability loop.*



Note. Original conceptual synthesis. The cycle links service commitments, capability appraisal, logistics choice, execution evidence, exception governance and learning; legality, dignity, cash feasibility and environmental limits constrain each stage. Proposed for analysis, not empirically validated.

Supply chain management affects and is affected by at least five specialized functions. Marketing's service promise changes the shortage penalty and required response time; procurement's contract defines supplier lead-time and alternative-source options; operations determines consumption rates and acceptable input substitutions; finance decides how much capital can remain in transit or storage; governance and HR determine whether deviations can be reported honestly and handled safely. Quality management, developed in Chapter 20, determines whether a physically delivered item is suitable for release. Therefore an enterprise can report faster

transport and higher sales while reducing its real capacity to fulfill safe, paid-for commitments. Cross-functional performance must reconcile these consequences rather than privilege one departmental KPI.

The framework proposes a distinction between the descriptive question of whether the network can coordinate an outcome, the explanatory question of which mechanisms account for variation, and the normative question of whether the outcome is justified. The three should be investigated together without treating them as interchangeable. For example, reducing delivery delay by holding more safety stock may improve service through a measurable buffer mechanism, yet the judgment remains incomplete until financing, expiry, supplier payment and recipient welfare are considered. Conversely, a principled commitment to equitable access does not determine an economically feasible allocation rule without information on quantity, urgency, time and resources. The best decisions explicitly preserve this tension rather than conceal it under a generic assertion of sustainability.

19.14.2 Unresolved theoretical and empirical questions

A first research question concerns the resilience–efficiency frontier in small enterprises with weak liquidity. Conventional redundancy calculations often assume that the firm can finance additional inventory and that alternatives remain available during systemwide disruption. Research should estimate how informal credit, product criticality and corridor dependence alter the feasible policy set. A second question concerns the difference between digital visibility and trusted physical traceability: future work could compare phased barcode adoption with fuller ERP deployment while independently auditing receiving, inventory accuracy and fulfillment. A third concerns the environmental distribution of regional trade: transport consolidation may reduce unit emissions but affect access, truck-worker conditions and small-producer participation. Each question demands a research design that distinguishes selection, trend and causal impact.

Four provisional propositions follow. **P1:** Conditional on comparable products and demand volatility, firms that explicitly measure inventory position and replenishment lead-time distributions should exhibit fewer avoidable stock-outs than firms relying only on unverified physical estimates. **P2:** The relationship between shared forecasts and upstream order variance should be moderated by incentive alignment, promotional cycles and record quality. **P3:** For highly corridor-dependent enterprises, the benefit of alternative transport or supply arrangements should increase with common-mode exposure and the expected consequence of service interruption, but may be constrained by cash availability. **P4:** The net environmental impact of logistics digitization should depend on changes in physical routes, load factors and product waste, not software adoption alone. None of these propositions is empirically tested in the present chapter.

An additional methodological challenge concerns the identification of cross-boundary spillovers. A warehouse intervention may improve the focal firm’s reported inventory turns while pushing storage and financing demands onto small suppliers. Evaluating a supposed improvement therefore requires linked observations across at least the principal buyer–supplier interface and attention to bargaining power, selection into collaboration and downstream service displacement. Future research should compare enterprises with differing corridor dependence and financial constraints using common definitions, while avoiding the mistake of interpreting a cross-sectional association as the causal effect of managerial sophistication. Ethical and ecological outcomes should be measured, not inferred from the presence of a policy or software licence.

19.14.3 A defensible research protocol for future evaluation

An empirical programme might assemble a longitudinal panel of voluntary enterprise transaction records, geotemporal shipment events and independent stock counts, with documented informed access, privacy safeguards and data quality audits. It should predefine units, time boundaries, affected customers and primary outcomes, including OTIF, item fill, verified shortages, inventory capital, work injury exposure and per-unit transport emissions. If a new replenishment system is introduced, staggered rollout or a credible comparison group could support stronger inference than a simple before-and-after dashboard, provided contemporaneous demand and supplier shocks are measured. A failure to obtain comparable data is a limitation to report, not a justification to fabricate counterfactual precision.

A stronger explanatory programme would preregister a defined primary comparison, distinguish the treatment from the implementation process and document the statistical assumptions underlying uncertainty intervals. Researchers should anticipate spillovers when participating enterprises share carriers or suppliers; untreated firms may nevertheless benefit from a changed corridor service. Missing shipment records may be informative rather than random if delays are precisely the events least likely to be entered. Suitable sensitivity analyses should examine selection into the pilot, record completeness, temporal autocorrelation, seasonality and the consequences of substituting alternative service-level definitions. Ethical review and data-sharing arrangements are necessary where identifiable employees, customer locations or commercially sensitive costs enter a linked dataset. The conclusion should describe what the evidence identifies, for whom, at what cost and under which conditions it could reasonably transfer.

19.15 CHAPTER SYNTHESIS AND CONCLUSION

The central contribution of this chapter is a disciplined distinction between local efficiency and network viability. The classical ordering calculation makes one cost trade-off transparent, but its usefulness depends on real lead-time and loss distributions; a lower warehousing cost can coexist with lost customers; a faster shipment can create unsustainable fuel or worker burdens; and digitized tracking can coexist with inaccurate physical custody. Effective coordination is therefore the integration of technically credible flow decisions, liquidity, service, environmental constraints and recoverable accountability. Rwanda's enterprise structure and corridor dependence make this integration especially visible, but the underlying mechanisms are not uniquely African.

Six conclusions should remain with the reader. First, supply chains are multi-tier networks with reciprocal information and cash commitments, not merely transport routes. Second, demand forecasts and purchasing orders must be distinguished to prevent amplification. Third, EOQ and safety stock are conditional models requiring dimensional and distributional discipline. Fourth, cross-border transit and warehouse activity must be observed through dated events rather than assumed constant lead times. Fifth, resilience requires identifying common vulnerabilities and feasible alternatives rather than indiscriminately accumulating buffers. Sixth, performance must be assessed simultaneously through service, cash, physical accuracy, human safety and environmental effects. The chapter prepares the ground for Chapter 20, where conformance, variation and operational quality determine whether coordinated supply actually results in suitable goods and services.

19.16 KEY TERMS, RESEARCH QUESTIONS AND ASSESSMENT PACKAGE

19.16.1 Selected glossary

Flow and coordination concepts. A supply chain is a network of enterprises and activities linking production and use; logistics governs the movement and storage within that network. Inventory position equals usable on-hand stock plus outstanding replenishments minus backorders, whereas lead-time demand is the quantity demanded before a released replenishment becomes usable. The bullwhip effect describes amplified variation in upstream orders relative to final demand when compared over specified and aligned periods. Traceability is the capacity to substantiate product identity and custody through recorded events; it differs from generalized real-time visibility.

Inventory economics. Cycle stock arises from ordering in batches, whereas safety stock protects a declared service objective against specified uncertainty. EOQ is the replenishment quantity minimizing fixed ordering and proportional cycle-stock holding costs under restrictive assumptions. The reorder point is an inventory-position trigger; a cycle-service level measures the modeled probability of avoiding a stock-out in a replenishment cycle, while a unit fill rate measures the proportion of eligible demand units satisfied immediately. These service concepts cannot be substituted for on-time customer delivery.

Warehouse and recovery concepts. First-expire, first-out (FEFO) means allocating items whose approved expiry dates occur earliest, subject to quality and eligibility controls. On-time-in-full (OTIF) is the proportion of eligible orders delivered on or before the governing commitment and in the correct quantity, according to a documented event clock. Reverse logistics refers to the controlled movement, identification and disposition of returned goods and recoverable materials. Network resilience is the ability to anticipate disruption, maintain acceptable service, recover and adapt; simple robustness is only resistance to a disturbance without major change.

Institutional concepts. Trade facilitation comprises changes to import, export and transit processes that improve transparency, predictability and efficiency while retaining justified regulatory controls. An Incoterms rule allocates specified tasks, costs and risk between buyer and seller but does not itself determine title or all contractual remedies. A cash-to-cash cycle relates inventory and receivables days to payment timing, so inventory choices must be appraised in the context of funding, not only physical availability.

19.16.2 Questions and applied exercises

Foundational conceptual question (LO1–LO2). Explain why material, information, cash and rights must be mapped separately in a supply chain. Construct a four-tier example and identify one failure that cannot be detected using a physical-flow diagram alone.

Analytical question (LO2, LO7). Compare the arguments of Fisher (1997), Lee et al. (1997) and Ivanov and Dolgui (2020), identifying what each explains, what it excludes, and how their recommendations might conflict for a Rwandan medical supply chain.

Quantitative exercise (LO3). Recalculate EOQ, annual cycle costs, ROP and modeled fill rate in Worked Example 19.1 if H rises 25%, mean lead time rises to ten days, and σ_L becomes three days. Keep daily demand assumptions unchanged; report your units and explain why any new z-score should not be introduced without a chosen service objective.

Audit exercise (LO6). Reconcile a fictional month with 500 customer orders, 470 on time, 460 in full and 445 satisfying both conditions; compute OTIF and explain why multiplying the two marginal percentages is not justified without independence.

Applied Rwanda exercise (LO4–LO7). Using the NCTO's July–September 2025 report, describe the definition and data source of the Mombasa–Kigali transit-time indicator; propose a minimally intrusive shipment record that would enable an enterprise to estimate its own 90th-percentile usable-stock lead time.

Capstone decision assignment (LO1–LO8). Prepare a 2,500–3,500-word board memorandum for the constructed Kigali enterprise. The memorandum must (a) depict its multi-tier supply network and identify cross-functional decision rights; (b) build a transparent inventory workbook with an alternative lot-size and lead-time scenario; (c) compare buffer, emergency supply and corridor diversification responses; (d) include a warehouse integrity and OTIF measurement plan; (e) evaluate working-capital, labor-safety and environmental consequences; and (f) propose a six-month evidence collection and review schedule with explicit trigger thresholds. Students must label all hypothetical data and cite independently retrieved, dated sources for external conditions. Claims of causal policy effectiveness require a feasible identification design.

19.16.3 Educator scoring guidance and answer notes

A defensible capstone rubric assigns 20% to conceptual and network accuracy, 25% to reproducible calculations and sensitivity, 20% to appropriate use and limitation of Rwanda/international evidence, 15% to integrated organizational feasibility, 10% to sustainability and ethical reasoning, and 10% to source transparency, coherent structure and APA 7 citations. For the analytic question, a high-level response contrasts demand–product fit, induced order amplification and systemic continuity rather than presenting all three as synonyms. For the quantitative exercise, instructors should verify that students change H and the mean and variability of lead time in the correct parts of the formulas; inventory position must remain the trigger variable. For the audit exercise, OTIF is 445/500 = 89.0%, not 470/500 × 460/500 = 86.48%; the latter product incorrectly assumes independence. Evidence from the NCTO report should be described as corridor-level observation, not as an individual company's observed service history.

In the quantitative sensitivity exercise, retaining D = 24,000, S = RWF 18,000 and z = 1.645 while increasing H to RWF 1,500 produces EOQ = √576,000 = 758.95 cartons. With a ten-day mean lead time, daily standard deviation of 20 cartons and lead-time standard deviation of three days, the independent-demand approximation yields $\sigma_{LT} = \sqrt{61{,}600} = 248.19$ cartons, safety stock 408.28 cartons and ROP 1,208.28 cartons. The associated normal-loss approximation gives expected shortage of about 5.18 cartons per order cycle, and an illustrative unit fill rate of about 99.32%, subject to the same modeling assumptions. Award credit for explaining that the 95% cycle-service target remains unchanged and for refusing to interpret the modeled result as observed stock-out performance.

19.16.4 Further reading

For core inventory and network design, consult Simchi-Levi et al. (2021); for information distortion, Lee et al. (1997); for vulnerability and disturbance-response distinctions, Christopher and Peck (2004), Tang (2006) and Ivanov and Dolgui (2020); for the sustainability boundary problem, Carter and Rogers (2008) and Seuring and Müller (2008). For practice, use the current ASCM SCOR Digital Standard alongside the appropriate ICC, WTO and ISO primary documents rather than substituting a secondary synopsis for a binding rule.

CHAPTER 20

Quality Management and Operational Excellence

ABSTRACT

Quality is frequently reduced to inspection outcomes, certification status or isolated defect targets. None alone establishes that an enterprise reliably fulfils justified requirements without shifting avoidable risks to customers, workers and communities. This chapter develops a critical account of quality management and operational excellence across twelve interdependent domains, from competing quality philosophies and management systems to statistical variation, process diagnosis, lean, Six Sigma, quality economics, service recovery, supplier assurance, organizational culture and digital quality. A transparent, purposive synthesis combines seminal scholarship, peer-reviewed research, published international standards and Rwandan institutional evidence, while explicitly distinguishing conceptual claims from observed outcomes. The analysis incorporates the 2026 revisions of ISO 9000, ISO 9001, ISO 14001 and ISO 19011, the current transition arrangements and limitations of certification. A constructed Kigali packaging case supports reproducible Pareto, p-chart, cost-of-quality, investment, risk and corrective-action exercises. An original accountability architecture links credible specifications, capable work, measurement validity, employee voice and verified learning. The Rwanda–Toyota comparison identifies the complementary resources and institutional conditions that limit simple transfer of management prescriptions. Quality is consequently defended as a technically informed, morally constrained and empirically revisable enterprise capability rather than an administrative label. The proposed synthesis is analytical and educational, not an empirically validated causal model.

Keywords: quality management; operational excellence; statistical process control; root cause analysis; lean management; Six Sigma; quality costs; service quality; supplier assurance; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

After completing this chapter, the reader should be able to (LO1) distinguish conformance, fitness for use, dependability, perceived value and legally relevant safety; (LO2) critically compare inspection, assurance, TQM, lean and Six Sigma and specify their assumptions and limitations; (LO3) develop a proportionate quality management system with process ownership, documented controls and audit evidence; (LO4) calculate and interpret defect frequencies, Pareto shares, control limits and qualified capability indices; (LO5) design a testable corrective-action procedure that distinguishes symptoms from established causes; (LO6) estimate prevention, appraisal and failure costs and evaluate a quality investment under uncertainty; (LO7) evaluate service, supplier, digital and environmental quality against fairness, security and institutional obligations; and (LO8) defend a cross-functional improvement proposal for a Rwandan enterprise against credible international comparators.

The analysis follows the approved sequence, beginning with the contested meanings and intellectual history of quality (20.1–20.2), advancing through management systems, process evidence and diagnostic methods (20.3–20.5), examining improvement traditions and economics (20.6–20.8), and extending the analysis to customers, suppliers, people and technology (20.9–20.12). Sections 20.13–20.16 integrate an auditable Rwanda teaching case, international comparison, critical synthesis, research agenda, terminology and assessment resources. Chapter 17 addressed operating capacity and process flow; Chapter 18 covered source-to-contract governance; Chapter 19 developed inventory and logistics. The present chapter owns assurance, defect

prevention, variation analysis and corrective action, not academic quality assurance or specialist health-sector clinical regulation. Chapter 21 will address temporary project delivery rather than recurring quality routines.

20.0 INTRODUCTION: WHEN AN ACCEPTED ORDER IS NOT AN ACCEPTABLE PRODUCT

Consider a hypothetical food-packaging enterprise supplying shops and institutional buyers in Kigali. Production reports 12,000 packets completed in a month, logistics reports dispatch on schedule, and sales reports that customers have reordered. Yet several distributors have received packets with weak seals; internal checks have repeatedly found incorrect labels and underfilled packs. The enterprise may meet an output target while transferring inspection, replacement and reputational costs downstream. It may also respond by demanding more final inspection, thereby detecting failure later without changing the conditions that generate it. The enterprise is invented for instruction; neither its results nor its defects describe an identified business.

Quality management concerns the governed processes by which an organization establishes requirements, designs the means of meeting them, verifies evidence of conformity and fitness, responds to failures and revises its system. Operational excellence is a wider and more contestable aspiration: the repeatable ability to deliver legitimate value reliably while improving flow, safety, cost, adaptability and accountability. This distinction matters. An apparently efficient process may consistently produce an undesirable item; a technically conforming product may disappoint an unmet user need; and a satisfied customer may not detect a hidden safety hazard. Quality cannot be inferred from any single point in this chain (Garvin, 1987; Juran, 1988; International Organization for Standardization [ISO], 2026f).

The chapter advances a conditional proposition: superior quality performance is produced neither by inspection volume nor a management certificate in isolation, but by the fit among justified requirements, capable processes, sound measurement, effective organizational challenge and remedies proportionate to the harm at stake. This view is deliberately broader than quality as cost minimization. It recognizes non-negotiable constraints where an average yield or favorable expected return cannot legitimate a hazardous product, false test report, suppressed complaint or unjust transfer of risk. The practical burden is to make different claims explicit: what was specified; what was measured; what was inferred about causes; what was decided; and who remains responsible if the inference is wrong.

20.0.1 Evidence strategy and limits of claims

This chapter uses purposive critical synthesis of secondary sources, not an experimental study, enterprise survey or preregistered systematic review. The selection logic combined original texts that created competing quality traditions, peer-reviewed studies on relationships between practices and outcomes, current source institutions for standards and professional procedures, and Rwandan authorities for country-specific context. Targeted author-title, DOI and institutional-source checks undertaken on 2 November 2026 covered Deming, Shewhart, Juran, Flynn et al., Powell, Samson and Terziovski, Kaynak, Shah and Ward, Zu et al., Corbett et al., ISO, the American Society for Quality (ASQ), the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), Rwanda Standards Board (RSB), and the National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda (NISR). This is a reasoned selection, not exhaustive retrieval; it does not assert PRISMA screening numbers, meta-analytic effect sizes or new primary observations. The numerical enterprise records below are expressly constructed to teach reproducible methods, while institutional statistics retain their stated coverage and reference years.

20.0.2 The philosophical and inferential problem of quality

Quality judgments involve an account of the good being pursued, an account of what can be known about an output, and a defensible way to adjudicate competing claims. The first issue is teleological: a process can conform perfectly to a specification and nevertheless be organized to deliver an unsuitable or harmful product. The second is epistemic: measured agreement with a specification establishes only what the measurement system can validly detect under its sampling and decision rules. The third is distributive: firms can report savings while households, subcontractors or ecosystems bear costs that their internal quality accounts omit. Consequently, specification, verification and moral justification must not be collapsed into one managerial score. Donabedian's (1988) distinction among structure, process and outcome, developed for healthcare, is instructive as an analytical comparison rather than a template to be imposed uncritically on manufacturing: good structures are enabling conditions, observable processes are intermediate mechanisms, and experienced outcomes are the ultimate objects requiring independent inquiry.

This philosophical discipline also guards against the substitution of management proxies for purposes. A certificate attests to a defined management system within an assessed scope; a control chart offers conditional evidence about process behavior; a customer rating reports an experience filtered through expectations, access and response patterns. None grants its holder epistemic authority over all relevant dimensions of quality. The chapter therefore treats quality management as a practice of fallible but accountable judgment: propositions are useful when they can be contradicted by credible evidence, and decisions remain justified only while their requirements, measurements and consequences withstand scrutiny. In African business environments, this entails recognizing tacit production knowledge and informal exchange while refusing to romanticize arrangements that lack effective protection, traceability or remedy.

20.1 THE MEANING OF QUALITY: REQUIREMENTS, EXPERIENCE AND RESPONSIBILITY

20.1.1 Competing concepts and their practical consequences

Quality is a relational, multidimensional judgment, not an intrinsic label that a product or service possesses without reference to purposes and requirements. Conformance means that the observed output satisfies specified characteristics within permitted tolerances. Fitness for use asks whether those characteristics actually enable users to achieve their purposes. Customer-perceived quality includes interpreted performance and experience, but is influenced by expectations and information asymmetry. Reliability concerns performance over time under stated use conditions; safety concerns the acceptability of hazards and their controls. These dimensions can disagree. A packet with the correct weight may have an unsafe seal; a safe service can still be unacceptably late; a luxurious product can be well liked while concealing exploitative or environmentally damaging production.

Juran's managerial emphasis on fitness for use and Crosby's conformance-oriented prevention argument illuminate distinct decisions rather than forming a simple contest over the single correct definition (Juran, 1988; Crosby, 1979). Garvin (1987) identified product-quality dimensions including performance, features, reliability, conformance, durability, serviceability, aesthetics and perceived quality. Their relative weight differs with product, customer group and regulatory context. For a medicine or a food product, a pleasant appearance cannot compensate for an unacceptable safety risk. For a public-facing administrative service, correct substantive results may coexist with inaccessible procedures or unfair treatment. These differences establish the necessity of explicit requirements and a defensible priority structure.

20.1.2 From a customer's voice to an auditable requirement

A useful quality specification identifies the characteristic, measurement rule, acceptance limit, intended use, responsible decision maker, applicable legal or contractual source, and evidence to be retained. An order stating 'adequately sealed' is not a controlled acceptance criterion until seal integrity has an operational test, calibrated method and decision rule. Likewise, 'prompt customer service' needs an agreed time window, defined start and stop events and explicit handling of exceptional cases. Requirements should emerge from customer needs, engineering feasibility, public obligations, worker knowledge and foreseeable misuse, not only from the preferences of a major account.

Quality function deployment and related voice-of-customer methods can connect expressed needs to technical design, but conversion is not mechanically neutral. Interview samples may omit persons with disabilities, smaller distributors or informal customers; employees closest to a hazard may have little formal authority; and customer demand can conflict with safety. Responsible design therefore distinguishes desiderata that may be traded against cost from mandatory controls whose violation is unacceptable. Measurement and governance must also distinguish the object being counted: a defective unit, a defect opportunity, a complaint, a customer account and an escaped hazard are not interchangeable denominators.

20.1.3 Quality and operational excellence are not synonymous

Operational excellence encompasses flow performance, adaptability, asset utilization, customer trust and resource stewardship. Quality management contributes to these outcomes, but may impose necessary inspection time, redundancy or segregation that appears wasteful under a narrow speed metric. An independent release decision may delay shipment precisely because doing so protects a higher-value objective. This becomes a strategic question about which outcomes are optimized and which constraints are inviolable, consistent with Chapter 6's emphasis on coherent commitments and Chapter 8's concern for accountable decision rights. Excellence is a claim requiring evidence across dimensions, not a prize conferred by a slogan or a temporary reduction in reported errors.

20.2 THE EVOLUTION OF QUALITY MANAGEMENT: FROM SORTING TO SYSTEM LEARNING

20.2.1 Inspection, statistical control and managerial responsibility

Mass production expanded the challenge of detecting nonconformity after work had been separated into specialized tasks. End-of-line inspection can segregate defective units, but does not itself establish which upstream mechanism created them. Walter A. Shewhart's control-chart work in the 1920s and his 1931 book shifted attention from isolated nonconforming outputs toward variation in the generating process (Shewhart, 1931; ASQ, n.d.-b). His intellectual contribution was not a guarantee of perfect prediction: it was a way to distinguish patterns reasonably compatible with a stable process from evidence suggesting an assignable disturbance. It thereby transformed diagnosis into a sequential decision about when to intervene.

W. Edwards Deming carried statistical thinking into an explicitly managerial account of systems, learning and leadership. His criticism of numerical targets divorced from methods was directed at organizations that blamed individual workers for variation produced by their work systems. Deming argued that improvement requires managerial redesign of interdependent processes, not simply stronger inspection or worker exhortation (Deming, 1986). Joseph Juran gave equal importance to planning quality, controlling performance and deliberately undertaking improvement, emphasizing managerial responsibility for fitness for use. Their approaches diverged in terminology and emphasis but both rejected the idea that quality resides solely within the inspection department (Juran, 1988).

20.2.2 Organization-wide quality and empirical uncertainty

Later total quality management (TQM) articulated a cross-functional approach involving leadership, employee participation, customers, supplier relationships, process management and continuous improvement. The attraction was its systemic ambition; its weakness was inconsistent operational definition. Flynn et al. (1994) developed a measurement framework partly because broad claims about 'having TQM' lacked comparable constructs. Powell (1995) argued that certain socially complex practices, particularly commitment and culture, might contribute to advantage in ways that readily imitated tools did not. Samson and Terziovski (1999), Kaynak (2003) and Sila and Ebrahimpour (2005) reported relationships between quality-management configurations and performance, but many designs relied on organizational surveys, measured interrelated practices simultaneously, and could not establish universal intervention effects or eliminate selection and reverse causation.

These studies support a careful conclusion rather than a managerial guarantee. Quality practices are more plausibly effective as complementary systems than as isolated checklists, yet observed associations need not imply that importing the vocabulary, purchasing a certificate or copying a high-performing firm will create equal results. Organizational history, capital, product risk, leadership credibility and data quality matter. A tiny Rwandan processor cannot assume the same specialist staffing and instrument costs as a multinational plant. Nor does informality imply an absence of skill: some microenterprises possess sophisticated tacit inspection routines while lacking written calibration, traceability and independent assurance.

20.2.3 Assurance, certification and standards in transition

Quality assurance shifts emphasis to planned confidence in a system's capacity to satisfy requirements, while quality control checks whether specified results do satisfy them. ISO 9000:2026 provides quality-management fundamentals and vocabulary, whereas ISO 9001:2026 specifies requirements for certifiable quality management systems; the two have distinct purposes (ISO, 2026f, 2026g). ISO lists ISO 9001:2026 as published in September 2026, superseding its 2015 edition, and identifies transitional arrangements to be handled through certification bodies. At the time of this chapter, some Rwanda institutional pages still discuss RS ISO 9001:2015; such pages cannot on their own establish the status or transitional obligations of a particular organization's certificate (ISO, 2026g; RSB, n.d.-b). ISO 19011:2026 provides guidelines for auditing management systems and is not a product-quality certificate (ISO, 2026b).

Certification is neither synonymous with legal compliance nor direct evidence that every individual output is safe. The certification scope, issuing body's competence and accreditation, surveillance arrangements, applicable edition, and condition of real processes matter. Corbett et al. (2005) found financial improvements following ISO 9000 certification among matched U.S. manufacturing firms, yet the magnitude was sensitive to comparison specifications. It would be unsound to treat this as proof of the same causal return for a small African service provider or to infer that certification caused all subsequent improvement. For sector-specific hazards, additional systems may be required: ISO 22000:2018 concerns food safety management and integrates hazard-analysis principles, but cannot be treated as a substitute for every applicable product regulation or hygiene requirement (ISO, 2018a).

20.2.4 Quality philosophies as rival accounts of change

Although they share a commitment to reducing avoidable failure, major quality traditions make different assumptions about the locus of improvement. Statistical process control locates much of the immediate evidentiary problem in temporal variation and rational subgrouping. Juran's planning–control– improvement distinction highlights management's obligation to build quality into purposes and processes. Crosby's prevention-oriented conformance approach can clarify standards but risks narrowness if the specification itself is inadequate. TQM requires organizational complementarity and credible worker involvement; lean emphasizes flow and the design of work; Six Sigma formalizes analytical project discipline. Their claims should therefore be compared at the level of mechanisms rather than by popularity or brand. Hackman and Wageman (1995) warned that managerial rhetoric often aggregates unlike activities under the TQM label without evidence that the same intervention works in different contexts.

A further distinction separates improvement through learning from improvement through authority. Managers can compel reporting, increase inspection frequency and purchase instruments; they cannot compel a valid finding or genuine candour merely by issuing a policy. A credible quality programme has to distribute rights to observe, challenge, stop, repair and learn. Such rights are economically important because local knowledge about process variation often resides with people who do not control capital expenditures. The implication is not that participation always substitutes for technical expertise; metrology, statistical design and safety judgment require competence. Rather, expert verification and frontline experience provide partially independent forms of evidence whose productive combination needs deliberate organizational design (Deming, 1986; Hackman & Wageman, 1995).

20.3 QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS: OPERATING ARCHITECTURE AND ASSURANCE

20.3.1 The process-based system

A quality management system (QMS) is the interconnected collection of policies, responsibilities, processes, records, controls and review mechanisms used to achieve the organization's quality objectives. An effective design starts with external and internal context, relevant interested parties, product and service requirements and the risks of failure. Its scope must match actual processes, locations and offerings rather than the most attractive operations to present during audit. Process maps should specify input conditions, activities, decision gates, permissible variation, handoffs, outputs, owners, controls and records. Documented information should exist because it protects memory, traceability or accountability, not because a consultancy sells document volume.

Leadership establishes policies, objectives, accountability and resources. Process owners demonstrate control in everyday decisions; competent employees maintain and challenge working methods; assurance personnel test whether recorded practice and actual practice agree. For high-consequence releases, a person with appropriate technical authority must be able to stop shipment despite sales pressure. This allocation is a governance choice. In a microenterprise the founder may hold several roles, but incompatible acts such as performing a disputed test and independently approving its validity should be separated where risk warrants. Where separation is financially infeasible, an external test, peer check or documented independent review can provide proportionate assurance.

20.3.2 Control of documented information and change

A lean QMS needs an accessible requirements register, document-version control, approved operating instructions where consequential, product identification and traceability, calibration evidence, competence records, nonconformity and corrective-action registers, complaint records, internal audits, management reviews and change approvals. Each document should identify owner, status, applicable scope and retention logic. Staff need practical access to the current approved version at the work point. A procedure saved on a manager's private computer, or written only in a language its intended users cannot read, cannot reliably control work.

Changes in packaging material, suppliers, recipes, software models, customer requirements or operating shifts should trigger risk review before release. Change control asks what requirement may be affected, what verification is necessary, how stock produced under the old design is distinguished, and who approves the transition. An emergency deviation may sometimes be justified, but it must be authorized, time-limited and traceable. The number of completed forms is not a suitable proxy for this system's effectiveness: meaningful evidence includes reduced process instability, detected near misses before release, timely corrective actions, and whether employees can demonstrate the procedure without coaching.

20.3.3 Audit design and assurance limits

Internal audits should follow risk rather than identical annual coverage of every low- and high-consequence process. A risk-based audit programme defines criteria, scope, auditors' competence, independence where practicable, sampling rationale, records and follow-up. Evidence should triangulate documents, observation, interviews and transaction traces. One signed checklist may demonstrate that a form exists, not that the process produces safe outputs. ISO 19011:2026 supplies audit guidance, while external accredited certification operates under separate conformity-assessment rules (ISO, 2026b; RSB, n.d.-a). Management reviews should consider complaints, process trends, supplier performance, audits, corrective-action effectiveness, resource adequacy and emerging changes, and record decisions with owners and due dates.

The major failure mode is ritual compliance. A manager can obtain favorable audit scores by selecting convenient samples, closing cases at the 'retrain employees' stage, or concealing defect data. Consequently, a defensible QMS must protect reporting channels and look for contradictions: rising scrap combined with mysteriously declining recorded defects; perfect test results immediately after a supplier change; or no complaints where customers lack an accessible complaint channel. The most credible audit is a disciplined challenge to organizational assurance, not a rehearsal for a certificate photograph.

20.3.4 Risk-based objectives, management review and certification transition

A mature QMS connects objectives with decision thresholds. The organization should decide which characteristics are critical to safety, which drive customer use and which concern discretionary preferences; establish verification depth proportionate to consequences; and document who can accept, reject or escalate an exception. Management review must then interpret changes in complaints, rework, escapes, supplier lots, corrective actions and resource constraints against their measurement quality. A favorable aggregate defect rate cannot compensate for an uncontrolled critical hazard, while a deterioration in reporting counts may reflect a healthier detection culture rather than an underlying increase in failure. Audit agendas should deliberately include contrary evidence, such as products rejected despite strong delivery indicators or employee reports that contradict management summaries.

The September 2026 publication of ISO 9001:2026 introduces a practical transition rather than instant invalidation of all prior certificates. Published ISO transition guidance indicates that organizations already certified to ISO 9001:2015 have until 30 September 2029 to complete transition, while new and initial accredited certificates are to be issued only against the 2026 edition from 31 March 2028; related accreditation and certification-body deadlines precede these dates (ISO/TC 176, 2026). The validity of any individual certificate nevertheless depends on its issuer, accreditation, scope, expiry, surveillance and transition

circumstances. A Rwandan enterprise should verify its actual certification body's instructions and nationally adopted standard rather than infer compliance merely because an older web page remains online. These date-sensitive rules are reported as of 2 November 2026, not as timeless requirements.

20.4 PROCESS VARIATION, MEASUREMENT AND STATISTICAL INFERENCE

20.4.1 Stable and unstable processes

Every repeated process exhibits variation. Common-cause variation represents the routine, jointly produced variability of a comparatively stable system; special-cause variation is an unusual shift or disturbance that warrants specific inquiry. The distinction is statistical and operational, not an assertion that ordinary variation is ethically acceptable. A stable process may consistently produce too many unsafe units; statistical control establishes predictability under assumptions, not conformity with customer limits. Conversely, an isolated outlier may result from a measurement mistake, a supplier lot, a staff substitution or a genuine process failure. Shewhart's logic warns against tampering, whereby managers adjust a stable process in response to ordinary fluctuations and unintentionally increase variability (Shewhart, 1931; NIST/SEMATECH, n.d.).

Control charts arrange time-ordered measurements against a centre line and limits derived from an assumed in-control process. Attribute charts include p-charts for fraction of inspected units nonconforming and u-charts for defects per unit when opportunity exposure is appropriately represented. Variable charts follow measurements such as seal strength or weight, with chart selection determined by subgroup size, distribution and sampling design. A run chart may be an honest first instrument where the history is insufficient to estimate limits. It is methodologically incorrect to derive a 'three-sigma limit' from a few arbitrary observations, to silently remove inconvenient observations, or to compare a statistical control limit with an engineering specification limit as if they served the same decision.

20.4.2 Worked construction of a p-chart

For m subgroups with n_i inspected units and d_i nonconforming units, the pooled estimated fraction nonconforming is $\bar{p} = \Sigma d_i / \Sigma n_i$. When independent Bernoulli observations within a rational subgroup are a reasonable approximation, the subgroup chart uses $UCL_i = \bar{p} + 3\sqrt{[\bar{p}(1 - \bar{p})/n_i]}$ and $LCL_i = \max\{0, \bar{p} - 3\sqrt{[\bar{p}(1 - \bar{p})/n_i]}\}$. NIST's Engineering Statistics Handbook gives the underlying binomial logic (NIST/SEMATECH, n.d.). Clustering, overdispersion, short runs, changing inspection intensity and rare events can invalidate naïve limits; technical judgment must precede interpretation.

The constructed teaching case later presents eleven baseline samples of n = 200 each with 91 nonconforming units, so $\bar{p} = 91/2{,}200 = 0.04136$. The estimated three-sigma control limits are LCL = 0 and UCL = 0.08361. A twelfth sample contains 23 nonconforming units among 200, or 0.115, which exceeds the baseline UCL. The reasonable conclusion is that the later subgroup is not adequately explained by the baseline model, not that a particular operator caused the deterioration. A defensible investigation examines shift, material lot, inspection procedure, machine settings and workload before declaring a cause or recalculating baseline limits.

20.4.3 Measurement-system validity and capability

Measurement systems have error arising from instruments, calibration, environmental conditions, sampling, operator judgments, definitions and data entry. Gauge repeatability and reproducibility studies help separate instrument and appraiser variation, while attribute agreement studies are relevant where inspectors classify defects. If two inspectors disagree systematically about a 'weak seal', adding more data will create false precision. Before comparing suppliers or claiming improvement, management should test whether the measurement method detects the relevant range of defects consistently and independently of who benefits from the reported result.

For approximately normal, stable measurement distributions, capability indices may be expressed as Cp = (USL − LSL)/(6σwithin) and Cpk = min[(USL − μ)/(3σwithin), (μ − LSL)/(3σwithin)], where μ is process mean, σwithin is a defensible estimate of within-process standard deviation, and LSL and USL are engineering specification limits. These indices do not themselves establish process stability, normality, adequate measurement or safety; a high index for a poorly chosen specification is of little public value. For skewed data, autocorrelation or mixtures of production modes, distribution-free or appropriate alternative capability analyses should be evaluated. An enterprise should never announce 'six-sigma quality' merely because an index exceeds a target without an explicit model for defects and opportunities.

20.4.4 Sampling, decision risks and the difference between detection and assurance

Acceptance sampling addresses whether a defined lot should be accepted under a specified sampling rule; process control addresses whether the generating process has changed. These are different inferential decisions. Consider a hypothetical lot containing 5% nonconforming units, with a simple random sample of 20 treated as independent draws for an approximate binomial calculation. A rule that accepts the lot only when no defective unit is found would accept such a lot with probability (0.95)^20 = 0.3585, or about 35.8%. The numerical example illustrates why passing inspection does not establish zero defects, and why a superficially strict zero-acceptance rule can still miss substantial problems when the sample is small. Exact finite-lot inference would instead use the hypergeometric distribution, because sampling without replacement alters the probability. Neither model is valid if the sample is taken from convenient locations or if inspection sensitivity is imperfect (Montgomery, 2020).

In practice, sampling plans should distinguish the producer's risk of rejecting an acceptable lot from the consumer's risk of accepting an unacceptable one, using an operating-characteristic curve with quality levels and decision rules appropriate to the actual risk. A single acceptance-quality-limit label is not a guarantee that a lot has that quality; nor may statistical sampling replace mandatory testing of safety-critical characteristics. In settings where consequences are severe, containment, hazard analysis and traceability may require different release controls. When the parameter is a continuous characteristic, the unit's measurement uncertainty and its position near a legal or engineering limit must be considered, not merely whether a displayed number falls inside the tolerance.

20.4.5 Reproducible capability, precision and uncertainty

Two distinctions improve the integrity of quality statistics. First, process capability must be evaluated after stability and measurement suitability have been established; a computed Cpk from unstable or mixed processes may conceal systematic change. Second, precision of an estimated defect proportion is not the same as adequacy of its sampling design. Under independent sampling, a rough standard error for the pooled baseline proportion in the teaching case is sqrt[0.04136 × 0.95864 / 2,200], about 0.00425; that quantity describes sampling variability around the pooled estimate, not the between-subgroup variation addressed by the p-chart. Using it interchangeably with three-sigma subgroup limits would understate the practical distinction between estimation and monitoring. Serial dependence, within-shift clustering, imperfect classification and discretionary sampling can defeat both calculations.

A transparent quality-data register should therefore identify the sampling frame, rational subgroup definition, sample size, instrument, calibration state, inspector, classification rule, missing observations, exclusions and reasons for any change in measurement. Before-and-after analyses also need an explicit statement of whether product mix, inspection intensity or customer exposure changed. These details determine what the statistic means. They are especially important when quality systems migrate from handwritten check sheets to digital sensors, because faster data collection can increase apparent defect counts solely by detecting events previously unobserved. It would be analytically mistaken to describe that increase as deterioration without a measurement bridge (NIST/SEMATECH, n.d.; Montgomery, 2020).

20.5 ROOT CAUSE ANALYSIS: FROM OBSERVATION TO CORRECTIVE ACTION

20.5.1 Diagnostic logic and the seven basic tools

A root cause is not simply the last answer produced by asking 'why' five times. A meaningful causal account identifies a factor or set of mechanisms for which a feasible intervention would reduce recurrence under specified operating conditions. The seven basic quality tools commonly include a check sheet, histogram, Pareto chart, cause-and-effect diagram, scatter diagram, control chart and stratification or a closely related process chart (ASQ, n.d.-c). Their legitimate purpose is to structure evidence and generate testable hypotheses. A Pareto chart ranks counted categories; it does not establish that the largest count is the easiest, safest or most economically justified cause to address. An Ishikawa fishbone organizes hypotheses, not proof.

A useful failure statement identifies the affected characteristic, exact operational definition, location, time period, denominator, severity and existing detection point. Investigators then trace the process, observe work at the point where nonconformity arises, stratify by machine, shift, input lot, operator or route, and compare candidate explanations with disconfirming observations. Correlations between lateness and a supplier do not establish that supplier inputs caused underfill if both changed during a production surge. A 'five whys' exercise is strongest when each link is checked against documents, physical observation or a controlled comparison. Multiple interacting causes are ordinary; a single linear chain can misrepresent a complex work system.

20.5.2 Correction, corrective action and effectiveness verification

Correction deals with an identified nonconforming output: segregating, relabelling, reworking, recalling or refunding it as appropriate. Corrective action changes the cause-producing system: modifying a sealing temperature control, qualifying a new supplier specification, redesigning the inspection method or clarifying a contradictory operating instruction. Preventive thinking extends beyond the immediate failure to analogous processes, but improvement teams should not substitute speculative risk lists for proven hazard controls. The responsible process protects customers first where safety is uncertain, preserves traceability and documents who authorizes product disposition.

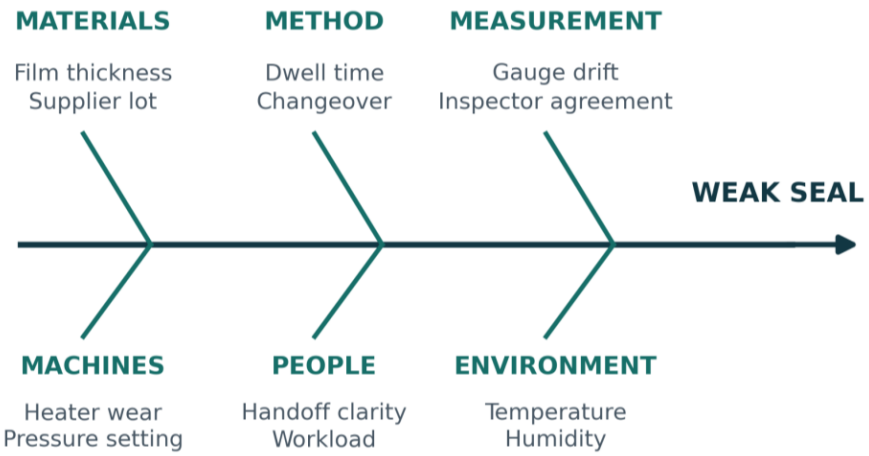
Effectiveness review is the step most vulnerable to performative closure. Completion of a training session does not prove that sealing defects declined; closure requires a predefined outcome, exposure denominator, observation period, performance criterion and monitoring responsibility. A pilot may use the same chart metric before and after the change while also recording possible shifts in product mix and inspection intensity. If the intervention coincides with changes in demand or equipment, causal attribution remains provisional. An appropriate response is to document the uncertainty, maintain protective controls and revise the hypothesis, not to present an attractive before–after chart as a randomized experiment.

Figure 20.1 *An accountable plan-do-check-act (PDCA) learning loop*



Note. Original explanatory figure synthesizing the cited concepts; all case values, where shown, are hypothetical.

Figure 20.2 *Ishikawa hypothesis map for weak package seals*



Note. Original explanatory figure synthesizing the cited concepts; all case values, where shown, are hypothetical.

20.5.3 Risk-based failure analysis without false numerical certainty

Failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA) can supplement direct causal investigation by systematically considering the function that might fail, its credible modes of failure, consequences, initiating mechanisms, existing prevention and detection controls, and feasible corrective actions. For the hypothetical sealing line, loss of temperature control, unsuitable film, poor seal-surface contact and incorrect inspection classification should be documented as distinct candidates. Their consequences may range from cosmetic appearance to product contamination and customer harm. The investigation must ask how each failure could escape detection and what would interrupt the chain before release. This prospective analysis complements the retrospective examination of observed seal failures; it cannot identify an actual cause merely because a workshop has assigned one a high score.

Traditional FMEA templates sometimes multiply ordinal scores for severity, occurrence and detectability into a risk-priority number. Multiplication assumes a level of numerical comparability that ordinal rankings usually do not possess: $8 \times 3 \times 3$ and $3 \times 8 \times 3$ may yield identical totals despite fundamentally different safety implications. Particularly severe failure modes need explicit action criteria regardless of aggregate rank, and estimates should disclose uncertainty where historical evidence is sparse. The actionable output is a prioritized set of technically justified safeguards, named owners, verification evidence and escalation thresholds, not a mathematically impressive table that obscures the distribution of harm. Work instructions, staffing, supplier inputs and product design should all remain possible intervention targets (Montgomery, 2020).

20.6 LEAN PRINCIPLES AND WASTE REDUCTION

20.6.1 Flow, value and the limits of 'waste'

Lean practice seeks to organize work so that legitimate customer value can flow with fewer unnecessary delays, corrections, movements, inventories and interruptions. Associated practices include observing the value stream, standard work, visual control, workplace organization, pull replenishment, equipment reliability and structured problem-solving. The Toyota Production System's documented pillars are just-in-time and jidoka, the ability to bring human judgment and stopping capability into automated production (Toyota Motor Corporation, n.d.-a). Lean should not be interpreted as making every employee continuously busy or eliminating all buffers: queueing variability and health, safety or supply risks can make controlled reserves indispensable. Shah and Ward (2007) demonstrated that lean is better represented as a configuration of mutually reinforcing practices than as a single intervention.

The familiar waste taxonomy includes defects, overproduction, waiting, unnecessary transport, excess processing, inventory, motion and underused human knowledge. However, waste requires a stated viewpoint. A duplicate check may be unnecessary for low-risk stationery but necessary for an irreversible clinical or financial decision. Slack capacity may allow safe recovery after equipment stoppage. A culture that treats worker rest, reasonable accessibility adjustments or paid learning as 'non-value-adding' can improve a local throughput ratio while degrading long-term reliability and justice. Lean analysis should distinguish resources that are truly squandered from protective capacity, ethical safeguards and work investments with delayed returns.

20.6.2 Practical deployment in resource-constrained enterprises

A modest enterprise may begin with one value stream, visible work standards, labeled defect bins, daily short reviews and direct worker observations rather than expensive software. The most consequential prerequisites are a stable operational definition of success, accurate signals, psychological permission to stop unsafe work and the ability to correct recurring obstacles. Standard work documents the current best-known safe method while preserving an explicit process for frontline suggestions. Value-stream mapping can expose repeated waiting between packaging and release, but estimates must be tested against observed timestamps; a visually persuasive map is not automatically a valid time study.

Lean implementation can fail through aggressive headcount cutting, perfunctory 'kaizen events', shifting stock to suppliers or bypassing inspection to meet daily targets. Toyota's practices emerged through a long history of supplier relationships, technical routines and organizational learning; transferring isolated artifacts to Rwanda without matching skills, spare-part availability, maintenance and supplier conditions may produce imitation rather than effectiveness (Toyota Motor Corporation, n.d.-a; Shah & Ward, 2007). The correct improvement question asks whether the redesigned system reduces total preventable harm and cost over a relevant period, including effects outside the facility boundary.

20.6.3 Flow measurement and the paradox of local efficiency

Lean improvement benefits from explicit time and flow denominators. If a hypothetical packaging process is available for 420 productive minutes per day and genuine customer demand is 350 acceptable packets, its takt time is 420/350 = 1.20 minutes per packet. Takt time is a pace derived from available time and demand, not a physical guarantee that every workstation can safely run at that speed. If a critical sealing and verification activity needs 1.40 minutes per packet, demanding the 1.20-minute pace without redesign creates a mismatch between work content and commercial promise. Management may need to change staffing, rearrange work, introduce a validated fixture or negotiate delivery timing, while preserving inspection and rest requirements. Faster downstream sorting does not increase the capacity of the constrained safe process (Shah & Ward, 2007).

Little's law provides a related boundary for stable flow systems: average work in process equals average throughput multiplied by average flow time, when the assumptions of consistent boundaries and long-run averages are appropriate. It does not promise that reducing inventory by decree will accelerate an unstable supply chain. Waiting may result from variation, missing release authority or materials arriving in large batches; a flow intervention should identify the mechanism rather than simply lower reported stock. A small enterprise with uncertain border lead times can require strategically placed buffers even while eliminating internal rework and unnecessary handoffs. Product release, human safety and network resilience are therefore design constraints within lean thinking, not exceptions to be quietly removed (Montgomery, 2020; Shah & Ward, 2007).

20.7 SIX SIGMA AND STRUCTURED IMPROVEMENT

20.7.1 The DMAIC logic

Six Sigma is best understood as a family of disciplined improvement practices emphasizing project selection, measurement, structured inquiry and control rather than as a universal promise of a particular defects-per-million figure. The define–measure–analyze–improve–control (DMAIC) cycle begins by establishing the problem, its customer and stakeholder consequences, process boundaries, project sponsor and measurable success criteria. Measurement then specifies the critical-to-quality characteristic, opportunity definition, baseline performance and reliability of the data collection system. Analysis evaluates variation and candidate mechanisms; improvement tests alternatives and implements a defensible change; control protects the gain with ownership, monitoring and response rules (Zu et al., 2008).

Zu et al. (2008) argue that Six Sigma introduced distinctive organizational role structures, structured improvement procedures and metric-centered discipline within broader quality-management practice. These devices can improve accountability where specialized analysis and cross-functional authority are genuinely necessary. They can also create bureaucracy, certification hierarchies and project selection bias. A 'Black Belt' label does not establish competence, just as calculating a small p-value does not by itself establish practical benefit. Managers should select improvement projects against the size and severity of harm, preventability, cost of inaction, availability of credible data and feasibility of transferring findings into durable process controls.

20.7.2 Defects, opportunities and probability assumptions

Defects per million opportunities (DPMO) is calculated as DPMO = [number of defects/(units × opportunities per unit)] × 1,000,000, provided each opportunity is explicitly defined and the counted defects correspond to that opportunity architecture. If 200 defects are recorded in 12,000 units, reporting 16,667 DPMO assumes exactly one relevant opportunity per unit and one count per defect event. This may be false: a packet may have two distinct nonconformities or multiple chances for a seal fault, and an apparent change in DPMO may arise from redefining opportunities. Defective-unit rates, defect-event frequencies and customer escape rates must therefore be presented separately.

Popular descriptions of 'Six Sigma' equate a particular sigma level with 3.4 defects per million opportunities using a conventional 1.5-sigma shift assumption. That convention is not a universal probability identity. For a centred normal distribution, six standard deviations to a specification boundary gives a different one-sided tail probability than a process assumed to drift by 1.5 standard deviations. The arithmetic is only meaningful after specifying distribution, stability, drift, opportunity count and specification. In small enterprises with sparse data, a stable and correctly measured defect fraction with confidence bounds is more defensible than a dramatic sigma score extracted from an online calculator.

20.7.3 Integrating DMAIC with experimentation and learning

DMAIC need not become a rigid sequential bureaucracy. Initial measurement may reveal that the project definition was wrong, and a proposed solution may require returning to data collection. A designed experiment that varies sealing temperature and contact time can identify technical response surfaces under controlled conditions; an observational before–after comparison cannot generally remove history or selection effects. When sample sizes are constrained, teams can start with repeatable small tests and explicit uncertainty, not fictitious statistical power. Once the improvement has been shown to operate within safe constraints, standard work, training, maintenance triggers and management review prevent the project from becoming a one-off report.

Lean and Six Sigma share concern for stable, reliable flow but differ in their common emphasis. Lean often begins with queues, work design and flow; Six Sigma often begins with variation, a critical-to-quality output and a measurable project. Neither should outrank legally required safety controls or the right to report

deviations. Their joint value emerges when a team can specify what is harmful, measure it validly, change the causal mechanism and sustain the remedy without transferring losses to other functions.

20.7.4 Experimental design and the problem of generalization

When multiple process variables interact, changing one factor at a time can be misleading. Suppose seal strength depends jointly on temperature, pressure, dwell time and film type; a temperature increase that improves one film may damage another. A small factorial experiment can estimate both main effects and selected interactions if its settings are safe, randomized where practicable and replicated sufficiently to estimate variation. Factors must be chosen within engineering and regulatory limits, and measurement must be independent of the operator who favors a proposed setting. Replication across shifts, product lots and operators tests whether the result is robust rather than an artifact of one convenient trial. Montgomery (2019) emphasizes design of experiments as a method for investigating such process response structures, not a substitute for contextual expertise.

The experimental unit must be defined with care. If temperature is set once for an entire production shift, packets produced within that shift are not independent experimental assignments to different temperatures. Treating hundreds of packets as hundreds of independent replications would overstate precision. Likewise, a sequential trial may confound an apparent process improvement with operator learning or a change in material supplier. Documenting randomization, blocking, run order, calibration and outcome thresholds makes the eventual claim inspectable. A pilot that succeeds only for one product or one experienced team should not be called organizational excellence until its transfer conditions have been tested. Controls that prevent unsafe release must remain in effect throughout the experiment.

20.8 QUALITY COSTING AND BUSINESS PERFORMANCE

20.8.1 Prevention, appraisal and failure costs

Cost of quality (COQ) accounts for resources devoted to achieving adequate quality as well as losses arising from inadequate quality. A common prevention–appraisal–failure model classifies training, robust design and supplier qualification as prevention; measurement, inspection and audits as appraisal; scrap, rework and in-process failures as internal failure; and returns, warranty service, recall and post-delivery remediation as external failure (ASQ, n.d.-a). This is an analytical classification, not a declaration that every spending item is intrinsically beneficial or that all costs can be reliably recovered from ordinary ledgers. A cost may move between categories as work is redesigned. For example, an upstream automated seal test may raise appraisal costs while sharply reducing customer escapes.

An auditable COQ system should state period, product or service scope, allocation rules, data provenance and excluded costs. Internal waste requires an opportunity-cost judgment: scrap materials already consumed and extra machine hours may have different marginal economic consequences. Lost reputation, customer distress, latent injury, regulatory enforcement and future business foregone can be consequential but are rarely directly identifiable from invoice records. Reporting only easily coded rework understates failure; presenting speculative lifetime losses as certain would be equally irresponsible. Financial accounting in Chapter 22 and management costing in Chapter 23 provide complementary classification and allocation structures; quality analysis adds causal and stakeholder interpretation.

20.8.2 A conditional investment model

The constructed enterprise's monthly COQ illustration below assumes that prevention cost rises from RWF 0.90 million to 1.45 million and appraisal from RWF 0.70 million to 0.85 million following corrective action. Internal failure is assumed to decline from RWF 2.40 million to 1.20 million and external failure from RWF 1.60 million to 0.70 million. The current monthly total is RWF 5.60 million and the hypothetical post-improvement total is RWF 4.20 million, a conditional saving of RWF 1.40 million per month. Those numbers are constructed assumptions, not a measured result or a promise about Rwanda's packaging industry.

Table 20.1. *Illustrative monthly cost-of-quality bridge (RWF million)*

Category	Current	Conditional improved	Change
Prevention	0.90	1.45	+0.55
Appraisal	0.70	0.85	+0.15
Internal failure	2.40	1.20	−1.20
External failure	1.60	0.70	−0.90
Total COQ	5.60	4.20	−1.40

Note. Constructed illustrative data and decision rules; not observations from an identified enterprise. Source: Author’s calculations and synthesis (2026).

Suppose the enterprise must spend RWF 3.00 million once on equipment adjustments, validation and training, and the monthly improvement assumptions persist for twelve months. Undiscounted first-year gross saving is RWF 16.80 million; first-year net benefit after this one-off cost is RWF 13.80 million, with a conditional simple net benefit-to-one-off-cost ratio of 4.60. This is not an internal rate of return, a risk-adjusted net present value or a causal estimate. A conservative half-realization sensitivity produces RWF 8.40 million annual savings and RWF 5.40 million net benefit before discounting. Actual evaluation must verify that the cost categories are nonoverlapping, throughput and product mix stay comparable, new maintenance costs are included and harm reduction does not depend on suppressing complaints.

20.8.3 When quality investment is not optional

Economic appraisal cannot be the sole acceptance criterion where a product breaches mandatory safety limits or where exposure to severe harm is unacceptable. In such cases the first managerial task is containment and regulatory compliance; investment appraisal compares lawful and technically adequate alternatives. This distinction is necessary because expected monetary savings may undervalue low-frequency, high-severity events. A financial model that assigns a small cost to an unreported hazard is not neutral. Equally, limited budgets require proportionate risk prioritization and transparent staging rather than a claim that any quality expenditure must pay for itself immediately. Quality economics is a tool for responsible choice, not a license to trade away human dignity or legal protections.

20.8.4 Cash flows, discounting and the limits of value attribution

The cost-of-quality illustration in Table 20.1 describes an accounting bridge, not a cash-flow forecast. To appraise the assumed RWF 3.00 million outlay as an investment, the analyst must decide which monthly savings are incremental, cash-realizable and attributable to the intervention, whether the machine requires additional maintenance, whether working capital changes, and whether savings begin immediately. If the hypothetical RWF 1.40 million monthly net reduction were realized at each month-end for twelve months, with an illustrative 1% monthly discount rate and no terminal value, the net present value would be −3.00 + 1.40[(1 − 1.01^(−12))/0.01] = approximately RWF 12.76 million. This calculation is illustrative and represents neither an observed return nor a Rwanda market interest rate. At half the assumed monthly saving, the corresponding value is approximately RWF 4.88 million; the economic judgment is sensitive to realization, timing and scope rather than the attractiveness of the headline ratio.

The appraisal also requires a counterfactual. Some defects would have declined through ordinary maintenance or changed customer mix even without the project, while some recorded failures may rise because inspectors become more candid. A quality investment should therefore be monitored against a pre-specified comparable baseline or a suitable control process where feasible. External harms such as unsafe consumption and environmental damage must be reported separately when monetary valuation would conceal ethical constraints or rest on weak evidence. These distinctions prevent a nominal return on prevention from becoming an unsupported statement of causal effectiveness. The financial analysis should inform, but must not displace, the release authority's assessment of compliance and risk.

20.9 SERVICE QUALITY, COMPLAINTS AND CUSTOMER OUTCOMES

20.9.1 Why a service must be measured differently

Services often involve simultaneous production and use, customer participation, information exchange and heterogeneous frontline encounters. Consequently, identical technical procedures can generate different experiences and outcomes. Service quality can be considered through reliability, responsiveness, assurance, empathy and tangible signals, but these dimensions are not a universally validated metric for all cultures and sectors. Parasuraman et al. (1988) developed the SERVQUAL instrument, which compares expectations and perceptions. Cronin and Taylor (1992) challenged aspects of this approach and found support for performance-based evaluation. The dispute illustrates a deeper problem: satisfaction, attitude, objective service achievement and justice after a failure are connected but distinct constructs.

A service indicator should preserve its observational unit. 'Average response time' can be improved by ignoring difficult cases, while a high closure rate can conceal unresolved problems. For a logistics help desk, useful paired measures might include time to first meaningful response, verified case resolution, recurrence after closure, customer-reported comprehension and rights of appeal. For a bank, healthcare provider or public-facing service, security, confidentiality and lawful access may override small improvements in average handling time. Nonrespondents and customers denied service should not vanish from quality assessment merely because the existing questionnaire samples successful transactions.

20.9.2 Complaints and remedies as learning infrastructure

A legitimate complaints system makes it possible to submit a concern without retaliation, identifies the responsible recipient, acknowledges receipt, protects confidential information, distinguishes immediate remedial action from systemic correction and offers escalation where needed. ISO 10002:2018 provides complaints-handling guidance suitable for varied organizations, including small businesses; it does not determine every sector's legal obligations (ISO, 2018e). Complaints must be coded using stable categories and linked where feasible to product lot, transaction, process and resolution date. Declining complaint counts may indicate improvement, poor access, fear of reprisal or changed denominator. Triangulation with returns, repair costs, independent customer checks and frontline observations is indispensable.

Service recovery cannot universally erase failure. McCollough et al. (2000) reported that satisfaction after failure and high-quality recovery was generally lower than satisfaction from an error-free service in their experimental settings. This challenges the simplistic 'service recovery paradox' that an impressive apology makes failure desirable. Effective recovery involves acknowledgement, practical remedy, fair explanation and evidence that recurrence is being addressed. When a defect creates safety harm, customer communication must avoid language that treats compensation as proof of safety. Marketing (Chapters 13– 16) owns broader market design and communication; quality management must ensure that claims are supported by actual process evidence and that complaints are converted into accountable correction.

20.9.3 Service quality in African and informal contexts

Service standards transferred from global franchises may rely on digital identity, uninterrupted internet, individual mobile-phone ownership or standardized waiting environments. Such assumptions can exclude customers whose access is mediated by shared devices, informal trade relationships, language differences or transport limitations. Quality measurement should specify whether the service is reachable, intelligible and fair to its intended user groups. In a small Rwandan enterprise, a durable notebook with unique complaint numbers, clear response deadlines and independent review of serious cases may be a better first intervention than an expensive CRM dashboard. Digitalization becomes valuable when it strengthens evidence, not merely when it modernizes appearances.

20.9.4 Service blueprints, access and outcome validity

A service blueprint links the customer's visible journey to backstage decisions and enabling systems. Consider a hypothetical Rwandan equipment-repair service: the customer reports a fault, receives an estimated appointment window, grants access, observes a repair and signs completion. Behind that journey are parts availability, technician competence, diagnosis authorization, travel scheduling, data protection, billing and complaint escalation. A short average visit may indicate efficient diagnosis or premature closure; a low number of complaints may reflect satisfaction or an inaccessible reporting route. Quality assessment therefore requires evidence at several levels: promised versus actual arrival, first-time verified resolution, recurrence within a defined window, accurate and intelligible charges, and fair treatment of customers whose locations or connectivity make service costly.

Donabedian's (1988) structure–process–outcome distinction offers a useful comparative lens for this case when carefully adapted. Having qualified technicians and test instruments is a structural condition; conducting an approved diagnostic and explaining the repair are processes; sustained operation and customer safety are outcomes. None necessarily follows from the preceding one. A well-equipped branch can perform poor diagnoses, while an excellent interaction cannot guarantee long-term equipment reliability. Managers should report relevant exclusions and nonresponse, particularly in service networks where people denied access never enter the customer survey. The implication for service quality is that a complete evidence chain is stronger than any isolated satisfaction index.

20.10 SUPPLIER QUALITY, INCOMING CONTROL AND AUDIT

20.10.1 Quality extends across organizational boundaries

An enterprise cannot fully control its finished product if purchased materials, outsourced processes and transport conditions are treated as externalities. Supplier quality begins before a purchase order: a specification must identify critical functional characteristics, acceptance methods, evidence requirements, traceability, packaging, storage and responsibilities if material fails. Procurement owns fair supplier selection and contractual governance (Chapter 18); quality management owns the technical assurance that purchased inputs and outsourced work conform to legitimate product and process requirements. The supplier with the lowest unit price may create high inspection, rework, recall or continuity costs, making total landed and lifecycle consequences relevant to selection.

Incoming inspection is risk-weighted. Low-risk standardized stationery may be accepted under supplier history and sample checks; a high-risk food ingredient or safety-critical component may require identity verification, documentation, accredited test evidence, controlled storage and possibly intensified testing. Sampling can reduce inspection expenditure, but acceptance of a lot under a statistical sampling plan never logically proves that every unit conforms. The producer must understand the producer's and consumer's risks embedded in the plan and apply regulatory controls independently of commercial convenience. Measurement traceability matters because a certificate produced by an unverified laboratory may offer less assurance than its professional appearance suggests.

20.10.2 Audits, corrective action and traceability

Supplier audits should be designed around the risks that contracts and test results cannot reveal: process changes, record integrity, staff competence, subcontracting and segregation of defective material. A supplier scorecard might combine defect frequency, severity, on-time corrected delivery, repeat nonconformity, traceability exercise performance and documented corrective-action timeliness. Each indicator needs a denominator and an independent means of challenge. An average supplier defect rate can conceal a single unacceptable safety incident, while weighting all suppliers equally can obscure exposure. Risk priority should consider consequence, probability, detectability, substitute availability and capacity to recover, not a decorative total score alone.

Traceability means being able to follow an identified input or output through relevant production and distribution stages. A practical test asks the enterprise to identify all affected finished-product lots and customers from one suspect input batch, and then to trace a finished lot backward to relevant ingredients, dates, suppliers and equipment records. The critical measure is not the existence of software but completeness and time to credible identification. Where traceability is deficient, management must broaden containment and disclose uncertainty. Customers and regulators deserve accurate information even when disclosure creates near-term commercial losses.

20.10.3 Supplier development and regional standards

A defensible supplier improvement programme provides explicit standards, timely technical feedback, root-cause collaboration, access to attainable testing and proportionate corrective deadlines. Abruptly excluding micro-suppliers that lack expensive certificates may protect a large buyer's formal audit score while reducing local participation and competition. Conversely, affordability cannot justify accepting unsafe inputs. Rwanda's quality infrastructure includes standardization, metrology, testing, certification and related accreditation functions, and RSB provides product and systems certification information (RSB, 2018, n.d.-a). Under East African regional trade, mutual recognition and harmonized standards can reduce repeated testing only where the relevant instruments, recognized scope and conformity requirements actually apply. Supplier development is thus a shared task for procurement, operations, legal compliance and quality specialists rather than a unilateral demand for paperwork.

20.10.4 Laboratory competence and cross-border evidence

Credible quality decisions require clarity about the organizations that generate test results. ISO/IEC 17025:2017 establishes requirements for competent, impartial and consistently operated testing and calibration laboratories, while ISO 9001:2026 concerns the management system of an organization more generally. An ISO 9001 certificate held by a supplier is not interchangeable with laboratory accreditation for a particular analytical method; conversely, a laboratory's accredited scope may not cover every characteristic displayed on its price list (International Organization for Standardization/International Electrotechnical Commission [ISO/IEC], 2017; ISO, 2026g). A Rwandan buyer should therefore verify the method, uncertainty where material, tested matrix, sampling custody, calibration traceability, accreditation scope and whether a report refers to the delivered lot. When a failed result is disputed, independent retesting should be specified with an evidential chain before contractual sanctions are imposed.

Cross-border trade adds a further institutional problem: technical equivalence does not automatically imply legal recognition of another country's certificate. Recognition may depend on harmonized standards, accreditation arrangements, destination requirements, shipment identity and competent-authority decisions. For smaller enterprises, repeated testing can be costly and can discourage regional participation. However, waiving needed safety evidence to accelerate a shipment shifts risk onto consumers. The practical solution is to document applicable requirements before contracting, select recognized technical services and retain lot-level evidence that is usable across procurement, border clearance, customer assurance and any later corrective action. Quality management thus converts regional integration from an abstract promise into a disciplined system of verifiable claims.

20.11 QUALITY CULTURE, LEADERSHIP AND WORKER AGENCY

20.11.1 The behavioural foundations of error disclosure

No procedure can compensate for organizational incentives that punish the people who report errors. A quality culture is demonstrated when leaders act upon unwelcome evidence, protect credible concern-raising, allocate resources for prevention and accept personal responsibility for management-created conditions. Deming's critique of fear is especially relevant where employees are graded by numbers they cannot control (Deming, 1986). A worker who sees a seal failure must know how to stop or flag output, and should not face retaliation for using that authorization. Supervisors must distinguish honest human error, reckless disregard of established protections and deliberate falsification without treating every deviation as grounds for blame.

Training creates capability only when instruction is reinforced through usable tools, time and authority. Requiring a worker to execute a ten-step verification procedure within a five-step time allowance makes later error predictable. Likewise, rewarding managers solely for dispatch quantity can encourage them to bypass protective holds. The HR systems developed in Chapters 9–12 and the governance mechanisms of Chapter 8 are

therefore integral to quality assurance. Worker participation should include practical design review, accessible safety information, opportunities to test proposed changes and feedback on management's response, rather than a suggestion box whose entries are never considered.

20.11.2 Leadership, audit candour and difficult trade-offs

High-quality reporting requires credible independence. A quality manager asked to sign off a batch with missing safety records should have a documented escalation route that cannot be overridden by a salesperson's commercial target. However, independence should not become an unaccountable veto: the evidence, requirement and basis for disposition must remain explicit and contestable by competent review. Quality leaders must also guard against managerial appropriation of successes and individualization of failures. Many defects arise from accumulated decisions on procurement specifications, understaffing, equipment maintenance and unrealistic deadlines rather than one visible operator's conduct.

A defensible quality culture should be assessed through triangulation: willingness to raise concerns, near-miss reporting, time to resolve serious findings, repeat defects, documented leadership responses and whether the same standards apply to favored and unfavored staff. Survey scores alone are insufficient, particularly if anonymity is uncertain. A rise in reports may indicate improved speaking-up conditions rather than worsening actual quality; a fall may signal intimidation. Interpretation requires local institutional knowledge and temporal comparison, not automatic ranking of teams by reported incidents.

20.11.3 Justice, power and the credibility of quality evidence

A quality system is also a distribution of epistemic authority: certain people may define the defect, approve the sampling method, interpret anomalies or authorize release. That distribution creates a risk of systematic silence when the employees who observe failures lack practical power to challenge management. A quality culture cannot be established from staff satisfaction scores alone; it requires evidence that credible reports are investigated, serious hazards are escalated irrespective of commercial consequences and those adversely affected can seek remedy. Transparency must be reciprocal. Workers should receive enough information about why an incident matters, customers should not be misled about testing or certification scope, and managers should expose their own process-design assumptions to review. Institutional protections for reporting should be evaluated against relevant local law and actual workplace practice, not inferred from the presence of a policy (Deming, 1986; Hackman & Wageman, 1995).

Fairness does not require eliminating individual accountability. Deliberate falsification, reckless circumvention and innocent human error have different moral and organizational implications, yet these distinctions cannot be determined from a failed output alone. Investigators should examine workload, conflicting instructions, equipment condition, incentives and opportunities for competent action before attributing culpability. Severe customer harm may require immediate containment independently of whether misconduct is proven. This separation of protective action, technical explanation and employment judgment prevents a search for blame from contaminating causal inquiry. It also connects quality management to employee voice, governance, labour relations and customer protection without transferring those subjects out of their designated chapters.

20.12 DIGITAL QUALITY, ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND SUSTAINABLE SYSTEMS

20.12.1 Sensors, traceability and predictive quality

Digital quality systems can join machine signals, test results, inventory identifiers and customer complaints into a more rapid evidence chain. Sensors may monitor temperature, torque, weight, humidity or seal integrity continuously rather than relying on end-of-line sampling. Computer vision may help classify visible defects, and predictive models may identify combinations of conditions associated with failure. Yet useful deployment requires stable identifiers, validated measurement methods, maintenance, data provenance, calibrated thresholds and procedures for checking both false positives and false negatives. A highly accurate-looking dashboard can become systematically misleading when sensors drift, product mix changes or an algorithm is trained predominantly on easy defects (Mahin et al., 2024).

For an AI-assisted visual-inspection model, validation should use held-out observations representative of equipment, lighting, product variants and realistic defect severities. A confusion matrix must distinguish sensitivity to dangerous defects from overall accuracy. In a production stream with rare critical faults, a model can achieve very high headline accuracy by mostly predicting 'good'. Performance should be reported with prevalence, precision, recall for each safety-critical class, false-release rate, sample definition and uncertainty. Drift monitoring, documented human override, version control and safe fallback procedures are necessary. NIST's voluntary AI Risk Management Framework offers a useful governance vocabulary, but its existence does not certify an enterprise's model or displace domestic law (Tabassi, 2023).

20.12.2 Cybersecurity, data governance and automated decision rights

Quality data now depend on software configurations, access controls, networks and third-party providers. Unauthorized changes to acceptance limits, fabricated sensor readings, manipulated lot histories or unavailable systems can make a perfectly functioning production line unsafe. Quality management should therefore coordinate with cybersecurity and information systems (Chapters 28–29) on role-based permissions, change logs, backup and recovery, integrity controls, supplier-software assurance and a tested manual fallback for safety-critical release decisions. 'Human in the loop' is meaningful only when the reviewer has sufficient time, competence, contextual information and genuine authority to reject automated recommendations.

Digital capability also has opportunity costs. Buying cameras or a cloud platform before fixing inaccurate defect definitions and broken process ownership may scale unreliable decisions. A staged intervention can begin with a standardized check sheet, calibration records and lot identifiers, then introduce low-cost electronic capture, then test a sensor or model against a defined baseline. The governing criterion is incremental evidence of reliable decisions at acceptable cost and risk, not the sophistication of the purchased interface. A well-governed manual process may outperform poorly controlled automation in a low-volume enterprise.

20.12.3 Quality, resource efficiency and environmental limits

Quality failure creates environmental burdens through scrap, additional transport, energy-consuming rework, premature replacement and discarded products. Prevention can therefore align quality with resource productivity. Yet minimizing visible waste inside a factory is not sufficient: an easy-to-manufacture package may generate difficult-to-recover post-consumer waste. A relevant life-cycle perspective examines materials, energy, safe use, durability, repairability and end-of-life effects, while keeping quality compliance and environmental claims analytically separate. ISO 14001:2026 provides a current environmental-management framework distinct from ISO 9001:2026, and its use does not establish a particular product's environmental superiority (ISO, 2026a).

Rwanda's IBES 2024 identifies uneven access to capabilities and reports that 62.6% of manufacturing enterprises surveyed did not fully use installed capacity, while its measures of waste management and

solar-energy use have their own survey definitions (NISR, 2026e). These data do not measure quality defects, and no causal connection to quality performance should be inferred. They do suggest practical constraints on investment, process stability and capability development that an imported 'Quality 4.0' blueprint may underestimate. Responsible transformation requires anticipating energy reliability, repair services, technician training, data ownership and the environmental cost of discarded electronics as well as potential efficiency gains.

20.12.4 Rare-defect detection and the economics of false assurance

A simple numerical example shows why automated visual inspection needs class-specific evaluation. Suppose 10,000 hypothetical units contain 100 truly nonconforming items and 9,900 conforming items. An inspection model identifies 90 of the 100 nonconforming units but also rejects 495 conforming units. Sensitivity is 90/100 = 90%, specificity is 9,405/9,900 = 95%, and precision among the 585 flagged items is 90/585 = 15.4%. Overall accuracy is (90 + 9,405)/10,000 = 94.95%, yet ten defective units are falsely released, including potentially critical defects. These counts are constructed, not reported results for an AI product. The example demonstrates why a seemingly strong accuracy number does not establish safety, especially when prevalence is low. A threshold that raises sensitivity may increase costly false rejection; the appropriate threshold depends on consequences, independent verification and release rules.

Before procurement of such a system, managers should specify the defect taxonomy, acceptable false-release exposure, data provenance, representative lighting and product conditions, human review capacity, fallback method and surveillance for model drift. Evaluators should use separate development and test sets, report performance by class and production condition, and avoid leaking nearly identical images of one defective lot across training and evaluation. System-wide costs include camera maintenance, calibration, cybersecurity, rejected good product, manual adjudication, retraining and vendor dependence. Digital inspection is therefore a potential source of quality capability, not independent proof of it (Mahin et al., 2024; Tabassi, 2023).

20.13 RWANDA APPLICATION: AN AUDITABLE FOOD-PACKAGING IMPROVEMENT CASE

20.13.1 Institutional context and evidentiary boundaries

Rwanda's National Institute of Statistics reports approximately 278,060 non-agricultural business enterprises in its 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey, with an informality share of at least 87% under the survey's definitions (NISR, 2026e). This makes a quality programme that presupposes a full-time statistical engineer, enterprise resource-planning suite and laboratory on every site implausible as a default for the economy. RSB's activities in standards, conformity assessment, metrology and certification establish a national institutional setting for credible requirements and testing; its product certification programme identifies the Standardization Mark (S-Mark), while the Made in Rwanda mark is governed by its own criteria (RSB, n.d.-a, n.d.-c). Such marks have specified scopes and should not be presented as unrestricted endorsements of every business claim. The institutional facts provide context, not observed quality outcomes for the hypothetical enterprise below.

The teaching case concerns 'Kigali Valley Foods', a fictitious enterprise that manufactures shelf-stable packaged snacks for retail and institutional buyers. Assume production of 12,000 packets in a month, under one process scope, with a common product specification, six recording categories and consistent procedures for capturing defect events. The case provides two different constructed data systems: a production-wide check-sheet of 200 recorded defect events, where one packet may contribute multiple events, and twelve sequential samples of 200 packets each, for which the inspector records whether each packet has at least one defined nonconformity. These cannot be equated without item-level linkage. Neither system has been observed in Rwanda; their value is methodological transparency and an opportunity to examine what the measures can and cannot establish.

20.13.2 Reproducible Pareto analysis

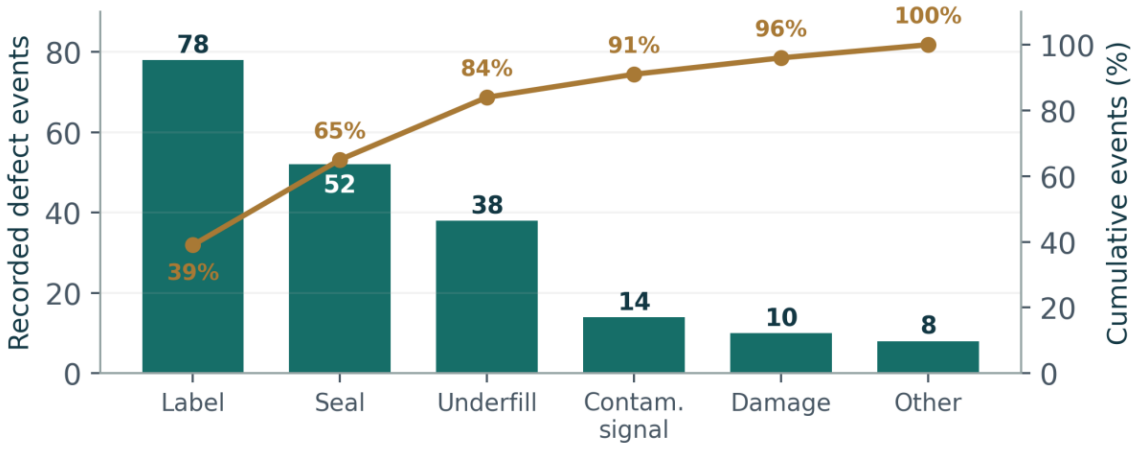
Table 20.2. *Illustrative defect-event Pareto analysis for 12,000 packets*

Defect-event category	Events	Share of 200	Cumulative share
Incorrect or unreadable label	78	39%	39%
Weak or incomplete seal	52	26%	65%
Underfilled packet	38	19%	84%
Potential contamination indicator	14	7%	91%
External package damage	10	5%	96%
Other documented events	8	4%	100%
TOTAL	200	100%	100%

Note. Constructed illustrative data and decision rules; not observations from an identified enterprise. Source: Author's calculations and synthesis (2026).

The check-sheet yields 78/200 = 39% for labeling and 52/200 = 26% for seals; together those event types account for 130/200 = 65%. Adding underfill brings the cumulative event share to 84%. These percentages permit a ranking of observed defect-event frequency, not a conclusion that 84% of defective packets arise from three causes, nor that every counted event has equal severity or cost. The category labeled 'potential contamination indicator' is lower frequency yet may warrant immediate containment and formal safety review, depending on the hazard and evidence. A sound priority rule therefore considers frequency, severity, customer exposure, detectability and remedy cost separately. The familiar 80/20 phrase is a heuristic, not a theorem governing this dataset or a reason to ignore serious infrequent events.

Figure 20.3 *Pareto chart of constructed defect-event frequencies and cumulative percentages*



Note. Original explanatory figure synthesizing the cited concepts; all case values, where shown, are hypothetical.

20.13.3 Process-stability evidence

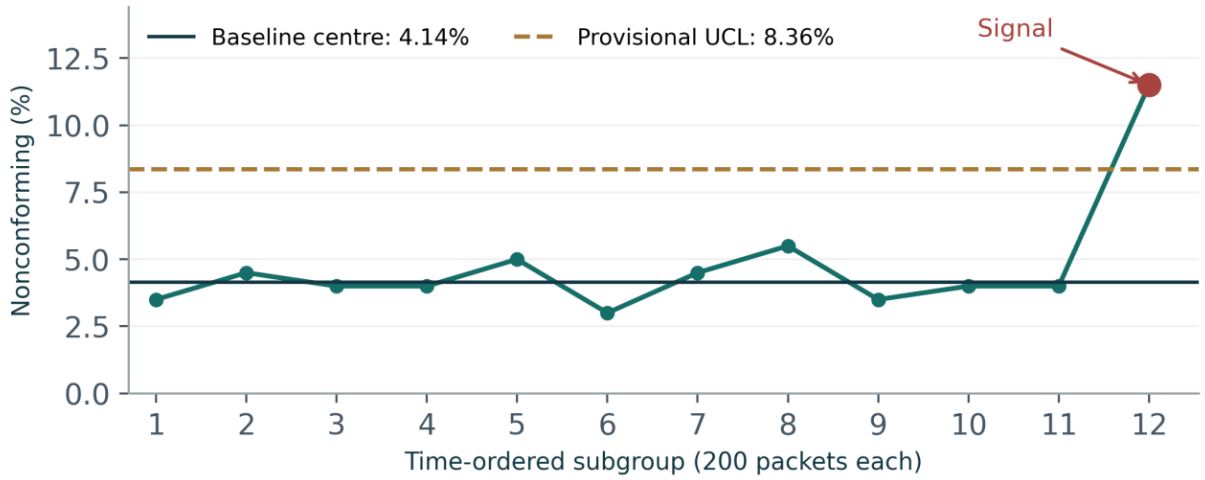
Table 20.3. *Sequential sample data for p-chart analysis, all groups n = 200*

Sample	Nonconforming units	Observed fraction
1	7	0.035
2	9	0.045
3	8	0.040
4	8	0.040
5	10	0.050
6	6	0.030
7	9	0.045
8	11	0.055
9	7	0.035
10	8	0.040
11	8	0.040
12	23	0.115

Note. Constructed illustrative data and decision rules; not observations from an identified enterprise. Source: Author's calculations and synthesis (2026).

The eleven preliminary subgroups contain 91 nonconforming packets among 2,200 inspected. Their pooled proportion is 4.136%, with the binomial baseline upper three-sigma limit about 8.361% and a lower limit truncated at zero. The twelfth subgroup is 11.5%, beyond that provisional upper limit. It is therefore reasonable to initiate a special-cause investigation and quarantine potentially affected work if the defect class warrants it. The result is not a formal declaration that all prior production was stable: eleven baseline points provide limited evidence, and dependence within a shift, sampling bias or inconsistent classification may invalidate binomial assumptions. A formal operational system would ordinarily need a longer representative baseline and clearly specified supplementary run rules.

Figure 20.4 *Illustrative p-chart with eleven baseline samples and one investigative signal*



Note. Original explanatory figure synthesizing the cited concepts; all case values, where shown, are hypothetical.

20.13.4 Causal inquiry and control of unsafe release

A fishbone team can first classify hypotheses under materials, equipment, method, measurement, people and environment. For weak seals, candidate mechanisms might include variable film thickness, worn heating components, inadequate dwell time, unverified gauge calibration, inconsistent handoff instructions and heat or humidity effects. The case does not supply experimental evidence that any is the actual cause. The team should record the film lot, sealer, temperature setting, time of each event and inspection operator; assess agreement on seal classification; and test carefully controlled settings against qualified acceptance criteria. Where product safety is implicated, pending stock should remain under an authorized disposition rule rather than be released because the average defect score appears acceptable.

The corrective-action plan would initially contain affected product, perform independent seal verification and protect customers where an unsafe escape is plausible. It would then investigate and test a causal hypothesis, formally approve the process change, retrain relevant roles, verify effectiveness with independent sampling and monitor recurrence. Releasing staff from impossible cycle-time targets may be part of the change if workload is causal. The case does not demonstrate the eventual improvement: the post-change values in Table 20.1 remain conditional forecasts requiring measured validation. This distinction keeps the pedagogical exercise from becoming fabricated evidence of a successful intervention.

Table 20.4. *Illustrative corrective-action and evidence register*

Issue or decision	Accountable role	Required evidence	Closure test
Suspect lots and containment	Quality release owner	Lot list, safety assessment, disposition authorization	No unapproved lot released
Seal root cause	Operations and quality analysts	Measurement agreement, lot/shift trace, controlled test	Cause hypothesis survives verification
Approved process change	Operations manager	Change record, revised specification, competence evidence	Authorized trial meets specification
Sustained performance	Independent quality reviewer	Time-series samples, escape records, complaint trends	Stable performance and no new safety signal
Supplier countermeasure	Procurement and supplier quality	Material tests and supplier corrective action	Verified specification and repeat-lot conformity

Note. Constructed illustrative data and decision rules; not observations from an identified enterprise. Source: Author’s calculations and synthesis (2026).

20.13.5 Integrated decision memo and staged adoption

A responsible manager should distinguish immediate customer protection from the financial question of financing durable process change. If the RWF 3.00 million initial investment is necessary for a safety-critical remedy, the organization must pursue a lawful, technically adequate alternative regardless of whether the first-year economic model is attractive. If it concerns discretionary quality enhancement beyond compliance, the model in Table 20.1 supports a staged decision: approve an instrument and process-validation pilot, define acceptance criteria, verify supplier inputs, train staff, then release recurring expenditure when reliable evidence shows improvement. Managers should separately review cash impact, working-capital needs and the risk that production growth changes defect exposure.

A suitable improvement scorecard records a small balanced set of measures rather than a single 'quality score': sampled nonconforming proportion with control-chart status, safety-critical escapes, cost of poor quality with scope, complaint resolution and recurrence, supplier-lot conformity, audit actions overdue, and validated waste or energy per usable packet. Every measure should include a clear denominator, accountable owner, period, source and corrective trigger. Public communication must not claim that a simulation establishes actual enterprise performance; transparent reporting is itself a quality obligation.

Table 20.5. *Proposed quality-improvement scoreboard and decision rules*

Indicator	Numerator and denominator	Interpretive safeguard	Action trigger
Unit nonconformance	Defective audited packets / audited packets	Risk-weighted sampling	Special-cause signal or unsafe unit
Escape rate	Confirmed customer escapes / delivered packets	Complaint access affects count	Any critical escape and adverse trend
Cost of poor quality	Internal + external failure RWF / monthly sales RWF	Exclude speculative values from ledger measure	Adverse trend with stable scope
Supplier conformity	Rejected critical lots / tested critical lots	Supplier and input stratification	Critical failure or worsening trend
Corrective action effectiveness	Verified effective actions / due actions	Evidence, not closure signatures	Repeated issue or overdue critical action
Waste intensity	Discarded material kg / accepted packets	Include off-site transferred waste	Increase without product-mix explanation

Note. Constructed illustrative data and decision rules; not observations from an identified enterprise. Source: Author's calculations and synthesis (2026).

20.14 INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON: WHAT CAN AND CANNOT TRAVEL

20.14.1 Toyota as a documented institutional comparator

Toyota describes its production system through just-in-time and jidoka, with foundational routines developed through repeated experimentation and extended across facilities and suppliers over decades (Toyota Motor Corporation, n.d.-a). The relevant lesson for a Rwandan enterprise is not that an inexpensive visual board recreates Toyota's results. It is that quality, process flow, employee judgment, equipment design and supplier development have to be jointly configured. Jidoka is especially instructive as a principle of detecting abnormal conditions and interrupting unsuitable production rather than multiplying inspection after the fact. Toyota's account is an organizational self-description, not independent proof of every claimed economic or labor outcome, and it cannot establish the feasibility of identical practices in Kigali.

There are identifiable boundary conditions. Toyota's scale, supplier density, industrial history, engineering capabilities, investment horizon and employment institutions differ from those of microenterprises working with imported inputs and thin margins. A low-inventory strategy that is coherent within a resilient supply network may be hazardous where border delays and machine spares are uncertain, as Chapter 19 demonstrated. Conversely, a small enterprise may be able to change an operating instruction or experiment with a fixture more quickly than a complex multinational. Comparative transfer should focus on the underlying causal mechanism, identify the necessary complementary capabilities and test local feasibility rather than copy tools by name.

20.14.2 Certification research and the problem of selection

The U.S. certification study by Corbett et al. (2005) provides evidence that certified manufacturers subsequently exhibited favorable financial performance relative to selected comparators, while showing sensitivity to matching choices. This supports taking management systems seriously without claiming that the certificate itself is the unique causal agent. Firms that pursue certification may already have better management, more demanding customers or access to larger capital markets. The study's industrial, national and historical boundaries also restrict direct inference to Rwanda's informal and service-intensive enterprise population. Research of this kind is most valuable when it encourages careful counterfactual evaluation instead of mechanical promises about returns on certification fees.

20.14.3 Rwanda's standards ecosystem and regional markets

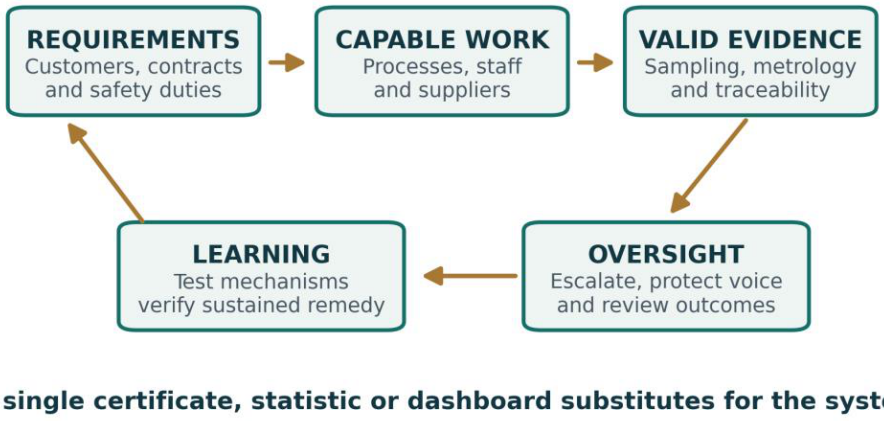
RSB's quality policy defines the country's national quality infrastructure through standards, measurement, conformity assessment and accreditation-related arrangements, while its public guidance explains product certification and technical services (RSB, 2018, n.d.-a). For exporters and suppliers serving institutional clients, credible testing and recognized standards can be commercially important, especially where buyers have limited direct knowledge of product quality. Yet a certificate can exclude capable small suppliers where costs are disproportionate; recognition across borders depends on the actual scope and institutional arrangements. Improvement programmes should therefore combine clear risk requirements with accessible laboratory and metrology services, supplier learning and fair recognition of reliable evidence. Formalization is a means of building warranted confidence, not an adequate substitute for it.

20.15 INTEGRATIVE DISCUSSION, CRITICAL SYNTHESIS AND RESEARCH DIRECTIONS

20.15.1 A conditional theory of accountable quality capability

Quality emerges through a sequence of connected but distinct propositions. First, legitimate requirements translate heterogeneous needs, contractual commitments and non-negotiable safety duties into testable characteristics. Second, production and service systems can only achieve those characteristics reliably if process variation is understood and material, human and informational resources are capable. Third, monitoring is useful only where measurement is valid and personnel can act on the evidence without fear. Fourth, corrective action requires a causal account whose implications have been tested, not a narrative that ends at 'operator error'. Fifth, the gains must survive supplier variation, market change, managerial incentives and digital-system failure. These links form an analytical model, not empirical proof of a new causal system.

Figure 20.5 *An integrated enterprise architecture for accountable quality capability*



Note. Original explanatory figure synthesizing the cited concepts; all case values, where shown, are hypothetical.

The model has important rival explanations. A firm's quality gains may reflect more favorable customers, newer equipment or a demand shock rather than its formal QMS. Customer satisfaction may rise through reduced expectations rather than better service. A fall in recorded defects may follow more permissive inspection, not safer production. A successful pilot may fail when expanded to other shifts or suppliers. These alternatives should be specified before data collection. Quality research is especially vulnerable to same-source questionnaire bias, survivor selection, inadequate counterfactuals and changes in the definitions of 'defect' or 'success' across time (Flynn et al., 1994; Kaynak, 2003).

20.15.2 Cross-functional consequences and responsibilities

Quality is not the property of an inspection office. Marketing and product managers determine which promises customers can reasonably expect, while operations makes the promised specification technically feasible. Procurement influences input variation and traceability, logistics protects condition in storage and transit, and finance determines the feasibility of prevention investment and the reliability of cost classifications. HR and organizational leadership structure learning, reporting protection and workload, while information systems secure the records underlying release and recall decisions. Governance is required where local commercial pressures threaten safety or evidence integrity. This interdependence is the same enterprise-system logic established in Chapter 1, expressed here as a set of quality assurance decision rights.

The relation between quality and sustainability deserves particular caution. Fewer defects may reduce material use, but a production change could increase electricity consumption or generate nonrecyclable packaging. A cost-saving automation may reduce human judgment where it is most essential; a customer-driven customization programme may compromise safe standardization. These are not arguments against improvement. They require evaluating enterprise performance with financial, technical, environmental and ethical boundaries made explicit, instead of treating one trend as conclusive.

20.15.3 Testable propositions and a realistic research agenda

One research question concerns whether locally adapted quality practices produce greater improvements in defect escape rates than formal certification alone among Rwandan small enterprises after baseline process capability, sector, customer composition and managerial resources are accounted for. A second concerns whether protected employee reporting mediates the relation between formal procedures and detection of safety-critical anomalies. A third asks whether supplier-development support reduces quality disparities between informal and formal suppliers without increasing unsafe acceptance. A fourth examines the incremental predictive value and fairness of AI-assisted inspection against simpler instrumented process controls after allowing for machine drift and rare defects.

A defensible programme would first develop validated multilingual measures and stable defect taxonomies, identify relevant populations and sampling frames, and predefine product-level or service-level outcomes. Where feasible, staggered implementation with comparison enterprises could support difference-in-differences analysis, provided parallel-trend assumptions are examined; a randomized phased rollout may be possible for low-risk non-mandatory interventions. Mixed documentary, operational and employee-voice evidence could explain mechanisms overlooked by dashboard statistics. For low-frequency severe hazards, prospective monitoring and qualitative process tracing may be more informative than underpowered inferential tests. Researchers should publish deviations, measurement changes, negative findings and scope restrictions rather than treating every improvement project as proof of the favored theory.

20.15.4 Boundary conditions and a programme for independent evaluation

The integrated framework is not a claim that all enterprises should maximize formalization, inspection intensity or automation. It has at least four boundary conditions. First, high-severity hazards create binding release constraints that cannot be offset by favorable averages. Second, institutional access to competent testing and legal remedy varies, shaping what evidence can be produced at reasonable cost. Third, operations with infrequent outputs, nonstationary demand or bespoke services may not support conventional control-chart assumptions without substantial adaptation. Fourth, reported improvements can be artifacts of changed classification, sampling or complaint access. For these reasons, the appropriate research object is a specified quality mechanism operating within a defined institutional and technological configuration, not 'quality maturity' as an abstract quantity.

An independent evaluation should prospectively register outcomes and harms, retain original defect definitions, measure reporting access, and establish the timing and content of changes in process controls. Where comparable sites exist, a staggered implementation may offer stronger evidence than an uncontrolled before–after graph, although spillovers and selection may remain. A credible mixed-method programme would combine audit traces, direct process observation, financial ledgers, employee accounts and independently collected customer outcomes. Its normative safeguards should preclude randomizing mandatory safety protections away from any unit. Publication should include null or adverse findings, limitations of the statistical model and a clear description of which conclusions are theoretical, descriptive or causal. The same discipline is needed to evaluate the framework advanced in this chapter.

20.16 CHAPTER SYNTHESIS, TERMINOLOGY AND LEARNING RESOURCES

20.16.1 Synthesis and conclusion

Quality is best understood as a justified relationship between requirements, actual characteristics, observed consequences and accountable processes. Historical traditions from Shewhart, Deming and Juran established that prevention and system learning are distinct from sorting defective output. Current management-system standards help organize responsibilities, but no certificate can substitute for technically competent verification. Control charts can identify signals worth investigation, whereas specification limits determine whether outputs meet requirements. Pareto analysis can rank events, but cannot turn correlation into a causal explanation or frequency into a measure of moral severity. Lean and Six Sigma provide complementary means of changing flow and variation, conditional on valid data and worker participation. Cost-of-quality analysis demonstrates why prevention can be economically attractive, while safety and legal duties impose limits that must not be reduced to expected profit. Services, suppliers, digital systems and environmental impacts extend quality across organizational boundaries. Taken together, the chapter's central finding is conceptual: operational excellence is a maintained capacity for honest, evidence-based and correctable performance, not a permanent status established by a dashboard or award.

20.16.2 Key terminology

Table 20.6. *Selected chapter glossary*

Term	Operational meaning
Quality	Degree to which relevant characteristics fulfil justified requirements within a specified context
Conformance	Agreement of an observed characteristic with an explicit requirement
Quality assurance	Planned confidence-building controls concerning the capacity to meet requirements
Quality control	Activities that verify or control the conformity of results
Common cause	Routine process variation within a provisionally stable generating system
Special cause	A distinguishable disturbance or pattern not adequately explained by the baseline model
Control limit	Statistically estimated process-behaviour boundary, distinct from customer specification
Nonconforming unit	A unit with one or more defined nonconformities
Defect event	A counted occurrence of a defined nonconformity, with multiple possible in one unit
Corrective action	Action intended to address causes and reduce recurrence of nonconformity
DMAIC	Define, measure, analyze, improve and control sequence for structured projects
Cost of quality	Prevention plus appraisal plus internal and external failure expenditures
Traceability	Ability to identify and follow relevant history, inputs or distribution pathways
Operational excellence	Evidence-supported, sustained and responsible performance across relevant dimensions

Note. Definitions synthesized from cited quality-management literature and standards; wording adapted for teaching.

20.16.3 Questions and applied tasks

The foundational discussion exercise requires a comparison of conformance, fitness for use, statistical control, safety and customer satisfaction, using one food product and one digital service. Readers should explain how a process can be statistically stable while routinely generating unacceptable outputs, and identify the distinct evidence required for each of these quality claims.

In the applied statistical exercise, readers reproduce every percentage and cumulative share in Table 20.2 and develop a properly labelled two-axis Pareto chart. They then establish a corrective-action priority that distinguishes the frequency and seriousness of defects. From Table 20.3 they must calculate a provisional p-chart centre line and three-sigma limits using only samples 1–11, interpret sample 12 and explain why the adverse observation should not be silently absorbed into a newly calculated baseline.

The integrative assessment is a 2,000-word memorandum to the hypothetical board of Kigali Valley Foods. The memorandum should defend immediate containment, cause investigation, measurement verification, supplier engagement, process trials, protection of employee reporting, customer communication, resource decisions, financial assumptions and follow-up verification. It should compare a proportionate paper-based management system with an instrumented digital option using explicit criteria for safety, operating feasibility, cash flow, accessibility and environmental responsibility. The case data must be labelled as constructed rather than observed enterprise results.

The advanced research task asks students to prepare a preregisterable observational design examining quality-system changes among Rwandan small manufacturers. A defensible protocol will specify inclusion criteria, baseline and follow-up outcomes, a plausible comparison strategy, threats to identification, power and access constraints, protections for workers and customers, and a reproducibility plan. The research justification should explain why a cross-sectional survey of perceived total-quality maturity cannot by itself establish an effect on physical product defects.

20.16.4 Educator guidance and assessment rubric

An adequate foundational answer separates output conformance from user experience and safety, and recognizes that control limits describe process behaviour rather than acceptance criteria. For the applied task, check the exact cumulative sequence 39%, 65%, 84%, 91%, 96% and 100%; the preliminary baseline is 91/2,200 = 0.04136, UCL approximately 0.08361 and LCL zero, so sample 12 at 0.115 generates a provisional special-cause signal. Good work identifies the small number of baseline samples, the possibility of non-independent inspected units and the need to verify measurement. For the financial task, baseline and conditional post-intervention COQ are RWF 5.60 million and 4.20 million per month respectively, with RWF 1.40 million difference, RWF 16.80 million annualized gross conditional savings and RWF 13.80 million first-year net after RWF 3.00 million initial costs, prior to discounting. A sophisticated answer does not confuse that forecast with experimentally established benefit.

A suitable advanced rubric allocates 25% to theoretical and technical precision, 25% to evidence and calculation validity, 20% to practical and cross-functional feasibility, 20% to ethical and safety governance, and 10% to scholarly clarity and source integrity. Work claiming a certified process cannot fail, ignoring a critical hazard because of low count, manipulating denominators or presenting illustrative data as real should not achieve the highest band irrespective of rhetorical quality.

20.16.5 Further reading and publication note

For foundational accounts of quality and systemic learning, Deming (1986), Juran (1988), Shewhart (1931) and Hackman and Wageman (1995) warrant close comparative reading. The empirical literature should be approached through Flynn et al. (1994), Powell (1995), Kaynak (2003) and Zu et al. (2008), with attention to construct validity and causal identification. Montgomery (2019, 2020) provides advanced experimental and control-method treatment; the NIST/SEMATECH handbook offers accessible technical checks. The current ISO standards, the official certification-transition guidance, and dated NISR and RSB publications should be consulted for operational and institutional application.

CHAPTER 21

Project, Programme, and Portfolio Management

ABSTRACT

Enterprises increasingly accomplish strategic change through temporary initiatives, yet delivering a specified output within an approved budget does not guarantee useful, equitable or durable results. This chapter critically examines project, programme and portfolio management as interdependent mechanisms for selecting investments, organizing temporary work and realizing benefits within continuing enterprise systems. A transparent, purposive synthesis combines foundational scheduling research, theories of temporary organization, governance, agency and stewardship, real-options reasoning, contemporary empirical project scholarship, and official PMI and ISO guidance. Twelve domains address authorization and selection; life cycles and governance; scope, dependencies, schedules and cost; uncertainty and stakeholders; teams and procurement; predictive and adaptive delivery; benefits evaluation; and digitally assisted project control. Official documentation of Rwanda's Digital Acceleration Project and the United Kingdom's Crossrail programme supports a comparative analysis that distinguishes policy intentions from independently established outcomes. An explicitly constructed Kigali university-service transformation project provides an auditable charter, work breakdown structure, critical-path network, cost baseline, earned-value measures, decision log, risk register and benefits appraisal. The central argument is that project success should be evaluated as a conditional relationship between legitimate strategic selection, feasible delivery, accountable governance and observed post-handover value, rather than a simple function of time, cost and scope. The integrated framework is a scholarly synthesis proposed for testing, not a newly validated causal model.

Keywords: project governance; programme management; portfolio management; critical-path method; earned value management; project risk; agile and hybrid delivery; benefits realization; digital transformation; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CHAPTER ROADMAP

After studying this chapter, readers should be able to (LO1) distinguish projects, operations, programmes and portfolios and evaluate the governance consequences of their boundaries; (LO2) critically compare temporary-organization, agency, stewardship, contingency, real-options and value-realization approaches; (LO3) prepare and appraise a transparent project charter, business case, requirements baseline and work breakdown structure; (LO4) calculate and interpret network schedules, float, cost baselines, earned-value indicators and uncertainty scenarios; (LO5) design proportionate stakeholder, team, procurement, risk and escalation arrangements; (LO6) justify predictive, adaptive or hybrid approaches against uncertainty, technical constraints and rights; (LO7) construct and challenge a benefits-realization and post-project evaluation plan; and (LO8) defend a cross-functional Rwandan investment recommendation using documented evidence, reproducible arithmetic and appropriate international comparison.

The chapter first distinguishes temporary change from recurring enterprise work (21.1), then investigates selection and authority (21.2–21.3), requirements and technical planning (21.4–21.6), risk, participation and delivery capacity (21.7–21.9), tailoring and results (21.10–21.11), and digital infrastructures (21.12). A substantial Rwanda-centred worked application, comparative documentary cases, integrative synthesis, glossary and assessment package follow (21.13–21.17). General competitive strategy remains within Chapter 6, routine production and service flow within Chapter 17, procurement award architecture within Chapter 18, quality

management within Chapter 20, financial investment appraisal within Chapter 24 and enterprise-wide risk within Chapter 32. The present chapter concerns temporary initiatives that connect these enduring functions.

21.0 INTRODUCTION: WHEN FINISHING THE PROJECT IS NOT THE SAME AS CHANGING THE ENTERPRISE

Suppose a Kigali university authorizes a student-service portal to reduce queues, repeated visits and fragmented information. The software supplier completes the contracted configuration and the project manager announces delivery on the agreed date. Yet academic departments continue to maintain separate spreadsheets, student records are inconsistent, staff have not been granted authority to resolve exceptions, and applicants encounter inaccessible forms. The sponsor receives an apparently successful completion report while students experience little improvement. Alternatively, the portal might be accepted several weeks late because accessibility failures were identified and corrected, yet go on to create important long-term value. Neither result can be understood from schedule adherence alone. This opening case is hypothetical; it does not describe a particular university or measured outcome.

A project is a temporary, purposive arrangement established to create a specified change, output or capability under resource, institutional and temporal constraints. A programme coordinates related projects and other activities in pursuit of benefits that separate projects could not secure as effectively. A portfolio groups and prioritizes investments, which need not be mutually dependent, to serve strategic objectives and organizational capacity. Operations sustain recurrent service or production. These definitions are consistent with the contextual distinctions established by ISO 21500:2021, ISO 21502:2020, ISO 21503:2022 and ISO 21504:2022 (International Organization for Standardization [ISO], 2020, 2021d, 2022c, 2022d). They are analytical categories, not necessarily separate organizational departments. In an SME, the owner may act simultaneously as sponsor, portfolio decision-maker and project manager; in a public programme, those authorities may be legally separated.

The chapter makes three propositions that require careful qualification. First, projects are mechanisms of intentional change embedded in enduring organizations, so outputs are only a possible antecedent of outcomes. Second, the apparent opposition between planning discipline and adaptability is misleading: both are responses to uncertainty, but they differ in what they assume can be known and fixed in advance. Third, neither commercial returns nor public-value claims can excuse deceptive forecasts, unsafe work, exclusion or weak accountability. Effective project management therefore links technical coordination to the right to authorize, challenge, alter, stop and evaluate investments. This interpretation builds upon the separation of governance from operational management (Too & Weaver, 2014) and the critique of schedule-cost-quality measures as complete proxies for success (Atkinson, 1999; Ika, 2009).

21.0.1 Research orientation, source hierarchy and limitations

This chapter employs a critical, purposive secondary-source synthesis rather than a registered systematic literature review, an enterprise survey or a field experiment. Literature was selected for theoretical difference and direct relevance to the approved twelve-section architecture. The inquiry prioritizes original studies of critical-path and probabilistic scheduling, foundational temporary-organization theory, peer-reviewed research on project governance, complexity and outcomes, and primary institutional publications for current standards and documented programmes. Targeted author-title and identifier checks covered Kelley and Walker (1959), Malcolm et al. (1959), Lundin and Söderholm (1995), Atkinson (1999), Shenhar et al. (2001), Ika et al. (2012), Too and Weaver (2014), Serrador and Pinto (2015), Joslin and Müller (2016), and pertinent ISO, PMI, APM, World Bank and UK National Audit Office publications. The evidentiary cut-off is 2 November 2026; the list is purposive, not exhaustive, and no unperformed database screening or numerical meta-analysis is claimed.

Evidence is interpreted according to its inferential strength. Standards prescribe terminology or recommended practice but do not demonstrate universal effectiveness. Cross-sectional perceptions reveal associations that may be subject to common-method bias and reverse causality. Government financing announcements establish approved intentions, not verified benefits. Audit findings about a specific megaproject are contextually informative but not a representative estimate of project failure rates. All Kigali-case numbers are constructed to permit reproducible teaching calculations; they must not be cited as observed enterprise statistics. This hierarchy matters because project reports frequently conceal differences among promises, activities, outputs, outcomes and counterfactual claims.

21.0.2 Historical development and philosophical foundations

Modern project management formalized techniques that long predated the profession. Construction, military logistics and public works had required coordinated tasks for centuries, but twentieth-century operations research developed formal techniques for sequencing complex activities, allocating resources and monitoring progress. Kelley and Walker’s (1959) critical-path account treated project delivery as a network of interdependent activities; Malcolm et al. (1959) developed PERT for uncertain research and development programmes. Their lasting contribution is to make sequencing assumptions explicit and analytically examinable. Their limitation is equally important: a mathematically coherent schedule may describe an unrealistic organization, neglect competition for scarce specialists or assume that observed precedence is technically immutable.

A second intellectual strand treats projects as social and political organizations rather than merely networks. Lundin and Söderholm (1995) emphasized time, team, task and transition in temporary organizations, drawing attention to the separation of temporary action from permanent institutions. Governance scholarship then questioned who authorizes and oversees those actions, while benefits scholarship challenged the idea that handover marks the end of meaningful evaluation (Too & Weaver, 2014; Serra & Kunc, 2015). Contemporary PMI and APM guidance consequently places project delivery within systems of value, stakeholders, uncertainty, sustainability and organizational learning, without abandoning formal scope, schedule and financial control (Association for Project Management [APM], 2025; Project Management Institute [PMI], 2025).

The underlying philosophy involves distinct forms of judgment. *Epistemic* judgment asks which requirements, durations, estimates and causal relationships are knowable. *Instrumental* judgment asks which feasible sequence, procurement, resource or delivery method advances declared objectives. *Normative* judgment asks whether those objectives and means are justifiable to affected persons. A complete business case cannot be produced by adding moral language to a discounted cash-flow model after authorization; the legitimate purposes, harms, alternatives, beneficiaries and distribution of burdens belong within the selection problem itself. Nor is a compelling social objective evidence that a particular intervention will work. The chapter therefore treats project decisions as conditional, revisable claims supported by transparent records rather than as exercises in prediction presented with false certainty.

21.1 PROJECTS VERSUS OPERATIONS: GOVERNING DIFFERENT FORMS OF WORK

The distinction between project work and business-as-usual (BAU) is meaningful but not absolute. A project introduces a specified change, while operations reproduce or adapt a continuing service. A school that routinely enrols students performs an operation; designing and commissioning a new admissions system is a project. The operation may itself be continuously improved, and the project may involve repeated testing, training and data cleaning. Temporary uniqueness therefore refers to the configuration of intended change and governance, not to every activity being unprecedented. ISO (2020) explicitly allows predictive, incremental, iterative, adaptive and hybrid delivery approaches, so the identity of a project must not be equated with a single scheduling methodology.

A programme is justified when related outputs jointly enable a benefit that cannot be realized by isolated projects. For example, a national digital-public-service programme might coordinate broadband access, digital literacy, interoperable identification and service redesign. A portfolio decision, by contrast, concerns which initiatives deserve scarce capital, executive attention and specialist time across otherwise dissimilar priorities. Programmes manage dependency and collective benefit; portfolios manage selection, balance and reprioritization; projects manage bounded change; operations sustain the resulting capability. Conflating them leads to governance defects: a project manager is unfairly made accountable for benefits outside the project's decision rights, or a portfolio committee approves too many projects for available capacity (ISO, 2021d, 2022c, 2022d; Too & Weaver, 2014).

Authority is not created merely by assigning titles. The sponsor should own the continuing justification, protect access to organizational resources and settle escalation beyond the project manager's mandate. The project manager should coordinate the approved temporary work and disclose emerging deviations. A benefits owner, normally in the receiving operation, must be accountable for adoption and post-handover measurement. A steering group or portfolio body authorizes material investment changes and can terminate an initiative whose business case no longer withstands scrutiny. The governing board retains accountability for significant legal, financial or reputational exposure. Figure 21.1 locates these responsibilities along a chain from authorization to sustained outcomes.

Figure 21.1. *Accountability and benefits chain connecting enterprise strategy, temporary delivery and continuing operations.* Note. Original synthesis based on ISO (2020, 2021d, 2022c, 2022d), Too and Weaver (2014) and Serra and Kunc (2015).



This separation also clarifies the status of a project management office (PMO). A PMO may provide methods, reporting, assurance, specialist support or portfolio information, but its existence does not establish effective governance. In a university with few simultaneous projects, a shared charter and monthly independent review may be more proportionate than a separate office. In a complex public investment portfolio, standardized controls can reduce informational fragmentation, provided they do not incentivize selective reporting or turn compliance into a substitute for judgment. The decisive question is whether the governance arrangement makes relevant information visible to people empowered to act.

21.1.1 The distinctive economic logic of programmes and portfolios

Programme management has a distinctive object of control: the interdependency among component initiatives and the organizational changes needed to realize combined benefits. A programme benefits map should therefore specify a higher-level outcome, the outputs and transition activities on which it depends, the order in which capabilities must become available, and the permanent owners who can make them work together. A digital education programme, for example, could require connectivity, accessible learning materials, student-record interoperability, training and continuing technical support. Completion of the connectivity project would be necessary but insufficient if lecturers lacked usable instructional tools. Programme progress is consequently measured not only by the sum of component milestones but also by interface readiness, dependencies removed, adoption capability, exposure shared among components and evidence that the intended combined outcome is emerging. This is why programme-level integration authority and change control should not be mistaken for an enlarged project manager's task list (ISO, 2022d; Serra & Kunc, 2015).

Portfolio management addresses a different form of scarcity. Organizations typically have more plausible initiatives than available financial resources, institutional attention, qualified personnel or tolerance for risk. A portfolio committee must compare proposals on strategic relevance, affordability, compulsory obligations, expected outcomes, resource correlation and the opportunity cost of foregone alternatives. Portfolio balancing is not equivalent to selecting the projects with the largest individual net present values: two investments can be attractive separately and infeasible together because both require the same implementation team during the same examination or agricultural season. The portfolio should be periodically rebalanced when conditions change, while preserving records that explain why investment was continued, reduced, sequenced or stopped. These decisions are especially important in resource-constrained African enterprises, where an apparently small implementation commitment may consume scarce leadership capacity and working capital (ISO, 2022c; Too & Weaver, 2014).

21.1.2 A contingent accountability architecture

The distinction also has a normative consequence. Portfolio authorities answer for the legitimacy and comparability of investment priorities; programme sponsors answer for coordination of complementary outcomes; project managers answer for authorized delivery within their delegated control; permanent service owners answer for continuing operations and benefit evidence. This division does not eliminate overlap, but it makes accountability failures diagnosable. An annual portfolio review should ask whether the combined programme of initiatives remains financially and institutionally feasible, which benefits have actually materialized and who bears the costs of postponed maintenance, displaced services or inaccessible implementation. A small cooperative may perform these reviews in one documented committee meeting rather than establishing a formal PMO, provided independent challenge and conflicts of interest are addressed. Formal organizational complexity is not an end in itself; proportionate but effective answerability is.

21.2 PROJECT SELECTION AND BUSINESS CASES: INVESTMENT UNDER UNCERTAINTY

Project selection is an allocation decision among competing uses of limited resources, not simply a test of whether one proposal appears beneficial. A convincing business case identifies the problem, strategic or statutory rationale, feasible alternatives (including doing nothing or deferring), affected populations, assumptions, resource requirements, uncertain benefits, downside scenarios, distributional consequences and decision thresholds. Selection also requires attention to complementarity: a technically attractive software purchase may have negligible value unless data governance and staff capability are funded. Chapter 6 supplies the wider strategic frame; project selection translates that frame into contestable temporary investment commitments.

The project business case should distinguish affordability, economic value and legitimacy. Affordability asks whether cash can be mobilized at the required dates. Economic appraisal asks whether incremental benefits justify lifecycle costs compared with a credible alternative. Legitimacy asks whether the project conforms to applicable duties and substantively defensible treatment of stakeholders. Standard net present value is useful when cash-flow assumptions and timing can be stated, but its point estimate obscures uncertainty. For initial investment I, annual net benefit B_t, discount rate r and horizon T, $NPV = -I + \Sigma_{t=1}^{T} B_t/(1+r)^t$. This is not an ethical welfare score: noncash benefits, irreversible harms, exclusion risks and distribution across stakeholders require distinct assessment.

Real-options reasoning adds a substantive insight. Irreversible investment under changing information can make waiting, piloting, staging or preserving a termination option valuable, although indefinite delay can also forgo important benefits (Dixit & Pindyck, 1994). A university may fund a small, privacy-preserving prototype before committing to campus-wide integration; an infrastructure authority may require design readiness before committing to politically attractive completion dates. Options reasoning is not a licence to avoid decisions. It requires an explicit account of the cost of learning, the cost of delay and which uncertainties can realistically be reduced before irreversible expenditure.

An auditable selection process consequently combines mandatory compliance screening; strategic and user-value tests; technical, organizational and supply-market feasibility; financial and wider social appraisal; risk scenarios; capacity conflicts; and final documented authorization. Weighted scoring may help compare proposals, but inappropriate weights can trade away non-negotiable legal or safety constraints. A useful hierarchy first rejects inadmissible alternatives, then applies transparent multicriteria comparison to feasible proposals, and finally challenges the preferred option through scenarios and independent review. Flyvbjerg (2009) documents why incentives to understate cost and overstate benefits can bias the initial portfolio before formal controls even begin. Reference-class comparison, where genuinely comparable projects exist, provides a corrective to isolated optimism, not an automatic forecast for a different country or technological environment.

21.2.1 A defensible selection instrument

Table 21.1. Project-selection decision record for an enterprise portfolio

Decision test	Evidence required	Governance response
Problem and strategic fit	Baseline, beneficiaries, alternatives, strategic linkage	Reject unclear purpose or document revision
Rights and legitimacy	Safety, accessibility, data, environmental and procurement duties	Mandatory gate; no weighted compensation for unlawful harm
Deliverability	Dependencies, available specialists, supplier market, calendar	Stage, redesign or defer infeasible scope
Lifecycle value	Cost and benefit ranges, owner, period, discount assumptions	Compare options and downside scenarios
Portfolio capacity	Competing demands for capital, people, systems and leadership	Sequence, reduce or cancel initiatives
Learning and stop rights	Pilot criteria, tolerances, independent challenge, exit costs	Authorize in stages with explicit review dates

Note. Original applied synthesis. The instrument is a decision aid, not a replacement for jurisdiction-specific approvals or a statistically validated selection model.

21.2.2 Competing criteria and the practical limits of appraisal

A project-ranking model should not disguise heterogeneous units as commensurable evidence. The expected financial return on a commercial warehouse investment is not the same construct as the social value of preserving access to student records or improving accessibility. Where monetization is appropriate, costs and benefits must be incremental to a plausible counterfactual, expressed over a consistent period and discounted on defensible assumptions. Economic analysis should distinguish real resource costs from transfers between stakeholders, and should disclose whether taxes, subsidies or existing staff time are included. Where monetization would falsely imply a market price for human rights or public trust, a multicriteria decision record can make the legitimate objectives explicit without pretending that weighted scores are objective facts. Requirements for compliance and essential safety remain constraints on admissible choices, not points that an attractive commercial return can offset.

Portfolio prioritization can be further strengthened by distinguishing mutually exclusive, contingent and complementary initiatives. A service-redesign option that avoids software procurement may compete directly with the proposed portal, whereas staff training is potentially a necessary complement. A low-cost pilot may generate decision-relevant evidence that justifies deferring an irreversible contract, but only if the pilot tests the uncertain mechanism rather than reproducing an already known interface. This is the practical significance of real-options analysis: the value of staging depends on the probability that new information will change a decision, the cost of acquiring that information and the damage caused by delay. Presenting the option to wait as inherently superior would be as misleading as presenting immediate capital expenditure as inherently decisive (Dixit & Pindyck, 1994).

21.3 PROJECT LIFECYCLE AND GOVERNANCE: FROM AUTHORIZATION TO HANDOVER

A project lifecycle describes how the work is conceptually organized, but it does not prescribe a universal sequence of identical phases. A predictive implementation may emphasize initiation, detailed planning, execution, control and closure; adaptive work may repeat discovery, design, demonstration and refinement. Both need a credible beginning, a justified authority to spend, decisions about changes and evidence of whether agreed acceptance conditions have been met. ISO 21502:2020 explicitly recognizes alternative lifecycle arrangements. APM (2025) similarly extends attention from the strategic case for change to delivery of benefits. In practice, initiation should establish the sponsoring problem and boundaries; planning should test feasibility; execution should produce and verify outputs; closure should transfer responsibility and capture unresolved risks; post-project review should test intended outcomes rather than celebrate paperwork.

Governance occurs through decision rights, information and escalation, not just meetings. The sponsor approves charter and business-case changes; the delivery lead manages activity within delegated tolerances; an independent reviewer examines matters that cannot be credibly self-certified; operational owners sign off transition readiness; and affected users must have meaningful ways to report defects. Stage gates can prevent escalation of sunk-cost commitment, but an overly bureaucratic gate can delay an urgent public-service intervention. The appropriate review intensity depends on reversibility, public exposure, safety, funding conditions, novelty and the materiality of irreversible decisions (Too & Weaver, 2014; Joslin & Müller, 2016).

Agency theory provides one explanation for governance: sponsors and project managers may have unequal information and different incentives, creating possibilities for concealed overruns or optimistic reporting. Stewardship theory suggests a complementary mechanism: professional competence, identification with public purpose and stakeholder trust can support responsible discretion where exhaustive monitoring would be costly or damaging. Evidence from Joslin and Müller (2016) links stakeholder-oriented project governance with reported success in their sample, but the observational association does not establish that the same intervention will cause success everywhere. Good governance does not choose blindly between trust and verification. It

provides competent discretion within explicit boundaries, independent scrutiny when material risk increases, and fair procedures for contesting decisions.

Closure must distinguish contract completion, acceptance, operational readiness and benefits realization. A vendor may deliver a portal, a university may accept it after security testing, staff may still need to change processes, and students may begin receiving improvements only later. A close-out record should preserve unresolved defects, warranties, access rights, intellectual-property permissions, cybersecurity obligations, training evidence, ownership of data and the schedule for benefit reviews. Where contractual defects or stakeholder harms remain, administrative closure does not extinguish responsibility.

21.3.1 Assurance, escalation and the problem of irreversible commitment

Governance arrangements should be differentiated by consequences rather than by ceremonial formality. A reversible prototype can be approved with a narrow delegated budget and frequent user review; a migration of sensitive records requires evidence of lawful authority, security assurance, reconciliation and a reliable rollback procedure before release. The relevant trigger for escalation is not always percentage budget deviation. A newly discovered exclusion risk, loss of a key permit or absence of independent testing may justify immediate suspension even when headline cost and schedule indicators remain favorable. Conversely, an unexpected expenditure supported by independently verified safety improvements may be defensible if authorized transparently. In both cases the governing forum must retain a record of evidence, alternatives, dissent, decision rights and consequences for the permanent operation.

Project assurance should distinguish the creator of evidence from its reviewer. Self-certification is appropriate for some routine technical tasks, but the same supplier should not alone determine whether a disputed security criterion was met where payment and liability depend on the finding. Independent challenge is not unlimited bureaucratic duplication: its scope should be proportionate to potential harm, risk concentration, contract incentive and the degree of irreversibility. This balances the monitoring concerns of agency theory with stewardship's recognition that competent professionals need discretion to solve unexpected problems (Joslin & Müller, 2016; Too & Weaver, 2014).

21.4 SCOPE AND REQUIREMENTS MANAGEMENT: DEFINING WHAT COUNTS AS DONE

Scope has at least three senses: the intended change or business outcome, the deliverable or product boundary, and the work required to create and verify that deliverable. Confusion among them is a recurrent source of unrecognized obligations. A university might announce an objective of faster services, procure a digital form and then discover that identity verification, accessible language, record correction and exception handling are essential to the intended outcome. Requirements should therefore be elicited from actual use, including less powerful or digitally excluded stakeholders, not inferred solely from the sponsor’s initial specification. The deliverable description should distinguish mandatory legal and safety requirements from negotiable preferences and explain how each will be verified.

A work breakdown structure (WBS) decomposes the complete agreed scope into manageable deliverables and work packages. Proper decomposition is neither an inventory of departmental job titles nor an unbounded list of activities. The familiar 100-percent rule expresses the requirement that the WBS cover the total authorized work without double counting. A work package requires a responsible party, acceptance condition, effort estimate, cost code and interface assumptions. ISO 21511:2018 supplies formal guidance for work breakdown structures in project and programme management (ISO, 2018f). In the illustrative case presented in Section 21.13, the WBS separates requirements and process design, secure configuration, migration and integration, testing, training, and pilot acceptance; this makes risk ownership and budgeting traceable.

Table 21.2. Compact work breakdown structure for the illustrative Kigali university portal

WBS code	Deliverable/work package	Acceptance evidence
1.1	Requirements definition	Approved requirements, inclusion and exception scenarios
1.2	Process mapping and service design	Approved workflows, handoffs, accessible service journeys
1.3	Data-control and permission architecture	Reconciliation policy, access design and testable protection requirements
1.4	Portal configuration	Demonstrated functions against test cases
1.5	Data migration and integration	Reconciled records and controlled interfaces
1.6	Security, accessibility and acceptance testing	Signed defect log, independent control checks
1.7	Staff preparation and operational handover	Competency check, support owner and service plan
1.8	Pilot, stabilization and close-out	Acceptance record and benefits-review schedule

Note. Fully constructed teaching instrument; no university deployment is implied. WBS items describe the entirety of authorized change, while detailed activities and dependencies are analyzed separately.

Requirements quality depends on traceability as well as initial completeness. Each material requirement should link to a stakeholder need or obligation, a design decision, a verification method, an owner and an acceptance criterion. An untestable statement such as ‘user-friendly portal’ becomes more useful when translated into specified tasks, accessibility standards, response times, supported languages, exception processes and observable thresholds. Yet over-specification can freeze uncertain design prematurely. An agile backlog can allow progressive elaboration while retaining minimum requirements for privacy, safety and contractual conformance. Change control should capture the request, rationale, cost and schedule consequence, dependencies, rights implications, decision-maker and new baseline version. The purpose is not to prohibit learning but to prevent unexamined expansion and retrospective rewriting of success criteria.

21.4.1 Requirements traceability and disciplined change

The minimum traceability unit is a testable claim about what the deliverable must do, for whom and under what conditions. A requirements record should identify its origin and authorized owner, legal or service rationale, priority, design component, acceptance test, evidence of test completion and any approved variation. This is especially important when users with limited digital access are not represented in the initial specification. Traceability helps determine whether a change is a necessary correction of an omitted requirement or a discretionary enhancement: the first may reveal that the original baseline was defective, while the second requires an explicit choice about incremental time, funding and expected benefit. Both cases require a decision record; merely classifying every correction as scope creep can suppress legitimate user protection.

The WBS must reconcile with estimates and contractual packages without implying that they are identical views. Work breakdown identifies deliverable scope; scheduling identifies activities and dependencies; the cost breakdown assigns expenditure and control accounts; the responsibility structure identifies people authorized to deliver and accept the work. A robust management information system can trace these representations to one another, but a WBS item may contain several scheduled activities and one contract may support several work packages. The following teaching WBS explicitly distinguishes process mapping from data-control design, so that the eight major packages reconcile to the eight coded activities and cost estimates without falsely equating deliverables with individual tasks.

21.5 SCHEDULING AND CRITICAL PATHS: TIME AS A NETWORK CONSTRAINT

A schedule is a model of the dependency structure linking activities, resources and milestones. Its value lies less in the apparent precision of a finish date than in explaining why a finish date is plausible, which assumptions are fragile and which interventions can change it. Activity-on-node networks capture precedence, with finish-to-start relationships commonly used for foundational teaching; real schedules may also contain start-to-start dependencies, lags, deadlines, calendars and resource constraints. The critical-path method (CPM) identifies the longest-duration path through the precedence network under stated deterministic durations. If several equally long paths exist, several paths may be critical. The classical result is conditional on an acyclic, correctly specified network and available resources rather than a guarantee of real-world completion (Kelley & Walker, 1959; Kelley, 1961).

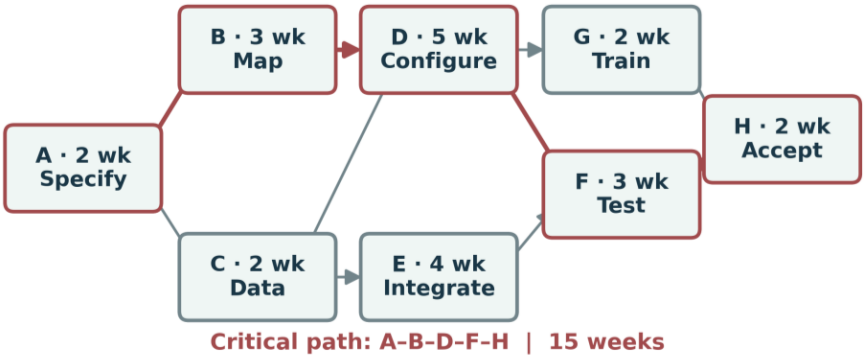
Forward-pass calculations set earliest start (ES) to the maximum earliest finish of predecessor activities, with earliest finish EF = ES + duration. Backward-pass calculations start at the project finish and derive latest finish (LF) as the minimum latest start among successor activities, then LS = LF − duration. Total float is LS − ES or LF − EF. Zero float under the specified network marks critical work. Float is a scheduling property, not a personal entitlement to delay. Multiple noncritical activities can consume slack and become jointly critical; resource leveling, supplier lead times or regulatory approvals may alter the precedence network. A misleading schedule often arises because activities were decomposed more carefully than the organizational authority needed to release them.

Table 21.3. Constructed precedence network and critical-path calculations

Activity	Work description	Predecessor(s)	Duration, weeks	ES–EF	LS–LF	Float
A	Requirements	None	2	0–2	0–2	0
B	Process mapping	A	3	2–5	2–5	0
C	Data controls	A	2	2–4	3–5	1
D	Portal configuration	B, C	5	5–10	5–10	0
E	Migration/integration	C	4	4–8	6–10	2
F	Security and testing	D, E	3	10–13	10–13	0
G	Staff training	D	2	10–12	11–13	1
H	Pilot and acceptance	F, G	2	13–15	13–15	0

Note. All durations and dependencies are hypothetical. Time zero denotes project commencement; durations are elapsed working weeks on a common calendar, without resource conflict. The critical path is A–B–D–F–H, totaling 15 weeks. ES, EF, LS and LF denote earliest and latest start and finish.

Figure 21.2. *Activity-on-node project schedule for the hypothetical portal; red-bordered nodes identify the zero-float path A–B–D–F–H.* Note. Original illustration derived from Table 21.3; all activity durations are illustrative.



For uncertain durations, the historical PERT approximation assigns optimistic (a), most likely (m) and pessimistic (b) activity estimates, with expected time approximately $(a + 4m + b)/6$ and variance approximately $[(b - a)/6]^2$ (Malcolm et al., 1959). If configuration activity D has assumed durations $a = 3$, $m = 5$ and $b = 9$ weeks, its three-point expectation is 5.33 weeks and variance 1.00 weeks squared. These are modeling approximations, not measured probabilities. A project's finish-time distribution cannot safely be inferred by summing variances along a fixed critical path when paths may change, durations are correlated or estimates are strategic. Monte Carlo simulation can improve visibility if input distributions and correlation assumptions are plausible; simulation cannot rescue invented evidence.

Schedule compression involves recognizable trade-offs. *Crashing* purchases additional capacity or changes technical means to shorten selected activities at additional cost; it should target the current critical path and re-evaluate the path after each change. *Fast tracking* overlaps activities formerly sequential, potentially shortening elapsed time while increasing rework, assurance and safety risks. Neither technique should be used to bypass legally necessary verification. Milestones should document accepted conditions rather than merely calendar points. A deadline is credible when the schedule has dependency logic, feasible staffing, a dated risk allowance, interfaces with procurement and operations, and a rule for revising public promises when evidence changes.

21.5.1 Resource feasibility, probabilistic forecasts and schedule reserves

Classical CPM produces an earliest finish for the assumed precedence graph, not necessarily a resource-feasible deadline. If the same ICT specialist is needed simultaneously for portal configuration and migration, a resource constraint may force activities that are logically parallel to become sequential. The correct response is to level or otherwise allocate resources against institutional calendars, then re-evaluate the controlling sequence. A baseline should state whether activity durations include weekends, procurement waiting time, testing cycles, public holidays and availability of named specialists. In a Rwandan university, even a sound technical estimate can fail because examination periods, institutional approvals or administrative closure reduce access to staff and students. These contextual assumptions should be modeled explicitly rather than hidden in a generic percentage contingency.

Probabilistic scheduling introduces a different source of insight. An independent three-point estimate for one activity does not determine the total project completion distribution when paths can switch, activities share common risk drivers or successive iterations produce correlated rework. Monte Carlo models can represent those relationships through a specified joint distribution and report percentile completion dates, provided there is credible evidence for inputs. Sensitivity to common causes should be analyzed explicitly; for example, an outage of a shared data environment could delay configuration, migration and testing simultaneously. A schedule confidence statement must disclose whether its percentile reflects statistical estimation, elicited expert judgment

or purely illustrative assumptions. Neither a single PERT mean nor an arbitrary buffer can substitute for a defensible explanation of uncertainty (Malcolm et al., 1959; Geraldi et al., 2011).

Project leaders also need to distinguish total float from a management reserve of time. Float emerges from the specified network, whereas a schedule reserve represents deliberately allocated protection against uncertainty or governance delay. Consuming float can be defensible, but it may expose a formerly noncritical branch to a shared-resource conflict or reduce flexibility for testing. A credible recovery proposal therefore identifies the current critical paths, validates the additional capacity offered by crashing, and calculates possible rework and safety consequences before committing to an accelerated date.

21.6 COST ESTIMATION, BUDGETING AND CONTROL: SEEING FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE IN CONTEXT

Cost estimation transforms an authorized scope and implementation method into a time-phased financial proposition. Analogous estimates draw on comparable completed work; parametric estimates scale known cost relationships; bottom-up estimates aggregate work-package resources; vendor quotations test market conditions; and three-point estimates examine uncertainty. Each method has a characteristic failure mode. Analogy may import irrelevant institutional differences, parametric models may confuse correlation with engineering necessity, bottom-up detail may conceal omissions, and vendor quotes may exclude taxes, maintenance, insurance, transition or risk allocation. Projects also require attention to opportunity costs when scarce staff are reassigned from recurring operations. Chapter 23 develops costing disciplines more fully; here costs serve temporary delivery authorization and control.

A cost baseline should distinguish planned authorized work from reserves and ultimate funding limits. The illustrative eight work packages total RWF 48.0 million; allocated project management and control add RWF 5.0 million, producing a performance baseline or budget at completion (BAC) of RWF 53.0 million. A separately governed contingency allowance of 10% of the RWF 53.0 million baseline adds RWF 5.3 million and an authorized funding ceiling of RWF 58.3 million. This simplified teaching arrangement treats the contingency as held outside BAC, so calculations must not mix the BAC and funding ceiling. A real organization’s contingency, management reserve, financing charges and earned-value conventions should be specified in its approved cost management plan. Cash-flow timing also matters: a project can remain within total budget while failing to meet supplier payment commitments.

Table 21.4. Constructed work-package budget and funding logic (RWF million)

Budget element	Amount	Interpretation
A. Requirements	3.2	Work-package estimate
B. Process mapping	4.5	Work-package estimate
C. Data controls	3.8	Work-package estimate
D. Portal configuration	13.0	Work-package estimate
E. Migration and integration	8.5	Work-package estimate
F. Security and testing	6.2	Work-package estimate
G. Staff training	3.8	Work-package estimate
H. Pilot and acceptance	5.0	Work-package estimate
Project management and assurance	5.0	Allocated baseline overhead
Budget at completion (BAC)	53.0	Performance measurement baseline
Separately controlled 10% contingency	5.3	Not earned-value budget in this example
Authorized funding ceiling	58.3	Maximum allocation before reauthorization

Note. Entirely hypothetical Rwandan-franc amounts. The table does not constitute an actual procurement plan, accounting entry or contract quotation.

Earned value management (EVM) relates authorized work, planned progress and actual expenditure using a consistent measurement basis. Planned value (PV) is the authorized budget for work planned by the reporting date; earned value (EV) is the authorized budget for work actually accomplished; actual cost (AC) records the cost incurred for that work. Cost variance CV = EV − AC and schedule variance SV = EV − PV are expressed in monetary units. Cost performance index CPI = EV/AC and schedule performance index SPI = EV/PV are dimensionless. A negative variance signals deviation under the model, but does not itself establish why the deviation occurred or whether the project remains socially valuable. ISO 21512:2024 provides implementation guidance for earned value management, while ISO 21508:2026 addresses EVM at the standard level (ISO, 2024c, 2026d).

Suppose that at a week-10 checkpoint the illustrative baseline had PV = RWF 31.0 million, accepted work carried EV = RWF 27.0 million, and the actual accrued cost AC = RWF 30.0 million. Then CV = −3.0 million and SV = −4.0 million; CPI = 27/30 = 0.900; and SPI = 27/31 = 0.871. Under the deliberately strong assumption that cumulative cost efficiency continues unchanged, forecast final cost EAC = BAC/CPI = 53/0.9 = RWF 58.89 million. This exceeds the authorized RWF 58.3 million funding ceiling by about RWF 0.59 million. The to-complete performance index to recover the original BAC is TCPI = (BAC − EV)/(BAC − AC) = 26/23 = 1.130. Management should not disguise the pressure by releasing contingency automatically; it should first identify the work, contractual exposure, estimate reliability and changes needed to close the gap.

These metrics are diagnostic, not sufficient explanations. SPI based on budgeted work can behave poorly near project completion and does not directly measure calendar duration; earned schedule or explicit critical-path reforecasting can complement it. Reported EV may be inflated by crediting partially completed packages without objective acceptance evidence, while AC can be understated by omitting uninvoiced liabilities. Cash flow, contract variation, scope change, quality and safety therefore need separate controls. An EAC derived from one CPI assumes performance continuity; a credible oversight report also evaluates bottom-up remaining costs, risk exposure and different delivery scenarios (PMI, 2025; ISO, 2024c).

21.6.1 Budget integrity and the limits of cost-performance indices

A reliable estimate at completion should be triangulated rather than mechanically extrapolated from a single cost performance index. The bottom-up method estimates the cost of all remaining approved work, including purchase commitments, defect correction, specialist effort and time-related overhead. The resulting EAC can then be compared with a trend-based estimate such as BAC/CPI and a risk-adjusted range. If the figures diverge, management should explain which assumptions changed. A time-phased cash forecast must be maintained separately because recognized expenditure, progress value, supplier invoices and available cash have different timing. A project can appear within BAC while remaining unable to pay wages or settle a milestone invoice; conversely, an early payment can depress cash without indicating that accepted work is above budget.

Reserve discipline is equally important. In this teaching model, the RWF 5.3 million contingency is separated from the RWF 53.0 million EVM performance baseline to make the arithmetic inspectable. In actual practice, contingency for identified risk may be included in an approved cost baseline, while management reserve is often controlled outside it; the reporting convention should be formally adopted and used consistently. An organization must not report the RWF 58.3 million authorization ceiling as earned work or treat unspent reserve as evidence of cost efficiency. When the forecast reaches the ceiling, further expenditure demands a documented value-and-rights decision rather than a retrospective change to the original denominator. The revised eighth-edition PMBOK Guide and ISO 21508:2026 support integrated rather than purely numerical control, whereas ISO 21512:2024 was originally written as implementation guidance to the preceding 2018 edition of ISO 21508 (ISO, 2024c, 2026d; PMI, 2025).

21.7 PROJECT RISK AND UNCERTAINTY: PROTECTING THE ABILITY TO CORRECT

Project risk is not synonymous with a list of possible disasters. It describes uncertain events or conditions that could affect legitimate project objectives, positively or negatively. Some uncertainty is estimable through relevant frequencies; other uncertainty involves incomplete knowledge, ambiguity, novel interdependencies or political change. A risk register should specify cause, uncertain event, consequence, owner, current controls, response, residual exposure and trigger. An assumption log records propositions treated as true for planning, such as data availability or staff participation, together with evidence and a date for challenge. Confusing risk with assumption permits major uncertainties to remain hidden because they are written into the baseline as uncontested facts.

Qualitative probability-impact categories are useful for triage when calibrated consistently, but multiplying arbitrary ordinal scales does not create a valid expected monetary loss. For quantifiable monetary effects, a simplified expected monetary value (EMV) may be calculated as Σ probability × consequence under explicit alternatives and independently defensible probabilities. Suppose a migration defect has a 20% estimated occurrence probability and would require RWF 6.0 million in remediation. A simple single-event expected cost is RWF 1.2 million, but this expectation cannot justify exposing sensitive student data if the consequence includes rights violations or irreversible harm. Financial EMV and minimum acceptable controls answer different questions. Where probabilities are conjectural, scenario ranges and transparent stress tests are more honest than spurious decimal precision.

Table 21.5. Illustrative project risk and escalation register

Exposure, trigger and consequence	Owner and preventive control	Response and escalation
Incorrect legacy records; failed reconciliation; student exclusion	Registrar/data lead; sample reconciliation, provenance and correction rights	Hold migration gate; escalate to sponsor for redesign
Integration failure; repeated interface errors; schedule slippage	ICT lead; interface prototypes and test environments	Use staged rollback; reforecast critical path
Vendor lock-in; unusable exports; long-run operating cost	Procurement/ICT; exit terms, interoperable data formats	Negotiate rights before award; reject unacceptable restriction
Low staff adoption; parallel spreadsheets; weak service benefit	Operations benefits owner; training and revised authority	Fund workflow changes; do not declare benefits at handover
Unauthorised disclosure; privacy harm	Data controller/security lead; least privilege, access testing	Contain, preserve evidence and follow applicable response duties
Scope growth; added features without financing	Sponsor; requirements traceability and change log	Stop unapproved work; formal impact decision

Note. Constructed risks, not assessed probabilities or findings from an actual Rwandan institution. Statutory incident obligations must be verified for the organization and applicable law at the time of implementation.

Response strategies include avoidance, mitigation, transfer, acceptance and exploitation of appropriate opportunities, but technical labels do not transfer moral responsibility. A supplier warranty can allocate financial costs without transferring the enterprise's duty toward students. Portfolio-level correlated risks deserve special attention: shared vendors, currency exposure, simultaneous procurement deadlines and scarce cybersecurity skills can affect multiple projects together. Complexity scholarship distinguishes structural scale, uncertainty, dynamics, pace and sociopolitical tensions, showing why risk treatment should be adapted to mechanisms rather than project size alone (Geraldi et al., 2011). Early challenge, independent review, staged commitments and protected staff reporting are safeguards precisely because the cost of correction usually rises after irreversible decisions.

21.7.1 Interdependent risk and the evidential status of estimates

The distinction between risk and uncertainty becomes practically consequential when a project has several pathways to loss. A privacy incident may directly injure a user, lead to legal obligations, delay acceptance, weaken trust and lower adoption. Treating each consequence as an independent event and adding separate probability-weighted amounts would overstate or misstate total expected exposure unless dependencies were modeled. Similarly, one contractual failure can simultaneously increase cost and extend the critical path. An analytically sound register therefore links causes, events and consequences, identifies conditional dependence and documents both the origin and reliability of each probability estimate. Where no credible probability can be assigned, a bounded scenario and explicit escalation threshold is preferable to a numerical score that conveys unwarranted confidence.

Risk responses have distributional implications that should be recorded before authorization. Delaying a launch may burden service users, while premature release may create disproportionate harm for students whose records cannot easily be corrected. These competing losses are not automatically resolved by maximizing expected monetary value. Constraints concerning security, lawful processing, worker protection and accessibility may impose admissibility thresholds before financial optimization. The residual risk decision should state who was consulted, what alternatives were considered, which residual exposure remains, who has authority to accept it and when it will be reviewed. A risk owner without the power or funds to implement the agreed response is a nominal rather than an effective owner.

21.8 STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNICATIONS MANAGEMENT: INFORMING, LISTENING AND REMEDYING

Stakeholders are persons or institutions that can affect the project, are affected by it, or hold legitimate claims regarding its conduct and outcomes. Mapping only executive influence makes those with weak formal power disappear, including service users with disabilities, lower-income students, temporary workers or suppliers dependent on timely payments. A responsible analysis distinguishes influence from legitimacy and vulnerability, and examines whose evidence has been omitted. It also anticipates that stakeholder preferences may conflict: accelerated delivery can improve access while compromising an adequate security review; more comprehensive identity checks can strengthen integrity while excluding people with incomplete records. The proper response is reasoned, documented trade-off and, where rights are at stake, enforceable minimum protection.

Communications design begins with decisions rather than a calendar of presentation meetings. Sponsors need timely exception reporting and reasons for changed forecasts; technical teams need dependencies and acceptance evidence; finance needs commitments, liabilities and cash forecasts; users need understandable explanations of changed services and redress; public funders may require prescribed disclosure and audit trails. A practical communications matrix specifies audience, purpose, content, accessible channel, frequency, sender and feedback route. Status reports should disclose unfavorable data in the same units and against the same approved baselines as favorable data. A percentage ‘complete’ without objective work definition is especially prone to strategic interpretation, whereas a traceable requirements-test register makes claims more contestable.

Engagement is not a one-way persuasion activity. Discovery workshops, accessible prototypes, pilot observations, protected issue reporting and documented disagreement can reveal unusable processes before contractual acceptance. A project manager should record whether input was accepted, rejected or deferred and explain the grounds. Consultation cannot promise consensus or substitute for elected or statutory authority, but exclusion can invalidate the project team’s understanding of the problem it claims to solve. Joslin and Müller (2016) provide empirical motivation for stakeholder-oriented governance; their result should be interpreted as an association within studied governance settings, not a universal intervention guarantee.

Conflict requires attention to substantive interests and structural power. A vendor may demand payment for a variation; users may reject a proposed workflow; staff may fear automation; the sponsor may face a political deadline. Negotiation should distinguish legitimate contract interpretation, information gaps, decision rights and concerns about fairness. A clear escalation route preserves both speed and due process: the person closest to the issue proposes alternatives; an authorized owner resolves within tolerance; material cost, safety, legal or benefit changes move to sponsor or board scrutiny. Effective communication is thus an accountability capability, not an exercise in producing attractive dashboards.

21.8.1 Legitimate participation, communication failure and conflict

Effective stakeholder communication has a temporal logic. Before selection, information should support problem definition and legitimate consent or consultation; during design it should expose competing user requirements; during execution it should surface defects, deviations and unresolved dissent; and after handover it should permit complaints and correction against promised service outcomes. A project may report many workshops without engaging the people at greatest risk of exclusion. Evaluation should therefore examine not only attendance but also whose input changed a requirement, which disagreements remain unresolved and whether affected people can safely contest the final decision. Methods must be accessible in language, format, connectivity and time, and participation should not be equated with surrender of statutory authority.

When commercial disputes arise, the project team should separate factual disagreement about delivered work from conflicts over contractual interpretation, allocation of unanticipated risk and unequal bargaining power. A technically precise change order may still be unfair if its terms exploit a supplier's dependency or deprive end

users of reasonable remedies. Conversely, a supplier cannot reasonably be required to absorb every scope revision without lawful authorization and payment. Credible conflict management combines evidence preservation, negotiated clarification, independent review where needed and proportionate escalation, allowing project delivery to continue without normalizing coercion or concealment.

21.9 TEAM AND PROCUREMENT MANAGEMENT: RESOURCES, CONTRACTS AND COLLECTIVE CAPABILITY

Projects concentrate specialist work over limited periods, often drawing employees away from ordinary operations. A resource plan should specify the competence required, available capacity, timing, decision rights, supervision, training and handover obligations. Assigning a nominal ‘50% ICT officer’ may be infeasible if the same officer must maintain critical university systems during examinations. Resource leveling converts an unrealistic resource-unconstrained schedule into a feasible sequence and may change the critical path. Workforce planning from Chapter 9 and organizational design from Chapter 7 are therefore prerequisites for credible project commitments, not matters to be addressed after a schedule is approved.

Temporary teams face distinctive problems of identity and knowledge. Members may report to functional managers, join at different stages and leave before defects or benefits become visible. Early agreement on working norms, accountable handoffs, technical review authority and documentation reduces avoidable ambiguity. A RACI allocation distinguishes who is responsible for execution, accountable for decisions, consulted for expertise and informed of consequences. It is best applied at consequential interfaces, such as data migration release or acceptance, rather than used as a ceremonial table for every minor task. Psychological safety and protected challenge matter because staff with relevant expertise may otherwise remain silent when powerful sponsors insist on improbable deadlines (Lundin & Söderholm, 1995; Geraldi et al., 2011).

Procurement management connects the temporary work with external suppliers through specifications, solicitation, contracting, delivery verification, payment and dispute mechanisms. Chapter 18 provides the detailed sourcing and public procurement architecture; the project lens asks how supplier lead times, contractual interfaces, change mechanisms, warranties, rights and risk allocation affect the project path. Fixed-price arrangements can improve cost predictability where outputs are specifiable but may invite claims when scope is uncertain. Time-and-materials arrangements can accommodate learning but require close oversight of effort and spending. Milestone payments should follow objectively verifiable deliverables and appropriate performance evidence, not merely the supplier’s claim that effort was incurred. Data access, open standards, export rights, security testing and transition assistance should be considered before a digital supplier becomes indispensable.

Rwanda’s legislative context illustrates the difference between general project technique and binding procedure. In February 2026, the Parliament of Rwanda reported a review of implementation of Law No. 031/2022 governing public procurement and identified concerns including delays in implementing regulations, weaknesses in project preparation and validation, and frequent contract amendments (Parliament of Rwanda, 2026b). This official parliamentary report provides evidence of identified oversight concerns, not proof that every procuring authority exhibits them. A public university or donor-funded agency must therefore verify the current applicable law, financing agreement, approval thresholds and contractual requirements for its specific activity rather than assume that a generic project template or international standard overrides domestic requirements.

21.9.1 Resource loading and contractual interface risk

A team assignment is credible only when the required hours and concurrent operational commitments can be reconciled. In the teaching network, activity F cannot start before both configuration and migration are ready. If security reviewers are simultaneously responsible for daily incident response, the nominal three-week test duration may be infeasible. Resource-loaded planning should identify scarce skills, authorized substitutes, review lead times, availability during institutional peaks and the opportunity costs of withdrawing staff from normal services. Those constraints should be incorporated before calculating schedule confidence. For multi-contractor projects, an interface register should identify which supplier delivers each prerequisite, who verifies it, who bears rework when interfaces fail and whose approval releases the successor task.

Contract strategy must also consider information asymmetry at handover. A low fixed price may conceal proprietary data formats, expensive future modifications or inadequately specified service levels, while a flexible time-and-materials contract may expose a constrained institution to uncontrolled effort claims. Selection should therefore compare whole-of-life cost, acceptance evidence, retention of records and intellectual assets, staff capability transfer and the practical cost of replacing the supplier. A lawful and economically sensible contract allocates risks to parties best placed to control them while retaining enterprise responsibility toward users and workers. Its success is demonstrated by tested performance and remedies, not only the absence of disputes at project close.

21.10 ADAPTIVE, PREDICTIVE AND HYBRID METHODS: TAILORING RATHER THAN TAKING SIDES

Predictive approaches establish relatively stable specifications and a planned sequence before substantial execution; adaptive approaches advance through bounded increments informed by frequent feedback; hybrid approaches combine controlled stages with iterative discovery or delivery. The choice depends on the *type* of uncertainty rather than organizational fashion. Bridge foundations, safety interfaces and statutory approvals generally demand substantial preconstruction assurance, although design alternatives may still be explored iteratively. Software interfaces or service journeys may require observation of real users before detailed functionality can responsibly be fixed. Highly regulated systems can accommodate iteration within approved security and assurance boundaries. Neither predictive planning nor agile iteration removes accountability for budget, scope, rights or post-handover performance (ISO, 2020; PMI, 2025).

The 2001 *Manifesto for Agile Software Development* was a critique of rigid software-development relationships, not a general theorem that documentation, contracts or planning are undesirable. Its values favor interaction, usable software, customer collaboration and responsiveness to change while explicitly recognizing the worth of the paired alternatives (Beck et al., 2001). The distinction matters when ‘agile’ is invoked to defend undocumented public expenditure or to suppress independent assurance. Conversely, a project may produce extensive documentation and still conceal untested assumptions. Serrador and Pinto (2015) reported a positive association between the extent of agile adoption and reported project success in an international survey, with stakeholder satisfaction among the relevant dimensions; self-report, selection and contextual differences limit causal interpretation. The observed association does not establish that imposing agile ceremonies will improve a concrete project.

Tailoring should examine requirements volatility, uncertainty about user needs, technical interdependence, cost of late change, consequences of failure, supplier incentives, distribution of decision rights, regulatory demands, geographic coordination and the ability of users to provide feedback. A suitable hybrid portal project may adopt fixed governance gates for data protection, integration and financial authorization while using two-week demonstrations to refine information architecture and workflow usability. Evidence must still connect each iteration to accepted criteria, documented change decisions and a feasible final transition. Continuous reprioritization does not justify infinite scope or unbounded staff workload.

Table 21.6. Conditional fit of project delivery approaches

Decision dimension	Predictive preference	Adaptive preference	Credible hybrid design
Requirement certainty	Stable and testable early	Important user needs still emerging	Fixed duties; evolving user features
Cost of late change	High, irreversible, safety-critical	Relatively reversible increments	Early architecture gates; iterative interfaces
Contracting	Defined outputs and acceptance	Progressive elaboration with bounded funding	Fixed milestones plus change-managed increments
User access	Validation at specified gates	Frequent representative feedback available	Regular demonstrations with formal acceptance
Assurance	Strong pre-implementation evidence	Continuous automated and human testing	Continuous tests plus independent release gate

Note. Original analytical comparison informed by ISO (2020), Beck et al. (2001) and Serrador and Pinto (2015). The cells are conditional considerations rather than universally superior prescriptions.

21.10.1 Tailoring by uncertainty and verification burden

Method tailoring should be made auditable through a written rationale rather than chosen by a binary label. The project can rank uncertainty about the problem, solution, technology, regulatory duties, interfaces and user behaviour, then determine which decisions can be revised at low cost and which require early commitment. Requirements with uncertain user experience may be explored through demonstrations and representative testing, while encryption, data ownership, procurement approvals and specified accessibility conditions remain controlled constraints. A hybrid programme is defensible only when iteration boundaries, financial authority, acceptance criteria and ultimate operating responsibility are explicit. Agile ceremonies without user representation or release discipline merely redistribute ambiguity; predictive documentation without real testing merely records it.

21.11 MONITORING, EVALUATION AND BENEFITS REALIZATION: FROM OUTPUTS TO VALUE

Monitoring asks whether authorized work and conditions are proceeding as expected; evaluation examines merit, worth, performance, distribution and potential causation. Their evidence differs. A schedule dashboard can show task completion, a test register can establish whether a defined function works, and administrative records can reveal whether service times changed after deployment. None alone proves that the project caused the change. An apparent improvement could result from staffing increases, seasonal demand, new eligibility rules or an altered measurement process. Chapter 4 provides the broader inferential methods; project evaluation operationalizes them through baseline definition, exposure, comparison and benefit ownership.

A credible benefits map links the institutional problem to project outputs, required operational changes, intermediate outcomes and longer-term effects. It also identifies disbenefits and assumptions. A portal might produce working self-service forms (output), require staff to discontinue duplicate manual intake (operational change), reduce repeat visits (proximate outcome), improve access and capacity (potential benefit), and generate new exclusion or cybersecurity exposure (possible harm). Serra and Kunc (2015) document an association between benefits-realization management and perceived project success in their study; the finding supports disciplined benefit governance but not an unconditional estimate of effect. Shenhar et al. (2001) likewise

conceptualized project success across multiple time horizons and strategic dimensions rather than treating it as an immutable triangle of schedule, budget and technical performance.

Table 21.7. Benefits-realization and evaluation matrix for the constructed portal

Claim and operational owner	Indicator and comparison	Verification timing and caution
Faster case handling; registrar	Median minutes per comparable completed request, before/after	Baseline before rollout; compare request mix and exclusions
Fewer repeat visits; student services	Repeated visit events per 100 eligible requests	Monthly; distinguish reporting changes from real reduction
Accessible service; inclusion lead	Completion rate by specified accessibility and access needs	User testing before release; review unequal exclusion
Reliable records; data controller	Verified record error rate and correction latency	Migration gate and quarterly audit; protect personal data
Resource capacity; finance and operations	Auditable staff hours released and converted to alternative service	Six- and twelve-month review; do not equate time freed with cash saved
Sustainable service; ICT and finance	Uptime, support costs, unresolved incidents, renewal obligations	Quarterly over operating horizon; net of ongoing costs

Note. Targets, baselines and observed results must be populated from real authorized records; none are supplied or fabricated here. The indicators are illustrative specification, not findings.

Benefits can be direct or indirect, financial or nonfinancial, private or social, short-run or delayed. Their distribution matters: staff workload may fall while students' connectivity costs rise; automated processing may reduce queueing while disadvantaging applicants unable to verify identity digitally. Appraisal should therefore maintain at least two registers, one for financial contributions to enterprise viability and one for service quality, rights and external consequences. Ex post economic evaluation should avoid attributing every improvement to the intervention and should record uncertainties that remain irresolvable. For a small project, a carefully documented interrupted comparison with transparent limitations may be feasible; for major public expenditure, independent quasi-experimental or otherwise rigorous evaluation may be justified if design and data support it.

Benefits ownership continues after the delivery team disperses. This is a serious organizational problem because a project manager usually cannot require staff to stop using a legacy process, fund recurring licensing or maintain records after closure. The sponsor should identify a permanent owner and resource these obligations before authorizing transition. ISO 21513:2026 specifically addresses post-project and post-programme evaluation, reflecting the professional importance of looking beyond closure (ISO, 2026e). Evaluation should include stop, modify or scale decisions and a transparent account of promised but unrealized benefits, rather than recoding them retrospectively as 'lessons learned'.

21.11.1 Evaluation design, disbenefits and falsifiability

A theory of change is useful only if it can fail an empirical test. For the constructed portal, the hypothesis that faster electronic intake reduces student waiting may be undermined if users must make additional visits to correct digital errors. Evaluation should specify eligible requests, the denominator for completion and repeated visits, the time window, the treatment of incomplete cases and the sources from which timestamps are obtained. A before-and-after comparison needs to examine seasonality, case complexity, changes in staffing and parallel service reforms. If a comparable group adopts later, a carefully justified comparative design may strengthen inference, but parallel-trend assumptions or nonrandom selection must be challenged. Where a counterfactual is unidentifiable, the report should distinguish credible descriptive change from attributable project impact (Ika, 2009; Shenhar et al., 2001).

Benefit realization is not a single positive aggregate. The benefits owner must identify winners and losers, measure cybersecurity incidents and customer experience alongside cost, and guard against incentives to suppress complaints to improve a dashboard. A reduction in administrative hours is potential capacity, not automatically budgetary saving: the released time may be absorbed by more complex cases, improved support or unemployment. These outcomes are economically and morally different. The benefit case should specify the valuation approach for each component and require approval before converting assumed capacity into a cash saving. The published guidance in ISO 21513:2026 provides a useful basis for independent post-project and post-programme review while keeping ex post evaluation distinct from monitoring performed during delivery (ISO, 2026e).

21.12 TECHNOLOGY-ENABLED PROJECTS: DATA, AI, CYBERSECURITY AND HUMAN OVERSIGHT

Digital project platforms can improve traceability by linking requirements, work packages, schedule dependencies, procurement records, risks, issue resolution, approvals and benefits. Their usefulness depends on data quality and authority rather than visual sophistication. A shared dashboard may produce conflicting versions of truth if approved baselines differ across departments, if suppliers control underlying records or if project staff mark work as complete before acceptance. Information architecture should define a system of record, access privileges, version control, retention, time stamps, audit trails and mechanisms to correct incorrect entries. Interoperability and exportability also protect the enterprise’s capacity to transition between vendors or continue service during an outage.

AI assistance may support preliminary schedule drafting, document search, summarization, risk-identification prompts, meeting transcription and classification of large issue logs. These are plausible applications, not claims that generative systems can reliably make final project decisions. Large language models can produce confident but fabricated dependencies, incorrect technical assumptions or invented citations; predictive algorithms can inherit the exclusions present in historical project data. The PMI’s eighth-edition guidance and APM’s eighth edition address AI and data as emerging project-management topics, while the National Institute of Standards and Technology’s AI Risk Management Framework provides a general structure for governing AI risk (APM, 2025; Tabassi, 2023; PMI, 2025). Such frameworks are guidance, not substitutes for the applicable law or a specific organization’s risk assessment.

A proportionate AI-use protocol identifies the permitted task, data classification, tool and vendor, evidence sources, accuracy checks, reviewing human, decision record, privacy safeguards and incident route. No student data, staff disciplinary records or confidential supplier bids should be transmitted into an unapproved generative service merely for administrative convenience. AI-generated cost forecasts should be treated as candidate estimates requiring independent comparison; AI-written stakeholder messages require factual and accessibility review; and AI-derived risk scores must permit challenge by affected people. The decisive governance principle is that a consequential project decision remains owned by an identifiable, authorized person who can explain and revise it.

Cybersecurity and sustainability are design requirements, not late-stage appendices. Security planning should cover identity and access, secure development, backup and rollback, vendor dependencies, logging, vulnerability testing and user response. A digital project may also impose energy demand, electronic waste, recurring licence costs and new dependence on scarce technical capacity. Climate-sensitive construction projects face a different mix of exposure, including rainfall variability, material performance and community impacts. Project method must therefore be tailored to physical, digital and social contexts, while the recurring operation inherits a funded responsibility for maintenance, protection and continuous improvement after project closure.

21.12.1 AI assurance and the sustainability of digital project choices

A project team considering automated document drafting or risk scoring should first establish the decision being supported and the evidence needed to verify the output. A language model can propose a schedule narrative, but it cannot establish the feasibility of a predecessor relationship without authoritative project records and knowledgeable human review. In sensitive service contexts, procurement and information security must assess whether prompts or retrieved documents expose personal information, confidential bids or institutional credentials to external vendors. Review must include the possibility that an apparently fluent summary omits a safety exception or creates a false impression of consensus. The relevant performance measure is verified decision quality relative to an appropriate manual process, not volume of AI-generated text. Where the use case cannot be bounded and audited, a simpler digital workflow may be more defensible than deploying predictive or generative AI (Tabassi, 2023; PMI, 2025).

Sustainability appraisal should similarly move beyond the construction or procurement budget. A portal can reduce some paper use while increasing device replacement, support electricity demand, third-party hosting exposure and electronic waste. The project business case should identify the future infrastructure owner, maintenance funding, practical accessibility of hardware and software, supplier environmental claims, and procedures for secure decommissioning. In physical infrastructure projects, climate exposure, construction impacts, occupational health and community access require different methods and authoritative safeguards. The enduring principle is common: project closure transfers environmental and social obligations to institutions that must remain able to fulfil them.

21.13 INTEGRATED RWANDAN APPLICATION: A UNIVERSITY-SERVICE TRANSFORMATION PROJECT

21.13.1 Constructed project setting and approved charter

Consider a hypothetical medium-sized university in Kigali seeking to replace fragmented paper and spreadsheet processes for selected student-service requests with a secure and accessible web portal. The institution has a functioning ICT team, an academic registry, student-service personnel and a finance office, but the case assumes no specific headcount, annual institutional revenue or observed service deficiency. The teaching intervention is deliberately bounded to requests for routine letters, status confirmations and straightforward record corrections. It excludes a full student-information-system replacement and a new national identity integration. These exclusions matter: an unqualified promise of ‘digital transformation’ would be too broad for a credible fifteen-week project and RWF 58.3 million maximum allocation.

Table 21.8. Illustrative project charter and decision rights

Charter field	Approved assumption for teaching
Problem and intended change	Reduce friction in selected student services without excluding users
Sponsor and benefits owner	Deputy vice-chancellor/registrar; registrar retains post-handover accountability
Project delivery lead	Appointed project manager with delegated baseline tolerances
Deliverables	Accessible request interface, secure workflows, migrated records, tested controls, staff preparation and pilot
Boundaries	No enterprise-wide records replacement; no unapproved identity integration
Planned duration	15 elapsed working weeks under activity assumptions in Table 21.3
Performance baseline	RWF 53.0 million; separately governed contingency RWF 5.3 million
Approval gates	Charter; design and controls; integration and security; pilot acceptance; benefits review
Acceptance and escalation	Evidence-backed test sign-off; material deviation goes to sponsor; privacy/safety risks cannot be waived casually
Benefits review	Operational reviews at 3, 6 and 12 months, with longer financial horizon separately stated

Note. Original hypothetical teaching charter. Roles are archetypes, not appointments within an identified institution. Actual data-protection, accessibility, procurement and employment obligations require institutional verification.

The project manager first convenes users, registry personnel, ICT, finance and safeguarding representatives to define legitimate requirements. A small set of service journeys is mapped, including cases where a student has incomplete data, a shared telephone, limited connectivity, a disability or a name requiring correction. The sponsor must approve whether an assisted non-digital channel will remain available. The technical team specifies data ownership, access permissions, retention rules, migration reconciliation and rollback criteria. Procurement evaluates the commercial terms and exit rights while legal and governance functions confirm what may be contracted and shared. Such planning shows why the work packages in Table 21.2 are interdependent rather than independently purchasable.

21.13.2 Network, budget, controls and a material deviation

Tables 21.3 and 21.4 give the complete teaching model. The forward and backward passes yield a 15-week planned finish and identify activities A, B, D, F and H as critical. If the sponsor postpones the initial requirements sign-off by one week, this shifts the entire critical path unless another assumption changes. If migration activity E experiences a one-week delay without a change elsewhere, its two-week total float absorbs the delay under the initial network. This is not proof that the project can safely consume all schedule float: an unavailable database specialist may simultaneously constrain configuration and migration, and a late defect discovered in E may change F’s duration. The delivery lead should therefore maintain both precedence and resource forecasts.

At the hypothetical week-10 report, PV = RWF 31.0 million, EV = RWF 27.0 million and AC = RWF 30.0 million. The resulting CPI of 0.900, SPI of 0.871 and EAC of RWF 58.89 million trigger a funding concern. The sponsor should investigate whether the cost variance comes from genuine overrun, supplier front-loaded payments, inaccurate EV recognition or an omitted contractual commitment. If the current estimate is credible, the EAC exceeds the RWF 58.3 million funding ceiling by RWF 0.59 million. The appropriate response is a documented choice: reduce legitimately optional scope, improve remaining efficiency, increase the funding ceiling through proper authorization, or stop a no-longer-justified initiative. Quietly lowering security tests or

removing assisted service access would create an apparent financial recovery by shifting unrecorded risks onto students.

Table 21.9. Illustrative sponsor decision and change-control log

Checkpoint	Evidence and decision	Authority and follow-up
Initial charter	Conditional approval subject to assessed privacy and accessibility requirements	Sponsor; preserve exclusion list and approved scope
Design gate	Confirm mappings, reconciliation and signed control design before production configuration	Sponsor with registry and security assurance
Week-10 exception	CPI 0.900; forecast RWF 58.89 million exceeds current ceiling	Sponsor to order bottom-up re-estimate; no silent reserve release
Pre-release gate	Security, service fallback, migration and usability tests must meet acceptance thresholds	Independent reviewers and operations owner; defer release if material defects persist

Registrar and finance; review at 3, 6 and 12 months

Handover and benefits Operational budget, named owners and time-specific outcome tests documented

Note. Constructed decision register. It records what should be documented, not decisions taken by an actual university.

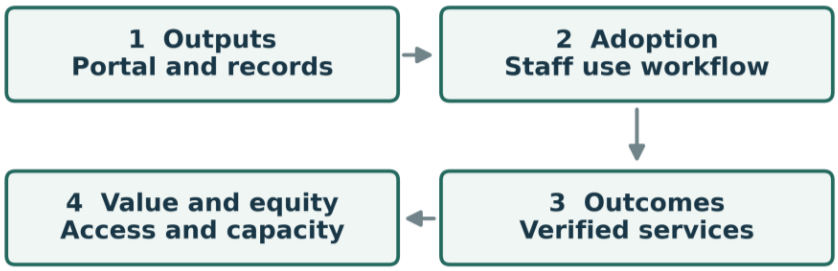
21.13.3 Financial benefits and sensitivity, with explicit safeguards

Assume for teaching that the selected services together handle 15,000 comparable requests annually and that a valid post-implementation time study could eventually establish a reduction of 20 staff minutes per request. The projected gross capacity released would be 15,000 × 20/60 = 5,000 staff hours annually. At an assumed fully loaded staff resource value of RWF 6,000 per hour, the theoretical resource value is RWF 30.0 million. The business case conservatively recognizes only 50% of that capacity, or RWF 15.0 million, as potentially convertible into identifiable funded activity. The word *potentially* is essential: a freed hour creates neither cash nor welfare automatically. Management must specify whether staff time is used for demonstrably valuable additional services, reduces overtime or avoids necessary future hiring. No dismissal or realized cash saving is presumed.

The illustrative annual benefits model then assumes RWF 3.5 million in avoided printing and materials and RWF 2.0 million in separately measured correction and rework costs, with overlap explicitly excluded through distinct accounting categories. Recurring system support and security costs are assumed at RWF 3.0 million annually. The resulting projected annual net economic benefit is 15.0 + 3.5 + 2.0 − 3.0 = RWF 17.5 million. On the further assumptions that the full initial funding ceiling of RWF 58.3 million is expended at time zero, that these net benefits arise at each year-end for five years, that there is no terminal value and that the illustrative discount rate is 12%, the five-year present-value factor is 3.604776. Consequently NPV = −58.3 + 17.5 × 3.604776 = **RWF +4.78 million**. These assumptions are not market data, a university forecast or a measured intervention effect; they exist to demonstrate appraisal logic.

A sensitivity test reveals the fragility of the headline. If only 75% of the RWF 20.5 million gross annual benefit is realized while RWF 3.0 million in operating costs persists, annual net benefit falls to RWF 12.375 million. Its five-year NPV becomes **RWF −13.69 million** using the same discount assumptions. The positive base-case appraisal is therefore highly conditional on adoption, real capacity conversion, absence of double counting and sustainable support. A detailed business case would also test delay to benefits, cost escalation, technology replacement, inflation and plausible variation in the discount rate. It should not treat a positive modeled NPV as authorization to breach privacy, abandon accessibility or misrepresent nonfinancial outcomes.

Figure 21.3. *Value pathway and evidence checkpoints for the hypothetical student-service portal.* Note. Original theory-of-change synthesis. Each arrow expresses an assumption requiring operational verification; it does not establish a causal effect.



The benefits owner should collect baseline request-level processing measures before implementation and define a reproducible denominator. Subsequent comparison must account for changes in the mix of requests, enrolment periods, service availability and manual fallback. Acceptance tests establish that system functions work; they do not prove that administrative waiting times fell because of the portal. Separate student-centred measures should examine accessibility, repeat visits and unresolved complaints. Where credible comparison data are unavailable, management should report descriptive improvement with limitations instead of implying causal certainty. This distinction implements the research and evidence safeguards developed in Chapter 4.

21.13.4 Decision, professional transfer and ethics

The constructed evidence does not warrant an unconditional instruction to proceed. A reasoned conditional authorization would require documented user needs; agreed minimum accessible services; credible data controls; resource commitments from the permanent registrar function; competing options, including process redesign without new software; a supplier market assessment; and staged design and pilot gates. Approval for subsequent expenditure should depend on evidence from the previous gate. If the risk log reveals unmanaged privacy exposure or a forecast that exceeds the approved ceiling without a feasible remedy, the authorized decision-maker must revise or stop the work. This approach makes both integrity and flexibility observable in the authorization record.

The case also demonstrates how delivery choices affect other functions. Marketing and communications must represent the portal’s capabilities accurately; HR and organizational learning must equip staff to work within new decision rights; procurement must secure reliable supplier performance and exit arrangements; finance must distinguish estimates from liabilities and monitor operating sustainability; quality assurance must verify functionality and usability; and the continuing operation must own incidents and benefits. Project management is the temporary integration mechanism, not a substitute for these distinct specialist functions. The business lesson is not that every university needs a sophisticated project office. It is that a small, auditable change programme becomes credible only when the organization accepting its outputs has the resources and authority to make those outputs useful.

21.14 DOCUMENTED RWANDAN AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARATIVE EVIDENCE

21.14.1 Rwanda Digital Acceleration Project: evidence of programme architecture, not asserted success

Rwanda's Digital Acceleration Project (P173373) offers a documented national example of the programme and portfolio problem. The World Bank announced approval in December 2021 of US$100 million in financing to help expand broadband access and selected digital public services and strengthen the digital innovation ecosystem (World Bank, 2021). Rwanda's Ministry of Finance and Economic Planning reported a December 2021 agreement for another US$100 million in Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank financing, identifying a total programme investment of US$200 million and four broad components: digital access and inclusion, digital public service delivery, digital innovation and entrepreneurship, and project management (Ministry of Finance and Economic Planning [MINECOFIN], 2021). These official statements establish approved financing and design intentions; they do not by themselves establish implementation performance, actual disbursement or benefits realized.

The architecture is analytically important. Broadband infrastructure may provide little additional public value if people lack affordable devices or digital literacy; improved digital services may fail without institutional process redesign and trustworthy data governance. The project's interdependent components illustrate why programme coordination differs from a collection of independent ICT contracts. The World Bank's March 2026 project information document and the financing partner's publicly listed June 2026 monitoring report show continuing documentary oversight material exists, but this chapter does not extract unverified outcome indicators from those documents or claim that planned household, training or service targets were achieved (Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank [AIIB], 2026; World Bank, 2026b). To make a rigorous ex post evaluation, a researcher would need dated indicator definitions, verified actuals, beneficiary baselines, implementation changes, expenditure records and appropriately designed comparisons.

For a Rwandan university or SME, the transferability lesson is one of dependency and proportionality rather than imitation. A national co-financed initiative has sovereign governance, multiple executing institutions, cross-sector benefits and formal development-finance safeguards. A small enterprise cannot replicate its committee structure without excessive burden, but it faces analogous dependencies among digital infrastructure, staff capability, service design, consent and recurring financing. Rwanda's public-procurement oversight debate also cautions that adequate preparation, contract amendment control and institutional accountability cannot be replaced by a digital procurement interface (Parliament of Rwanda, 2026b).

A related empirical contribution qualifies the transfer of generic project-success formulas to development settings. Survey research on World Bank projects by Ika et al. (2012) identified monitoring, coordination, design, training and institutional environment as positively associated with project success as perceived by task-team leaders. This is meaningful because institutional capacity and beneficiary engagement may mediate the usefulness of technical controls. Nevertheless, the study's respondents, perceptions and observational design do not identify a causal effect of any prescribed package, and its global World Bank project context is not a representative survey of Rwandan enterprises. Its practical value is to widen the diagnostic frame beyond schedule competence while preserving caution about transferability.

21.14.1.1 Implementation evidence, financing revision and limits of inference

A subsequent International Development Association project paper on proposed additional financing supplies a stronger dated implementation record than the initial financing announcements. It reports that as of December 2025, 3,054 of a targeted 5,000 public sites had been connected and approximately 2.5 million people had received training through the Digital Ambassadors Programme, with 51% of trainees reported as women. The paper also records that overall implementation progress improved from Moderately Unsatisfactory in June 2025

to Moderately Satisfactory in December 2025, while progress toward the development objective remained Moderately Satisfactory. These are official project monitoring statements, not independently identified impacts on productivity, inclusion or citizen welfare (International Development Association [IDA], 2026).

The financing history illustrates why figures must be dated and classified. The same 2026 project paper records an earlier approved operation cost of US$180 million following cancellation of US$20 million, and proposes a further US$20 million IDA credit to restore total financing to US$200 million. Its table distinguishes previously approved amounts from the proposed additional financing; a proposal should not be reported as disbursement or final approval. The request to extend closing from December 2026 to June 2028 is also described as a request in the project paper, not a universally applicable deadline decision. The case therefore demonstrates a substantive governance issue: portfolio and programme evaluations must reconcile original financing commitments, subsequent restructurings, disbursements, implementation ratings and actual beneficiary outcomes rather than combining different dates and categories into one success statistic (IDA, 2026).

21.14.2 Crossrail: a documented warning about unrealistic integration assumptions

The United Kingdom’s Crossrail programme provides a contrasting international case where a technologically complex transport investment confronted governance and integration difficulties. In its 2019 independent report, the National Audit Office (NAO) identified a compressed schedule, contractual arrangements, changing scope and an unrealistic delivery plan among the sources of excessive cost and delay; it emphasized that final value for money could not yet be concluded before services opened and full costs were established (National Audit Office [NAO], 2019). Its subsequent progress reporting described the previously revised programme schedule and funding arrangements as insufficiently realistic given the extent of remaining work (NAO, 2021). The lesson is not that every megaproject inevitably overruns; it is that weak integration evidence and pressures to sustain politically salient dates can overwhelm sophisticated individual contract management.

A principled comparison distinguishes the cases’ scale and objectives. Crossrail combines complex physical systems, safety-critical integration, numerous commercial interfaces and long asset lifetimes. Rwanda’s digital programme addresses infrastructure, inclusion and public services under very different financing, institutional and access conditions. The hypothetical university portal has more limited scope and may permit meaningful incremental testing and reversal. Nevertheless, all three require sound baselines, cross-organization coordination, empowered sponsors, visibility of disbenefits and realistic benefit-handover arrangements. The mechanism transfers more readily than a particular schedule reserve, staffing ratio or governance committee design. The comparative conclusion therefore remains conditional and theory-informed, not a statistical generalization from two national programmes.

21.15 CROSS-FUNCTIONAL INTEGRATION, ETHICAL ACCOUNTABILITY AND RESEARCH OPPORTUNITIES

Project management occupies a distinctive position in the enterprise system because it coordinates temporary change that ordinarily crosses existing functional boundaries. Strategy decides which commitments merit investment; projects translate selected commitments into temporary deliverables; operations sustain the changed process; finance evaluates capital and cash consequences; procurement governs acquisition; human-resource systems supply and develop capabilities; governance supervises legitimate authority; and evaluation tests whether the intended results occurred. Failure at a single interface can defeat the whole investment. A technically acceptable digital platform can be unusable without trained staff; an affordable capital project can undermine liquidity through payment mismatches; a completed road can produce harmful local effects if consultation and remedy were inadequate. These connections are causal hypotheses to be investigated, not proof that coordination quality independently determines every outcome.

A useful analytical synthesis is the **authorized-change-to-benefit chain** illustrated in Figure 21.1: justified selection → delegated governance → feasible temporary delivery → verified acceptance → funded operational adoption → measured and fairly distributed outcomes → independent learning and possible correction. The model draws on temporary-organization and governance research as well as benefits realization, but its particular combination and arrows are proposed here as an integrative teaching framework rather than a validated scholarly instrument. Its strongest implication concerns responsibility gaps. Every arrow should have a named owner, evidence source, failure trigger and permission to revise. Where the owner changes across the handover boundary, the risk of apparently successful but ineffective investment increases unless the transition is governed explicitly.

The ethical dimensions are substantive. Strategic leaders may favor projects that confer short-term political visibility but fail a defensible comparison against less visible maintenance. Contractors may exploit information asymmetries; managers may transfer schedule pressure to unsafe labour; digital systems may exclude those with low literacy or limited connectivity; public reports may describe targets as achievements. Fair enterprise practice requires truthful baselines, lawful acquisition, due process for workers and suppliers, meaningful accessibility and proportional safeguards against irreversible harm. The proper test is not whether every participant agrees but whether decisions are made by authorized persons, reasons and evidence are visible, and affected parties retain a plausible path to challenge and remedy. This is a reasoned normative commitment, not an empirical claim that ethical practice always minimizes costs.

Research opportunities follow from the limitations of the evidence reviewed. One hypothesis is that explicitly assigning post-handover benefits ownership predicts stronger sustained service outcomes than assigning responsibility solely to the delivery manager, after accounting for enterprise capability and project selection. A second concerns the interaction of stakeholder participation with requirements uncertainty: participation may improve usability when iterative revision is feasible but create coordination costs when affected groups are numerous and decision rights are unclear. A third asks whether independent challenge and reference-class forecasting improve cost accuracy in African public investments, distinguishing forecast accuracy from the politically determined selection of proposals. A fourth investigates whether AI-assisted project reporting improves early detection of deviations or instead increases dashboard confidence without increasing the underlying validity of evidence. Testing these propositions would require appropriately specified populations, longitudinal data, controls for selection and organizational differences, and, where ethical and feasible, designs capable of separating intervention effects from correlated capability.

21.15.1 A testable theory of accountable project value

The resulting conceptual proposition is conditional rather than deterministic. Project-selection discipline should improve the chance that resources address legitimate needs, but it can have little effect when decision-makers cannot implement or enforce selected alternatives. Delivery capability should increase the likelihood of accepted outputs, but its contribution to realized benefits may be mediated by adoption, complementary resources and the authority of the receiving operation. Stakeholder engagement may improve requirement validity while also increasing the coordination cost of reaching decisions; governance challenge may improve forecast honesty yet slow time-sensitive projects if review thresholds are poorly designed. These mechanisms invite empirical studies that distinguish baseline organizational capability, institutional context and project complexity from the effects of interventions introduced after authorization.

A credible African research agenda could assemble longitudinal project registers linking approved scope, contract revisions, independent audits, milestones, post-handover service measures and stakeholder harms. Comparative cases should stratify public, private, cooperative and nonprofit projects rather than assume one governance regime. Designs might exploit staggered adoption of a project assurance protocol or compare forecasts before and after institutional reforms, while examining whether selection and unobserved managerial capability confound estimates. Qualitative process tracing could test how information was suppressed or

corrected at decisive stages. Such research would strengthen external validity and clarify the mechanisms by which accountability becomes practical capability instead of remaining a ceremonial compliance document.

21.16 CRITICAL SYNTHESIS AND CONCLUSION

Technical planning and accountable governance are complementary, but neither is sufficient on its own. Critical-path networks reveal the consequences of sequence assumptions, while sociotechnical analysis reveals dependencies that may not be captured as activities. Earned-value measures make spending and accepted work comparable, but can mislead when acceptance is weak or the wrong work was authorized. Agile feedback can improve responsiveness under genuine uncertainty, yet it cannot legitimize uncontrolled scope or bypass independent safety assurance. Benefits management extends concern beyond handover, but the mere existence of a benefits register does not establish causality or just distribution. These tensions are not anomalies to be removed by selecting one dominant methodology; they are features of managing consequential change in open enterprise systems.

An enterprise should authorize temporary investment only when its purpose, counterfactual alternatives, scope and distribution of consequences have survived proportionate scrutiny. Once authorized, the schedule must remain a revisable dependency model whose dates are qualified by resources, uncertainty and assurance. Expenditure discipline requires equally careful distinctions among budgeted progress, actual cost, cash affordability, risk provisions and downstream operating obligations. These distinctions become especially important where a numerical dashboard appears favorable while contractual liabilities or unmet safety requirements remain invisible. The authority to revise or terminate a project must therefore be preserved throughout its lifecycle rather than treated as an admission of failure.

The appropriate delivery method follows the structure of the problem, not the preference of the project manager. Stable and irreversible requirements justify extensive early assurance, whereas uncertain user needs may justify controlled iteration and genuine feedback. In either case, benefit ownership and continuing resource provision must be settled before the temporary team disbands. Independent evaluation, accessible stakeholder voice and documented corrective decisions connect the initial investment claim to durable enterprise value; without these mechanisms, apparently successful completion may remain institutionally or socially unsuccessful.

The central conclusion is that projects should be governed as **time-bounded, evidence-sensitive commitments to change**, nested in permanent institutions whose responsibilities and stakeholder relationships persist after the project team disbands. Portfolio selection must withstand scrutiny before money is spent. Programme management must coordinate dependencies and complementary benefits. Project delivery must maintain disciplined, revisable control over scope, schedule, costs, people, suppliers and risks. Operational owners must verify that the resulting capability is adopted, sustainable and ethically defensible. Success is therefore multidimensional and time-dependent: output conformance, delivery economy, credible service outcomes, stakeholder consequences and organizational learning may agree or diverge (Atkinson, 1999; Shenhar et al., 2001; Ika, 2009).

This chapter prepares the ground for the next part of the book by making the financial consequences of enterprise change explicit without reducing value to money. Chapters 22–26 develop faithful accounting, costing, investment finance, financial systems, taxation and controls, all of which furnish essential evidence for responsible project commitment and evaluation. The intended integrated enterprise is not a set of departments optimized separately, but an arrangement capable of choosing, implementing, evaluating and correcting consequential commitments under uncertainty.

21.17 KEY CONCEPTS, LEARNING ASSESSMENT AND EDUCATOR GUIDANCE

21.17.1 Core terminology

Term	Contextual definition
Project	Time-bounded authorized initiative undertaken to create a specific output, capability or change.
Programme	Coordinated related initiatives and activities managed to realize joint outcomes and benefits.
Portfolio	Strategically selected and monitored collection of competing or complementary investments.
Sponsor	Authorized owner of the initiative's continuing business justification and material escalation.
Business case	Evidence-based appraisal of purpose, alternatives, costs, benefits, risks and legitimacy.
Charter	Formal statement authorizing scope, boundaries, delegated responsibility and decision rights.
Work breakdown structure	Deliverable-oriented decomposition of the complete authorized project scope.
Critical path	Longest-duration precedence chain determining the earliest finish under stated assumptions.
Total float	Amount an activity can shift without delaying the specified modelled project finish.
Cost baseline	Time-phased authorized budget against which progress and cost are controlled.
Earned value	Budgeted value of objectively verified work accomplished by the reporting date.
Risk register	Documented causes, uncertain events, consequences, control owners, responses and triggers.
Change control	Governed evaluation and authorization of alterations to scope, time, cost or requirements.
Benefits realization	Planned adoption, measurement and review of intended outcomes after deliverables are accepted.
Stage gate	Authorized decision point for continued investment, modification, pause or termination.
Hybrid delivery	Justified combination of predictive and adaptive methods within coherent governance boundaries.

21.17.2 Foundational and analytical questions

21.17.2.1 Foundational analysis (LO1–LO2)

Explain why a student-information-system upgrade is a project while annual registration is an operation. Under what conditions would several related digital projects form a programme rather than simply a portfolio? Identify who owns benefits after closure and defend your answer using the governance theories addressed in the chapter.

21.17.2.2 Schedule and financial analysis (LO3–LO5)

Reconstruct Table 21.3 from the predecessor list, independently calculate ES, EF, LS, LF and total float, and explain what changes if integration activity E requires seven rather than four weeks. Recalculate CV, SV, CPI and SPI from the week-10 snapshot and produce a revised EAC using both the constant-CPI assumption and a

reasoned bottom-up remaining-cost assumption of your own. Clearly explain why neither EVM index proves that the portal will be useful.

21.17.2.3 Governance and stakeholder analysis (LO5–LO7)

Evaluate a proposal to remove accessible assisted-service channels and shorten security testing to recover a threatened project deadline. Distinguish law and non-negotiable rights from negotiable scope, propose alternative recovery actions, and identify the responsible escalation forum. Explain how users with little formal influence would be heard.

21.17.2.4 Integrative capstone (LO1–LO8)

Develop an evidence-supported, 3,000–4,000-word business case for a Rwandan university, cooperative, enterprise or public agency considering one substantial temporary change initiative. Include at least two alternatives, a complete charter, scope boundary and WBS, auditable schedule and critical path, multi-period cost and funding plan, qualitative and quantified risks where defensible, procurement and stakeholder controls, justified delivery-method choice, benefits map and evaluation design. Compare the proposal with one appropriately documented regional or international case, and write a sponsor decision memorandum stating whether to approve, stage, revise or reject the initiative. Label every hypothetical assumption and distinguish official data from inference.

21.17.3 Educator answer guidance and analytical rubric

The foundational response should distinguish the duration and intended uniqueness of change from recurring service, explain why programme benefits require coordinated related work, and distinguish portfolio prioritization from programme interdependence. For the network exercise, the base-case project duration is 15 weeks and the zero-float chain is A–B–D–F–H. When E increases from four to seven weeks, its duration becomes 7, its earliest finish becomes week 11, F shifts to week 11, and project completion becomes week 16 unless dependencies or resources change. The new critical path includes A–C–E–F–H, which totals 2 + 2 + 7 + 3 + 2 = 16 weeks; this is a useful demonstration that criticality is sensitive to change. For the earned-value component, the correct reported measures are CV = −RWF 3.0 million, SV = −RWF 4.0 million, CPI = 0.900, SPI ≈ 0.871 and constant-CPI EAC ≈ RWF 58.89 million. The cost ceiling, not merely BAC, must be assessed separately.

Table 21.10 provides a transparent assessment rubric. Equal weighting prevents technical calculation from displacing ethical, inferential and contextual reasoning; educators may recalibrate weights to declared programme outcomes before using the instrument.

Table 21.10. Suggested analytical assessment rubric for the Chapter 21 integrative capstone

Assessment domain	Weight	Evidence of satisfactory achievement
Problem framing, alternatives and theory	20%	Defensible rationale, competing options and bounded theoretical interpretation
Scope, schedule, costs and calculations	20%	Traceable WBS, consistent network, reproducible budget and sensitivity
Governance, risk, rights and contracting	20%	Authorized decisions, stakeholder protection and actionable risk responses
Benefits, evidence and uncertainty	20%	Measurable outcomes, transparent counterfactual limits and benefit ownership
Rwanda relevance, comparison and scholarly integrity	20%	Credible contextual data, warranted transfer claims, accurate citations and clear professional reasoning

21.17.4 Selected further reading

A practical sequence begins with PMI (2025) and ISO (2020) for contemporary professional language, then Kelley and Walker (1959) and Malcolm et al. (1959) for the formal planning tradition. Lundin and Söderholm (1995), Geraldi et al. (2011) and Too and Weaver (2014) develop the temporary-organization, complexity and governance critiques. Atkinson (1999), Shenhar et al. (2001), Ika (2009) and Serra and Kunc (2015) help readers distinguish delivery performance from longer-term success and realized benefit. For contextual interpretation, the World Bank (2021) and MINECOFIN (2021) documents should be compared with the NAO's independently reported Crossrail findings, without treating any country's project experience as a universal template.

PART VI

Accounting, Finance, and Financial Accountability

Financial information describes, informs and constrains enterprise activity. These chapters distinguish external reporting from internal analysis, investment judgment from financing arrangements, and lawful compliance from effective assurance. Together they connect economic performance with liquidity, credible records, institutional relationships and financial accountability.

22 Financial Accounting and Corporate Reporting

23 Management Accounting, Costing, and Budgetary Control

24 Financial Management and Investment Decisions

25 Banking, Financial Markets, and Financial Technology

26 Taxation, Auditing, Internal Controls, and Financial Compliance

CHAPTER 22

Financial Accounting and Corporate Reporting

ABSTRACT

Financial accounting makes an enterprise's past transactions and unsettled obligations intelligible to people who cannot observe its operations directly. Yet transaction records do not explain themselves, and technically balanced accounts may still conceal uncertainty, weak liquidity, inappropriate measurement or misleading managerial incentives. This chapter develops a critical, integrated account of financial accounting and corporate reporting as a system of recognition, measurement, presentation, disclosure and accountability. A targeted secondary-source synthesis engages the IFRS Conceptual Framework, agency and stewardship theory, accounting-information research, earnings-quality scholarship and authoritative international reporting requirements. Twelve domains cover reporting objectives, accounting elements, double entry, accruals, assets, financing, the primary statements, reporting frameworks, ratio analysis and digitally mediated integrity. The chapter situates financial reporting within Rwanda's legal and professional institutions and compares proportionate SME reporting with the more demanding arrangements of publicly accountable enterprises. A constructed Kigali trading enterprise is traced through a transaction journal, adjusting entries, trial balance, financial statements, direct and indirect cash-flow reconciliation and qualified ratios, with every numerical assumption disclosed. A source-to-statement assurance model, recognition decision protocol and financial-analysis workbook provide replicable educational instruments. The central argument is that faithful reporting is not the mechanical production of balanced statements; it is a defensible, revisable relationship among economic substance, evidence, measurement, institutional accountability and users' decisions. The integrated model is proposed analytically, not represented as empirically validated.

Keywords. financial accounting; corporate reporting; IFRS; accrual accounting; double-entry bookkeeping; earnings quality; financial statements; cash flows; financial ratios; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CHAPTER ROADMAP

On completion, readers should be able to (LO1) distinguish financial accounting, bookkeeping, corporate reporting, management accounting and assurance with reference to their users and purposes; (LO2) interpret assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses using the IFRS Conceptual Framework and critically assess alternative measurements; (LO3) record and reconcile transactions through journals, ledgers, trial balances and adjusting entries; (LO4) evaluate revenue, expense, asset and liability recognition in financially consequential transactions; (LO5) prepare and critically interpret a connected set of profit or loss, financial position, changes in equity and cash-flow statements; (LO6) compare applicable reporting standards and documented Rwandan requirements without confusing IFRS, IFRS for SMEs, tax rules and sustainability disclosures; (LO7) compute and challenge financial ratios and earnings-quality measures in context; and (LO8) defend a responsible digital financial-reporting and disclosure design addressing evidence provenance, uncertainty, cyber risk, fairness and fraud.

The chapter begins with users, concepts and the accounting architecture (Sections 22.1–22.3), examines timing, recognition and measurement (22.4–22.6), develops the interlocking statements and interpretation (22.7–22.9), and considers standards, analytical use and integrity (22.10–22.12). The fully reconciled Rwanda teaching case (22.13) and comparative analysis (22.14) support a final integrative synthesis, research agenda, terminology and assessment package. Management costing and budgeting belong to Chapter 23; capital budgeting and financial structure decisions to Chapter 24; financial institutions to Chapter 25; and tax, audit and specialist

internal-control frameworks to Chapter 26. The present chapter establishes the evidential language those functions must use.

22.0 INTRODUCTION: WHEN PROFIT, CASH AND VALUE TELL DIFFERENT STORIES

Imagine a Kigali supplier of packaged household products that has secured several new retail customers. Management reports positive quarterly profit, yet the company must ask its lender to postpone a repayment. The accounts show a substantial trade receivable balance; customers have accepted goods but some have not paid. An imported machine appears among assets at acquisition cost even though its market value and useful life remain uncertain. A sales manager calls invoiced orders success, operations calls dispatched units success, and the finance manager asks whether all these recorded events are measurable claims on resources. The case is illustrative, not a description of an identified company. Its tension is fundamental: the income statement, statement of financial position and cash-flow statement address different temporal and economic questions and cannot substitute for one another.

Financial accounting is the disciplined process of identifying transactions and other reportable economic events, recognizing and measuring their effects, maintaining a controlled record, and presenting information about an entity's financial position and performance. Corporate reporting is broader: it includes the financial statements and notes, governance-related communications, selected narrative explanations and, when required or voluntarily adopted, sustainability-related financial disclosures. Bookkeeping records and classifies events; accounting determines whether, when and how they should affect reported elements; external reporting communicates selected outcomes. The distinctions matter because accurate arithmetic is a necessary but insufficient condition for representational integrity (International Accounting Standards Board [IASB], 2018).

The chapter adopts an epistemically modest position. Financial statements are structured claims, not photographs of economic reality. Historical cost records some transactions with comparatively direct evidence; impairment, credit losses, useful lives, fair values and uncertain contracts require judgment and estimates. Multiple legitimate reporting treatments may be permitted, while regulatory oversight, ownership incentives and professional competence affect the credibility of implementation. Financial accounting should therefore be evaluated through three connected questions: what economic phenomenon is being represented; what evidence and method warrant its measurement; and how would plausible alternative treatments affect decisions? Dechow (1994) shows why accruals can improve performance measurement when cash flows are poorly synchronized with activity, whereas Dechow et al. (2010) warn that no single earnings-quality proxy works independently of the intended decision.

22.0.1 Scholarly method, sources and inferential limits

This chapter employs a purposive, critical synthesis of published scholarship, official standards and institutional documents. It is not a preregistered systematic review, original experiment, survey or financial-statement audit. Foundational studies were selected for distinctive explanations of financial information and incentives; IFRS Foundation documents establish the framework and standard-specific principles; IFAC and Rwanda institutional materials contextualize adoption and institutional boundaries; and peer-reviewed accounting research provides evidence on consequences and limitations. The documentary cut-off for this chapter is 2 November 2026; legal and standard-setting claims are dated accordingly. The chapter deliberately refrains from ranking enterprise reporting quality in Rwanda from aggregate statistics: an enterprise survey can describe business structures or informality, but it cannot independently establish whether an individual firm's statements are faithfully represented.

A further distinction concerns authority. The IASB Conceptual Framework informs standard-setting and judgment but does not override the requirements of an applicable IFRS Accounting Standard. A global

standard's effective date does not itself prove that every entity in a jurisdiction is required to apply it; legal form, public accountability, sectoral regulation, reporting period and applicable transitional guidance must be checked. Ratio calculations in Section 22.13 are reproducible, but they are worked teaching data with no statistical representativeness or claimed empirical observation. The resulting analytical synthesis is interpretive, explicitly conditional and suitable for subsequent empirical testing.

22.0.2 Analytical orientation: accounting facts, conventions and inference

The epistemic status of an accounting number depends on the relationship between an observable event, a rule of recognition and a valuation procedure. Cash paid to a supplier is generally verifiable from a bank record, whereas the remaining economic benefit of a machine or the collectability of a debtor involves counterfactual judgments. Neither class of amount is arbitrary. The first remains vulnerable to completeness and classification error; the second requires a transparent estimate, a defensible model and evidence that can challenge its assumptions. Accounting consequently combines correspondence claims about transactions with convention-dependent representations of time, entity boundaries and uncertain value. The appropriate philosophical position is neither naive objectivism, in which every number is presumed to speak for itself, nor unrestricted constructivism, in which measurement choices are treated as equally valid. The admissibility of a representation is constrained by applicable rules, underlying rights and obligations, and independently inspectable evidence (IASB, 2018; Hopwood, 1983).

The analysis distinguishes four propositions that should not be collapsed. A normative proposition concerns what truthful financial communication ought to achieve. A technical proposition specifies how an existing standard requires an event to be recorded. An explanatory proposition addresses why preparers may choose, comply with or circumvent a treatment. An empirical proposition requires observations capable of distinguishing competing explanations. This separation matters when researchers discuss 'quality': financial-statement compliance, low discretionary accruals, low restatements, useful forecasts and equitable consequences are different outcomes, not interchangeable measures of a single latent virtue (Dechow et al., 2010). The ensuing sections relate the technical accounting model to governance and institutional context while avoiding unsupported causal claims.

22.1 PURPOSE AND USERS OF FINANCIAL REPORTING

22.1.1 Decision usefulness, stewardship and the reporting entity

The IFRS Conceptual Framework identifies existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors as the primary users of general purpose financial reporting. They require information useful in decisions to buy, sell or hold claims, lend or settle credit and exercise relevant voting or influence rights. They cannot demand a customized internal report from every entity. Financial statements help them assess prospects for net future cash inflows and how efficiently and effectively management has discharged its responsibilities for resources. Stewardship is therefore not a secondary cosmetic function. It links the informational problem of outsiders to the accountability problem of entrusted power (IASB, 2018; Jensen & Meckling, 1976).

A reporting entity is the economic unit whose financial statements are prepared. Its perimeter may be a legal entity, a group or another identified boundary; the perimeter matters when subsidiaries, related parties or joint arrangements are involved. A founder who uses a company account for household expenses destroys this boundary and may make both profits and liabilities unreliable. Conversely, consolidated financial statements may be necessary to prevent a group from presenting obligations and transactions as though economically interdependent entities were unrelated. Legal ownership, economic control and reporting boundaries must be assessed together, not assumed synonymous.

22.1.2 Users beyond investors and the limits of general purpose accounts

Workers assess an employer's capacity to meet remuneration and continuity commitments; suppliers examine collection risk; regulators need properly disclosed obligations; communities may be affected by economic and environmental exposures. Such users' concerns are genuine, but traditional IFRS general purpose financial statements are not designed to satisfy every information need. A successful statutory report can remain silent on job quality, affordability, or unpriced ecological harms. Ethical responsibility consequently requires distinguishing the limited but important claims a financial statement makes from supplementary reporting needed to address legitimate stakeholder interests.

The same reported profit can be interpreted differently by a lender, shareholder and employee. A lender may emphasize debt servicing and cash conversion; shareholders may value growth prospects; workers may ask whether returns are sustainable without unsafe conditions. Reports improve collective accountability when differences in interpretive purpose are disclosed rather than when a single headline ratio is treated as a universal judgment. The relevance of accounting amounts to market prices, established by Ball and Brown (1968) and Beaver (1968), demonstrates that financial statements contain decision-relevant information, but neither study proves that markets perfectly interpret that information or that reporting is sufficient for just governance.

22.1.3 Qualitative characteristics, materiality and cost

Useful financial information must be relevant and faithfully represent the economic phenomena that it purports to depict. Relevance involves predictive or confirmatory capacity; faithful representation requires completeness, neutrality and freedom from error to the extent practicable, not a promise that all estimates can be exact. Comparability, verifiability, timeliness and understandability enhance usefulness. Materiality is entity-specific: information may matter because of nature, magnitude or both. An undisclosed related-party transaction could be material even where its monetary amount is not large. Producing information also has costs, creating difficult trade-offs between detail, delay, assurance and users' benefit (IASB, 2018).

Historical cost sometimes supports verifiability because original consideration is documented, but it may become a weak indication of current economic value. Fair value may improve currency of information when markets are active, yet become model-sensitive when valuation inputs are unobservable. Prudence calls for caution under uncertainty in support of neutrality, not a license to create hidden reserves or bias earnings downward. Materiality, likewise, must not be invoked to conceal intentionally misleading classifications. These tensions show why rigorous financial reporting requires professional judgment within disciplined evidential constraints.

22.1.4 Competing theories: contracting, stewardship, legitimacy and constitutive effects

Agency theory explains a central demand for financial reporting as a response to separation of decision authority from residual claims. Principals cannot directly observe all managerial actions; managers may have private information and incentives to manage visible results. Contractual reporting requirements, comparability and assurance can reduce information asymmetry, but any metric incorporated into remuneration or debt covenants can also change the behaviour it measures. Jensen and Meckling (1976) identify incentive and monitoring costs, yet the agency account can overpredict opportunism where professional norms, reciprocal trust and intrinsic responsibility are substantial. Stewardship theory instead considers circumstances in which managers identify with collective organizational purposes and experience intrinsic motivation to account faithfully; that explanation does not eliminate the need to test balances and judgments (Davis et al., 1997).

Institutional and legitimacy explanations examine why similar firms produce different reporting practices even when contractual relationships appear comparable. Regulations, professional training, peer expectations, enforcement and public legitimacy shape what managers regard as acceptable disclosure. Suchman (1995) distinguishes pragmatic, moral and cognitive legitimacy, highlighting why reports may be adopted to secure recognition without necessarily changing conduct. Critical accounting scholarship goes further: by classifying

labour, environmental costs and internal assets into particular monetary categories, accounting does not merely portray organizational activity but can influence which concerns receive managerial attention (Hopwood, 1983). These perspectives disagree about motivation and the social consequences of information, but they can be combined as rival mechanisms rather than assimilated into one grand theory.

An analytically useful research design therefore asks who bears the residual risk, who can contest management estimates, which professional and legal constraints operate, and which stakeholders disappear from the chosen reporting boundary. An owner-manager with undivided control may face little classic principal-agent conflict but acute creditor, tax and family-business boundary problems. A publicly listed group may meet extensive disclosure rules while using legal subsidiaries and valuation discretion to obscure exposures. Where trustworthy reporting is observed, explanations based on incentive alignment, stewardship, enforcement and practical bookkeeping capability should be compared rather than announced as settled causes.

22.2 ACCOUNTING EQUATION AND ELEMENTS

22.2.1 Economic rights, present obligations and residual claims

The accounting equation, Assets = Liabilities + Equity, expresses a fundamental balance in financial position. An asset is a present economic resource controlled by the entity as a result of past events; an economic resource is a right with the potential to produce economic benefits. A liability is a present obligation to transfer an economic resource as a result of past events. Equity is the residual interest in assets after liabilities. Income comprises increases in assets or decreases in liabilities that increase equity, other than contributions by equity holders; expenses are decreases in assets or increases in liabilities that reduce equity, other than distributions to holders (IASB, 2018).

These are conceptual definitions, not automatic recognition rules. An enterprise may benefit from a loyal workforce but lack control of individual employees as an asset. A commercial opportunity may be valuable without being a present right arising from past events. Likewise, a planned purchase is not ordinarily a recognized liability merely because a board has approved a budget; a present enforceable or substantively unavoidable obligation requires closer analysis. The distinction between economic potential, recognized elements and disclosures should prevent both optimistic inflation of assets and indiscriminate recognition of future costs.

22.2.2 Recognition, derecognition and accounting equality

Recognition places an item meeting the definition of an element within the statement of financial position or performance, when doing so provides relevant information and faithful representation subject to cost. Derecognition removes an asset or liability, or part thereof, when it no longer meets relevant recognition circumstances and applicable standards. Equality of debits and credits is a bookkeeping property; it does not establish that the item was recognized at the correct time, measured appropriately or even valid. Equal but fictitious sales and receivables would leave a trial balance in agreement while materially misstating performance.

The expanded equity identity shows the operating mechanism: closing equity equals opening equity plus owner contributions plus recognized income, less recognized expenses and owner distributions, subject to other comprehensive income and other equity movements as applicable. For a simple single-owner enterprise with no other comprehensive income, Assets = Liabilities + Contributed capital + Retained earnings. Distinguishing transactions with owners in their capacity as owners from transactions generating income is essential. A bank loan produces cash and a liability, not revenue; an owner injection produces cash and equity, not income; and a dividend reduces equity without becoming an operating expense.

22.2.3 Measurement bases and the meaning of reported value

Initial and subsequent measurement may use historical cost, fair value, current cost, value in use, fulfilment value, amortized cost or other standard-specific methods. Each is a conditional response to a different informational question. Historical cost commonly emphasizes transaction-based stewardship, while current values may better reflect current opportunities or obligations. The choice cannot be made solely from philosophical preference: particular IFRS standards prescribe and constrain the available methods, with disclosures intended to reveal material uncertainty. If a truck's historical cost is RWF 30 million, its carrying amount after depreciation is not necessarily its resale price; neither number directly expresses the social value of its deliveries.

Table 22.1. Core accounting elements and typical evidence

Account/item	Economic meaning	Recognition caution
Cash and bank deposits	Present monetary rights controlled by the entity	Reconcile bank confirmation, restrictions and ownership
Trade receivables	Contractual right to consideration after transfer	Test existence, collectability and credit-loss adjustment
Inventory	Goods or materials held for sale or production	Verify physical quantities, rights, costs and net realizable value
Property, plant and equipment	Tangible productive resources used over periods	Assess capitalization, useful life and impairment
Trade payables and borrowings	Present obligations to external parties	Verify completeness, contractual terms and classification
Equity	Residual interest after recognized liabilities	Do not equate with bank balance or market capitalization
Revenue and expenses	Period changes in resources and obligations from performance	Test timing, classification, reversals and estimates

Table note. Original synthesis based on the IASB (2018) Conceptual Framework and the relevant standards discussed below. The final column identifies verification questions, not additional recognition criteria.

22.2.4 The entity boundary and consolidation as a problem of economic substance

The financial boundary of a business does not necessarily coincide with the outline of a company registration certificate. When one entity controls another, consolidated reporting ordinarily represents their resources, obligations and performance as a group, subject to the scope and exceptions of IFRS 10. Intragroup receivables, payables and sales are eliminated on consolidation because the group cannot create revenue by selling goods to itself. Joint arrangements, associates and structured entities require separate analysis; ownership percentage alone is not sufficient to determine the appropriate reporting treatment. The requirement is especially consequential for cross-border groups, diversified holdings and financing structures in which legal form and practical decision authority diverge (IASB, 2011).

For instance, a Kigali parent could advance RWF 10 million to its wholly controlled distribution subsidiary. The separate ledgers may report a receivable and payable respectively, but an ordinary consolidation eliminates the internal balance rather than treating the group as having gained a net external asset. External borrowing by the subsidiary would remain, subject to its contractual and reporting circumstances. This distinction prevents double counting and clarifies how the accounting equation is maintained at different reporting levels. It also exposes the governance question of which transactions can legitimately be analyzed at entity level and which require group-wide inquiry.

22.3 DOUBLE ENTRY AND ACCOUNTING CYCLES

22.3.1 The record as a controlled representation

Modern double-entry practice is historically associated with mercantile bookkeeping traditions, conventionally exemplified by Pacioli's fifteenth-century exposition, but neither the intellectual history nor modern accounting practice reduces to a single individual's invention. Double entry supplies a disciplined representation of reciprocal economic effects: each entry includes debit and credit amounts that balance. Debit increases assets and expenses and decreases liabilities, equity and income; credit generally has the reciprocal effect. This is a rule for recording classifications, not an ethical assurance that the transactions occurred. Bookkeeping must preserve underlying invoices, bank records, contracts, goods-receipt evidence and approval provenance.

The cycle begins with identifying a document-supported event and deciding whether it has a reportable accounting effect. A journal documents date, affected accounts, amounts and a comprehensible explanation. Posting transfers entries to general-ledger balances. A trial balance checks the numerical sum of debit and credit balances. Adjustments recognize accrued expenses and income, prepayments, depreciation, impairment and other period-end estimates. An adjusted trial balance supports statements and disclosures; period-end closing transfers temporary accounts into the appropriate equity balances. Subsequent reversals may simplify recurring accruals where justified. Controls must cover not only posting but also the judgments that precede and follow it.

22.3.2 An inspectable transaction-to-statement chain

Figure 22.1 depicts a source-to-statement chain in which a reviewer can trace each material number to evidence and each estimate to accountable judgment. For a credit sale, a purchase order alone is insufficient to establish recognized revenue; agreed terms, dispatch, acceptance and transfer of control may be relevant. The journal should distinguish trade receivables from cash, while inventory release and cost of goods sold must be recorded separately. A later bank receipt affects cash and receivables but should not create a second revenue entry. The same transaction therefore connects sales, warehouse management, credit control, the general ledger and financial reporting.

For material transactions, an evidence trail should be bidirectional. The preparer moves forward from a contract or delivery event to an accounting entry, but the reviewer must be able to start from a reported figure and trace back to the underlying records. A control that verifies that journal debits equal credits addresses arithmetic completeness of the entry, not the existence of the transaction. A bank reconciliation checks cash movements; a customer confirmation tests the claimed debtor relationship; a goods-receipt and inventory-count reconciliation test whether an asset is still controlled. The combination is stronger than any one document, particularly where fraud, error and legitimate timing differences can produce similar financial appearances.

The sequence also explains why cross-functional responsibility is not optional. A warehouse may document shipment without knowing whether contractual control has transferred; sales staff may understand a rebate arrangement that the bookkeeper has not recorded; a bank transaction may contain supplier finance or a related-party settlement that requires classification beyond the payment label. Accounting judgments must therefore have an identifiable owner and an escalation procedure. When evidence conflicts, the proper response is to investigate and disclose relevant uncertainty, not to manufacture an entry that merely makes a report balance.

Figure 22.1. Controlled evidence-to-reporting chain and correction loop



Figure note. Original synthesis. Arrows show sequencing and the continuing possibility of review and revision; the model does not imply that every stage guarantees accuracy.

22.3.3 Errors that a balanced trial balance cannot detect

Compensating mistakes, omitted transactions, fictitious invoices, reversed classifications and equal wrong-side entries may all preserve numerical equality. A complete reconciliation regime therefore compares bank balances with bank statements, customer balances with external confirmations and subsequent receipts, inventory records with physical counts, and fixed-asset registers with actual assets. Separate authorization, custody, recording and review wherever feasible; for a small enterprise where role separation is costly, use compensating owner review, read-only audit trails and periodic independent reconciliation. Internal control is neither a synonym for the audit nor a guarantee of accuracy; it is a risk-reduction architecture that can be overridden by collusion or senior management.

An accounting system must also distinguish chart-of-accounts design from economic substance. Excessively granular ledgers increase training and reconciliation burden; excessively aggregated ledgers conceal revenue types, related parties, tax-specific transaction codes or overdue liabilities. Good design enables accounts to be mapped consistently to reporting line items and explanatory notes, preserving the capacity to revisit the underlying events. Control quality is measured by evidence of timely correction and complete authorization, not simply by the number of software modules installed.

22.4 REVENUE AND EXPENSE RECOGNITION

22.4.1 Accrual performance versus cash movement

Accrual accounting recognizes financial effects when the relevant economic events occur, rather than only when cash is received or paid. It is especially useful where credit transactions, inventories, long-lived assets and unsettled services disrupt alignment between operating activity and cash flows. Dechow (1994) empirically examined circumstances in which accruals improve the correspondence between reported earnings and performance compared with raw cash flow; that result should not be read as proof that additional discretion necessarily improves quality. Accruals both correct cash timing and create estimation opportunities. A financially literate reader therefore examines income, associated balance-sheet movements and cash conversion together.

The frequently invoked 'matching principle' is a pedagogical description of relevant expense timing, not an unrestricted authority to recognize assets. Costs are not capitalized simply because management hopes they will support future revenue. Recognition follows the definitions and rules governing the asset, liability and income or expense. Inventory sold becomes an expense when its carrying amount is recognized in cost of sales under IAS 2; depreciation allocates the depreciable amount of an asset over its useful life under IAS 16. Advertising may generate future benefits without meeting the criteria for a recognized intangible asset. This distinction constrains the temptation to manufacture profit through deferred expense recognition.

22.4.2 Contract-based revenue and competing claims

IFRS 15 requires an entity to identify the customer contract, determine distinct performance obligations, establish the transaction price, allocate it among obligations using relative stand-alone selling prices, and recognize revenue when or as a performance obligation is satisfied through transfer of control (IASB, 2014a). A signed contract is not automatically realized revenue; a deposit received before satisfaction may create a contract liability. Conversely, a delivery completed on credit may generate revenue and a receivable before the customer pays. Returns, discounts, rebates, variable consideration, warranties, principal-agent relationships and long-term construction or service contracts require additional analysis that cannot be replaced by a simplistic invoice-date rule.

Suppose, illustratively, a distributor receives RWF 1.2 million in advance for equipment plus twelve months of separate maintenance. The analyst must first assess whether the equipment and maintenance are distinct obligations and identify their appropriate stand-alone selling prices. If their relative prices were RWF 900,000 and 300,000, respectively, and the total fixed transaction price were RWF 1.2 million, equipment revenue would ordinarily arise when control transfers, while maintenance revenue would be recognized over the service period as the service is performed. The initial cash receipt alone would not establish that all RWF 1.2 million had been earned. Different facts about contractual rights and performance could change the accounting outcome.

22.4.3 Accrual judgments, uncertainty and earnings management

Expenses may arise from goods or services consumed, financing costs incurred, obligations created or recognized asset losses. A three-month unpaid loan interest charge is an expense and a liability even though cash has not moved. A one-year insurance payment may initially produce a prepaid asset and is expensed as coverage is consumed. Provisions for uncertain obligations require careful application of relevant recognition requirements; management cannot create arbitrary 'rainy-day' liabilities to smooth earnings. Such decisions affect both financial performance and the reported distribution of resources over time.

Healy and Wahlen (1999) classify earnings management as arising when judgment or transaction structuring is used to mislead stakeholders or influence contracts dependent on reported numbers. Burgstahler and Dichev (1997) documented unusual concentrations of earnings just above salient thresholds in their study setting, while Roychowdhury (2006) identified incentives to manipulate real activities, including discounts, production and

discretionary expenditure. These studies show pathways of concern, not that every accrual choice is fraudulent. An ethical accounting response is to document a defensible policy, maintain consistency, disclose material estimation judgments and enable review independent of the incentives of the person making the estimate.

22.4.4 Recognition judgment: an explicit, evidence-led decision protocol

A reliable reporting decision starts by defining the relevant unit of account, reporting period and economic substance of a transaction. The preparer should identify enforceable terms, assess which element definitions are met, identify the governing standard, determine recognition timing, select the mandated measurement basis and document material uncertainty. Classification and disclosure follow from that reasoning rather than from the convenience of an invoice date. Subsequent collections, returns and events may provide corroborating or contradictory evidence, but the fact that a customer eventually paid does not retrospectively make every earlier revenue judgment correct. The same decision protocol applies to a supplier rebate, variable consideration, an uncertain warranty and an asset held under a lease, although their specific standards differ.

An illustrative year-end cutoff test makes the logic concrete. If a customer pays a RWF 900,000 advance for goods whose control transfers only in January, the December entry ordinarily increases cash and recognizes a contract liability. It is not December sales revenue. If the seller has already incurred costs for inventory still controlled at year-end, those costs remain subject to the relevant asset recognition and measurement rules rather than being automatically matched to the cash receipt. Changing only the date of the invoice does not change that economic analysis. Managers who evaluate sales teams solely on invoiced value create a foreseeable conflict between operational incentives and faithful reporting (IASB, 2014a; Healy & Wahlen, 1999).

22.5 MEASURING AND REPORTING ASSETS

22.5.1 Cash, receivables and credit quality

Cash is comparatively straightforward to observe but still requires proof of ownership, existence, restrictions, translation and period-end cutoff. A bank account carrying customer deposits or contractually restricted collateral is not economically equivalent to unrestricted operational cash. Trade receivables are contractual claims that require reconciled customer accounts, sales cutoff tests and consideration of collectability. Under IFRS 9, applicable financial assets are subject to expected-credit-loss requirements; the measurement is forward-looking and probability-weighted rather than restricted to debts already known to have failed. Under the relevant IFRS 9 requirements (IASB, 2014b), simplified approaches may apply to trade receivables, but the relevant standard and specific facts must be established before adopting a method.

A RWF 14 million gross receivable balance with a hypothetical RWF 280,000 expected-credit-loss allowance would be presented net at RWF 13.72 million, subject to the entity's reporting framework and assumptions. The 2% estimate in this example is deliberately arbitrary for teaching; a real provision matrix would use past default information adjusted for relevant current and forward-looking conditions and customer-specific evidence. A flat percentage uncritically applied to heterogeneous accounts could understate risk. Credit-control personnel and marketing should share information about contract terms, customer disputes and post-period receipts, while accounting retains responsibility for appropriately measuring the claim.

22.5.2 Inventories and productive assets

IAS 2 measures inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value, including relevant purchase and conversion costs and using an appropriate cost formula for interchangeable units. Net realizable value is estimated selling price less estimated completion and selling costs. Falling prices, obsolescence, damage and slow movement can therefore require recognized write-downs before inventory is sold. This differs from imposing a blanket fair-value measure on all stock. Physical stock counts should be reconciled to perpetual or periodic records, and cutoff of shipments, consignment and goods in transit requires examination of ownership and control (IASB, 2003d).

Property, plant and equipment under IAS 16 is initially recognized at cost, subject to recognition criteria; qualifying directly attributable costs and subsequent expenditure require principled classification. Assets are depreciated systematically over useful lives and reviewed for impairment where required. A straight-line teaching formula is annual depreciation = (cost minus estimated residual value) ÷ useful life. It is an allocation convention rather than a forecast of the asset's sale price, and useful lives and residual values must be reviewed. The cost model and revaluation model may be permitted within IAS 16's requirements, but the choice is subject to consistent application within a class and substantive reporting implications (IASB, 2003b).

22.5.3 Intangibles, impairment and measurement uncertainty

Recognized intangible assets can include identifiable acquired software rights, patents or acquired licences meeting the applicable criteria. IAS 38 distinguishes research expenditure, generally expensed as incurred, from development expenditure that can be capitalized only when the specified stringent conditions are met. Internally generated reputation, workforce competence and many brand-related expenditures may be economically important while unrecognized as assets. As business models become more data- and knowledge-intensive, this asymmetry limits comparability between firms that grow internally and those that purchase similar capabilities. It does not justify managers inventing values for unrecognizable intangibles; rather, analysts must combine accounts with appropriately qualified nonfinancial evidence (IASB, 2004).

IAS 36 requires that assets within its scope not be carried above recoverable amount, generally the higher of value in use and fair value less costs of disposal. Cash-generating units may be necessary where individual assets do not independently generate identifiable inflows. Recoverable amounts rely on assumptions concerning future cash flows, discount rates, market conditions and strategic feasibility, creating meaningful sensitivity to governance and operational forecasts. Impairment is not solely a mathematical calculation: finance must challenge projections from commercial and operational managers rather than accepting plans that are convenient for maintaining carrying values (IASB, 2003e).

22.5.4 Leases, foreign currency and the cost of comparability

A productive asset can be used without being legally owned. IFRS 16 generally requires a lessee to recognize a right-of-use asset and lease liability for leases within its recognition model, subject to applicable exemptions and detailed requirements. The accounting response alters reported assets, liabilities, financing costs and operating metrics compared with simple rent-expense treatment. It does not mean that every service contract contains a lease: whether the agreement conveys the right to control use of an identified asset is a substantive contractual test. Nor does a higher reported debt ratio necessarily mean that a business became economically more indebted on the adoption date; part of the change may be increased visibility of an existing commitment (IASB, 2016).

For an importing enterprise, foreign-currency transactions introduce a different representation problem. IAS 21 distinguishes functional currency from presentation currency and requires applicable transactions and balances to be translated using prescribed exchange-rate rules. Monetary receivables and payables can generate exchange differences before settlement, affecting profit or loss and exposure assessment. A Rwandan trader with a US-dollar payable should not silently carry the liability at its original transaction-date RWF amount after the reporting-date exchange rate changes. Accounting treatment, hedging decisions and procurement exposure

remain analytically separate, but the recorded exposure must be capable of reconciliation to contractual currency, translation rate, and settlement record (IASB, 2003c).

22.6 LIABILITIES, EQUITY AND FINANCING

22.6.1 Recognition of obligations and risk transfer

Liabilities include trade payables, accrued expenses, loans, lease obligations, contractual advances and qualifying provisions. Their classification depends on the nature and timing of the obligation, including any relevant substantive right to defer settlement. An invoice received after period end may document inventory acquired before the reporting date and consequently a payable already arising; absence of the invoice is not necessarily evidence of absence of liability. Conversely, managers must not accrue anticipated expenditure that does not yet establish a present obligation. Completeness is often the dominant risk for liabilities, in contrast with existence and valuation risks frequently emphasized for assets.

Financing may raise cash through borrowing or through owner contributions, but the financial statements report different claims. Interest is normally an expense or subject to specialized capitalization requirements, whereas dividends are owner distributions and not finance costs. Debt contracts can contain covenants that make reporting classifications consequential for liquidity and access to future credit; users need to understand maturity, collateral, variable rates and covenant exposures. The IASB's standards, contract terms and reporting-date rights must be evaluated together. Some instruments blur the conceptual boundary between liability and equity and require analysis under standards governing financial-instrument presentation rather than assuming legal 'shares' always equal accounting equity.

22.6.2 Equity movements, stewardship and retained earnings

Equity captures a residual accounting interest, not an independently appraised enterprise value. In a simple private company, contributed capital plus accumulated profits less distributions approximates the mechanical development of equity, but other comprehensive income, reserves, revaluations and complex instruments may complicate the movement. The statement of changes in equity makes these movements visible. An enterprise can report large equity while lacking cash to discharge liabilities, and a valuable growth company can report low book equity because many internally generated resources are unrecognized. Ohlson's (1995) analytical valuation work links earnings and book values to equity valuation under explicit model assumptions, while not treating book value as a substitute for market value.

External accountability requires a careful distinction between owner wealth, company wealth and freely distributable resources. Profit does not imply that the same amount may safely be paid out. Directors must evaluate relevant company law, solvency, creditor protection and contractual commitments. Chapter 24 will assess capital structure and distribution decisions in greater financial depth; here the essential role of reporting is to reveal, not silently legitimize, those decisions. Financial statement presentation should also make material related-party transactions and unusual transfers sufficiently visible under the applicable disclosure requirements.

22.6.3 Provisions, contingencies, tax timing and the limits of debt labels

IAS 37 distinguishes recognized provisions from contingent liabilities and contingent assets. A provision concerns a present legal or constructive obligation of uncertain timing or amount and is recognized when the standard's recognition conditions are met. A forecast future operating loss cannot be converted into a provision merely because a budget predicts difficulty; conversely, an onerous contract or an existing restoration duty can create a real obligation even when an invoice has not yet arrived. Disclosure, estimation uncertainty and discounting may be necessary. The central inferential error is symmetrical: suppressing difficult-to-measure liabilities overstates net resources, while inventing excessive reserves can defer or manipulate earnings (IASB, 1998).

Income tax adds another distinction between accounting performance and statutory assessment. IAS 12 concerns current and deferred income taxes, including temporary differences between tax bases and financial-statement carrying amounts. A company may therefore report an accounting expense or asset that does not align with current tax cash payable. This chapter's numerical case stipulates a tax expense solely for instruction; it does not compute Rwanda's taxable profits, tax adjustments, deductible allowances or deferred taxes. A real preparer must use enacted or substantively enacted law and the relevant financial-reporting standard, then reconcile the financial-statement provision to a tax computation prepared under the rules governing the reporting period (IASB, 1996).

Financial instruments also require more careful classification than 'loan versus capital'. A contractual obligation to deliver cash may create a financial liability even where the instrument is colloquially described as preference equity; arrangements involving variable conversion, compound terms or embedded features demand standard-specific analysis. Conversely, financial-reporting presentation cannot itself determine legal ownership or contractual enforceability. Credible disclosures explain maturities, collateral, covenants, liquidity risk and related parties without confusing balance-sheet classification with legal or commercial advice.

22.7 STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION

22.7.1 Structure, classification and interpretive purpose

The statement of financial position reports recognized assets, liabilities and equity at a specified date. It is a stock statement: it depicts recognized financial position at the reporting date, whereas revenue and expenses describe flows over a period. Its classification of current and non-current items helps users appraise liquidity and maturity exposures, subject to the applicable standard's requirements and the nature of the business. The operating cycle can matter when classifying trade balances, and the treatment of borrowing depends on contractual rights existing at the reporting date, not merely on directors' expectations of refinancing. A significant loan classified as long-term because management hopes to refinance it may materially distort apparent short-term solvency.

Presentation choices should illuminate the entity's operating model. A bank's financial statement may be dominated by financial assets and liabilities; a manufacturer may carry substantial inventories and productive plant; a software service provider may depend heavily on capabilities not recognized in the statement. Mechanical vertical comparison without functional context therefore mistakes accounting classification for economic similarity. A profitable importer can have a large current asset balance that consists of slow inventory or foreign-currency receivables; a smaller cash figure accompanied by reliable short receivable cycles may indicate stronger real liquidity. The notes should explain material accounting policies, judgments, measurement uncertainties and appropriately disaggregated balances.

22.7.2 Consistency tests and off-statement exposures

The first test is formal equality, but more revealing tests compare the balance sheet with evidence outside it: receivables aging and post-period collections; inventory condition and turnover; debt terms and covenants; asset use and impairment triggers; and substantial commitments not recognized as liabilities. Accounting standards require some obligations and contingencies to be disclosed rather than recognized under specified conditions. A reviewer must assess the disclosed exposures alongside recognized balances and avoid treating absence from the face of the statement as proof of absence of economic risk.

In an enterprise with thin bookkeeping capacity, the statement may be assembled from cash books, stock records and supplier documents. A statement created only for bank submission, without contemporaneous source recording, may possess less reliable completeness and cutoff evidence than a continuously reconciled ledger. Consequently, small-enterprise financial-reporting improvement should prioritize evidence capture and

reconciliations before imposing the presentation complexity of a listed multinational. This is a proportionality argument, not a claim that smaller enterprises deserve weaker honesty or disclosure of material risks.

22.7.3 Going concern, subsequent events and comparative responsibility

Statement preparation ordinarily involves management assessing whether the going-concern basis remains appropriate. This is a substantive evaluation of foreseeable financing, liquidity, contractual, operational and institutional circumstances rather than a formula derived from a positive current ratio. A company may have substantial book equity but be unable to meet an imminent loan maturity; a temporary loss may not threaten continued operations where financing is demonstrably available. Management must distinguish realistic support from hoped-for refinancing and disclose material uncertainties when the applicable requirements call for them. These judgments connect reporting to enterprise risk without replacing the comprehensive risk architecture developed in Chapter 32.

IAS 10 also differentiates adjusting events occurring after the reporting period, which provide evidence of conditions already existing at period end, from material non-adjusting events reflecting conditions arising later. If a debtor's January insolvency confirms severe financial difficulty already present in December, the receivable allowance may require adjustment; if a new January fire destroys stock that was intact at year-end, the event will ordinarily call for assessment of disclosure rather than a December write-down, subject to the facts and going-concern implications. The distinction is not whether an event is important, but which reporting-date condition the event evidences. The authorization date and relevant subsequent-event window must be documented (IASB, 2003a).

22.8 PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER PERFORMANCE REPORTING

22.8.1 From gross revenue to attributable profit

A statement of profit or loss links recognized revenue to expenses attributable to a reporting period and distinguishes intermediate performance measures where required. In a trading enterprise, net sales less cost of goods sold generates gross profit, which is not the same as free cash flow or distributable wealth. Expenses for salaries, premises, utilities, depreciation, impairment and other operating functions may then produce an operating result, while financing costs and income taxes affect profit after operating activity. Figures should be defined and comparable across periods. A management-adjusted measure that removes 'exceptional' expenditure can be decision-relevant, but only if the adjustment is transparently reconciled and users can challenge recurring exclusions.

Economic concepts need careful separation. Accounting profit reflects recognized period income and expenses under a reporting framework; economic profit additionally considers opportunity costs and alternative uses of invested resources. A high accounting margin does not by itself demonstrate a sustainable competitive advantage, positive net present value or social value. Equally, a period accounting loss may accompany valuable investment in internally generated capabilities that standards require to be expensed. Disaggregated statements and notes can help explain these patterns, but the reader must avoid replacing evidence with management's preferred narrative.

22.8.2 Other comprehensive income and equity movements

Some standards direct particular gains or losses to other comprehensive income rather than current profit or loss. The resulting total comprehensive income is not interchangeable with ordinary sales-derived operating earnings, and items may have different subsequent reclassification requirements. A full statement package may present profit or loss and other comprehensive income in a single or a two-statement approach, according to applicable presentation rules. In the simplified teaching case below there is no other comprehensive income, so profit equals total comprehensive income. Real entities must investigate revaluation movements, translation differences, specified financial instruments and other relevant categories rather than assume this simplification is universal.

The financial statement reader should reconcile profit, other comprehensive income, owner contributions and distributions to the change in equity. This movement is more revealing than comparing two isolated year-end equity amounts. For example, a large increase in equity might reflect new share issuance rather than operating success; a decline might reflect a dividend rather than an operating loss. Analysts who do not inspect this reconciliation risk attributing the effects of financing policy to business performance.

22.8.3 IFRS 18 and comparability in transition

IFRS 18, issued in 2024 and effective for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2027, with earlier application permitted, replaces IAS 1 and introduces defined subtotals including operating profit and profit before financing and income taxes. It also establishes requirements relating to management-defined performance measures and aggregation and disaggregation. The transition matters for users comparing 2026 presentations with later reports: changes in subtotal definitions can affect apparent trends even when underlying economics are unchanged. The reporting analysis must identify whether IFRS 18 has actually been applied in the relevant entity and year (IASB, 2024a).

This reform illustrates a deeper reporting dilemma. Standardizing presentation may make information easier to compare, but economic heterogeneity means a standard line item can still perform different analytical functions across industries. A rational user reviews both the defined subtotals and the entity's disclosures; a responsible preparer does not portray a new format as an organic increase in performance. Neither revised presentation nor more elaborate managerial performance metrics automatically remedies manipulated recognition or incomplete transaction evidence.

22.8.4 Accounting earnings, performance narratives and distributional judgment

Reported profit is both an information-bearing aggregate and an institutionally consequential number. It can influence credit limits, executive remuneration, dividend expectations, tender eligibility, market valuation and public interpretations of managerial competence. That influence creates incentives to change the number through discretionary estimates or through actual operational conduct, such as unusually steep discounts near period end or postponement of necessary maintenance. The latter can improve short-run reported earnings without improving long-run productivity or safety. In the empirical literature, earnings management is therefore analyzed through accrual decisions and through real activities, neither of which is identified conclusively by a single ratio (Healy & Wahlen, 1999; Roychowdhury, 2006).

For serious comparison, analysts should reconstruct the numerator and the economic process behind it. Operating profit excludes some financing outcomes but may still be sensitive to revenue cutoffs and capitalization policies. Net profit includes interest and tax but not owner opportunity costs. Comprehensive income captures specified additional recognized changes in equity but does not convert every value-creating activity into an accounting gain. A financial statement is strongest when its subtotals, supplementary measures and material assumptions can be reconciled and challenged, and weakest when a favorable label is presented without a reproducible calculation.

22.9 CASH FLOW REPORTING

22.9.1 Financial performance and payment capacity

The statement of cash flows reports changes in cash and cash equivalents during a period and classifies them into operating, investing and financing activities under IAS 7. Operating cash flows normally arise from principal revenue-generating activities; investing flows concern acquisitions and disposals of long-term assets and other investments not classified as cash equivalents; financing flows relate to changes in contributed equity and borrowing. The statement addresses liquidity over time, but does not reveal every future cash requirement or the quality of all underlying assets. A company may display positive cash flow because it postponed paying suppliers, liquidated productive assets or raised expensive debt (IASB, 2001).

The direct method reports significant classes of operating cash receipts and payments. The indirect method adjusts profit for noncash items, accruals and working-capital movements and for items whose cash effects belong to investing or financing. Both reconcile to the same net operating cash flow when prepared consistently. Interest and dividend classification must follow the applicable accounting framework and reporting period, including relevant IFRS 18 consequential changes where effective; analysts should not assume that every internationally published cash-flow statement uses identical elective classifications.

22.9.2 Cash conversion and working-capital interpretation

The cash-conversion process connects credit policy, inventory availability, suppliers and payroll commitments. Revenue recognized on credit raises receivables but not cash. Buying inventory on credit raises both inventory and payables; paying the supplier later reduces cash without creating a new expense if inventory remains unsold. Depreciation reduces profit but not period cash when recorded. These differences are not defects in accrual accounting; they are the very relationships the cash-flow statement helps disclose. Problems arise when managers treat a recognized sale as a collectible receipt or use supplier delays to mask unsustainable operating economics.

Analysts should distinguish the existence of operating cash inflow from its persistence and quality. A one-off collection of aged receivables might make a weak operating year appear cash-generative. Conversely, investment in growing receivables and stock can produce temporarily negative operating cash flows in a profitable expansion. Whether that expansion is viable depends on credit terms, collection evidence, inventory aging, financing capacity and counterfactual demand. The relationship between accounting earnings and cash-flow components is a longstanding focus of capital-markets and earnings-quality research (Dechow, 1994; Sloan, 1996; Dechow et al., 2010).

22.9.3 Noncash transactions and cash-flow disclosure integrity

An asset acquired through a finance lease or certain noncash share exchanges may materially alter financing and resources without producing a contemporaneous cash movement. IAS 7 excludes noncash investing and financing transactions from the statement's cash totals while requiring appropriate separate disclosure. Foreign-exchange changes can affect reported cash balances without being classified as ordinary operating receipts. A coherent statement therefore reconciles opening cash and equivalents, net cash flows and the effects of exchange-rate changes where relevant to closing amounts in the financial position statement.

A cash-flow statement assembled as a residual 'plug' is especially vulnerable to error. It should instead be built from cash transaction records, reconciled noncash balances, debt and equity movement schedules and a documented classification policy. For small firms using multiple mobile-money, bank and cash channels, daily payment reconciliation and identification of transfers between own accounts are indispensable: a transfer between an enterprise's bank and its mobile wallet is not sales revenue, expense, or a net cash inflow to the reporting entity.

22.9.4 Cash-flow diagnostics, financing dependence and liquidity stress

An enterprise's operating cash deficit can be decomposed into earnings quality, growth in working capital and the timing of ordinary settlement. A useful analytic bridge starts from profit after tax, removes recognized noncash expenses, adjusts for working-capital changes and accounts for cash movements in financing and investing categories. These changes must be computed from a consistent opening and closing balance sheet and a validated transaction ledger. The direct and indirect methods constitute two views of the same cash result; disagreement between them is evidence of a modeling, classification or completeness error rather than an acceptable accounting choice.

Cash risk should then be assessed prospectively rather than inferred from the cash-flow statement alone. A twelve-week cash forecast may evaluate expected collections, supplier dates, wages, tax installments, loan covenants and plausible delays under stated scenarios. Such a forecast is a management tool rather than a historical financial statement, yet it exposes a powerful interface between accounting and treasury. If a wholesaler reports a negative operating cash flow while holding high cash obtained through a newly issued loan, a superficially favorable current ratio may mask dependence on external financing. Analysts should distinguish the origin, restrictions and expected recurrence of cash inflows before asserting resilience.

22.10 REPORTING STANDARDS AND COMPARABILITY

22.10.1 IFRS, entity accountability and proportionate regimes

IFRS Accounting Standards are issued by the IASB and specify recognition, measurement, presentation and disclosure for entities using that framework. They do not turn financial reporting into a purely uniform global system. Local law determines which entities are required or permitted to apply particular standards and how financial reports are submitted, while sector regulators may impose additional instructions. The IFRS for SMEs Accounting Standard offers a self-contained and more proportionate alternative for eligible entities without public accountability, including simplified recognition and measurement, reduced disclosures and omitted less-relevant topics. Its 2025 third edition is effective for annual reporting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2027, with earlier application permitted (IFRS Foundation, 2025).

The distinction between 'small by headcount' and 'without public accountability' is crucial. A small business that holds assets in a fiduciary capacity for a broad group as a primary business may be publicly accountable regardless of staff count. By contrast, a family-owned trading company with no public accountability may apply a different reporting regime than a listed issuer even if it supplies some of the same customers. The same economic question, such as whether an invoice represents a settled sale, persists across frameworks, but the prescribed detailed treatments, disclosure burdens and permitted options may differ. A textbook's pedagogical journal entry is not automatically sufficient to establish compliance with a particular standard.

22.10.2 Rwanda: adoption, company law and institutional architecture

The International Federation of Accountants' Rwanda country profile identifies the Institute of Certified Public Accountants of Rwanda (ICPAR) as the statutory professional body under Law No. 11/2008, with authority to establish private-sector standards consistent with IFRS. That profile records the application of IFRS Accounting Standards to publicly accountable entities and IFRS for SMEs to other companies; IFRS Foundation's older jurisdictional profile, last updated in 2017, broadly corroborates this direction but is not a current legal opinion. Rwanda's Law No. 007/2021 of 5 February 2021 governing companies must be considered when determining applicable company obligations, and any specific filing or audit requirement should be checked against the current legal text and competent registry guidance rather than inherited from superseded legislation (IFAC, n.d.; Republic of Rwanda, 2021a; IFRS Foundation, n.d.).

Rwanda Development Board's Office of the Registrar General publicly distinguishes annual-return document requirements by company categories and turnover, listing income statements and financial-position statements

for domestic companies below a stated turnover threshold and additional statements and reports for others. These are registry filing instructions, not a substitute for accounting standards or a universal conclusion about the preparation, audit or publication obligations of every entity. A defensible enterprise compliance register should record legal form, period, accounting framework, reporting approver, relevant turnover category, filing due date, audit status and documentary evidence of submission (Rwanda Development Board, n.d.).

The National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda's Integrated Business Enterprise Survey for 2024 reports 278,060 enterprises and a high degree of business informality; the official survey page describes the formal-sector definition partly through regular business accounts and tax registration. Such statistics document the importance of proportionate recordkeeping infrastructure and the risk of excluding informal businesses from corporate-reporting assumptions. They do not prove that all informal operators are incapable of keeping accounts, that all formal statements are audited, or that particular IFRS reforms caused enterprise performance (National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda [NISR], 2026e).

22.10.3 Emerging IFRS standards and dated applicability

The standards landscape is moving. IFRS 19, issued in 2024, allows eligible subsidiaries without public accountability to use reduced disclosures while applying other IFRS Accounting Standards; it becomes effective from 1 January 2027, with early application permitted. IFRS 20, issued on 27 May 2026, addresses regulatory assets and liabilities for relevant rate-regulated businesses and becomes effective from 1 January 2029, with earlier application permitted. These are materially different instruments: IFRS 19 concerns disclosure relief; IFRS 20 concerns particular regulatory timing differences. Their existence must not be used to imply that an ordinary Rwandan trading SME should apply both (IASB, 2024b, 2026).

Rwanda's 2025 IFRS Sustainability Disclosure Standards Adoption Roadmap sets out a phased approach for categories of entities, including listed and financial institutions and a later simplified pathway for qualifying SMEs. Its staged implementation needs to be read against entity groups, transitional reliefs and the relevant regulators, not summarized as an instantaneous blanket national mandate. The IFRS S1 and S2 sustainability disclosure standards address sustainability-related financial risks and opportunities, which complement but do not replace the financial statements. Neither a company's sustainability narrative nor its accounting profit alone establishes its environmental or societal contribution (ICPAR, 2025; IFRS Foundation, 2023a).

22.10.4 Why common standards do not guarantee equal reporting quality

Evidence on international accounting adoption is informative but methodologically contested. Barth et al. (2008) found associations between use of international accounting standards and selected accounting-quality measures in a cross-country study, while acknowledging possible confounding from incentives and institutional differences. Daske et al. (2008) analyzed the consequences of mandatory IFRS reporting and highlighted the role of reporting incentives and enforcement regimes. Leuz et al. (2003) linked cross-country patterns in earnings management with investor-protection arrangements. These designs caution against a simple causal narrative that formal adoption alone produces credible reporting. Legal enforcement, governance, professional education, institutional trust and access to affordable systems remain central mediating conditions.

International comparison must therefore begin with questions rather than templates: who prepares the accounts; who can challenge estimates; how are source records verified; who bears compliance costs; and what remedies follow error? A multinational with sophisticated valuation teams may still manipulate earnings, while an SME with simple transactions and disciplined records may prepare dependable statements within its applicable framework. Conversely, a small entity is not exempt from accountability merely because complex IFRS systems would be disproportionate. The appropriate aim is fit-for-purpose comparability that remains substantively truthful.

22.10.5 Reporting choices across boundaries: standards, assurance and digital taxonomy

Comparability requires a decision about both the applicable framework and the applicable version of that framework. For a reporting period beginning in 2026, an entity that has not early adopted IFRS 18 should not retrospectively describe its statements as though IFRS 18's 2027 requirements were already mandatory. Likewise, the February 2025 third edition of the IFRS for SMEs Accounting Standard does not automatically displace the 2015 edition before its effective date for entities that have not early adopted. IFRS 19 is a reduced-disclosure route for qualifying subsidiaries applying full IFRS recognition and measurement, not the same instrument as the IFRS for SMEs Standard. The reported date, jurisdictional authorization and elected early application are therefore part of every defensible 'IFRS-compliant' claim (IFRS Foundation, 2025; IASB, 2024a, 2024b).

Financial-statement preparation, statutory filing and external assurance must also be treated as distinct obligations. A registrar's filing checklist does not independently certify compliance with a reporting standard, and an audit opinion does not transfer the preparer's responsibility to the auditor. For related-party disclosures, IAS 24 requires qualifying relationships and transactions, balances and commitments to be considered because ownership and personal relationships may change how transactions occur. For digitally tagged reporting, the IFRS Foundation confirmed in 2026 that its 2025 Accounting Taxonomy remains the current taxonomy for 2026 reporting periods, subject to local filing rules. Machine readability improves accessibility and cross-firm comparison only if tagging corresponds to correctly recognized, disclosed and reviewed amounts (IASB, 2009; IFRS Foundation, 2026).

The institutional test for Rwanda is thus precise. Identify the entity's legal form and whether it has public accountability, the applicable accounting-standard regime, the reporting dates, any sector-specific instructions, the company's disclosure and assurance obligations, and the documents required by the registrar. IFAC's country profile, updated in February 2026, remains useful for the profession and general adoption architecture but still refers in parts to a 2018 Companies Act; current legislative assessment must reconcile that description with Law No. 007/2021 and any later applicable instruments. A claim of regulatory conformity made without this version check is methodologically weaker than a qualified statement identifying which authorities were verified (IFAC, n.d.; Republic of Rwanda, 2021a).

22.11 FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS

22.11.1 Ratios as conditional evidence

Financial ratios compress relationships among accounting measures; they do not explain causes without context. Liquidity ratios estimate the relationship between current resources and short-term claims. Solvency ratios assess longer-term financing exposure. Profitability ratios indicate the relationship between recognized earnings, sales, assets or equity. Turnover measures indicate efficiency of resource conversion over a defined period. Ratios acquire meaning through consistent definitions, an appropriate comparison period, realistic industry or business-model benchmarks and scrutiny of accounting policies. A single high ratio is not universally desirable.

Table 22.2. Core ratio dictionary

Indicator	Definition	Interpretation and main limitation
Current ratio	Current assets ÷ current liabilities	Short-term coverage; insensitive to stock quality and maturity timing
Quick ratio	(cash + short-term receivables and eligible liquid financial assets) ÷ current liabilities	Immediate resource proxy; receivables may be uncollectible
Debt-to-equity ratio	Total interest-bearing debt ÷ equity; or total liabilities ÷ equity, explicitly specified	Financing leverage; incompatible definitions must not be compared
Gross margin	(revenue − cost of sales) ÷ revenue	Product/conversion spread; sensitive to cost classification
Net profit margin	Profit after tax ÷ revenue	Period profitability; omits invested capital and cash conversion
Return on assets	Profit ÷ average total assets, with numerator convention stated	Capital productivity; sensitive to asset measurement and year length
Receivables days	Average gross trade receivables ÷ credit revenue × days	Collection cycle proxy; requires matched denominators
Operating cash conversion	Operating cash flow ÷ profit after tax	Cash realization signal; unstable near zero profit

Table note. Original instructional synthesis. A correct ratio always states numerator, denominator, period, accounting policy and unit; zero or negative denominators may make ratios uninterpretable rather than merely 'unfavorable'.

22.11.2 Comparative, common-size and trend analysis

Horizontal analysis measures changes through time; vertical or common-size analysis expresses statement items relative to revenue or total assets; ratio analysis compares meaningful stocks and flows. All three can be misleading if different financial year lengths, inflation, acquisitions, exchange rates, changes in accounting methods or business mix are ignored. An apparent 20% revenue increase can be mostly price inflation, a change of reporting perimeter or one large uncertain credit sale. An analyst should reconstruct real drivers where evidence permits rather than infer operating growth from the reported percentage alone.

Turnover measures commonly require averages of opening and closing stocks to align a flow numerator with a period. When an entity has commenced operations during the period, opening balances of zero can make conventional return-on-average-assets or receivable-days figures unstable and economically difficult to interpret. In the constructed case below, ratios based only on period-end figures are explicitly labeled as provisional, and receivable-days estimates are based on the correct credit-sales denominator. Precise arithmetic does not cure a poor denominator or an inappropriate benchmark.

22.11.3 Earnings quality, red flags and competing explanations

A divergence between profit and cash might reveal successful credit expansion, poor collections, revenue manipulation or seasonal working capital. A rising margin could result from greater efficiency, deferred maintenance, underrecorded expenses, changed cost allocation or genuinely improved market power. Dechow et al. (2010) review diverse earnings-quality proxies and show that their meanings depend on the decision context; Leuz et al. (2003) show why institutional incentives also matter. The appropriate response is triangulation: examine receivable aging, inventory turnover, accrual adjustments, related-party transactions, segment results, loan terms, auditor or governance disclosures and post-period cash realization rather than accuse the entity on the basis of one ratio.

The analyst's confidence should be calibrated to the evidence. A solvency claim based on unaudited internal balances is different from a claim based on externally assured statements, though an audit itself provides reasonable rather than absolute assurance and scope depends on applicable standards. As Kothari (2001) argues in his review of capital-markets accounting research, accounting quantities interact with contractual use and valuation models rather than determining enterprise worth independently. Financial ratios must also be interpreted alongside the enterprise's nonfinancial operational obligations. A favorable cash ratio achieved by withholding legally due wages or unsafe maintenance is not evidence of responsible enterprise performance; it reveals a potential transfer of costs and risks to others.

22.11.4 Analytical triangulation and sensitivity: when ratios disagree

One ratio can improve while another deteriorates without contradiction. Suppose a firm obtains a new medium-term loan and retains the proceeds in cash. Current assets and the current ratio may rise immediately, while interest-bearing leverage also rises and future debt service becomes more demanding. Conversely, selling stock below its carrying value may accelerate cash conversion while destroying gross margin. A financial analyst should therefore build an explanatory bridge between transaction causes, financial-statement entries and ratio movements rather than infer operational improvement from one favorable direction. This bridge is especially important in the first year of operations, when large owner contributions and zero opening balances make average-balance metrics unstable.

A sensitivity test should make the accounting judgment observable. For the illustrative case later in the chapter, a further RWF 700,000 expected-credit-loss expense would reduce profit and net receivables by that amount, lower equity, and leave current cash unchanged; it would not, by itself, create a new period cash outflow. Additional collection of RWF 5 million before period end would raise cash and reduce gross receivables by the same amount, leaving profit unchanged, absent separate impairment estimate changes. If one analysis changes reported revenue merely because a debtor paid, the model has confused settlement with performance. Such controlled counterfactuals make ratios more educationally valuable than threshold-based scorecards that treat numbers as self-explanatory.

22.12 DIGITAL ACCOUNTING AND REPORTING ETHICS

22.12.1 Digital records, data models and automated postings

Digital accounting connects sales platforms, invoices, bank feeds, mobile-money payments, purchase orders, warehouse records, payroll and the general ledger. Its chief promise is not merely faster entry but improved traceability, timeliness and control over large volumes of transactions. An enterprise resource planning system can connect goods receipts with payable entries, stock movements with cost-of-sales recognition and customer settlement with receivable balances. Yet automation transmits poor master data and erroneous mappings at scale. A duplicated customer identifier, wrong tax code, misclassified payment or unauthorized change to a mapping rule can distort entire statement categories before anyone notices.

Digitization requires a clearly defined chart of accounts, a transaction identifier preserved across systems, immutable or suitably protected logs, access control based on roles, periodic bank and source reconciliation, backup and recovery, and an exception-management procedure. Small enterprises can implement proportionate versions with low-cost systems, but outsourcing bookkeeping software does not outsource responsibility for financial representation. Human supervisors remain responsible for verifying whether system outputs correspond to contracts, physical inventory and actual obligations.

22.12.2 AI-assisted reporting and the automation paradox

Machine learning and generative systems may assist document extraction, anomaly detection, reconciliation suggestions, classification and narrative drafting. Such applications can reduce routine effort, but they do not reliably establish control transfer, collectability, impairment or lawful presentation without appropriate source evidence and review. A language model can generate a convincing note that cites nonexistent accounting policy; a classification model can reproduce historical human bias and silently fail on unfamiliar transactions. Systems should therefore separate proposed entries from approved entries, retain prompts or model decisions where lawful and relevant, document validation evidence, require human approval for material estimates, and test performance on exceptional transactions rather than only ordinary examples.

An effective governance design explicitly addresses data confidentiality, vendor dependence, unauthorized disclosure, cybersecurity incidents, model updates and error correction. Access to payroll and customer transactions is especially sensitive. Red flags include unusually high manual journals near period end, backdated adjustments, increases in receivables inconsistent with dispatch, repeated overrides and altered audit trails. These indicators warrant investigation, not an automatic presumption of fraud. Technical automation can strengthen professional accountability only where it remains contestable and explainable to authorized reviewers.

22.12.3 Professional integrity, fair presentation and the public interest

Financial reporting involves conflicts over timing and distribution. Managers may benefit from appearing to meet loan covenants or profit targets; creditors need protection; employees may depend on honest forecasts of payment capacity; investors expect intelligible risk disclosures. Fraud can arise through invented sales, concealed obligations, override of depreciation estimates, diverted cash or collusive supplier transactions. More subtle failures include selectively emphasizing non-GAAP performance measures or suppressing material uncertainty. The ethical standard is neither maximal pessimism nor unquestioning obedience to management; it is evidence-based fidelity to economic substance, compliance with applicable requirements, full disclosure of material limitations and willingness to correct errors.

Corporate reporting should ultimately restore answerability across the enterprise's functions. Procurement verifies the terms giving rise to obligations; marketing and sales document when customer control transfers; operations validates stock and useful lives; human resources confirms payroll liabilities; IT protects transaction logs; governance challenges material estimates. Financial accounting cannot create these facts, but it can organize their evidential consequences and expose unexplained discrepancies. Where leaders punish the person reporting an inconsistency, the accounting system's formal sophistication offers little protection. The most consequential reporting control is an institutional commitment to records that can withstand informed challenge.

22.12.4 Professional skepticism, uncertainty disclosure and an auditable AI control

A digital reporting control should specify its assertion, supporting evidence, error mechanism, person responsible and correction procedure. For example, a receivable-aging application must preserve invoice dates, payment allocations, customer identities and documented dispute status. It should generate an exception when a receipt is posted without a matching invoice or when a manual credit note bypasses normal authorization. Automated model scores may help prioritize review, but an anomaly score is not proof of misstatement and cannot substitute for external confirmation or a reasoned estimate. Model updates, data access and the retention of electronic working papers must be governed with the same seriousness as journal approvals.

The current professional environment also distinguishes preparer and auditor responsibilities. Revised ISA 240 was issued in 2025 to strengthen the auditor's consideration of fraud risk, but it does not transform an audit into a guarantee that all fraud will be detected. Managers and those charged with governance remain responsible for appropriate records, preparation and control. A small business may achieve proportionate scrutiny through independent bank reconciliation, review of unusual journals and documented estimate challenges, whereas a

publicly accountable group will generally require more differentiated assurance arrangements. Regardless of entity size, the decisive ethical safeguard is a credible route for an employee or reviewer to challenge a material misstatement without retaliation (International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board [IAASB], 2025b).

22.13 REPRODUCIBLE RWANDAN TEACHING CASE: FROM JOURNAL TO STATEMENTS

22.13.1 Case boundary, currency, period and assumptions

Kigali Household Supplies Ltd is an entirely fictional wholesaler formed on 1 October 2026 and reporting for the three months ended 31 December 2026. Throughout the case, numerical amounts in prose, calculations and tables are in thousands of Rwandan francs (RWF '000) unless explicitly stated in millions; for example, 60,000 means RWF 60 million, not RWF 60,000. The case deliberately omits value-added tax, employee payroll deductions, foreign-currency effects, leases, owner dividends and other complexities so that core accrual mechanics can be inspected. This exclusion is solely pedagogical and is not a statement that any of those obligations would be irrelevant in a real Rwandan enterprise. The entity is assumed to apply accrual concepts consistent with simplified instructional treatment, not to have prepared a fully compliant set of IFRS or IFRS for SMEs financial statements.

The owner contributes 60,000, and a bank advances 25,000 at a stipulated 12% annual simple interest for this teaching example; contractual principal repayment occurs after two years, and no principal or interest is paid during the quarter. Equipment costing 28,000 is available for use at commencement and has a four-year useful life and zero residual value, giving three months' straight-line depreciation of 1,750. Merchandise bought for 30,000 is sold partly on credit and partly for cash, with recorded cost of goods sold of 24,000. Customers pay 22,000 of the credit sales by the reporting date. No inventory write-down is assumed, and the remaining 6,000 stock is assumed supportable at cost.

The company pays insurance of 2,400 for twelve months beginning 1 October; the three-month charge is therefore 600 and the closing prepaid asset 1,800. Utilities consumed but not yet invoiced at period end are 800 in addition to 1,200 already paid. A hypothetical expected-credit-loss allowance of 280 is applied to 14,000 gross receivables solely to demonstrate presentation. Finally, a stipulated income-tax expense of 1,520 is accrued and unpaid for the illustrative period. This sum is an assumed classroom input, not an assertion of Rwanda's tax rate, taxable-profit computation, exemptions or actual tax liability. These assumptions are fixed throughout the journal, statements, cash-flow reconciliation and ratio workbook.

22.13.2 Transaction journals and adjustments

The complete source-to-entry schedule is presented in Table 22.3. Each journal is individually balanced; receipt of cash from a customer reduces an earlier receivable rather than creating another sale. Separate cost-of-sales entries illustrate the need to measure both customer performance and depletion of inventory. Positive amounts in the journal table indicate the magnitude of the entry, not debit or credit sign conventions. The entries are illustrative general-ledger accounting and should not be treated as tax invoices or audited source documents.

Table 22.3. Journal-to-ledger register, RWF '000

Transaction	Debit account and amount	Credit account and amount
J01 Owner contribution	Cash 60,000	Contributed capital 60,000
J02 Bank borrowing	Cash 25,000	Long-term bank borrowing 25,000
J03 Equipment acquired for cash	Property, plant and equipment 28,000	Cash 28,000
J04 Inventory acquired on supplier credit	Inventory 24,000	Trade payables 24,000
J05 Inventory acquired for cash	Inventory 6,000	Cash 6,000
J06 Credit sales with control transferred	Trade receivables 36,000	Sales revenue 36,000
J07 Related cost of credit sales	Cost of sales 18,000	Inventory 18,000
J08 Cash sales	Cash 12,000	Sales revenue 12,000
J09 Related cost of cash sales	Cost of sales 6,000	Inventory 6,000
J10 Collections from credit customers	Cash 22,000	Trade receivables 22,000
J11 Payments to suppliers	Trade payables 20,000	Cash 20,000
J12 Salaries paid	Salaries expense 8,000	Cash 8,000
J13 Rent paid	Rent expense 4,000	Cash 4,000
J14 Utilities paid	Utilities expense 1,200	Cash 1,200
J15 Insurance paid for twelve months	Prepaid insurance 2,400	Cash 2,400
A01 Insurance used in the quarter	Insurance expense 600	Prepaid insurance 600
A02 Quarterly depreciation	Depreciation expense 1,750	Accumulated depreciation 1,750
A03 Unbilled utilities consumed	Utilities expense 800	Utilities payable 800
A04 Unpaid quarterly interest	Interest expense 750	Interest payable 750
A05 Expected credit loss estimate	Credit-loss expense 280	Receivables loss allowance 280
A06 Assumed income tax for teaching	Income-tax expense 1,520	Income-tax payable 1,520

Table note. Original hypothetical construction. The first fifteen entries total an unadjusted trial balance of 137,000 on both sides; the adjusted trial balance totals 142,100 on each side. Reperform using the downloadable workbook. Tax, credit-loss and asset assumptions are teaching inputs rather than entity-specific professional determinations.

22.13.3 Ledger controls and adjusted trial balance

A balance check can be reproduced independently from each account's postings. Cash increases by 60,000 + 25,000 + 12,000 + 22,000, and decreases by 28,000 + 6,000 + 20,000 + 8,000 + 4,000 + 1,200 + 2,400; the closing cash figure is 49,400. Gross trade receivables equal 36,000 minus 22,000, or 14,000, before the 280 loss allowance. Inventory equals purchases of 30,000 minus the 24,000 cost of goods sold, leaving 6,000. Trade payables equal 24,000 minus the 20,000 supplier payment, leaving 4,000. Each movement must be supported by an underlying schedule; the trial balance alone cannot certify whether goods were delivered or amounts are collectible.

Table 22.4. Selected adjusted trial-balance balances, RWF '000

Ledger account	Debit	Credit
Cash	49,400	
Gross trade receivables	14,000	
Inventory	6,000	
Prepaid insurance	1,800	
Property, plant and equipment at cost	28,000	
Cost of sales	24,000	
Salaries, rent, utilities and insurance expenses	14,600	
Depreciation, credit-loss, interest and tax expenses	4,300	
Receivables loss allowance		280
Accumulated depreciation		1,750
Trade payables		4,000
Utilities and interest payable		1,550
Income-tax payable		1,520
Long-term bank borrowing		25,000
Contributed capital		60,000
Sales revenue		48,000
TOTAL	142,100	142,100

Table note. Original computation. 'Salaries, rent, utilities and insurance expenses' equals 8,000 + 4,000 + 2,000 + 600 = 14,600. The next line equals 1,750 + 280 + 750 + 1,520 = 4,300. Credit-loss allowance and accumulated depreciation are contra-asset credits, not ordinary creditors.

22.13.4 Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income

Table 22.5 shows the result for the period under the stipulated policies. The presentation separates operating items from finance and income tax for clarity; it is an illustrative form rather than a claim to reproduce every line-item, category and note required under IFRS 18, which is not assumed to have been applied early. The operating margin and final profit are arithmetically determined by the specified transactions, but their economic meaning would depend on whether revenue cutoff, cost accumulation and estimates are supportable. There is no other comprehensive income in the example.

Table 22.5. Illustrative profit or loss, quarter ended 31 December 2026, RWF '000

Statement item	Amount
Revenue	48,000
Cost of goods sold	(24,000)
GROSS PROFIT	24,000
Salaries	(8,000)
Rent	(4,000)
Utilities	(2,000)
Insurance expense	(600)
Depreciation	(1,750)
Expected-credit-loss expense	(280)
OPERATING PROFIT	7,370
Interest expense	(750)
PROFIT BEFORE ASSUMED INCOME TAX	6,620
Illustrative income-tax expense	(1,520)
PROFIT FOR THE PERIOD	5,100
Other comprehensive income	0
TOTAL COMPREHENSIVE INCOME	5,100

Table note. Original computations from Table 22.3. Amounts in parentheses are expenses or deductions. The hypothetical tax amount has no jurisdiction-specific tax-rate significance.

22.13.5 Statement of financial position and changes in equity

The statement of financial position gives a different view of the same activities. Current assets are 70,920 and current liabilities 7,070; equipment net of depreciation is 26,250, and the assumed loan is non-current. Total recognized assets of 97,170 equal liabilities of 32,070 plus closing equity of 65,100. This reconciliation follows from the accounting equation and the accumulated profit, not from arbitrary balancing adjustments. Equity movement is simple: opening capital is nil, owner contribution is 60,000, profit is 5,100 and there are no distributions or other comprehensive income. The explicit equity bridge in Table 22.7 demonstrates why a change in capital alone cannot be read as operating profitability.

Table 22.6. Illustrative statement of financial position, 31 December 2026, RWF '000

Statement item	Amount
CURRENT ASSETS	
Cash and cash equivalents	49,400
Trade receivables, gross	14,000
Less: credit-loss allowance	(280)
Inventories	6,000
Prepaid insurance	1,800
TOTAL CURRENT ASSETS	70,920
NON-CURRENT ASSETS	
Equipment at cost	28,000
Less: accumulated depreciation	(1,750)
TOTAL NON-CURRENT ASSETS	26,250
TOTAL ASSETS	97,170
CURRENT LIABILITIES	
Trade payables	4,000
Accrued utilities	800
Accrued interest	750
Assumed income tax payable	1,520
TOTAL CURRENT LIABILITIES	7,070
NON-CURRENT LIABILITY: bank borrowing	25,000
TOTAL LIABILITIES	32,070
EQUITY: contributed capital	60,000
EQUITY: retained profit	5,100
TOTAL EQUITY	65,100
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY	97,170

Table note. Original construction. Bank principal is classified as non-current solely under the assumed repayment term and without covenant breaches; this must be re-evaluated in real reporting. All displayed amounts are RWF thousands.

Table 22.7. Statement of changes in equity, quarter ended 31 December 2026, RWF '000

Movement	Contributed capital	Retained earnings	Total equity
Opening balance, 1 October	0	0	0
Owner contribution	60,000	0	60,000
Profit for the quarter	0	5,100	5,100
Other comprehensive income	0	0	0
Distributions to owners	0	0	0
CLOSING BALANCE, 31 DECEMBER	60,000	5,100	65,100

Table note. Original teaching reconstruction from journal entries and Table 22.5. No other comprehensive income or owner distribution is assumed. The total equity figure agrees with Table 22.6.

22.13.6 Statement of cash flows under both methods

Operating cash receipts total 34,000: cash customer sales of 12,000 plus collections of 22,000. Operating cash payments total 41,600: inventory purchased for cash 6,000, payments to suppliers 20,000, salaries 8,000, rent 4,000, utilities 1,200 and insurance 2,400. Net operating cash flow is therefore negative 7,600. The equipment acquisition produces investing outflow of 28,000. Capital contributed and borrowing produce financing inflows of 85,000. The net change in cash is 49,400, matching the statement of financial position since opening cash was zero. The firm is profitable while its operating cash flow is negative, a materially important but not automatically pathological contrast.

Table 22.8. Direct-method statement of cash flows, quarter ended 31 December 2026, RWF '000

Cash flow item	Amount
Cash collected from customers	34,000
Inventory and supplier payments	(26,000)
Salaries paid	(8,000)
Rent paid	(4,000)
Utilities paid	(1,200)
Insurance premiums paid	(2,400)
NET CASH FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES	(7,600)
Equipment purchase, investing activity	(28,000)
Owner capital contribution, financing activity	60,000
Bank borrowing proceeds, financing activity	25,000
NET CASH FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES	85,000
NET CHANGE IN CASH	49,400
Opening cash	0
CLOSING CASH	49,400

Table note. Original hypothetical computation. No cash tax or interest payment occurred in the period; the associated costs and liabilities are recognized in accrual accounts.

The indirect reconciliation starts with profit after assumed tax of 5,100, adds depreciation (1,750), expected-credit-loss expense (280) and increases in accrued operating/financing liabilities (utilities 800, interest 750, tax 1,520), then subtracts the growth in gross trade receivables (14,000), inventories (6,000) and prepayment (1,800), while adding the growth in trade payables (4,000). The total is negative 7,600. Here credit losses are added back separately while the gross receivable change is subtracted; an analyst using net receivables would not add back the same credit-loss expense again. Double counting allowance movements is a common reconciliation error.

Table 22.9. Indirect reconciliation, RWF '000

Reconciliation item	Amount
Profit after assumed income tax	5,100
Add: noncash depreciation	1,750
Add: noncash credit-loss allowance expense	280
Less: increase in gross receivables	(14,000)
Less: increase in inventories	(6,000)
Less: increase in prepaid insurance	(1,800)
Add: increase in trade payables	4,000
Add: accrued utilities	800
Add: unpaid interest	750
Add: unpaid assumed income tax	1,520
NET CASH FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES	(7,600)

Table note. Original reconciliation. Interest classification is consistent with the simplified teaching design; a real IFRS preparer would confirm classification requirements for its reporting period and policies, including applicable 2027 amendments.

22.13.7 Ratio interpretation and managerial diagnosis

The gross margin is 24,000 ÷ 48,000 = 50.0%; net margin is 5,100 ÷ 48,000 = 10.625%. The current ratio is 70,920 ÷ 7,070 = 10.03, and a simplified quick ratio excluding inventory and prepayment is (49,400 + 13,720) ÷ 7,070 = 8.93. These unusually high liquidity ratios reflect the injection of initial capital and a recently established business; they are not evidence that working capital is economically optimized. The balance is dominated by financing cash received during the quarter, while operations have consumed cash. Total liabilities to accounting equity are 32,070 ÷ 65,100 = 0.493, which should not be conflated with interest-bearing debt to equity of 25,000 ÷ 65,100 = 0.384.

The year-to-date period is a quarter, and the entity has no meaningful comparable prior operating period. A net return on ending assets of 5,100 ÷ 97,170 = 5.25% is only a nonstandard end-balance indicator, not a properly annualized return on average assets. An approximate closing-balance collection proxy would be 90 × 14,000 ÷ 36,000 = 35 days, based on gross closing receivables and *credit sales*, but the true conventional days-sales-outstanding measure would use average receivables and actual period days under a documented policy. Hence it should be designated a provisional diagnostic rather than an observed collection-cycle estimate.

The most important decision is not to congratulate the enterprise for a 50% gross margin or to condemn it for negative operating cash flow. Management should test whether the remaining RWF 14 million gross receivables are collectible and correctly aged, whether the assumed insurance and utilities charges are complete, whether inventory can be sold without write-down, and when the bank financing becomes repayable. A constructive improvement could strengthen customer credit terms and inventory replenishment while protecting truthful sales recognition and paying staff and suppliers when contractually due. Chapters 19, 23 and 24 provide the specialist logistics, cost and financing techniques; Chapter 22 specifies the data and representations upon which those techniques depend.

22.13.8 Statement articulation, counterfactuals and substantive limitations

The case's four statements articulate through a constrained set of identities. Sales of 48,000 and expenses of 42,900 generate profit of 5,100, which increases retained earnings from zero to the same amount. Contributed capital of 60,000 then yields closing equity of 65,100. Recognized assets of 97,170 equal liabilities of 32,070 plus that equity. Operating cash outflow of 7,600, investing cash outflow of 28,000, and financing cash inflow of 85,000 explain closing cash of 49,400 from zero opening cash. These agreements are necessary internal controls, although none alone establishes the reality of a sale, a debtor's ability to pay or the absence of unrecorded commitments.

The educational model is deliberately sparse. A real Rwandan importer would need to examine value-added tax, sectoral compliance, currency translation, employment-related deductions, related parties, debt covenants, subsequent events and any applicable deferred-tax implications. The assumed tax expense is not derived from a statutory rate and the flat 2% expected-credit-loss charge is not a defensible substitute for a customer-specific or provision-matrix estimate in actual financial reporting. The case must therefore not be cited as evidence of normal Rwandan profitability, liquidity or tax practice. Its value is its auditability: students can change an assumption, post the consequential entry, and observe which statements change and which do not.

Figure 22.2. Four-statement articulation in the constructed Kigali enterprise

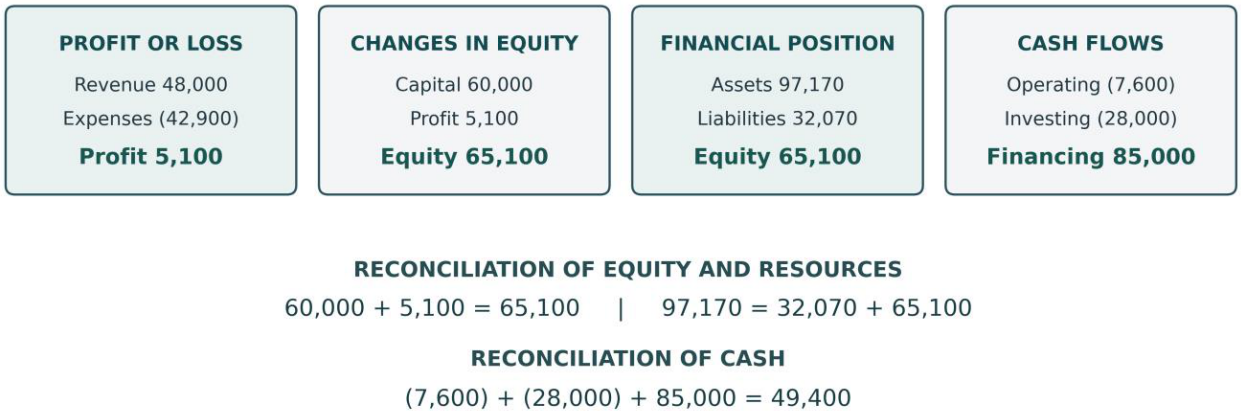


Figure note. Original instructional synthesis, not observed company accounts. Statements use identical underlying transactions; equality checks provide internal consistency, not independent assurance of economic authenticity.

22.14 RWANDAN AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARATIVE APPLICATION

22.14.1 Proportionality without diminished integrity

Rwanda's enterprise population includes many small or informal businesses for which formal reporting burdens, accounting expertise and affordable system access present practical constraints. The NISR (2026e) IBES 2024 publication reports at least 87% informality in the business landscape. The proportion does not measure fraud or establish the prevalence of unreliable accounting; it indicates that the publicly accountable corporation should not be adopted as the default empirical picture of an enterprise. A microtrader may need reliable daily cash control, goods-count records and simple debtor information before a full statement package becomes practicable. The improvement sequence should preserve the accounting equation and material obligation reporting while progressively increasing accrual capability, reconciliations and appropriate external filing compliance.

The international comparison is functional rather than a claim that Rwanda differs categorically from any other region. Listed entities in markets with greater analyst coverage, sophisticated valuation tools and complex transaction volumes face stringent disclosure and consolidation demands; they also have stronger incentives and more opportunities to shift classification across subsidiaries or estimate uncertain contract performance. SMEs may confront more basic risks of mixed household and company cash, missing supporting documents or concentrated approval authority. In both cases, trustworthy reporting requires evidence, legitimate recognition and correction. The comparative question is not which jurisdiction has more pages of disclosures, but whether reporting duties and information capacity jointly produce meaningful accountability (Barth et al., 2008; Daske et al., 2008).

22.14.2 The architecture of implementation in a constrained SME

For a Kigali wholesaler similar to the hypothetical case, a feasible reporting improvement plan begins with segregating enterprise funds from personal spending, assigning account numbers, retaining customer and supplier documents, conducting periodic stock counts and reconciling bank and mobile-money balances. The second stage defines when goods are recognized as received and delivered, uses a receivable-aging schedule, records prepayments and unpaid expenses, and produces a trial balance. The third stage prepares connected financial statements, a controlled estimate register and compliance filings. Only then should automation be expanded into predictive monitoring and automatically drafted narratives, subject to validation.

This sequence intentionally resists technological determinism. Better software can assist reconciliation but does not create credible transaction evidence. Informal suppliers may not deliver standardized invoices, seasonal cash flows may challenge conventional period comparisons, and staff may require continuing professional development. An implementation plan should therefore state dependencies, costs, training needs and reporting responsibilities rather than infer that adoption of IFRS or an accounting platform automatically raises credit access. Lenders may reasonably value better statements, but their lending decisions also depend on collateral, market risk, repayment capacity and institutional conditions.

22.14.3 Corporate reporting and sustainability as distinct but connected claims

Rwanda's ICPAR (2025) sustainability roadmap offers a concrete case of how reporting expectations expand beyond traditional statements while retaining staged proportionality. Financial accounts register some environmental consequences when they create recognized assets, liabilities, expenses or impairments. Many physical effects remain outside the statements unless an applicable standard creates a recognition or disclosure obligation. Sustainability-related disclosures may explain financially material exposure to climate hazards, regulation, transition investment and market dependence. Neither system should be used to convert projections into observed outcomes or to disguise weak controls with favourable narratives.

The conceptual link is bidirectional. A projected climate-related interruption may inform impairment or expected cash-flow assumptions where relevant; the carrying values in financial statements help users locate the scale of exposures discussed in nonfinancial disclosures. Conversely, a sustainability narrative should not be assumed financially verified simply because it appears in the same annual report. The author of a corporate report must identify the relevant framework, effective implementation stage, organizational perimeter, measurement basis, evidence confidence and assurance status. This discipline makes integration credible without collapsing distinct reporting purposes.

22.14.4 Comparative mechanisms and practical capacity-building

International evidence does not support a single linear path from adopting IFRS to superior reporting outcomes. A firm operating in a setting with strong enforcement, skilled preparers and credible investor scrutiny may experience materially different consequences from the same formal standard than a firm with limited archival records, scarce professional expertise or uncertain enforcement. The cross-national evidence reported by Barth et al. (2008) and Daske et al. (2008) is therefore relevant to, but not mechanically transferable to, Rwanda. Selection into reporting regimes, differences in accounting-policy enforcement, the pre-existing quality of books and changes in capital-market participation complicate causal attribution. An African comparative study should explicitly model these institutional heterogeneities rather than treat jurisdiction as a dummy variable that explains its own mechanisms.

For a small business, proportionate improvement can be sequenced around identifiable failure modes. The first capability is documentation: separating owner and enterprise funds, identifying the counterparty, retaining invoices and reconciling cash channels. The second is accounting judgment: classifying credits, recognizing inventory and unpaid expenses, and setting a consistent cutoff. The third is communication: producing linked statements, explaining uncertainty, and preparing filings under the correct legal and accounting framework. The fourth is learning: investigating recurrent errors, training staff and revising systems. This sequence is not claimed to be universally optimal; it is a transparent design hypothesis to be tested against actual cost, transaction complexity, institutional obligations and users' needs.

22.15 INTEGRATIVE SCHOLARLY SYNTHESIS AND RESEARCH AGENDA

22.15.1 A conditional theory of faithful reporting

The chapter's central contribution is an integrative proposition about reporting as governed representation. Relevant economic events enter a financial reporting system through source evidence; recognition and measurement convert those events into accounting claims; reconciled ledgers and controlled estimates yield statements; presentation and disclosure communicate the claims; independent questioning and correction determine whether users can rely on them. Each connection is a potential failure point, not a guaranteed causal mechanism. The model combines the informational significance of reported earnings (Ball & Brown, 1968; Beaver, 1968), the contractual incentives of owners and managers (Jensen & Meckling, 1976), the temporal contribution of accruals (Dechow, 1994) and institutional explanations of reporting quality (Leuz et al., 2003; Daske et al., 2008).

The philosophical distinction is between correspondence and construction. Accounting statements aim to correspond faithfully to economic rights, obligations and period performance, yet that representation necessarily uses constructed categories, recognition boundaries and measurement conventions. This is not a justification for relativism: a transaction that did not occur cannot legitimately be reported merely because accounting uses conventions. Rather, representational integrity requires publicly intelligible rules, inspectable evidence, disclosed assumptions and the capacity to falsify an erroneous claim. The test of an accounting method is both whether it conforms to applicable requirements and whether it reasonably communicates the phenomenon it claims to portray.

Three propositions merit empirical investigation. P1: enterprises that combine transaction-level traceability, disciplined period-end reconciliation and independent estimate review will, conditional on their institutional environments, exhibit fewer material financial-reporting corrections than otherwise comparable enterprises. P2: improvements in SME accounting systems are more likely to enhance externally assessed creditworthiness where they also improve cash-flow predictability and documentary verification than where they merely increase statement production. P3: AI-assisted classification may improve processing timeliness but may have ambiguous effects on faithful representation unless model-generated judgments can be challenged, traced to source documents and corrected. These are hypotheses, not results; each requires operational definitions, confounder assessment, suitable comparison groups and meaningful sensitivity tests.

22.15.2 Priority research problems and feasible designs

A Rwanda-focused research agenda could examine adoption of IFRS for SMEs among eligible firms, the costs of compiling accounts, differences between registry submission and useful managerial reporting, the interaction between digital payments and accounting traceability, and the consequences of the staged sustainability-disclosure roadmap. Administrative datasets, anonymized archived statements, legal documents and published enterprise surveys could support secondary-data studies, but each is subject to selection and confidentiality limits. Formal firms with public reporting may differ systematically from informal businesses; comparing their observed loan outcomes without accounting for size, sector and collateral would not identify a reporting effect.

For stronger causal identification, researchers would need feasible natural experiments or exogenous policy timing, clearly defined eligibility rules and pre-policy comparisons; phased adoption alone does not guarantee a valid control group. Interrupted time series and difference-in-differences models require checks for concurrent reforms and credible trend assumptions. Qualitative documentary process tracing may better explain how a standard reaches the ledger and who can override entries, but cannot by itself estimate population effects. Academic inquiry should differentiate numerical restatements, accounting-policy change, enforcement action, lender perception and actual economic performance, rather than compress them into one undefined notion of 'accounting quality'.

22.15.3 Chapter synthesis and functional transition

Six conclusions follow from the analysis. Financial accounting is a disciplined representation of rights, obligations and performance rather than a simple record of receipts and payments. The accounting equation protects internal numerical coherence but does not prove economic authenticity. Accruals improve temporal interpretation under defined circumstances while expanding the space for estimation and manipulation. Connected profit, financial-position, equity and cash-flow statements should be read jointly; no single one provides a complete account of enterprise viability. Reporting standards support comparability but their effects depend on implementation, governance and the local institutional environment. Digital automation can strengthen or degrade integrity depending on evidence architecture and human accountability. Finally, ethical reporting requires honest recognition, faithful estimates, adequate disclosure and a practical mechanism for correction.

For the wider book, accounting provides a common language for the procurement obligations of Chapter 18, inventory and operating assets of Chapters 17–20, investments undertaken in Chapter 21, prices and revenues analyzed in Chapters 13–16, and financial analysis in subsequent Chapters 23–26. A true enterprise-wide perspective does not expect accounting to replace these functions; it requires each function's statements about performance to become consistent with the recorded economic consequences. The next chapter will develop management accounting, costing and budgetary control, showing how internal information can be organized for prospective choice without confusing managerial cost estimates with external financial-reporting requirements.

22.15.4 A falsifiable framework for reporting integrity

The chapter's proposed synthesis can be evaluated through five analytically distinct dimensions: traceability of transactions to external evidence; defensibility of recognition and measurement; articulation of the primary statements and notes; accessibility of review and correction; and institutional congruence between the entity's reporting obligations and its implemented procedures. These dimensions are complementary, but a high score in one cannot compensate for a material failure in another. A perfect cash reconciliation cannot establish proper revenue cutoff; extensive disclosure cannot legitimate a knowingly fictitious receivable; an audit opinion cannot replace management's underlying accountability.

A possible secondary-data study would construct longitudinal firm-year observations from archived statements and disclosed restatements, distinguish public-accountability status and reporting framework, and specify an estimand such as the association between document traceability and subsequent material corrections. Researchers would need credible proxies for transaction evidence, adequate adjustment for industry and size, and sensitivity analysis for unobserved managerial quality and selection into formal reporting. Where source records are unavailable, claims should be limited to observable disclosure and correction events rather than recast as verified differences in the true incidence of fraud. The model consequently offers a researchable agenda, not a statistically established law of accounting behaviour.

22.16 KEY TERMINOLOGY AND LEARNING ASSESSMENT

22.16.1 Compact disciplinary glossary

Term	Technical meaning and qualification
Accounting equation	Assets = liabilities + equity, maintained through the effects of recognized transactions.
Accrual	Recognition when an economic event affects the relevant period, not exclusively when cash moves.
Asset	A present economic resource controlled by the entity because of past events.
Cash equivalent	Short-term, highly liquid investment meeting IAS 7 criteria for ready conversion and low value risk.
Contra-asset	Credit-balance adjustment reducing an asset carrying amount, such as accumulated depreciation.
Corporate reporting	Financial statements and associated disclosures and communications concerning accountability.
Double entry	Recording reciprocal debit and credit effects of equal total amount.
Equity	Residual claim after recognized liabilities are deducted from recognized assets.
Faithful representation	Depiction that is complete, neutral and free from error to the practicable extent.
Impairment	Reduction of an asset carrying amount where applicable recoverability requirements are met.
Materiality	Entity-specific significance of an omission, misstatement or obscuring to primary- user decisions.
Net realizable value	Ordinary-course expected selling price less expected completion and sale costs.
Other comprehensive income	Specified gains and losses recognized outside current profit or loss.
Performance obligation	Distinct promise in a customer contract to transfer a good or service.
Trial balance	Summary of ledger balances testing equality of total debits and total credits.
Working capital	Current assets less current liabilities; not equivalent to cash or net operating cash flow.

22.16.2 Foundational and analytical questions

Foundational analysis begins by explaining how a profitable enterprise can nevertheless report negative operating cash flow. A defensible answer traces receivables, inventory, payables, depreciation and accruals through corresponding journal entries, rather than offering a purely verbal distinction. Students should then evaluate why long-term expenditure on research, employee development or brand promotion cannot automatically be capitalized and demonstrate how a balanced trial balance might still contain fabricated transactions or omitted obligations. The same analysis should contrast the decision needs of investors, lenders, employees and regulators without changing the IFRS Conceptual Framework’s defined category of primary users.

Advanced analysis requires defending a measurement position under uncertainty. Students should evaluate whether current-value measurement necessarily improves faithful representation in thin markets, compare agency, stewardship and institutional accounts of reporting incentives, and specify evidence capable of discriminating among those accounts. They should also identify how enforcement, investor demand, sector

composition and self-selection could confound empirical claims about mandatory IFRS adoption. A concluding assessment should design a controlled AI-assisted reporting workflow in which sources, model suggestions, approvals, correction rights and disclosures are separately traceable.

22.16.3 Applied exercises and capstone assignment

The applied assessment begins with independent journal reconstruction. Students should post transactions J01–A06, prepare the unadjusted and adjusted trial balances and demonstrate equality through a complete account movement schedule. They must then model a further RWF 5 million collection from existing customers before quarter-end with all other assumptions held constant, recomputing cash, gross receivables, the cash-flow statement and liquidity ratios while explaining why the transaction must not change sales or profit. A second recognition question asks them to classify a RWF 900,000 December deposit against a RWF 3 million order accepted and transferred in January, documenting the December contract liability and the contract evidence on which the answer depends.

For an integrative capstone, students should prepare a 2,500–3,500-word accounting-policy and reporting-quality memorandum for a constructed Rwandan SME applying for bank finance. The memorandum should document the proposed reporting regime and its legal-verification method, prepare four mutually reconciled statements from a transparent transaction dataset, show direct and indirect operating cash-flow reconciliation, and calculate at least six precisely defined financial ratios. It should evaluate recognition cutoff, expected credit losses, recoverability and material reporting uncertainty, then design ten specific digital-accounting controls. The analysis must distinguish source facts, assumptions, judgmental estimates, statutory obligations and forecasts; an appendix should reproduce formulas, source-document requirements, sensitivity cases and an approval workflow. The concluding recommendation must address whether software adoption alone plausibly alters a lender’s risk assessment.

22.16.4 Educator guidance and indicative assessment criteria

A high-quality foundational answer explains accrual timing with at least one correctly posted cash and credit transaction and does not treat profit as cash. Strong analytical answers identify alternative explanations, specify standard and period applicability, and avoid asserting that one ratio establishes fraud or solvency. The applied workbook should reconcile the accounting identity, income statement, retained profit and cash-flow closing balance without plug figures. Allocate assessment credit to technical accounting accuracy (30%), evidential and legal/standards reasoning (20%), interpretation and uncertainty analysis (20%), integrated managerial and ethical judgment (20%), and clear APA-compliant documentation (10%). Credit should be withheld for untraceable source numbers, inconsistent assumptions, unsupported statutory claims or failure to disclose a hypothetical tax input.

22.16.5 Selected further reading

The IASB (2018) Conceptual Framework offers the essential conceptual vocabulary; IFRS Foundation (2025) provides the current transition basis for the third edition of IFRS for SMEs. Dechow (1994), Dechow et al. (2010) and Healy and Wahlen (1999) develop the difficult relationship between accrual measurement, earnings quality and reporting incentives. Barth et al. (2008) and Daske et al. (2008) are appropriate starting points for evaluating cross-jurisdiction reporting claims with attention to enforcement and selection. For Rwanda, ICPAR (2025), IFAC (n.d.) and NISR (2026e) support documentary understanding of reporting institutions and enterprise structure but should not be treated as substitutes for current entity-specific legal advice or audited accounts.

CHAPTER 23

Management Accounting, Costing, and Budgetary Control

ABSTRACT

Management accounting enables enterprise decisions before their financial consequences become visible in published accounts. Yet apparently precise cost figures can mislead when classification, capacity assumptions, causal attribution, managerial incentives or uncertainty are poorly specified. This chapter critically develops management accounting, costing and budgetary control as an integrated system of decision support, organizational coordination and accountability. A transparent, purposive synthesis brings marginal economics, cost-behaviour research, agency theory, interpretive accounting theory, contingency perspectives, activity-based management, budgeting scholarship and performance-control theory into dialogue with professional guidance. Twelve domains cover cost concepts, conventional and activity-based costing, cost-volume-profit analysis, constrained decisions, customer profitability, operating and cash budgets, standards and variances, multidimensional controls, analytics and ethics. Official Rwandan enterprise evidence situates the argument in a business environment characterized by extensive informality and heterogeneous productive capacity. A fully hypothetical Kigali food manufacturer supports reconciled product-cost, contribution, process-costing, break-even, flexible-budget, variance, customer-profitability and make-or-buy calculations, supplemented by an activity-based costing extension. International comparisons assess the transferability of sophisticated costing systems to resource-constrained enterprises. The principal thesis is that management accounting becomes useful not through ever finer numerical detail, but through fit between a decision, its relevant economic consequences, sufficiently credible information, organizational authority and legitimate stakeholder constraints. The proposed integration is an analytical synthesis, not a newly empirically validated model.

Keywords: management accounting; cost behaviour; activity-based costing; contribution margin; cost-volume-profit analysis; budgetary control; variance analysis; management control systems; management analytics; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CHAPTER ROADMAP

Upon completing the chapter, readers should be able to (LO1) distinguish management accounting from external financial reporting, and defend the relevance and limitations of internal information; (LO2) classify costs by traceability, behaviour, controllability and decision relevance, estimating costs under explicit assumptions; (LO3) construct and critically evaluate job, process, absorption, variable and activity-based product or service costs; (LO4) calculate and interpret contribution, break-even, target profit, margin of safety and constrained-resource choices; (LO5) prepare and reconcile operating, flexible and cash budgets, with properly attributed price, usage, efficiency and spending variances; (LO6) design performance indicators and decision-support analytics that address managerial incentives, information integrity and uncertainty; (LO7) appraise a Rwandan enterprise case against defensible international theory and practice, recognizing institutional transfer constraints; and (LO8) present an integrated, ethically accountable cost-and-control decision memorandum with sensitivity, implementation and review criteria.

The progression begins with the epistemic role of management accounting (23.0–23.1), establishes cost concepts and their measurement (23.2–23.4), develops decisions using contribution and incremental analysis (23.5–23.7), and moves to coordinated planning and control (23.8–23.10). Decision analytics and professional responsibility (23.11–23.12) then connect the techniques to governance and technology. A Rwanda-centred integrated case,

comparative interpretation, theoretical synthesis, terminology and assessment materials close the chapter. Chapter 22 addresses publicly reported accounts; Chapter 23 concerns internal information for feasible decisions. Discounted investment appraisal and financing belong to Chapter 24, while taxation and audit systems are treated in Chapter 26.

23.0 INTRODUCTION: THE COST OF A DECISION IS NOT NECESSARILY THE COST IN THE LEDGER

A hypothetical Kigali producer of packaged porridge receives an order for 2,000 additional units. Its bookkeeper reports a full production cost of RWF 1,610 per unit, while sales proposes a negotiated price of RWF 1,700. One manager describes the order as profitable, another rejects it because the quoted price scarcely exceeds the full cost, and the operations supervisor warns that the packaging line is approaching capacity. Their disagreement is not resolved by finding a more accurate average cost. They must establish which expenditures would actually change, whether the order displaces alternative sales, when cash would be received, which quality commitments apply, and whether the existing cost model has assigned unused capacity and shared overhead sensibly. This case is invented for educational analysis. It isolates the chapter's organizing question: how can managers use cost and performance information to plan, control and improve enterprise decisions without confusing an accounting allocation with an economic consequence?

Financial accounting and management accounting share a transaction base but differ in decision horizon and audience. External financial reporting communicates structured claims about recognized economic events to outside users within specified standards and disclosure obligations. Management accounting designs information for prospective choices, internal coordination, operational learning and evaluation. A management accountant may prepare a full manufacturing cost to support inventory valuation, a contribution margin to evaluate a special order, and a customer-level cost-to-serve estimate to reconsider distribution arrangements. These figures can differ without any being inherently fraudulent: each answers a different question. The error occurs when managers conceal their purpose, assumptions or reconciliation (Kaplan & Cooper, 1998; International Accounting Standards Board [IASB], n.d.-b).

The resulting discipline is simultaneously technical, organizational and normative. Technical validity concerns whether costs are measured at a relevant grain and whether models preserve units, time horizons and causal assumptions. Organizational validity concerns whose information is recorded, who can challenge targets, and which decisions managers can actually implement. Normative validity concerns whose welfare is captured by the calculation and whose rights cannot legitimately be traded away for profit. A proposal to lower unit cost by ignoring unpaid overtime, transferring waste-disposal costs to a community or accelerating unsafe production may improve a narrow dashboard while degrading enterprise performance. Accordingly, no cost calculation can substitute for an explicit statement of lawful and ethically defensible boundaries (Institute of Management Accountants [IMA], 2022; Malmi & Brown, 2008).

23.0.1 Evidence design and scope of inference

This chapter uses a transparent, purposive critical synthesis of secondary literature and official documentation, rather than a systematic review or an original firm-level empirical study. The search strategy prioritized distinct theoretical contributions, empirical tests of cost behaviour and control systems, authoritative professional guidance, and comparable official Rwanda data, with source dates and applicable technical requirements checked to 2 November 2026. Core intellectual strands include Cooper and Kaplan's costing critique, Anderson et al.'s empirical test of asymmetric cost behaviour, Chenhall's contingency synthesis, Otley's management-control framework, budgeting studies and work on digital management accounting. Institutional evidence is taken from the National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda (NISR) and standards bodies, with a preference for official original documents. Sources were chosen for theoretical relevance, methodological distinction and transferability, not to estimate a pooled treatment effect. The selection was not exhaustive, screening counts were not maintained, and no meta-analytic or causal inference is claimed.

The recurring numerical enterprise is explicitly constructed; its prices, wages, demand, factory costs, process times, supplier quotations and outcomes are not observed Rwandan statistics. Official Rwanda indicators describe contextual constraints and must not be represented as evidence about the fictitious enterprise's productivity, profitability or use of management accounting. International findings require special care when moved from large, diversified companies to small firms with limited records, shared roles and volatile cash flows. This source and inference discipline follows the evidence-based principles developed in Chapter 4 and the accounting representational discipline of Chapter 22.

The review evaluates three classes of claim separately. Definitions, arithmetic identities and standards-based rules are assessed for conceptual and technical correctness; empirical associations are considered in light of research designs, populations, periods and plausible confounding; and prescriptions are judged for feasibility, transparency and the distribution of consequences. This division is essential because the fact that a cost driver predicts allocated overhead does not prove that eliminating a transaction will release the same amount of cash. Similarly, a budgeting practice associated with performance in an observational study does not establish that adopting it in a different institution will cause improvement. Each illustrative computation below therefore supplies its cost object, temporal boundary, assumptions and reconciliation, allowing readers to reproduce the calculation while withholding unwarranted causal claims.

23.1 INTERNAL ACCOUNTING AND DECISION SUPPORT

23.1.1 The function, users and information architecture

Management accounting is the purposeful identification, measurement, analysis, interpretation and communication of financial and non-financial information for internal choices and organizational stewardship. Its distinctive output is not a statement but a defensible answer to a question. Should the enterprise expand output, change its mix, discontinue a product, renegotiate an account, use scarce machine hours differently or reconsider a budget? Those questions require different cost objects, time horizons, confidence intervals and responsibilities. The same enterprise therefore needs multiple internally consistent representations rather than one universally correct unit cost.

The informational route normally connects primary evidence, accounting and operational records, decision-specific transformations, managerial challenge and subsequent learning. Primary evidence includes supplier invoices, work orders, employee time logs, batch records, service tickets, digital payments, customer contracts and physical measurements of inputs, waste or energy. A cost ledger aggregates monetary claims; operational systems provide resource and activity drivers; managerial models distinguish avoidable cost, capacity and uncertainty. A report becomes decision-supporting only when its intended user can inspect the provenance, assumptions, version and authorized action. The controlling analytical question is not simply

whether information is timely, but whether it is sufficiently accurate and relevant for the consequence being assessed (Bhimani, 2020; Granlund, 2011).

Figure 23.1. Evidence-to-decision architecture for management accounting. Transaction and operational evidence → verified cost and capacity model → decision-specific incremental or full-cost view → cross-functional challenge → authorized action → realized outcome and learning. Feedback returns both to source data and model assumptions. *Source: Original analytical synthesis informed by Kaplan and Cooper (1998), Otley (1999) and IMA (2022); the sequence is conceptual rather than empirically validated.*



23.1.2 Decision relevance, controllability and information economics

An item may be material for an external financial statement yet irrelevant to a particular decision, while a nonrecorded opportunity cost may be indispensable internally. Depreciation is relevant to financial statements but is normally not an avoidable cash flow in deciding whether to accept a one-time order using installed equipment; a genuinely avoidable repair or foregone contribution may be relevant. Equally, 'controllable cost' must be defined against an actor and horizon: a warehouse manager may influence overtime this week but not the inherited building lease. Managers should not be evaluated as though they could change contractual commitments set by others.

Information itself incurs acquisition, validation and maintenance costs. A small cooperative may benefit more from disciplined daily cash and stock reconciliation than from a multilayer activity-costing application with unreliable driver data. A larger manufacturer with frequent engineering changes and heterogeneous products may face expensive distortions if it retains a single labour-hour overhead rate. The appropriate system is therefore contingent on complexity, decision frequency, materiality, exposure and organizational capability. This is consistent with contingency scholarship, which rejects the idea of one optimal control-system design for every enterprise (Chenhall, 2003; Langfield-Smith, 1997).

23.1.3 Intellectual history and theoretical tensions

Early industrial cost accounting sought to record material and labour use and assign production expenditure to output. Standard costing, variance reports and annual budgets subsequently embedded accounting in managerial supervision. Johnson and Kaplan (1987) argued that conventional management accounting became progressively disconnected from changing production processes and competitive requirements; Cooper and Kaplan (1988) demonstrated how volume-based allocations can distort decisions about product diversity. Activity-based costing responded by relating resource consumption to differentiated activities, while time-driven activity-based costing later addressed the maintenance burden of detailed activity models (Kaplan & Anderson, 2004). Digital transaction records can now support closer-to-real-time measurement, but data abundance does not resolve the underlying questions of model validity, incentives and causal attribution (Bhimani, 2020).

Agency theory highlights divergent incentives and information asymmetry among owners, managers and workers. It explains why budgets can be manipulated and why performance contracts may prompt gaming. Its strength is to make incentive compatibility an analytical issue; its limitation is the tendency to privilege measurable individual utility and contractual enforcement over institutional trust, professional duty or intrinsic motivation. Contingency theory instead expects control efficacy to vary with environment, technology, scale and organizational structure, yet has struggled with heterogeneous measures and identifying causal effects. Simons (1995) emphasizes diagnostic controls, strategic boundaries, organizational beliefs and interactive dialogue; Malmi and Brown (2008) argue that accounting controls interact with cultural, administrative and reward systems. Together these accounts suggest that no spreadsheet controls an enterprise independently of its authority, relationships and culture.

The intellectual divide is also philosophical. In a representational view, accounting attempts to measure antecedently existing resource consumption sufficiently faithfully for a stated purpose. In an interpretive and constitutive view, classifications and comparisons help create the organizational realities to which workers and managers respond: the decision to call one department a cost centre, to make idle time visible, or to rank staff by unit output changes attention, identity and bargaining power. Morgan (1988) challenged the claim that accounting descriptions are neutral mirrors of organizations, while Miller and O’Leary (1987) situated standard costing and budgeting within the historical construction of administratively governable workers. Their contributions do not imply that every measurement is arbitrary or that arithmetic lacks objective constraints. Rather, they reveal an asymmetry between the numerical truth of an entry and the selection of what deserves to be measured. A credible management accounting system must consequently combine accurate measurement with reflective scrutiny of the categories, power relations and interests embedded in its use.

This chapter adopts a fallibilist, decision-oriented position between uncritical measurement realism and unrestricted relativism. Kilograms issued, hours paid and invoices received can be checked against physical and documentary evidence, although their meaning as 'waste', 'inefficiency' or 'unprofitability' depends on a declared model and purpose. Multiple cost representations may be warranted simultaneously, but they are not equally useful for every decision. Model choice must be defensible through explanatory fit, traceability, uncertainty disclosure and susceptibility to challenge rather than managerial convenience. This position strengthens, rather than weakens, the obligation to reconcile internal accounting to financial statements and cash records.

23.2 COST CONCEPTS AND CLASSIFICATIONS

23.2.1 Cost objects, traceability and purposes

A cost is an economically interpreted sacrifice of resources in pursuit of a defined object and period. The cost object may be one product, service visit, customer, production batch, branch, project, distribution route or business decision. Direct cost can be traced economically and sufficiently reliably to that object; indirect cost requires allocation or a different causal representation. A manufacturer's flour used for a documented batch is generally directly traceable to that batch, while the plant manager's salary is often indirect to individual units but directly attributable to the factory as a department. Traceability is therefore relational, not an inherent physical property of a cost.

Product costs may include direct materials, direct labour and manufacturing overhead, whereas period expenses, such as selling and administration under common external-reporting conventions, are expensed as incurred. However, a commercial decision still needs delivery, financing, claims management and customer service costs even when they are excluded from reported inventory. IAS 2 requires eligible conversion costs, including systematic allocation of fixed and variable production overhead, to be reflected in inventory cost and prescribes normal-capacity discipline for allocating fixed production overhead. This reporting treatment should be reconciled with, but not mechanically reused as, an incremental decision model (IASB, n.d.-b).

23.2.2 Behaviour, capacity and the relevant range

For a specified relevant range and time horizon, a conventional linear cost model is $C(Q) = F + vQ$, where C is total cost, F is fixed cost within the range, v is variable cost per unit and Q is activity. Average total cost is $C(Q)/Q = F/Q + v$, which falls as fixed cost is spread over additional units. The linear relationship is an approximation, not a natural law. Piecewise fixed costs emerge when an extra shift, warehouse or supervisor becomes necessary; overtime, scarcity, bulk purchasing and yield losses change variable rates. Classification also depends on horizon: a lease may be fixed next month and avoidable at renewal. Economic scale, technological learning and input-price movements further invalidate naive extrapolation beyond observed operations.

Empirical research shows why the conventional symmetric assumption must be interrogated. Anderson, Banker and Janakiraman (2003) studied a large panel of companies and reported that selling, general and administrative costs increased more readily with rising activity than they declined with comparable decreases. The authors related this asymmetry to managerial decisions about retaining committed resources rather than immediately reversing them. Their study offers evidence against universal proportionality; it does not establish the same coefficients for a Rwandan SME, another time period or an individual cost pool. A responsible cost model distinguishes activity changes, managerial adjustment costs and the timing of capacity release.

23.2.3 Relevance, avoidability and opportunity costs

Relevant costs and benefits are future consequences that differ across feasible alternatives. Sunk expenditure has already been irreversibly incurred and ordinarily should not alter a forward-looking choice, although its contractual consequences or the future cash flows associated with an asset may matter. An opportunity cost is the value of the best genuinely forgone alternative; it need not appear in the accounting ledger. Differential cost is the change between alternatives; avoidable cost is a future expenditure that an alternative can eliminate. Committed costs, allocated shared overhead and noncash charges are not automatically irrelevant: the question is whether their underlying resources or future payments change under the decision and horizon being studied.

Table 23.1. Cost lenses and their decision implications

Lens	Managerial meaning	Typical use	Primary misinterpretation
Direct / indirect	Traceability to a specified cost object	Product, customer and job costing	Treating an allocation as causal resource consumption
Variable / fixed	Response to an activity driver over a relevant range	CVP and flexible budgets	Assuming perfect proportionality and unlimited capacity
Product / period	Reporting treatment under applicable standards	Inventory and profit reconciliation	Mistaking reporting cost for incremental cost
Avoidable / committed	Whether future resource expenditure can change	Closure, outsourcing and capacity choices	Counting unavoidable common cost as savings
Sunk / opportunity	Irreversible past outlay versus best forgone option	Investment continuation and constrained resources	Ignoring opportunity contribution because it is unrecorded
Controllable / noncontrollable	Scope of a specified decision maker's authority	Responsibility evaluation	Penalizing managers for inherited or external constraints

Note. Categories overlap rather than form mutually exclusive sets. *Source:* Original teaching synthesis of marginal cost reasoning, IAS 2 and management-control scholarship.

23.2.4 Measuring cost functions and uncertainty

The high-low approach estimates v as (highest cost − lowest cost)/(corresponding activity difference), then F from a selected observation. It is accessible but vulnerable to atypical endpoints and changes in price or process. Scatter plots, engineering standards and ordinary least squares may support better estimates when observations are consistent and the functional form is plausible. A regression $C_t = \alpha + \beta Q_t + \varepsilon_t$ gives conditional association, not automatic proof that Q causes changes in C; omitted seasonality, product mix, price inflation or delayed adjustment can bias β. The model's residuals and sensitivity to capacity shifts matter as much as a point estimate. For planning, managers should report credible cost ranges and scenario assumptions rather than convert historical noise into unwarranted decimal precision.

A compact calculation demonstrates both the utility and fragility of the high-low estimator. Suppose a **separate illustrative service enterprise**, unrelated to Imena Foods, recorded monthly operating cost of RWF 13,500,000 at 8,000 service transactions and RWF 17,900,000 at 12,000 transactions, with comparable input prices and process technology. The two-point estimated variable cost is (17,900,000 − 13,500,000)/(12,000 − 8,000) = RWF 1,100 per transaction, implying fixed cost of RWF 4,700,000 in either observation. At 10,000 transactions the fitted cost is RWF 15,700,000. This identity does not establish the true cost function: either observation could contain unusual repairs, service-mix changes or delayed resource adjustment. Before using the estimate, a manager would inspect all monthly observations, capacity thresholds, price inflation and residual patterns, then compare the regression-based and engineering-based estimates with the high-low result.

23.3 PRODUCT AND SERVICE COSTING

23.3.1 The cost accumulation problem

Costing connects economic resources to work performed and outputs delivered. The minimum architecture distinguishes source expenditures, resource pools, operational activities, cost objects and reconciliation to the financial ledger. Job-order costing accumulates materials, labour and overhead for distinguishable assignments such as a customized school-furniture contract, an audit engagement or a repair order. Process costing aggregates expenditure over a repetitive homogeneous process, then assigns cost to units passing through specified production stages. A food plant may use process costing for mixing and packaging but job-level records for special batches or individually commissioned packaging. A clinic may cost consultations by service pathways and case complexity, while a university may cost programmes by teaching hours, facilities, academic support and student-service intensity. These choices depend on the heterogeneity of resource consumption, not on whether an output is tangible.

In a conventional job system, direct materials and labour are assigned from requisition and time records. Indirect manufacturing expenditure is allocated through an overhead rate, conventionally predetermined as budgeted overhead divided by budgeted allocation-base activity. Applied overhead equals that rate multiplied by the actual driver consumed. The predetermined rate enables timely estimates before actual monthly overhead is known, but it creates over- or under-application that must be reconciled, investigated and, where appropriate, adjusted. Machine hours may be more defensible than labour hours in capital-intensive processing; neither should be chosen merely because a payroll system happens to provide readily available data (Banker et al., 1995; Cooper & Kaplan, 1988).

23.3.2 Process costing, equivalent units and losses

Process costing becomes difficult when units are partially completed at period-end. Equivalent units convert partly completed work into an estimated quantity of fully completed input effort. Under weighted-average treatment, equivalent units generally equal completed units plus closing work-in-process units multiplied by their stage of completion for the specific cost category. Materials and conversion costs may have different completion degrees. For example, if 8,000 units are completed and 1,000 remain 100% complete for materials but 40% complete for conversion, materials equivalent units are 9,000 and conversion equivalent units are 8,400. The resulting per-equivalent-unit calculations require reconciled physical flow, opening balances and costs. A first-in, first-out method distinguishes current-period effort from work performed previously. Managers must disclose which method is used and avoid false precision in completion estimates.

The equivalent-unit quantities can be completed into a reconciled production-cost statement. Assume this **separate constructed process-costing exercise** has no opening work in process, with RWF 6,300,000 of materials and RWF 4,200,000 of conversion expenditure incurred for 8,000 completed packs and the 1,000 partly finished packs. Weighted-average cost per materials equivalent unit is RWF 6,300,000/9,000 = RWF 700; conversion cost per equivalent unit is RWF 4,200,000/8,400 = RWF 500. Completed output therefore receives 8,000 × (700 + 500) = RWF 9,600,000. Closing work in process receives (1,000 × 700) + (400 × 500) = RWF 900,000. The reconciliation is exact: RWF 9,600,000 + RWF 900,000 = RWF 10,500,000 of costs to account for. The conversion percentage remains a management estimate; if it is materially wrong, the apparent precision of the unit rates cannot rescue the valuation.

Normal spoilage, avoidable defects, rework, joint production and by-products require explicit causal and reporting treatments. If management silently increases the unit cost of good output after a controllable quality failure, the cost may be absorbed into inventory without exposing the process defect. Quality and operations specialists should distinguish inherent process yield, abnormal losses and unsafe output, while the accounting team makes the permitted financial-reporting adjustments. This interface illustrates why costing cannot substitute for quality diagnosis (Chapter 20) or external-reporting compliance (Chapter 22).

23.3.3 Variable costing, absorption costing and profit interpretation

Variable costing charges only variable manufacturing costs to inventory and treats fixed manufacturing overhead as a period expense for internal contribution analysis. Absorption costing assigns eligible fixed production overhead to produced units alongside variable manufacturing costs for external reporting under IAS 2. Consequently, when production exceeds sales and inventory rises, absorption costing may defer some fixed production cost into inventory, producing a different accounting profit from internal variable costing. When inventory declines, the direction can reverse. The difference is not a second cash flow but a timing difference in expense recognition, subject to policy and normal-capacity constraints.

Suppose a hypothetical plant has RWF 3,900,000 monthly fixed manufacturing overhead and normal production of 10,000 units. The illustrative normal-capacity rate is RWF 390 per unit. If direct material, direct labour and variable manufacturing overhead total RWF 1,220, a standard full manufacturing unit cost is RWF 1,610. That does not mean making one more unit necessarily costs RWF 1,610. Subject to capacity, a marginal unit may consume approximately RWF 1,220 of variable manufacturing resources, with additional selling, quality, financing or risk costs depending on the order. Nor may the manager always multiply RWF 390 by arbitrarily high production volumes; fixed-overhead allocations for reporting are subject to IAS 2's normal-capacity and high-production provisions (IASB, n.d.-b).

The difference between internal and external profit measures becomes visible when production and sales diverge. Suppose, in another **isolated illustrative month** with no opening inventory, 10,000 packs are produced but only 8,000 are sold; unit variable manufacturing costs are RWF 1,220, the normal-capacity fixed manufacturing overhead rate is RWF 390, and there are no other recognition differences. Absorption costing carries RWF 780,000 of fixed production overhead in the 2,000 unsold units, whereas internal variable costing expenses the whole month's fixed manufacturing overhead. Under these conditions absorption-costing operating profit exceeds variable-costing operating profit by RWF 780,000, even though cash received and paid does not change because of this classification. This is a timing reconciliation, not an encouragement to manufacture surplus units. The enterprise must still consider inventory recoverability, the cost of storage and disposal, and IAS 2's normal-capacity rules for financial reporting.

23.3.4 Costing credibility in service and public-interest organizations

Service costing requires special attention to customer participation, heterogeneous time requirements and idle capacity. Time sheets may measure client-contact hours but omit preparation, regulatory documentation, travel, service recovery and supervision. Allocating all shared costs by visits can encourage avoidance of difficult clients or underfunding of essential access. In education, a programme's average cost per registered learner is not identical to its incremental cost of one enrolment or the full social cost of achieving an educational outcome. For public and nonprofit institutions, financial sustainability must be assessed alongside legally assigned duties, access, educational or social purpose and appropriate quality thresholds. Cost classifications should clarify choices rather than determine whose needs deserve service.

23.4 ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING

23.4.1 Why a single overhead rate can distort product economics

Traditional volume-based allocation uses one or a few measures, such as labour or machine hours, to distribute heterogeneous indirect costs. It can work adequately where products consume activities in roughly similar proportions. It becomes less reliable when low-volume specialized products trigger more setup changes, inspections, procurement orders, engineering work or customer support per unit. Cooper and Kaplan (1988) argued that this distortion can cross-subsidize complex products and undermine product-mix or pricing choices. Banker et al. (1995), using 32 manufacturing plants from selected industries, found that transaction-related production complexity explained substantial manufacturing overhead variation. This evidence supports the plausibility of non-volume cost drivers, while its industry and period limit universal inference.

Activity-based costing (ABC) first assigns resource costs to meaningful activities, then allocates those activity costs to objects according to measured drivers. A basic driver rate is pool cost divided by driver quantity. Unit-level drivers include operating hours; batch-level drivers include setups and inspection lots; product-sustaining drivers include engineering changes; facility-sustaining costs may be difficult to trace to particular products without arbitrary allocations. ABC is most valuable where the decision benefit of greater discrimination exceeds its design, measurement and behavioural costs. Gosselin (1997) showed that implementation is related to strategy and organizational features, cautioning against viewing the choice as a software purchase alone.

23.4.2 Reproducible two-product activity-costing extension

Consider a distinct hypothetical diversification scenario in which one factory makes 10,000 standard packs (Product A) and 2,000 customized packs (Product B) while incurring RWF 3,900,000 of relevant overhead. Its traceable or estimated activity pools are RWF 1,200,000 for setups, RWF 900,000 for quality tests and RWF 1,800,000 for machine support. Across both products, there are 12 setups, 90 tests and 3,000 machine hours. Rates therefore equal RWF 100,000 per setup, RWF 10,000 per test and RWF 600 per machine hour. These categories and quantities are deliberately selected for teaching, not drawn from plant records.

Table 23.2. Activity-based overhead attribution in the separate two-product scenario (RWF)

Pool or result	Rate	Product A usage	Product A cost	Product B usage	Product B cost
Setups	100,000/setup	4	400,000	8	800,000
Quality tests	10,000/test	30	300,000	60	600,000
Machine support	600/hour	2,000	1,200,000	1,000	600,000
Total overhead	—	—	1,900,000	—	2,000,000
Units	—	10,000	190 per unit	2,000	1,000 per unit

Note. Pool totals equal RWF 3,900,000. A uniform volume-based rate would be RWF 325 per unit (3,900,000 / 12,000), overstating A's unit overhead by RWF 135 and understating B's by RWF 675. The aggregate reallocations reconcile: 10,000 × 135 = 2,000 × 675 = RWF 1,350,000. *Source:* Author's fully hypothetical calculation, following the conceptual logic of Cooper and Kaplan (1988).

The important finding is not that ABC has discovered an objectively true cost. The same activity quantities could be proxies rather than actual causes: tests may rise because products are inherently risky, because a quality programme demands them or because scheduling is poor. A product's assigned share of facility support may not be avoidable if the product is discontinued. Therefore ABC informs the questions to investigate, rather than establishing that the high-allocated-cost product should be abandoned. Strategic customers may also create value through portfolio complementarity or learning that the unit-cost statement does not represent.

A deeper limitation is formal rather than merely practical. Noreen (1991) demonstrated that the circumstances in which an activity-costing system supplies decision-relevant incremental costs are demanding: cost pools must be specified consistently, pool expenditure must respond to the modeled activity, and product-related activity must be suitably separable and additive. Joint production, congestion, fixed commitments and nonlinear scale effects violate these convenient conditions. An ABC rate can therefore be a more informative attribution than a plantwide rate and still be a poor estimate of a cost that would disappear if Product B were discontinued. This insight qualifies any inference that more differentiated cost allocations automatically improve decisions.

Organizational implementation adds another level of contingency. In a study of 143 firms, Shields (1995) associated perceived ABC implementation success with management support, training, strategic alignment and involvement beyond the accounting department, while the observed success was not explained simply by the choice of software or external consultants. Its cross-sectional, self-reported design does not identify a universal treatment effect, but its mechanisms are plausible: managers will not change schedules, specifications or customer relationships merely because accountants have drawn a more elegant cost diagram. A sound implementation begins with a particular disputed decision and audits whether better drivers alter a feasible choice.

23.4.3 Time-driven ABC and unused capacity

Kaplan and Anderson (2004) proposed time-driven activity-based costing (TDABC) to reduce extensive interviews and model-maintenance burden. Its primary parameters are the cost per practical unit of supplied capacity and estimated time required for an activity, possibly expressed as a time equation sensitive to transaction characteristics. If a service centre supplies 6,000 practical labour minutes at RWF 600,000, the capacity cost rate is RWF 100 per minute. A routine order taking eight minutes consumes an estimated RWF 800 of service capacity, while a complicated order needing twenty minutes consumes RWF 2,000. If used time is only 4,500 minutes, the model attributes RWF 450,000 to used capacity and identifies RWF 150,000 as unused supplied capacity, subject to the cost pool and capacity assumptions. Treating all supplied cost as though used can distort pricing; treating unused capacity as instantly avoidable can be equally misleading.

ABC and TDABC have important implementation conditions: consistent process definitions, accurate time and driver records, adequate training, stakeholder engagement, periodic recalibration and a clear decision purpose. Their apparent sophistication can create false certainty when the enterprise's recordkeeping is weak. A pragmatic Rwandan SME may first distinguish material, labour, setup and delivery activities in a validated spreadsheet before expanding to integrated systems. A high-complexity enterprise may justify more granular data and automated transaction capture, but must retain review of exceptions and data rights.

23.5 COST–VOLUME–PROFIT ANALYSIS

23.5.1 Contribution and break-even logic

Cost–volume–profit (CVP) analysis investigates how sales price, quantity, variable resource use and fixed commitments jointly determine operating profit. For a single product with constant unit price p, unit variable cost v and period fixed costs F, operating profit is π = (p − v)Q − F. Unit contribution margin, c = p − v, is the amount each unit provides toward fixed costs and operating profit. If c > 0, break-even volume is Q_BE = F/c, rounded up to a feasible whole unit; for target operating profit T, Q_T = (F + T)/c. Margin of safety is actual or expected units minus break-even units, expressed also as a percentage of actual or expected volume. The contribution-margin ratio is c/p and may convert break-even units into sales value where product and mix assumptions hold.

These formulas are conditional. They assume a relevant operating range, stable unit price and variable cost, no material product-mix shift, stable fixed-cost commitment, and consistent treatment of production and sales. Above a capacity threshold, a new shift or machine can create a step cost; promotions can reduce realized price;

higher output can increase scrap or overtime. Sales, production and collections may also diverge. CVP is a useful scenario language because its assumptions can be challenged; it is not a forecast simply because the algebra is exact.

23.5.2 Fully worked base model for the Kigali manufacturer

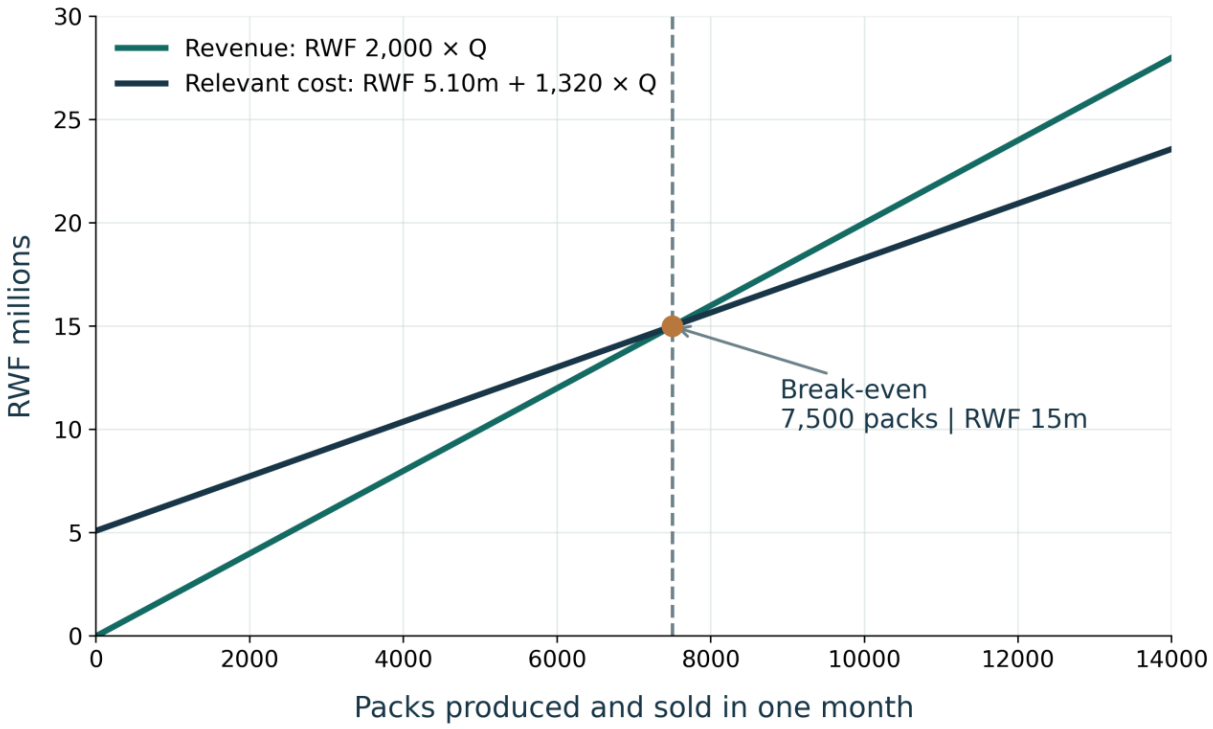
The main teaching enterprise, provisionally named **Imena Foods Ltd**, is entirely fictional. It produces and sells one packaged porridge product. Its normal planning assumptions are a selling price of RWF 2,000, direct materials of RWF 720, direct labour of RWF 360, variable manufacturing overhead of RWF 140 and variable selling cost of RWF 100 per unit. Monthly fixed manufacturing overhead is RWF 3,900,000 and fixed selling and administration is RWF 1,200,000. All figures are Rwandan francs (RWF), before any income tax or financing cost; the standard model assumes units produced equal units sold, no opening or closing inventories, and adequate capacity to deliver the stated range.

Table 23.3. Main fictional manufacturer's contribution and break-even model

Component	RWF per unit or monthly total	Calculation and meaning
Selling price	2,000 per unit	Assumed realized invoice price
Direct materials	720 per unit	Assumed consumption at standard efficiency
Direct labour	360 per unit	0.30 standard hour × RWF 1,200/hour
Variable manufacturing overhead	140 per unit	Activity-sensitive production support
Variable selling expenditure	100 per unit	Fulfilment and sales activity
Total variable cost	1,320 per unit	720 + 360 + 140 + 100
Contribution margin	680 per unit	2,000 − 1,320
Fixed manufacturing + selling/admin	5,100,000 per month	3,900,000 + 1,200,000
Break-even quantity	7,500 units	5,100,000 / 680
Contribution-margin ratio	34.0%	680 / 2,000
Target operating profit of RWF 2,040,000	10,500 units	(5,100,000 + 2,040,000) / 680
Profit at 12,000 sold units	3,060,000	12,000 × 680 − 5,100,000
Margin of safety at 12,000 units	4,500 units (37.5%)	12,000 − 7,500; divide by 12,000

Note. Exact arithmetic follows disclosed assumptions and excludes financing, income tax and inventory movement. *Source:* Author's constructed educational scenario.

Figure 23.2. Revenue and total relevant cost in the main fictional manufacturer's CVP model. Revenue and total cost intersect at 7,500 packs and RWF 15 million. The visual is defined only over the illustrated activity range. *Source: Author's hypothetical model, derived directly from Table 23.3.*



At 12,000 units, revenue is RWF 24,000,000, variable cost is RWF 15,840,000, contribution is RWF 8,160,000 and operating profit is RWF 3,060,000. Break-even sales revenue is RWF 15,000,000. The 37.5% margin of safety means expected volume could fall by 4,500 units, other assumptions held, before the modeled operating result reaches zero. It does not imply a 37.5% probability of safety, nor does it protect the enterprise against slow collections, equipment failure, quality losses or changes in price and input costs.

23.5.3 Sensitivity, operating leverage and multiple products

The model exposes risks that a single profit estimate conceals. A 5% reduction in selling price (RWF 100) lowers contribution to RWF 580, increases break-even volume to approximately 8,794 units and reduces profit at 12,000 units to RWF 1,860,000. A 10% rise in direct-material cost (RWF 72) lowers contribution to RWF 608 and raises break-even volume to approximately 8,389 units; profit at 12,000 units becomes RWF 2,196,000. If both occur simultaneously, contribution falls to RWF 508, break-even rises to approximately 10,040 units, and modeled profit at 12,000 units falls to RWF 996,000. These are controlled comparisons, not predictions of how demand would respond to price changes or cost inflation.

Degree of operating leverage at an observed volume is contribution divided by operating profit: 8,160,000 / 3,060,000 ≈ 2.67 in the base case. Locally, with fixed unit price and cost and unchanged capacity, a 1% volume increase produces an approximately 2.67% increase in operating profit. The measure becomes unstable near break-even and should not be mistaken for a physical elasticity or constant structural property across all volumes. In a multi-product business, break-even calculations require an explicit, stable sales-mix bundle or a separate optimization model. A weighted average contribution cannot reliably guide strategy when mix changes, capacity drivers differ or demand shifts between customer segments. The additional ABC example in Section 23.4 illustrates precisely why complex products may require differentiated costs.

23.6 SHORT-RUN OPERATIONAL DECISIONS

23.6.1 Incremental logic and scarce resources

Short-run choices include accepting special orders, making or buying components, replacing or using equipment, processing jointly produced outputs further, retaining a product, and allocating scarce labour, machine time or materials. Their common method is to compare future cash flows and opportunity consequences that differ across feasible alternatives. Relevant benefits are not necessarily recognized revenue, and relevant costs are not necessarily averages. Any calculation is subordinate to enforceable contract requirements, supplier reliability, quality and safe work. Such decisions can change demand, capacity and stakeholder relationships beyond the immediate period, so the label 'short run' defines the model's horizon rather than eliminating strategic consequences.

For a scarce resource measured consistently, contribution per limiting-factor unit is unit contribution divided by the units of scarce resource consumed. Suppose a standard pack generates RWF 680 contribution using 0.20 bottleneck machine hour, while a special product generates RWF 900 using 0.50 hour. Contribution per bottleneck hour is RWF 3,400 and RWF 1,800 respectively. Subject to demand ceilings, minimum contracts, material availability and process compatibility, the standard pack has a higher contribution opportunity per scarce hour. However, one cannot rank products solely by that ratio when several independent constraints, setup batches or interdependent demand relationships exist; linear programming, integer decisions or robust scenario optimization may then be necessary.

23.6.2 Auditable make-or-buy decision memorandum

Decision question. Should Imena Foods continue producing 4,000 monthly packaging sleeves internally or purchase them from an external supplier? The following additional scenario does not alter the base product's contribution model; it isolates a separable packaging activity to teach a differential decision. The internal activity uses RWF 340 variable manufacturing resources and RWF 30 inspection resources per sleeve; outsourcing would eliminate a specific RWF 400,000 monthly supervisory cost. The supplier quotes RWF 450 per sleeve, with RWF 50,000 total freight and RWF 35,000 receiving inspection. The plant could alternatively employ capacity released by buying to earn RWF 440,000 additional net contribution each month, but only if a second order is actually won and can be fulfilled safely.

Table 23.4. Make-or-buy memorandum: 4,000 sleeves per month (RWF)

Relevant item	Make	Buy
Internal variable manufacture: 4,000 × 340	1,360,000	0
Internal inspection: 4,000 × 30	120,000	0
Avoidable supervision	400,000	0
Supplier purchases: 4,000 × 450	0	1,800,000
Freight and receiving inspection	0	85,000
Direct relevant cost	1,880,000	1,885,000
Economic cost of forgone alternative contribution	440,000	0
Cost including realizable opportunity	2,320,000	1,885,000

Note. Make has a RWF 5,000 advantage if no alternative capacity use is genuinely realizable. With the fully realizable RWF 440,000 alternative contribution, buying has a RWF 435,000 advantage. Do not record opportunity contribution as a supplier invoice. *Source:* Original hypothetical decision memo.

Recommendation and conditions. Buy only if the supplier passes quality, delivery, continuity and contract checks, and management can substantiate the alternative order and capacity release. The economic conclusion reverses if the additional contribution cannot be captured, if inspection and transport costs are understated, or if outsourced capacity is needed to preserve resilience. The decision owner should document validated supplier samples, claims responsibility, alternative-order evidence, forecast volumes, downside exposure, a trial period and an explicit stop rule. The model intentionally does not assign unavoidable general factory overhead as a supposed outsourcing saving.

23.6.3 Special orders, discontinuation and sequencing

For a special order in unused capacity, incremental contribution may be positive even when the unit price is below full absorbed cost, provided it covers all avoidable order-related costs and does not undermine existing market prices, contractual commitments or product integrity. When capacity is constrained, displaced contribution belongs in the calculation. A discontinued product may release traceable expenditures and capacity but not necessarily shared rent or management salary. A product reported as 'loss-making' after allocated overhead can therefore remain economically valuable. Conversely, positive contribution cannot justify continued operation when it depends on unsafe labour intensity, false quality claims or permanent failure to fund necessary replacement capacity. The analytic task is to identify which circumstances can change, over what horizon and subject to what legitimate commitments.

The opening special-order question can now be resolved under transparent alternatives. Assume the proposed 2,000-pack order would be sold at RWF 1,700 per pack, use the base manufacturing variable cost of RWF 1,220 per pack and incur **an additional order-specific** RWF 40 selling/dispatch cost per pack rather than the ordinary RWF 100 selling cost. The order requires a further RWF 100,000 batch-testing expenditure; no extra fixed capacity is needed in the first scenario. Incremental contribution before testing is 2,000 × (1,700 − 1,220 − 40) = RWF 880,000, leaving RWF 780,000 incremental operating benefit. Thus its price being near the RWF 1,610 absorbed manufacturing cost is not the determining criterion. The order should nevertheless be accepted only if it is legally and operationally feasible, collected on acceptable terms, and does not undermine normal sales.

Now suppose the packaging constraint displaces 800 ordinary packs whose contribution would have been RWF 680 each. The order's relevant benefit falls to 880,000 − 100,000 − (800 × 680) = **RWF 236,000**. If 1,500 normal packs must instead be displaced, the same calculation yields **RWF 240,000 adverse**, making rejection preferable under the stated assumptions. This is not evidence that the firm's capacity actually behaves in either way. The correct operational inquiry concerns the packaging station's effective throughput, sequencing, rework, promised contracts and the probability of the additional order being collected. Such evidence, together with potential customer-price effects beyond the month, can reverse a superficially convincing calculation.

23.7 PRICING AND PROFITABILITY ANALYSIS

23.7.1 Cost information is necessary but insufficient for price setting

Cost-based pricing begins with a defined cost and a chosen markup or target margin. A markup on cost differs from a margin on sales: if cost is RWF 1,600 and a 25% markup applies, price is RWF 2,000 and gross margin on sales is 20%, not 25%. Customer value, competitive alternatives, willingness to pay, contract terms, price elasticity and regulatory requirements constrain which prices are feasible. Price choices affect volume, which changes cost absorption, bottleneck loading and cash requirements. The coherent sequence is thus iterative: understand demand and customer benefit; estimate avoidable and full lifecycle resources; evaluate contribution under plausible prices and volumes; test delivery and liquidity; and inspect fairness and legal constraints. Chapter 15 owns pricing strategy and customer-value propositions; the present chapter provides the underlying cost architecture.

23.7.2 Cost-to-serve and customer profitability

Customer profitability is not sales revenue minus a generic percentage of manufacturing overhead. It requires relevant costs of acquisition, order processing, picking, storage, returns, credit, collections, delivery frequency and after-sales response. Two customers buying equal annual quantities at equal prices may create different economic consequences if one consolidates orders and pays promptly while the other requests urgent small deliveries and extended credit. ABC or TDABC can identify service activities, yet an allocated customer loss does not establish that ending the relationship will save the assigned cost. Customer-based analysis should identify avoidable service costs, capacity consequences, future retention value and strategic relationships (Kaplan & Anderson, 2004).

An analytically useful customer statement separates gross invoice revenue, actual discounts and returns, product variable cost, order-specific delivery and handling, account-specific support, credit and collections cost, resulting customer contribution, and disclosed shared or sustaining costs where relevant. It should preserve negative findings rather than hide them in consolidated sales figures. Small enterprises can begin with a transparent monthly customer or route-level table; data-intensive companies may use transaction-level service-cost models with exception controls. In each setting, privacy and fair access matter. A cost-to-serve model can reveal expensive barriers affecting rural, low-income or disabled customers, but it does not establish that those customers should be abandoned. Pricing and service decisions must consider obligations and equitable treatment alongside margins.

Consider two **fictional customer accounts** each purchasing 2,000 packs monthly at RWF 2,000. Each generates RWF 4,000,000 invoiced revenue and RWF 2,640,000 contribution after the baseline RWF 1,320 unit variable cost, leaving RWF 1,360,000 before incremental account-specific activities. Customer A requires 12 special deliveries at RWF 18,000 per delivery and RWF 30,000 in incremental collection and service costs, producing RWF 1,114,000 account contribution. Customer B requires 48 otherwise identical special deliveries and RWF 90,000 in additional service/collection costs, producing RWF 406,000. These **extra** delivery charges explicitly exclude the fulfilment activity already contained in the common RWF 100 unit variable selling cost, so there is no double counting. The example isolates a RWF 708,000 difference in account-specific contribution despite identical invoice revenue. Whether the enterprise can save that expenditure by changing service terms or ending a relationship is a further empirical and contractual question. Shared fixed costs should not be arbitrarily presented as avoidable savings.

23.7.3 Life-cycle, capacity and strategy-informed profitability

Product profitability can be measured at contribution, avoidable traceable profit or full allocated profit levels, each of which serves a different purpose. Development, warranty, disposal, supplier dependency and regulatory compliance may occur outside the accounting month. Lifecycle analysis is valuable where early low-cost estimates overlook later service or waste costs. Pricing under capacity constraints also requires opportunity costs: a scarce packaging hour committed to a low-price order may preclude a higher-contribution order. Conversely, a seemingly unprofitable product may support customers' purchasing bundles or learning; such complementarities require evidence rather than speculative assertions. Management accounting should reveal the trade-offs to strategic management (Chapter 6) and marketing (Chapters 13–16), not dictate them independently.

23.8 BUDGET DESIGN AND COORDINATION

23.8.1 What a budget can and cannot do

A budget is a documented, quantified and time-bounded plan expressing assumptions, priorities, assigned resources and intended outcomes. It coordinates sales, production, procurement, staffing, cash, maintenance and service obligations before those functions impose incompatible commitments. Budgets also provide a basis for monitoring and accountability. These purposes can conflict. Forecasts should express expected outcomes, targets may deliberately stretch performance, resource authorizations determine permission to commit funds, and performance contracts specify evaluation consequences. Combining all four into one number can encourage managers to conceal unfavorable information or negotiate convenient targets. Hansen, Otley and Van der Stede (2003) distinguish approaches that improve budgeting from approaches that substantially replace annual budget-based performance evaluation; neither is a universally valid institutional solution.

Participative budgeting may improve local information sharing, ownership and feasibility, yet can also facilitate slack when employees anticipate punitive evaluation. Top-down budgeting can maintain strategic discipline but overlook local constraints and discourage challenge. Van der Stede (2000) found in an empirical investigation that restrictive budget practices can shift dysfunctional behaviour between slack and short-term orientation. Libby and Lindsay (2010) reported continuing budget use in surveyed North American organizations despite criticism, highlighting the importance of how budgets are applied. These studies do not imply that Rwandan firms experience identical incentive effects. The robust implication is procedural: assumptions and decision rights should be visible, competing information should be reconciled, and targets should be revisable when their causal conditions change.

23.8.2 The operating budget as a connected enterprise model

A master operating budget begins with demand and the sales plan, then derives production, materials, workforce, manufacturing overhead, inventory, selling, administration and expected operating results. Production quantity is planned sales plus desired closing finished units minus opening finished units. Materials to purchase are planned consumption plus desired closing raw materials minus opening raw materials. Staffing requirements incorporate standard hours, shift coverage, skill differences and realistic absence. Each sub-budget therefore depends on previously established assumptions and must be reconciled with resource availability and agreed service standards. A 'sales budget' that does not identify production capacity and collection terms is an aspiration rather than an authorized operating plan.

The production and purchasing sub-budgets can be traced with the same dimensional discipline. If the 10,000-pack sales plan requires no change in finished-goods inventory, planned production is 10,000 packs and standard flour input is 0.80 kg per pack, or 8,000 kg. Suppose opening usable flour inventory is 900 kg and the enterprise responsibly plans to close with 1,200 kg; purchases must then equal 8,000 + 1,200 − 900 = 8,300 kg. At the RWF 900 standard price, the purchasing authorization is RWF 7,470,000, which is distinct from RWF 7,200,000 flour consumption expense. If the supplier is to receive 60% upon delivery and 40% in the following month, the current-month payment arising from these particular purchases is RWF 4,482,000, excluding settlement of earlier payables. This small linkage makes the conceptual difference among resource consumption, acquisition commitment and cash payment observable. It also explains why inventories and supplier terms must be owned jointly by operations, procurement and finance.

For Imena Foods, the original monthly static plan assumes 10,000 units sold at RWF 2,000 each, with per-unit variable cost RWF 1,320 and period fixed costs RWF 5,100,000. Budgeted sales are RWF 20,000,000, variable cost RWF 13,200,000, contribution RWF 6,800,000 and operating profit RWF 1,700,000. A flexible budget recalculates expected amounts at the realized activity level while retaining standard prices, cost rates and the approved fixed-cost envelope. It therefore separates the effect of selling more units from cost or price performance at the same volume. A forecast updates expected conditions; a flexible budget is a controlled

analytical comparator. Managers should not quietly rewrite the original plan and thereby erase the accountability history.

23.8.3 Cash budgeting and financial viability

Profit budgets and cash budgets answer different questions. Accrual sales can be profitable while customer receivables postpone cash; inventory purchases, debt settlement, capital expenditure and tax payments can drain cash independently of the recognized operating result. A cash budget forecasts receipts, payments, financing and the minimum required balance by period. Payment terms, bad-debt exposure, value-added tax treatment where applicable, seasonality and exchange-rate-sensitive imports must be modeled rather than assumed away. Investment expenditure belongs in the capital-expenditure cash schedule, but discounted valuation and financing are treated comprehensively in Chapter 24.

To demonstrate a cash bridge without claiming actual financial data, consider a **separate next-month cash scenario** using Imena Foods' illustrative realized revenue of RWF 23,760,000 and its previous month's assumed sales of RWF 20,000,000. Suppose 70% of current-month invoices are collected during the month and 30% of the preceding month's sales are collected now, without default. Receipts equal 0.70 × 23,760,000 + 0.30 × 20,000,000 = RWF 22,632,000. Suppose the period's gross operating expenditures total RWF 22,025,200, but RWF 300,000 of fixed production cost is noncash depreciation; payments are therefore RWF 21,725,200, under the simplifying assumption that all remaining expenses are paid promptly. Net operating cash inflow is RWF 906,800. With opening bank RWF 1,000,000 and a planned cash purchase of equipment costing RWF 1,400,000, ending cash is RWF 506,800. A minimum policy balance of RWF 1,000,000 produces a potential funding or timing gap of RWF 493,200. This is not a claim that the business has made or will make these cash flows: it demonstrates why apparently positive operating results cannot establish liquidity sufficiency.

23.8.4 Alternative planning practices and budget governance

Rolling forecasts re-estimate near-term performance at regular intervals; flexible budgets normalize outcomes for the activity actually attained; zero-based budgeting asks managers to justify specified expenditures anew rather than automatically inherit prior envelopes; activity-based budgeting works backward from forecast output and activity demands to required capacity. Each technique has different information and transaction costs. Uncritical zero-based exercises can waste scarce management attention and undermine investment in long-term competence, while overly frequent forecast revisions can create instability. Budget design should distinguish the baseline authorization, current forecast, resource-reallocation decisions and exception log. The board or owner should receive an account of meaningful deviations and their causes, not just a favorable or adverse total.

23.9 STANDARD COSTING AND VARIANCE ANALYSIS

23.9.1 Standards and the attribution problem

A standard cost specifies the expected price and quantity of an input for a given activity under a defined operating condition. A variance compares observed and benchmark values; it is a diagnostic prompt, not proof of employee fault. Standard material quantity may be derived from recipe requirements and normal process loss; labour hours from a defensible work method; overhead from capacity and activity assumptions. Standards should be attainable, periodically reviewed, and explicitly differentiated from aspirational improvement targets. A favorable variance can arise from quality-damaging substitution; an adverse variance can reflect procurement disruption, urgent safety measures, strategic improvement or defective standards.

For direct materials, with actual quantity AQ, actual price AP, standard price SP and standard quantity SQ allowed for actual good output, the price variance is AQ(AP − SP), and usage variance is SP(AQ − SQ). For labour, actual hours AH, actual rate AR, standard rate SR and standard hours SH for actual output give rate variance AH(AR − SR) and efficiency variance SR(AH − SH). Positive cost variances are termed adverse under

the sign convention used here; negative cost variances are favorable. The arithmetic decomposition assumes compatible input units and stable definitions. When wages, grades, input mix or time systems change, simple attribution can become misleading and may require more discriminating mix, yield or spending analysis.

23.9.2 Fully reconciled actual and flexible results

Assume the company planned 10,000 packs but sold and produced 12,000. The actual unit selling price was RWF 1,980, so revenue was RWF 23,760,000. The material standard is 0.80 kg per good pack at RWF 900/kg, while actual usage was 9,900 kg at RWF 920/kg, costing RWF 9,108,000. Standard labour is 0.30 hour per pack at RWF 1,200/hour; actual labour is 3,720 hours at RWF 1,260/hour, totaling RWF 4,687,200. Actual variable manufacturing overhead was RWF 1,780,000 and variable selling RWF 1,260,000. Actual fixed manufacturing overhead was RWF 4,020,000, with fixed selling/administration RWF 1,170,000. The higher prices, input usage and expenditure are assumed figures, not documented real-company observations.

Table 23.5. Static budget, activity-adjusted budget and illustrative actuals (RWF)

Measure	Static plan: 10,000 units	Flexible comparator: 12,000 units	Actual: 12,000 units
Sales revenue	20,000,000	24,000,000	23,760,000
Direct materials	7,200,000	8,640,000	9,108,000
Direct labour	3,600,000	4,320,000	4,687,200
Variable manufacturing overhead	1,400,000	1,680,000	1,780,000
Variable selling	1,000,000	1,200,000	1,260,000
Total variable costs	13,200,000	15,840,000	16,835,200
Contribution	6,800,000	8,160,000	6,924,800
Fixed manufacturing overhead	3,900,000	3,900,000	4,020,000
Fixed selling and administration	1,200,000	1,200,000	1,170,000
Operating profit	1,700,000	3,060,000	1,734,800

Note. All three columns assume units produced equal units sold and no inventory movement. The flexible comparator uses original standard rates, not revised actual rates. Actual profit = 23,760,000 − 16,835,200 − 5,190,000 = RWF 1,734,800. *Source:* Author's internally reconciled fictional case.

23.9.3 Price, efficiency and spending components

The direct-material price variance equals 9,900 × (920 − 900) = RWF 198,000 adverse; material usage variance equals (9,900 − 9,600) × 900 = RWF 270,000 adverse. Their sum, RWF 468,000 adverse, exactly reconciles actual materials RWF 9,108,000 with the flexible standard RWF 8,640,000. Direct-labour rate variance is 3,720 × (1,260 − 1,200) = RWF 223,200 adverse; labour efficiency variance is (3,720 − 3,600) × 1,200 = RWF 144,000 adverse. Together they reconcile actual labour RWF 4,687,200 with standard flexible labour RWF 4,320,000. These calculations separate observed arithmetic differences, not necessarily the managerial causes of those differences.

Table 23.6. Flexible-budget performance bridge for 12,000 packs

Component	Variation versus flexible comparator	Classification
Selling-price effect: (1,980 − 2,000) × 12,000	−240,000	Adverse revenue
Material-price variance	−198,000	Adverse cost
Material-usage variance	−270,000	Adverse cost
Labour-rate variance	−223,200	Adverse cost
Labour-efficiency variance	−144,000	Adverse cost
Variable manufacturing overhead spending	−100,000	Adverse cost
Variable selling spending	−60,000	Adverse cost
Fixed manufacturing overhead spending	−120,000	Adverse cost
Fixed selling/admin spending	+30,000	Favorable cost
Net actual-versus-flexible difference	−1,325,200	Adverse profit

Note. Flex operating profit RWF 3,060,000 minus RWF 1,325,200 = actual profit RWF 1,734,800. Static-to-flex volume effect = (12,000 − 10,000) × RWF 680 = RWF 1,360,000 favorable. Actual minus static profit = RWF 34,800 favorable after both effects. These are additive bridge components, not independent causal effects. *Source:* Original verified arithmetic.

The case exposes a central danger in budget evaluation. Comparing actual operating profit of RWF 1,734,800 with the original RWF 1,700,000 plan suggests that the enterprise slightly exceeded its financial target. Yet the appropriate flexible comparator for 12,000 packs is RWF 3,060,000, and the company underperformed that expectation by RWF 1,325,200. Increased volume concealed weaker price realization and higher resource costs. Conversely, a manager evaluated solely against the flexible target might be punished for safety-driven downtime, exchange-rate shocks or changed production specifications beyond that manager's control. Variances should trigger explanation, independent evidence and responsible correction, not automatic sanctions.

23.9.4 Volume, capacity and causation

Fixed-overhead volume variances depend on the denominator-level capacity used to establish an application rate and the chosen absorption convention. They are not equal to cash savings or losses. Producing more units can reduce absorbed fixed cost per unit while increasing inventory and cash tied up in materials; overproduction to improve reported unit cost may destroy economic value. Root-cause analysis should connect material usage to spoilage, batch mix, quality specifications and inventory records; labour efficiency to scheduling, rework, equipment reliability and safe working conditions; and price variance to supplier quotes, foreign-currency exposure, purchasing terms and input quality. An integrated monthly review should include production, purchasing, quality, sales, HR and finance rather than naming one departmental culprit from one accounting ratio.

23.10 PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT SYSTEMS

23.10.1 From responsibility centres to organizational outcomes

Responsibility accounting organizes performance information around managers' actual decision rights. A cost centre is primarily accountable for specified resources and service obligations; a revenue centre for justified sales outcomes; a profit centre for revenues and controllable costs; an investment centre for economic results relative to assets or capital entrusted. These classifications guide evaluation, not the legal boundaries of a firm. In complex organizations, the procurement manager's cheaper material can increase production scrap, while a salesperson's rising revenue can create cash losses through weak credit terms. Local incentives should therefore be evaluated against enterprise-wide constraints and interdependencies.

Otley (1999) framed performance management through purposes, strategies, targets, rewards and information feedback. Simons (1995) distinguished diagnostic feedback from interactive use of information for strategic uncertainty. Malmi and Brown (2008) argued that accounting controls interact with administrative, cultural and reward mechanisms. These approaches reveal why a measurement system is not simply a list of indicators: it is an arrangement for directing attention, allocating authority, challenging assumptions, learning from exceptions and justifying consequences. A narrow reliance on variance-to-budget may neglect resilience, fairness, customer experience and long-term capability.

23.10.2 Balanced indicators and their validation

Kaplan and Norton (1992) introduced the balanced scorecard to connect financial results with customer, internal-process and learning perspectives. Its principal educational value is to make assumptions about prospective drivers of results explicit. However, the presence of a nonfinancial measure does not prove that improving it will improve profit or social outcomes. Ittner and Larcker (2003) examined failures to establish strategic causal links between metrics and outcomes. A useful scorecard should specify the hypothesized mechanism, operational definition, denominator, source owner, frequency, decision threshold, risk of gaming, and evidence required before attributing results to an intervention.

Table 23.7. Cross-functional performance register for the illustrative manufacturer

Dimension	Indicator and definition	Intended decision	Potential distortion and safeguard
Financial	Contribution per delivered pack; profit versus flexible budget	Pricing, capacity and cost reviews	Do not reward volume without cash and quality checks
Customer	On-time and in-full orders / all due orders	Promise and delivery reliability	Verify order population and exception coding
Production	Saleable good units / units started	Material yield and process improvement	Audit reject standards and safety; avoid hidden rework
Supply	Accepted deliveries / deliveries due	Supplier continuity and specification	Check quality and lead times, not only purchase price
Workforce	Recorded paid hours and safety incidents per defined exposure	Safe staffing and process design	Protect reporting and employee voice against retaliation
Cash	Receivables overdue by specified days / credit receivables	Credit and collection action	Avoid indiscriminate exclusion of vulnerable customers
Environment	Material wasted in kg and associated RWF cost by process	Prevent loss and external harm	Verify mass balance and disposal records

Note. This register is a proposed diagnostic instrument, not a validated composite performance index. Indicators require local definitions and documented measurement procedures. *Source:* Original synthesis informed by Kaplan and Norton (1992), Ittner and Larcker (2003) and ISO 14051:2011.

23.10.3 Gaming, target displacement and procedural justice

Metrics change behaviour. Targets for low inventory can increase stockouts; low purchasing prices can increase rejects; high equipment utilization can lengthen queues; short delivery times can encourage unsafe driving. A measure that is acceptable for learning may be inappropriate for high-stakes remuneration when attribution is uncertain. Management should separate diagnostic measures from contractual targets, protect good-faith reporting of hazards, and establish procedures for independent review. Performance evaluation should consider controllability and the evidence of causal mechanisms. Where multidimensional judgments remain unavoidable, the decision process should disclose them rather than conceal them behind pseudo-scientific scores.

This is also a problem of organizational power rather than only badly chosen indicators. Miller and O'Leary (1987) show historically how standard-cost and budget techniques helped render individual activity calculable and governable. Calculability creates possibilities for accountability, but it can also establish unequal capacities to define the standard and contest the exception. An appropriate system therefore identifies who sets the denominator, whose time is visible, whether staff may record interruptions without sanction, and whether a variance is attributable to an individual or to organizational conditions. Employees should be able to challenge data errors and safety-relevant targets without retaliation. Financial success at the expense of suppressed exceptions is not reliable evidence of control effectiveness.

23.11 DECISION-SUPPORT ANALYTICS

23.11.1 Dashboards, forecasts and decision models

Operational accounting increasingly draws on ERP systems, payment platforms, point-of-sale data, sensors, inventory scanners and cloud spreadsheets. These instruments can improve timeliness, link transactions to activities and enable granular variance monitoring. They can also reproduce incorrect master data at greater speed and turn arbitrary allocations into seemingly authoritative predictions. Granlund (2011) emphasizes the organizational and design work behind digital accounting systems, while Bhimani (2020) cautions that digital data change the methodological conditions under which accounting claims are studied. A dashboard should identify sources, periods, definitions, data cutoffs, missing values, reconciliations and authorized overrides, not merely display attractive colour-coded deviations.

A forecast should identify its target variable, horizon, base period, model and evaluation metric. Mean absolute error is $MAE = \Sigma|A_t - F_t|/n$; mean absolute percentage error is $MAPE = 100\Sigma|A_t - F_t|/(n\ A_t)$ only where actual values are nonzero and consistently defined. MAPE can behave poorly near zero; intermittent demand may require other methods. Forecast accuracy is not itself proof of decision value: an almost perfect demand forecast may still produce poor output if lead times, prices, cash or capacity are omitted. Scenario analysis varies plausible assumptions jointly; sensitivity analysis varies selected drivers to identify fragile conclusions. Neither assigns a defensible probability without additional evidence.

A small forecast-error calculation makes the reporting obligation concrete. For three illustrative months, suppose actual orders were 1,000, 1,200 and 900, while forecasts were 950, 1,100 and 1,050. The absolute errors are 50, 100 and 150 orders, so $MAE = (50 + 100 + 150)/3 =$ **100 orders**. Because all actual values are positive, MAPE is also calculable: $(100/3) \times (50/1{,}000 + 100/1{,}200 + 150/900) =$ **10.0%**. Reporting '10% error' without the denominator convention conceals that the largest relative error occurred in the lowest-volume month. Three observations are too few to establish stable predictive performance; a responsible evaluation also compares a simple seasonal or naive baseline, examines systematic overforecasting, and considers whether stockouts or lost sales make the observed order series a censored measure of demand.

23.11.2 AI assistance, model control and information security

Artificial intelligence can assist classification of transactions, exception detection, explanatory drafting, anomaly screening and scenario exploration. Where validated, such applications may release staff time for substantive judgment. They also create specific hazards: model hallucination, inconsistent reasoning, unauthorized exposure of supplier or employee data, biased anomaly flags, software dependency and automation complacency. Management accountants should treat AI outputs as hypotheses or computed proposals subject to reconciliation with primary records, transparent version control, human approval and documented error testing. A generated narrative that misstates the sign of a labour variance is not acceptable simply because it sounds plausible. Technology governance should distinguish model-generated content from verified transaction facts and track the identity of the person authorizing a financial commitment.

For resource-constrained enterprises, the optimal digital architecture may be a well-protected spreadsheet with a controlled chart of accounts, validated item master, reconciled bank data and a monthly exception meeting. At greater scale, integrated databases and automated exception rules may be worthwhile. The sequence should follow process stability and evidence quality rather than vendor marketing. Where cash records, point-of-sale receipts and inventory balances disagree, a more sophisticated algorithm can intensify, not remedy, the underlying evidence problem.

23.11.3 Environmental and sustainability accounting

Conventional product costing can omit the economic significance of wasted materials, energy, unsafe disposal, water and future remediation, particularly when costs are pooled or externalized. Material-flow cost accounting (MFCA) identifies physical material flows and allocates associated monetary costs to useful product and material losses. ISO 14051:2011 provides a general MFCA framework and confirms that the standard remains current; it is not a certification standard. The approach helps managers compare yield improvement, process redesign and material-loss reduction, while leaving unresolved the valuation of harms borne by people outside the enterprise (International Organization for Standardization [ISO], 2011). A process losing 100 kg of input at RWF 900/kg has at least RWF 90,000 in input-material cost associated with loss, before considering energy, handling or disposal. This simple physical-financial reconciliation can reveal value that a monthly account labelled 'production materials' obscures.

The governance relevance of MFCA lies in distinguishing an observable physical balance from a monetized environmental claim. Recording 1,000 kg of input, 900 kg of saleable output and 100 kg of material loss can verify mass balance if the process boundary is complete; valuing the 100 kg at RWF 900/kg yields RWF 90,000 of material-input value embedded in the loss. Yet it does not by itself measure the cost of water pollution, greenhouse-gas emissions, downstream disposal or public health. Those impacts require different boundary definitions, external evidence and valuation judgments. Managers should not label an internal RWF 90,000 material-loss estimate the 'total environmental cost' or use an apparent savings calculation to erase unpriced impacts. The strength of MFCA is to connect finance to measurable material stewardship while admitting what its financial scope omits.

23.12 ETHICAL MANAGEMENT ACCOUNTING AND RESPONSIBLE RESOURCE ALLOCATION

23.12.1 Technical accuracy does not settle moral legitimacy

Management accounting affects whose work is rewarded, whose customer is served, which supplier receives an order and whether environmental loss is recognized. Its ethical dilemmas arise precisely because management models necessarily simplify reality. Classification can conceal the distribution of burdens: overtime may be reported as a productivity gain while family care costs shift to workers; a cheaper supplier price may depend on unsafe conditions; 'customer unprofitability' may result from discriminatory infrastructure. Profitability and social welfare are not identical constructs. Management accountants must be clear about empirical consequences, institutional duties and moral judgments instead of using apparently neutral cost figures to obscure disputed choices.

The IMA's Statement of Ethical Professional Practice, effective November 2022, identifies overarching principles of honesty, fairness, objectivity and responsibility, and standards concerning competence, confidentiality, integrity and credibility (IMA, 2022). These requirements offer a professional framework for accurate, timely communication; disclosing limitations; avoiding conflicts; protecting confidential records; and resisting selective presentation. A manager who suppresses material usage variances to preserve a bonus violates informational trust even when the accounting entries ultimately balance. Ethical responsibility also requires escalation and remedy when manipulation, retaliation or safety risks arise.

23.12.2 Cost shifting, gaming and short-termism

Costs can be shifted across products, periods, departments, subcontractors or society without changing underlying resource consumption. Allocating extra overhead to a small product can justify eliminating it even though the factory retains most costs. Delaying maintenance can produce a favorable spending variance while increasing failure probability. Capitalizing expenditure inappropriately can improve reported profit without improving cash or economic efficiency; the external reporting implications belong to Chapter 22. A punitive labour efficiency target can pressure employees to work off the clock or underreport defects. Such mechanisms show why financial statements, cost models and operational records must be reconciled while protecting worker voice and independent challenge.

The ethical decision procedure is substantive rather than ceremonial. Managers should first identify lawful and non-negotiable obligations, then define affected parties and feasible options, test evidence and distributional impacts, disclose conflicts and uncertainty, compare alternatives within admissible boundaries, assign responsibility and record mechanisms for appeal and correction. Quantified expected value may help rank options after constraints are respected, but cannot authorize breach of consent, unsafe products, fraudulent records or retaliation. This normative constraint is consistent with the book's integrated view of accountable enterprise performance and leaves comprehensive biblical analysis to Chapter 34.

23.12.3 Professional judgment under scarcity

Scarcity creates difficult choices between current liquidity, employee development, price accessibility, quality investment and environmental stewardship. A resource-allocation recommendation should distinguish unavoidable statutory duties, reversible operational decisions and long-term capabilities vulnerable to neglect. A small manufacturer's decision not to purchase an advanced costing system may be economically sound; its decision not to reconcile wages or material losses because it is small is not. Proportionate governance means accurate enough information for the stakes, credible accountability for those who can act, and safeguards against imposing unseen losses on less powerful stakeholders. Responsible managerial accounting is therefore an ongoing practice of tested judgment, not a moral label attached to a dashboard.

23.13 RWANDA-CENTRED APPLICATION AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON

23.13.1 What official Rwanda data do and do not establish

The NISR's Integrated Business Enterprise Survey for reference year 2024 estimated **278,060 business enterprises** and reported that **at least 87%** of enterprises operated informally. The NISR also reported that **62.6% of surveyed manufacturing enterprises did not fully use their productive capacity** and identified factors including insufficient demand and difficulties with reliable supply of inputs (NISR, 2025f). These are population or survey findings, not cost-accounting adoption rates. They do not show what proportion of managers use budgets, ABC, variance analysis or digital accounting software, nor do they establish an econometric relationship between management accounting and productivity. Their significance for Chapter 23 lies in the operating conditions to which costing systems must adapt.

Extensive informality makes it inappropriate to presume universal access to audited statements, specialized costing staff, machine-time logs or consistent separation between personal and enterprise transactions. At the same time, informality is heterogeneous: some unregistered businesses keep disciplined stock and cash records; some registered firms maintain incomplete internal controls. Capacity underutilization means that average absorbed fixed costs may be highly sensitive to output. It also presents a distinctive strategic question: unused capacity can reflect weak demand, input uncertainty, seasonality, unavoidable maintenance or deliberate resilience buffers, each calling for a different response. The relevant policy and enterprise question is not whether more production always lowers cost, but whether a profitable, safe and cash-collectible market exists for that production.

23.13.2 Integrated diagnosis of the hypothetical manufacturer

Imena Foods Ltd is a constructed teaching enterprise situated in Kigali solely for contextual plausibility; there are no actual company interviews, filed accounts, consumer surveys or management decisions underlying the figures. The proposed monthly sequence begins with a credible standard bill of materials, 0.80 kg per pack at RWF 900/kg, and 0.30 paid labour hour at RWF 1,200/hour. It assigns RWF 140 variable factory overhead and RWF 100 variable selling expense per unit, together with separately authorized fixed monthly costs. The initial budget uses 10,000 sales and production units; the illustrative realized period involves 12,000. These assumptions must be checked by operational managers before such a model could inform a real commitment.

The first decision concerns commercial viability. At the standard price of RWF 2,000 and contribution of RWF 680, the plant breaks even at 7,500 packs, subject to the model's relevant range. The second concerns the accuracy of costs and incentives. At 12,000 realized packs, actual profit of RWF 1,734,800 marginally exceeds the RWF 1,700,000 static target, but underperforms the activity-adjusted benchmark by RWF 1,325,200. The management team should not celebrate the former comparison without investigating the latter, nor assume all adverse variances are caused by shop-floor inefficiency. Material price and usage both worsened; labour rate and paid hours exceeded standards; actual price was below the plan. Finance should reconcile supplier invoices and worker payroll; production and quality should check material loss, machine reliability and batch changes; marketing should explain actual price concessions; and HR should ensure workers' records and rights are accurately represented.

The third decision concerns liquidity. Even where revenue exceeds RWF 23 million, realistic collection patterns and equipment payments can create a financing gap, as the worked cash bridge shows. Procurement should coordinate supplier credit, operations should avoid speculative overproduction, and finance should distinguish recognized profit from available funds. The fourth decision concerns enterprise boundaries: the packaging make-or-buy problem is almost evenly balanced when only direct cost is considered; it changes materially when a documented alternative use of capacity is added. This result can support a conditional outsourcing recommendation, not an irrevocable decision. Supplier due diligence, product safety and genuine customer

demand remain necessary conditions. These four decisions together illustrate the chapter's central point: no single accounting number is sufficient to govern an interdependent enterprise.

23.13.3 International comparison and limits of transfer

The historical costing critique and modern ABC literature developed substantially in industrial settings with diverse products, sizable indirect costs and comparatively structured records. Cooper and Kaplan (1988) identify distortions under volume-based product allocation; Banker et al. (1995) show, in 32 selected manufacturing plants, that transactions related to production complexity have explanatory power beyond production volume. These documented international studies are valuable for identifying causal hypotheses and cost-model designs; they cannot be transferred as ready-made parameters to a Kigali food processor or used to infer that all Rwandan manufacturers should deploy complex ABC software.

Table 23.8. International concepts and context-sensitive transfer to Rwanda

Established practice or evidence	Explanatory contribution	Contextual condition in Rwandan enterprise	Proportionate adaptation
Traditional standard costing	Organizes recipes, hours and routine spending controls	Weak primary records or variable input quality can defeat precision	Verify batch sheets and physical counts before tight targets
ABC evidence from diversified factories	Product complexity may drive overhead beyond volume	Some SMEs have few products and minimal support pools	Add activity pools only where allocative distortion is consequential
TDABC	Makes service-time heterogeneity and unused capacity visible	Reliable time estimates and practical capacity may be difficult to observe	Pilot a few transaction types and reconcile to actual payroll
Annual and participative budgets	Coordinate departments and resource commitments	Owner-manager centralization and volatile cash may complicate participation	Use rolling cash reviews and visible assumptions with named owners
Balanced performance systems	Connect financial and nonfinancial objectives	Data quality and reporting capacity vary significantly	Start with a small auditable set of service, yield, cash and safety indicators
Material-flow cost accounting	Exposes financial costs of physical material losses	Measurement instruments and environmental data may be limited	Begin with mass balance for major inputs and document uncertainty

Note. This is a transferability assessment, not an empirical comparison of measured adoption or effects in the listed populations. *Sources:* Cooper and Kaplan (1988); Banker et al. (1995); Kaplan and Anderson (2004); Chenhall (2003); ISO (2011); NISR (2025f).

The normative boundary of transfer is equally important. A large multinational may use algorithmic scoring of productivity and highly granular surveillance, but the technical availability of such controls does not establish their proportionality, legality or justice in a smaller workplace. Similarly, the fact that a sophisticated management accounting system is used internationally does not prove its cost-effectiveness in a Rwandan enterprise whose most immediate problem is missing stock counts or inaccurate customer debt records. Appropriate modernization should proceed from a documented decision problem to a proportionate information system, rather than from an imported system to a retrospectively invented justification.

23.14 INTEGRATIVE THEORETICAL DISCUSSION AND RESEARCH AGENDA

23.14.1 A conditional model of accounting usefulness

The preceding evidence supports a conceptual distinction between **numerical correctness**, **decision relevance**, **institutional credibility** and **normative legitimacy**. Numerical correctness means that arithmetic, units and reconciliations are accurate. Decision relevance means that the model includes costs and benefits actually sensitive to the available alternatives and excludes misleading allocations. Institutional credibility requires verifiable records, challengeable assumptions, appropriate authority and reliable feedback. Normative legitimacy requires decisions to respect enforceable rights, non-negotiable safety protections, justified claims and honest disclosure. A system can be numerically correct but decision-irrelevant, as when a full absorbed unit cost is applied without adjustment to an incremental order. It can be relevant but institutionally incredible, as when a supplier quotation has not been verified. It can be credible yet illegitimate, as when apparent cost savings depend on coercion or preventable harm. The four dimensions must therefore be analyzed separately and brought together through explicit managerial judgment.

Figure 23.3. Conditional management accounting decision model. Verified resource and operational evidence → decision-specific economic model (incremental and lifecycle consequences) → organizational challenge (strategy, operations, marketing, people and finance) → constraint check (law, safety, integrity, stakeholder rights) → authorized choice and implementation → observed outcomes, variance interpretation and model revision. *Source: Original conceptual synthesis drawing on Chenhall (2003), Otley (1999), Malmi and Brown (2008) and IMA (2022); unvalidated as a general causal model.*



This model does not deny the technical value of sophisticated costing. Rather, it locates technical sophistication within a wider problem of warranted organizational inference. Activity drivers should be supported by credible resource consumption evidence; budgets should distinguish expectations from authorization and evaluation; dashboards should preserve their source definitions; and all analyses should acknowledge counterfactual uncertainty. Accordingly, Chapter 23 advances the enterprise systems argument of Chapter 1 and the evidential discipline of Chapter 4 while operationalizing the accounting concepts established in Chapter 22.

23.14.2 Competing interpretations and unresolved debates

Several scholarly controversies remain unresolved. First, the benefit of more precise activity costing is decision- and context-dependent: improved resource attribution can support better pricing and operational redesign, while costly measurement, false precision and nonavoidable pool allocations can reduce usefulness. Second, budgeting is neither inherently dysfunctional nor automatically coordinating; outcomes depend on how targets, expectations, resource constraints and rewards are separated. Third, performance measures are not causally self-interpreting: associations among quality, employee outcomes and profit may reflect omitted variables, delayed effects or reverse causality. Fourth, digital accounting may reduce reporting delays without improving organizational judgment when data governance and challenge capacity are weak. Fifth, narrow enterprise financial analysis may overlook environmental and human costs that are economically real but unpriced or borne by others.

The research implication is methodological. A comparison of firms using ABC with firms not using ABC may suffer from selection bias because adopters differ in size, complexity and managerial quality. A before-after productivity improvement may coincide with new equipment, staff changes or rising demand. Budgeting research based on self-reports may confound the existence of formal rules with enacted practice. Strong studies would specify the decision outcome, treatment, context, plausible counterfactual and mechanisms of adoption. Multi-method designs could combine administrative accounting records, observed workflow changes and interviews conducted with appropriate ethical approval; secondary-data comparative studies could test publicly available correlations while acknowledging identification limits. These research designs are proposed opportunities, not procedures conducted for this chapter.

23.14.3 Testable propositions and an implementable agenda

Four propositions follow as hypotheses rather than demonstrated universal laws. **P1:** Greater cost-model differentiation will be associated with improved decision outcomes principally where products or customers consume heterogeneous support activities and driver data are credible. **P2:** The relationship between budgeting intensity and performance will be moderated by target use, managerial participation, environmental uncertainty and the availability of legitimate challenge. **P3:** The performance benefit of digital management accounting will depend on data quality, decision rights and the integrity of human oversight, rather than digital adoption alone. **P4:** Integrating physical resource-loss measures with monetary costing will improve the detection of selected production inefficiencies, but its effects on wider environmental outcomes will depend on boundary selection and implementation. Empirical tests require explicit variable definitions, sampling, appropriate comparison strategies and independent attention to unintended effects.

For Rwanda and comparable African economies, research priorities include the incidence and quality of costing routines in formal and informal enterprises; whether simple reconciled cash-and-stock systems outperform more complex but poorly maintained software; the economics of cost information under volatile import prices; the measurement of unused capacity; the role of owner-manager authority in budget integrity; and the effects of transparent employee-informed standards on quality, remuneration and productivity. Public datasets such as the NISR survey establish context, but organization-level cost records and justified research permissions would be necessary to test most causal mechanisms. A useful scholarly contribution would specify where standard prescriptions fail and which elements of disciplined accounting remain robust across contexts.

A defensible secondary-data research design could begin by assembling the dated NISR enterprise-survey tables, identifying whether any public-use information reports recordkeeping, industry, establishment size, ownership and capacity utilization, and documenting each variable's definition and denominator. Published information could support stratified descriptive comparisons, but management-accounting adoption and outcome effects should not be inferred unless those variables are actually observed. A later organization-level study could preregister a specific intervention, such as reconciled daily stock counts plus monthly flexible-budget review, and assess data-error rates, stock discrepancies and cash reconciliation before and after

implementation against suitable comparators. Important threats would include self-selection, concurrent process changes, seasonal demand, reporting incentives and enterprise survival. Such a design would test a restricted mechanism rather than presume that adopting accounting software creates profitability.

23.15 CHAPTER SYNTHESIS AND CONCLUSION

Cost information becomes reliable decision support only when an enterprise distinguishes the economic question from the bookkeeping convention. Direct and indirect costs depend on the selected object; fixed and variable categories depend on activity and horizon; sunk, opportunity and avoidable costs depend on feasible alternatives. Product-costing systems must reconcile reported inventory and internal contribution without pretending that an overhead allocation is a cash consequence. ABC and time-driven costing can reveal complexity and unused capacity, but are valuable only when their drivers, decision purpose and information costs are defensible.

Contribution and CVP analysis clarify the structural relationship among price, volume, variable resources, capacity and fixed commitments. Yet break-even arithmetic remains conditional and cannot replace demand evidence, liquidity analysis, safety obligations or scenario tests. Budgets translate enterprise plans into coordinated commitments, while flexible budgets and variance analysis distinguish activity effects from pricing and resource deviations. The Imena Foods scenario demonstrates how a seemingly favorable static-budget result can conceal severe deterioration against an activity-adjusted benchmark, and how a nearly balanced direct make-or-buy calculation can reverse after a genuine alternative use of capacity is recognized. These findings arise from disclosed teaching assumptions, not observed corporate performance.

More advanced controls cannot compensate for weak governance. Responsibility centres, balanced measures, digital dashboards and AI assistance should make uncertainty and trade-offs more visible, not hide them behind confident scores. Environmental and human impacts require physical, institutional and moral interpretation as well as monetary accounting. In an African enterprise environment characterized by heterogeneous scale, informality and capacity constraints, a lean, auditable cost-and-cash model may be more valuable than a complex system without dependable source records. The underlying scholarly conclusion is that useful management accounting is a governed relationship among evidence, economic relevance, feasible coordination, accountable learning and legitimate consequences. Chapter 24 develops the longer-horizon financing and investment decisions for which this internally coherent information provides an essential foundation.

23.16 KEY TERMINOLOGY AND EDUCATIONAL ASSESSMENT

23.16.1 Cumulative glossary

The following terms are defined with the cost object, decision horizon or accountability boundary in view. They should be read as analytical conventions rather than interchangeable labels.

Table 23.9. Key management-accounting terminology and decision significance

Term	Precise meaning and interpretation
Absorption costing	Product-costing method assigning eligible variable and fixed manufacturing expenditure to units, with reporting governed by applicable inventory standards.
Activity-based costing (ABC)	Attribution of resource costs through specified activities and drivers; allocations do not automatically equal avoidable costs.
Avoidable cost	Future expenditure that can genuinely be eliminated by selecting a feasible alternative over a defined period.
Break-even volume	Sales volume at which modeled contribution exactly covers the specified fixed commitments.
Budget slack	Deliberately understated attainable results or overstated resource needs during budget negotiation.
Capacity cost rate	Supplied resource cost divided by its practical available capacity in consistent units.
Contribution margin	Defined revenue less activity-related variable costs before specified fixed commitments.
Cost driver	Measurable activity or resource-consumption factor used to explain, estimate or allocate cost.
Cost object	Product, service, order, customer, unit, project or decision to which costs are attributed.
Flexible budget	Performance benchmark recomputed for realized activity using agreed ex ante standards and rates.
Margin of safety	Excess of actual or forecast sales above modeled break-even sales, given specified conditions.
Opportunity cost	Economic value of the best feasible option sacrificed when another alternative is chosen.
Relevant range	Activity interval over which a particular cost function is treated as sufficiently stable.
Responsibility centre	Organizational unit with declared resource authority and corresponding reporting accountability.
Standard cost	Predetermined expected price or quantity of an input under defined process and operating assumptions.
Sunk cost	Irrecoverable prior outlay that a present choice ordinarily cannot alter.
Time-driven ABC	Capacity-rate approach attributing resource cost using estimated practical time demands.
Variance	Difference between actual and benchmark under a disclosed sign, measurement and responsibility convention.
Working-capital exposure	Cash tied up in receivables and inventories, net of relevant operating finance; financial management is treated in Chapter 24.

23.16.2 Foundational comprehension and analytical interpretation

Question F1 (LO1–LO2). Explain why an externally reported inventory cost and an incremental special-order cost can legitimately differ. Identify at least two circumstances in which a commonly described 'fixed cost' becomes relevant to a decision, and distinguish an opportunity cost from a sunk cost.

Question F2 (LO3). Describe the conditions in which job costing, process costing and activity-based costing are each useful. Critically explain why activity drivers improve some allocation decisions but do not automatically determine avoidable expenditure or optimal product discontinuation.

Question F3 (LO5–LO6). Explain the difference among a static budget, a flexible budget, a rolling forecast and a performance target. Assess why an adverse labour variance does not by itself prove poor employee performance.

23.16.3 Worked and applied quantitative exercises

Exercise A1: CVP stress test (LO2, LO4). Using Imena Foods' baseline, calculate the break-even quantity, target quantity for RWF 2,040,000 operating profit, margin of safety at 12,000 sales and revised operating profit if the selling price declines to RWF 1,900 while material cost increases by 10%. Interpret whether the original 12,000-unit sales forecast is sufficient evidence of financial viability and identify two additional tests.

Exercise A2: Costing redesign (LO3, LO6). Recalculate the two-product ABC allocations in Table 23.2. Suppose quality tests for customized packs increase from 60 to 75 without changing available testing capacity or the RWF 900,000 support cost. Distinguish the implications of recalculating a cost allocation rate from the actual short-run cash consequences. Discuss how observed test frequency could reflect product design, customer specifications or process failure.

Exercise A3: Budget and variances (LO5). Reconstruct the 10,000-unit static and 12,000-unit flexible budgets and calculate the four direct-material and labour components from the stated standard and actual quantities and rates. Reconcile profit from the static plan through the volume effect and flexible-budget deviations to actual operating profit. Identify which findings require independent operational evidence before an intervention is justified.

Exercise A4: Make-or-buy and cash risk (LO4, LO8). Reproduce Table 23.4, then analyze three scenarios: no available alternative order; verified alternative contribution of RWF 440,000; and a supplier quote rising by RWF 120 per sleeve. Discuss the quality, workforce and continuity conditions under which buying remains preferable. Separately reproduce the cash bridge and calculate the minimum funding requirement against the stated policy balance.

23.16.4 Advanced integrative assignment

Assignment C1: Management accounting redesign for a Rwandan enterprise (LO1–LO8). Select a real enterprise category in Rwanda, such as a food processor, independent distributor, cooperative or service organization, without claiming access to confidential company data. On the basis of published evidence and transparently declared constructed assumptions, design a 12-month management accounting architecture. The submission should include an evidence register, cost-object map, fixed/variable and relevant-cost classifications, an activity-driver justification, a sales-production-cash budget linkage, a flexible-budget/variance protocol, a balanced five-to-seven-indicator dashboard, an ethical-risk review and a decision memorandum. It must specify which claims are externally evidenced, which figures are pedagogical assumptions, how the analysis could be tested, and which cross-functional actors must approve implementation. Comparisons with at least one published international costing or management-control study should explain contextual limits rather than assert automatic transferability.

23.16.5 Educator answer notes and evaluative rubric

The numerical answers to Exercise A1 should be demonstrated rather than merely reported. Unit contribution is RWF 680 (2,000 − 1,320), producing break-even of 5,100,000/680 = 7,500 packs. Target profit of RWF 2,040,000 requires (5,100,000 + 2,040,000)/680 = 10,500 packs; the margin of safety at 12,000 packs is 4,500 packs, or 37.5%. Under the combined price and material shock, unit contribution falls to RWF 508, leaving 12,000 × 508 − 5,100,000 = RWF 996,000 operating profit. A strong student answer should add demand sensitivity and available liquidity rather than declaring the decision safe because profit remains above zero.

For Exercise A2, setup, testing and machine-support costs are allocated using the exact activity volumes in Table 23.2, not by an assumed per-product share. When the customized product requires 75 rather than 60 tests while the RWF 900,000 test pool remains a supplied fixed cost, increasing activity changes the observed usage and, if the model divides the fixed pool by 105 tests, reduces the ex post test rate to approximately RWF 8,571.43. This recomputation does **not** imply a cash saving from performing additional tests. If genuinely

incremental consumables or outsourced testing expenditure accompanies each test, students must identify and cost that separate resource change. Credit should depend on clearly distinguishing the descriptive allocation, practical-capacity cost and avoidable payment.

For Exercise A3, the allowable material quantity for 12,000 good packs is 9,600 kg, and standard labour is 3,600 hours. The material price and usage variances are respectively RWF 198,000 adverse and RWF 270,000 adverse; labour rate and efficiency variances are RWF 223,200 adverse and RWF 144,000 adverse. The RWF 1,360,000 favorable static-to-flexible activity effect is offset by RWF 1,325,200 adverse deviations against the flexible comparator, yielding a RWF 34,800 favorable static-to-actual difference. Learners should demonstrate how these results reconcile to actual operating profit of RWF 1,734,800 and identify what procurement, production and payroll records would be needed before attributing responsibility.

For Exercise A4, making the sleeves is less expensive by RWF 5,000 without an additional market for released capacity; buying becomes preferable by RWF 435,000 only when RWF 440,000 of alternative contribution is reliably available. A RWF 120 rise in the supplier's unit price adds RWF 480,000 to buying cost and reverses that advantage by RWF 45,000, before qualitative risk. The cash-budget requirement follows from RWF 22,632,000 receipts, RWF 21,725,200 operating cash payments, RWF 1,400,000 planned equipment outflow and RWF 1,000,000 opening cash, leaving RWF 506,800 against a RWF 1,000,000 policy floor and therefore a RWF 493,200 funding or rescheduling need. Answers should not collapse a forecasted cash gap into accounting loss.

The capstone assignment is best judged through a transparent analytic rubric rather than the number of charts submitted. Allocate 20% to conceptual and theoretical validity, 25% to the reproducibility and accuracy of computations, 20% to evidence credibility and boundary disclosure, 15% to Rwandan feasibility and cross-functional integration, 10% to legitimate stakeholder and governance safeguards, and 10% to scholarly presentation and accurate referencing. A defensible recommendation must explain the rejected alternative, identify who can authorize implementation, anticipate potential gaming or harmful cost shifting, and specify observable criteria for revising the decision.

23.16.6 Selected further reading

Readers seeking deeper cost-system architecture may begin with Johnson and Kaplan (1987), Cooper and Kaplan (1988), Kaplan and Cooper (1998), and Kaplan and Anderson (2004). For empirical cost behaviour, Anderson et al. (2003) and Banker et al. (1995) provide contrasting tests of assumptions. For management control, Chenhall (2003), Otley (1999), Hansen et al. (2003), Libby and Lindsay (2010), and Malmi and Brown (2008) develop important debates. Bhimani (2020), ISO (2011) and the IMA (2022) extend the discussion to digital research, physical resource losses and professional integrity. These works should be read critically rather than treated as interchangeable recipes.

CHAPTER 24

Financial Management and Investment Decisions

ABSTRACT

Enterprise finance concerns the consequential allocation of money across time, claims and uncertain futures. An investment may exhibit an attractive expected return yet threaten solvency; cheap borrowing may increase financial distress; and substantial reported profit may coexist with a shortage of cash. This chapter develops an integrated, critical account of financial management and investment decisions through twelve domains: financial objectives, funding, discounting, capital budgeting, financing structure, working capital, forecasting, distributions, portfolio risk, valuation, SME finance and emerging ethical questions. A transparent, purposive synthesis of seminal corporate-finance scholarship, methodological critiques and official Rwandan secondary evidence establishes the conceptual foundations and institutional boundaries. Two explicitly hypothetical Rwandan investment alternatives are evaluated with reconciled net present value, internal rate of return, profitability index, payback and sensitivity calculations. A separate cash-conversion-cycle model and leverage stress case demonstrate the divergence between value, liquidity and debt-service capacity. Evidence from Rwanda's 2024 enterprise survey and MSME FinMap is placed alongside international empirical scholarship without extrapolating household financial access to corporate creditworthiness. Original decision instruments integrate project-specific cash flows, financing constraints, risk, stakeholder protection and review triggers. The central argument is that defensible finance is neither the mechanical maximization of a valuation metric nor the unconditional avoidance of debt. It is accountable intertemporal decision-making subject to evidentiary, contractual, operational and human constraints. Proposed integrative relationships remain conceptual, not newly validated causal findings.

Keywords: financial management; capital budgeting; net present value; cost of capital; capital structure; working capital; liquidity risk; corporate valuation; SME finance; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CHAPTER ROADMAP

After studying this chapter, readers should be able to (LO1) distinguish liquidity, profitability, solvency, economic value and stakeholder accountability; (LO2) calculate and interpret present values, future values, annuities, real and nominal discount rates; (LO3) compare investments using NPV, IRR, profitability index and payback while diagnosing conflicting rankings; (LO4) estimate and critically qualify costs of financing and leverage-related distress; (LO5) construct and interpret a cash-conversion-cycle and cash-forecast model; (LO6) evaluate financial projections, distribution policies, portfolio risk and enterprise valuation under uncertainty; (LO7) appraise Rwandan MSME financing constraints against international scholarly evidence without ecological inference; and (LO8) defend an ethically responsible cross-functional investment decision with transparent assumptions, sensitivity analysis and monitoring commitments.

The intellectual sequence moves from financial purpose and funding (24.1–24.2), through temporal valuation and investment selection (24.3–24.4), the cost and structure of finance (24.5), operating liquidity and forecasts (24.6–24.7), allocation to owners (24.8), uncertainty and enterprise valuation (24.9–24.10), and the distinct financing problem of smaller and growth enterprises (24.11). Emerging instruments and responsibilities (24.12) lead to an integrated Rwandan case (24.13), comparative and theoretical synthesis (24.14), and learning and assessment resources (24.15). Financial reporting and management costing were developed in Chapters 22 and

23. Financial institutions and payment-system architecture belong to Chapter 25; taxation, audit and specialist controls belong to Chapter 26.

24.0 INTRODUCTION: A PROFITABLE PROJECT CAN STILL BANKRUPT THE ENTERPRISE

Imagine a Kigali producer of shelf-stable food products considering two investments. A faster packaging line promises larger contribution margins, while a distribution redesign offers smaller but earlier cash receipts. The managing director favors the line because expected accounting profit is higher; the operations manager warns that imported spare parts may delay commissioning; the finance manager is concerned about the initial cash requirement, foreign-currency exposure and a loan whose principal must be repaid long before the assets cease to be productive. A prospective lender requests collateral, a documented cash-flow forecast and evidence of customers' capacity to pay. Whether either project creates value cannot be settled from its anticipated sales, cost per unit, or headline interest rate. This is a deliberately constructed teaching case, not an account of an identifiable enterprise.

Financial management organizes the acquisition, allocation, preservation and distribution of financial resources to meet legitimate organizational purposes over time and under uncertainty. Its core decisions concern *investment* (which assets and activities merit resources), *financing* (who supplies capital, on which terms and with which claims), and *liquidity* (how obligations will be discharged when due). Distribution and financial risk management connect these decisions to owners, workers, customers, suppliers, creditors and the public. Profitability measures revenues against expenses over an accounting period; liquidity concerns the availability of settlement resources at particular dates; solvency concerns the ability of the enterprise to meet its obligations over a longer horizon; and value concerns what a defensible assessment assigns today to future benefits, costs and risks. These constructs overlap but are not substitutes.

The problem is epistemic as much as mathematical. Discounted cash-flow methods produce exact numbers only after uncertain revenues, costs, timing, terminal values, inflation, funding terms and required returns have been entered. What looks like precision is therefore conditional on propositions that deserve scrutiny. Finance also embodies distributive choices: suppliers may finance a buyer through delayed payment, employees may absorb the effects of austerity, and a new equity investor may dilute existing owners. The chapter adopts a bounded principle of value creation: positive expected financial surplus is a necessary consideration for commercial sustainability but does not license illegality, deceptive disclosure, avoidable injury or the unjust transfer of risk. Financial analysis must be technically defensible and institutionally legitimate (Jensen & Meckling, 1976; Myers & Majluf, 1984).

24.0.1 Analytical approach and evidence limitations

This chapter uses a transparent, targeted documentary synthesis rather than a systematic review or original field study. Seminal finance articles are selected for their foundational propositions and tested against subsequent competing explanations and empirical examinations. Documentary evidence from the National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda (NISR) and Access to Finance Rwanda (AFR) supplies contextual facts. Financial calculations are constructed for instruction, show their underlying assumptions and do not represent observed enterprise accounts or projected national outcomes. The approach permits conceptual comparison and numerical demonstration, not new causal identification. The evidence cut-off is 2 November 2026; dynamically updated regulations and market quotations require rechecking at any later implementation date.

24.1 OBJECTIVES AND SCOPE OF FINANCE

24.1.1 Financial performance as a plural problem

The traditional corporate-finance objective is frequently stated as maximizing shareholder wealth through decisions that increase the present value of owners' residual claims. It is analytically stronger than a simple accounting-profit target because the value of a claim depends on timing, risk and the opportunity cost of capital. Nevertheless, shareholder value is a disputed sufficient account of enterprise responsibility. Contracting is incomplete, affected parties have unequal bargaining power, and market values may fail to incorporate environmental damage, unsafe working conditions or information withheld from customers. Agency theory explains how dispersed owners may be disadvantaged by managers whose incentives differ from theirs, but it cannot alone establish that every cost to nonshareholders has been internalized in prices (Jensen & Meckling, 1976).

Several objectives must therefore be distinguished. *Liquidity preservation* requires enough available funds to discharge obligations when due, including payroll and supplier payments. *Profitability* supports replenishment of capital and enterprise continuity but depends on accounting classification and measurement. *Solvency* requires a sustainable relationship between commitments and available or recoverable resources. *Risk discipline* concerns exposure to adverse outcomes and the costs of bearing or transferring them. *Financial flexibility* preserves options to respond to opportunities and shocks. *Accountability* requires that the allocation and distribution of financial resources be explainable, verifiable and contestable. These are partially complementary and partially conflicting objectives: large cash reserves protect liquidity but may reduce available investment; high leverage can enhance equity returns in good states while making financial distress more likely.

A defensible finance mandate consequently begins with mandatory constraints (legal payments, worker safety, enforceable contracts and minimum liquidity), specifies the decision criterion appropriate to the remaining feasible alternatives, and documents how uncertain future claims are treated. For a commercial corporation, risk-adjusted net present value is a useful primary capital-allocation criterion. For a nonprofit or public enterprise, benefits that are not market-priced require a separate, explicit social appraisal rather than a fictitious monetary estimate masquerading as a market cash flow. Neither formulation eliminates judgment about what counts as an admissible outcome.

24.1.2 Decision rights, horizon and financial governance

Finance is performed by more than the chief financial officer. Sales determines contractual credit terms; procurement negotiates payment obligations; operations commits to inventories and equipment; HR shapes payroll and pension commitments; the board defines permissible leverage and distributions; and lenders impose covenants. The finance unit should articulate a common monetary account of these commitments while preserving the distinction between accounting forecasts and cash movements. A board-approved delegated-authority schedule ought to identify who can propose a project, validate its assumptions, assess conflicts, authorize borrowing, sign contracts, revise baselines and monitor post-investment performance. Temporal inconsistency is a central governance risk. Managers evaluated on current-year earnings may reject a durable but initially costly investment or accelerate revenue recognition, while owners needing immediate distributions may press a company to compromise its cash reserve. The solution is not to eliminate performance metrics but to make horizon, uncertainty and decision responsibility explicit. Finance decisions should be reviewed when materially new information arrives, yet not opportunistically relabeled after unfavorable outcomes. The board therefore needs a contemporaneous decision log containing alternatives considered, assumptions, quantified downside cases, stakeholder constraints and the planned ex post review.

24.1.3 Financial purpose: valuation, legitimacy and the limits of a single objective

The disagreement over financial purpose is not merely terminological. Jensen (2001) argues that organizational choice requires a sufficiently determinate objective and regards long-run total firm value as a discipline against arbitrary managerial trade-offs. His position is stronger than an unqualified demand for this quarter's shareholder return: it insists that value over time depends on credible relationships with employees, customers and financiers. Nevertheless, the inference from value measurement to moral sufficiency rests on assumptions about prices, enforceable rights and internalized externalities. If an unsafe factory can sell output without bearing the full expected cost imposed on its workers, a high financial NPV does not establish that the investment creates net social welfare. Nor does aggregate monetary compensation settle whose rights may be traded away. The analytic value of a common monetary objective must therefore be distinguished from an unrestricted moral permission to pursue it.

Hart and Zingales (2017) complicate the simple opposition between shareholder and stakeholder claims. Where shareholders possess preferences about outcomes that markets do not fully price, maximizing the market value of their investments may not maximize their welfare. This analysis helps explain why a genuinely informed shareholder body could favor limits on harmful activity even where a narrow transaction-price model predicts a financial sacrifice. Yet shareholder preferences cannot by themselves extinguish the independent legal claims of employees, creditors or affected communities. The appropriate governance procedure distinguishes (a) obligations that constrain permissible alternatives, (b) empirically estimated monetary consequences of remaining choices and (c) legitimate decisions over objectives that cannot be monetized without controversy.

Financial discipline also requires a theory of evidence. Prices and costs are measurable only through instruments, conventions, forecasts and institutions; forecasts are not independently verifiable facts. An opportunity cost is an alternative forgone, but identifying that alternative requires knowledge of feasible uses of resources, not a generic market rate. A convincing financial memorandum therefore documents the counterfactual, the uncertain mechanisms connecting actions to cash, the claimants who bear unfavorable states and the authority under which the decision is made. This is a more demanding conception of accountability than the production of a single apparently precise present value (Jensen, 2001; Hart & Zingales, 2017).

24.2 FINANCIAL MARKETS AND FUNDING SOURCES

24.2.1 The economic substance of capital claims

Equity represents a residual claim after prior obligations, typically accompanied by ownership, participation or governance rights. Common equity absorbs losses before senior debt and does not ordinarily require fixed periodic repayment, but investors demand compensation for residual risk and founders may experience dilution. Debt creates contractual interest and principal obligations with specified seniority, security and default consequences. Retained earnings are profits not distributed and represent internally available funding only to the extent that profits have generated cash not already committed elsewhere. Trade credit arises when suppliers permit payment after delivery, effectively financing part of the operating cycle. Leasing exchanges rights to use an asset for periodic commitments and may shift some risks while creating enduring liabilities. Grants and concessional funds may support activities with public or developmental benefits but must be appraised against eligibility, reporting restrictions, matching requirements and continuation risk.

A financing decision is not exhausted by comparing quoted annual rates. The economic terms include origination fees, collateral valuation and enforcement, mandatory deposits, repayment profile, currency denomination, floating-rate reset, covenants, prepayment penalties, disclosure duties and the loss of managerial discretion. For example, a nominal 14% loan with an upfront fee and short amortization can place more pressure on cash than an apparently dearer loan with grace periods and matched maturity. Comparing annual percentage measures requires agreement on the compounding and fee convention; comparing bank debt with equity requires

recognizing that equity's expected return is not a promised coupon. Supplier credit may be expensive where early-payment discounts are forgone, and excessive delay can simply export distress to smaller suppliers.

24.2.2 Capital-market imperfections and financing hierarchies

In an idealized complete market, financing arrangements can be separated analytically from investment opportunities. In real markets, adverse selection, moral hazard, costly contracting, bankruptcy expenses, collateral scarcity and limited verification create differences between internal funds, debt and equity. Akerlof (1970) demonstrates the general problem of adverse selection where asset quality is privately known. Myers and Majluf (1984) specify a corporate-finance mechanism: equity issuance may be interpreted as a signal that informed insiders perceive shares as overvalued, so even a positive-value investment might be forgone. This does not imply that every equity issue is adverse selection or that debt is always preferable. Rather, the predicted hierarchy depends on information asymmetry, asset tangibility, investment opportunities and the firm's life cycle.

Berger and Udell (1998) describe a financial growth-cycle perspective in which funding mechanisms change with firm age, size, information transparency and financing needs. Small or young firms may rely more on owner savings, trade credit and relationship lending, while more established firms can obtain audited financial histories, collateral and access to formal securities. The theory is conditional rather than a fixed staircase: a technology venture with scalable intellectual property may seek equity early, while a mature family business may never issue publicly traded shares. Financing constraints are also difficult to diagnose statistically. Fazzari et al. (1988) associated investment–cash-flow sensitivities with restricted access to external finance; Kaplan and Zingales (1997) demonstrated why high sensitivity by itself is not a reliable measure of the severity of constraints. This dispute warns against treating an observable ratio as a uniquely identified causal mechanism.

24.2.3 A funding-source decision matrix

Table 24.1. Financing alternatives and the evidence required for responsible selection. Source: Author's synthesis of corporate-finance theory; categories are not jurisdiction-specific legal or accounting classifications.

Funding source	Principal economic attraction	Principal exposure	Decision evidence
Retained cash	No issuance or lender negotiation	Opportunity cost; depleted reserve	Free cash after committed obligations
Owner or new equity	Loss-absorbing capital; no fixed repayment	Dilution; governance conflicts	Valuation, rights, exit terms and governance
Term loan	Defined amount, maturity and covenants	Debt service, collateral, refinancing	Cash coverage, covenant headroom, fees
Revolving credit	Liquidity aligned to short-cycle needs	Renewal and floating-rate risk	Borrowing base and rolling liquidity plan
Trade credit	Can match procurement and sales cycle	Hidden discount cost; supplier harm	Effective cost and payment discipline
Lease	Access to productive asset without immediate full purchase price	Contractual rigidity and total cost	Present value of payments and residual risk
Grant or concessional finance	Reduced private funding burden where eligible	Eligibility, reporting, discontinuity	Binding conditions and additionality

24.2.4 Credit rationing, contractual design and the true price of trade credit

A lender does not necessarily clear a credit market simply by increasing the quoted interest rate. Under information asymmetry, an increase in the rate may alter which applicants accept the loan or incentivize riskier projects, so expected lender return can decline even as the contractual rate rises. Stiglitz and Weiss (1981) formalized a mechanism through which credit rationing can persist in equilibrium. Their model is not a claim that every rejected applicant is creditworthy. It clarifies why collateral, reliable reporting, loan design and lender knowledge influence credit supply, and why policy interventions cannot be evaluated from the nominal rate alone. The competing possibility, that a proposed activity genuinely lacks sufficient expected returns, must remain open in any diagnosis.

The contract is part of the technology of financing. Secured loans redistribute loss through specified asset claims; personal guarantees can transfer enterprise losses to a family; equity negotiations allocate control and dilution; and supplier financing can incorporate valuable transactional information. Petersen and Rajan (1997) show why suppliers may supply credit when formal finance is restricted and why suppliers with stronger access to capital can extend credit to customers. This explains the prevalence of trade credit without establishing that delaying payment without agreement is a legitimate financing strategy. A board reviewing funding sources must therefore evaluate the financial equivalent of their full contracted terms, the availability of enforcement and the distribution of downside risk.

Consider the hypothetical trade terms '2/10, net 30': the buyer may deduct 2% by paying within 10 days or otherwise pays in full at day 30. By declining the discount, the buyer effectively pays RWF 2 for an additional RWF 98 of twenty-day financing. The simple annualized cost is (0.02/0.98) × (365/20), or approximately 37.24%; the effective compounded annual rate is (1 + 0.02/0.98)^(365/20) − 1, approximately 44.59%. These rates are illustrative rather than current Rwandan credit prices. They demonstrate that nominally interest-free supplier finance can be very costly, while the choice to take a discount must still be reconciled with minimum cash reserves and other commitments. A financing comparison that ignores embedded contractual prices is not a true comparison of capital costs.

24.3 TIME VALUE OF MONEY

24.3.1 Why amounts at different dates are not equivalent

One franc available now can finance immediate consumption, discharge a costly obligation or be invested; the same nominal franc receivable later lacks these options and may lose purchasing power. Discounting converts dated cash flows into a comparable present-value unit at an explicitly chosen required return. With end-of-period compounding, the future value of an amount PV after n periods at periodic rate r is FV = PV(1 + r)^n, and its present value is PV = FV/(1 + r)^n. A stream of cash flows C_t beginning at time t = 1 has PV = sum[C_t/(1 + r)^t], with separately stated treatment of any cash at t = 0. Periods and rates must agree: monthly receipts require a monthly rate, not an annual rate inserted unchanged into a monthly formula.

For example, an illustrative RWF 10 million invested at an effective annual 12% becomes 10(1.12)^3 = RWF 14.04928 million after three years. Conversely, RWF 14.04928 million due at year three has a present value of RWF 10 million at that rate. The interpretation is not that 12% is the actual market return available to this enterprise. It is a hypothetical opportunity-cost assumption chosen to demonstrate the transformation. Interest compounding m times per year at a quoted nominal annual rate j gives an annual effective rate of (1 + j/m)^m - 1, assuming periodic compounding on those terms. At j = 12% compounded monthly, the effective annual rate is approximately 12.683%, not 12%.

For a level end-of-period annuity A paid for n periods at rate r, PV = A[1 - (1 + r)^(-n)]/r when r is nonzero. Thus five annual payments of RWF 5 million discounted at 12% have PV = 5[1 - 1.12^(-5)]/0.12 = approximately RWF 18.024 million. An annuity due with payments at the beginning of each period is worth an

additional factor (1 + r) relative to the same ordinary annuity, assuming identical payment counts. A growing perpetuity formula, PV = C_1/(r - g), requires r > g and cash flow growth g that remains economically plausible indefinitely. It cannot justify an arbitrary terminal valuation where growth exceeds the economy's feasible productive capacity.

24.3.2 Nominal, real, after-tax and currency consistency

A nominal discount rate includes expected inflation whereas a real discount rate is expressed in constant purchasing-power terms. Their exact relation is (1 + r_nominal) = (1 + r_real)(1 + inflation). If nominal return is 16% and expected inflation is 6%, the implied real rate is (1.16/1.06) - 1 = approximately 9.43%. Expected nominal cash flows should be discounted at a consistent nominal rate; constant-price real cash flows at a real rate. Similarly, cash flows after corporate tax should generally be matched with a compatible after-tax discount-rate framework, with tax rules verified rather than assumed. A RWF forecast cannot safely be discounted using an unadjusted foreign-currency required return merely because an investor prefers to report in dollars. Exchange-rate expectations, currency risks, and the denomination of financing and receipts must be reconciled explicitly.

24.3.3 Discount rates are assumptions requiring explanation

The discount rate is not simply the bank's stated borrowing rate. It reflects time preference, opportunity cost and priced risk appropriate to the claim and cash flow under analysis. Sharpe's (1964) capital asset pricing model provides a benchmark in which expected return is related to systematic market risk, not total volatility, under restrictive assumptions including an integrated investable market and homogeneous expectations. Where securities are thinly traded, enterprises are unlisted, borrowing and lending rates diverge and owners cannot diversify freely, the direct application of an observed stock-market beta becomes especially contentious. Country risk, small-business concentration, illiquidity and contract enforceability may affect a required return, but adding multiple arbitrary premia can double-count the same uncertainty. A transparent analysis should report its rate derivation, currency, date, comparators, sensitivity range and model limitations (Damodaran, 2026; Sharpe, 1964).

24.3.4 Discounting under uncertainty and across generations

Discounting contains at least three distinct judgments that should not be conflated: the mathematical conversion of dated monetary amounts, the empirical estimation of the required return on a risky claim and the ethical significance attached to people affected at different dates. The first is an accounting identity once the rate is specified; the second is a contestable pricing problem; the third cannot be deduced from traded-security returns alone. Using the same high private hurdle rate for an ordinary machine replacement and for irreversible environmental harm can make severe future consequences appear unimportant without demonstrating that future persons or ecosystems matter less. Climate and other long-lived projects may require separate social appraisal, explicit distributional weighting or noncompensable safety constraints rather than a mechanically transplanted corporate WACC.

Expected-cash-flow and discount-rate approaches also require care over correlated risks. A risk already reflected in probabilities or certainty-equivalent cash flows must not be charged repeatedly through arbitrary risk premia. In a state-contingent formulation, value is the sum of dated payments multiplied by appropriate state prices, a conceptually useful benchmark even where those prices cannot be observed. When currency markets are incomplete or exchange controls and hedging instruments are unavailable, a forecast in foreign currency should be translated under explicit exchange-rate scenarios or valued consistently in that currency. Disclosing the method, rather than asserting a single 'correct' discount rate, preserves the distinction between calculational precision and knowledge.

24.4 INVESTMENT APPRAISAL

24.4.1 Relevant incremental cash flows

Capital budgeting assesses whether committing resources today generates sufficient future incremental benefits. A defensible model identifies the *difference* between the enterprise's cash flows with and without the investment. It includes equipment purchase, installation and training, incremental sales receipts, operating cash expenses, working-capital commitments, maintenance, asset disposal, closure costs and recoverable working capital when applicable. Sunk expenditures already made and irrecoverable do not enter the forward-looking comparison, although their historical occurrence may explain constraints. Opportunity costs, including the market value of a warehouse or capacity used by the project, do matter. Allocated head-office overhead unrelated to the investment does not become a new cash cost merely because an accounting system assigns it to the project. Taxes and depreciation-related allowances require jurisdiction-specific verification; an illustrative teaching model that excludes tax must say so.

The net present value is NPV = -I_0 + sum[C_t/(1 + r)^t] + TV_n/(1 + r)^n, where I_0 is the time-zero commitment; C_t are period-specific incremental net cash flows exclusive of the terminal amount; and TV_n is net disposal or terminal recovery at the end of period n. When financing and project cash flows are separated, NPV should be calculated for the operating asset using an appropriate asset discount rate rather than subtracting loan repayments from already finance-adjusted operating cash flows and then discounting again at a financing-loaded WACC. The principle avoids double-counting financing costs. A positive NPV indicates an expected financial surplus relative to the chosen opportunity cost, conditional on the inputs; it does not prove that the cash forecast will occur or that the project is legally or operationally feasible.

24.4.2 IRR, payback, profitability index and conflicts

The internal rate of return (IRR) solves 0 = sum[CF_t/(1 + IRR)^t] for the full signed sequence of dated cash flows including the initial investment. In conventional projects with one initial outflow followed by positive inflows, a unique economically interpretable IRR commonly exists. With multiple sign changes, mathematical solutions may be multiple or absent. IRR is a rate, so it can favor a smaller project even where a larger mutually exclusive project produces more total value. Comparisons are especially unreliable when project timing, scale or reinvestment assumptions differ. The modified IRR can state financing and reinvestment assumptions explicitly but does not displace NPV as the value measure.

Simple payback records the elapsed time until cumulative nominal cash receipts recover the investment; discounted payback uses discounted receipts. Both emphasize liquidity and downside exposure but ignore some or all post-payback value and lack a direct wealth-maximization justification. The profitability index equals PV of future net inflows divided by initial investment for a simple single-outlay project; under capital rationing it can rank small projects usefully, but indivisible mutually exclusive investments require an explicit portfolio optimization or full NPV comparison. Graham and Harvey's (2001) survey of 392 US financial executives found substantial differences between large-firm and smaller-firm use of discounted techniques, illustrating that classroom normative criteria and reported managerial routines can diverge. The survey cannot establish which procedures Rwandan enterprises currently use.

24.4.3 Risk, flexibility and post-completion evaluation

Scenario analysis replaces one deterministic forecast with internally consistent adverse, central and favorable pathways. Sensitivity analysis varies a specified assumption, such as output or the discount rate, while holding other assumptions fixed. Probabilistic analysis uses probability distributions and dependencies, but assigning arbitrary probabilities gives only an appearance of rigor. Decision trees can value sequential decisions where management may expand, defer, contract or abandon after obtaining information; Myers (1977) showed why growth opportunities resemble options and how debt may distort future investment incentives. Real options are not free: flexibility must be technologically and contractually feasible, managers must have decision rights to exercise it, and delays can forfeit markets.

Ex post review compares the original signed investment case with observed operating volumes, cash timing and costs. It separates forecast errors from changes in conditions and unauthorized scope changes. Repeating a profitable-looking NPV with revised assumptions after a project fails does not demonstrate that the initial decision was sound. The appropriate question is whether the information and alternatives available at authorization justified the commitment, and which assumptions should be revised for future decisions.

24.4.4 Capital rationing, incremental rankings and the value of waiting

The selection of a project becomes a constrained optimization problem when capital is scarce. For independent, divisible projects with one initial outlay and no other binding constraints, a profitability index may help approximate the allocation of an investment budget. Real enterprises usually face indivisibilities, mutually exclusive alternatives, multi-period resource requirements, capacity interactions and minimum-liquidity conditions. The correct problem is then to choose a feasible combination that maximizes total expected NPV under explicit budget and operating constraints. A ratio ranking can fail because the highest-value feasible combination may include a lower-index project that makes fuller use of the available budget. Scarcity at one date also cannot be solved by combining nominal budgets across years without respecting the timing of required cash.

Traditional discounted cash flow presumes a fixed implementation plan, whereas many investments embed managerial options. A packaging line can be piloted before a full acquisition, capacity can be leased for a trial period, and expansion can be contingent on verifiable customer orders. Myers (1977) explains why options over future growth and investment interact with debt-related incentives. The additional value of waiting derives from information arriving before an irreversible commitment; it is reduced by the cost of delay, the possibility of losing contracts or the inability to scale later. Valuing flexibility requires specifying the future decision, observable trigger, exercise cost and governance authority. Without those elements, a claim that 'management flexibility' raises NPV amounts to a residual optimism adjustment.

A further technical distinction concerns the valuation of financing side effects. Weighted-average cost of capital can be defensible when the financing mix and associated interest tax shields remain sufficiently stable and the project has the risk profile implicit in that rate. Adjusted present value (APV) instead separates the unlevered project value from the present value of identifiable financing effects, including supported tax shields and financing costs. The methods should not be mixed indiscriminately. If a debt subsidy is added as a financing benefit to an APV calculation, the same benefit must not also be embedded through an artificially low WACC. The appropriate method is the one whose assumptions most transparently match the project's financing policy and the available evidence.

24.5 COST OF CAPITAL AND FINANCING STRUCTURE

24.5.1 The Modigliani–Miller benchmark and its boundaries

Modigliani and Miller (1958) established a deliberately stringent benchmark: in a frictionless market under their assumptions, merely rearranging debt and equity claims does not create operating assets or alter total firm value. The theorem's enduring contribution is not a claim that actual financing choices never matter. It identifies the frictions that must be specified before arguing that one financing mix improves value. Corporate taxes, personal taxes, expected financial distress, agency conflicts, asymmetric information and transaction costs each relax an assumption of irrelevance. Their importance depends on jurisdiction and enterprise characteristics, so an alleged universal 'optimal debt ratio' is not supported by the benchmark.

Trade-off theory proposes that firms balance the benefits of borrowing, which may include tax advantages under applicable law and reduced free-cash-flow agency costs, against expected distress and other costs. Pecking-order theory predicts preferences among internal funds, debt and external equity under information asymmetry (Myers & Majluf, 1984). Agency theory identifies both the potential discipline of fixed contractual payments and the tendency of shareholders and creditors to disagree over risk-taking once debt is outstanding (Jensen & Meckling, 1976; Myers, 1977). Market-timing approaches examine the persistence of financing choices made when relative security valuations were favorable (Baker & Wurgler, 2002). These approaches offer competing mechanisms rather than an additive checklist, and observed leverage can reflect historical constraints rather than an intentionally selected optimum. Fama and French (2002) show why several leverage and dividend patterns simultaneously support and challenge simple versions of competing theories.

24.5.2 Weighted-average cost of capital and project risk

The weighted-average cost of capital (WACC) for a simplified corporation with market-valued equity E and debt D is WACC = [E/(D + E)]r_e + [D/(D + E)]r_d(1 - T), where r_e is the required equity return, r_d the relevant marginal pre-tax debt cost and T a marginal tax rate applicable to interest deductibility. This expression assumes tax deductibility where allowed, a stable financing policy consistent with the cash flows and discount-rate method, correctly observed market values, and risk characteristics comparable to the project being valued. The expression is not an instruction to assume deductions without evaluating the applicable law. Costs of preference shares or other financing claims require separately modeled terms.

As a purely pedagogical illustration, suppose the target funding mix is 60% equity and 40% debt, the required equity return is 22%, the borrowing cost is 14%, and an assumed effective marginal tax rate for interest-shield purposes is 25%. WACC = 0.60(22%) + 0.40(14%)(0.75) = 17.4%. This *illustrative* 25% is neither a statement of Rwanda's statutory corporate-income-tax rate nor a substitute for verifying deductibility. If the project bears systematically different risk from the enterprise's existing operations, applying the corporate WACC can misprice the project. Equally, a fixed 17.4% rate over several years assumes away future changes in capital structure, refinancing and macroeconomic conditions.

The cost of equity is especially uncertain for unlisted firms without traded returns. A CAPM estimate r_e = r_f + beta(E[R_m] - r_f) uses a risk-free benchmark, beta and market risk premium, each requiring a consistent currency and time horizon. An illiquid firm's owner may be highly undiversified, making market-beta reasoning incomplete for the owner's consumption and survival concerns. A 'build-up' rate that adds country, size and company-specific premia must specify whether uncertainties are reflected in forecast cash flows already. Methodological prudence requires presenting a plausible range, testing the investment decision across that range, and explaining the limitations of every proxy. Damodaran's (2026) publicly documented country-risk methods illustrate possible comparative inputs, not a universal discount rate for Rwanda.

24.5.3 Leverage, repayment capacity and financial distress

An enterprise can be economically valuable yet fail because cash arrives later than contractual principal and interest payments. Debt-service coverage is therefore as important to a lender as expected NPV. A common measure is DSCR = cash flow available for debt service / scheduled principal and interest, with the numerator carefully defined for the contract and period. EBITDA is sometimes used as a starting proxy but is not itself cash available to service debt: working-capital expansion, maintenance capital expenditure, tax payments and cash restrictions can materially reduce capacity. Interest coverage (for example, EBIT/interest) likewise omits principal repayments and may conceal short-term liquidity pressure.

Borrowing also transfers risk asymmetrically. If asset returns exceed borrowing costs, equity returns may increase; if they fall below, the same fixed debt claim amplifies owners' losses. A covenant breach may restrict dividends, trigger costly renegotiation or precipitate acceleration even before book liabilities exceed assets. Debt maturity should be compared with the economic duration and cash pattern of financed assets, and foreign-currency borrowing assessed against actual currency inflows rather than nominally low coupons. Financial flexibility is an economic resource because avoiding distress preserves jobs, supplier relationships, customer trust and investment options.

24.5.4 What empirical leverage studies do, and do not, settle

The theoretical debate over leverage cannot be decided by observing that profitable firms borrow relatively little. A static trade-off account might predict that profitable companies can use more debt because distress risk is lower and tax deductions are potentially valuable, whereas a pecking-order account predicts that retained cash reduces demand for external funding. Frank and Goyal (2009), studying listed US companies, identify industry leverage, tangibility and profitability among the comparatively robust correlates of borrowing, but they also report differences across book and market leverage and do not claim that the observed associations structurally identify a universal financing mechanism. The negative relation between profitability and leverage may reflect accumulated internal funds, adjustment costs, firm-specific investment timing or other omitted forces. It is poor scholarship to infer one theory's universal truth from a cross-sectional coefficient.

For a private Rwandan enterprise, the informational problem is particularly acute because its market-valued equity and beta typically cannot be observed directly, collateral may be narrow, and lender terms can be relationship-dependent. Substituting industry comparables from foreign listed firms provides a starting benchmark, not a measurement of a unique domestic cost of equity. Responsible financial design instead triangulates asset cash-flow volatility, contractual borrowing offers, plausible project alternatives, stress losses, controlling owners' concentration and financing constraints. The resulting capital structure may be lower than a mechanical tax-shield optimum because survival, discretion and obligations to workers and suppliers matter at the states in which repayment is most difficult (Beck et al., 2005; Frank & Goyal, 2009).

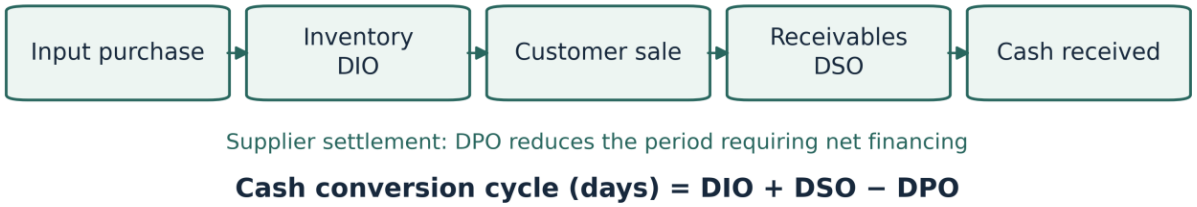
24.6 WORKING CAPITAL MANAGEMENT

24.6.1 Working capital is a temporal coordination system

Net working capital is commonly defined as current assets minus current liabilities. It is a useful balance-sheet summary but not a sufficient measure of operating liquidity because it aggregates heterogeneous items. Cash may be restricted; receivables may be impaired; inventory may be obsolete; suppliers may demand payment before customers settle invoices. Management therefore needs transaction-level timing and quality information, not merely a positive current ratio. The relevant operating cycle follows resources through purchase, inventory holding, sales on credit, collection and supplier settlement. A cash conversion cycle (CCC) relates three duration measures: days inventory outstanding (DIO), days sales outstanding (DSO) and days payables outstanding (DPO).

With annual balances used as simplified proxies, DIO = average inventory / annual cost of goods sold × 365; DSO = average trade receivables / annual credit revenue × 365; DPO = average trade payables / annual relevant purchases or cost of goods sold × 365; and CCC = DIO + DSO - DPO. The denominators should follow the underlying activity: where purchases differ materially from cost of goods sold, purchase-based DPO is preferable. Average balances are superior to year-end balances when seasonality is material. Zero, negative or unusual ratios require business-specific interpretation. A shorter CCC generally reduces funds tied to the operating cycle, but an indiscriminate reduction may compromise safe inventory buffers, customer relationships or fair supplier terms. Deloof (2003) reports an association between working-capital measures and profitability in Belgian firms, not a universally causal effect applicable to any Rwandan enterprise.

Figure 24.1. The cash-conversion cycle as an interfunctional commitment



Note. The diagram shows timing relationships rather than a requirement that every firm hold physical stock or grant customer credit. Source: Author's conceptual adaptation of the standard cash-conversion-cycle identity.

24.6.2 Cash management under uncertainty

An enterprise needs a short-horizon receipts-and-payments schedule because accrual profit cannot settle a bill. A 13-week rolling forecast can separate confirmed opening cash, invoices expected to be collected, payroll, tax dates, inventory purchases, rent, debt service and planned investments. Each inflow should be assigned a status, due date, responsible owner and probability-adjusted scenario only where justified. Cash forecasting is as much a control of information quality as an arithmetic exercise: a promised sale is not a bank receipt, and a payment 'expected next week' may depend on a customer's own cash crisis. Cash balances may reflect transaction, precautionary and strategic needs (Bates et al., 2009); the Miller and Orr (1966) model illustrates a formal response to stochastic flows under particular assumptions, but routine implementation in a small enterprise need not require a complex stochastic optimizer.

Cash policies have distributive consequences. Financing large customer receivables can become a hidden subsidy to powerful buyers; extending supplier payments beyond agreed terms can substitute suppliers' solvency for the buyer's own; holding too little inventory may increase patient or food-system vulnerability. A responsible working-capital target should therefore minimize the economic burden of operating liquidity *subject to* payment integrity, minimum service reliability, employee entitlements and realistic contingency capacity. For a small enterprise, simple bank reconciliations, debtor aging, inventory checks and weekly cash meetings can generate more reliable decisions than an elaborate dashboard built on incomplete records.

24.6.3 Working-capital performance and responsibility register

Table 24.2. Operating-liquidity measure definitions. Source: Author's synthesis. The day count and transaction base must be disclosed for reproducibility.

Indicator	Operational definition	Interpretation and necessary control
DIO	Average inventory / COGS × days	Identify seasonality, obsolescence and safety stocks
DSO	Average credit receivables / credit sales × days	Verify sales mix, aging, disputed invoices and impairment
DPO	Average eligible payables / relevant purchases × days	Distinguish agreed terms from overdue suppliers
CCC	DIO + DSO − DPO	Track net financing time, not comprehensive solvency
13-week cash low point	Minimum forecast available cash	Test covenant, payroll and contingency headroom
Receivables overdue ratio	Past-due balances / eligible receivables	Verify disputes and collection practices
Liquidity buffer	Unrestricted cash + committed usable facilities	Assess actual access and borrowing conditions

24.6.4 Managing the cash cycle without transferring distress

Cash-cycle analysis becomes a decision instrument only after the underlying actions are identified. An apparent improvement in DSO may come from collecting legitimately overdue invoices, changing customer mix, selling receivables or withdrawing credit from low-income customers. These actions differ in cost and in consequences for growth. An apparent improvement in DIO may arise from more precise stock control, deliberate stockouts or outsourcing the stock-holding burden to suppliers. Likewise, an increase in DPO may reflect negotiated longer terms or contractual delinquency. Identical reported CCC improvements can therefore signal operational learning or the displacement of costs onto counterparties. Working-capital governance should reconcile the duration measures to collections, purchase ledgers, disputes, supplier obligations and service outcomes.

Petersen and Rajan (1997) explain the informational advantages that can underpin supplier credit, while Deloof (2003) provides firm-level evidence of association between working-capital components and profitability in a Belgian sample. Neither warrants the claim that every enterprise should minimize all inventory or extend supplier terms without limit. A responsible optimization considers marginal holding costs, expected shortage losses, collection expenses, goodwill, access to replacement inventory and the supplier's reasonable settlement expectations. The relevant cash-cycle policy is thus an outcome of negotiated and monitored operating design, not a universal numerical target.

24.7 FINANCIAL FORECASTING AND PLANNING

24.7.1 Integrated projections and financing gaps

A coherent financial plan links volume, selling prices, variable and fixed expenses, working capital, capital expenditure, depreciation, debt financing, financing charges, tax assumptions and distributions through a connected set of projected statements. The income statement estimates performance; the projected statement of financial position reconciles assets and funding claims; and the cash-flow forecast tests whether contractual payments can be met. An increased sales forecast can simultaneously increase operating profit and create a funding gap if customer credit and inventory rise faster than supplier finance. A percentage-of-sales model may be serviceable for a first approximation, but it fails when capacity arrives in indivisible steps, fixed costs change sharply or credit policies differ across buyers.

A basic additional-funds-needed calculation can be written AFN = (A/*S_0)ΔS - (L*/S_0)ΔS - M S_1(1 - d), where A *are assets assumed to vary with sales, L* spontaneous liabilities, S_0 baseline sales, ΔS projected sales growth, M projected net profit margin and d dividend payout fraction. This expression is intentionally stylized: it treats capital structure and asset utilization in simplified ways and is unreliable where tax rules, one-off investment, uneven margins and debt amortization dominate. The discipline is to identify the model's implied financing gap and then replace approximations with a dated cash-flow schedule, not to treat AFN as a definitive bank borrowing request.

24.7.2 Forecast validity, scenarios and decision thresholds

Forecasting requires distinguishing a baseline from an optimistic target. A sales manager's quota is an aspiration, not an observed customer commitment; a supplier's quotation may expire; an import duty or interest rate used in a model can change before funds are drawn. The forecast should distinguish verified contracts, conditional forecasts and speculative opportunities. Good practice records the source, observation date, currency, forecast method, owner and sensitivity of each material assumption. Scenarios should combine plausible co-movements: weak sales may coincide with slower collections, unfavorable foreign exchange and higher working-capital needs. Simply lowering every variable by the same percentage does not generate a coherent economic scenario.

A decision may be made robust through thresholds rather than falsely exact probabilities. A board can approve a phased capital commitment only if a signed minimum order book exists, monthly stressed cash never falls below a specified reserve, a lender commits the facility, and no projected covenant breach occurs. The threshold must be linked to the cash-flow model, not chosen after results are known. Model governance requires version control, protected formulas, independent reconciliation, units checks, documented overrides and traceable revisions. Consistent with Chapter 4, predictive calibration and sensitivity are separate from causal claims about what a policy change will achieve.

24.7.3 Inflation, exchange rates, commodity costs and sustainability exposure

Forecasts for import-dependent enterprises should distinguish RWF obligations from foreign-currency prices and settlement timing. A machine purchased in foreign currency may become more expensive before customs clearance; a fuel or energy price movement may affect both unit margin and consumer demand. Hedging, denomination matching, supplier negotiation and contingency reserves can mitigate some risks but are not costless. Exposure must be traced to actual contracts, maturity dates and counterparties. For climate-sensitive assets, physical hazards, energy efficiency, insurance affordability and potential regulation may affect cash flows and access to finance. IFRS S1 frames sustainability-related financial information around risks and opportunities reasonably expected to affect cash flows, access to finance or cost of capital; its application in any reporting jurisdiction is a separate question requiring verification (IFRS Foundation, 2023a).

24.7.4 A 13-week liquidity bridge and its governance uses

To connect valuation to settlement, consider a separate, hypothetical thirteen-week cash forecast for the same illustrative enterprise. Opening unrestricted cash is RWF 12 million. Weekly receipts reflect dated customer payments rather than the gross value of invoices raised, while outflows aggregate contracted operating disbursements and scheduled financing payments. The following table shows the central scenario in RWF million. These numbers are teaching assumptions, not reported activity. In a live model, each week would include payroll, tax, suppliers, capital outlays, lender instalments and restricted cash as separately controlled lines, with receivables grouped by customer and likelihood of collection.

The base-case cash position first turns negative in week 10, reaches a RWF 6 million deficit in week 12, and remains RWF 5 million negative at week 13. This means the assumed cash schedule is infeasible without a committed additional source, altered lawful timing or a redesign of payments. More generally, a business can finish a horizon with an apparently tolerable balance after violating a mandatory minimum in an earlier week.

The forecast should consequently specify the lowest projected available balance, the week in which it occurs, the evidence behind material inflows and the actions possible before a deficit arises. For example, management could postpone an optional asset purchase, seek a committed revolving facility, negotiate an agreed payment schedule or accelerate disputed-invoice resolution. Treating delayed wages, unpaid taxes or unapproved supplier lateness as discretionary balancing items would conceal distress rather than resolve it. The independent financial review should compare the base case with delayed collections and a foreign-currency purchasing shock; forecasts should then be updated against actual receipts weekly.

Table 24.3. Illustrative thirteen-week direct cash forecast (RWF million). Source: Author's constructed teaching assumptions; receipts and payments represent cash movements, not accounting profit.

Week	Opening cash	Collections	Payments	Closing cash
1	12.0	6.0	8.0	10.0
2	10.0	8.0	9.0	9.0
3	9.0	9.0	10.0	8.0
4	8.0	7.0	9.0	6.0
5	6.0	11.0	12.0	5.0
6	5.0	9.0	10.0	4.0
7	4.0	12.0	10.0	6.0
8	6.0	6.0	11.0	1.0
9	1.0	11.0	12.0	0.0
10	0.0	10.0	12.0	-2.0
11	-2.0	12.0	13.0	-3.0
12	-3.0	8.0	11.0	-6.0
13	-6.0	15.0	14.0	-5.0

24.8 DIVIDEND AND DISTRIBUTION POLICY

24.8.1 Residual claims, retained resources and payout expectations

Dividend policy addresses how much distributable value should be transferred to owners and how much retained for financing future opportunities. Under frictionless assumptions analogous to the Modigliani– Miller framework, dividend form need not independently create firm value when investment policy is fixed. In practice, transaction costs, taxes, information asymmetry, governance conflicts, investor preferences and restricted financing can make distributions consequential. A dividend can communicate management's confidence, but signals are difficult to identify because firms also alter payouts for liquidity, tax and institutional reasons. Repurchases, ordinary dividends, special dividends and owner withdrawals differ in legal form, timing and effect on ownership; they should not be treated as interchangeable cash outflows without examining the applicable corporate framework.

A residual policy begins by funding legitimate positive-NPV projects and required buffers before distributions. Yet simply retaining all available cash is not necessarily wise. Managers may overinvest in low-return projects, and controlling shareholders may divert resources. Jensen's agency analysis provides a reason for disciplined payouts where free cash flow exceeds defensible investment needs, while growth opportunities and costly

external financing can justify retention. Fama and French (2002) found patterns in dividends and debt consistent with several theoretical mechanisms rather than a single universal formula. Owner-managers also face household obligations, so predictable payouts may stabilize family income; these expectations must be represented in a financing plan without permitting withdrawals that breach obligations to workers, suppliers or creditors.

24.8.2 A distribution feasibility test

Before recommending a distribution, finance should establish legally distributable reserves, applicable contractual restrictions, outstanding tax and employment obligations, projected cash after maintenance and debt service, and the downside liquidity margin. A seemingly affordable RWF 15 million distribution should be rejected or deferred if a credible forecast shows the enterprise will miss payroll or breach a loan covenant in the following month. Equally, an indefinite prohibition on payouts needs justification where a mature enterprise retains excess cash without profitable opportunities and minority owners lack meaningful information. Effective distribution governance therefore connects cash forecasts, ownership rights, capital allocation records and transparent board oversight.

24.8.3 Payout decisions as governance and intergenerational allocation

Dividend choices expose a tension between current claimants and future enterprise capabilities. A dominant shareholder may rationally seek near-term distributions to reduce personal concentration risk, while minority investors may prefer retained growth or demand payouts to limit managerial appropriation. Workers and creditors may care most about whether distributions leave enforceable claims adequately protected. The correct distribution analysis is therefore more demanding than applying an arbitrary percentage to earnings: it must reconcile accounting reserves, legally distributable amounts, unrestricted cash, future investment commitments, covenant restrictions and credible downside states. The legal permissibility of a distribution and its economic prudence are separate questions.

Jensen's (2001) insistence on coherent objectives also applies to retained cash. Retention is not virtuous simply because it increases the size of the business; without strong investment opportunities it can finance managerial empire-building, related-party transfers or assets with weak returns. Equally, payouts that force expensive external financing for a foreseeable project may destroy value. A board should compare the marginal value of reinvesting one franc with the value to owners of distributing it, subject to creditor and employee protections, and publish a consistent rationale. Long-term stewardship does not mean retaining all profit; it means preserving the enterprise's ability to honor legitimate obligations while making ownership returns transparent.

24.9 RISK, RETURN AND DIVERSIFICATION

24.9.1 Expected return, dispersion and covariance

A financial decision under risk may be represented by states s, their probabilities p_s and their associated returns R_s. If probabilities are supported and exhaustive, expected return is E(R) = sum[p_s R_s]; variance is Var(R) = sum[p_s(R_s - E(R))²]; and standard deviation is its square root. These measures summarize a distribution, not the consequences of every possible event. A 20% expected return is not a commitment to earn 20%, and an asset with low historical volatility can still suffer a severe permanent loss. Estimation error, nonstationary markets, sparse observations and asymmetric downside events become particularly important for young firms or projects exposed to climate, foreign-exchange and political risks.

Markowitz (1952) established that the volatility of a portfolio depends on the covariance among its components, not only on the sum of stand-alone volatilities. For two risky assets with portfolio weight w, variances σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 and correlation ρ, portfolio variance is $w^2\sigma_1^2 + (1 - w)^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w(1 - w)\rho\sigma_1\sigma_2$. Diversification can reduce risk when returns are imperfectly correlated. A Rwandan enterprise that sells into different sectors or sources

materials from more than one country may benefit from less correlated operating exposures, although diversification raises coordination costs and may sacrifice specialization. It must be tested with actual cash-flow dependencies, not merely a count of customers or suppliers. A firm may appear geographically diversified while all its markets depend on the same commodity price, border corridor or lender.

Sharpe's (1964) pricing framework distinguishes diversifiable asset-specific variation from systematic risk that remains in an efficiently diversified market portfolio. Fama and French (1993) show that additional common return factors help describe observed market variation; this complicates naive CAPM applications rather than supplying a universally accepted replacement for all enterprise valuations. A private owner with most family wealth invested in one business cannot simply assume that idiosyncratic risk is costless to bear. Financial theory thus supplies distinct perspectives: market pricing of traded claims, decision utility for concentrated owners, and solvency protection for the enterprise as a continuing social and economic organization.

24.9.2 Downside risk, risk capacity and risk appetite

Standard deviation treats positive and negative deviations symmetrically. Managers also need downside measures such as probability of a cash shortfall, expected loss conditional on a stressed state, debt-service coverage at the forecast trough, loss-given-default and cash-flow-at-risk. Value-at-risk is a quantile of a modeled loss distribution and does not reveal the scale of losses beyond that quantile; expected shortfall seeks to describe tail severity but remains model dependent. Stress testing is particularly relevant when observations are insufficient for credible tail estimation. A scenario in which customers pay 30 days late, imported inputs rise 15%, and a lender declines renewal can be more actionable than a statistically precise but structurally implausible forecast.

Risk tolerance must be distinguished from risk capacity. Owners may willingly accept an uncertain investment, but the enterprise may lack the liquidity to survive a moderate adverse event or may have nonnegotiable duties to workers and creditors. Risk governance therefore specifies maximum funding gaps, minimum coverage ratios, limits on currency mismatch and decision rights for contingency responses. It requires independent challenge of optimistic cash forecasts and a credible mechanism for escalating emerging risks. The enterprise-wide risk-management framework is treated more extensively in Chapter 32; this section establishes how financial exposure enters investment, funding and liquidity decisions.

24.9.3 Portfolio arithmetic and the limits of statistical reassurance

For a reproducible diversification illustration, suppose two hypothetical productive exposures each have a 50% portfolio weight. The first has a return standard deviation of 20%, the second 30%, and their correlation is 0.20. Portfolio variance equals $(0.5^2 \times 0.20^2) + (0.5^2 \times 0.30^2) + [2 \times 0.5 \times 0.5 \times 0.20 \times 0.20 \times 0.30] = 0.0385$; the portfolio standard deviation is therefore approximately 19.62%. This is lower than the equally weighted average of the individual volatilities, 25%, because their imperfect correlation provides diversification. The calculation demonstrates a covariance mechanism, not a forecast of either exposure's actual distribution. Correlation may rise abruptly during a regional disruption, and firms often own operating assets that cannot be liquidated at portfolio-model prices (Markowitz, 1952).

Risk measures should be assessed by the decisions they support. Value-at-risk identifies a loss quantile but cannot describe the magnitude of losses in its tail; expected shortfall aims to capture that severity, yet its estimate may be unstable when adverse observations are rare. Artzner et al. (1999) explain why properties such as subadditivity matter for coherent assessment of aggregate exposures. A firm lacking deep historical data should be reluctant to treat a model-generated 99% loss threshold as an observed physical regularity. Robust stress scenarios for a Rwandan importer should instead investigate correlated delays, exchange-rate movements, supplier failures and credit withdrawals, stating which thresholds would trigger containment, refinancing or suspension of discretionary distributions. Financial risk is not merely volatility: it is exposure to outcomes that alter the organization's feasible choices.

24.10 CORPORATE VALUATION CONCEPTS

24.10.1 Enterprise value, equity value and cash-flow definitions

Valuation converts a set of uncertain economic claims into a date-specific estimate under stated assumptions. Discounted free cash flow to the firm (FCFF) typically values the operating business before payments to capital providers. Under simplified conditions, FCFF = EBIT(1 - T) + depreciation and amortization - capital expenditure - increases in operating net working capital, with adjustments for other relevant noncash and tax items. The enterprise value of forecast FCFF is its present value discounted at an appropriate WACC plus a justified terminal value. Equity value is then obtained by deducting net debt and other prior claims and adding nonoperating assets as appropriate, avoiding double counts. Free cash flow to equity (FCFE) instead reflects cash potentially available to residual owners after debt-related cash flows and is discounted using a consistent equity required return.

Valuation is sensitive to terminal value assumptions. In a simplified stable-growth model, terminal value at year n is FCFF_(n+1)/(WACC - g), provided WACC exceeds g and reinvestment is sufficient to sustain the projected growth. A one-percentage-point increase in g can shift estimated value materially when the spread between WACC and g is small. Terminal assumptions should be compared with plausible long-run nominal economic growth, sector structure, competition and asset renewal, rather than extrapolated from an unusually profitable initial phase. Market multiples such as EV/EBITDA, price/earnings and price/book offer comparators but depend on accounting policies, growth, debt, risk, asset intensity and the comparability of transactions. A multiple is not a substitute for explaining why another firm has a similar opportunity set.

24.10.2 Intangible assets, control and model uncertainty

A brand, software platform, skilled workforce, contract portfolio or distribution relationship may drive future cash flows without appearing as a separately recognizable item in statutory accounting. A valuation can consider these economic capabilities through forecast earnings, customer retention and competitive life, but should not automatically add a separately estimated 'brand value' to a DCF that already incorporates the brand's incremental revenues. Distinctions among market value, investment value to a particular owner, liquidation value, fair value under a specified reporting standard and a negotiated transaction price are essential. Control rights, marketability, minority protections and due diligence can materially influence what a purchaser is willing to pay.

The most defensible valuation communicates a range and the variables that produce it. It should identify which quantities derive from verified contracts or historical observations, which are forecasts, and which require judgment. An estimated equity value is not proof of saleability at that amount. For a thinly traded or family-controlled enterprise, uncertainty about records, ownership claims and enforcement may be as important as the arithmetic of forecast EBITDA. Accurate valuation is therefore a reasoned conditional argument, not an output independent of governance, information and institutional context.

24.10.3 A fully specified free-cash-flow valuation demonstration

Consider a hypothetical mature operating business with forecast annual free cash flow to the firm of RWF 14 million, 16 million, 19 million and 21 million over years one through four. Suppose the relevant WACC is a constant 15%, long-run nominal growth after year four is assumed to be 4%, and appropriate reinvestment to sustain that growth is already reflected in the free-cash-flow forecasts. Under the stable-growth convention, year-five FCFF is 21 × 1.04 = RWF 21.84 million, so terminal value at the end of year four is 21.84/(0.15 − 0.04) = RWF 198.545 million. Discounting the four explicit annual flows and the terminal amount at 15% gives an illustrative operating enterprise value of approximately RWF 162.29 million. If net debt and other prior claims total RWF 45 million, with no distinct nonoperating assets, simplified equity value is approximately RWF 117.29 million. These are model implications rather than evidence of a saleable market price.

The terminal amount is much larger than any one forecast annual cash flow; it represents the present-at-year-four value of all subsequent assumed claims and therefore carries a disproportionate share of the valuation's uncertainty. For the same year-four FCFF, increasing nominal perpetual growth from 4% to 5% raises the terminal multiple from approximately 9.45 to 10.50 times year-four FCFF, even before considering whether the growth and reinvestment assumptions are compatible. Rather than conceal this sensitivity, the valuer should report a range of terminal assumptions, explicit maintenance capital expenditure and working-capital requirements, and the implied competitive and market conditions. The chosen discount rate and growth rate must share currency and inflation conventions. No valuation calculation licenses the addition of a second brand value when that brand's expected contribution is already reflected in forecast free cash flows.

24.11 SME AND GROWTH-COMPANY FINANCE: RWANDAN EVIDENCE AND INSTITUTIONAL CONTEXT

24.11.1 What national sources establish, and what they do not

The NISR's Integrated Business Enterprise Survey 2024 reports 278,060 business enterprises and describes at least 87% of the business landscape as informal under its survey definitions. Its published summary identifies insufficient collateral as a finance-access barrier for 11.4% of formal enterprises and 19.6% of informal enterprises in the reported measure (NISR, 2026e). These figures warrant attention to enterprise heterogeneity and the informational and asset-security requirements of finance. They do not establish that 87% of firms are insolvent, that informal entrepreneurs reject regulation, or that every collateral-constrained enterprise has a positive-NPV project.

AFR's Rwanda MSME FinMap, based on a 2024 sample of 2,116 MSMEs, found 83% financially included, 75% formally served, and 60% reporting no borrowing during the preceding twelve months. The report distinguishes formally sourced credit, mixed formal–informal borrowing and family support. These measures describe an MSME sample, not the financing decisions of all registered corporate entities; the categories and denominator must be preserved (AFR, n.d.-b). NISR's FinScope 2024 household survey separately reported 96% financial inclusion among adults and 92% formal financial inclusion, with 22% banked. Those *adult-level* indicators cannot be treated as enterprise access to term loans or investment capital (NISR, n.d.). The three sources address related but different units of analysis and financial constructs.

The economic diagnosis is not simply that finance is 'missing'. Financing gaps may originate in collateral, unverifiable revenue, limited bookkeeping, unpredictable sales, loan size relative to administration cost, geographic access, costly currency mismatch or the lender's expected recovery in default. Some firms correctly decline borrowing because projects lack sufficient returns. Conversely, an enterprise with a strong commercial opportunity may be excluded because its assets or transaction history do not fit standard collateral models. A useful policy assessment distinguishes information failures, enforceability problems, pricing, transaction costs and demand for credit from evidence of productive additionality.

24.11.2 A context-sensitive financing pathway

For an early-stage Rwandan enterprise, the practical sequence may begin with a credible separation of household and business cash, documented daily sales and expenses, monthly cash forecasts, supplier statements and verified ownership of productive assets. These instruments do not guarantee financing; they reduce ambiguity about cash generation and liabilities. The firm should next compare retained cash, supplier terms, equity contribution, secured or partially guaranteed debt and any eligible public or development financing. Concessional finance must be assessed using current eligibility rules and lender documentation rather than presumed availability. Fintech-enabled records and payment histories may improve evidence, but do not substitute for profitability or automatically eliminate adverse selection.

An owner seeking RWF 80 million for a productive asset should supply an investment specification, realistic installation schedule, supplier quotation, customer basis, incremental cash-flow estimate, adverse scenario, collateral inventory and projected debt-service schedule. The file should state which obligations are secured, any guarantees demanded from individuals, who bears foreign-currency risk and what happens if commissioning is delayed. A finance provider likewise has duties of truthful disclosure and proportionate credit assessment. The alternative of remaining smaller may be economically rational when borrowing threatens a household's only dwelling or when delayed collection makes repayment implausible.

24.11.3 Comparative international scholarship and transferability

Berger and Udell's (1998) financing life-cycle model explains why a transparent, asset-rich enterprise in a deep financial market may access diversified debt and equity claims unavailable to a microenterprise. Graham and Harvey (2001) document US corporate finance practices, not the Rwandan market. Deloof's (2003) Belgian working-capital evidence concerns comparatively large nonfinancial firms in a different creditor and enforcement setting. International models remain analytically useful when their assumed instruments, reporting quality, market liquidity, legal enforceability, currency stability and borrower risk-sharing arrangements are stated. Directly transferring a US equity risk premium, a European DSO benchmark or a listed-firm leverage target without adjustment would conflate institutional context with economic law. Rwanda's small-enterprise structure makes the question of transferability central to sound finance rather than a peripheral footnote.

24.11.4 Growth finance, asymmetric risk and the comparative evidence

SME financing is heterogeneous even within a single jurisdiction. A market trader requiring seasonal stock may prefer a revolving working-capital facility; a processor buying durable equipment may require maturity-matched investment credit; a software firm with little tangible collateral may need staged equity, customer prepayments or revenue-linked terms. Venture investment offers risk-bearing capacity but can also produce intensive governance, exit and control obligations that are inappropriate for an owner seeking a stable family enterprise. Guarantees can relax collateral constraints but create public contingent liabilities and moral hazard if losses are socialized without reliable underwriting. The financial instrument should fit the cash-generating mechanism rather than the prestige of a funding label.

Cross-country evidence should discipline, not replace, local inquiry. Beck et al. (2005), using enterprise-level evidence from 54 countries, find that finance, legal and corruption constraints are more adverse to growth for smaller firms, with institutional development mitigating their effects. The result identifies a patterned association with firm size in the studied data, not the causal effect of any present Rwandan financing product. In an experimental study of Sri Lankan microenterprises, de Mel et al. (2008, 2009b) document high but heterogeneous returns to grants of capital; their research also highlights important differences across types of owners. The study is valuable precisely because it challenges a simple assumption that any small firm offered more capital will produce a uniform return. Productive opportunity, entrepreneurial capability, sector, household constraints and market conditions mediate the effect, and national transfer requires fresh evidence.

The policy implication is methodological. A lending intervention should state whether it aims to improve viable borrowers' access, reduce transaction costs, enable genuinely additional investment, correct discriminatory informational practices or protect vulnerable applicants from harmful credit. Counts of loans, registered wallets and business registrations do not by themselves establish higher productivity, additional investment or welfare. Evaluation should examine counterfactual financing, defaults, displacement of existing lending, profitability, borrower burden and who ultimately bears losses. The unit of analysis must remain the enterprise or transaction when the policy question concerns business credit, even where household inclusion statistics provide useful contextual information (AFR, n.d.-b; Beck et al., 2005; NISR, 2026e).

24.12 FINANCE ETHICS AND EMERGING TOOLS

24.12.1 Honest valuation, fair contracting and responsible lending

Financial integrity requires refusing to hide predictable costs, manipulate forecast denominators or present conditional outcomes as guaranteed returns. A lender's affordability and repayment assessment is not ethically neutral when the financing contract transfers severe risk to households through personal guarantees. Equally, borrowers must not misstate sales, duplicate collateral claims or conceal debt. Appropriate disclosure involves the true cost of finance, fees, default consequences, variable-rate exposure and any foreign-currency mismatch. The most profitable contract for one party is not necessarily a just contract where meaningful comprehension and bargaining alternatives are absent.

A finance manager can face conflicts through related-party financing, supplier kickbacks, selectively timed payments and the use of confidential forecasts for private dealing. These conflicts need early declaration, independent approval, documented valuation and auditable procurement and payment controls. When financial stress arises, a responsible response distinguishes legitimate restructuring from coercive delay of wages or payments to vulnerable suppliers. The moral judgment is that enterprise continuity does not justify deception or unlawful harm; the empirical question of which restructuring arrangement is most effective must be examined separately.

24.12.2 Artificial intelligence, alternative data and model governance

AI tools can classify invoices, detect anomalous transactions, forecast receipts, simulate funding gaps and assist with credit assessment. Their output quality depends on the relevance, completeness and representativeness of training and operating data. Alternative data drawn from digital payments may be useful for customers lacking traditional credit records, yet can encode location, gender, network or device-access differences. A predictive score need not be a valid causal statement about willingness to repay or a fair basis for exclusion. Auditable deployment therefore requires explicit use cases, data permissions, feature review, model validation on relevant populations, calibration under distribution shift, human appeal, cybersecurity safeguards and clear ownership of consequential decisions.

Financial-model automation raises operational risks: a spreadsheet formula can be silently altered; a conversational system may generate confident but nonexistent regulatory provisions; a third-party service can withdraw access or expose confidential client records. The control architecture should separate model preparation, approval, execution and monitoring, with independent checks of cash-flow identities and investment outputs. Emerging systems may reduce processing costs but do not remove the principal's duty to understand the decision. Specialist enterprise information and AI governance are developed in Chapters 28 and 29.

24.12.3 Sustainable, climate and transition finance

Green loans, sustainability-linked instruments and impact capital can potentially alter investment economics through different contractual prices, eligibility or reporting conditions. Labels alone do not demonstrate environmental additionality. A credible project appraisal compares life-cycle energy use, maintenance, rebound effects, operational resilience and independently defensible outcomes. It distinguishes reductions that would occur without the financing from changes attributable to a new investment. Climate-related financial information also affects lenders' perception of future cash flows, collateral and operating continuity. IFRS S1 is an internationally issued disclosure standard effective for reporting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2024, but its legal adoption and scope in a particular jurisdiction must not be assumed (IFRS Foundation, 2023a). An ethical green-finance case should disclose methods, baselines, verification arrangements and uncertainty rather than claim sustainability from a product name.

24.12.4 Digital credit, assurance and transition-finance additionality

Digital traces may widen access to information without solving every problem of trust or justice. Berg et al. (2020) show that digital-footprint information can predict consumer default in the setting they study, but their findings do not establish that a similar model trained elsewhere will be accurate or fair for Rwandan microenterprises. Fuster et al. (2022) identify unequal distributional implications of machine-learning methods in US mortgage credit, demonstrating why better predictive performance need not entail equally shared benefits. If digital data correlate with device quality, network coverage or platform participation, a lender may mistake unequal access to technology for an independent measure of creditworthiness. A responsible credit model should therefore be evaluated for discrimination, calibration, explainability, stability through time, lawful data use, human appeal and the availability of alternative documentary pathways.

The finance function should require an evidence trail linking model outputs to authorized decisions. Predictions should be tested against an out-of-time dataset and monitored for deterioration when economic conditions change. Systems should record who approved a model, which variables are prohibited, what adverse-action explanation is available, and how exceptions are escalated. These provisions are business controls, not proof of compliance with any unverified Rwandan AI or privacy rule. Similarly, a green-labelled loan requires evidence of environmental consequences additional to a credible baseline. Lower energy bills may improve project NPV without demonstrating net climate benefit if production and consumption rebound. Where IFRS sustainability disclosure standards are relevant, the distinction between an issued international standard and legally mandated national adoption must remain explicit (IFRS Foundation, 2023a; Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 2023a).

24.13 INTEGRATED RWANDAN TEACHING CASE: INVESTMENT, CASH AND LEVERAGE

24.13.1 Enterprise, alternatives and method

Consider *Kigali Integrated Foods Ltd*, a wholly fictitious enterprise producing packaged foods for retail and institutional customers. It has been considering two **mutually exclusive** deployment options for its available management and working-capital capacity. Alternative A installs a larger packaging and sealing line; alternative B redesigns distribution, adds route-management equipment and expands contract deliveries. Cash flows are stated in **millions of Rwandan francs (RWF million)** at each year-end, before financing flows, in nominal terms. The appraisal is explicitly a simplified **pre-tax training model**: any implementation would require applicable tax, depreciation allowances, inflation, foreign-exchange, maintenance and legal considerations to be added consistently. Assume initial investments include commissioning and any investment-specific working-capital requirements; year-five cash flows include explicit net disposal and working-capital recovery.

Alternative A requires RWF 75 million immediately. Incremental operating net cash receipts in years 1–5 are RWF 24m, 26m, 28m, 30m and 32m, with RWF 10m of net terminal recovery added in year 5. Alternative B requires RWF 58m, generates RWF 20m, 21m, 22m, 24m and 25m, and recovers RWF 7m at year 5. The required return of 16% annually is **assumed for comparison**, not claimed as a market-derived WACC. Cash flows are positive after routine operating outflows and incremental working-capital effects already assumed in the case, excluding financing payments; no independent probability estimates are asserted.

Table 24.4. Constructed investment cash flows and year-end discount factors. Source: Author's hypothetical teaching assumptions; figures are RWF million and factors are rounded for presentation. Calculations use unrounded factors.

Year and timing	Alternative A cash flow	Alternative B cash flow	Discount factor at 16%
0, initial commitment	−75.00	−58.00	1.00000
1, year end	24.00	20.00	0.86207
2, year end	26.00	21.00	0.74316
3, year end	28.00	22.00	0.64066
4, year end	30.00	24.00	0.55229
5, including recovery	42.00	32.00	0.47611

24.13.2 Fully reconciled capital-budgeting comparison

For A, NPV = −75 + 24/1.16 + 26/1.16² + 28/1.16³ + 30/1.16⁴ + 42/1.16⁵ = **RWF 19.516 million** after rounding. For B, NPV = −58 + 20/1.16 + 21/1.16² + 22/1.16³ + 24/1.16⁴ + 32/1.16⁵ = **RWF 17.433 million**. Both projects clear the assumed 16% hurdle on expected cash flows; because they are mutually exclusive, A offers RWF 2.083 million greater absolute NPV if the enterprise can finance and execute it without violating liquidity constraints. Excel-style IRR calculations applied to the entire signed annual cash-flow sequences yield approximately **25.73% for A** and **27.34% for B**. IRR therefore ranks B ahead of A, demonstrating the scale-and-timing conflict rather than an arithmetic contradiction. At the assumed hurdle, the profitability indexes are **1.260** and **1.301**, respectively, again preferring the smaller option on value per initial franc while A creates more total modeled value.

Table 24.5. Capital-budgeting results for two mutually exclusive constructed projects. Source: Author calculations from Table 24.4, using full numerical precision. Payback interpolates within the recovery year and is not a dated-cash-flow value measure.

Criterion	Alternative A	Alternative B	Decision implication
Initial funds, RWF m	75.000	58.000	B needs 17m less at inception
NPV at 16%, RWF m	19.516	17.433	A maximizes modeled absolute value
IRR	25.73%	27.34%	B leads by percentage return
Profitability index	1.260	1.301	B leads in value per initial franc
Simple payback, years	2.893	2.773	B recovers nominal cash sooner
NPV at 12%, RWF m	29.983	25.667	A leads under lower hurdle
NPV at 20%, RWF m	10.606	10.416	A leads narrowly under higher hurdle

Simple payback for A is two full years plus (75 − 24 − 26)/28 = 2.893 years. For B it is two years plus (58 − 20 − 21)/22 = 2.773 years. These results are not by themselves evidence of resilience: collections may be delayed and a project can have a positive expected NPV with a severe short-term cash deficit. A responsible authorization memo should request an installation schedule, validated supplier quotations, customer commitments, capacity assessment, staged drawdown options, and a separate 13-week liquidity forecast. Because the difference between the NPVs narrows to approximately RWF 0.190 million at 20%, there is little

justification for treating the ranking as robust to all estimation errors. The supplied Excel workbook preserves the base-case and alternative rates, provides input-formula separation and allows independent recalculation.

Figure 24.2. Sensitivity of the competing project NPVs to the assumed opportunity cost of capital



Note. Curves are calculated from the constructed cash flows in Table 24.4. The figure displays modeled values under alternative assumptions, not observations or market forecasts. Source: Author calculations.

24.13.3 Cash-conversion-cycle illustration

The same hypothetical enterprise reports annual credit sales of RWF 600 million, annual cost of goods sold of RWF 456 million, average inventory of RWF 95 million, average trade receivables of RWF 68 million and average eligible payables of RWF 56 million. Using a 365-day convention and cost of goods sold as the **simplified payables denominator**, DIO = 95/456 × 365 = **76.04 days**; DSO = 68/600 × 365 = **41.37 days**; DPO = 56/456 × 365 = **44.82 days**; and CCC = 76.04 + 41.37 − 44.82 = **72.58 days**. These average-balance measures are descriptive, not evidence of excessive inventory or poor payment conduct without industry, seasonality and contractual comparisons.

Suppose management can reduce inventory holding by 10 days without compromising safe supply, reduce customer collections by 7 days through correcting invoice disputes and better documentation, and extend supplier terms by 5 days **only through voluntary renegotiation**. Approximate cash released is (10 × 456/365) + (7 × 600/365) + (5 × 456/365) = **RWF 30.247 million**. The revised CCC is (76.04 − 10) + (41.37 − 7) − (44.82 + 5) = **50.58 days**, a reduction of **22 days**, reflecting the fact that different sales and cost bases determine the cash effect. An apparent improvement that merely delays overdue payments outside agreed terms would be a misleading and unethical representation of liquidity improvement. Further, releasing cash already owed to a lender or needed for maintenance does not make it freely distributable.

24.13.4 Capital structure under stress

Suppose management considers funding RWF 70 million through a five-year fully amortizing loan at a hypothetical fixed annual 15%, with equal end-year payments and no fees. The payment is P = 70(0.15)/[1 − (1.15)^(-5)] = **RWF 20.882 million per year**. If the relevant annual cash flow available for debt service is RWF 30 million, DSCR is 30/20.882 = **1.44**; under a stress case of RWF 18 million, DSCR falls to **0.86**, leaving a **RWF 2.882 million** annual debt-service shortfall before considering any additional liquidity reserve. A high project IRR does not automatically cure the contractual shortfall. The capital structure must be evaluated with repayment sequencing, restrictive covenants, interest reset terms and asset cash-flow maturity. It would be misleading to subtract the loan payment from the project operating cash flows and then value those residual flows using an unchanged enterprise-wide WACC.

Table 24.6. Fictional capital-structure stress case. Source: Author calculations. This table illustrates annual contractual capacity, not a covenant definition accepted by any actual lender.

Stress test	Central case	Adverse case	Board-relevant interpretation
Cash available for debt service, RWF m	30.000	18.000	Excludes uncommitted balance-sheet cash
Fixed annual debt payment, RWF m	20.882	20.882	Equal payments over five years
DSCR	1.44	0.86	Adverse case falls below full cash coverage
Annual cash after debt service, RWF m	9.118	−2.882	Shortfall must be funded or terms revised

A conditional recommendation follows. A's slightly higher absolute NPV supports preference under the base assumptions, but only if committed funds, credible receivable collection, appropriate leverage terms and operational feasibility are demonstrated. Where a binding liquidity constraint makes A infeasible, B or phased implementation may be the responsible alternative. Positive NPV is not an exemption from liquidity discipline; a lower-NPV feasible project may dominate a higher-NPV infeasible one. Decision-makers must record why any investment was selected, rejected or deferred and specify the evidence that would reopen the question.

24.13.5 Investment committee decision and evidence checkpoints

The illustrative decision should not be reduced to 'choose A because its NPV is larger'. At 16%, the modeled incremental value advantage of A is approximately RWF 2.083 million, modest relative to the scale of assumptions about commissioning, revenue realization and financing. The appropriate decision first tests whether each project satisfies legitimate operating and legal conditions, then compares its value subject to resources and survival. If A requires borrowing terms that breach a minimum cash balance or create an adverse-case DSCR below an authorized threshold, the apparent superior NPV does not identify an executable preference. Conversely, assuming B is always safer because it is smaller would ignore the character and timing of its own cash receipts.

An investment committee should require independently checked supplier quotations, source-cited sales assumptions, a dated commissioning plan, operational capacity sign-off, maintenance cost coverage, written debt terms and a linked 13-week rolling cash projection. It should then document which decision conditions are presently satisfied, which remain open, and which managerial actor is accountable for resolving each. The committee may authorize a controlled pilot, conditional approval or deferral where information is valuable and commitment is irreversible. Post-approval monitoring should distinguish changes in the external environment

from errors in the initial investment logic. The board's obligation is to make an intelligible decision under uncertainty, not retrospectively to make every observed outcome appear inevitable.

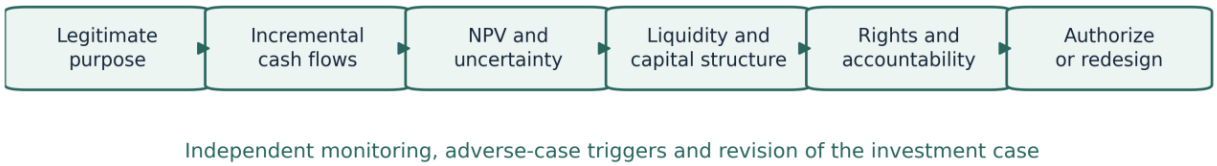
24.14 COMPARATIVE SYNTHESIS, CROSS-FUNCTIONAL CONSEQUENCES AND RESEARCH AGENDA

24.14.1 What finance theory explains, and what remains unresolved

The intellectual traditions examined here illuminate different dimensions of financial choice. Discounted cash flow supplies a coherent intertemporal opportunity-cost comparison; it does not independently verify its inputs or identify a socially legitimate objective. Modigliani–Miller reasoning reveals the conditions under which financing structure would be irrelevant; real enterprise financing requires precisely the institutional frictions their benchmark removes. Trade-off and pecking-order perspectives explain different correlations between firm characteristics and financing, but neither identifies a universal leverage target. Portfolio theory clarifies covariance, while borrowing capacity and concentrated ownership draw attention to tail events that price-based equilibrium models may underrepresent. Working-capital economics explains why a profitable sale may produce a funding shortfall, but a shorter cycle is not automatically a more ethical or resilient cycle.

The proposed integrated framework is therefore a finance feasibility–value–accountability sequence. It begins by making explicit the enterprise purpose, the contractual rights of affected parties and protections that cannot be overridden by an attractive return. Within those boundaries, analysts construct incremental alternatives, with cash-flow dates, currencies, source provenance and the uncertainties material to choice. An NPV comparison then establishes the conditional expected surplus, while dated cash balances and debt-service schedules test whether that surplus is attainable under feasible financing terms. The investment case is incomplete until its consequences for customers, workers, suppliers and other functions are examined. Authorization should finally identify accountable decision-makers, adverse-case thresholds and a review process capable of revising the original judgment when evidence changes. This synthesis integrates established approaches without claiming that the resulting decision architecture is a newly validated causal model.

Figure 24.3. A finance decision architecture integrating value, survival and accountability



Note. Failed feasibility or integrity tests return the proposal to redesign rather than automatically leading to approval on the strength of a favorable ratio. Source: Author's conceptual synthesis of the chapter's finance theories and professional decision requirements.

24.14.2 Interfunctional dependencies

An enterprise's financial results emerge from operating commitments that cannot be determined inside the finance department. In marketing and sales (Chapters 13–16), price, demand forecasts, customer credit terms and collection quality determine realized cash receipts rather than merely booked revenue. Operations and quality (Chapters 17 and 20) determine capacity feasibility, reject costs, maintenance, workplace safety and asset life. Procurement and logistics (Chapters 18–19) determine supplier obligations, inventory buffers and import exposure. Management accounting (Chapter 23) supplies relevant cost analysis, but the corporate-finance model translates incremental economic consequences into dated cash flows rather than using allocated averages indiscriminately. Governance (Chapter 8) determines the integrity of authorization, conflicts, financing commitments and owner distributions. Human-resource decisions (Chapters 9–12) influence skill availability, installation delays and essential payroll obligations. Investment therefore becomes a test of interfunctional coherence.

The integration is especially important in small enterprises where the same founder negotiates credit, authorizes expenditures and controls reported sales figures. Personal proximity does not remove conflicts of interest or justify weaker reconciliation. Proportionate controls can be simple but disciplined: separate personal and business accounts, reconcile bank and mobile-money receipts, document borrowings and guarantees, approve material investments in writing and review customer collections alongside payroll commitments. As enterprises scale, the necessary arrangements become more formal, but the underlying principles of traceability and separation of duties remain.

24.14.3 Integrative conclusion: value, resilience and responsibility

A finance decision is best understood as a claim about the future rather than a verdict on the past. Financial statements reveal recognized transactions and obligations; capital budgeting evaluates incremental alternatives; and cash forecasts test the dates on which settlement will become unavoidable. The same enterprise may report profit, forecast positive NPV and nevertheless enter distress if receipts arrive after wages and principal must be paid. A convincing analysis must therefore demonstrate compatibility among value, liquidity and legally enforceable commitments.

Theories of capital structure, portfolio choice and valuation illuminate necessary but different parts of that demonstration. Frictionless financing models clarify when financing labels would not change underlying productive value, while information asymmetry, collateral constraints and distributional conflicts explain why financing may determine which positive-value investments can be implemented. Diversification and flexibility can reduce exposure but impose real organizational costs. None of these mechanisms justifies a universal debt ratio, risk premium or cash-cycle target independent of business conditions.

The African comparative perspective strengthens the analytical framework by making institutional assumptions visible. Markets with incomplete transaction histories, concentrated ownership, thin trading and costly collateral enforcement cannot simply import rates, covenant norms or capital-market instruments derived from highly liquid listed-company samples. Yet local constraints also do not invalidate the logic of incremental cash flows or the opportunity cost of resources. Responsible transfer requires retaining the mathematical principles while re-estimating empirical parameters and redesigning governance arrangements to match actual capabilities.

Finally, a financial outcome cannot be declared responsible only because an expected present value is positive. Employee safety, lawful payments, meaningful disclosure, proportionate credit assessment and enforceable stakeholder claims determine which alternatives are admissible. The proposed integrated architecture is consequently a conditional decision discipline: establish legitimate aims and evidence; construct incremental choices; test value and cash feasibility; govern funding rights and risks; and subject the resulting commitments to independent monitoring and revision. Its intellectual contribution is the connection among these tests, not an assertion that they have already been empirically validated.

24.14.4 Research opportunities and a transparent evaluation design

Research in Rwanda and comparable African settings could investigate whether improvements in the verifiability of sales and receivables change financing terms after accounting for enterprise size, sector and prior creditworthiness; whether observed reductions in CCC reflect genuine collections or shifts in bargaining power; how guarantee design influences additional lending rather than substitution for commercial loans; and whether alternative digital-payment records improve credit decisions without disadvantaging lower-connectivity entrepreneurs. Another relevant question is whether discount-rate methods based on internationally traded securities produce systematic appraisal errors for privately held, heavily concentrated family firms. Green-finance research should measure incremental physical outcomes rather than count product labels or concessional disbursements.

A replicable secondary-data study would first register its unit of observation, sampling frame, period, outcome and explanatory variables. IBES, MSME FinMap, official macroeconomic series and company-level financial statements, where lawfully accessible, would be treated as different datasets with noninterchangeable populations. Estimates would require transparent variable definitions, comparable nominal or real units, explicit missing-data treatment, sensitivity to selection and documented data licenses. A causal question about financing availability would need an identification design, such as a plausibly exogenous eligibility threshold or staged policy change, and careful examination of spillovers and concurrent reforms. Cross-sectional associations cannot automatically establish credit-market failure or the effect of a financing intervention. These commitments make the proposed research agenda open to correction rather than dependent on a preferred policy outcome.

24.15 KEY TERMINOLOGY, FURTHER READING AND LEARNING ASSESSMENT

24.15.1 Concise disciplinary glossary

The following definitions identify the meaning of frequently used terms within the financial decisions examined in this chapter; the qualifications provided in the corresponding sections govern their technical application.

Concept	Working definition
Capital budgeting	Comparing dated incremental capital outlays with contingent future benefits and costs.
Cost of capital	Required return consistent with a specific financing claim and cash-flow risk.
Cash conversion cycle	DIO + DSO − DPO, measured in days using declared denominators.
Debt-service coverage	Defined cash available to repay scheduled interest and principal, divided by the debt service.
Equity	Residual ownership claim after settlement of prior legally recognized claims.
Financial flexibility	Capacity to meet contingencies or pursue options without disproportionate financial cost.
Internal rate of return	Discount rate at which a cash-flow stream has zero NPV, where a meaningful solution exists.
Liquidity	Capacity to settle monetary obligations in the amounts and at the dates required.
Net present value	Present value of all incremental dated inflows and outflows at a declared required return.
Profitability index	PV of future net inflows divided by initial outlay for a conventional single-outlay project.
Solvency	Longer-term capacity to honor financial obligations without default or untenable refinancing.
Systematic risk	Risk that remains relevant to prices of claims under the specified market-pricing model.
Terminal value	Estimated value at the explicit forecast horizon of later economic claims.

Concept	Working definition
Weighted-average cost of capital	Weighted required returns on relevant financing claims with compatible tax and market-value assumptions.

24.15.2 Questions for conceptual mastery

Foundational question (LO1–LO3): A firm reports positive net profit but cannot pay a RWF 12 million loan installment. Explain, without assuming fraud, how accounting profit, operational cash, NPV and solvency differ. Then calculate the present value of RWF 15 million payable in three years at a stipulated annual effective 13%, stating every timing assumption.

Applied exercise (LO3–LO5): Reproduce Tables 24.4–24.6 using formulas rather than typed results. Test hurdle rates of 12%, 16% and 20%. Assume the first two years of A's receipts are delayed one year while its other cash flows and terminal date remain unchanged; calculate the new NPV and explain whether the scenario is a pure delay or alters terminal recovery. Recalculate CCC if annual credit sales fall to RWF 540 million and average receivables remain RWF 68 million; interpret the result without claiming that a causal reduction in efficiency has been demonstrated.

Critical discussion (LO4, LO6–LO8): An investor claims that a startup with only intangible assets should use a 'Rwanda country risk premium' added to a US-listed-firm WACC and simultaneously reduce every forecast cash flow for the same national risk. Critique possible double-counting, currency inconsistency and the transferability of traded-security prices. Propose a transparent, defensible alternative and identify what cannot be measured credibly from the information supplied.

Capstone assessment (LO1–LO8): Prepare a 2,500–3,500-word investment committee memorandum for the hypothetical enterprise, with a reproducible workbook, comparing A, B, phased A and deferral. Model at least three internally consistent sales–collections–foreign-exchange scenarios; prepare a 13-week liquidity schedule and annual debt-service plan; identify distribution restrictions, customer and supplier consequences, assumptions requiring verification, owner and lender conflicts, and explicit authorization and review thresholds. Include a two-page appendix mapping each recommendation to evidence, calculation and accountable decision maker. The assignment requires a reasoned choice, not merely a ranking of ratios.

24.15.3 Educator guidance and indicative rubric

A strong response demonstrates correct formula construction, timing discipline, nominal/real and currency consistency, treatment of financing without double-counting, a feasible cash forecast, critical interpretation of competing measures and ethically defensible treatment of suppliers, workers and lenders. The indicative grading weights are: theoretical and conceptual reasoning (20%); reproducible quantitative work (30%); evidence quality and sensitivity (20%); interfunctional and ethical analysis (20%); clarity, reference accuracy and decision discipline (10%). Where actual loan terms, taxes or customer data are absent, exemplary students should disclose the missing evidence and use clearly marked assumptions; inventing 'current Rwanda rates' should not receive credit. The capstone can be adapted for advanced undergraduate or postgraduate levels by varying the extent of uncertainty modeling and causal-evidence requirements.

24.15.4 Selected further reading

Modigliani and Miller (1958) supply the benchmark for financing irrelevance and its institutional assumptions. Myers and Majluf (1984) explain information asymmetry and external funding. Markowitz (1952) and Sharpe (1964) develop distinct portfolio-allocation and market-pricing perspectives. Graham and Harvey (2001) provide a useful empirical contrast between finance theory and reported managerial practice. Berger and Udell (1998) offer a structured financial growth-cycle account relevant to SMEs, while Kaplan and Zingales (1997) demonstrate why common empirical proxies for constraints require caution. NISR's 2024 enterprise-survey release and AFR's MSME FinMap support an applied reading exercise in denominator discipline and context-sensitive financial analysis.

CHAPTER 25

Banking, Financial Markets, and Financial Technology

ABSTRACT

Financial systems determine whether economic promises can become reliable transfers of purchasing power, productive investment and protection against uncertainty. Their institutional value cannot be inferred from the number of accounts, the speed of a payment, or the expansion of credit alone. This chapter develops a critical, integrated account of banking, financial markets, insurance and financial technology across twelve domains. A transparent documentary synthesis combines theories of delegated monitoring, asymmetric information, liquidity transformation, financial development and innovation with verified international standards and Rwandan regulatory and survey evidence. Rwanda's FinScope 2024 findings, the National Bank of Rwanda's 2024/25 reporting, capital-market developments and a reported central-bank digital-currency proof of concept are interpreted without conflating access, usage, welfare and system resilience. A comparative discussion of Kenyan mobile money and global financial infrastructure examines the transportability of evidence. Original educational instruments include a functional financial-ecosystem diagram, financing-suitability matrix, enterprise–household financial-journey map, and a reproducible digital-lender stress review. The central argument is that sound financial intermediation depends on the simultaneous credibility of claims, information, funding, settlement, consumer remedy and public safeguards. Technological innovation can reduce transaction and information costs, but may also transfer risks or consolidate market power. The integrated framework is a reasoned analytical synthesis, not an empirically validated model; empirical claims, illustrative figures and normative judgments are explicitly separated.

Keywords: financial intermediation; commercial banking; credit rationing; capital markets; payment systems; financial technology; financial inclusion; insurance; central bank digital currency; Rwanda.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

Upon completing the chapter, readers should be able to: (LO1) explain and critically compare the functions and theoretical rationales of intermediaries, markets and risk-transfer institutions; (LO2) reconstruct bank balance-sheet and payment-settlement mechanics while identifying binding funding, capital and liquidity constraints; (LO3) evaluate enterprise credit, debt securities, equity and alternative financing against documented business needs; (LO4) distinguish money-market, capital-market, payment and insurance instruments using appropriate calculations and institutional safeguards; (LO5) appraise fintech models, digital-credit decisions and payment interoperability through measurable costs, risks and consumer outcomes; (LO6) interpret Rwanda-specific financial-inclusion and sector evidence with valid denominators and comparative limitations; (LO7) assess financial stability, climate, cyber, data, algorithmic and digital-asset risks without confusing a proposal, pilot and legal tender; and (LO8) defend an auditable integrated financing-and-payments recommendation with numerical sensitivity analysis, ethical safeguards and appropriate revision triggers.

The chapter first establishes the financial system's functions (25.1) and bank intermediation (25.2), then examines credit (25.3), securities markets (25.4), prudential governance (25.5), payments (25.6), fintech (25.7), inclusion (25.8), insurance (25.9), capital formation (25.10), digital monetary innovation (25.11) and emerging systemic risks (25.12). A Rwanda-centred application, international comparison, constructed digital-lender case, synthesis, research agenda and teaching apparatus follow. Financial statements, management costing and

investment valuation belong principally to Chapters 22–24; tax and audit compliance to Chapter 26. The present chapter explains the intermediaries, markets and infrastructures through which enterprise financing and settlement actually occur.

25.0 INTRODUCTION: WHEN A BUSINESS HAS A CUSTOMER BUT CANNOT COMPLETE THE EXCHANGE

A hypothetical Rwandan food-processing enterprise has signed a supply agreement with a national retailer. It must buy packaging today, pay employees weekly, deliver goods within fourteen days and wait thirty days after delivery for the retailer's payment. The owner's bank account displays a positive balance, yet its available funds do not cover the production cycle. A commercial bank requests verified cash flows and acceptable collateral; an invoice-finance provider offers an advance against the buyer's receivable; the supplier will accept a staged payment; a mobile-money channel can collect small retail receipts but imposes transaction costs. The owner must also insure inventory and transport exposure. There is no single 'finance problem': the enterprise faces distinct problems of maturity, risk, evidence, enforceability and settlement.

Financial systems are arrangements of institutions, contracts, markets, information and infrastructures through which economic agents store and transfer value, mobilize resources and redistribute risks. Banks extend credit and offer payment liabilities; securities markets price transferable claims; insurers pool and price specified risks; pensions and investment funds aggregate long-horizon savings; payment systems transfer instructions and effect settlement; authorities establish monetary, prudential and conduct conditions. A company can use several simultaneously, and none is a comprehensive substitute for the others. The central analytical question is not whether finance is modern or expanding, but which arrangements convert scarce savings, credible information and enforceable commitments into beneficial real-sector activity without creating unacceptable fragility.

The chapter employs a critical targeted documentary synthesis rather than claiming a systematic review or new fieldwork. Sources were selected purposively for four purposes: original mechanisms in peer-reviewed theory; evidence on enterprise financing and financial inclusion; primary Rwandan institutional reporting and laws; and international infrastructure and prudential standards. Official sources were prioritized for institution-specific and time-sensitive claims, with their observation periods retained. Study findings are interpreted according to design and population; constructed calculations serve pedagogy, not evidence of Rwandan firm outcomes. This approach supports analytical integration and reproducible arithmetic, but not causal estimation of the entire proposed framework or exhaustive coverage of rapidly changing regulation.

25.0.1 Philosophical foundations: efficiency, trust and distributive legitimacy

The allocation of capital involves at least three distinct kinds of judgment. An instrumental judgment asks whether an intermediary reduces search, verification, monitoring or settlement costs. An epistemic judgment asks whether an estimated default probability, market price or inclusion statistic accurately represents its intended phenomenon. A normative judgment asks whose claims receive priority, who bears residual risk and whether vulnerable participants can understand and contest treatment. These questions are related but irreducible. A fast algorithm may price risk accurately while relying on unjustified personal data; a prudentially conservative lender may protect depositors while denying viable small firms; a subsidized loan may expand observed access while crowding out more suitable financing or increasing indebtedness.

Neither the proposition that finance always drives development nor the opposing claim that finance is inherently extractive withstands scrutiny. King and Levine (1993) reported broad cross-country associations between financial development and growth, while Rajan and Zingales (1998) examined the differential performance of industries dependent on external financing. Yet identification, reverse causality, and institutional heterogeneity matter: financial deepening may follow productive development as well as facilitate it. Later evidence that smaller firms encounter disproportionate financing and legal constraints supports focused institutional reforms,

not indiscriminate credit expansion (Beck et al., 2005). Throughout the chapter, efficiency and inclusion are evaluated jointly with stability, genuine welfare and the distribution of risks.

25.0.2 Historical and institutional evolution of financial intermediation

Financial intermediation has evolved through institutional experimentation rather than a universal progression from barter to bank accounts and then digital platforms. Merchant credit, community-based saving, bills of exchange, organized exchanges, central banks and public debt markets emerged in different historical settings to solve problems of trust, distance, public finance and enforceability. Industrial production subsequently increased demand for long-duration finance, while modern wholesale markets expanded the capacity to distribute claims beyond the originating lender. These developments did not abolish earlier arrangements. Trade credit, rotating savings groups, cooperatives, regulated banks and securities markets continue to coexist because their informational strengths, transaction sizes and risk-bearing arrangements differ.

Historical comparison also cautions against treating financial deepening as synonymous with deregulation. Financial liberalization may improve price discovery and competitive entry, but when funding guarantees, supervision and risk-management capacity are incomplete it can amplify runs and misallocation. Conversely, administratively directed credit may support investments with social returns that private markets undervalue while exposing public finances to political capture and concealed losses. The appropriate institutional comparison therefore asks who allocates capital, who monitors performance, who bears residual loss, and how claims are enforced when projects fail. The resulting answer is contingent upon legal quality, credible information, contestable markets and the distribution of bargaining power.

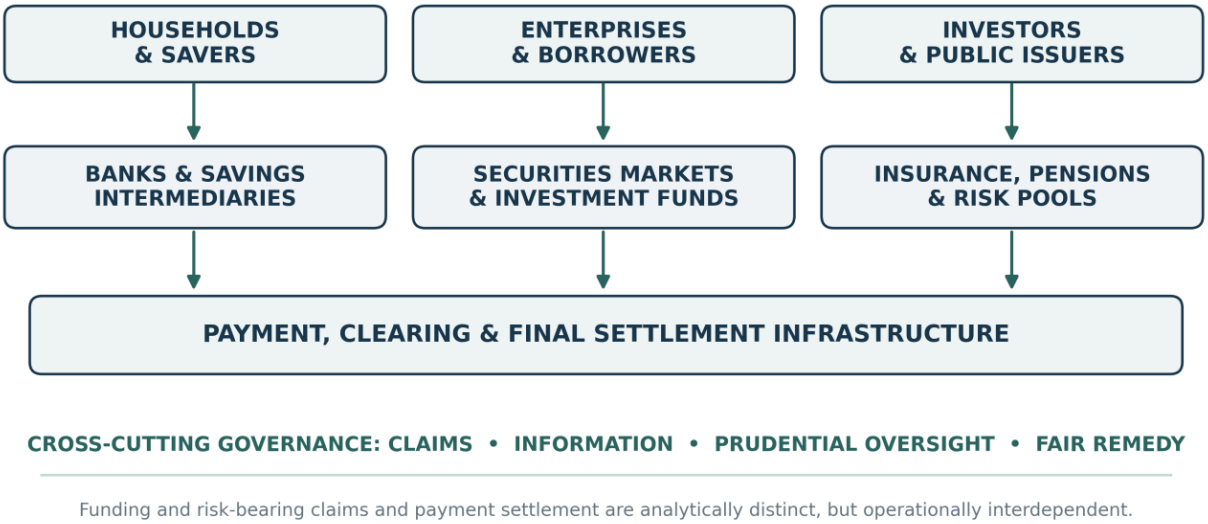
25.1 FINANCIAL SYSTEMS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

A financial system is best understood by what it accomplishes rather than by a list of institutions. The classical functions are to transfer payments; mobilize and pool savings; allocate capital; monitor recipients of funds; transform maturity and liquidity; diversify or transfer risks; discover prices; and generate information that improves contractual performance (Diamond, 1984; Leland & Pyle, 1977). Institutions vary widely in their combinations of these functions. A SACCO may pool small deposits and lend on the basis of local knowledge; a commercial bank may create deposit money, underwrite business loans and provide settlement access; an investment fund may pool savings without promising deposits redeemable at par; a pension manager invests against long-term liabilities; a fintech provider may deliver an interface while a licensed institution holds the funds.

The distinction between direct and intermediated finance is analytically important. In direct financing, an enterprise issues a security, such as a bond or share, to investors through a market or placement arrangement. In intermediated financing, an institution issues its own liabilities to savers or funders and holds claims on borrowers. In practice, underwriting, custody, clearing, market-making, fund management and credit enhancement often blur this contrast. What remains distinct is the allocation of information-production costs, legal claims, liquidity promises and residual losses. Capital supplied through a market is not thereby unmonitored, and money placed in a bank is not thereby risk-free.

An adequately functioning system must meet both **microeconomic tests**, such as cost, information quality and reliable service, and **system-level tests**, such as resilience to runs and correlated losses. The same liquidity transformation that makes bank deposits convenient exposes banks to withdrawals when loans are illiquid. Diamond and Dybvig (1983) formalized how demandable claims can provide useful liquidity insurance while permitting self-fulfilling runs under particular assumptions. The result explains the rationale for credible deposit protection and liquidity backstops, but does not show that all withdrawals are irrational or that public guarantees should cover every financial claim.

Figure 25.1. The enterprise-centred financial ecosystem.



The conceptual diagram places households, enterprises, public issuers and investors around deposit-taking institutions, capital markets, insurance/pension pools and payment infrastructures. It shows two distinct circulations: funding and risk-bearing claims on one side, payment instructions and final settlement on the other. A third, cross-cutting layer represents information, conduct rules, prudential oversight and dispute resolution. Note. Original analytical synthesis informed by Diamond (1984), the Committee on Payment and Settlement Systems and International Organization of Securities Commissions (2012), and the National Bank of Rwanda (2025). Arrows indicate possible functions, not empirically estimated causal effects.

Table 25.1. Functions, instruments and failure modes in an integrated financial ecosystem

Function	Principal arrangements	Value to enterprise or household	Distinct failure mode
Payment and settlement	Bank deposits, card networks, mobile wallets, real-time rails	Timely discharge of obligations	Fraud, outage, unresolved finality
Savings and liquidity	Deposits, money-market claims, savings groups	Transfer purchasing power across dates	Run risk, inflation or counterparty loss
Capital allocation	Loans, bonds, shares, investment funds	Finance productive capabilities	Adverse selection, mispricing, concentration
Insurance and pooling	Life, health, property, agricultural insurance	Convert uncertain large losses into priced claims	Exclusions, underpricing, disputed claims
Information and monitoring	Credit files, due diligence, audits, alternative data	Reduce uncertainty and costly verification	Bias, surveillance, poor-quality data
Investor exit and discovery	Exchanges, dealers, clearing and custody	Liquidity and transparent price signals	Thin trading, manipulation, settlement failure

Note. Conceptual classification developed for this chapter. Instruments are not interchangeable and protections differ across products and jurisdictions.

The functional approach avoids a common policy error: counting new accounts, loan disbursements or listed instruments as if they directly measured economic improvement. A well-functioning payment account may transform a merchant's collections without increasing its access to medium-term investment finance.

Conversely, a large capital market can mobilize investment for established issuers while remaining inaccessible to informal enterprises. This distinction is especially relevant in Rwanda, where mobile-money diffusion and bank-account ownership have moved differently (Access to Finance Rwanda [AFR], 2024).

25.1.1 Financial development, allocation efficiency and causality

The financial-development hypothesis is persuasive only when its proposed channels are specified. Better screening can shift resources toward productive uses; cheaper payment services can support specialization and market exchange; risk pooling can make otherwise unattractive investments tolerable; and institutions that discipline borrowers may improve the use of scarce resources. Such mechanisms offer a stronger explanation than a correlation between the stock of credit and gross domestic product. Cross-country association is vulnerable to omitted institutional quality, reverse causality and shifts in credit composition. Financial deepening directed toward productive working capital and transferable technology is not economically equivalent to leveraged speculation in existing assets (King & Levine, 1993; Rajan & Zingales, 1998).

Two policy risks follow. First, finance can be underprovided where viable borrowers cannot communicate project quality or pledge enforceable assets; here, credit-information systems, collateral reform and proportionate supervision may improve outcomes. Second, finance can be overexpanded when underpriced guarantees, procyclical expectations or weak creditor discipline support risky lending; here, capital and liquidity safeguards matter. Development should thus be assessed across a vector of outcomes, including investment additionality, payment reliability, household consumption protection, distributional access and fiscal exposure. A policy that improves one component need not dominate alternatives on the others. This chapter treats the financial system as an enabling institution, not as an independent engine that guarantees real-sector productivity.

25.2 COMMERCIAL BANKING AND DEPOSIT-LENDING

A commercial bank holds assets such as customer loans, securities, reserves and cash, and finances them with liabilities including deposits and wholesale borrowing, together with shareholders' equity. The accounting identity is **assets = liabilities + equity**. Equity absorbs losses after accounting provisions and other applicable adjustments; deposits ordinarily represent contractual claims payable under agreed terms. Banks generate earnings through interest margins, commissions and services, yet their operating model requires simultaneous control of credit, liquidity, interest-rate, operational, concentration and conduct risks. A bank may be accounting-profitable while vulnerable to a liquidity shock, or liquid while inadequately capitalized following asset impairment.

A fundamental correction to the textbook 'loanable deposits first' story is that, in modern banking, a new loan normally creates a corresponding bank deposit. McLeay et al. (2014) explain that this operation increases the bank's loan asset and deposit liability, rather than transferring an already existing deposit from one named saver to another. Loan creation is not unconstrained: borrowers must be willing and sufficiently creditworthy, capital and risk limits must be met, the bank must obtain settlement liquidity as payments leave, funding remains costly, and central-bank policy affects pricing and balance-sheet demand. The balance-sheet mechanism should therefore be distinguished from a claim that banks can create unlimited purchasing power.

25.2.1 Auditable balance-sheet illustration

Assume a bank initially has RWF 1,000 million of assets, comprising RWF 760 million in loans, RWF 140 million in securities and RWF 100 million in reserves. It has RWF 900 million in deposit liabilities and RWF 100 million of equity. When it approves and credits a RWF 40 million loan into the borrower's deposit account, loans become RWF 800 million and deposits RWF 940 million; total assets and liabilities plus equity each become RWF 1,040 million. No reserve transfer has yet occurred. If the borrower sends RWF 30 million to a customer of another bank, the originating bank's reserves and deposits each fall by RWF 30 million after settlement. Its final assets are RWF 1,010 million (loans 800, securities 140, reserves 70), and liabilities plus equity are RWF 1,010 million (deposits 910, equity 100). **The illustrative figures demonstrate mechanics only; actual lending is conditioned by profitability, capital, funding, prudential rules and the payments environment.**

The risk transformation created by that transaction is material. A term loan may amortize over three years, while deposits can be transferred within seconds. Assets are further exposed to correlated default when clients share a sector, importer, geographic market or public-sector counterparty. The bank must therefore manage both idiosyncratic loss and collective stress. Interest-rate repricing mismatches mean that a bank with fixed-rate assets and rapidly repricing deposits may suffer declining net interest income or market-value losses even if credit quality is unchanged. Market liquidity, asset liquidity, funding liquidity and central-bank liquidity are related but not identical.

25.2.2 Why banks exist: monitoring and liquidity theories

Diamond's (1984) delegated-monitoring model argues that a diversified intermediary can reduce the duplication involved when many investors independently monitor the same borrower. Its implications depend on the cost of verification, incentive arrangements and the intermediary's ability to diversify. Leland and Pyle (1977) emphasize how entrepreneurs possess information about project quality that prospective funders cannot costlessly observe; signaling and screening mechanisms arise, but may separate borrowers imperfectly. Diamond and Dybvig's (1983) liquidity-insurance model explains a different function: converting illiquid long-duration productive claims into comparatively liquid household claims. These mechanisms complement rather than replace one another, and none establishes that the bank organizational form is always the least-cost arrangement.

Contemporary banks operate amid competition from government instruments, institutional investors, securities markets, fintech partnerships and deposit-like products provided by nonbanks. The material question is whether nonbank substitutes replicate the same guarantees, central-bank access, supervision and loss-absorption capacity. Similar customer interfaces can conceal fundamentally different legal positions, particularly for prepaid e-money versus an insured deposit. Professionals should confirm who owes the customer, where safeguarded balances are held, how insolvency is resolved and when a transfer becomes irrevocable.

25.2.3 Asset-liability management, liquidity resilience and bank failure

A bank's liquidity exposure is governed less by the average maturity of its assets than by the timing and contingency of its obligations. Deposit balances can be stable in ordinary periods and highly mobile under stress. Wholesale funding may appear inexpensive until counterparties shorten tenor or increase collateral requirements; liquid securities may become costly to sell precisely when other institutions seek cash. Asset-liability management therefore requires cash-flow ladders by currency and horizon, behavioral assumptions for deposits, collateral valuation, committed-credit drawdowns and reverse stress tests. The observed balance sheet is a snapshot, while liquidity adequacy is a conditional forecast under plausible withdrawals, drawdowns and market disruptions.

Brunnermeier and Pedersen (2009) distinguish funding liquidity from market liquidity and show how deteriorating funding conditions can force asset sales that further reduce tradable prices and collateral capacity.

This feedback links individually rational liquidity protection to collective fragility. For Rwanda, the operational lesson is not that every small institution needs a sophisticated trading model. It is that lenders should know the sources and currency of funding, the concentration of large depositors, the realizable quality of liquid assets, the legal availability of emergency facilities and the responsibilities for deposit communications. A prudential ratio without credible contingency execution may create a false sense of security.

25.3 CREDIT ALLOCATION AND ENTERPRISE FINANCING

The price of credit does not by itself allocate all loan demand. Under asymmetric information, lenders may be unable to identify borrower risk reliably, and raising interest rates can worsen the applicant pool or induce riskier borrower behaviour. Stiglitz and Weiss (1981) showed that credit rationing can occur even where some rejected applicants would accept a higher rate. The formal model is conditional, but its practical warning endures: a refusal is not necessarily evidence of capital scarcity or discriminatory intent, just as a high quoted rate need not perfectly capture a borrower's risk. Credit decisions require explicit examination of information asymmetry, expected recovery, contractual enforcement and lender incentives.

A disciplined enterprise-credit file connects the purpose of borrowing to cash conversion and repayment capacity. It normally includes identity and beneficial-control verification, historical and forecast cash flows, customer and supplier concentrations, existing indebtedness, management quality, industry conditions, collateral or guarantees, security enforceability, covenants and environmental or social exposures where relevant. **Character, capacity, capital, collateral and conditions** remain a helpful mnemonic, not a validated substitute for verifiable underwriting. Relevant transaction data may improve prediction when financial statements are weak, but exclusion of people without a digital history can introduce a different coverage bias.

25.3.1 Repayment structures, pricing and total borrower cost

A revolving overdraft, term loan, invoice finance, factoring, lease and trade-credit instrument solve different problems. An overdraft accommodates uncertain timing of receipts if utilisation and fees remain controlled. A term loan better matches capital equipment with a predictable service schedule. Invoice financing accelerates receivables but can involve recourse, notification and debtor-quality conditions. Factoring may transfer collection activity and, under specified contracts, some default exposure. Supplier credit is often operationally accessible but its implied cost can be large: rejecting a 2% discount for payment at day 10 and instead paying at day 40 implies an approximate 30-day financing rate of 0.02/0.98 = 2.0408%, or a simple annualized approximation of 24.83% using 365/30 periods. This arithmetic does not imply that every supplier discount should be taken; liquidity, contractual conditions, taxes and other financing costs must be compared.

For a fully amortizing loan with fixed periodic rate r, principal P and n equal payments, the installment is A = Pr/[1 − (1 + r)^(−n)]. For example, a **hypothetical** RWF 12 million loan at 1.5% per month for 12 months requires approximately RWF 1.101 million per month (see Appendix A computation protocol). The nominal quoted monthly rate does not by itself disclose processing charges, compulsory insurance, late fees or an annual effective cost. The borrower should construct the dated net-cash-flow schedule and compute the internal rate of those cash flows, then compare alternatives only on matched risk, access and contractual terms. Lenders should test debt-service capacity under delayed collections, margin compression and foreign-exchange exposure rather than merely apply a static income multiple.

In the 2024 Integrated Business Enterprise Survey context, Rwanda's statistical authorities report a business landscape dominated by informal units and identify collateral constraints among reported barriers to finance; these business-survey denominators are not interchangeable with the adult population measured by FinScope (National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda [NISR], 2026e). International firm-level research shows financing obstacles tend to be more severe for smaller enterprises, but the numerical magnitudes in a 54-country historical sample should not be transported mechanically to today's Rwandan sector mix (Beck et al., 2005). Meaningful

credit deepening may require reliable records, movable-collateral infrastructure, affordable dispute settlement, longer-term funding and borrower capability alongside new lending channels.

25.3.2 Lending technologies, collateral and the financing of smaller firms

Small-enterprise financing is frequently discussed as a single collateral shortage, but Berger and Udell (2006) distinguish lending technologies based on financial statements, credit scoring, asset-based collateral, factoring, leasing, trade credit and relationship information. The feasibility of each depends on complementary institutions. Financial-statement lending requires credible records and verification. Asset-based lending requires identifiable property and enforceable priority. Factoring requires reliable invoices and trustworthy debtors. Relationship lending draws on accumulated soft information that may be difficult to reproduce in an automated model. A digital identity or repayment record can reduce one information problem without resolving uncertain demand, weak management systems or legally unenforceable security.

Relationship banking can be particularly valuable for businesses with seasonal receipts and incomplete audited accounts, but it creates its own risks. The loan officer may have useful local knowledge unavailable to central models, while discretion can also produce favoritism, concentrated exposures and inconsistent pricing. Digital scoring offers scalability and documentation, but generates model drift and coverage bias when the observed borrowers differ from applicants excluded by the model. A credible SME-finance programme does not choose technology for its appearance of objectivity; it specifies which information gap each method closes, evaluates repayment and borrower welfare over complete credit vintages, and demonstrates how decisions can be contested (Berger & Udell, 2006; Berg et al., 2020).

25.3.3 Borrower affordability, currency risk and responsible restructuring

Credit suitability is a forward-looking property of a borrower's business, not simply a percentage of reported turnover. For a manufacturer buying imported machinery, a Rwandan-franc revenue stream and a foreign-currency liability create exchange-rate exposure even when the interest margin looks favorable. A borrower repaying from seasonal crop or tourism receipts may require an amortization profile unlike that of a salaried borrower. Affordability analysis should therefore compare dated expected free cash flow to all debt-service obligations under downside scenarios, including delayed collections, input-price increases, changes in interest rates and foreign-currency depreciation. Security may improve recovery for a lender, but cannot create operating cash when the underlying business model is unviable.

When distress emerges, restructuring should be evaluated against the economic value of continued operation and the rights of other claimants. A temporary maturity extension may avoid inefficient liquidation if the borrower faces a transitory liquidity shock; repeated capitalization of unpaid interest may instead conceal insolvency and deepen harm. Debt collection must remain proportionate and lawful, with no inference that a borrower who defaults lacks moral character. The appropriate institutional objective is credible screening, feasible terms, prompt recognition of impairment, transparent workouts and accessible appeal. These obligations remain important whether a loan is originated in a branch, through a mobile wallet or by an embedded-finance provider.

25.4 MONEY AND CAPITAL MARKETS

Money markets provide comparatively short-maturity funding and liquidity management through instruments such as treasury bills, interbank claims, repurchase agreements and eligible commercial paper. Capital markets support longer-horizon securities including government and corporate bonds, ordinary shares, investment funds and structured products. The boundary is economic rather than purely administrative: maturity, liquidity, marketability, legal seniority and the investor's capacity to bear loss matter more than product labels. A sovereign bond is a credit exposure, not a universal risk-free asset; a share provides residual ownership, not guaranteed dividends; and an exchange quotation is no assurance of immediate execution at the quoted price.

Bond valuation links future contractual cash flows to required yields. For a plain fixed-coupon bond, **Price = Σ[C/(1+y)^t] + F/(1+y)^n**, where C is the periodic coupon, F the redemption principal, y the period-matched yield and n the number of periods. Price and yield generally move inversely for a standard fixed-coupon bond, holding other features constant. Duration estimates local sensitivity to yield changes, while convexity refines this approximation; neither eliminates credit, inflation, currency or liquidity risk. For equities, expected return is fundamentally uncertain because residual cash distributions and terminal value depend on performance and governance. Prospectus disclosure, issuer transparency, custody protections and secondary-market depth determine how useful market signals are.

25.4.1 Primary issuance, secondary trading and investor suitability

In a primary issue, new securities raise funds for the issuer, less expenses and with conditions specified in offering documentation. Secondary trades transfer existing holdings between investors; they usually do not deliver new cash to the original issuer, although more liquid secondary trading may reduce future financing costs. Underwriters, brokers, exchanges, registrars, custodians, clearing entities and the central securities depository perform distinct activities. An efficient primary market is possible without a deep secondary market, but exit constraints often increase investor-required returns and complicate long-duration risk-bearing.

Rwanda's Capital Market Authority (CMA) reported that FY2024/25 government bond issuance raised approximately RWF 246 billion and that three corporate bond issuances worth RWF 46 billion received approval, including green and sustainability-linked structures (Capital Market Authority [CMA], 2026). Its March 2026 communication also reported a 3.4% increase in Rwanda Stock Exchange market capitalization to RWF 3.84 trillion and collective-investment-scheme assets under management of RWF 71.4 billion. These are **period-specific regulatory communications**: market capitalization is the market value of included equities, not new financing raised; approved bond issuance is not identical to actual cash deployed; and aggregate fund assets do not disclose the distribution of returns to retail participants. The observations demonstrate an evolving market architecture without establishing equivalent access for small or informal firms.

Table 25.2. Enterprise-financing instrument suitability and competing constraints

Instrument	Principal use	Main suitability condition	Important hidden trade-off
Bank term loan	Equipment or defined investment	Serviceable, verifiable cash flows	Security, repricing and default covenants
Revolving facility	Timing gaps in inventory/receivables	Self-liquidating working-capital need	Renewal risk and fees on unused limits
Trade credit	Short-cycle input procurement	Supplier trust and clear terms	Large implicit cost of forgone discounts
Factoring/invoice finance	Convert approved invoices to cash	Credible debtor and enforceable invoice	Recourse, dilution and concentration
Lease	Use specified equipment	Productive asset with recoverable value	Contract rigidity, maintenance and total cost
Corporate bond	Longer-term debt at scale	Disclosure, governance, investor appetite	Refinancing, coupon and placement costs
Ordinary equity	Loss-absorbing growth capital	Scalable value creation and governance	Dilution, control and investor exit
Venture capital/private equity	High-risk growth/turnaround	Investment thesis and exit prospects	Control rights, time horizon and valuation
Grant or blended finance	Eligible social/market failures	Documented additionality and conditions	Dependence and reporting obligations

Note. Original pedagogical synthesis. Suitability is contingent; legal definitions, disclosure obligations and investor protections must be verified for each jurisdiction and transaction.

25.4.2 Yield curves, valuation and secondary-market liquidity

The yield curve summarizes the yields investors require at different maturities for securities whose credit, liquidity and tax characteristics are sufficiently comparable. It can inform treasury cash management, government debt issuance, the benchmarking of corporate borrowing and discounting of future cash flows. However, a maturity premium cannot be isolated from observed yields unless expected policy rates, inflation uncertainty, credit exposure and market liquidity are examined. In thin markets, quoted rates may be based on infrequent transactions and might poorly represent the price at which an institution could liquidate a large holding. Securities-market development is therefore not merely the number of listed instruments; it depends on reliable disclosures, market-making, investor diversity and the enforceability of post-trade rights.

For a fully hypothetical three-year bond with face value RWF 100,000, a 12% annual coupon and a 14% required annual yield, the value is $12{,}000/1.14 + 12{,}000/1.14^2 + 112{,}000/1.14^3$ = approximately RWF 95,357. The discount to face value reflects the fact that the contractual coupon is below the required yield. If market yields fall, the price generally increases, assuming the promised cash flows and credit assessment do not change. This calculation is not a Rwandan security quotation, and the quoted yield cannot establish liquidity at the calculated price. A portfolio manager must still examine bid-ask spread, custody, maturity matching, issuer concentration, inflation and the cost of meeting unexpected redemptions.

In Rwanda, the CMA's FY2024/25 material reports active government-bond issuance alongside a still-developing corporate and collective-investment market. The interpretation is institutional rather than celebratory: benchmark government issuance can support price discovery, while investor confidence requires genuine disclosure and secondary-market capacity. Investors should distinguish a bond's face value, traded price, contractual coupon, yield to maturity and realized return after fees and taxation. For enterprise managers,

direct market issuance becomes defensible only if expected financing savings exceed disclosure, governance, legal, underwriting and servicing costs, and if investor demand can be sustained across the liability's horizon (CMA, 2026).

25.5 FINANCIAL REGULATION AND STABILITY

Financial regulation operates at multiple, partly competing levels. **Microprudential regulation** seeks the safety and soundness of individual regulated institutions; **macroprudential policy** addresses system-wide amplification and interconnected exposures; **conduct regulation** protects customers and fair markets; and **resolution and deposit-protection arrangements** provide mechanisms for orderly failure. Monetary policy influences inflation and interest rates but is not interchangeable with prudential supervision. The regulatory dilemma is not the maximum possible restriction. It is selecting enforceable safeguards whose expected reduction in harm justifies their administrative and economic costs, including potential displacement into less supervised sectors.

The Basel Committee's internationally agreed risk-based framework specifies minimum common equity tier 1 capital of 4.5% of risk-weighted assets (RWA), tier 1 capital of 6%, and total capital of 8%, with a separate 2.5% common-equity conservation buffer and other applicable requirements (Basel Committee on Banking Supervision [BCBS], 2026). These are **international baseline descriptions**, not statements that a particular Rwanda-chartered institution is subject to identical ratios, calculation methods or phase-in dates. National supervisors specify local requirements, supervisory discretions, capital definitions and reporting. The liquidity coverage ratio addresses a short-horizon severe stress scenario using high-quality liquid assets relative to net outflows; the net stable funding ratio addresses more structural funding stability. Neither is a perfect prediction of crisis survival.

Suppose a bank has RWF 180 billion of eligible total regulatory capital and RWF 1,200 billion of RWA. Its simplified total capital ratio is 180/1,200 = **15%**. A credit deterioration leading to RWF 30 billion of losses recognized directly against eligible capital, with RWA temporarily unchanged, reduces the simplified ratio to 150/1,200 = **12.5%**. This illustration excludes tax effects, provisioning timing, changing risk weights and countervailing capital actions. A 15% headline ratio cannot establish resilience unless the asset mix, hidden losses, concentration, liquidity and governance are examined. The same caution applies to a bank's low non-performing-loan ratio during rapid credit growth: the denominator can expand before newer credit cohorts season.

25.5.1 Regulatory institutional architecture in Rwanda

The National Bank of Rwanda (NBR) has a central role in monetary and financial-system oversight, including regulation and supervision of designated banking and other financial institutions; the CMA oversees applicable capital-market activities. Rwanda adopted a banking-law revision published in the Official Gazette in June 2024, while Law No. 039/2024 of 22 March 2024 established the Deposit Guarantee Fund under an updated statutory basis (Republic of Rwanda, 2024a, 2024b). The existence of deposit protection should never be paraphrased as unconditional insurance of all products, all balances or all institutions. Eligibility, coverage limits, funding and payout arrangements must be established using current legally authoritative texts and relevant implementing regulations before advising a depositor.

NBR's FY2024/25 annual report identified financial-sector assets of approximately RWF 14.3 trillion at June 2025, a reported 22.6% increase over the preceding financial year, with banking assets representing approximately 67.4% of sector assets (NBR, 2025). These are institutional aggregates and not measures of household welfare. In a separate assessment, the International Monetary Fund reported that Rwanda's banking nonperforming-loan ratio had declined below 3% by end-2025, but highlighted rapid credit expansion and concentrated exposures as matters requiring continued attention (International Monetary Fund [IMF], 2026b).

An improving reported delinquency ratio and a warning about future risk are not contradictory: one describes observed arrears to date, the other prospective vulnerability from loan growth, concentrations and correlated shocks.

Regulatory implementation also involves institutional design. Onsite and offsite supervision, fit-and-proper assessment, consolidated risk surveillance, related-party exposure controls, internal audit, supervisory intervention, bank recovery planning, governance review and enforceable consumer complaints all influence outcomes. International standards provide organizing benchmarks; they are not self-executing local law. The Committee on Payment and Settlement Systems and International Organization of Securities Commissions (2012) establish principles for systemically important financial-market infrastructures, but application depends on designation, national legal powers and the specific risk profile of the infrastructure.

25.5.2 Failure, resolution, and moral hazard

Explicit guarantees may reduce incentives for depositors to run, yet can weaken depositor monitoring and encourage excessive risk-taking when guarantees are poorly designed or perceived as unlimited. This is the classical moral-hazard tension, intensified by opaque assets and incentives tied to short-term growth. Resolution design therefore requires credible loss allocation, continuity of critical services, depositor communication and protection of financial stability without assuming that shareholders, managers and every creditor deserve equal protection. Small institutions need proportionate controls, but proportionality should mean simplified means of meeting substantive outcomes, not exemption from safeguarding customers.

25.5.3 Macroprudential feedback, stress testing and policy proportionality

The microprudential view evaluates the capacity of a particular institution to withstand losses, whereas systemic stability depends on how institutions respond collectively. A bank can satisfy an individual capital target by reducing lending precisely when other banks do the same, amplifying credit scarcity for otherwise viable enterprises. Conversely, rapid credit growth can temporarily improve reported delinquency indicators because recent loans have not seasoned. Countercyclical buffers, concentration limits, loan-to-value constraints, liquidity surveillance and stress tests seek to address these externalities, but each must be applied with attention to market structure, supervisory information and potential diversion of activity into less regulated channels.

A credible stress exercise begins with explicit and differentiated scenarios rather than a single adverse percentage. It should trace the joint movement of exchange rates, collateral values, borrower revenue, deposits, funding spreads and interbank exposures, then examine whether management actions would remain feasible if competitors took similar actions. Disclosing results is not automatically beneficial when disclosure is misleadingly precise or incentivizes cosmetic balance-sheet changes. Proportionality is justified because a community financial cooperative and a systemically important bank have different organizational capacities; nevertheless, minimum obligations concerning custody, customer complaints, liquidity and honest reporting cannot be dismissed merely because the institution is small.

25.6 PAYMENT SYSTEMS AND DIGITAL INFRASTRUCTURE

A payment has a social meaning, a contractual meaning and a technical lifecycle. A purchaser may regard a mobile-phone notification as payment, yet the underlying arrangement must establish identity, authorization, clearing, settlement, finality, reversibility and the point at which the merchant may safely release goods. **Clearing** determines and communicates interparticipant payment obligations; **settlement** discharges these obligations through the relevant assets and accounts; **finality** concerns the legally effective point beyond which transfer cannot ordinarily be unwound under applicable rules. Real-time user confirmation and final interbank settlement may coincide in some architectures but should not be assumed identical.

Modern systems integrate central-bank payment infrastructure, bank transfers, card networks, telecommunications channels, payment service providers, agents, wallet issuers, merchant acceptance devices and anti-fraud services. Central-bank money provides a settlement asset for eligible participants, while commercial-bank deposit money and appropriately structured e-money support retail use. Interoperability enables value to move between institutions or schemes without requiring users to belong to the same proprietary network. Yet technical connection alone does not ensure affordable access: pricing, network participation, agent liquidity, service reliability, identity requirements, dispute resolution and user interfaces determine whether interoperability is meaningful.

Rwanda's National Bank reported substantial digital-payment growth in FY2024/25, including 57% growth in the value and 44% growth in the volume of mobile payments. In the annual report's distinct reporting series, eKash transactions rose from approximately RWF 30 billion in June 2024 to RWF 105 billion in June 2025, while the reported volume increased from about 8 million to 25 million (NBR, 2025). These two sets of indicators describe different payment categories and should not be added together or treated as direct measures of merchant adoption. A value increase may reflect larger transactions as well as increased participation; growth from a small baseline does not establish universal service access. Enterprise evaluation should therefore rely on channel-specific settlement time, transparent charges, availability and reconciliation quality rather than a national transaction-growth figure alone.

25.6.1 Merchant-level payments economics

For an illustrative RWF 50,000 sale, assume cash handling costs RWF 400 in staff time and expected loss, mobile collection costs a contractual 0.8% (RWF 400), and a card channel charges 1.6% (RWF 800). On the surface, cash and mobile channels cost the same, but the decision also depends on when funds become available, transaction disputes, reconciliation, theft, delivery capability and customer preferences. If a digital channel reduces expected noncollection by RWF 600 per sale relative to a manual arrangement, its higher visible merchant fee could still be economically justified. Conversely, mandatory cashless service can exclude customers lacking a working phone, network or usable identification. Managers need channel-specific total costs and accessibility analysis, not merely a policy preference for digitization.

A basic payment control matrix should separate authorization from settlement confirmation and reconciliation; employ multifactor authentication where feasible; limit administrator rights; monitor unusual transaction patterns; retain tamper-evident logs; reconcile third-party statements against order and bank records; test recovery procedures; and make consumer disputes traceable to an accountable institution. Under the 2012 international principles, operational resilience and legal basis are core attributes of important payment infrastructures (CPSS-IOSCO, 2012). These practices matter even more where mobile money forms part of routine supply-chain settlement, payroll or microbusiness receivables.

25.6.2 Cross-border payments and regional integration

A regional transfer is affected by currency conversion, compliance checks, messaging standards, local settlement arrangements, banking relationships and receiver access. Currency-translation uncertainty, foreign-exchange spreads, fees and availability can substantially alter effective business cost. A quoted fee of '1%' may conceal differences between the applied FX rate and a transparent benchmark; timing can change both importer liquidity and exporter proceeds. The G20 cross-border payments agenda, supported by the BIS Committee on Payment and Market Infrastructures, seeks improvements in speed, cost, transparency and access, but its benchmarks should not be interpreted as guarantees that a given East African corridor has achieved them (BIS, n.d.). For firms considering AfCFTA or East African expansion, payment reliability complements rather than replaces customs, logistics and contractual obligations developed in Chapter 30.

25.6.3 Fraud, failed payments and operational accountability

Digital payment fraud should be classified by mechanism rather than aggregated into an undifferentiated loss figure. Account takeover, phishing, social engineering, compromised merchants, unauthorized administrator actions, counterfeit transaction confirmations and settlement-message manipulation require different controls. Authentication prevents some unauthorized instructions but cannot alone stop a customer from being deceived into authorizing a fraudulent transfer. Reconciliation detects inconsistencies after an event, while transaction limits and beneficiary verification can prevent or contain particular failures. Controls should be evaluated against prevented harm, error rates, customer inconvenience and the ease with which legitimate users can obtain a correction.

The allocation of responsibility after a failed transaction is as important as prevention. A merchant should distinguish successful authorization, provider acceptance, interparticipant clearing, final settlement and reconciliation to the correct invoice. The consumer should be informed of whether a transfer is pending, reversible or final and which institution owes an investigation. An effective dispute system must identify an accountable operator even where a transaction crosses a bank, telecom platform, agent and merchant interface. The legal classification of the payment product determines safeguarding, liability and insolvency treatment; similar smartphone screens do not create identical customer protections (CPSS-IOSCO, 2012).

25.7 FINTECH BUSINESS MODELS

Financial technology refers to technology-enabled financial products, processes and organizational arrangements, rather than a uniform category of licensed institution. It encompasses digital banks, payments firms, lender platforms, merchant acquiring, embedded finance, insurance technology, digital brokerage, compliance technology and software services for regulated institutions. A fintech application may create clear customer benefits, but the underlying legal entity may be a licensed lender, payment-service provider, technology agent, broker or unregulated supplier. The regulatory perimeter depends on actual activities and legal obligations, not on branding or the visual design of an app.

Business models differ in how revenue and risk are allocated. A digital lender generally earns interest and fees while bearing or arranging credit exposure; a payments platform earns transaction, acceptance or subscription revenue and must manage settlement and operational obligations; a banking-as-a-service provider makes regulated infrastructure available to another brand under contractual arrangements whose legal limits must be clear; embedded finance integrates financial offers within a nonfinancial purchase journey; digital-investment platforms earn fees or spreads while introducing investor-protection, custody and suitability risks. Platform economics reward scale, network effects and data reuse, but can produce vendor lock-in, information asymmetry and market concentration (Frost et al., 2020).

25.7.1 Information advantage is not the same as responsible underwriting

Berg et al. (2020), using a digital-footprint study, show that certain online behavioural indicators can contain useful default-prediction information comparable with credit bureau measures in their study setting. The result does not authorize unrestricted harvesting of contacts, location, communications or protected characteristics. Predictive performance may decline under population shift, policy change or strategic borrower adaptation. A model trained on existing borrowers may perform poorly for rejected applicants because their realized repayment outcomes were never observed. Even an accurate model may embed disparate outcomes or offer no intelligible route to correction.

An auditable lender must distinguish **data relevance**, **model discrimination**, **calibration**, **credit policy**, **customer welfare** and **ex post outcomes**. For example, an area under the receiver-operating-characteristic curve (AUC) summarizes rank discrimination over possible thresholds; it does not establish that estimated default probabilities are calibrated or that lending decisions are fair. A model with acceptable overall AUC can

systematically overestimate risk for a group with thinner data. Default rates among accepted borrowers can fall simply because the lender excludes more customers. Consumer protection therefore requires clear total-cost disclosures, proportionate identity checks, confidentiality, explainable adverse decisions where required, complaints, retention limits, and governance of third-party data and models.

25.7.2 Sustainable fintech unit economics

Customer acquisition cost (CAC) needs to be assessed alongside contribution after variable servicing, expected credit loss, fraud, funding, infrastructure and compliant collections. For a lender, a simple per-loan expected contribution is **contractual income + fees − funding cost − operating cost − expected credit loss − expected fraud loss**, where expected credit loss depends on an explicit probability of default, loss given default and exposure. A high origination count is not profitability if loss recognition is delayed. For a payment platform, transaction scale can improve fixed-cost absorption, but revenue concentration in one merchant or telecom partner can create systemic operational dependency. Banking-as-a-service arrangements also require explicit accountability for customer funds, incident management and the consequences of terminating a platform relationship.

Financial innovation has a complex welfare relationship to competition. By reducing onboarding and transaction costs, fintech can deepen access. By exploiting information asymmetries or borrowing against uncertain future income, it can intensify indebtedness. Evaluation must use credible counterfactuals: did a product enable beneficial transactions that would otherwise not occur, replace a cheaper channel, or change only the mode of recording? The answer depends on behavior, rather than the existence of a digital feature.

25.7.3 Empirical evidence, scale and limits of fintech advantage

Technology can reduce processing time without making underwriting or customer treatment uniformly better. Fuster et al. (2019) found, in a study of United States mortgage origination, that fintech lenders processed applications more quickly while showing no evidence of higher default rates in their observed setting. The authors did not find that these lenders disproportionately targeted borrowers with weak financial access. This evidence supports a process-efficiency mechanism but does not show that a Rwandan digital microcredit platform will have comparable default outcomes, consumer protections or operational costs. Mortgage collateral, standardized records, credit bureaus, infrastructure and borrower selection differ substantially across the settings.

The institutional boundary between a platform and a regulated financial provider becomes more important as scale increases. A small interface failure may inconvenience a few clients; a widely used embedded-finance platform may coordinate borrowing, repayment, customer identity and sales data for thousands of enterprises. Growth therefore raises both economies of scale and the social consequences of operational concentration. Supervisors and boards should examine the full chain of accountable entities, outsourced data processing, customer funds safeguarding, conflicts of interest and the conditions under which the platform can be replaced. The substantive question is not whether the application uses artificial intelligence, but whether new informational and network advantages lead to verifiable improvements after risk and rights are included (Frost et al., 2020).

25.8 FINANCIAL INCLUSION AND CONSUMER PROTECTION

Financial inclusion is commonly operationalized as access to and appropriate use of transactions, savings, credit, insurance and other services, but development outcomes require a further step. Having an account does not demonstrate affordability, active use, financial resilience, informed consent, business productivity or wellbeing. A household may appear included because it uses a mobile wallet to receive transfers while remaining unable to save after essential expenditure. A microenterprise may receive a digital loan but pay a high implicit annual cost that worsens its cash-conversion cycle. The appropriate outcome is whether a suitable service meets an identifiable need at acceptable risk and cost.

Allen et al. (2016) find that proximity, cost, legal rights and country institutions are associated with formal-account ownership in their international analysis, while heterogeneous effects caution against uniform interventions. Global Findex 2025, based on adult surveys conducted in 2024, reports that **79% of adults globally** had a financial account, compared with 74% in 2021 (World Bank, 2025a). This global metric is not directly interchangeable with the 2024 Rwandan FinScope measure, which counts people served through a wider range of formal and informal mechanisms under its own survey design. Likewise, 'adults' in the two surveys can differ by eligibility definitions and survey instruments. Comparative analysis must therefore inspect numerator, denominator, timeframe and product classification before reporting a percentage-point advantage.

25.8.1 What Rwanda's FinScope 2024 does, and does not, establish

The Rwanda FinScope 2024 report states that approximately **96% of adults** were financially included through formal or informal products, and **92%** were formally included. About **22%** were banked under the survey's relevant measure, while **86%** owned or had used mobile money; registered mobile-wallet ownership was reported at approximately **77%**. In addition, digital financial-service use had expanded markedly relative to 2020, and the report identified continued gaps in actual access to suitable credit and other products (AFR, 2024; Ministry of Finance and Economic Planning [MINECOFIN], 2024). These indicators measure different behaviours and should not be combined as if categories were mutually exclusive. Banked and mobile-money users overlap; 'own or used' is not identical to registered ownership; financial inclusion is not the percentage holding traditional bank accounts.

The official report also describes differences across gender, residence and customer circumstances. A closing gap in broad financial inclusion may coexist with a larger gap in individual control over a transactional account, savings balances or borrowing conditions. Aggregating adults may conceal differences among informal traders, rural farmers, salaried workers, people with disabilities and refugees. The ethical objective is not to maximize one headline percentage; it is to ensure that products expand agency and practical options without imposing hidden fees, coercion, predatory collections or rights violations.

Consumer protection is therefore a productive institution as well as a moral safeguard. Rwanda's Law No. 017/2021 of 3 March 2021 addresses financial service consumer protection, including proper treatment, transparency, cost and conflicts of interest (Republic of Rwanda, 2021c). The existence of a statute does not establish universal compliance. Enterprise due diligence should test whether providers identify the responsible regulated entity, disclose fees and effective terms before consent, explain complaint channels, and demonstrate safe treatment of customers' personal and financial information. Fraud losses, involuntary debt rollovers, failed redress, service inaccessibility and data misuse should be investigated as outcomes, not dismissed as ancillary issues.

25.8.2 Financial capability, savings groups and inclusion trade-offs

Financial education helps people understand contractual risks, but information alone cannot cure unaffordable services or weak legal enforcement. Rural savings groups and cooperative channels can provide local trust and flexible contributions where bank branches are scarce. Nevertheless, group arrangements also create governance, custody and borrower concentration risks. Formalization may improve recourse but increase documentation and cost. The appropriate intervention depends on the binding constraint, such as access, price, identity, income volatility, product suitability or institutional mistrust. Inclusive finance should be judged against the conditions of beneficial participation, not merely enrollment.

25.8.3 From access to financial health: evidence and contested interventions

The empirical literature on microcredit provides an important corrective to simple inclusion narratives. In a randomized evaluation of a group-lending programme in Hyderabad, India, Banerjee et al. (2015) found evidence of changes in some business investments, but not broad short-run improvements in consumption, health, education or women's empowerment. A hierarchical synthesis across seven randomized studies concluded that average microcredit effects on household consumption and business outcomes were unlikely to be transformative, while allowing for meaningful heterogeneity (Meager, 2019). These are results for particular programmes and populations, not proof that credit is universally ineffective. They demonstrate that access, loan uptake, profitable investment and sustained welfare improvement are separate causal steps.

For Rwandan programme evaluation, the first requirement is to identify the binding constraint. Where households cannot save securely, a transaction or savings product may be more relevant than debt. Where enterprise growth is limited by delayed institutional receivables, better settlement or receivables finance may be more useful than an unsecured consumption-style loan. Where investment is deterred by a catastrophic climate risk, insurance or an appropriately structured contingent instrument may dominate a credit subsidy. Product comparisons should use household- or firm-level outcomes such as consumption volatility, emergency borrowing, net productive assets, delinquency, control over balances and recovery following shocks, with transparent baselines and a credible comparison.

Disaggregated inclusion data are indispensable. Access to Finance Rwanda's gender-focused FinScope 2024 analysis reports a marked difference in bank-account participation between women and men, despite the narrow gap in broad inclusion. Such divergence illustrates why a 96% aggregate rate is not a sufficient equity assessment. Independent control of accounts, usable identification, privacy from coercive household members, accessible product terms and the ability to challenge erroneous charges can determine whether nominal access enlarges agency. Financial capability initiatives are useful only when complemented by appropriate product design and credible consumer protection, rather than used to shift the entire responsibility for harmful products onto users (AFR, n.d.-a).

25.9 INSURANCE AND RISK TRANSFER FOUNDATIONS

Insurance substitutes an agreed, relatively predictable premium for specified uncertain financial losses under contract. Risk pooling works best where losses are sufficiently identifiable, measurable and not perfectly correlated; underwriting, exclusions, reserves, investments and reinsurance address the remaining uncertainty. Insurers must price both **expected claims** and the costs of capital, administration, distribution, fraud control and solvency protection. The **principle of indemnity** generally aims to compensate qualifying loss without turning an insured event into a source of profit, although life and other valued-benefit contracts operate differently. Good faith, insurable interest and subrogation have jurisdiction- and policy-specific applications that should not be generalized as identical across products.

A merchant may insure premises, inventory, cargo, commercial vehicles, employees or liability, while households purchase health, life, property, livestock or crop protection. Insurance does not eliminate the

underlying hazard or replace safety management. A payout can preserve liquidity after a covered loss; exclusions, deductibles, policy limits, late notification and inadequate documentation can leave the enterprise substantially exposed. Claims quality, product comprehension and insurer solvency are therefore more meaningful than the mere count of policies sold.

25.9.1 A transparent premium and retention illustration

Suppose a Rwandan logistics enterprise faces an estimated 3% annual probability of a cargo loss of RWF 20 million, conditional on a stable exposure definition. Expected gross annual loss is **0.03 × 20,000,000 = RWF 600,000**. A policy requiring an annual RWF 840,000 premium and a RWF 2 million deductible would not be justified or rejected from expected-loss arithmetic alone. Assuming a single event and full coverage above the deductible, the insured firm's expected retained loss is 0.03 × 2,000,000 = **RWF 60,000**; its expected total outlay is RWF 900,000 including the premium, versus RWF 600,000 without insurance. The extra expected cost of RWF 300,000 may be rational if the enterprise faces severe liquidity constraints, covenant default, or a low capacity to absorb a tail loss. If a policy excludes the most likely causes of loss, that conclusion could reverse. Both probabilities and policy assumptions are **constructed**, not estimated from Rwandan claims data.

Underwriting selection can limit insurance access for high-risk customers or regions; subsidies and public-private partnerships may expand protection but create fiscal and governance obligations. Agricultural insurance may face basis risk, whereby a weather index fails to reflect a farmer's actual loss. Insurtech can lower acquisition and claims costs through mobile distribution, satellite or transaction data, yet automated adjudication may deny legitimate claims if models and appeals are inadequate. FinScope 2024 reported a rise in insurance use, which supports attention to the sector but does not by itself demonstrate improved loss recovery or reduced poverty (MINECOFIN, 2024). The core professional requirement is to compare exposure, retained risk, promised coverage, solvency, claims procedure and financing capacity.

25.9.2 Empirical risk protection and agricultural investment in Africa

Risk transfer may affect investment even when no insured loss occurs because it changes the distribution of future outcomes. Karlan et al. (2014) experimentally examined credit and rainfall-index insurance interventions among small-scale farmers in northern Ghana. Their findings indicated that risk protection could induce greater agricultural investment in that setting, while the analysis highlighted trust in payouts, basis risk and changing demand after experienced claims. The study demonstrates a mechanism through which insurance affects ex ante choices, not merely ex post compensation. Its result should not be carried mechanically to Rwandan agricultural districts with different crop mixes, insurance contracts, rainfall measures and institutional histories.

For an enterprise considering index protection, the relevant comparison is between the financial loss caused by an adverse event and the payout generated by the index. Basis risk arises where the enterprise incurs a serious loss without triggering the contractual index, or receives a payout despite limited actual loss. Product design should quantify this mismatch using local historical exposure where credible records exist, verify claims and payout timelines, and explain how deductibles, exclusions and settlement disputes affect residual liquidity needs. Insurance thus complements operating controls, diversification and contingency reserves. Neither premium affordability nor a high enrollment rate alone establishes effective resilience.

25.10 CAPITAL FORMATION AND INVESTMENT ECOSYSTEMS

Capital formation links savings and investors' willingness to bear risk to the acquisition of productive assets and capabilities. The financial system does not create productive returns by relabeling claims; those returns arise from enterprises and public activities whose performance supports interest, dividends, taxes and other benefits. Financial claims can improve allocation by mobilizing dispersed savings, transferring risk and creating exit possibilities, but they can also finance speculative transfers of existing assets with limited new production. Thus, gross market turnover, fundraising commitments, executed investments and eventual benefits must be distinguished.

Venture capital typically accepts high failure risk in exchange for contingent upside, substantial influence over governance and prospects of a future exit. Private equity encompasses growth investments, buyouts and restructuring, each with distinct leverage and control implications. Angel capital, venture debt, development-finance institutions, blended-finance facilities, diaspora financing, cooperative investment and properly regulated crowdfunding may address different gaps. A pension fund's long-duration liabilities can support patient capital, but fiduciary duties, liquidity needs and concentration limits constrain what it should hold. The existence of unmet enterprise credit demand is not itself sufficient justification for allocating pension savings to high-risk private ventures.

25.10.1 Investment-readiness and the financing hierarchy

A business seeking external finance should identify whether its binding need is experimentation, inventory, equipment, export receivables or large-scale expansion. Evidence requirements then follow from the proposed instrument. For venture equity, a credible value proposition, operational traction, ownership clarity, defensible records, governance rights, market uncertainty and an attainable exit path are material. For bank credit, verifiable repayment capacity and security rank more centrally. For a public bond, repeatable cash flows, issuer disclosure, legal documentation, rating or equivalent credit assessment where relevant, investor distribution and servicing infrastructure become decisive. One should not assume that a successful microenterprise must 'graduate' through every financing channel in a universal sequence.

The pecking-order logic from corporate-finance scholarship helps explain why firms may prefer retained earnings and less information-sensitive funding when external providers lack visibility, but it is not an empirical law applicable to all ownership structures. The life-cycle approach similarly suggests that financing options may broaden with records and scale, while obscuring counterexamples such as cooperative capital, asset-rich SMEs or grant-dependent ventures. The relevant concept is **financing fit**: an arrangement must match economic use, loss capacity, decision rights, time horizon, information burdens and social obligations. Chapter 24 supplies the detailed project appraisal; this section focuses on the institutional availability and contractual consequences of the financing sources.

A stylized financing-choice score can compare alternatives, but scores must not conceal fatal conditions. An instrument with low cost but unaffordable required payments should be excluded, regardless of its weighted score. The same applies where the borrower cannot grant a required security interest, protect control rights essential to its purpose, or lawfully meet investor-solicitation conditions. Due diligence therefore has an eligibility stage before ranking: **feasibility first, comparative optimization second**. This order avoids treating a mathematically highest score as an actionable recommendation.

25.10.2 Crowdfunding, digital distribution and green finance

Crowdfunding can aggregate small contributions through donation, reward, lending or securities structures, but these forms have radically different legal rights. Donations do not ordinarily confer repayment claims; reward-based arrangements create delivery obligations; credit crowdfunding exposes lenders to default; equity crowdfunding exposes investors to valuation, illiquidity and governance risk. Digital distribution may expand reach without improving investment quality. Investment adverts, risk warnings, platform segregation, independent custody, investor caps and supervision must be assessed under the jurisdiction's actual framework.

Green and sustainability-linked financing further illustrates the distinction between financial structure and real outcome. A 'green bond' usually links proceeds to eligible projects under a specified framework; a sustainability-linked bond varies financial or structural terms with performance indicators. Neither label independently certifies additional emissions reductions or appropriate use of proceeds. Rwanda's recent corporate-bond developments provide a documented opportunity to examine instrument diversity, while project additionality, credible baselines, independent verification and transparent reporting remain empirical tasks (CMA, 2026). Sustainability requires examining the underlying investment, not only the security's name.

25.10.3 Patient capital, institutional investors and public additionality

Investment ecosystems depend on more than individual entrepreneurs' willingness to seek funding. Pension funds and insurers hold long-duration claims but remain constrained by fiduciary duties, asset-liability matching, disclosure and the liquidity rights of beneficiaries. Development-finance institutions may accept longer payback periods, provide guarantees or support markets where private institutions cannot internalize knowledge spillovers. Yet public participation carries opportunity costs and demands additionality: the programme should establish why an otherwise similar investment would not proceed on appropriate private terms and whether its social benefits justify fiscal exposure. An announced financing commitment is not equivalent to a disbursement, and a disbursement is not equivalent to an independently demonstrated development benefit.

In a Rwandan enterprise ecosystem, scalable investment capacity may be constrained simultaneously by thin deal pipelines, limited independently verifiable records, governance uncertainty, small expected exit markets and concentration of domestic funding. A financing intervention that supplies capital without improving disclosure, contract enforcement or management capability may displace rather than complement private investment. Conversely, a well-designed guarantee may improve bank incentives only when lenders retain sufficient exposure to screen and monitor borrowers. The correct unit of policy analysis is the financed transaction within its supporting institutional system, including its opportunity cost, expected additionality and eventual distribution of losses.

25.11 DIGITAL ASSETS AND MONETARY INNOVATION

Digital money is not a single object. Balances held in bank accounts are commercial-bank liabilities; electronic money is a claim structured under applicable payment and safeguarding law; a central-bank digital currency (CBDC) would be a digital central-bank liability if issued; tokenized deposits represent specified bank claims in token form; stablecoins may be privately issued claims under diverse reserve and redemption arrangements; and unbacked cryptocurrencies normally do not convey a legally enforceable par-redemption claim against a creditworthy issuer. Distributed-ledger technology is an implementation choice, not a guarantee of monetary stability or legal validity.

A careful analysis must distinguish five questions. **Issuer:** who, if anyone, owes the holder? **Backing:** what assets, if any, support redemption? **Par convertibility:** can holders redeem on demand at a defined value? **Finality:** when is transfer legally irreversible? **Governance:** who may freeze, reverse or modify balances, and which remedies exist? Tokens can reduce reconciliation friction in suitable settings while producing novel

custody, operational, liquidity and governance risks. Programmability can automate conditional settlement, but an automated code condition is not a substitute for enforceable contractual interpretation, correction of erroneous data or protection against abuse.

25.11.1 Rwanda's CBDC research: proof of concept is not currency issuance

The National Bank of Rwanda published a report describing a **five-month CBDC proof of concept**, following an earlier feasibility study. According to the report, tests included online and offline payment functionality, USSD access for feature phones and simulated cross-border use cases; the institution described movement toward a more controlled pilot rather than completed general issuance (NBR, 2026). These are noteworthy engineering and user-research findings, not evidence of universal adoption, production resilience under all conditions, legal-tender status or realized cross-border savings. The central bank's technical demonstration must therefore be separated from a final policy decision and from obligations that would arise if a currency were actually launched.

A well-designed CBDC assessment examines at least the additional public value relative to existing payment rails, financial inclusion through feature phones and offline modes, privacy, cybersecurity, fiscal cost, bank deposit substitution, the central bank's operational burden, interoperability, legal authority, user-recovery procedures and resilience to connectivity or power failure. An offline product might strengthen continuity, yet creates limits on double-spend prevention and recovery processes. A direct retail CBDC with large unrestricted holdings could affect commercial-bank funding under stress; tiered access, holding limits or intermediary-based models may alter that risk. These are design trade-offs, not established predictions for Rwanda's eventual architecture.

25.11.2 Digital asset promises and epistemic discipline

Tokenization claims frequently suggest that recording a claim on a distributed ledger automatically makes it liquid. Liquidity, however, requires counterparties willing and able to trade, reliable custody, acceptable transaction costs, clear property rights and credible price discovery. A tokenized interest in illiquid real estate remains exposed to underlying valuation and legal enforcement. Likewise, a stablecoin designed to maintain a fixed value may break its peg if reserve assets, redemption rights or counterparties fail. The correct business question is what economic claim a token represents and what institutions make the claim enforceable and usable, not whether the underlying cryptographic protocol is sophisticated.

The appropriate status labels should be explicit: **enacted legal instrument**, **licensed service**, **regulated pilot**, **proof of concept**, **proposal**, or **speculative design**. Conflating these states can mislead managers into making operational commitments based on non-existing settlement guarantees. Current Rwandan rules concerning private digital assets should be verified before any claim of legality, licensing or permissibility is made. The chapter deliberately does not infer such status from international debates or from NBR's CBDC research.

25.11.3 Custody, redemption and the political economy of programmable finance

Token custody is a legal and operational relationship, not merely possession of a cryptographic key. A user may control a private key yet have no enforceable title to the asset supposedly represented; conversely, a regulated custodian may hold legally recognized claims while relying on centralized record keeping. Redemption risk arises when a token promises exchange for fiat currency or underlying securities that cannot be delivered at par under stress. A credible institutional appraisal therefore traces property rights through issuers, custodians, reserve managers, smart-contract administrators and insolvency procedures. The allocation of recovery rights after a lost key, fraudulent transfer or issuer failure is central to usability.

Programmable money also requires normative scrutiny. Conditions on the use of funds may support targeted disbursement or reduce reconciliation costs, but could be used to impose disproportionate surveillance, restrict legitimate exchange or weaken procedural challenge. An enterprise should ask whether programmability is

necessary for the proposed value, who can amend a restriction, whether affected users receive meaningful notice, and what appeal and correction routes exist. These questions apply to public and private instruments alike. They do not establish that any proposed digital currency will necessarily be oppressive or liberating; governance design and observed implementation must determine the assessment.

25.12 EMERGING SYSTEMIC RISKS AND THE RESILIENCE OF DIGITAL FINANCE

Financial risk propagates through balance sheets, contractual dependencies and expectations. Traditional credit and liquidity problems now interact with cloud-service concentration, application programming interfaces, telecom outages, cyber extortion, shared fraud controls, algorithmic decision-making and rapidly transmitted information. An institution can meet minimum reported capital ratios yet lose critical payment capability after a provider incident. It can have robust technology but fail through poor credit underwriting. Resilience consequently requires joint supervision of financial and nonfinancial dependencies rather than a narrow 'cybersecurity department' approach.

The Financial Stability Board's (2025) monitoring of nonbank financial intermediation found that nonbank assets accounted for approximately **51% of total global financial assets in 2024** within its monitored jurisdictional universe. This is not a statement that all those assets pose bank-like risks, nor does it show the same composition in Rwanda. It emphasizes that leverage, liquidity mismatch, concentrated exposures and interconnections can emerge outside the deposit-taking perimeter. Private-credit vehicles, money-market funds, insurers, platforms and asset managers may transmit stress to banks through funding relationships, overlapping holdings and forced sales. Economic substance and network position matter more than institutional labels.

25.12.1 A risk taxonomy for banks, fintechs and enterprises

Financial stability analysis should separate **credit losses**, **liquidity shocks**, **market repricing**, **operational and cyber failure**, **legal and conduct risks**, **concentration and contagion**, **data/algorithm risks**, and **climate or nature-related physical and transition exposures**. Climate risks can affect borrowers through crop failure, floods, transition costs and changing insurance affordability. Yet scenario modeling is inherently dependent on time horizons, geographic exposure, data quality and policy assumptions. A stylized climate stress test may reveal vulnerability and improve questioning without estimating a uniquely correct forecast of future credit losses.

For a lender using an automated score, model risk governance should document the target, training window, source legality, missingness, drift, leakage, subgroup calibration, human review procedures and the consequences of retraining. Approval-rate parity alone is not a sufficient measure of justice or safety, since borrower populations and legitimate risk differences may vary. Conversely, highly predictive digital histories may proxy protected attributes or discriminate through inaccessible connectivity. Protecting human dignity requires proportionate data collection, an intelligible decision process, meaningful appeal and monitoring for unjustified outcome disparities.

25.12.2 Operational resilience, outsourcing and crisis response

An operationally critical provider relationship should be governed by service-level agreements and, more importantly, by testable recovery capacity. Relevant controls include dependency mapping; impact tolerances for critical business services; geographic and technological concentration analysis; backups; fraud and incident reporting; business continuity tests; penetration testing under appropriate supervision; reconciliation after outage; effective customer communications; and legally workable exit or substitution arrangements. A 'multicloud' strategy may reduce exposure to one supplier while increasing integration complexity and shared dependencies. Resilience should therefore be measured by actual service restoration under plausible stress, not by the number of vendors contracted.

An illustrative payment outage demonstrates why functions must cooperate. When a merchant's primary wallet provider becomes unavailable, sales should disclose permissible alternative channels, finance should protect against duplicate collection, operations should not release goods on unverified payment notifications, IT should preserve incident logs, and customer service should provide accessible remedy. The response is stronger when pre-authorized and periodically rehearsed. Cybersecurity and financial risk management are thus operational business responsibilities linked to governance (Chapter 8), customer promises (Chapter 16), logistics (Chapter 19), capital (Chapter 24) and enterprise-wide crisis preparedness (Chapter 32).

25.12.3 Financial contagion, nonbank leverage and proportional oversight

Systemic risk becomes acute when losses or liquidity demands at one node force responses elsewhere. The same government security may be held by banks, pensions, mutual funds and leveraged dealers. A rise in yields can reduce market values, increase collateral haircuts and induce redemptions, linking apparently distinct institutions through common portfolios. Brunnermeier and Pedersen's (2009) liquidity-spiral mechanism illustrates one path of amplification. The FSB's nonbank financial intermediation monitoring provides a wider institutional map, but total nonbank assets should not be mistaken for the narrower subset of activities with bank-like leverage or run risk (FSB, 2025).

An effective supervisory map records not only regulated entity types but also economic functions: liquidity promises, leverage, maturity mismatch, concentrated counterparties, custody arrangements and operational single points of failure. This is particularly important when banking services are delivered through partnerships with mobile providers, fintech platforms and investment vehicles. Nonetheless, identical rules for all participants can encourage undesirable circumvention or impose prohibitive compliance costs on small providers. The more defensible principle is comparable attention to comparable risk, adjusted for legal powers, operational capacity, materiality and consumer exposure.

25.13 RWANDAN FINANCIAL JOURNEYS: HOUSEHOLDS, ENTERPRISES AND INSTITUTIONS

The Rwandan evidence supports a more discriminating interpretation than either 'universal finance has been achieved' or 'formal finance is still inaccessible'. FinScope 2024 documents wide engagement with financial products and rapid mobile-money reach, while conventional banking participation remains much lower and the quality of outcomes differs by product (AFR, 2024). NBR's 2024/25 report shows growing digital payment activity and financial-sector assets; the CMA documents expansion in securities financing; and the IMF highlights the need to monitor rapid credit growth and concentrated exposures (NBR, 2025; CMA, 2026; IMF, 2026b). These findings refer to different populations, dates and units. A meaningful account should preserve those differences rather than combine them into a single national success score.

25.13.1 Constructed household journey: access, saving, borrowing and protection

Consider a **hypothetical** household in a rural Rwandan district. Its income fluctuates between agricultural sales, occasional wages and family transfers. A mobile wallet receives remittances and pays utility charges; a savings group provides small loans; a SACCO offers formal savings; crop or health insurance may cover specified shocks. The household is financially 'included' in a broad access classification, yet may be unable to manage a seasonal cash shortage without expensive borrowing. The decisive policy question becomes whether the service package improves liquidity resilience and control over resources, not how many product categories the household appears in.

A responsible assessment maps its actual transaction journey and decision rights. Who owns the account and controls authentication? Are funds safely stored and accessible during outages? Which channels have cash-in/cash-out agents with enough liquidity? What are effective costs of transfer, overdraft and insurance? Can family members with lower digital literacy understand terms and seek remedy? These are empirical

questions for a genuine study; the constructed household generates no survey findings. The example illustrates why individual control, practical use and effective recovery must be evaluated separately from access.

25.13.2 Constructed enterprise journey: from customer invoice to working capital

Consider a **hypothetical** Kigali processor with RWF 90 million annual invoiced sales, a 40-day typical customer collection period and recurring inventory purchases. Its finance manager uses a bank operating account, mobile-money acceptance for small retailers, supplier credit, a possible revolving facility and insurance for selected cargo exposures. It could later use a longer-term loan or investment capital to acquire machinery. The appropriate decision order is to reconcile sales, actual settlements and receivables; forecast cash deficits; quantify counterparty and FX exposure; evaluate whether contract terms can be renegotiated; and only then compare credit offers. A lender's offer to increase debt may be counterproductive if weak collections are the dominant cause of distress.

The same enterprise should test whether customer-channel diversity helps or hinders reconciliation. If 35% of sales arrive by bank transfer, 45% by mobile money and 20% remain on invoice terms, reported revenue cannot be treated as immediately available cash. Payment matching and source records belong to financial control (Chapters 22 and 26), while the credit and settlement infrastructure is the subject here. The business case demonstrates that the value of financial services depends on their synchronization with receivables, procurement, employment and delivery, not on the adoption of any single product.

Table 25.3. Financial-journey diagnostic for a Rwandan household and enterprise

Decision stage	Household diagnostic question	Enterprise diagnostic question	Evidence needed
Receive	Which member controls incoming funds?	Who confirms final customer settlement?	Account ownership, transaction records
Hold	Are safe liquid balances available when needed?	Can wages and suppliers be paid on due dates?	Dated balance and obligation schedules
Borrow	Is total repayment affordable under low-income months?	Is debt service resilient to delayed receivables?	Dated cash flows, APR/effective cost, stress cases
Protect	Which large losses remain uninsured?	Which inventory, cargo and liability exposures are covered?	Policy wording, deductible, claims processes
Invest	Do savings products match life goals and risk capacity?	Does financing duration match productive asset use?	Purpose, horizon, suitability, covenant schedule
Remedy	Who investigates mistaken payments or abusive charges?	Who owns settlement, lender and insurer disputes?	Contracts, logs, complaints and escalation trails

Note. Original teaching instrument. The household and enterprise are constructed; source documents establish the Rwandan institutional context, not individual observations.

25.13.3 Evidence limitations and interpretation protocol

FinScope is primarily a demand-side financial-inclusion survey, not a randomized evaluation of each product's economic effects. NBR annual reports describe institutional and sector activity, not the causal contribution of specific platforms to productivity. CMA issuance data do not demonstrate that participating issuers increased employment because of bond financing. IMF surveillance identifies risks and aggregate tendencies rather than making a credit decision for a particular bank. A doctoral-level interpretation should therefore specify population, date, numerator, operational definition, institutional interest, likely measurement error and viable causal counterfactual before generalizing. This protocol is central to the chapter's contribution: no single source can validate all links between financial access, enterprise investment, stability and welfare.

25.14 COMPARATIVE INTERNATIONAL ANALYSIS AND THE LIMITS OF TRANSFER

Kenya's experience with M-Pesa offers a substantial empirical comparator, but its best-established research question is narrower than 'does mobile money cause development?' Using panel evidence, Jack and Suri (2014) found that access to mobile money improved the capacity of participating households in their study to smooth consumption following adverse shocks, with remittances an important mechanism. In a later study, Suri and Jack (2016) estimated longer-run effects on consumption, poverty and women's occupational choice. These papers provide unusually substantive evidence that transaction-cost reductions can change household outcomes in a particular institutional environment. Their identification strategies, survey waves, geographic variation, program maturity and historical period must nevertheless be examined before borrowing their estimates for another country.

Rwanda differs from Kenya in provider structures, population geography, state-led financial-inclusion strategies, SACCO coverage, institutional sequencing and contemporary digital-payment architecture. Rwanda's 2024 FinScope indicators establish extensive use of mobile money; they do not independently reproduce the Kenyan research design or identify identical welfare effects. It would be methodologically unsound to multiply Kenya's estimated household impact by Rwanda's account coverage and announce a forecast. The appropriate comparative strategy begins with a mechanism: whether a reduction in transfer costs improves timely remittances, savings security or business turnover. It then asks whether uptake is driven by the same constraints, whether fees and agency networks are comparable, whether users face similar shocks, and whether the effect can be identified with credible Rwanda-specific data.

A second comparison comes from international bank regulation and financial-market infrastructure. The Basel framework and CPSS-IOSCO principles provide shared vocabulary for capital, liquidity, operational resilience, legal finality and governance (BCBS, 2026; CPSS-IOSCO, 2012). Their transfer requires due attention to supervisory capacity, smaller institution cost burdens, domestic settlement architecture and the interplay of banks with savings cooperatives and nonbank providers. A small financial institution can adopt strong responsibility for risk without replicating the compliance departments of a major international bank. Equally, reduced complexity must not obscure fraud, consumer claims or correlated lending exposures.

The global Findex comparison offers a third lesson. The World Bank's 2025 report measures adult ownership and use of specified financial services across 141 economies based on 2024 interviews (World Bank, 2025a). Rwanda FinScope 2024 offers richer locally designed categories, including inclusion through informal mechanisms. A percentage taken from each report without harmonizing age, ownership/use, formal/informal classification and timing can manufacture a spurious 'performance gap'. Researchers should either harmonize raw or clearly aligned indicators or present results side by side as non-equivalent estimates. Apparent precision does not compensate for a mismatch in constructs.

Table 25.4. Interpreting Rwanda–international evidence without false equivalence

Evidence	Strongest supported use	Unsupported extrapolation	Required qualification
Rwanda FinScope 2024	Distribution of reported financial access and use among surveyed adults	Account ownership causes poverty reduction	Definition, age base, overlap, sampling
NBR FY2024/25 annual report	Sector balances and payment activity over a documented year	Digital payment growth proves enterprise productivity	Value versus volume; sector versus firm
CMA FY2024/25 report communication	Capital-market issuance, market size and fund activity	Listed-market growth benefits every SME	Issuer access, cash raised, liquidity
Kenya mobile-money studies	Context-specific estimates of transactions/risk sharing and longer-run outcomes	Identical effect sizes in Rwanda in 2026	Mechanisms, design, period and transfer conditions
Global Findex 2025	Globally comparable selected adult financial indicators	Same inclusion construct as Rwanda FinScope	Age base, formal/informal and ownership/use
Basel and infrastructure standards	Normative international benchmarks for prudential and settlement design	Unchanged binding requirements in Rwanda	National transposition, scope, implementation

Note. Developed from AFR (2024), NBR (2025), CMA (2026), Jack and Suri (2014), Suri and Jack (2016), World Bank (2025a), BCBS (2026) and CPSS-IOSCO (2012).

25.14.1 A mechanism-based comparison of African and high-income financial innovation

Three comparative studies illuminate distinct pathways. The Kenyan mobile-money research of Jack and Suri (2014) concentrates on the effect of lower transfer frictions and improved household risk sharing; Karlan et al. (2014) demonstrate how reducing uninsured agricultural risk can change productive choices in Ghana; and Fuster et al. (2019) examine technology-related processing efficiencies in a data-rich United States mortgage market. None addresses all possible meanings of 'financial inclusion'. Their outcome variables differ, as do their contractual products, institutional environments and identification strategies. Grouping them as evidence that digitization necessarily causes development would conceal rather than explain the evidence.

For analytical transfer to Rwanda, researchers should specify a transportability argument before comparing effect sizes. For mobile payments, test whether agent availability, pricing and remittance networks plausibly match the mechanism under study. For agricultural insurance, test whether index validity, farm input markets and payout credibility are sufficiently similar. For technology-led lending, test whether borrower information quality, collateral, supervisory arrangements and origination economics are transferable. Where these conditions fail, the comparator remains useful as a theoretical challenge, but not as a numerical forecast. This avoids the false choice between dismissing international evidence and importing its conclusions without qualification.

25.15 INTEGRATED TEACHING CASE: A DIGITAL LENDER'S GROWTH DECISION IN RWANDA

25.15.1 Case definition and reproducible assumptions

All enterprise values, portfolios, losses and contractual terms in this section are hypothetical. A fictional licensed-or-license-seeking lender, **Imena Digital Finance**, proposes a six-month microenterprise loan product distributed through a mobile interface. No actual Rwanda-based provider is represented. Management argues that faster application processing and existing mobile-money use justify rapid scale-up. The credit team observes insufficient repayment histories and substantial potential concentration in retail traders. Compliance personnel require evidence of lawful licensing, borrower consent, fee disclosure, reporting, fair collections and accessible remedy before a product launch. The board asks whether contribution remains defensible under plausible default and funding stresses.

To isolate the calculation, assume the pilot would originate 1,000 equal-principal loans of RWF 250,000 each, for a total disbursement of **RWF 250 million**. Contractual six-month interest on fully performing loans is 20% of principal, treated here as a simplified flat amount; an upfront 2% origination fee is assumed fully collected and legally permissible solely for this illustration. The lender expects an 8% six-month probability of default (PD) on a loan-count-weighted, equal-exposure basis, a 65% loss-given-default (LGD) on principal, a simple six-month funding cost equivalent to 4.5% of originations, RWF 7,000 servicing expense per loan, RWF 5,000 customer-acquisition expense per loan and additional expected fraud loss equal to 0.6% of principal. These parameters are not market quotes, regulatory caps or validated Rwanda default forecasts.

For simplicity, interest is assumed collected in full on nondefaulted loans, with no interest recovered on defaulted loans. Fees are assumed collected at origination and not subject to refunds in the hypothetical contract. Recoveries are represented solely in principal LGD. All 1,000 loans are assumed to have comparable exposure and default probability; no staged amortization, capital charge, tax, inflation, prepayment or recovery-timing effects are modelled. These intentionally restrictive assumptions make the mechanics inspectable, but are not sufficient for a real credit product decision. A professional model would incorporate dated cohort cash flows, collections, net interest recognition, loan aging, regulatory provisioning and capital, borrower affordability, and legally compliant pricing.

25.15.2 Baseline expected contribution and stress analysis

The baseline portfolio's interest income is **RWF 250 million × 20% × (1 − 8%) = RWF 46 million**. Expected fee income is **RWF 250 million × 2% = RWF 5 million**. Expected principal credit loss is **RWF 250 million × 8% × 65% = RWF 13 million**. Funding expense is **RWF 11.25 million**; servicing is **RWF 7 million**; acquisition is **RWF 5 million**; and expected fraud loss is **RWF 1.5 million**. The simplified contribution is therefore **46 + 5 − 13 − 11.25 − 7 − 5 − 1.5 = RWF 13.25 million** before fixed platform overhead, capital charge, taxes, extraordinary losses and other exclusions. The estimated contribution margin on originated principal is **5.3%** over six months; it is not a risk-adjusted return on equity or an annualized borrower yield.

Holding other inputs constant, contribution as a function of default probability p is **$C(p) = 50(1 - p) + 5 - 250 \times 0.65p - 24.75 = 30.25 - 212.5p$**, expressed in RWF millions. Its break-even PD is **30.25/212.5 = 14.24%**, before fixed overhead and capital charges. This threshold is an illustrative accounting break-even under assumed fee collection and loss timing, not a prudent regulatory default tolerance. A product could destroy shareholder value at a much lower default rate once risk capital, time value, operating scale and adverse selection are considered.

Table 25.5. Reproducible hypothetical six-month lender sensitivity analysis (RWF million)

Parameter/result	Baseline PD 8%	Stress PD 14%	Severe PD 16%
Originated principal	250.00	250.00	250.00
Interest received from performing loans	46.00	43.00	42.00
Upfront fees	5.00	5.00	5.00
Expected credit loss on principal	(13.00)	(22.75)	(26.00)
Funding cost	(11.25)	(11.25)	(11.25)
Servicing, acquisition and fraud	(13.50)	(13.50)	(13.50)
Expected contribution before excluded costs	13.25	0.50	(3.75)
Contribution/originations	5.30%	0.20%	(1.50%)

Note. Original constructed teaching data. Interest = 250 × 0.20 × (1 − PD); credit loss = 250 × PD × 0.65; fixed modeled variable costs total 24.75. Parentheses denote expenses or losses. Rates are expressed as decimals in computation. Minor displayed rounding does not affect totals.

The apparently attractive baseline is fragile. If default probability doubles from 8% to 16%, contribution becomes negative even before the excluded fixed and capital costs. A one percentage point increase in PD lowers the modeled contribution by **RWF 2.125 million**; this follows from the slope of C(p) and is not an empirical sensitivity estimate. An increase in funding costs further lowers contribution, while higher origination fees may be legally restricted, unfair or commercially counterproductive. A statistically high-performing credit model might improve estimated PD, but management cannot treat an untested model as evidence that default probabilities will remain below break-even after expansion.

25.15.2.1 Borrower-facing cost and incomplete lender economics

The model must also be read from the customer's side. For a fully performing hypothetical loan of RWF 250,000, a 2% upfront fee of RWF 5,000 leaves RWF 245,000 of net usable proceeds if deducted when funds are advanced. If RWF 300,000 is due six months later, the borrower's effective six-month cost is 300,000/245,000 − 1 = 22.45%; assuming identical six-month compounding, the effective annual rate is approximately 49.94%. This is not equivalent to the advertised 20% flat six-month interest rate, and changes if repayment is amortized, fees are paid on different dates or other charges apply. The scenario deliberately does not assert that this product or charge structure is lawful in Rwanda. It demonstrates why an apparently profitable lender calculation cannot substitute for transparent, locally compliant borrower-cost disclosure.

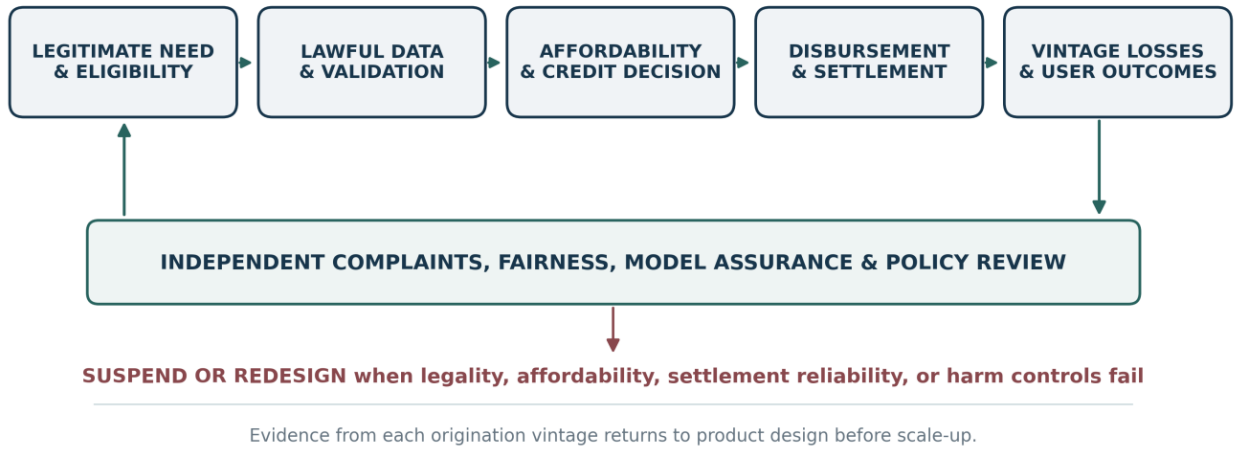
The estimated lender contribution is also narrower than economic profit. It omits platform fixed costs, regulatory capital and liquidity buffers, collection and recovery timing, taxes, the opportunity cost of shareholder funds and possible tail dependence among borrowers. Defaults in one sector may become positively correlated during a common demand or exchange-rate shock, rendering an average expected loss particularly weak as a resilience metric. The board should therefore inspect loss distributions, survival cash flow, vintage performance and downside capital sufficiency before increasing origination. A portfolio can have positive expected contribution while imposing an unacceptable probability of insolvency or disproportionate distress on customers.

25.15.3 From numerical decision to governed pilot

The board should not authorize a full-scale launch solely because expected baseline contribution is positive. Its conditional decision should specify a legally verified operating model; independent sign-off on product disclosures and complaints; audited source-to-settlement processes; suitability and affordability screening; a small staggered pilot; loss recognition against defined vintage cohorts; data minimization; controlled model changes; and escalation when adverse outcomes exceed thresholds. Fraud monitoring and payment reliability should be considered independently of credit quality. A thin data trail is not evidence that a borrower is irresponsible, and a payment delay is not automatically a default due to unwillingness to pay.

A technically credible pilot would pre-register practical decision metrics: six-month default by origination vintage; realized loss-given-default; repayment distress and restructuring; on-time settlement; customer complaints per 1,000 disbursements; fairness metrics with lawful and statistically appropriate subgroup analysis; consent and privacy incidents; total realized customer cost; and contribution after all operating and capital costs. An adequately designed evaluation should compare borrowers with suitable nonborrower groups or, where lawful and ethical, use a carefully governed rollout design. It must not infer a causal welfare benefit from comparing successful borrowers with applicants who were never approved.

Figure 25.2. Digital-lending decision and accountability loop.



The diagram begins with legitimate need and product eligibility, flows through lawful data collection and model validation, affordability and credit decisions, disbursement and settlement, monitoring and recovery, and independent complaints and review, before returning corrected evidence to product design. A separate veto path links unlawful pricing, unreliable settlement, excessive harm or unvalidated models to suspension. Note. Original analytical model based on the risk mechanisms in Stiglitz and Weiss (1981), Berg et al. (2020), Republic of Rwanda (2021c), and NBR (2025); not an externally validated impact model.

25.15.4 Professional decision memorandum

A defensible memorandum would state that the product is **not yet suitable for unrestricted expansion** because baseline contribution is insufficient evidence of resilience and consumer benefit. It would authorize, at most, a limited pilot conditional on applicable regulatory approvals, reliable payment infrastructure, verified fee transparency, functioning complaint routes, adequate capital and cash resources, and independent outcome evaluation. It should state why a traditional bank partnership, invoice-based enterprise finance or a savings-linked product was not selected, and should document conditions under which the board would revise the decision. This is a conditional teaching judgment under expressly fictional assumptions, not a recommendation concerning an identifiable institution.

25.16 INTEGRATIVE SYNTHESIS, ETHICAL EVALUATION AND RESEARCH AGENDA

The evidence assembled here suggests a six-part **credible-finance configuration**: an instrument must represent a legally intelligible claim; a provider must obtain information adequate for its decision; funding must match the timing and risk of obligations; settlement must be reliable; customers must have meaningful protection and remedy; and the arrangement must remain resilient under correlated stress. These conditions are necessary analytical questions rather than a proven sufficient formula for success. A product can satisfy each superficially and still fail because the wider economy, technology dependencies, supervisory capacity and stakeholder interests evolve. The framework is consequently a diagnostic method to organize tests and governance, not a prediction engine.

The framework also clarifies disagreements across finance theory. Asymmetric-information models explain why seemingly creditworthy firms may be rejected and why monitoring institutions emerge; liquidity-transformation models explain why deposit-taking is productive but fragile; financial-development arguments explain how improved intermediation could support investment; platform scholarship highlights information economies, network effects and concentration; inclusion research insists that participation and benefits must be differentiated. None can absorb all others without losing an important mechanism. A reliable finance curriculum should therefore resist presenting 'the financial system' as an invariant progression from cash to bank to app to token. Historical institutions, public regulation, informal arrangements and social trust create different viable paths.

25.16.1 Cross-functional consequences for the enterprise

Financial channels are productive only as part of the enterprise system described in Chapter 1. Marketing and sales (Chapters 13–16) set payment promises and determine the diversity and reliability of collections. Procurement and supply-chain management (Chapters 18–19) establish inventory and supplier credit requirements; the resulting cash-cycle risk defines feasible financing maturity. Financial accounting and budgeting (Chapters 22–23) provide the evidence needed to monitor settlement and evaluate borrower affordability. Chapter 24 appraises the investment being financed rather than the intermediary's infrastructure. Strategy and governance (Chapters 6 and 8) authorize risk, ensure accountability and prevent sales incentives from concealing future defaults. Technology chapters (28–29) address information architecture and AI techniques in greater depth, while Chapter 26 develops specialist audit, taxation and internal financial controls. Finance is thus enabling infrastructure, but never a substitute for operating capability or legitimate strategy.

Three ethical conflicts require explicit reasoning. First, a lender owes duties to depositors and its own solvency while borrowers may have legitimate needs unmet by conventional collateral-based models; indiscriminate approval and indiscriminate rejection are both inadequate. Second, digital personalization can improve accessibility while producing data extraction, opaque discrimination or excessive surveillance; lawful consent and the ability to contest treatment must be meaningful rather than ceremonial. Third, a public institution may promote digital efficiency while imposing exclusion costs on cash users, people without stable connectivity and those requiring assisted service. The appropriate norm is proportionate, evidence-based decision-making that respects dignity and allocates avoidable harms fairly. The fuller theological analysis of business responsibility is reserved for Chapter 34.

25.16.2 Testable research propositions and methodological priorities

A first proposition concerns payment interoperability: conditional on usable acceptance infrastructure and effective reconciliation, greater interoperability should reduce realized collection delays among participating small enterprises. The relevant unit of analysis is the merchant over time; provider-level transaction volumes alone cannot establish a causal effect. A credible design must address selective adoption and changes in customer mix.

A second proposition links the credibility of transaction histories to underwriting. More verifiable records should lower some screening costs, but the magnitude and fairness of any improvement are plausibly moderated by sector informality, borrower selection and data-governance capability. The effect should be evaluated on accepted and rejected applicants where legally and methodologically feasible.

A third proposition distinguishes participation from resilience. More widespread account ownership or service use should improve household recovery after shocks only where products are sufficiently affordable, suitable, reliable and controllable by the account user. It should be tested through independently observed outcomes rather than self-reported enrollment alone.

A fourth proposition addresses the tension between digital scale and concentration. Shared infrastructure can lower costs while creating correlated outage exposure; genuinely independent redundancy and credible recovery arrangements may moderate that risk. Testing requires incident data, dependency mapping and documented recovery performance. These propositions are researchable hypotheses, not findings validated by the present chapter.

A feasible Rwanda-based research programme could combine the 2024 FinScope microdata, where access and permissions permit, with regulator-supplied service statistics and consenting institutional administrative records. Construct harmonized financial-product indicators, geocode access only within lawful safeguards, identify period changes and use staggered infrastructure rollout or exogenous variation only when the assignment mechanism is genuinely defensible. For enterprise outcomes, use audited or validated sales and payment records, examine treatment contamination and selection, and predefine estimands such as days-sales-outstanding, unsuccessful settlement rates or short-term liquidity shortfalls. Qualitative process tracing could illuminate trust, repair and provider incentives but should not be presented as conducted here. Research on CBDCs should separately evaluate technical performance, legal design, monetary implications and user welfare, avoiding the inference that a successful prototype guarantees desirable production deployment.

25.16.3 Chapter conclusion

Banking, securities markets, payment networks, insurers and fintech providers do not compete over a single undifferentiated financial task. They create, exchange, monitor and settle different claims with different rights and vulnerabilities. Rwanda illustrates both the scale of contemporary digital financial participation and the need to distinguish reach from credit quality, market depth, individual control and financial wellbeing. The central conclusion is that financial innovation creates durable enterprise value only when it reduces consequential frictions **without obscuring claims, shifting unrecognized losses to weaker parties, or compromising the system's capacity to survive stress**. In financial intermediation, the credibility of the obligation is at least as important as the convenience of the transaction.

Seven interconnected conclusions follow from this analysis. Financial services must first be classified by the underlying legal claim rather than by the interface through which they are sold. Banking generates both productive credit and potentially fragile funding promises, making liquidity and solvency controls inseparable from lending decisions. Capital markets enlarge financing and risk-sharing options only when disclosure, custody, secondary-market depth and investor suitability are credible. Payment technology creates genuine value when it lowers the total cost and uncertainty of settlement without excluding legitimate users. Inclusion should be judged by control, affordability, suitable usage and resilience, not enrollment alone. Insurance and patient capital can protect and expand productive activity, but claims quality and additionality require independent evidence. Finally, financial innovation is responsible only when its benefits remain defensible under loss, cyber disruption, concentration, consumer challenge and changing institutional conditions. These conclusions preserve the distinction between efficiency, knowledge and justice established at the outset of the chapter.

25.17 KEY TERMS, ASSESSMENT AND TEACHING RESOURCES

25.17.1 Cumulative glossary

Term	Operational meaning
Adverse selection	A selection problem arising when parties possess unequal information about risk-relevant characteristics.
Bank deposit	A bank liability to a customer under the applicable agreement; it is not an individually segregated holding of central-bank reserves.
Capital adequacy	The relationship of eligible loss-absorbing regulatory capital to defined exposures and applicable minimum requirements.
CBDC	A digital liability of a central bank, if authorized and issued, whose rights depend on the applicable legal and operational design.
Clearing	The processing, transmission and calculation of payment or securities obligations prior to settlement.
Collateral	Assets or rights securing an obligation, subject to legal priority, enforceability and realizable value.
Credit rationing	A circumstance in which some borrowers are denied credit despite accepting prevailing quoted terms.
Deposit protection	Legally specified protection for eligible deposits, subject to defined institutions, products and coverage limits.
Digital footprint	Information generated by online activity that may inform specified analyses, subject to data quality and legal constraints.
Effective borrowing cost	A discount rate inferred from actual dated net borrower proceeds and all relevant outflows.
Electronic money	Stored monetary value carrying claims and safeguarding rights defined by its issuance and regulatory arrangements.
Financial inclusion	An explicitly defined measure of the access to and use of financial products, distinct from their realized welfare effects.
Financial intermediation	The organization of savings, claims, information and risks between providers and users of capital.
Interoperability	The ability of different systems or providers to exchange and process payments under defined rules.
Liquidity transformation	The financing of relatively illiquid claims with comparatively liquid or short-dated liabilities.
Loss given default (LGD)	The proportion of a specified exposure remaining unrecovered upon a defined default.
Non-performing loan (NPL)	A loan meeting non-performance criteria specified by a supervisory or accounting framework.
Payment finality	The legally effective point at which settlement becomes ordinarily irrevocable under relevant rules.
Probability of default (PD)	Estimated chance of a defined credit default over an identified time horizon.
Prudential regulation	Rules and supervision addressing institutional solvency, liquidity and financial-system safety.
Risk-weighted assets (RWA)	An exposure aggregate calculated using prescribed regulatory risk weights or permitted methods.
Settlement	The discharge of financial obligations through the agreed asset and infrastructure.
Tokenization	A digital representation of a claim, right or asset under a particular legal and technical arrangement.

Term	Operational meaning
Underwriting	Assessment, pricing and acceptance of specified credit or insurance risks.

25.17.2 Conceptual and doctoral-level analytical questions

Question 1 (LO1–LO2). Explain why the claim that 'banks lend only pre-existing deposits' is misleading and why correcting it does not imply that bank lending is unlimited. Reconstruct the journal/balance-sheet changes when a newly created deposit moves to another bank, then compare delegated monitoring with liquidity-insurance explanations of banking. Identify assumptions that would fail in a non-deposit fintech model.

Question 2 (LO3–LO4). A manufacturer seeks RWF 80 million for equipment with a six-year useful life and RWF 20 million to bridge forty-five days of receivables. Evaluate a five-year term loan, overdraft, equity issue and invoice finance. State contractual information required before any numerical ranking and discuss why a single all-purpose instrument may increase risk.

Question 3 (LO5–LO8). Critically appraise a policymaker's statement that Rwanda's high reported financial-inclusion rate demonstrates universal access to affordable enterprise loans and financial resilience. Specify the FinScope definitions that must be separated, identify potential survey limitations, and construct an ethical, feasible empirical test of an actual welfare outcome.

Question 4 (LO4–LO7). Compare the failure channels of a commercial bank, a mobile wallet provider, an uninsured money-market fund, a tokenized deposit and an unbacked cryptoasset. In each case, identify issuer, enforceable claim, finality, supervisory perimeter, redemption and recovery rights. Explain how apparent similarity in the user interface could conceal significant differences in legal and financial exposure.

Question 5 (LO6–LO8). Design a research strategy to test whether interoperable digital payments causally reduce small-enterprise days-sales-outstanding in Rwanda. Specify the unit of analysis, exposure, estimand, baseline period, comparison construction, likely selection mechanisms, missing data, outcome measures, pre-analysis decisions, data protection and interpretation limits.

25.17.3 Applied calculations and case assignments

Exercise A: credit economics (LO3, LO5). For a six-month loan whose borrower receives RWF 1,000,000 but pays a RWF 30,000 origination fee at disbursement and RWF 1,130,000 at maturity, find the effective six-month borrowing rate using net proceeds, then compute its effective annual rate assuming two identical compounding periods. Explain why using the headline RWF 130,000 interest charge divided by the gross principal understates the effective cost. *Instructor check:* net proceeds = RWF 970,000; six-month rate = 1,130,000/970,000 − 1 = **16.49%**; effective annual rate ≈ **35.71%**. This is a constructed calculation, not a permitted interest-rate benchmark.

Exercise B: insurer and enterprise (LO4, LO8). Revisit Section 25.9.1 with a 7% event probability, RWF 5 million deductible and RWF 1.4 million premium. Specify which losses are covered, recompute expected insurance cost, and defend a decision for (a) a cash-constrained small firm and (b) a diversified large enterprise. A correct response should distinguish expected expenditure from the value of liquidity protection and should not assume identical risk preferences.

Exercise C: digital-lender stress (LO5, LO7–LO8). Rebuild Table 25.5, then change LGD from 65% to 80% and funding cost from 4.5% to 6% of originations over six months. Derive the new breakeven PD and explain why comparison with the original threshold must account for capital charges, vintage behavior and regulatory consumer-protection constraints. *Instructor check:* fixed modeled costs rise from RWF 24.75 million to RWF 28.50 million; interest remains 50(1−p), fee income 5 and credit losses 200p; contribution becomes **26.50 − 250p** million, giving break-even **10.60%**. All amounts are hypothetical.

Capstone assignment (LO1–LO8). Prepare a 3,500–5,000-word evidence-based financing and payments assessment for one actual Rwandan sector, using only legitimately obtainable secondary sources and no invented firm interviews. Compare a small enterprise, a household and a financial service provider. Critically examine applicable legal duties and primary statistics; construct a risk-adjusted funding alternative and a payment-failure scenario; assess inclusion, consumer protection and cyber resilience; explain international comparability; and develop a falsifiable monitoring plan. Every factual claim and numerical assumption must be traceable to a source or explicitly labeled illustrative. Separate the evidence summary from the author's normative judgments.

25.17.4 Assessment rubric and educator guidance

A defensible marking scheme for the capstone assigns **25%** to theoretical accuracy and engagement with competing explanations, **25%** to source validity, methodological transparency and inferential discipline, **20%** to quantitative correctness and stress testing, **15%** to Rwanda-specific institutional and international comparative reasoning, and **15%** to integration, ethical accountability and scholarly communication. At doctoral level, a polished description is not sufficient: students must defend assumptions, discriminate causal from descriptive evidence, identify where theories fail and supply credible alternatives. In classroom delivery, a staged simulation can assign roles to the borrower, bank risk officer, mobile-payment provider, insurer, regulator and consumer advocate, then require a joint decision memorandum. The instructor should verify changes to legislation and financial-market conditions before reusing country-specific examples.

25.17.5 Selected further reading

Diamond and Dybvig (1983) and Diamond (1984) provide complementary foundational explanations of liquidity transformation and delegated monitoring. Stiglitz and Weiss (1981) remains central for understanding credit rationing under imperfect information. Beck et al. (2005) offers empirical evidence on uneven firm-level financial constraints. Jack and Suri (2014) and Suri and Jack (2016) illuminate mechanisms and identification in African digital-finance research. Berg et al. (2020) supports a critical discussion of new data in underwriting, while Frost et al. (2020) develops the economic implications of technology platforms in finance. For contemporary Rwanda, read AFR (2024), NBR (2025, 2026), CMA (2026) and the IMF (2026b) together rather than separately. Basel and CPSS-IOSCO materials provide international institutional frameworks whose national applicability must be verified.

APPENDIX A. TECHNICAL REPRODUCTION AND SOURCE-PROVENANCE PROTOCOL

The illustrations use Rwandan francs (RWF) at nominal values without inflation adjustment. Each percentage is converted to a decimal before multiplication; each time unit is disclosed. Section 25.2 compares bank assets with liabilities plus equity after each operation. Section 25.3's installment follows A = Pr/[1 − (1+r)^(−n)] with P = 12,000,000, r = 0.015 per month and n = 12. Section 25.9's expected loss is probability multiplied by loss severity; it is not a confidence bound. In Section 25.15, expected interest counts only nondefaulting loans; expected loss applies to principal using PD and LGD; fees and expenses follow their disclosed assumptions. The case excludes fixed overhead, taxes, capital costs, collection timing, loss-distribution tails, changes in client behaviour and regulatory provisioning. Reproduction requires no private dataset or fieldwork.

Source provenance follows a four-part rule. First, identify the primary organization responsible for the dataset or rule. Second, record the reference/observation period separately from the release date. Third, preserve the author's exact definition of the population or instrument before comparing sources. Fourth, mark constructed assumptions and analytically derived values so that they are never mistaken for observed outcomes. The cited Rwandan statutory texts, regulator communications, survey findings and identified scholarly publication metadata have been cross-checked against accessible institutional or publisher records through the stated evidence date; interpretation should be refreshed before any real-world regulated transaction or legal opinion. The chapter uses secondary evidence and does not report a new survey, interview study or experiment.

CHAPTER 26

Taxation, Auditing, Internal Controls, and Financial Compliance

ABSTRACT

Taxation, auditing, internal control and financial compliance address a shared enterprise problem: how consequential financial claims can be discharged, tested and made answerable without confusing formal conformity with economic integrity. This chapter develops a theoretically critical and operationally detailed account of twelve approved functional domains, connecting tax economics and compliance behaviour with agency and assurance theory, risk-based auditing, the COSO control architecture and professional ethics. Its secondary-source methodology integrates foundational peer-reviewed scholarship, international standards and official Rwandan law and administration as publicly available on 2 November 2026. It distinguishes taxes from accounting expense, tax examinations from independent financial audits, and control design from control operating effectiveness. Rwandan corporate income tax, value added tax and employment withholding are illustrated through explicitly constructed transactions using verified public guidance, with assumptions and statutory limitations disclosed. A reconciled cash-intensive enterprise example provides an audit trail, tax computation, control matrix, compliance calendar, evidence hierarchy and quantified exception investigation. Comparative analysis uses Kenyan electronic tax invoicing, international audit standards and field evidence on third-party reporting while identifying limits to contextual transfer. The argument is that credible compliance is a continuous governance capability linking valid legal interpretation, reliable records, independent challenge, proportionate controls and remediable error. Digitalization expands both visibility and exposure; it does not itself establish completeness, fairness or assurance. The proposed integrative framework is conceptual and educational, not an empirically validated causal model.

Keywords: taxation; tax compliance; audit quality; audit risk; internal controls; fraud risk; electronic invoicing; financial governance; Rwanda; professional ethics.

LEARNING OUTCOMES AND CONCEPTUAL ROADMAP

The chapter is designed around eight assessable outcomes that progress from institutional and conceptual interpretation to legally accurate calculation, critical assurance judgment and the design of defensible enterprise controls. The outcomes also establish the criteria for the case-based assessments in Section 26.16.

Table 26.0. Chapter learning outcomes and evidence of achievement

Outcome	Assessable capability
LO1	Differentiate fiscal purposes, tax incidence and operating mechanisms of enterprise taxation using competing theoretical explanations.
LO2	Determine the applicability of registration, record, filing, payment, amendment and review obligations from appropriately dated primary sources.
LO3	Critically distinguish lawful tax planning, uncertain or aggressive positions, avoidance and evasion, including legal and moral limits.
LO4	Compare internal, external, tax, compliance and performance audits, evaluating independence, evidentiary reach and assurance limitations.
LO5	Translate assertions and identified risks into suitable evidence, substantive procedures, control tests and documented conclusions.
LO6	Design proportionate internal controls, segregation of duties, compensating safeguards, fraud escalation and monitoring mechanisms.
LO7	Reproduce and interpret the Rwandan VAT, PAYE, corporate income-tax and cash-reconciliation computations under explicitly stated assumptions.
LO8	Defend a cross-functional compliance-improvement programme with accountable owners, credible evidence, responsible digital controls and review criteria.

Note. Each learning outcome is assessed through at least one task or professional instrument later in the chapter.

The chapter moves from taxation's public rationale (26.1) and enterprise tax classifications (26.2) to administration (26.3) and legal–ethical boundaries (26.4). It then differentiates audit engagements (26.5), develops audit evidence and risk (26.6), designs internal controls (26.7–26.8) and establishes governance arrangements (26.9). Digital systems (26.10) and Rwanda-specific rules (26.11) meet in the integrated case, before professional ethics, continuous improvement, comparative synthesis and learning resources (26.12–26.16). Chapters 22 and 23 own external and managerial accounting; Chapter 24 owns investment finance; Chapter 25 owns financial intermediation; Chapter 8 owns board-level governance. The present chapter examines the fiscal, assurance and control obligations that make those functions credible.

26.0 INTRODUCTION: WHEN A PROFITABLE SALE CREATES AN UNSEEN LIABILITY

A Kigali distributor of packaged foods records a successful institutional sale. Its electronic invoice shows taxable output, the warehouse has issued goods, and the customer has paid into a mobile-money account. Yet the accounting ledger shows a smaller sale, the tax return has been prepared from a spreadsheet instead of the complete invoice register, and the employee who receives cash also posts receipts and approves refunds. A month-end reconciliation identifies a discrepancy, but managers cannot tell whether it reflects timing, duplicate data, a missing invoice, a system-interface failure or deliberate diversion. The business may be profitable and still present inaccurate tax returns, unreliable accounts and preventable exposure to fraud. This scenario is constructed for teaching and describes no identified enterprise.

The central problem is epistemic as well as managerial. An enterprise cannot demonstrate that it has met a tax obligation merely by making a payment; nor can it demonstrate reporting reliability because a trial balance agrees, a system generates a dashboard or an auditor has issued a report. Each claim depends on the quality of the underlying transaction population, applicable law, accounting measurement, authorizations, corroborating evidence and independent review. Taxation concerns legally imposed fiscal liabilities and the institutionally

governed relationship between taxpayers and the state. Auditing concerns the systematic examination of subject matter against explicit criteria to support an appropriate conclusion. Internal control comprises processes implemented by those directing and operating an organization to provide reasonable assurance that operational, reporting and compliance objectives are achieved. Financial compliance brings these arrangements into an integrated set of obligations, records, accountability relationships and remedies (Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission [COSO], 2013b; International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board [IAASB], 2026; The Institute of Internal Auditors [IIA], 2024).

The distinction between *reasonable assurance* and certainty is fundamental. Controls can fail through human error, collusion, management override, misleading system configuration or changing business conditions. Audits use judgments, samples and evidence that may be persuasive rather than conclusive. Tax law can contain exemptions, transitional provisions and disputed interpretations. The responsible response is neither generalized suspicion nor ritual compliance. It is to make claims explicit, attach evidence to each claim, identify residual uncertainty and provide a practicable pathway for correction.

26.0.1 Methodological orientation and evidentiary boundaries

This chapter adopts a targeted critical synthesis of secondary literature and public documentary evidence rather than original field research. The conceptual selection covers seminal tax-compliance models, randomized and quasi-experimental tax studies, assurance economics, audit-quality scholarship, and established internal-control and professional-ethics frameworks. The institutional selection prioritizes Rwanda Revenue Authority (RRA) law and taxpayer guidance, Rwanda's professional accountancy regulator, the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB), the Institute of Internal Auditors (IIA), the OECD and INTOSAI. The documentary cut-off is **2 November 2026**. Where the RRA's simplified guidance differs in granularity from law, enacted law and its legally effective amendments take precedence. Examples derived from published rates remain conditional on tax category, transaction timing, eligibility and future amendments. This is a purposive narrative synthesis, not a registered systematic review; its selection does not support a claim to exhaustive retrieval or meta-analytic causal inference.

The chapter uses four different evidentiary registers. **Statutory and institutional statements** describe published requirements, subject to current-law verification. **Empirical findings** report the populations and designs actually studied, without assuming transferability to Rwanda. **Theoretical arguments** identify mechanisms and boundary conditions. **Constructed teaching examples** use disclosed numerical assumptions rather than observed firm data. These distinctions prevent a common mistake in policy and management writing: allowing a plausible scenario to acquire the authority of an empirical case through repeated narration.

This review's documentary logic can be reproduced at the level of source classes and adjudication rules even though no exhaustive database search was undertaken. Its source universe comprises original theoretical articles and audit-quality studies; official legal instruments and tax-administration materials; standards issued by the IAASB, IESBA, IIA and COSO; and published comparative revenue statistics and field experiments. Priority was given to enactment texts for legal rules, promulgated professional standards for technical requirements, peer-reviewed original studies for causal claims, and official methodological metadata for administrative statistics. A claim was retained only where its unit of analysis, jurisdiction and effective period could be stated meaningfully. When studies disagree, priority is not assigned automatically to the most recent publication: identification quality, measurement and institutional fit govern interpretation. The resulting procedure permits substantive scrutiny but does not constitute a PRISMA-style systematic review, because no exhaustive search string, duplicate-screening log or prespecified exclusion registry was created. This limitation matters most for claims about the overall effectiveness of audits, electronic invoicing and specific penalties; the chapter therefore develops conditional mechanisms instead of pooled effects.

A second methodological caution concerns circular documentary corroboration. A website summary, taxpayer handbook and presentation may repeat one legal interpretation without supplying three independent lines of

evidence. The hierarchy of enacted statute, legally effective amendments, subsidiary rules and explanatory guidance is therefore indispensable. Similarly, regulatory filing rates and audit observations are administrative outputs shaped by the institution's reporting definitions; they do not measure the counterfactual impact of a control unless an appropriate research design supports that inference.

26.1 PURPOSE AND PRINCIPLES OF TAXATION

26.1.1 Revenue, the social contract and the fiscal capacity of the state

Taxation finances collective commitments that decentralized exchange alone may not provide on an adequate or equitable basis: public administration, infrastructure, justice, safety, education and other services. These purposes do not imply that every tax is economically efficient or every public expenditure justified. Tax legitimacy requires examining the design of the levy, the distribution of its burden, the quality of public administration, the legal authorization of revenue extraction and the accountability of expenditure. A positive fiscal objective is not evidence that any particular tax instrument produces the anticipated economic or distributional result.

Classical public-finance analysis distinguishes the ability to raise revenue from the efficiency and equity costs of doing so. An income tax can create incentives to alter reported or actual economic activity; an indirect tax may be comparatively feasible to administer while placing a larger proportional burden on lower-income consumers unless exemptions, transfers or other measures alter that incidence. Optimal-tax models make the welfare trade-off explicit but depend on contestable assumptions about social welfare weights, behavioural elasticities, enforcement costs and information available to governments. Hence, the observed statutory rate alone is insufficient to evaluate the merits of a tax.

The tax–state relationship is also institutional. A revenue authority needs verifiable identifiers, payment channels, records and appeal mechanisms. A taxpayer needs intelligible duties, predictable application, proportionate enforcement and the ability to challenge an assessment. In their analytical model, Allingham and Sandmo (1972) interpret evasion as a choice under detection risk and penalties, a valuable foundation for enforcement economics. Its original rational-choice assumptions nevertheless cannot fully explain civic norms, fairness perceptions or the sharply different opportunities to conceal third-party-reported and self-reported income. Kirchler et al. (2008) instead place enforcement power and institutional trust on interacting axes; their *slippery-slope* framework illuminates why coercive and voluntary compliance need not be mutually exclusive. Its usefulness is conceptual rather than proof that trust causes a particular change in revenue in every country.

26.1.2 Horizontal equity, vertical equity, neutrality and administrative feasibility

Horizontal equity ordinarily requires similarly situated taxpayers to bear comparable liabilities; **vertical equity** asks how obligations ought to differ between people or enterprises with different capacities. **Efficiency** concerns distortion relative to feasible alternatives, not the unattainable ideal of zero behavioural effect. **Neutrality** discourages arbitrary preference among otherwise comparable transactions, whereas targeted relief may be justified when a clear public objective and effective safeguard exist. **Certainty** demands understandable bases, dates and procedures; **simplicity** reduces compliance costs; **administrability** concerns what regulators can verify with available capacity. A formally neutral regime may operate inequitably when smaller firms cannot afford specialist advice, and generous exemptions may produce complex compliance that disadvantages the intended beneficiaries.

Economic incidence further differs from legal remittance. The employer remits employment withholding but workers may bear its direct burden; a VAT-registered supplier charges the tax but consumers, workers or owners may bear its economic cost depending on price elasticity and market structure. Similarly, a nominal corporate income tax can influence returns to owners, wages, prices and investment over time. Such incidence is empirical

and context dependent. When advising an enterprise, analysts should distinguish the person legally required to file from the person ultimately bearing the economic burden rather than assuming they coincide.

Tax incidence can be examined more precisely through a local competitive-market model. For a small unit tax and conventional upward-sloping supply and downward-sloping demand, the approximate share of the marginal burden borne by buyers is the supply elasticity divided by the sum of supply elasticity and the absolute demand elasticity. The seller's share is the absolute demand elasticity divided by the same sum. Thus, where supply elasticity is 2 and absolute demand elasticity is 1, the model predicts buyers bear approximately two-thirds of a marginal tax burden. These shares are pedagogical predictions under local equilibrium and pass-through assumptions, not an estimate of Rwanda's VAT incidence. Market power, informality, credit constraints, tax-inclusive pricing, evasion and imperfect enforcement may all alter actual incidence. It is therefore analytically unsound to infer distributive justice directly from the business named on the return or the customer named on the invoice.

The normative difficulty runs deeper than a choice between efficiency and equity. An activity may be economically productive while its profit is narrowly concentrated; a nominally progressive tax can be undermined by exclusions or weak administrative reach; and a simplified turnover regime can lower compliance costs while creating sharp effective-tax differences across firms with different margins. In settings where capital, skills and recordkeeping capacities differ markedly, the administration of taxation becomes part of the distributional question. Proportionate simplicity should be evaluated by the actual resources taxpayers must expend to comply, including time, data access, professional advice and the cost of correcting administrative mistakes (OECD, 2015b).

26.1.3 Compliance behaviour and what the evidence permits

Slemrod's (2019) synthesis separates audit probabilities, information reporting and remittance mechanisms as distinct policy instruments. Kleven et al. (2011), using Danish administrative records and a randomized audit intervention, report substantial differences between compliance on income already reported by third parties and self-reported income. Pomeranz (2015), using two randomized experiments among Chilean firms, finds a preventive role for VAT transaction paper trails and spillovers along business supply chains. Neither study demonstrates that a digital invoice system by itself ensures compliance in Rwanda: technology uptake, enforcement credibility, legal design, transaction structure and actual use all matter. Mascagni's (2018) review emphasizes the methodological promise and contextual limits of tax field experiments, particularly when behaviour and administrative capacity differ across jurisdictions.

For Rwanda, the RRA's FY 2024/25 annual report states central-government revenue collection of approximately FRW 3,099.0 billion against a target of FRW 3,041.2 billion. This is a reported administrative outcome, not an identified causal effect of digitalization or a firm-level measure of voluntary compliance (RRA, 2025a). The central scholarly question is therefore not whether one can maximize collections, but how reliable obligations, accessible processes, fair enforcement and public accountability jointly affect fiscal capacity and economic conduct.

26.2 TAX TYPES RELEVANT TO ENTERPRISE

26.2.1 Taxes classified by base, incidence and timing

The appropriate inventory begins with the *taxable event*: earning income, supplying a taxable good or service, paying specified remuneration, importing goods, distributing income, holding taxable property or engaging in a regulated activity. Tax types should be classified by legal taxpayer, economic base, rate or schedule, filing agent, credit or deduction mechanism, due date and applicable exceptions. This prevents a frequent error in business planning: treating every amount collected for a public authority as a company expense, or regarding a withholding credit as an additional final tax.

Corporate income tax (CIT) generally relates to taxable profit after legally permitted deductions, allowances and adjustments. Taxable profit is not identical to accounting profit under financial-reporting standards. **Personal income tax (PIT)** may apply to income earned by natural persons and to unincorporated enterprise activities. **Employment withholding (PAYE)** places collection and remittance responsibilities on employers, while applicable social-security contributions are distinct obligations and must not be casually conflated with income tax. **Value added tax (VAT)** is generally charged on taxable supplies, with credits for qualifying input tax under the applicable legal rules. An exemption is not necessarily equivalent to zero-rating: the two can have different input-tax consequences. **Withholding taxes** arise when designated payers deduct amounts from specified payments; their creditability or finality depends on law. **Customs duties**, import-related levies, **excise duty**, local taxes and sector-specific charges add further obligations for particular goods, services and assets (RRA, 2025b; Republic of Rwanda, 2023d, 2023e, 2025a– 2025c).

Table 26.1. Enterprise tax-obligation classification and the primary evidence required

Tax mechanism	Legal trigger and operating issue	Evidence and control emphasis
Corporate income tax	Relevant entity's taxable profit for the applicable period	Tax-adjustment bridge; source ledger; allowances; prior payments; review and return
VAT	Taxable sales, imports and eligible purchases	Product tax codes; valid electronic sales invoices; input eligibility; reconciled return
PAYE and employment obligations	Taxable employee remuneration and statutory employer duties	Approved payroll; employee identifiers; benefit classification; payment confirmations
Withholding tax	Payments to specified suppliers, investors or other recipients	Contract, residency and exemption documentation; certificates and credit matching
Customs, excise and other levies	Cross-border or product-specific taxable events	Classification, valuation, origin, declarations, customs release and proof of payment
Local or sector-related taxes	Statutorily defined property, activity or location	Registered asset/activity inventory; applicable law; local due-date register

Note. Classification is analytical; the existence and exact treatment of a tax must be established from the legislation effective for the entity, activity and tax period. Sources: RRA (2025b); Republic of Rwanda (2022a, 2023b, 2023d, 2025a–2025c).

26.2.2 Tax accounting, cash management and interfunctional consequences

A VAT liability may be generated before a customer settles an invoice; an employer can owe remittance even when liquidity is strained; a tax loss carried forward may not be an immediately realizable asset. The finance function should therefore model statutory liabilities separately from operating cash, while accounting distinguishes recognition, measurement and disclosures under the relevant reporting rules. Procurement affects deductible documentation and import valuation; human resources affects payroll tax and benefit classification; sales and operations affect the completeness and timing of invoiced supplies. Tax is not a bookkeeping appendix. It is a cross-functional property of the enterprise's transactions.

A concise reconciliation is: **taxable profit = accounting profit before tax + tax-disallowed items − permitted tax deductions and allowances ± other statutory adjustments**. The signs refer to an illustrative reconciliation, not an exhaustive statement of any country's tax law. Similarly, **net VAT payable = output VAT − eligible creditable input VAT ± statutory adjustments**. Neither equation gives the correct result until the coverage, eligibility, timing and documentary requirements are resolved.

A further distinction concerns **current** and **deferred** income tax under IAS 12. Current tax measures the income tax expected to be paid or recovered in respect of taxable profit for the applicable period. Deferred tax arises, subject to recognition conditions and specified exceptions, from temporary differences between the carrying

amounts of assets or liabilities in financial statements and their tax bases. For example, an asset may have different depreciation schedules for financial reporting and tax deduction; a timing difference is not automatically evidence of an error or an additional immediate tax cash payment. Permanent differences, such as a genuinely non-deductible expense, have a different conceptual consequence. Chapter 22 develops the financial-statement recognition architecture; the present chapter concentrates on the tax reconciliation, documentary basis, authorization of adjustments and tax-cash forecast (International Accounting Standards Board [IASB], n.d.-a).

A well-designed tax bridge should carry a stable transaction identifier, financial-accounting balance, adjustment reason, source of statutory authority, tax period, review sign-off and link to the final return. The liquidity schedule should separately show liabilities accrued, taxes already withheld or prepaid, projected payment dates, refund claims and contested exposures. It must also reconcile statutory liability to cash remitted, rather than assume that recognizing a tax expense discharges the debt. These distinctions are especially important for exporters or growing distributors whose sales and VAT reporting may precede customer collection.

26.3 TAX ADMINISTRATION AND COMPLIANCE

26.3.1 The tax lifecycle from registration to defensible closure

An auditable tax process begins before the first filing. Management identifies each legal person and establishment, locates taxable activity and appoints responsible officials; registers with the competent authority; maps tax types and reporting thresholds; configures invoicing and ledgers; preserves source documents; calculates liabilities; obtains independent review; files and pays through approved channels; matches acknowledgments and payments; and retains an accessible evidence trail. Amendments, refunds, assessments, objections and appeals require separate workflow states, because a filed return can still be inaccurate, disputed or unpaid.

A documented **tax obligation register** should capture the source law and version, taxpayer or branch, taxable event, responsible owner, evidence location, frequency, review date, approval right and escalation trigger. A calendar without controls is inadequate: tasks can be completed with the wrong tax type or incomplete data. Conversely, a robust ledger without a filing calendar exposes the enterprise to preventable penalties. Successful compliance requires both correct substantive positions and timely execution.

Practical implementation should follow a controlled sequence of legal assessment, transaction capture, return preparation, review, filing, settlement and post-filing surveillance. The first control gate records whether a tax account was correctly opened or whether exemption from registration is actually available; the second verifies that product, supplier, employee and payment master data are approved; the third reconciles the completeness of invoices and payroll; the fourth confirms the return against a tax-position memorandum; and the fifth agrees filed amounts to acknowledgement and remittance evidence. Returns should not be treated as closed merely because a portal displays a submission message. Follow-up responsibility must extend to rejected payments, unmatched offsets, tax authority correspondence and known corrections.

For a firm with several business lines, the obligation register should also identify the responsible legal entity and whether records are maintained in one ledger or multiple service platforms. A centralized accountant can compile returns, but that arrangement does not erase accountability in the sales and procurement functions that create the underlying evidence. The compliance lead needs the power to prevent a return from being filed where material unreconciled transactions remain, while management retains responsibility for timely reporting and responsible disclosure of unresolved uncertainties.

26.3.2 Data lineage, reconciliation and record retention

Three independent reconciliations are especially useful. **Sales-to-tax reconciliation** compares point-of-sale and electronic invoices with general-ledger revenue and VAT output, explaining credits, cancellations, timing and exempt or zero-rated classifications. **Purchases-to-input-tax reconciliation** checks eligibility, supplier identities, electronic invoices, authorization and credits claimed. **Payroll-to-remittance reconciliation** maps staff contracts and approved compensation to gross pay, taxable pay, withholding and payment receipts. A fourth cross-cutting reconciliation links bank and mobile-money movements to receivables, revenue and cash balances. Reconciliations require a sign-off and a record of unresolved exceptions; forcing every difference to zero by posting an unexplained journal is not a reliable control.

Rwanda's Law No. 020/2023 on tax procedures strengthened record-retention requirements; RRA's explanatory summary describes a ten-year period starting from 1 January following the relevant tax period, subject to the law's precise application (RRA, 2023; Republic of Rwanda, 2023b). Record custody should therefore cover legibility, retrievability, change history, secure backups and continuity when staff or technology providers change. A ten-year retention obligation does not justify indiscriminate retention of unrelated personal data. Lawful access, minimization, role restrictions and documented deletion rules remain necessary.

26.3.3 Assessments, taxpayer rights and the importance of procedural justice

Tax examinations seek to establish liabilities under statutory authority; they are not substitutes for management's own control system. An assessment may involve information requests, desk or comprehensive review, explanation of adjustments and statutory remedies. Effective managers maintain contemporaneous evidence rather than relying on retrospective narratives. They also verify the current notice period, permitted corrections, objection deadline and adjudicative route before acting. Because these rights depend on enacted legislation and case particulars, no generic deadline in this chapter should be treated as legal advice.

Tax enforcement has a distributive dimension. A multinational can mobilize specialist teams to contest complex assessments, while a microenterprise may incur substantial relative compliance costs. Clear guidance, proportionate records, access to advice and consistent administrative treatment support both legality and fair competition. This insight does not diminish the obligation to pay lawfully due taxes. It makes responsible administration a component of institutional trust, not a concession inconsistent with enforcement (Kirchler et al., 2008; Slemrod, 2019).

A disciplined response to a tax query should first authenticate the notice and its legal basis, identify the periods and taxes covered, preserve source records and establish the applicable timetable. The enterprise should then assemble an issue-by-issue response that separates accepted corrections from disputed factual findings, legal interpretation and administrative computation. Before lodging a challenge, management should verify whether any payment, guarantee or procedural requirement attaches to the relevant remedy under the law in force. Objection and appellate pathways provide a check on state power, but their effective accessibility depends on comprehensible communications, practicable evidence demands and affordable representation.

Procedural justice should not be confused with a taxpayer's entitlement to choose the outcome. The relevant norm is that the public authority gives lawful reasons, allows an appropriate opportunity to respond and applies comparable standards to comparable taxpayers. Conversely, a taxpayer should preserve genuine records, avoid obstructive document manipulation and correct admitted errors. An auditable dispute file is therefore organized around dated notices, identified facts, statutory provisions, expert advice if sought, correspondence, decisions and a final closure record. Its integrity matters even where the financial amount at stake is modest.

26.4 TAX PLANNING, AVOIDANCE, EVASION AND ETHICAL LIMITS

26.4.1 An analytically defensible continuum

Tax planning comprises arrangements lawfully selected in light of foreseeable fiscal effects, including use of explicitly authorized reliefs and defensible transaction structures. **Tax evasion** involves unlawful nonpayment or misrepresentation, such as intentional concealment of sales, fictitious expenses or false documentation. **Tax avoidance** is more contested: usage varies across legal systems and scholarship, ranging from legal reductions in liability to technically formal arrangements that frustrate a provision's purpose. **Aggressive tax planning** describes positions with unusually high reliance on artificial form, interpretive uncertainty or opacity, even where criminal wrongdoing has not been established. These labels should not be equated without identifying the applicable law and evidence of intention. Tax disputes may turn on substance-over-form, beneficial ownership, anti-avoidance provisions and transfer-pricing requirements, none of which can be resolved through ethical intuition alone.

The legal categories are not a moral ladder that can be judged independently of jurisdiction. The same arrangement may be expressly incentivized in one tax system and vulnerable to general anti-avoidance provisions in another. A genuine investment with a clear business purpose may qualify for an incentive even when the resulting tax saving is substantial; conversely, an artificial chain of payments may deserve scrutiny despite formal completeness of invoices. The analytical task is to reconstruct the transaction's actual functions, assets, risks, beneficial ownership, contractual rights and economic consequences, then determine whether the legal treatment follows those facts.

A responsible review therefore asks whether the arrangement would retain a credible commercial rationale without its tax advantage, whether the claimed results depend on contradictory characterizations in different jurisdictions, and whether management has documented adverse authority and the probability of successful challenge. These are diagnostic questions, not substitutes for the applicable statutory test. The moral inquiry is likewise distinct: even a legally sustainable arrangement may impose distributional costs worthy of explicit board consideration, but such criticism does not by itself establish evasion or misconduct.

26.4.2 Planning as governance rather than a race to the lowest number

A defensible position passes several tests: the enterprise can explain the transaction's commercial substance; contemporaneous records support the characterization; relevant statutes and authoritative interpretations have been checked; alternatives and uncertainty are documented; responsible professionals can defend the position; and those charged with governance understand the possible reassessment, penalty, cash-flow and reputation consequences. Where law is unsettled, probability-weighted financial exposure can aid budgeting but does not convert an unlawful filing into an acceptable risk-management choice.

The International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants (IESBA, 2025) incorporated tax-planning provisions effective for services and activities beginning after 30 June 2025, reflecting concern that practitioners evaluate more than mechanically achievable tax savings. Its 2026 handbook, released before this chapter's cut-off, contains further revisions with varying effective dates (IESBA, 2026). For enterprises, this creates a practical ethical distinction between advising on a legal uncertainty, independently explaining a statutory concession and engineering a transaction whose only credible purpose is to conceal the economic event. Professionally ethical planning requires competence, transparency, attention to affected parties and refusal to participate in deceptive reporting.

26.4.3 Tax governance and cross-border business

Related-party pricing, intra-group loans, intellectual-property arrangements, digital services and permanent-establishment questions can create legitimate double-taxation concerns alongside opportunities for base erosion. Their treatment depends on domestic law, treaties and applicable administrative arrangements. Enterprises should not import a foreign tax structure into Rwanda on the assumption that the same reliefs, thresholds or nexus rules apply. For a growing African business, the first useful step is often not sophisticated tax engineering but an inventory of entity jurisdictions, contractual cash flows, invoice provenance, tax-residence evidence and cross-border reporting obligations. The sustainable tax decision is one that remains defensible under transparent external review, not merely attractive in a spreadsheet.

Cross-border compliance is particularly exposed to mismatches among legal identity, contractual invoicing and the actual conduct of business. An enterprise may issue invoices from one jurisdiction while employees negotiate sales, maintain inventory or provide services in another; the relevant concept of a permanent establishment or taxable nexus is a matter of the applicable statute and treaty rather than corporate letterhead. Similarly, related-party transactions require an intelligible account of functions performed, assets used and risks assumed before their pricing can be evaluated. For digital services, platform intermediation and bundled contracts, indirect-tax and income-tax analyses may follow different rules.

The OECD's international tax initiatives provide useful comparative concepts, but guidance, model conventions and multilateral policy projects are not automatically domestic law in Rwanda. The control question for a growing enterprise is consequently temporal and jurisdictional: which enactment, treaty or valid administrative instrument governs this particular entity's income, import, service or remittance on the date it arises? Effective cross-border tax governance requires finance, legal, sales and procurement to agree on transaction documentation before entering contracts, rather than seek retrospective characterizations when a return is due.

26.5 PURPOSE AND FORMS OF AUDITING

26.5.1 Assurance, accountability and the credibility of reported claims

Auditing arose partly because owners, lenders and wider stakeholders cannot inspect every transaction or directly observe managerial decisions. Agency theory clarifies the resulting conflict: a principal delegates decisions to agents whose interests, information and opportunities may differ (Jensen & Meckling, 1976). Independent assurance can reduce information asymmetry by testing representations against criteria. Yet audit has costs, imperfect technology and its own incentive problems. The auditor is also an economic actor; remuneration by the client, repeated engagements, personnel pressures and reputational exposure can affect independence. DeAngelo (1981) theorized audit quality in terms of the joint probability that an auditor discovers and reports a breach, emphasizing both technical competence and the incentives to report. Francis (2004) finds audit quality a multilayered construct affected by auditor, engagement, firm and institutional contexts, cautioning against measuring quality by a single observable proxy.

An audit opinion expresses a specified conclusion on a specified subject matter under a defined reporting framework, not an endorsement of every business decision or a general certification of fraudlessness. Financial-statement auditors ordinarily seek reasonable assurance that statements taken as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Reasonable assurance is high but not absolute. Differences between **audit**, **review**, **agreed-upon procedures**, **compilation** and **consulting** must be made explicit because their assurance levels and practitioner responsibilities differ (IAASB, 2026).

A fundamental tension in modern assurance is that its social value is generated by skepticism toward management's representations, while its engagement economics may depend on management cooperation and recurring fees. Independence rules address some conflicts, but do not remove the need for professional judgment, quality-management arrangements and transparent communication with those charged with

governance. Power's (1999) critique of the expanding audit society is instructive: the spread of formal verification can foster confidence in what is easily documented while diverting attention from difficult questions of substantive performance. That critique should not be mistaken for a rejection of auditing. It clarifies the condition under which assurance adds value: the subject matter, criteria, evidentiary limits and authorized users must be specified, and the process must remain capable of reporting unwelcome findings.

Assurance quality also depends on whether an engagement tests the right assertions. A technically accurate confirmation that invoices exist says little about unbilled cash sales; conversely, selecting a full population of invoiced transactions does not establish that the population includes all economic events. Audit planning must move from the intended conclusion backward to material risks and evidence sources rather than forward from whatever records are easiest to retrieve. This distinction connects assurance economics to the information systems of Chapter 28 without transferring audit responsibility to software vendors.

26.5.2 Internal, external, tax, compliance and performance audit

External financial audit is an independent assurance engagement directed toward financial statements and their applicable criteria. The auditor is not part of management and ordinarily reports to designated users; statutory eligibility and independence requirements govern the appointment. **Internal audit** is an independent and objective organizational function that evaluates governance, risk management and controls to strengthen organizational decision-making. Its independence is organizational and functional, not identical to that of an external public auditor. The IIA's Global Internal Audit Standards, issued in 2024 and effective from 9 January 2025, emphasize purpose, ethics, governance, management of the function and performance of services (IIA, 2024).

Tax audit is a tax authority's exercise of legally authorized examination and assessment powers. **Compliance audit** evaluates conformity with a law, contract, grant restriction, policy or other identified authority. **Performance audit** evaluates economy, efficiency and effectiveness against suitable criteria; in public-sector audit it is distinct from financial and compliance audit (INTOSAI, 2019). **Forensic investigation** addresses specific allegations, evidence preservation and, where relevant, litigation support; its objectives and methods should not be assumed to be equivalent to a statutory financial audit. An organization may need several of these services, but assigning all of them to one individual creates conflicts and role confusion.

Table 26.2. Audit and assurance engagements: questions, authority and limits

Engagement	Primary question	Typical evidence and conclusion	Important limitation
Independent financial audit	Do statements comply materially with the reporting framework?	Risk-based audit evidence; written opinion	Does not guarantee prevention or detection of every fraud
Internal audit	Are controls, risks and governance managed appropriately?	Charter-led engagements; findings; recommendations	Does not own or operate the controls it independently evaluates
Tax examination	Was a specified tax obligation correctly discharged?	Statutory records, returns and transaction testing	Legal powers and remedies vary by jurisdiction
Compliance audit	Was a specified legal, grant or contractual criterion met?	Criterion-specific testing; findings	Conclusion is limited to selected requirements and period
Performance audit	Were resources used economically, efficiently and effectively?	Criteria, outcomes and process evidence	Outcome attribution often remains uncertain
Forensic investigation	What evidence supports or refutes a particular allegation?	Preserved records, interviews where authorized, transaction tracing	Not equivalent to a general financial-statement opinion

Note. Organizational categories draw on IAASB (2026), IIA (2024) and INTOSAI (2019). Exact legal mandates are jurisdiction-specific.

Proportionality in smaller-entity auditing has become a distinct standards question. The IAASB's *International Standard on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities* (ISA for LCE) was issued in 2023 and is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after 15 December 2025 in jurisdictions that adopt or permit its use. It is a standalone reasonable-assurance standard, not a lower-assurance review and not an unconditional exemption from robust evidence. Eligibility and local authorization must be verified; neither a low turnover nor a small workforce establishes its permitted use without considering complexity and jurisdictional adoption (IAASB, 2023, 2026). A revision exposure draft was issued for consultation in July 2026, but its proposals should not be represented as effective requirements (IAASB, 2026).

The IIA's 2024 Global Internal Audit Standards are organized into five domains and fifteen guiding principles, governing the purpose, ethics, institutional position, management and performance of internal auditing (IIA, 2024). That architecture is relevant even when a small enterprise commissions an external provider to conduct internal audits: the provider's competence and objective reporting must be distinguished from management's responsibility for control ownership. Public-sector performance audits use separate economy, efficiency and effectiveness criteria, but the legitimacy of their findings still depends on appropriate evidence and clearly defined objectives. Engagement names must not be used as if they carried equal authority, assurance levels or legal effects.

26.5.3 Independence, safeguards and the expectations gap

Independence entails both freedom from compromising relationships and an appearance of objectivity sufficient to sustain public confidence. Familiarity, self-review, advocacy, financial interest and intimidation can compromise judgment. An internal audit leader who reports findings to the manager whose work is being reviewed is especially exposed unless the audit committee or governing body protects the function's authority, resources and unrestricted access. Similarly, external practitioners should not design, operate and then uncritically attest to the same client's material controls where applicable independence requirements prohibit the arrangement (IESBA, 2026; IIA, 2024).

The *audit expectations gap* arises when users expect detection of all fraud, validation of future profitability, or confirmation that every control operates at all times. Dismissing these expectations as public misunderstanding would be inadequate: failures may also arise from poor audit practice, opaque reporting and weak governance. In response to these concerns, the IAASB issued ISA 240 (Revised) in July 2025 and ISA 570 (Revised 2024) in April 2025, both effective for periods beginning on or after **15 December 2026**. At this chapter's cut-off, those future-effective provisions should not be described as already operative for all audits (IAASB, 2025a, 2025c).

A further source of weakness is quality control within the audit provider itself. International Standard on Quality Management 1 (ISQM 1), included in the IAASB's current compendium, directs firms toward a proactive, risk-responsive system of quality management rather than an inspection checklist alone. Engagement acceptance, ethical requirements, personnel capability, resources, information, monitoring and remediation must be considered together. Independent reviewers and firm-level systems cannot substitute for the engagement partner's responsibility, but they create structures that can challenge undue commercial pressure and recurring errors (IAASB, 2026).

The expectations gap contains three conceptually different disagreements: unreasonable expectations that an audit guarantees outcomes; failures by practitioners to perform according to applicable requirements; and disagreement about whether society should demand broader assurance than existing engagements provide. Conflating these disputes places the burden entirely on users and ignores the legitimate public-interest debate about audit scope. The proper response is to identify the assurance actually obtained, the qualifications and key uncertainties communicated, and the governance actions that remain the responsibility of the enterprise.

26.6 AUDIT EVIDENCE, MATERIALITY AND AUDIT RISK

26.6.1 Assertions, evidence relevance and sufficiency

Audit evidence is not merely a pile of documents. It is information relevant to propositions about reported facts, processes or conformity with criteria. Typical financial reporting assertions concern existence, completeness, accuracy, valuation, cutoff, rights and obligations, classification and presentation. They demand different tests. A bank statement may support existence of a balance but cannot by itself establish completeness of all accounts. An authorized purchase order shows intention to buy, not proof of receipt. A signed delivery note supports dispatch but not necessarily recognition of revenue under a specific contract.

Sufficiency relates to quantity of evidence; **appropriateness** to relevance and reliability. Independent external confirmations may be persuasive for particular assertions, but reliability depends on how requests are controlled, who responds, whether records are authentic and what exactly the response confirms. Internally generated system logs may be useful if access and change controls have been tested. Professional skepticism requires investigating contradictions rather than selecting only records that support a desired conclusion (IAASB, 2026).

Table 26.3. Assertion-to-procedure design for a trading enterprise

Assertion and risk	Potential procedure	Source and evaluation question
Sales completeness; unrecorded electronic invoices	Reconcile consecutive EIS invoice IDs to sales ledger and tax return	Is the population complete across branches, voids and interface failures?
Sales occurrence; fictitious or duplicated revenue	Match sampled invoices to orders, delivery and independent settlement	Do goods/services and customer obligations support recognition?
Cutoff; accelerated sales or purchases	Inspect transactions around period end and subsequent reversals	Was the taxable/accounting event recorded in the correct period?
Cash existence and completeness	Reperform cash count and reconcile bank/mobile-money settlements	Are unsettled amounts, transfers and fees correctly classified?
Payroll accuracy and authorization	Recalculate selected payslips and agree staff master to approved contracts	Are changes and nonstandard benefits independently authorized?
VAT input eligibility	Trace deductions to valid supplier documentation and statutory tax treatment	Is a claim supported by the period, tax status and eligible use?

Note. Original teaching instrument based on risk-and-assertion reasoning in IAASB (2026); no procedure by itself establishes all assertions.

Evidence must also be evaluated for *provenance*. A spreadsheet exported from a secure system can contain accurate rows yet omit one branch, a class of canceled invoices or an entire period; the apparent precision of each row cannot remedy an incomplete population. When auditors rely on service-organization reports, automated controls or management-produced information, they must establish the relevance of the controls and the reliability of the information's extraction and transformation. External evidence is not infallible: collusive confirmations, fabricated websites and compromised credentials can make apparently independent documents deceptive.

Nelson's (2009) synthesis of professional skepticism highlights the role of knowledge, incentives, traits and contextual pressures in auditors' judgments. In practice, skeptical inquiry requires the practitioner to pursue contradictory explanations, test management's responses and preserve the rationale for accepting or rejecting evidence. It does not require a presumption of dishonesty. The distinction is ethically important because accounting records and suspected anomalies often implicate employees and suppliers whose reputations and procedural rights may be harmed by a premature inference of fraud.

26.6.2 The audit-risk model and its limited interpretation

The classical conceptual model is **AR = RMM × DR**, where *AR* is audit risk, *RMM* is the risk of material misstatement and *DR* is detection risk. RMM can be decomposed for pedagogical purposes into inherent risk and control risk, producing **AR = IR × CR × DR**. These terms describe the relationship between assessed susceptibility, control limitations and audit procedures. They are not universal observable probabilities that a practitioner should multiply as if independently measured. Inherent and control risks interact, assessments are qualitative as well as quantitative, and auditors respond to the assessed risks by changing the nature, timing and extent of procedures.

For illustration only, suppose a teaching model assigns inherent risk 0.60, control risk 0.50 and detection risk 0.10, yielding an indicative audit risk of **0.60 × 0.50 × 0.10 = 0.03**, or 3%. This is an illustrative arithmetic representation, not a professionally calibrated assurance percentage. A change to a modelled detection risk of 0.05 halves the product to 1.5% only under the simplifying multiplicative assumptions. The managerial lesson is that weak controls raise the need for independent substantive testing, not that a numerical formula replaces engagement judgment (IAASB, 2026).

26.6.3 Materiality, sampling, fraud and uncertainty

Materiality addresses whether an omission or misstatement could reasonably influence decisions of intended users, taking account of magnitude and nature. A quantitatively small payment to a prohibited beneficiary or a falsified management certification may be qualitatively important. No single percentage of turnover is appropriate for every enterprise or engagement. Performance materiality is not a permission to make multiple small errors; accumulation can render individually minor misstatements material. Statistical sampling can estimate sampling uncertainty under a defined selection scheme, while nonstatistical sampling also requires rigorous rationale, population completeness and documentation. Both face **nonsampling risk**, including choosing irrelevant procedures, misinterpreting evidence or relying on manipulated records.

Anomalies warrant investigation but are not equivalent to fraud findings. Duplicate supplier bank accounts, post-close journal entries, cash shortages, unusually round amounts, weekend payments and repeated invoice voids can be explained by legitimate process conditions. Conversely, sophisticated schemes may produce no conspicuous anomaly. Professional duties include maintaining skepticism, documenting contradictory evidence and escalating suspected misconduct without prejudging individuals. The investigative threshold, reporting requirement and legal protections must be distinguished from an audit's general risk response.

Sampling choices must be linked to the specified audit objective. Attribute sampling may be suitable when estimating how frequently a control deviated from a requirement; monetary-unit or variables sampling may be appropriate for selected measurement questions. No sample can support a claim about an unexamined population without a justified sampling frame. In particular, sampling only invoices present in the tax ledger cannot estimate the prevalence of sales never invoiced. Tests for completeness must begin from independently plausible source populations, such as deliveries, receipts, machine logs or third-party records, and evaluate differences between them.

Materiality must also be distinguished from tolerable misstatement, clearly trivial thresholds and the severity of control deficiencies. Those concepts guide different judgments and do not license intentional inaccuracies. For instance, a small unauthorized payment may be immaterial to the financial statements as a whole yet demonstrate serious ethical failure or illegal conduct. Conversely, a large provisional estimate may be financially material despite being prepared in good faith. An appropriate audit conclusion explains the basis of the judgment and discloses necessary qualifications rather than presenting a universal mathematical cutoff.

26.7 INTERNAL CONTROL DESIGN

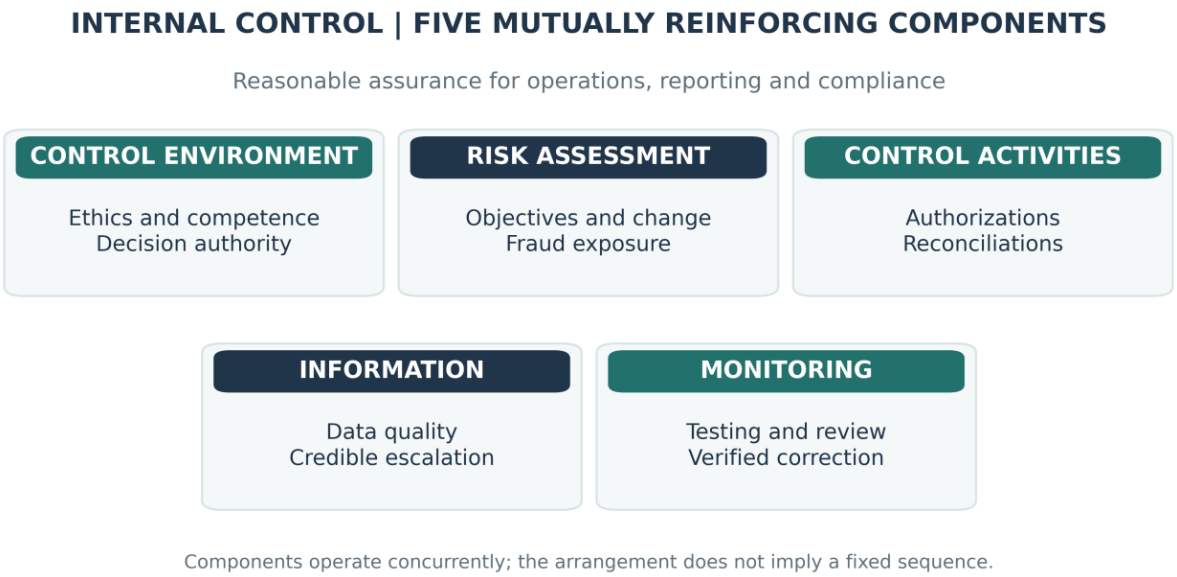
26.7.1 Internal control as a system of constrained assurance

The COSO *Internal Control—Integrated Framework* (2013) specifies five mutually supporting components and seventeen principles: control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring. Its scope encompasses operations, reporting and compliance objectives and recognizes that reasonable assurance remains constrained by human error, collusion, management override and resource limitations. The model has substantial practical utility because it asks why the organization's authorizations, information and corrective actions should be expected to work. Its familiar component diagram should not be mistaken for proof that the prescribed controls are operating effectively (COSO, 2013b).

The **control environment** is expressed through ethical example, competence, authority, accountability and board challenge, not merely a signed policy. **Risk assessment** begins with specific objectives and identifies credible events that could prevent their achievement. **Control activities** include preventive, detective and corrective mechanisms designed against these risks. **Information and communication** concern accuracy, availability and reporting of relevant data within and outside the organization. **Monitoring** includes continuous supervision and separate evaluations with prompt communication and remediation of deficiencies. Control

failures may originate in any component: a beautifully designed reconciliation is ineffective if exceptions are suppressed by an intimidating supervisor.

Figure 26.1. Five-component internal-control architecture and linked operating responsibilities



Source: Author, interpreted from COSO (2013b); components are not a sequential compliance checklist.

COSO's seventeen principles make the familiar five-component diagram analytically more demanding. The control environment addresses integrity, oversight independence, appropriate structures, commitment to competence and accountability. Risk assessment requires relevant objectives, comprehensive identification and analysis of risks, explicit fraud consideration and recognition of significant change. Control activities require risk-responsive procedures, technology controls and implementation through policies. Information and communication encompass relevant information and internal and external communication; monitoring requires ongoing or separate evaluations and timely communication of deficiencies. The principles provide questions for assessing design and operation, not a claim that all organizations need identical forms or documents (COSO, 2013b).

The framework must also be interpreted against its philosophical limitations. A control can be perfectly documented but substantively misaligned with the underlying objective, as when employees are penalized for reporting exceptions or when supplier screening excludes legitimate small businesses because of unnecessary documentary burdens. Control efficiency therefore involves the probability and severity of harm avoided, operating costs, effects on service delivery and the legitimacy of how evidence is collected. The strongest process is not necessarily the one with the most approvals; it is the one whose responsibilities and information pathways make consequential error both less likely and more discoverable.

26.7.2 From the risk register to a control matrix

A control should have a defined **risk**, **objective**, **owner**, **trigger**, **procedure**, **frequency**, **evidence**, **independent reviewer**, **exception rule** and **residual risk**. Ambiguous controls such as “management monitors sales regularly” cannot be tested. By contrast, “the finance officer reconciles daily electronic invoice totals to the sales ledger and bank/mobile-money settlements by the next business day; differences above a documented tolerance are escalated to the owner and closed with linked evidence within five working days” specifies a testable process. The tolerance, review period and escalation are illustrative management choices, not statutory standards.

Table 26.4. Core control matrix for a cash-intensive Rwandan SME

Risk/event	Preventive control and owner	Detective evidence and independent review	Response to exception
Unrecorded or voided sales	Restricted EIS credentials; cashier issues every valid invoice	Daily EIS-to-ledger sequence review by bookkeeper; owner checks void register	Preserve source IDs, correct return where required, investigate recurrent gaps
Cash diversion	Separate custody from posting; daily numbered till close	Surprise count and bank/mobile-money reconciliation by noncustodian	Secure evidence, protect due process, investigate and remedy
Fictitious suppliers	Independent vendor onboarding and bank-account verification	Monthly duplicate vendor/payment report reviewed by owner	Freeze unverified disbursement; confirm counterparty
Unauthorized payroll	HR-controlled employee master; approved change form	Accountant rechecks payroll to contracts; owner reviews exceptions	Correct payroll and tax records; restrict change permissions
Incorrect tax classification	Maintained tax-code catalogue approved by competent reviewer	Monthly/quarterly tax reconciliation with source law reference	Document adjustment, reassess prior periods as necessary
Manipulated spreadsheets	Controlled repository; versions and protected formula cells	Cross-foot and change-log review by independent accountant	Restore trusted version and trace affected returns
Cyber compromise	Multi-factor authentication, least privilege, backups	Access-log alerts and tested restore evidence	Contain, assess breach and statutory notifications, revalidate data

Note. Author's application of COSO (2013b) and IIA (2024). Enterprise roles may be combined in a small firm only with documented compensating review.

26.7.3 Design effectiveness, operation and the small-enterprise problem

Design effectiveness asks whether a control, if performed as specified, could address the defined risk. **Operating effectiveness** asks whether it was actually performed by an appropriately competent and authorized person, consistently across the period and on the intended population. The difference matters: a signed policy, an installed application or a nominal second approver is not evidence of operating performance. Effective control testing inspects execution dates, inputs, reviewer challenge, issue resolution and evidence retention.

Smaller enterprises typically face concentrated authority, limited staff, manual records and owner-manager influence. These conditions can raise fraud exposure, but the solution is not to impose large-company administrative structures indiscriminately. Compensating controls may include owner review of bank statements independently downloaded from the bank, external periodic reconciliations, dual authorization for unusual payments, controlled vendor lists and surprise physical counts. Such arrangements are weaker if the owner is the person capable of override. Doyle et al. (2007) found associations between reported internal-control weaknesses and firm characteristics such as small size, complexity and financial condition in a U.S. reporting sample. This evidence is informative about risk configurations, not a universal estimate of control failure in Rwandan SMEs.

26.8 SEGREGATION OF DUTIES AND ANTI-FRAUD CONTROLS

26.8.1 Separating custody, authorization, recording and reconciliation

Segregation of duties reduces opportunities for a single person to initiate, conceal and benefit from a transaction. The key incompatible activities are **authorization**, **custody**, **recording**, **system administration** and **independent review**. Separation can be organizational or technological, but a software permission structure that allows the same user to alter vendor bank details, approve payment and delete logs does not create meaningful segregation. Similarly, delegating approvals to two employees who always share passwords does not mitigate collusion.

For a typical purchase, the requesting department confirms need, procurement verifies supplier and terms, warehouse confirms receipt, accounts payable matches approved order, receipt and invoice, and a delegated payment approver authorizes disbursement. For payroll, HR approves staff-master changes, line management verifies attendance or performance-related inputs, payroll computes amounts, finance checks statutory deductions and an independent signatory releases funds. In a five-person enterprise, perfect separation may be impossible; compensating controls should target the most damaging incompatible functions and ensure no employee controls both the asset and the only record of its existence.

26.8.2 Fraud mechanisms, reporting and the limits of profiling

Fraud risk arises from opportunity, incentives and rationalization, but the popular fraud triangle is a heuristic rather than a validated individual diagnostic or a basis for accusing employees. External pressure, fear of dismissal, managerial targets and weak controls can contribute to opportunity structures, yet most employees under pressure do not commit fraud. Corporate wrongdoing may also involve deliberate collusion by senior officers who can override normal approvals. Risk assessment should focus on observable control vulnerabilities and transaction anomalies, not stereotyped characteristics of individuals.

Whistleblowing arrangements require confidential intake, nonretaliation, case triage, independent handling, evidence preservation, proportionate investigation and access to remedies. An anonymous reporting channel without protection or an impartial investigator may merely transfer risk to the person reporting. Similarly, aggressive automated fraud scores can generate false positives and unequal scrutiny; employers should be able to explain what a flag means, who reviews it and how an affected person may correct factual error. A documented response is especially important when a senior manager is implicated and ordinary reporting lines are compromised.

Fraud prevention and fraud investigation should be institutionally distinct enough to protect both evidence and fairness. Prevention focuses on incentives, access permissions, transaction authorization and visible management example. Investigation begins after a sufficiently grounded concern, with defined authority, preservation of originals, chain-of-custody records, limited access to potentially sensitive allegations and transparent decision criteria. Internal audit may evaluate an anti-fraud programme, but should not automatically assume management's disciplinary role or become the sole investigator of allegations concerning its own leadership.

A further ethical danger is using model outputs as person-level accusations. An algorithm trained on a historical list of investigations may reproduce past selective enforcement; its positive predictive value can be low when the prevalence of actual fraud is low even if the model appears accurate. Responsible deployment requires independent validation, documented false-positive and false-negative costs, review of differential effects, appeal or correction channels and secure limitation of access to sensitive data. A missing invoice may justify scrutiny of a process, not an inference about someone's character.

26.8.3 Fraud-risk economics and proportionality

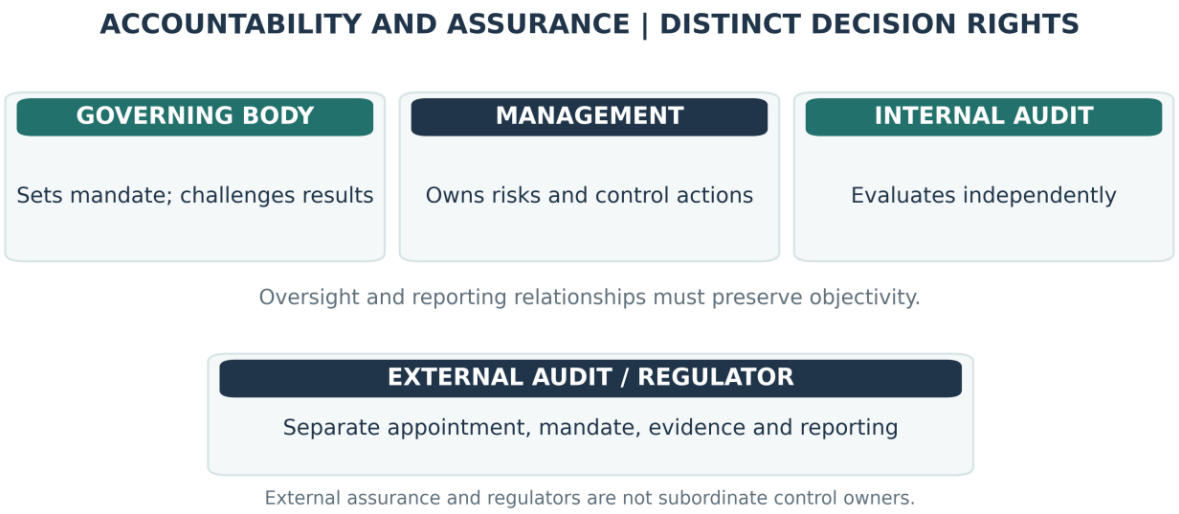
A simple expected-loss model can inform decisions: **expected avoidable loss = exposure probability × loss severity × control effectiveness**, where effectiveness is the assumed fraction of loss avoided under the relevant scenario. If the estimated annual probability of a cash-control failure is 0.20, the conditional loss is FRW 5,000,000 and a proposed independent reconciliation is expected to prevent 60% of that exposure, its illustrative annual benefit is **0.20 × 5,000,000 × 0.60 = FRW 600,000**. If annual operating cost is FRW 400,000, net expected benefit is FRW 200,000 before considering deterrence, reputational consequences and estimation uncertainty. These numbers are hypothetical; they do not establish causal effectiveness or a reliable probability for any actual enterprise. When loss has severe legal or human consequences, a control may be justified even when monetized expected savings are uncertain.

26.9 FINANCIAL COMPLIANCE AND GOVERNANCE

26.9.1 Allocating decision rights across the assurance system

Financial compliance is not one department's job. The governing body establishes risk appetite and receives credible reporting; senior management owns compliance and controls; specialist finance, HR, operations and legal officers administer their respective obligations; compliance personnel provide advice and challenge; internal audit independently evaluates processes; and external auditors provide a separately mandated assurance service. The IIA's **Three Lines Model** is useful when interpreted as differentiated responsibilities rather than three mandatory layers of staff or an excuse to shift responsibility to auditors (IIA, 2020, 2024). Independence requires genuine escalation access, and accountability requires named owners for actual controls.

Figure 26.2. Governance, operational ownership and differentiated assurance



Source: Author, drawing on the IIA Three Lines Model (IIA, 2020, 2024); external mandates remain distinct.

In practice, the separation between the first and second lines need not involve separate departments. A finance manager may operate controls while an external accountant advises on compliance; the governance problem is whether any reviewer possesses sufficient authority, objectivity, competence and access to question the initial transaction. The audit committee or equivalent governing body should approve the internal audit mandate, receive reports without management filtering and challenge overdue corrective actions. In owner-managed firms without a formal board committee, documented periodic independent review may supply some challenge, although it cannot eliminate the owner's own ability to override arrangements.

Decision rights should be explicit at the interfaces with procurement, human resources, information systems and operations. A department creating a purchase must not define tax deductibility unilaterally; finance should not retroactively change operational evidence to satisfy a return; and the technology provider should not control both audit logs and their only backups. These conflicts are not solved by calling each participant accountable. They require separated permissions, available records, protected escalation and demonstrable consequences when the evidence does not reconcile.

26.9.2 Oversight, issue remediation and evidence trails

A board or audit committee should receive a risk-focused report showing major unresolved compliance exposures, aged deficiencies, management responses, independent assurance coverage and recurrence. The committee's value is not the number of agenda pages but its capacity to challenge incomplete explanations and secure remedial action. A defensible **issue register** records the finding, criterion, financial or legal exposure, root-cause hypothesis, agreed action, accountable executive, due date, evidence required, validation result and closure authorization. Closing an issue when an action plan is drafted rather than when effectiveness has been verified produces an illusion of remediation.

Financial covenants, anti-money-laundering responsibilities where applicable, company filings, employment remittances, data security, procurement obligations and tax registrations may interact. Controls should assign each relevant regulation to an owner without indiscriminately asserting that every statute applies to every firm. The legal compliance register links to Chapter 3's broader institutional architecture, Chapter 8's accountability decisions, Chapters 22–24's accounting and financial numbers and Chapter 25's payment and banking exposures. Integration prevents a finance committee from overlooking a significant obligation simply because its operational origin lies in payroll, customer data or procurement.

26.9.3 Performance indicators that resist cosmetic compliance

Useful indicators include **on-time filing rate** (verified returns submitted by legal due date divided by returns due), **on-time payment rate** (liabilities paid by date divided by liabilities due), **reconciliation completion rate** (scheduled reconciliations signed with evidence divided by those due), **unresolved high-risk exceptions**, **average remediation age**, **percentage of sampled controls operating as designed**, **return corrections by root cause** and **tax exposure relative to an identified and appropriately qualified base**. Report counts alongside severity, coverage and denominators. A 100% filing rate can coexist with materially inaccurate returns; a lower reported exception rate can reflect suppressed incident reporting rather than improvement. Indicators are decision aids, not substitutes for independent testing.

Evaluation should distinguish *activity*, *quality*, *outcome* and *remedy*. Filing timeliness measures activity. Independently re-performed source-to-return reconciliation addresses quality. Verified financial misstatements, sustained tax arrears and substantiated fraud losses address outcomes. Closure of root causes, time to verified correction and recurrence after remediation address remedy. An organization reporting no incidents may be genuinely well controlled, or it may have eliminated opportunities to report problems. Triangulation across internal indicators, third-party records, independent testing and employee feedback is therefore preferable to a single composite score.

Controls also create costs and possible harms. An audit programme could lower recorded cash exceptions while imposing excessive surveillance, delaying supplier payments and undermining employee trust. Measurement must capture those externalities as well as control effectiveness. Before interpreting improvement, analysts should examine denominator changes, shifts in reporting rules, business volume and the possibility that problems have merely moved to another channel. A mature compliance dashboard displays uncertainty and open issues; it is not a league table that rewards the concealment of defects.

26.10 DIGITAL TAX AND AUDIT SYSTEMS

26.10.1 Electronic invoicing as an information architecture

Electronic invoicing can connect taxable sales, vendor identities, transaction timestamps, inventory releases and tax returns. Its governance value lies not in the electronic format itself but in a **complete, verifiable link** from the commercial event through authorized invoice generation, ledger recognition, settlement and reporting. Under Rwanda's VAT administration, registered taxpayers are directed to use electronic invoicing, commonly described through the Electronic Billing Machine (EBM) or Electronic Invoicing System (EIS), and to reconcile the corresponding information to declarations (RRA, n.d.-g, n.d.-h). Electronic documents do not automatically capture unbilled sales, forged supplier arrangements, misclassified exemptions or unrecorded cash. A digitally precise partial population remains incomplete.

A sound implementation uses unique document IDs; validation of taxpayer identity; controlled product tax codes; documented cancellation and credit-note procedures; interface controls between invoicing, inventory and general ledger; exception reports for missing sequence numbers; controlled retention; and reliable data export. The tax manager should understand both the statutory invoice rules and the technical limits of vendor software. When an external system is unavailable, the enterprise needs an authorized business-continuity procedure rather than an improvised record that cannot be traced back to the final return.

26.10.2 Continuous auditing, analytics and algorithmic risk

Data analytics can identify duplicated invoice numbers, inconsistent VAT rates, anomalous supplier bank-account changes, transactions posted outside business hours and differences between tax and financial ledgers. Rule-based testing is transparent but can generate frequent false positives; machine-learning systems may identify complex patterns but increase model risk, opacity and vulnerability to distribution shifts. Audit analytics should therefore begin with a complete population definition, traceable transformation logic, tested data quality, appropriate access permissions and an accountable human reviewer. Results must distinguish **a flag**, **a verified exception**, **a misstatement** and **proven misconduct**.

A useful continuous-monitoring architecture has six stages: collect source data; validate completeness and integrity; apply documented risk tests; triage exceptions by severity; verify the underlying transaction; and record remediation and model changes. When the algorithm's model weights or transaction coverage change, historical comparisons may no longer be directly meaningful. An enterprise should preserve rule versions, thresholds, exception outcomes, false-positive rates and approval records so that regulators and auditors can reconstruct what the system did at a given date.

Table 26.5. Digital assurance tests and limitations

Automated check	Detectable exception	Necessary human corroboration
EIS ID sequencing	Missing, repeated or reversed invoice ID	Verify legitimate cancellation, connectivity and branch partitioning
Tax-code consistency	Same product coded at incompatible rates	Inspect law, product nature, date and authorized tax-code change
Purchase–payment linkage	Bank payment lacking valid supplier record	Confirm goods/service, supplier, documentation and transaction purpose
User-access review	Same account changes supplier bank details and approves payment	Inspect delegated authority, service accounts and actual role assignments
Payroll exception analytics	Repeated account, unusual allowance or unexplained inactive employee	Validate HR records, lawful payment arrangements and employee privacy
Audit-log integrity	Altered or missing event history	Check privileged accounts, log retention, system upgrade and backup evidence

Note. Author's diagnostic design. A test's technical detection rate is not a fraud-detection rate without independently verified outcome labels.

26.10.3 Cybersecurity, privacy, third-party dependence and AI governance

An outsourced billing platform can create concentration risk when data are unavailable during tax filing, when the supplier controls encryption keys or when migration exports omit fields needed for audit. Contractual due diligence should address business continuity, access logs, backup testing, independent assurance reports where relevant, incident notification, data ownership, deletion and exit arrangements. Financial and tax records frequently contain personal information; access should therefore be role-based, proportionate and limited to legitimate purposes. Cross-border storage and transfers require jurisdiction-specific assessment rather than an assumption that cloud hosting automatically satisfies privacy obligations.

The Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) *Tax Administration 2025* reports widespread adoption of electronic return filing among surveyed administrations, including reported 2023 rates of 96% for corporate income tax and 99% for VAT in the participating dataset. It also notes that average on-time filing rates did not improve correspondingly. That contrast is analytically important: an efficient submission channel can reduce transactions costs without ensuring taxpayers understand obligations, possess good records or file on time (OECD, 2025b). Digital tax policy should be evaluated against verified error rates, access and affordability for small enterprises, administrative appeal outcomes, cyber resilience and correction mechanisms rather than technology adoption counts alone.

An auditable technology control must be recoverable after a systems failure. Management should document secure backups, the schedule of restoration tests, alternate reporting arrangements, the person permitted to initiate recovery and the process for reconciling transactions processed during the outage. Data migration deserves independent validation of opening balances, identifier mapping, completeness of historical invoices, preservation of credit-note linkages and consistent treatment of historical tax rates. A signed software acceptance form does not substitute for a sample-to-source test.

AI-assisted coding and anomaly detection add another layer of model governance. Training data may not reflect new tax amendments; a vendor may change model behaviour without making its revision intelligible; or a generative system may present fictitious statutory provisions with confident wording. Such tools should therefore support triage or drafting rather than serve as autonomous legal authority. For a high-consequence tax position, reviewers must retain the legal source, the human decision, model or rule version, identified

uncertainty and the record of independent checking. Responsible automation is a traceability arrangement, not a transfer of professional accountability to the algorithm.

26.11 RWANDA-SPECIFIC LEGAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE APPLICATION

26.11.1 Hierarchy of authority, amendments and scope

Rwandan tax calculations must begin with the law and effective amendments applicable to a particular period, not a rate remembered from a previous financial year. The income-tax framework includes Law No. 027/2022 of 20 October 2022, amended by Law No. 051/2023 and Law No. 014/2025. VAT is governed by Law No. 049/2023 of 5 September 2023, amended by Law No. 009/2025 of 27 May 2025. Law No. 020/2023 governs tax procedures. Law No. 011/2025 established excise duty, with other 2025 enactments affecting environmental, tourism and transport-related levies for specified transactions (Republic of Rwanda, 2022a, 2023b–2023c, 2025a–2025c; Rwanda Law Reform Commission [RLRC], 2025). This list is not a consolidated legal code and does not imply every levy applies to every enterprise.

The RRA website provides operational guidance on registration, tax rates, filing frequency, electronic invoicing and approved payment methods. These pages improve accessibility but can be revised. For legal advice or a contested classification, management should retrieve the controlling gazette, determine commencement and transitional rules, examine any applicable ministerial order and retain a dated record of the position adopted. The legal hierarchy also matters for customs: regional East African Community instruments, classification rules and trade arrangements may interact with national tax procedures. A general statement that AfCFTA or EAC trade is duty free would be inaccurate without satisfying product, origin and applicable tariff requirements.

26.11.2 Verified published guidance and practical cautions

The RRA's current public CIT guidance states that the general rate is **28%** for relevant taxable business profits from 2024, after a 30% rate for income generated through 2023; preferential rates and incentives require separate eligibility verification (RRA, n.d.-b). VAT registration guidance identifies a threshold exceeding **FRW 20 million over twelve months** or **FRW 5 million in three consecutive months**, with voluntary registration also possible (RRA, n.d.-h). RRA guidance on VAT filing distinguishes taxpayers with annual turnover at or below **FRW 200 million** (generally quarterly filing within 15 days after quarter-end) from those above that threshold (monthly filing within 15 days after month-end), subject to the rules and options stated by the authority (RRA, n.d.-g). Annual income-tax returns are ordinarily due by **31 March** after the relevant period, with the legally specified exceptions and quarterly prepayments needing separate attention (RRA, n.d.-c).

RRA's PAYE table for monthly taxable employment income provides progressive bands of 0% on the first FRW 60,000; 10% on the next FRW 40,000; 20% on the next FRW 100,000; and 30% on amounts above FRW 200,000 (RRA, n.d.-a). The general VAT rate used in the example is **18%**, a published standard rate rather than a claim that every supply bears that rate (RRA, 2025b). Employers should verify whether specific benefits are taxable, applicable contribution rules, the employment relationship, filing frequency and any special cases before computing real payroll. These rates are stated here as at the documentary cut-off and may subsequently change.

Table 26.6. Rwanda tax-rule verification register, as checked on 2 November 2026

Decision point	Published position used for the teaching case	Authority and scope warning
General CIT rate	28% for relevant taxable profit from 2024	RRA (n.d.-b); legal entitlement to reliefs must be verified
Standard VAT rate	18% for taxable supplies under the standard category	RRA (2025b); exemptions and zero rating require legal classification
Mandatory VAT registration	Turnover above FRW 20m/year or FRW 5m in three consecutive months	RRA (n.d.-h); transaction period and voluntary registration matter
VAT return timing	Generally quarterly at annual turnover ≤ FRW 200m; monthly above	RRA (n.d.-g); within 15 days of reporting-period end
Annual income-tax filing	Normally by 31 March of the following tax period	RRA (n.d.-c); statutory special cases and prepayments excluded
Monthly PAYE bands	0%, 10%, 20%, 30% across published tax bands	RRA (n.d.-a); gross remuneration need not equal taxable remuneration
Books of account retention	Ten years in the framework of the 2023 tax procedures law	RRA (2023); inspect law for precise starting point and exceptions

Note. This is a dated educational aid, not an authoritative consolidated statement of Rwanda's tax law or a substitute for professional advice. Details must be rechecked before a live filing.

Table 26.7. Illustrative Rwanda tax compliance calendar and control evidence

Obligation in the illustrated taxpayer category	Dated reporting checkpoint	Evidence and independent review
Corporate income-tax annual return	Ordinarily by 31 March after the tax year	Approved tax bridge, return confirmation, payment proof, credits and legal position file
Income quarterly prepayments	Applicable statutory dates including 30 June, 30 September and 31 December	Quarter calculation, prior-period reference and verified remittance
VAT for assumed quarterly filer	Within 15 days after 31 March, 30 June, 30 September and 31 December	EIS-to-ledger reconciliation, valid input VAT, return acknowledgment and payment
PAYE for employer	Monthly or quarterly as prescribed for taxpayer category; normally 15 days after period end	Approved payroll, rate calculation, employee detail and payment receipt
Withholding on relevant payments	Deadline applicable to specific withholding category	Contracts, tax residency/credit evidence, declaration and remittance certificates
Customs and transaction-specific levies	Transaction-specific legal event and clearance timetable	Classification, valuation, shipment documents and customs payments

Note. This is a management calendar, not a legal filing determination for every taxpayer. Confirm current law, turnover category, reporting election, special taxes and any official extension. Sources: RRA (2025b, n.d.-a, n.d.-c, n.d.-g).

26.11.3 The accountancy profession, independent assurance and Rwandan institutional capacity

The Institute of Certified Public Accountants of Rwanda (ICPAR) was established under Law No. 11/2008 of 6 May 2008 and regulates admission, practice certificates, professional conduct, quality and disciplinary matters. IFAC's jurisdiction profile states that statutory audits must be conducted by appropriately licensed ICPAR members with valid practicing certificates (ICPAR, n.d.; International Federation of Accountants [IFAC], n.d.). This institutional condition is a material safeguard: an apparently professional audit report is not a substitute for checking whether the engagement provider holds the required authority, independence and applicable technical competence.

The Office of the Auditor General (OAG) provides a distinct public-accountability pathway and publishes national audit reports; its statutory public-sector mandate should not be confused with private company statutory audits or the RRA's tax assessment function (Office of the Auditor General of State Finances [OAG], 2026). For private enterprises, the appropriate combination of statutory audit, tax certification and internal assurance depends on applicable thresholds, entity status and engagement criteria. The RRA advises that specified larger taxpayers, including those at or above an annual turnover of **FRW 600 million**, require financial statements certified through qualified professionals approved for the relevant filing process, subject to the official rules and exemptions (RRA, 2024; RRA, n.d.-c). Certification required by a tax administration and a financial-statement audit must not automatically be treated as the same service.

Assurance capacity cannot be inferred from the existence of a professional institute alone. Effective regulation depends on entry standards, continuing education, engagement-quality reviews, credible sanctions, accessible complaints and sufficient practitioners with sector-specific competence. For a growing SME, the choice between bookkeeping support, internal control review, tax advisory work and an independent statutory audit should follow the distinct decision and assurance needs. The lowest-cost engagement may be poorly matched to a lender's requirements; conversely, a sophisticated full audit may be neither legally required nor proportionate for a simple entity. Where the ISA for LCE is considered, managers must establish whether it is permitted locally and the business qualifies, rather than treat an international effective date as automatic national adoption (IAASB, 2023, 2026).

This institutional point connects national professional capacity with wider development goals. Credible enterprise records may facilitate responsible access to finance, dispute resolution and procurement eligibility, but formalization costs can become exclusionary if requirements are poorly sequenced. The policy question is how to increase the reliability of transaction evidence while providing realistic pathways for small firms to comply. An incremental records-and-controls programme may be more feasible than imposing every governance layer of a listed company on newly formalizing microenterprises.

26.12 ETHICS AND CONTINUOUS COMPLIANCE IMPROVEMENT

26.12.1 Integrity as the quality of a process, not a slogan

The IESBA Code articulates principles of integrity, objectivity, professional competence and due care, confidentiality and professional behaviour (IESBA, 2026). These are particularly demanding where an employee is pressed to understate taxable sales, disguise a related-party payment, override controls for a politically connected customer or certify figures they cannot substantiate. Professional integrity means exercising informed judgment, explaining uncertainty and declining misleading representation, not claiming that complex law always has one obvious answer. Fair treatment also requires respecting employees and counterparties whose transactions become the subject of suspicion.

An ethically significant distinction is that **lawful tax minimization**, **a disputed technical position**, **negligent error**, **intentional misstatement** and **public policy criticism** are not equivalent moral or legal categories.

Managers should correct genuine errors promptly, document the statutory route for amendments, preserve evidence and provide affected persons with a fair process. When reporting wrongdoing, confidentiality and protected escalation matter as much as investigative intensity. The enterprise's duty to creditors, workers, shareholders and public authorities cannot be fulfilled by maximizing a single performance indicator at others' expense.

26.12.2 The plan–perform–verify–correct cycle

Continuous improvement is best organized as a controlled sequence. **Plan:** maintain a risk-rated obligations inventory, test the legal basis of each tax position and set review frequency. **Perform:** process transactions using authorized roles, source-to-ledger linkages and secure records. **Verify:** reperform reconciliations, assess control operating effectiveness and challenge exceptions through a reviewer independent of the initial entry. **Correct:** file legally required amendments, recover losses where justified, revise procedures, train staff and test whether the revised control operated effectively. Each stage should generate a dated record, an accountable owner and an escalation path.

A practical maturity assessment should not award high scores simply for expensive software. At the initial level, the enterprise may have incomplete transaction registers and reactive filing; at the developing level, calendars and basic reconciliations exist but exceptions remain weakly tracked; at the defined level, responsibilities and evidence are standardized; at the managed level, control testing informs decisions and remedial effectiveness is monitored; and at the adaptive level, legal changes, new business models and incident lessons lead to documented system revision. These are pedagogical maturity descriptions, not a validated psychometric scale. Their purpose is to guide prioritized improvement rather than label firms as advanced or inferior.

26.13 INTEGRATED RWANDAN TEACHING CASE: A CASH-INTENSIVE DISTRIBUTOR

26.13.1 Case design and stated assumptions

Illustrative enterprise: Umucyo Foods Distribution Ltd (fictional). The company supplies packaged food to retail outlets in Rwanda, receives some payments through cash and mobile money and has registered for VAT. It is assumed to be a taxable resident corporate entity, to make exclusively standard-rated supplies in the calculation period, to possess valid electronic invoices for all claimed input VAT, to have no exempt inputs, imported items, carryovers, special reliefs or penalties, and to operate below the FRW 200 million annual-turnover threshold for quarterly VAT filing. **Every company-level amount in this case is invented for instruction**, not obtained from a Rwandan taxpayer. The enterprise's hypothetical annual gross sales exclusive of VAT are FRW 160 million and its illustrative quarterly sales are FRW 40 million; the example therefore satisfies its assumed filing-frequency category. Its pre-tax accounting profit is assumed to be FRW 42 million.

Table 26.8. Fully disclosed case inputs, all amounts in FRW unless stated

Measure	Hypothetical input	Evidence assumption
Quarterly sales, exclusive of VAT	40,000,000	All transactions supported by valid EIS invoices
Quarterly purchases, exclusive of VAT	18,000,000	All VAT eligible for deduction and supported by supplier invoices
Annual accounting profit before tax	42,000,000	Reconciled to general-ledger financial results
Tax-disallowed charges added back	3,000,000	Assumed ineligible under applicable tax rules
Additional allowable tax deductions/allowances	5,000,000	Assumed legally substantiated in teaching scenario
Example employee monthly taxable remuneration	350,000	Fully taxable and paid by primary employer
Opening cash for sample till reconciliation	1,250,000	Verified prior-day closing count
Cash receipts during selected period	13,800,000	From numbered receipts and settlement reports
Cash supplier payments	5,450,000	Authorized and documented cash vouchers
Cash payroll and staff disbursements	2,100,000	Recorded with valid approvals
Cash rent and other expenses	750,000	Valid supporting documents
Cash deposited into bank during period	5,400,000	Independently verified bank credit
Observed closing cash on count	1,070,000	Dual-signature physical count

Note. Entirely constructed teaching data. Payroll and cash-period measures are not necessarily coextensive with VAT or annual CIT periods; calculations deliberately keep tax periods and accounting populations distinct.

26.13.2 VAT return and invoice-to-ledger verification

On the assumptions specified, **output VAT = 40,000,000 × 18% = FRW 7,200,000**. Eligible **input VAT = 18,000,000 × 18% = FRW 3,240,000**. The illustrative **net VAT payable = 7,200,000 − 3,240,000 = FRW 3,960,000**. The total sales invoice amount inclusive of VAT is FRW 47,200,000, whereas gross purchases inclusive of VAT amount to FRW 21,240,000. The enterprise must not equate the output VAT collected with income; that money includes an amount due to the authority, net of legally allowed input credits. Nor does the example justify claiming an input credit on any unsupported purchase simply because a supplier has charged VAT.

The audit trail follows **authorized sale → sequential EIS document → dispatch or service evidence → customer receivable or settlement → general ledger → VAT output annex → filed return → payment acknowledgment**. For inputs it follows **purchase request → authorized supplier and receipt → valid electronic supplier invoice → purchase ledger → input VAT annex → return**. The reviewer compares populations, documents valid credit notes, reconciles taxes by return period and explains all differences between sales, ledger, system and tax return. If the general ledger recorded FRW 39.2 million of sales while the EIS

recorded FRW 40 million, the FRW 800,000 difference would be an exception to investigate, not automatically additional taxable sales or fraud: cancellation, classification, timing and interface controls must be verified first.

26.13.3 Corporate income-tax bridge and qualified interpretation

The income-tax computation separates tax law from financial accounting. Beginning with **FRW 42,000,000** of accounting profit before tax, add the hypothetical **FRW 3,000,000** of disallowed expenditure and deduct the hypothetical **FRW 5,000,000** of separately allowable tax deductions or allowances. **Taxable profit = 42,000,000 + 3,000,000 − 5,000,000 = FRW 40,000,000**. Applying the RRA's published general 28% rate yields a **gross illustrative CIT liability of FRW 11,200,000** before any prepayments, credits, treaty relief, instalments or additional legal adjustments. If valid prepayments and creditable withholding totalled an independently supported FRW 2,400,000, a separate *illustrative* payment bridge would show FRW 8,800,000 remaining; this added amount is an assumption, not an empirical claim or a general entitlement to offset every withholding tax.

The example is not a complete return. An actual computation must consider income recognition, allowable deductions, loss relief, capital allowances, related-party rules, withholding credits, rounding, incentives and the tax period. It also must verify that the example's deductions have proper documentary support and the statutory conditions apply. A wrong taxable base cannot be corrected by applying the right rate precisely.

26.13.4 PAYE marginal-rate calculation

Assume one employee receives **FRW 350,000 of monthly taxable remuneration** with no special treatment. Under the published general monthly bands the teaching computation is **FRW 60,000 × 0% + FRW 40,000 × 10% + FRW 100,000 × 20% + FRW 150,000 × 30% = FRW 69,000**. This is a progressive marginal calculation, not a flat 30% tax on the whole salary. The illustrative post-PAYE amount is **FRW 281,000**, before any pension, insurance, loans, statutory contributions or other authorized deductions. The tax system must distinguish gross remuneration, the legally defined taxable base, withheld income tax and separate employment obligations.

The *marginal* nature of this schedule can be tested through a sensitivity calculation. If the same employee's monthly taxable remuneration rises from FRW 350,000 to FRW 370,000, and the same published bands and first-employer assumptions continue to apply, the additional FRW 20,000 falls within the 30% band. PAYE would therefore rise by FRW 6,000, from FRW 69,000 to FRW 75,000, rather than increase by 30% of the employee's whole salary. This distinction is important when payroll systems implement salary increases, overtime or taxable allowances. When an employee has more than one employer or receives benefits whose tax status is uncertain, the ordinary single-employer illustration must not be applied mechanically: the relevant RRA rules and employee declarations must be checked separately (RRA, n.d.-a).

26.13.5 Cash reconciliation, exception analysis and investigation discipline

The expected till balance is calculated from independent source documents: **opening FRW 1,250,000 + receipts FRW 13,800,000 − supplier payments FRW 5,450,000 − payroll FRW 2,100,000 − other expenses FRW 750,000 − bank deposits FRW 5,400,000 = FRW 1,350,000**. The physically counted closing cash is FRW 1,070,000; therefore **unreconciled shortage = 1,350,000 − 1,070,000 = FRW 280,000**. Relative to stated cash receipts, the difference is about **2.03%** (280,000 ÷ 13,800,000), but that ratio is a diagnostic descriptor, not evidence of intention, culpability or the materiality threshold for any audit.

First, lock and preserve the relevant records and obtain an independent recount. Second, trace timing differences and vouchers that may have been omitted or duplicated. Third, match deposit slips to credited bank entries, check whether mobile-money receipts have been mistaken for physical cash and verify authorization of disbursements. Fourth, review access logs, receipt sequences and cashier handover records. Fifth, correct any accounting and tax consequences supported by the evidence and follow due process before attributing

misconduct. The investigation should document competing explanations, the evidence that would distinguish them, and who may authorize closure. If all supporting evidence remains insufficient, the enterprise should report an unresolved exception, not invent a journal that makes the cash book balance.

26.13.6 Control redesign and cost-sensitive implementation

The proposed redesign separates invoicing, cash custody, posting and bank reconciliation as far as staffing permits. Cashiers issue invoices through named accounts and close tills against numbered summaries; a designated bookkeeper imports invoices and posts receipts; a finance reviewer obtains bank and mobile-money statements independently; and the owner reviews voids, vendor master changes and high-risk discrepancies weekly. Privileged system changes are logged and sensitive journals require a second reviewer. An external accountant periodically tests that the controls operated on actual samples. This arrangement does not eliminate owner override, collusion or cyber incidents; those residual risks should be openly acknowledged.

The enterprise should evaluate outcomes over several reporting cycles rather than claiming success after writing the new procedure. Suitable measures include cash difference per unit of verified cash transactions, invoice sequence exceptions, the percentage of tax returns reconciled before filing, unresolved items past due, authorized vendor changes and observed time required to retrieve source evidence. A fair evaluation asks whether record quality and loss exposure improve without imposing unacceptable employee workload, customer delay or private-data intrusion. **A before–after reduction in exceptions is suggestive, not by itself proof that the new control caused the change.**

26.14 AFRICAN AND INTERNATIONAL COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS

26.14.1 Rwanda and Kenya: digital invoicing without technological determinism

Rwanda's EBM/EIS system and Kenya Revenue Authority's electronic Tax Invoice Management System (eTIMS) both seek to make taxable transactions more visible and digitally traceable, yet their legal populations, devices, taxpayer obligations and support arrangements differ. The Kenya Revenue Authority states that persons engaged in business generally must onboard eTIMS and issue electronic tax invoices, while its published guidance describes specialized buyer-initiated invoicing arrangements for certain very small suppliers (KRA, n.d.). The comparison should therefore concern **governed information architecture**, not assume that a single statutory VAT-registration threshold or software package can be transferred between the countries.

Rwanda's small firms may derive benefits from consolidated tax reporting and more reliable records, but mobile connectivity, software integration, power resilience, language, training capacity and the cost of professional advice can constrain implementation. Kenya's experience raises related questions about inclusive onboarding and vendor interoperability. Neither government's documentation alone proves that an invoicing requirement caused growth, increased trust or reduced evasion. A credible comparative evaluation would need appropriate counterfactuals, business-level outcomes, implementation costs and a description of regulatory differences.

26.14.2 International field evidence and the external validity problem

Pomeranz's (2015) randomized Chilean study helps explain why VAT paper trails can discourage underreporting even without a new audit at each supplier: buyer and seller records create third-party information. Kleven et al.'s (2011) Danish experiment illustrates why third-party reporting matters more than simply increasing formal penalties. But Chile's VAT enforcement setting, Denmark's administrative record systems and Rwandan SMEs differ in the share of informal transactions, administrative capacity, firm size and digital penetration. Their mechanisms are plausible in Rwanda; their effect sizes are not automatically transportable. The correct scholarly inference is to test whether the **mechanisms** and implementation conditions exist before predicting local impacts.

At the macro level, the joint OECD–African Union Commission–African Tax Administration Forum *Revenue Statistics in Africa 2025* reports an average tax-to-GDP ratio of **16.1% for 38 participating African countries in 2023** (OECD et al., 2025). That cross-country average should not be casually compared with Rwanda's FY 2024/25 administrative ratio from a different reporting period and possible coverage; reporting differences matter. For enterprise education, the statistic establishes the broader fiscal-capacity context, not a benchmark for an individual company's tax compliance.

26.14.3 External assurance as a contextual professional institution

The IAASB's international financial-audit standards provide an important technical common language, but independent audit quality also depends on market concentration, competent staffing, oversight enforcement, client governance and the affordability of assurance. U.S. evidence on internal-control reporting, including Doyle et al. (2007) and Ashbaugh-Skaife et al. (2009), suggests that control weaknesses and remediation have economic implications in the studied listed-firm settings. Yet those studies do not establish that imposing U.S. Sarbanes–Oxley-style requirements on every microenterprise in Rwanda would be efficient or equitable. The defensible transfer is the risk-based logic: define the public-interest need, identify relevant failures and calibrate assurance to institutional capacity and exposure.

The IAASB's 2026 compilation and the newer ISA for LCE demonstrate an important tension between globally consistent professional expectations and the feasibility of applying them to heterogeneous business structures. A proportional standard does not imply tolerance of lower ethical conduct or an opinion supported by weaker evidence. It recognizes that the design and complexity of a subject entity condition how reasonable assurance may be obtained. Conversely, mandating international labels without investing in practitioner supervision, reliable records and enforceable independence can create symbolic compliance rather than public confidence.

Power's (1999) account of auditing as a social practice reinforces this warning: verification produces a form of accountability, but the choice of what is measured also governs what remains unseen. A company may receive a clean opinion on historical financial statements while exhibiting unsafe operating practices, unfair supplier relations or an unreliable sustainability claim outside the engagement's scope. This is neither proof that the auditor failed nor evidence that the wider enterprise is sound. Enterprise governance must identify where additional assurance is warranted and where a social or operational problem requires direct managerial remedy rather than another report.

26.15 INTEGRATIVE SYNTHESIS, RESEARCH AGENDA AND CONCLUSION

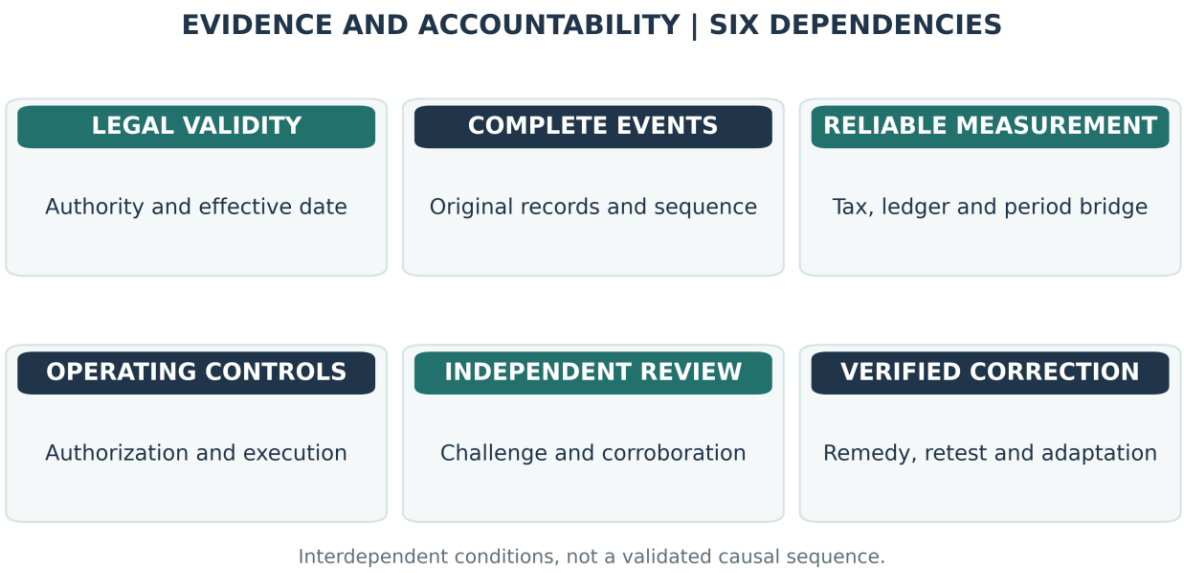
26.15.1 A proposed compliance–assurance–learning framework

The chapter's central synthesis is a **compliance–assurance–learning framework** that joins six interdependent conditions rather than prescribing another administrative checklist. Legal validity first determines whether an obligation exists, what it requires and which version of the law governs the transaction. Transaction completeness then asks whether the enterprise has captured the whole population of relevant economic events in authentic source records. Reliable measurement links those events to the accounting and tax bases without silently conflating different recognition or reporting periods. Operating controls address the authorization and processing of transactions, while independent challenge tests whether the evidence supports management's conclusions. Finally, verified correction and institutional learning ensure that adverse findings lead to actual remedy rather than cosmetic closure.

The framework's philosophical claim is limited but consequential: financial compliance is a set of **warranted assertions**, not a property that follows automatically from technological adoption or the possession of formal documents. A break in any of these conditions can undermine the credibility of the final claim. Yet the relationships are neither mechanically additive nor unconditionally causal. More control activity does not always improve compliance; greater data quantity may produce greater surveillance without improving completeness;

and independent audit adds limited value if management conceals or fails to remedy the defects it identifies. Figure 26.3 therefore represents conditions for analytical diagnosis, not an empirically validated causal sequence.

Figure 26.3. Proposed compliance–assurance–learning dependency framework



Source: Author’s conceptual synthesis; dependency relationships require empirical evaluation.

A first research proposition is that, conditional on legal clarity and administrative capacity, the completeness of source-to-ledger links and independently reviewed reconciliations will explain more variation in verified return accuracy than electronic-invoicing adoption considered alone. This proposition would require an independently tested return-accuracy measure, not a self-reported compliance score, and would need to account for the possibility that better-managed firms select into digital systems earlier.

A second proposition concerns proportionality. Where staff and technical resources are scarce, carefully selected compensating controls may improve reporting reliability more cost-effectively than importing a large-company control structure wholesale. This prediction is conditional on the exposure to owner override and collusion and on whether independent reviewers can actually obtain unaltered evidence. Its evaluation should compare both control outcomes and the costs borne by employees and small suppliers, rather than merely count control procedures.

A third proposition concerns assurance and trust. Independent challenge combined with externally verifiable remediation may show a stronger and more durable relationship with stakeholder confidence than receiving assurance reports without demonstrated corrective action. The distinction requires evidence on stakeholders' actual decisions and expectations, as well as careful treatment of selection and confounding. All three propositions remain proposed research relationships, not findings established by the constructed enterprise case.

26.15.2 Unresolved debates and a feasible research programme

Research on tax compliance should distinguish statutory rates, reported liability, actual payment, tax gaps and substantive fairness. A useful Rwanda-based design could combine de-identified administrative invoice and tax-return data, documented amendments and phased adoption patterns, with privacy protections and legal authorization. The estimand could be the change in verified misstatement frequency following a specified control intervention, not merely the change in e-invoice counts. Staggered implementation may support difference-in-differences analysis if parallel-trend and spillover assumptions are defensible; a randomized encouragement or training design could be feasible where ethically and administratively permitted. Firm attrition, endogenous enforcement, informal transactions and changes in tax law would require explicit sensitivity tests.

For audit quality, research should go beyond an unmodified opinion or low audit fee as a proxy. Possible indicators include externally reviewed inspection findings, subsequent restatements, quality of working papers, evidence of skepticism, remediation outcomes and independence safeguards. A cross-sectional correlation between audit committee presence and fewer errors could reflect enterprise size, profitability or regulation rather than a causal committee effect. For digital controls, field studies should evaluate false-positive burdens, cybersecurity incidents, staff workload and due-process protections along with detection yield. These research programmes would strengthen African business scholarship by connecting formal standards to the actual transaction systems and institutional constraints of diverse enterprises.

26.15.3 Concluding argument and transition

Taxation, auditing, internal controls and financial compliance are often assigned separate institutional labels. Their interdependence is nevertheless concrete: lawful obligations require trustworthy transactions, trustworthy transactions require controls, controls require monitoring, and claims about those controls require evidence and independent challenge. In a small enterprise, these relationships must be scaled to available people and systems without sacrificing basic integrity. In a large enterprise, sophisticated technology and boards do not justify assuming that data are complete or managerial override impossible. The enduring criterion of success is not simply a filed tax return or completed audit. It is a publicly and professionally defensible capacity to **know what was owed, what occurred, what was recorded, what was tested, what remains uncertain and what was corrected**.

This chapter completes the book's finance-and-assurance sequence. Chapter 27 will examine entrepreneurship and enterprise development, where startup informality, capital constraints and rapid experimentation make proportionate tax and control design especially consequential. The resulting challenge is constructive: founders should not have to become tax lawyers or auditors to create value, but their enterprises must establish records and responsibilities sufficiently credible to survive growth, external financing, regulatory scrutiny and stakeholder expectations.

26.16 KEY CONCEPTS, ASSESSMENT AND EDUCATOR GUIDANCE

26.16.1 Key terminology

These terms distinguish legal duties, evidentiary claims and organisational safeguards.
Read them alongside the chapter discussion rather than as independent legal definitions.

Table 26.9. Cumulative glossary of taxation, audit and internal-control terminology

Term	Meaning and analytical qualification
Audit assertion	A proposition about existence, completeness, accuracy, valuation, rights, obligations, period, classification or disclosure that requires assertion-specific evidence.
Audit risk	Risk of an inappropriate audit opinion when the statements are materially misstated; the model is a planning aid, not an observed probability.
Audit trail	Traceable relationship among source events, authorizations, accounting records, returns and associated approvals.
Compliance obligation	Statutory, regulatory, contractual or other formally applicable requirement, identified for a person, activity and period.
Compensating control	Alternative procedure addressing a defined risk where conventional segregation or automation is infeasible.
Control design effectiveness	Whether a specified control, if performed as prescribed, is capable of reducing the targeted risk.
Control operating effectiveness	Whether the control actually operated with appropriate authority, evidence and frequency throughout the period.
Electronic invoicing	Legally and operationally defined digital creation and preservation of transaction evidence, not proof of completeness by itself.
Inherent risk	Susceptibility to material misstatement before the effect of related controls.
Input VAT	Tax on eligible purchases or imports potentially creditable subject to statutory conditions and documentation.
Materiality	Importance of an error or omission for decisions of intended users, assessed by magnitude, context and nature.
Output VAT	VAT on taxable supplies during the applicable tax period, before legally permissible credits and adjustments.
Professional skepticism	Critical disposition toward evidence and explanations, including attention to inconsistencies without presuming wrongdoing.
Reconciliation	Documented comparison and explanation of differences among relevant independent records and balances.
Tax avoidance	Context-dependent term for reducing liability through arrangements assessed against statutory wording and purpose.
Tax evasion	Unlawful tax nonpayment or underpayment through deceptive concealment or misrepresentation.
Tax planning	Lawful consideration of fiscal consequences in genuine transactions, with transparent positions and supporting evidence.
Third-party information	Independently supplied transaction data that may corroborate or contradict a taxpayer's own reporting.
Withholding tax	Tax deducted by a designated payer under the law governing particular payments, potentially creditable or final.

Note. Meanings are synthesized for instruction from IASB, IAASB, COSO, IIA and RRA guidance; local law determines the legal classification of any particular tax transaction.

26.16.2 Foundational, applied and doctoral-level questions

Foundational analysis (LO1–LO3): Explain why the economic incidence of VAT may differ from the entity legally required to remit it. Distinguish taxable profit from accounting profit and give two examples of reconciling adjustments. Explain the difference between legal planning, a disputed interpretation and deliberate evasion. Why might greater statutory penalties fail to improve compliance where credible records are unavailable?

Audit and control analysis (LO4–LO6): For each of the following claims, identify the assertion and the evidence that would be necessary: “all cash sales were invoiced”; “all purchased goods were received”; “all employees on the payroll worked for the enterprise”; “all input VAT credits are legally eligible.” Critically compare internal audit and external financial audit in terms of independence, mandate, users and assurance limits. Explain why a signed control policy is not evidence of operating effectiveness.

Applied calculations and professional assignment (LO5–LO8): Reproduce the four computations in Section 26.13 using only the stated assumptions. Then assume that FRW 2 million of quarterly purchases lack legally acceptable VAT documentation; compute the change in eligible input VAT and net VAT payable **only on the further assumption** that those purchases were originally included in eligible inputs at the standard rate. Finally, draft a two-page management memorandum distinguishing the arithmetic correction, legal verification required, evidence missing and internal control responsible. Suggested numeric check: lost credit FRW 360,000; revised net VAT payable FRW 4,320,000, absent other changes.

Advanced evaluative assignment (LO2–LO8): Develop an auditable compliance-and-assurance plan for an anonymized Rwandan enterprise archetype with 8–25 employees, multiple payment channels and both taxable and exempt or zero-rated activity. Include a source-law verification log, risk register, transaction-to-tax data map, ten key controls, segregation-of-duties and compensating measures, sample-based testing plan, exception register, cost estimate, privacy safeguards, sensitivity analysis and monitoring criteria. Compare Rwanda's requirements with Kenya's eTIMS using primary published institutional sources and clearly distinguish observations, regulatory statements, proposed changes and causal inference.

26.16.3 Suggested educator use and marking criteria

Teaching can begin with the cash shortage as an ambiguity requiring evidence rather than suspicion, proceed to the VAT and PAYE calculations, and conclude with a board-facing assurance memorandum. A defensible assessment rubric allocates weight to accurate legal sourcing and temporal applicability (20%), coherent theory and critical comparison (20%), numerical reproducibility and source-to-ledger traceability (20%), risk-proportionate control design (20%), and ethical judgment, clarity and transparent uncertainty (20%). These weights are illustrative curricular design choices. Advanced students should be rewarded for identifying assumptions and limits rather than asserting spurious certainty. Instructors should update the statutory rate and deadline register when teaching in subsequent years; the logic of the case remains useful even when the specific rates change.

26.16.4 Further reading

For the economic foundations of tax enforcement, Slemrod (2019) synthesizes the evidence while Pomeranz (2015) and Kleven et al. (2011) provide instructive research designs. For audit theory and practice, DeAngelo (1981), Francis (2004) and the IAASB (2026) allow conceptual arguments to be compared with authoritative engagement standards. COSO (2013b), the IIA (2024), and the IESBA (2026) support the control, assurance and professional-integrity discussion. The RRA (2025b) Tax Handbook and current statute register should be used in parallel with the original laws rather than as substitutes for them.

For a more critical account of the institutional consequences of verification, Power (1999) complements conventional audit-quality research. Nelson (2009) deepens the psychological analysis of professional

skepticism and its dependence on incentives and evidence. The IAASB (2023, 2026) provides both the ISA for LCE and the current international compilation; readers should check the applicability and effective dates of individual pronouncements. OECD (2015b) adds a comparative account of small-enterprise tax compliance costs, while IASB (n.d.-a) clarifies the accounting treatment of current and deferred income taxes. None of these sources replaces current Rwandan law for a specific taxpayer.

References

VOLUME II · CHAPTERS 13–26

Works cited in the marketing, operations and finance chapters.

Aaker, D. A. (1991). *Managing brand equity: Capitalizing on the value of a brand name*. Free Press.

Access to Finance Rwanda. (n.d.). *Rwanda FinScope 2024: Gender and financial inclusion thematic report*. https://afr.rw/downloads/rwanda-finscope-2024-gender-financial-inclusion-thematic-report/

Access to Finance Rwanda. (n.d.). *Rwanda MSME FinMap report 2024*. https://afr.rw/downloads/rwanda-msme-finmap-report-2024/

Access to Finance Rwanda. (2024). *Rwanda FinScope survey 2024*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/sites/default/files/documents/2024-09/Rwanda-Finscope-2024-Report_compressed.pdf

Acquisti, A., Taylor, C., & Wagman, L. (2016). The economics of privacy. *Journal of Economic Literature, 54*(2), 442–492. https://doi.org/10.1257/jel.54.2.442

African Union. (2024). Protocol to the Agreement Establishing the African Continental Free Trade Area on Digital Trade (adopted 18 February 2024). https://aucapps.au.int/en/treaties/protocol-agreement-establishing-african-continental-free-trade-area-digital-trade-0

Ailawadi, K. L., & Farris, P. W. (2017). Managing multi- and omni-channel distribution: Metrics and research directions. *Journal of Retailing*, *93*(1), 120–135. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jretai.2016.12.003

Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes, 50*(2), 179–211. https://doi.org/10.1016/0749-5978(91)90020-T

Akerlof, G. A. (1970). The market for “lemons”: Quality uncertainty and the market mechanism. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 84(3)*, 488–500. https://doi.org/10.2307/1879431

Allen, F., Demirgüç-Kunt, A., Klapper, L., & Martinez Peria, M. S. (2016). The foundations of financial inclusion: Understanding ownership and use of formal accounts. *Journal of Financial Intermediation, 27*, 1–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jfi.2015.12.003

Allingham, M. G., & Sandmo, A. (1972). Income tax evasion: A theoretical analysis. *Journal of Public Economics, 1*(3–4), 323–338. https://doi.org/10.1016/0047-2727(72)90010-2

American Marketing Association. (n.d.). *Definitions of marketing*. https://www.ama.org/the-definition-of-marketing-what-is-marketing/

American Society for Quality. (n.d.-a). *History of quality*. https://asq.org/quality-resources/history-of-quality

American Society for Quality. (n.d.-b). *Seven basic quality tools*. https://asq.org/quality-resources/seven-basic-quality-tools

American Society for Quality. (n.d.-c). *Cost of quality*. https://asq.org/quality-resources/cost-of-quality

Anderson, E. W., Fornell, C., & Lehmann, D. R. (1994). Customer satisfaction, market share, and profitability: Findings from Sweden. *Journal of Marketing, 58*(3), 53–66. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299405800304

Anderson, J. C., & Narus, J. A. (1990). A model of distributor firm and manufacturer firm working partnerships. *Journal of Marketing*, *54*(1), 42–58. https://www.kellogg.northwestern.edu/academics-research/research/detail/1990/a-model-of-distributor-firm-and-manufacturer-firm-working/

References

Anderson, J. C., Narus, J. A., & van Rossum, W. (2006). Customer value propositions in business markets. *Harvard Business Review, 84*(3), 90–99. https://hbr.org/2006/03/customer-value-propositions-in-business-markets

Anderson, M. C., Banker, R. D., & Janakiraman, S. N. (2003). Are selling, general, and administrative costs "sticky"? *Journal of Accounting Research, 41*(1), 47–63. https://doi.org/10.1111/1475-679X.00095

Aral, S., Muchnik, L., & Sundararajan, A. (2009). Distinguishing influence-based contagion from homophily-driven diffusion in dynamic networks. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 106*(51), 21544–21549. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0908800106

Arnould, E. J., & Thompson, C. J. (2005). Consumer culture theory (CCT): Twenty years of research. *Journal of Consumer Research, 31*(4), 868–882. https://doi.org/10.1086/426626

Artzner, P., Delbaen, F., Eber, J.-M., & Heath, D. (1999). Coherent measures of risk. *Mathematical Finance, 9*(3), 203–228. https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-9965.00068

Ashbaugh-Skaife, H., Collins, D. W., Kinney, W. R., Jr., & LaFond, R. (2009). The effect of SOX internal control deficiencies on firm risk and cost of equity. *Journal of Accounting Research, 47*(1), 1–43. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1475-679X.2008.00315.x

Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank. (2026). *Rwanda: Digital Acceleration Project (Digital Investment for Recovery, Resilience and Connectivity)* [Project monitoring documentation and project page]. https://www.aiib.org/en/projects/details/2021/approved/Rwanda-Digital-Acceleration-Project-Digital-Investment-for-Recovery-Resilience-and-Connectivity.html

Association for Project Management. (2025). *APM body of knowledge* (8th ed.). https://www.apm.org.uk/apm-body-of-knowledge/

Association for Supply Chain Management. (n.d.). *SCOR Digital Standard*. https://www.ascm.org/corporate-solutions/standards-tools/scor-ds/

Atkinson, R. (1999). Project management: Cost, time and quality, two best guesses and a phenomenon, its time to accept other success criteria. *International Journal of Project Management, 17*(6), 337–342. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0263-7863(98)00069-6

Bagozzi, R. P. (1975). Marketing as exchange. *Journal of Marketing, 39*(4), 32–39. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224297503900405

Baker, M., & Wurgler, J. (2002). Market timing and capital structure. *The Journal of Finance, 57*(1), 1–32. https://doi.org/10.1111/1540-6261.00414

Baker, S. M., Gentry, J. W., & Rittenburg, T. L. (2005). Building understanding of the domain of consumer vulnerability. *Journal of Macromarketing, 25*(2), 128–139. https://doi.org/10.1177/0276146705280622

Ball, R., & Brown, P. (1968). An empirical evaluation of accounting income numbers. *Journal of Accounting Research, 6*(2), 159– 178. https://doi.org/10.2307/2490232

Banerjee, A., Duflo, E., Glennerster, R., & Kinnan, C. (2015). The miracle of microfinance? Evidence from a randomized evaluation. *American Economic Journal: Applied Economics, 7*(1), 22–53. https://doi.org/10.1257/app.20130533

Banker, R. D., Potter, G., & Schroeder, R. G. (1995). An empirical analysis of manufacturing overhead cost drivers. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 19*(1), 115–137. https://doi.org/10.1016/0165-4101(94)00372-C

Bank for International Settlements. (n.d.). *CPMI cross-border payments programme: Enhancement of cross-border payments* [Programme description]. https://www.bis.org/committees/cpmi/cross-border-payments/overview

References

Barratt, M. (2004). Understanding the meaning of collaboration in the supply chain. *Supply Chain Management: An International Journal, 9*(1), 30–42. https://doi.org/10.1108/13598540410517566

Barth, M. E., Landsman, W. R., & Lang, M. H. (2008). International accounting standards and accounting quality. *Journal of Accounting Research, 46*(3), 467–498. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1475-679X.2008.00287.x

Basel Committee on Banking Supervision. (2026). *The Basel Framework: Risk-based capital requirements* (RBC20). Bank for International Settlements. https://www.bis.org/committees/bcbs/basel-framework/standard/rbc?allChapters=true

Bass, F. M. (1969). A new product growth for model consumer durables. *Management Science, 15(5)*, 215–227. https://doi.org/10.1287/mnsc.15.5.215

Bates, T. W., Kahle, K. M., & Stulz, R. M. (2009). Why do U.S. firms hold so much more cash than they used to? *The Journal of Finance, 64*(5), 1985–2021. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-6261.2009.01492.x

Batra, R., & Keller, K. L. (2016). Integrating marketing communications: New findings, new lessons, and new ideas. *Journal of Marketing*, *80*(6), 122–145. https://doi.org/10.1509/jm.15.0419

Beaver, W. H. (1968). The information content of annual earnings announcements. *Journal of Accounting Research, 6*, 67–92. https://doi.org/10.2307/2490070

Beck, K., Beedle, M., van Bennekum, A., Cockburn, A., Cunningham, W., Fowler, M., Grenning, J., Highsmith, J., Hunt, A., Jeffries, R., Kern, J., Marick, B., Martin, R. C., Mellor, S., Schwaber, K., Sutherland, J., & Thomas, D. (2001). *Manifesto for agile software development*. https://agilemanifesto.org/

Beck, T., Demirgüç-Kunt, A., & Maksimovic, V. (2005). Financial and legal constraints to growth: Does firm size matter? *The Journal of Finance, 60*(1), 137–177. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-6261.2005.00727.x

Berger, A. N., & Udell, G. F. (1998). The economics of small business finance: The roles of private equity and debt markets in the financial growth cycle. *Journal of Banking & Finance, 22*(6–8), 613–673. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0378-4266(98)00038-7

Berger, A. N., & Udell, G. F. (2006). A more complete conceptual framework for SME finance. *Journal of Banking & Finance, 30*(11), 2945–2966. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbankfin.2006.05.008

Berg, T., Burg, V., Gombović, A., & Puri, M. (2020). On the rise of FinTechs: Credit scoring using digital footprints. *The Review of Financial Studies, 33*(7), 2845–2897. https://doi.org/10.1093/rfs/hhz099

Bettman, J. R., Luce, M. F., & Payne, J. W. (1998). Constructive consumer choice processes. *Journal of Consumer Research, 25*(3), 187–217. https://doi.org/10.1086/209535

Bhimani, A. (2020). Digital data and management accounting: Why we need to rethink research methods. *Journal of Management Control, 31*, 9–23. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00187-020-00295-z

Bitner, M. J., Ostrom, A. L., & Morgan, F. N. (2008). Service blueprinting: A practical technique for service innovation. *California Management Review, 50*(3), 66–94. https://doi.org/10.2307/41166446

Blake, T., Nosko, C., & Tadelis, S. (2015). Consumer heterogeneity and paid search effectiveness: A large-scale field experiment. *Econometrica*, *83*(1), 155–174. https://doi.org/10.3982/ECTA12423

Bloom, N., Eifert, B., Mahajan, A., McKenzie, D., & Roberts, J. (2013). Does management matter? Evidence from India. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 128*(1), 1–51. https://doi.org/10.1093/qje/qjs044

References

Bode, C., & Wagner, S. M. (2015). Structural drivers of upstream supply chain complexity and the frequency of supply chain disruptions. *Journal of Operations Management, 36*, 215–228. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jom.2014.12.004

Boelaert, J., Coavoux, S., Ollion, É., Petev, I., & Präg, P. (2025). Machine bias: How do generative language models answer opinion polls? *Sociological Methods & Research, 54*(3), 1156–1196. https://doi.org/10.1177/00491241251330582

Bolton, L. E., Warlop, L., & Alba, J. W. (2003). Consumer perceptions of price (un)fairness. *Journal of Consumer Research, 29*(4), 474–491. https://doi.org/10.1086/346244

Boudreau, J., Hopp, W., McClain, J. O., & Thomas, L. J. (2003). On the interface between operations and human resource management. *Manufacturing & Service Operations Management, 5*(3), 179–202. https://doi.org/10.1287/msom.5.3.179.16032

Boulding, W., Kalra, A., Staelin, R., & Zeithaml, V. A. (1993). A dynamic process model of service quality: From expectations to behavioral intentions. *Journal of Marketing Research, 30*(1), 7–27. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224379303000102

Braun, V., & Clarke, V. (2006). Using thematic analysis in psychology. *Qualitative Research in Psychology, 3*(2), 77–101. https://doi.org/10.1191/1478088706qp063oa

Brunnermeier, M. K., & Pedersen, L. H. (2009). Market liquidity and funding liquidity. *The Review of Financial Studies, 22*(6), 2201–2238. https://doi.org/10.1093/rfs/hhn098

Brynjolfsson, E., Li, D., & Raymond, L. R. (2025). Generative AI at work. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 140*(2), 889– 942. https://doi.org/10.1093/qje/qjae044

Burgstahler, D., & Dichev, I. (1997). Earnings management to avoid earnings decreases and losses. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 24*(1), 99–126. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0165-4101(97)00017-7

Capital Market Authority. (2026, March 2). *Rwanda's capital market records broad-based growth in FY2024/25*. https://www.cma.rw/news-publications/press-center/rwandas-capital-market-records-broad-based-growth-in-fy2024/25

Carter, C. R., & Rogers, D. S. (2008). A framework of sustainable supply chain management: Moving toward new theory. *International Journal of Physical Distribution & Logistics Management, 38*(5), 360–387. https://doi.org/10.1108/09600030810882816

Central Bank of Kenya, Kenya National Bureau of Statistics, & Financial Sector Deepening Kenya. (2024). *2024 FinAccess household survey*. https://www.knbs.or.ke/reports/2024-finacess-household-survey-report/

Chenhall, R. H. (2003). Management control systems design within its organizational context: Findings from contingency- based research and directions for the future. *Accounting, Organizations and Society, 28*(2–3), 127–168. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0361-3682(01)00027-7

Chevalier, J. A., & Mayzlin, D. (2006). The effect of word of mouth on sales: Online book reviews. *Journal of Marketing Research, 43*(3), 345–354. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkr.43.3.345

Chopra, S., & Sodhi, M. S. (2004). Managing risk to avoid supply-chain breakdown. *MIT Sloan Management Review, 46*(1), 53–61. https://shop.sloanreview.mit.edu/store/managing-risk-to-avoid-supply-chain-breakdown

Christopher, M., & Peck, H. (2004). Building the resilient supply chain. *The International Journal of Logistics Management, 15*(2), 1–14. https://doi.org/10.1108/09574090410700275

References

Coase, R. H. (1937). The nature of the firm. *Economica, 4*(16), 386–405. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1468-0335.1937.tb00002.x

Cochran, W. G. (1977). *Sampling techniques (3rd ed.)*. Wiley.

Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. (2013). *Internal control: Integrated framework*. https://www.coso.org/guidance-on-ic

Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. (2013). *Internal control—Integrated framework: Executive summary*. https://www.coso.org/

Committee on Payment and Settlement Systems, & International Organization of Securities Commissions. (2012). *Principles for financial market infrastructures*. Bank for International Settlements. https://www.bis.org/publications/principles-financial-market-infrastructures

Cooper, R. G. (1990). Stage-gate systems: A new tool for managing new products. *Business Horizons, 33*(3), 44–54. https://doi.org/10.1016/0007-6813(90)90040-I

Cooper, R., & Kaplan, R. S. (1988). Measure costs right: Make the right decisions. *Harvard Business Review, 66*(5), 96–103. https://hbr.org/1988/09/measure-costs-right-make-the-right-decisions

Corbett, C. J., Montes-Sancho, M. J., & Kirsch, D. A. (2005). The financial impact of ISO 9000 certification in the United States: An empirical analysis. *Management Science, 51*(7), 1046–1059. https://doi.org/10.1287/mnsc.1040.0358

Cronin, J. J., Jr., & Taylor, S. A. (1992). Measuring service quality: A reexamination and extension. *Journal of Marketing*, *56*(3), 55–68. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299205600304

Crosby, P. B. (1979). *Quality is free: The art of making quality certain*. McGraw-Hill.

Damodaran, A. (2026, January 5). *Country default spreads and risk premiums. New York University Stern School of Business*. https://pages.stern.nyu.edu/adamodar/New_Home_Page/datafile/ctryprem.html

Daske, H., Hail, L., Leuz, C., & Verdi, R. (2008). Mandatory IFRS reporting around the world: Early evidence on the economic consequences. *Journal of Accounting Research, 46*(5), 1085–1142. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1475-679X.2008.00306.x

Data Protection and Privacy Office. (n.d.). *Processing and quality of personal data*. https://dpo.gov.rw/dpp-law/processing-and-quality-of-personal-data

Data Protection and Privacy Office. (n.d.). Processing and quality of personal data: Rwanda's data protection and privacy law. https://dpo.gov.rw/dpp-law/processing-and-quality-of-personal-data

Data Protection and Privacy Office. (n.d.). *Who we are*. https://dpo.gov.rw/about-us/who-we-are

Davenport, T., Guha, A., Grewal, D., & Bressgott, T. (2020). How artificial intelligence will change the future of marketing. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science, 48*, 24–42. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11747-019-00696-0

Davis, J. H., Schoorman, F. D., & Donaldson, L. (1997). Toward a stewardship theory of management. *Academy of Management Review, 22*(1), 20–47. https://doi.org/10.5465/amr.1997.9707180258

Day, G. S. (1994). The capabilities of market-driven organizations. *Journal of Marketing, 58*(4), 37–52. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299405800404

DeAngelo, L. E. (1981). Auditor size and audit quality. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 3*(3), 183–199. https://doi.org/10.1016/0165-4101(81)90002-1

References

Dechow, P., Ge, W., & Schrand, C. (2010). Understanding earnings quality: A review of the proxies, their determinants and their consequences. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 50*(2–3), 344–401. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacceco.2010.09.001

Dechow, P. M. (1994). Accounting earnings and cash flows as measures of firm performance: The role of accounting accruals. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 18*(1), 3–42. https://doi.org/10.1016/0165-4101(94)90016-7

Delmas, M. A., & Burbano, V. C. (2011). The drivers of greenwashing. *California Management Review, 54*(1), 64–87. https://doi.org/10.1525/cmr.2011.54.1.64

Deloof, M. (2003). Does working capital management affect profitability of Belgian firms? *Journal of Business Finance & Accounting, 30*(3–4), 573–588. https://doi.org/10.1111/1468-5957.00008

de Mel, S., McKenzie, D., & Woodruff, C. (2008). Returns to capital in microenterprises: Evidence from a field experiment. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 123*(4), 1329–1372. https://doi.org/10.1162/qjec.2008.123.4.1329

de Mel, S., McKenzie, D., & Woodruff, C. (2009). Returns to capital in microenterprises: Evidence from a field experiment [Correction]. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 124*(1), 423. https://doi.org/10.1162/qjec.2009.124.1.423

Deming, W. E. (1986). *Out of the crisis*. Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Center for Advanced Engineering Study.

Dhalla, N. K., & Yuspeh, S. (1976, January). Forget the product life cycle concept! *Harvard Business Review*. https://hbr.org/1976/01/forget-the-product-life-cycle-concept

Diamond, D. W. (1984). Financial intermediation and delegated monitoring. *The Review of Economic Studies, 51*(3), 393– 414. https://doi.org/10.2307/2297430

Diamond, D. W., & Dybvig, P. H. (1983). Bank runs, deposit insurance, and liquidity. *Journal of Political Economy, 91*(3), 401–419. https://doi.org/10.1086/261155

Dixit, A. K., & Pindyck, R. S. (1994). *Investment under uncertainty*. Princeton University Press. https://doi.org/10.2307/j.ctt7sncv

Donabedian, A. (1988). The quality of care: How can it be assessed? *JAMA*, *260*(12), 1743–1748. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.1988.03410120089033

Doyle, J., Ge, W., & McVay, S. (2007). Determinants of weaknesses in internal control over financial reporting. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 44*(1–2), 193–223. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacceco.2006.10.003

Dwork, C. (2006). Differential privacy. In M. Bugliesi, B. Preneel, V. Sassone, & I. Wegener (Eds.), *Automata, languages and programming* (pp. 1–12). Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/11787006_1

Dyer, J. H., & Singh, H. (1998). The relational view: Cooperative strategy and sources of interorganizational competitive advantage. *Academy of Management Review, 23*(4), 660–679. https://doi.org/10.5465/amr.1998.1255632

East African Community. (n.d.). *Road transport in East Africa*. https://www.eac.int/infrastructure/road-transport-sub-sector

East African Community. (n.d.). Trade. https://www.eac.int/trade

Erdem, T., & Swait, J. (1998). Brand equity as a signaling phenomenon. *Journal of Consumer Psychology, 7*(2), 131–157. https://doi.org/10.1207/s15327663jcp0702_02

References

European Parliament & Council of the European Union. (2024). Directive (EU) 2024/825 of 28 February 2024 amending Directives 2005/29/EC and 2011/83/EU as regards empowering consumers for the green transition through better protection against unfair practices and through better information. *Official Journal of the European Union*. http://data.europa.eu/eli/dir/2024/825/oj

Fader, P. S., Hardie, B. G. S., & Lee, K. L. (2005). "Counting your customers" the easy way: An alternative to the Pareto/NBD model. *Marketing Science, 24*(2), 275–284. https://doi.org/10.1287/mksc.1040.0098

Fama, E. F., & French, K. R. (1993). Common risk factors in the returns on stocks and bonds. *Journal of Financial Economics, 33*(1), 3–56. https://doi.org/10.1016/0304-405X(93)90023-5

Fama, E. F., & French, K. R. (2002). Testing trade-off and pecking order predictions about dividends and debt. *The Review of Financial Studies, 15*(1), 1–33. https://doi.org/10.1093/rfs/15.1.1

Fawcett, S. E., Magnan, G. M., & McCarter, M. W. (2008). A three-stage implementation model for supply chain collaboration. *Journal of Business Logistics, 29*(1), 93–112. https://doi.org/10.1002/j.2158-1592.2008.tb00070.x

Fazzari, S. M., Hubbard, R. G., & Petersen, B. C. (1988). Financing constraints and corporate investment. *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity, 1988*(1), 141–195. https://www.brookings.edu/articles/financing-constraints-and-corporate-investment/

Federal Trade Commission. (2012). *Environmental claims: Summary of the Green Guides*. https://www.ftc.gov/business-guidance/resources/environmental-claims-summary-green-guides

Federal Trade Commission. (2023). Guides concerning the use of endorsements and testimonials in advertising (16 C.F.R. Part 255, revised 2023). https://www.govinfo.gov/app/details/FR-2023-07-26/2023-14795

Ferdows, K., & De Meyer, A. (1990). Lasting improvements in manufacturing performance: In search of a new theory. *Journal of Operations Management, 9*(2), 168–184. https://doi.org/10.1016/0272-6963(90)90094-T

Festinger, L. (1954). A theory of social comparison processes. *Human Relations, 7*(2), 117–140. https://doi.org/10.1177/001872675400700202

Financial Stability Board. (2025). *Global monitoring report on non-bank financial intermediation 2025*. https://www.fsb.org/2025/12/global-monitoring-report-on-nonbank-financial-intermediation-2025/

Fisher, M. L. (1997). What is the right supply chain for your product? *Harvard Business Review, 75*(2), 105–116. https://hbr.org/1997/03/what-is-the-right-supply-chain-for-your-product

Flynn, A., & Davis, P. (2014). Theory in public procurement research. *Journal of Public Procurement, 14*(2), 139–180. https://doi.org/10.1108/JOPP-14-02-2014-B001

Flynn, B. B., Schroeder, R. G., & Sakakibara, S. (1994). A framework for quality management research and an associated measurement instrument. *Journal of Operations Management*, *11*(4), 339–366. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0272-6963(97)90004-8

Flyvbjerg, B. (2009). Survival of the unfittest: Why the worst infrastructure gets built—and what we can do about it. *Oxford Review of Economic Policy, 25*(3), 344–367. https://doi.org/10.1093/oxrep/grp024

Fornell, C. (1992). A national customer satisfaction barometer: The Swedish experience. *Journal of Marketing, 56*(1), 6–21. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299205600103

Francis, J. R. (2004). What do we know about audit quality? *The British Accounting Review, 36*(4), 345–368. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bar.2004.09.003

References

Frank, M. Z., & Goyal, V. K. (2009). Capital structure decisions: Which factors are reliably important? *Financial Management, 38*(1), 1–37. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1755-053X.2009.01026.x

Frazier, G. L. (1999). Organizing and managing channels of distribution. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science*, *27*(2), 226–240. https://doi.org/10.1177/0092070399272007

Frei, F. X. (2006). Breaking the trade-off between efficiency and service. *Harvard Business Review, 84*(11), 93–101. https://hbr.org/2006/11/breaking-the-trade-off-between-efficiency-and-service

Frost, J., Gambacorta, L., Huang, Y., Shin, H. S., & Zbinden, P. (2020). BigTech and the changing structure of financial intermediation. *Economic Policy, 34*(100), 761–799. https://doi.org/10.1093/epolic/eiaa003

Fuster, A., Goldsmith-Pinkham, P., Ramadorai, T., & Walther, A. (2022). Predictably unequal? The effects of machine learning on credit markets. *The Journal of Finance, 77*(1), 5–47. https://doi.org/10.1111/jofi.13090

Fuster, A., Plosser, M., Schnabl, P., & Vickery, J. (2019). The role of technology in mortgage lending. *The Review of Financial Studies, 32*(5), 1854–1899. https://doi.org/10.1093/rfs/hhz018

Garvin, D. A. (1987). Competing on the eight dimensions of quality. *Harvard Business Review*, *65*(6), 101–109. https://hbr.org/1987/11/competing-on-the-eight-dimensions-of-quality

Gelderman, C. J., & van Weele, A. J. (2003). Handling measurement issues and strategic directions in Kraljic's purchasing portfolio model. *Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management, 9*(5–6), 207–216. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pursup.2003.07.001

Geraldi, J., Maylor, H., & Williams, T. (2011). Now, let's make it really complex (complicated): A systematic review of the complexities of projects. *International Journal of Operations & Production Management, 31*(9), 966–990. https://doi.org/10.1108/01443571111165848

Goldfarb, A., & Tucker, C. E. (2011). Privacy regulation and online advertising. *Management Science*, *57*(1), 57–71. https://doi.org/10.1287/mnsc.1100.1246

Goldratt, E. M., & Cox, J. (1984). *The goal: Excellence in manufacturing*. North River Press.

Gordon, B. R., Zettelmeyer, F., Bhargava, N., & Chapsky, D. (2019). A comparison of approaches to advertising measurement: Evidence from big field experiments at Facebook. *Marketing Science*, *38*(2), 193–225. https://doi.org/10.1287/mksc.2018.1135

Gosselin, M. (1997). The effect of strategy and organizational structure on the adoption and implementation of activity- based costing. *Accounting, Organizations and Society, 22*(2), 105–122. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0361-3682(96)00031-1

Gourville, J. T. (2006). Eager sellers and stony buyers: Understanding the psychology of new-product adoption. *Harvard Business Review, 84*(6), 98–106. https://hbr.org/2006/06/eager-sellers-and-stony-buyers-understanding-the-psychology-of-new-product-adoption

Graham, J. R., & Harvey, C. R. (2001). The theory and practice of corporate finance: Evidence from the field. *Journal of Financial Economics, 60*(2–3), 187–243. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-405X(01)00044-7

Granlund, M. (2011). Extending AIS research to management accounting and control issues: A research note. *International Journal of Accounting Information Systems, 12*(1), 3–19. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.accinf.2010.11.001

Grönroos, C. (1984). A service quality model and its marketing implications. *European Journal of Marketing, 18(4)*, 36–44. https://doi.org/10.1108/EUM0000000004784

References

Grönroos, C. (1994). From marketing mix to relationship marketing: Towards a paradigm shift in marketing. *Management Decision, 32*(2), 4–20. https://doi.org/10.1108/00251749410054774

Groves, R. M., & Peytcheva, E. (2008). The impact of nonresponse rates on nonresponse bias: A meta-analysis. *Public Opinion Quarterly, 72*(2), 167–189. https://doi.org/10.1093/poq/nfn011

Gupta, S., Lehmann, D. R., & Stuart, J. A. (2004). Valuing customers. *Journal of Marketing Research, 41*(1), 7–18. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkr.41.1.7.25084

Hackman, J. R., & Wageman, R. (1995). Total quality management: Empirical, conceptual, and practical issues. *Administrative Science Quarterly*, *40*(2), 309–342. https://doi.org/10.2307/2393640

Handfield, R., Walton, S. V., Sroufe, R., & Melnyk, S. A. (2002). Applying environmental criteria to supplier assessment: A study in the application of the analytical hierarchy process. *European Journal of Operational Research, 141*(1), 70–87. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0377-2217(01)00261-2

Hansen, S. C., Otley, D. T., & Van der Stede, W. A. (2003). Practice developments in budgeting: An overview and research perspective. *Journal of Management Accounting Research, 15*(1), 95–116. https://doi.org/10.2308/jmar.2003.15.1.95

Harris, F. W. (1913). How many parts to make at once. *Factory, The Magazine of Management, 10*(2), 135–136, 152.

Hart, O., & Zingales, L. (2017). Companies should maximize shareholder welfare not market value. *Journal of Law, Finance, and Accounting, 2*(2), 247–274. https://hart.scholars.harvard.edu/publications/companies-should-maximize-shareholder-welfare-not-market-value

Haws, K. L., & Bearden, W. O. (2006). Dynamic pricing and consumer fairness perceptions. *Journal of Consumer Research, 33*(3), 304–311. https://doi.org/10.1086/508435

Hayes, R. H., & Pisano, G. P. (1996). Manufacturing strategy: At the intersection of two paradigm shifts. *Production and Operations Management, 5*(1), 25–41. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1937-5956.1996.tb00383.x

Healy, P. M., & Wahlen, J. M. (1999). A review of the earnings management literature and its implications for standard setting. *Accounting Horizons, 13*(4), 365–383. https://doi.org/10.2308/acch.1999.13.4.365

Hendricks, K. B., & Singhal, V. R. (2005). Association between supply chain glitches and operating performance. *Management Science, 51*(5), 695–711. https://doi.org/10.1287/mnsc.1040.0353

Henrich, J., Heine, S. J., & Norenzayan, A. (2010). The weirdest people in the world? *Behavioral and Brain Sciences, 33*(2–3), 61– 83. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0140525X0999152X

Hernán, M. A., & Robins, J. M. (2020). *Causal inference: What if*. Chapman & Hall/CRC. https://miguelhernan.org/whatifbook

Hindustan Unilever Limited. (n.d.). *Livelihoods: Empowering women in rural India through Project Shakti*. https://www.hul.co.in/sustainability/livelihoods/

Hinterhuber, A. (2008). Customer value-based pricing strategies: Why companies resist. *Journal of Business Strategy, 29*(4), 41–50. https://doi.org/10.1108/02756660810887079

Homburg, C., Jozić, D., & Kuehnl, C. (2017). Customer experience management: Toward implementing an evolving marketing concept. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science, 45*, 377–401. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11747-015-0460-7

Homburg, C., Workman, J. P., Jr., & Krohmer, H. (1999). Marketing's influence within the firm. *Journal of Marketing, 63*(2), 1–17. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299906300201

References

Hopkinson, G., & Aman, A. (2017). Women entrepreneurs: How power operates in bottom of the pyramid-marketing discourse. *Marketing Theory, 17*(3), 305–321. https://doi.org/10.1177/1470593117704280

Hopp, W. J., & Spearman, M. L. (2004). To pull or not to pull: What is the question? *Manufacturing & Service Operations Management, 6*(2), 133–148. https://doi.org/10.1287/msom.1030.0028

Hopwood, A. G. (1983). On trying to study accounting in the contexts in which it operates. *Accounting, Organizations and Society, 8*(2–3), 287–305. https://doi.org/10.1016/0361-3682(83)90035-1

Huang, M.-H., & Rust, R. T. (2021). A strategic framework for artificial intelligence in marketing. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science*, *49*(1), 30–50. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11747-020-00749-9

Huang, M.-H., & Rust, R. T. (2021). A strategic framework for artificial intelligence in marketing. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science, 49*, 30–50. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11747-020-00749-9

Hunt, S. D., & Morgan, R. M. (1995). The comparative advantage theory of competition. *Journal of Marketing, 59*(2), 1–15. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299505900201

Hyndman, R. J., & Athanasopoulos, G. (2021). *Forecasting: Principles and practice* (3rd ed.). OTexts. https://otexts.com/fpp3/

IFRS Foundation. (n.d.). *Use of IFRS Accounting Standards by jurisdiction: Rwanda* [Profile last updated 8 February 2017]. https://www.ifrs.org/use-around-the-world/use-of-ifrs-standards-by-jurisdiction/view-jurisdiction/rwanda/

IFRS Foundation. (2023). *IFRS S1 General Requirements for Disclosure of Sustainability-related Financial Information*. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/ifrs-sustainability-standards-navigator/ifrs-s1-general-requirements/

IFRS Foundation. (2025). *The IFRS for SMEs Accounting Standard: Third edition*. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/ifrs-for-smes/

IFRS Foundation. (2026). IFRS Accounting Taxonomy 2025 to remain current for 2026 reporting. https://www.ifrs.org/news-and-events/news/2026/02/ifrs-accounting-taxonomy-2025-to-remain-current-for-2026/

Ika, L. A. (2009). Project success as a topic in project management journals. *Project Management Journal, 40*(4), 6–19. https://doi.org/10.1002/pmj.20137

Ika, L. A., Diallo, A., & Thuillier, D. (2012). Critical success factors for World Bank projects: An empirical investigation. *International Journal of Project Management, 30*(1), 105–116. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijproman.2011.03.005

Institute of Certified Public Accountants of Rwanda. (n.d.). *Who we are*. https://icparwanda.com/who-we-are/

Institute of Certified Public Accountants of Rwanda. (2025). *Rwanda's IFRS sustainability disclosure standards adoption roadmap*. https://icparwanda.com/wp-content/uploads/2025/06/icpar_roadmap_v6.pdf

Institute of Management Accountants. (2022). *IMA statement of ethical professional practice* (effective November 2022). https://prodcm.imanet.org/-/media/IMA/Files/Home/IMA-Certifications/CSCA-Certification/IMA-Statement-of-Ethical-Professional-Practice.ashx

International Accounting Standards Board. (n.d.). *IAS 12 income taxes.* IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-12-income-taxes/

International Accounting Standards Board. (n.d.). *IAS 2 inventories*. IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-2-inventories/

References

International Accounting Standards Board. (1996). IAS 12 Income Taxes (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-12-income-taxes/

International Accounting Standards Board. (1998). IAS 37 Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-37-provisions-contingent-liabilities-and-contingent-assets/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2001). *IAS 7 Statement of Cash Flows* (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-7-statement-of-cash-flows/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2003a). IAS 10 Events after the Reporting Period (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-10-events-after-the-reporting-period/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2003b). *IAS 16 Property, Plant and Equipment* (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-16-property-plant-and-equipment/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2003c). *IAS 2 Inventories* (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-2-inventories/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2003d). IAS 21 The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-21-the-effects-of-changes-in-foreign-exchange-rates/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2003e). *IAS 36 Impairment of Assets* (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-36-impairment-of-assets/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2004). *IAS 38 Intangible Assets* (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-38-intangible-assets/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2009). IAS 24 Related Party Disclosures (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ias-24-related-party-disclosures/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2011). IFRS 10 Consolidated Financial Statements (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ifrs-10-consolidated-financial-statements/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2014a). IFRS 9 Financial Instruments (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ifrs-9-financial-instruments/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2014b). *IFRS 15 Revenue from Contracts with Customers* (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ifrs-15-revenue-from-contracts-with-customers/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2016). IFRS 16 Leases (as amended). IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ifrs-16-leases/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2018). *Conceptual framework for financial reporting*. IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/conceptual-framework/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2024a). *IFRS 18 Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements*. IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ifrs-18-presentation-and-disclosure-in-financial-statements/

International Accounting Standards Board. (2024b). *IFRS 19 Subsidiaries without Public Accountability: Disclosures*. IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/issued-standards/list-of-standards/ifrs-19-subsidiaries-without-public-accountability-disclosures/

References

International Accounting Standards Board. (2026). *IFRS 20 Regulatory Assets and Regulatory Liabilities*. IFRS Foundation. https://www.ifrs.org/news-and-events/news/2026/05/iasb-issues-ifrs-20/

International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. (2023). *International standard on auditing for audits of financial statements of less complex entities.* https://www.iaasb.org/publications/international-standard-auditing-audits-financial-statements-less-complex-entities

International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. (2025). ISA 240 (Revised), The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements. https://www.iaasb.org/publications/isa-240-revised-auditor-s-responsibilities-relating-fraud-audit-financial-statements

International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. (2025a). *IAASB revises fraud standard to enhance public trust*. https://www.iaasb.org/news-events/2025-07/iaasb-revises-fraud-standard-enhance-public-trust

International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. (2025b). *ISA 570 (Revised 2024), Going concern*. https://www.iaasb.org/publications/isa-570-revised-2024-going-concern

International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. (2026). *2026 handbook of international quality management, auditing, review, sustainability and other assurance, and related services pronouncements*. https://www.iaasb.org/publications/2026-handbook-international-quality-management-auditing-review-sustainability-and-other-assurance

International Chamber of Commerce. (2020). *Incoterms® 2020*. https://iccwbo.org/business-solutions/incoterms-rules/incoterms-2020/

International Development Association. (2026). Project paper: Proposed additional IDA credit to the Republic of Rwanda for the Digital Acceleration Project (Report No. PPIAF000287). World Bank. https://documents1.worldbank.org/curated/en/099040126180537131/pdf/BOSIB-7fce320f-91ac-400b-a94b-91213908205c.pdf

International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants. (2025). *2025 handbook of the international code of ethics for professional accountants (including international independence standards)*. https://www.ethicsboard.org/publications/2025-handbook-international-code-ethics-professional-accountants

International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants. (2026). *2026 handbook of the international code of ethics for professional accountants (including international independence standards)*. https://www.ethicsboard.org/publications/2026-handbook-international-code-ethics-professional-accountants

International Federation of Accountants. (n.d.). *Rwanda: Jurisdiction profile*. https://www.ifac.org/about-ifac/membership/profile/rwanda

International Federation of Accountants. (n.d.). *Rwanda: Member country profile*. https://www.ifac.org/about-ifac/membership/profile/rwanda

International Labour Organization. (2022). *A safe and healthy working environment is a fundamental principle and right at work*. https://www.ilo.org/publications/safe-and-healthy-working-environment-fundamental-principle-and-right-work

International Labour Organization. (2022). *ILO declaration on fundamental principles and rights at work and its follow-up (as amended in 2022)*. https://www.ilo.org/topics-and-sectors/fundamental-principles-and-rights-work

International Monetary Fund. (2026). *Rwanda: Request for a 38-month arrangement under the Extended Credit Facility; press release; staff report; and statement by the Executive Director for Rwanda* (IMF Country Report No. 26/139). https://www.elibrary.imf.org/view/journals/002/2026/139/002.2026.issue-139-en.xml

References

International Organization for Standardization. (2006). *ISO 14040:2006: Environmental management—Life cycle assessment—Principles and framework*. https://www.iso.org/standard/37456.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2011). *Environmental management: Material flow cost accounting: General framework* (ISO Standard No. 14051:2011). https://www.iso.org/standard/50986.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2017). *Sustainable procurement: Guidance (ISO Standard No. 20400:2017)*. https://www.iso.org/standard/63026.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2018). *Work breakdown structures for project and programme management* (ISO Standard No. 21511:2018). https://www.iso.org/standard/69702.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2018a). *Food safety management systems: Requirements for any organization in the food chain* (ISO 22000:2018). https://www.iso.org/standard/65464.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2018a). *ISO 45001:2018: Occupational health and safety management systems—Requirements with guidance for use*. https://www.iso.org/standard/45001

International Organization for Standardization. (2018b). *ISO 50001:2018: Energy management systems—Requirements with guidance for use*. https://www.iso.org/standard/69426.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2018b). *Quality management: Customer satisfaction: Guidelines for complaints handling in organizations* (ISO 10002:2018). https://www.iso.org/standard/71580.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2020). *Project, programme and portfolio management—Guidance on project management* (ISO Standard No. 21502:2020). https://www.iso.org/standard/74947.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2021). *Project, programme and portfolio management—Context and concepts* (ISO Standard No. 21500:2021). https://www.iso.org/standard/75704.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2022). *Security and resilience: Security management systems: Requirements (ISO 28000:2022)*. https://www.iso.org/standard/79612.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2022a). *Project, programme and portfolio management—Guidance on portfolio management* (ISO Standard No. 21504:2022). https://www.iso.org/standard/82867.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2022b). *Project, programme and portfolio management—Guidance on programme management* (ISO Standard No. 21503:2022). https://www.iso.org/standard/82868.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2023). *Greenhouse gases: Quantification and reporting of greenhouse gas emissions arising from transport chain operations (ISO 14083:2023)*. https://www.iso.org/standard/78864.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2024). *ISO 55001:2024: Asset management—Asset management system—Requirements*. https://committee.iso.org/sites/tc251/home/projects/published/iso-55001.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2024). *Project, programme and portfolio management—Earned value management implementation guidance* (ISO Standard No. 21512:2024). https://www.iso.org/standard/63584.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2026a). *Project, programme and portfolio management—Earned value management* (ISO Standard No. 21508:2026). https://www.iso.org/standard/87899.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2026a). *Quality management: Fundamentals and vocabulary* (ISO 9000:2026). https://www.iso.org/standard/9000

References

International Organization for Standardization. (2026b). *Project, programme and portfolio management—Guidance on post- project and post-programme evaluation* (ISO Standard No. 21513:2026). https://www.iso.org/standard/63585.html

International Organization for Standardization. (2026b). *Quality management systems: Requirements* (ISO 9001:2026). https://committee.iso.org/standard/9001

International Organization for Standardization. (2026c). *Guidelines for auditing management systems* (ISO 19011:2026). https://www.iso.org/standard/19011

International Organization for Standardization. (2026d). *Environmental management systems: Requirements with guidance for use* (ISO 14001:2026). https://www.iso.org/standard/14001

International Organization for Standardization/International Electrotechnical Commission. (2017). *General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories* (ISO/IEC 17025:2017). https://www.iso.org/standard/66912.html

International Organization for Standardization, Technical Committee 176. (2026, September 23). *ISO 9001:2026 has been released!* https://committee.iso.org/sites/tc176/home/news/content-left-area/news-and-updates/news.html

International Organization of Supreme Audit Institutions. (2019). *ISSAI 100: Fundamental principles of public-sector auditing*. https://www.issai.org/pronouncements/issai-100-fundamental-principles-of-public-sector-auditing/

Ittner, C. D., & Larcker, D. F. (2003). Coming up short on nonfinancial performance measurement. *Harvard Business Review, 81*(11), 88–95, 139. https://hbr.org/2003/11/coming-up-short-on-nonfinancial-performance-measurement

Ivanov, D., & Dolgui, A. (2020). Viability of intertwined supply networks: Extending the supply chain resilience angles towards survivability. A position paper motivated by COVID-19 outbreak. *International Journal of Production Research, 58*(10), 2904–2915. https://doi.org/10.1080/00207543.2020.1750727

Jack, W., & Suri, T. (2014). Risk sharing and transactions costs: Evidence from Kenya's mobile money revolution. *American Economic Review, 104*(1), 183–223. https://doi.org/10.1257/aer.104.1.183

Jaworski, B. J., & Kohli, A. K. (1993). Market orientation: Antecedents and consequences. *Journal of Marketing, 57*(3), 53–70. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299305700304

Jensen, M. C. (2001). Value maximisation, stakeholder theory, and the corporate objective function. *European Financial Management, 7*(3), 297–317. https://doi.org/10.1111/1468-036X.00158

Jensen, M. C., & Meckling, W. H. (1976). Theory of the firm: Managerial behavior, agency costs and ownership structure. *Journal of Financial Economics, 3*(4), 305–360. https://doi.org/10.1016/0304-405X(76)90026-X

Johnson, H. T., & Kaplan, R. S. (1987). *Relevance lost: The rise and fall of management accounting*. Harvard Business School Press.

Joslin, R., & Müller, R. (2016). The relationship between project governance and project success. *International Journal of Project Management, 34*(4), 613–626. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijproman.2016.01.008

Jumia Technologies AG. (2026). *Annual report 2025 (Form 20-F)*. U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. https://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1756708/000175670826000015/jmia-20251231.htm

Juran, J. M. (1988). *Juran on planning for quality*. Free Press.

Kahneman, D., Knetsch, J. L., & Thaler, R. H. (1986). Fairness as a constraint on profit seeking: Entitlements in the market. *American Economic Review, 76*(4), 728–741. https://www.jstor.org/stable/1806070

References

Kahneman, D., & Tversky, A. (1979). Prospect theory: An analysis of decision under risk. *Econometrica, 47*(2), 263–291. https://doi.org/10.2307/1914185

Kahn, K. B., Barczak, G., Nicholas, J., Ledwith, A., & Perks, H. (2012). An examination of new product development best practice. *Journal of Product Innovation Management, 29*(2), 180–192. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-5885.2011.00888.x

Kannan, P. K., & Li, H. A. (2017). Digital marketing: A framework, review and research agenda. *International Journal of Research in Marketing, 34*(1), 22–45. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijresmar.2016.11.006

Kaplan, R. S., & Anderson, S. R. (2004). Time-driven activity-based costing. *Harvard Business Review, 82*(11), 131–138, 150. https://hbr.org/2004/11/time-driven-activity-based-costing

Kaplan, R. S., & Cooper, R. (1998). *Cost & effect: Using integrated cost systems to drive profitability and performance*. Harvard Business School Press.

Kaplan, R. S., & Norton, D. P. (1992). The balanced scorecard: Measures that drive performance. *Harvard Business Review, 70*(1), 71–79. https://hbr.org/1992/01/the-balanced-scorecard-measures-that-drive-performance-2

Kaplan, S. N., & Zingales, L. (1997). Do investment–cash flow sensitivities provide useful measures of financing constraints? *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 112*(1), 169–215. https://doi.org/10.1162/003355397555163

Karlan, D., Osei, R., Osei-Akoto, I., & Udry, C. (2014). Agricultural decisions after relaxing credit and risk constraints. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 129*(2), 597–652. https://doi.org/10.1093/qje/qju002

Kaynak, H. (2003). The relationship between total quality management practices and their effects on firm performance. *Journal of Operations Management*, *21*(4), 405–435. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0272-6963(03)00004-4

Keiningham, T. L., Cooil, B., Andreassen, T. W., & Aksoy, L. (2007). A longitudinal examination of net promoter and firm revenue growth. *Journal of Marketing, 71*(3), 39–51. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkg.71.3.039

Keller, K. L. (1993). Conceptualizing, measuring, and managing customer-based brand equity. *Journal of Marketing, 57*(1), 1–22. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299305700101

Kelley, J. E., Jr. (1961). Critical-path planning and scheduling: Mathematical basis. *Operations Research, 9*(3), 296–320. https://doi.org/10.1287/opre.9.3.296

Kelley, J. E., Jr., & Walker, M. R. (1959). Critical-path planning and scheduling. In *Proceedings of the December 1–3, 1959, Eastern Joint IRE-AIEE-ACM Computer Conference* (pp. 160–173). Association for Computing Machinery. https://doi.org/10.1145/1460299.1460318

Kenya Revenue Authority. (n.d.). *eTIMS: Simplicity, convenience and flexibility*. https://www.kra.go.ke/online-services/etims

Kingman, J. F. C. (1962). On queues in heavy traffic. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series B (Methodological), 24*(2), 383–392. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.2517-6161.1962.tb00465.x

King, R. G., & Levine, R. (1993). Finance and growth: Schumpeter might be right. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 108*(3), 717–737. https://doi.org/10.2307/2118406

Kirca, A. H., Jayachandran, S., & Bearden, W. O. (2005). Market orientation: A meta-analytic review and assessment of its antecedents and impact on performance. *Journal of Marketing, 69*(2), 24–41. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkg.69.2.24.60761

Kirchler, E., Hoelzl, E., & Wahl, I. (2008). Enforced versus voluntary tax compliance: The “slippery slope” framework. *Journal of Economic Psychology, 29*(2), 210–225. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.joep.2007.05.004

References

Kleindorfer, P. R., Singhal, K., & Van Wassenhove, L. N. (2005). Sustainable operations management. *Production and Operations Management, 14*(4), 482–492. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1937-5956.2005.tb00235.x

Kleven, H. J., Knudsen, M. B., Kreiner, C. T., Pedersen, S., & Saez, E. (2011). Unwilling or unable to cheat? Evidence from a tax audit experiment in Denmark. *Econometrica, 79*(3), 651–692. https://doi.org/10.3982/ECTA9113

Kliatchko, J. (2008). Revisiting the IMC construct: A revised definition and four pillars. *International Journal of Advertising*, *27*(1), 133–160. https://doi.org/10.1080/02650487.2008.11073043

Kohavi, R., Tang, D., & Xu, Y. (2020). *Trustworthy online controlled experiments: A practical guide to A/B testing*. Cambridge University Press. https://doi.org/10.1017/9781108653985

Kohli, A. K., & Jaworski, B. J. (1990). Market orientation: The construct, research propositions, and managerial implications. *Journal of Marketing, 54*(2), 1–18. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299005400201

Kothari, S. P. (2001). Capital markets research in accounting. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 31*(1–3), 105–231. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0165-4101(01)00030-1

Kozuch, A., Langen, M., von Deimling, C., & Eßig, M. (2024). Does green procurement pay off? Assessing the practice– performance link employing meta-analysis. *Journal of Cleaner Production, 434*, Article 140184. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2023.140184

Kraljic, P. (1983). Purchasing must become supply management. *Harvard Business Review, 61*(5), 109–117. https://hbr.org/1983/09/purchasing-must-become-supply-management

Krause, D. R., Handfield, R. B., & Tyler, B. B. (2007). The relationships between supplier development, commitment, social capital accumulation and performance improvement. *Journal of Operations Management, 25*(2), 528–545. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jom.2006.05.007

Kumar, V., & Reinartz, W. (2018). *Customer relationship management: Concept, strategy, and tools (3rd ed.)*. Springer. *Marketing, 80*(6), 69–96. https://doi.org/10.1509/jm.15.0420

Laczniak, G. R., & Murphy, P. E. (2019). The role of normative marketing ethics. *Journal of Business Research, 95*, 401–407. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbusres.2018.07.036

Landsbergis, P. A., Cahill, J., & Schnall, P. (1999). The impact of lean production and related new systems of work organization on worker health. *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology, 4*(2), 108–130. https://doi.org/10.1037/1076-8998.4.2.108

Langfield-Smith, K. (1997). Management control systems and strategy: A critical review. *Accounting, Organizations and Society, 22*(2), 207–232. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0361-3682(95)00040-2

Lapide, L. (2004). Sales and operations planning, part I: The process. *The Journal of Business Forecasting, 23*(3). https://ibf.org/knowledge/jbf-articles/sales-and-operations-planning-part-i-the-process-671

Lee, H. L., Padmanabhan, V., & Whang, S. (1997). Information distortion in a supply chain: The bullwhip effect. *Management Science, 43*(4), 546–558. https://doi.org/10.1287/mnsc.43.4.546

Leland, H. E., & Pyle, D. H. (1977). Informational asymmetries, financial structure, and financial intermediation. *The Journal of Finance, 32*(2), 371–387. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-6261.1977.tb03277.x

Lemon, K. N., & Verhoef, P. C. (2016). Understanding customer experience throughout the customer journey. *Journal of Marketing, 80*(6), 69–96. https://doi.org/10.1509/jm.15.0420

Lerner, A. P. (1934). The concept of monopoly and the measurement of monopoly power. *The Review of Economic Studies, 1(3)*, 157–175. https://doi.org/10.2307/2967480

References

Leuz, C., Nanda, D., & Wysocki, P. D. (2003). Earnings management and investor protection: An international comparison. *Journal of Financial Economics, 69*(3), 505–527. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-405X(03)00121-1

Libai, B., Bart, Y., Gensler, S., Hofacker, C. F., Kaplan, A., Kötterheinrich, K., & Kroll, E. B. (2020). Brave new world? On AI and the management of customer relationships. *Journal of Interactive Marketing, 51*, 44–56. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.intmar.2020.04.002

Libby, T., & Lindsay, R. M. (2010). Beyond budgeting or budgeting reconsidered? A survey of North-American budgeting practice. *Management Accounting Research, 21*(1), 56–75. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mar.2009.10.003

Li, F., Larimo, J., & Leonidou, L. C. (2021). Social media marketing strategy: Definition, conceptualization, taxonomy, validation, and future agenda. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science*, *49*(1), 51–70. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11747-020-00733-3

Little, J. D. C. (1961). A proof for the queuing formula: L = λW. *Operations Research, 9*(3), 383–387. https://doi.org/10.1287/opre.9.3.383

Luguri, J., & Strahilevitz, L. J. (2021). Shining a light on dark patterns. *Journal of Legal Analysis, 13*(1), 43–109. https://doi.org/10.1093/jla/laaa006

Lundin, R. A., & Söderholm, A. (1995). A theory of the temporary organization. *Scandinavian Journal of Management, 11*(4), 437–455. https://doi.org/10.1016/0956-5221(95)00036-U

Mahin, M., Kadasah, N., Alsabban, A., & Albliwi, S. (2024). Exploring the landscape of quality 4.0: A comprehensive review of its benefits, challenges, and critical success factors. *Production & Manufacturing Research*, *12*(1), Article 2373739. https://doi.org/10.1080/21693277.2024.2373739

Malcolm, D. G., Roseboom, J. H., Clark, C. E., & Fazar, W. (1959). Application of a technique for research and development program evaluation. *Operations Research, 7*(5), 646–669. https://doi.org/10.1287/opre.7.5.646

Malmi, T., & Brown, D. A. (2008). Management control systems as a package: Opportunities, challenges and research directions. *Management Accounting Research, 19*(4), 287–300. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mar.2008.09.003

Markowitz, H. (1952). Portfolio selection. *The Journal of Finance, 7*(1), 77–91. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-6261.1952.tb01525.x

Mascagni, G. (2018). From the lab to the field: A review of tax experiments. *Journal of Economic Surveys, 32*(2), 273–301. https://doi.org/10.1111/joes.12201

McAlister, L., & Pessemier, E. (1982). Variety seeking behavior: An interdisciplinary review. *Journal of Consumer Research, 9*(3), 311–322. https://doi.org/10.1086/208926

McCollough, M. A., Berry, L. L., & Yadav, M. S. (2000). An empirical investigation of customer satisfaction after service failure and recovery. *Journal of Service Research*, *3*(2), 121–137. https://doi.org/10.1177/109467050032002

McKenzie, D., & Woodruff, C. (2017). Business practices in small firms in developing countries. *Management Science*, *63*(9), 2967–2981. https://doi.org/10.1287/mnsc.2016.2492

McKone, K. E., Schroeder, R. G., & Cua, K. O. (2001). The impact of total productive maintenance practices on manufacturing performance. *Journal of Operations Management, 19*(1), 39–58. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0272-6963(00)00030-9

References

McLeay, M., Radia, A., & Thomas, R. (2014). Money creation in the modern economy. *Bank of England Quarterly Bulletin, 54*(1), 14–27. https://www.bankofengland.co.uk/quarterly-bulletin/2014/q1/money-creation-in-the-modern-economy

Meager, R. (2019). Understanding the average impact of microcredit expansions: A Bayesian hierarchical analysis of seven randomized experiments. *American Economic Journal: Applied Economics, 11*(1), 57–91. https://doi.org/10.1257/app.20170299

Miller, M. H., & Orr, D. (1966). A model of the demand for money by firms. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 80*(3), 413–435. https://doi.org/10.2307/1880728

Miller, P., & O'Leary, T. (1987). Accounting and the construction of the governable person. *Accounting, Organizations and Society, 12*(3), 235–265. https://doi.org/10.1016/0361-3682(87)90039-0

Ministry of Finance and Economic Planning. (2021, December 23). *Rwanda Digital Acceleration Project receives US$100 million boost*. https://www.minecofin.gov.rw/news-detail/rwanda-digital-acceleration-project-receives-us-100-boost-1

Ministry of Finance and Economic Planning. (2024, June 20). *96% of Rwandans are financially included: FinScope survey 2024*. https://www.minecofin.gov.rw/news-detail/96-of-rwandans-are-financially-included-finscope-survey-2024

Modigliani, F., & Miller, M. H. (1958). The cost of capital, corporation finance and the theory of investment. *The American Economic Review, 48*(3), 261–297. https://www.jstor.org/stable/1809766

Monczka, R. M., Handfield, R. B., Giunipero, L. C., & Patterson, J. L. (2020). *Purchasing and supply chain management* (7th ed.). Cengage Learning. https://statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/business-establishment-finance-trade/business-establishment-finance-trade/integrated-business-enterprise-survey-2024

Montgomery, D. C. (2019). *Design and analysis of experiments* (10th ed.). Wiley. https://www.wiley.com/en-us/design-and-analysis-of-experiments-10th-edition-p-9781119492443

Montgomery, D. C. (2020). *Introduction to statistical quality control* (8th ed.). Wiley. https://www.wiley.com/en-us/introduction-to-statistical-quality-control-8th-edition-p-9781119723097

Morgan, G. (1988). Accounting as reality construction: Towards a new epistemology for accounting practice. *Accounting, Organizations and Society, 13*(5), 477–485. https://doi.org/10.1016/0361-3682(88)90018-9

Morgan, N. A. (2012). Marketing and business performance. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science, 40*, 102–119. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11747-011-0279-9

Morgan, R. M., & Hunt, S. D. (1994). The commitment-trust theory of relationship marketing. *Journal of Marketing, 58*(3), 20–38. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299405800302

Myers, S. C. (1977). Determinants of corporate borrowing. *Journal of Financial Economics, 5*(2), 147–175. https://doi.org/10.1016/0304-405X(77)90015-0

Myers, S. C., & Majluf, N. S. (1984). Corporate financing and investment decisions when firms have information that investors do not have. *Journal of Financial Economics, 13*(2), 187–221. https://doi.org/10.1016/0304-405X(84)90023-0

Narver, J. C., & Slater, S. F. (1990). The effect of a market orientation on business profitability. *Journal of Marketing, 54*(4), 20–35. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299005400403

National Agricultural Export Development Board. (2026a). *Rwanda coffee export revenues hit record $150m in 2025*. https://www.naeb.gov.rw/publications/news/rwanda-coffee-export-revenues-hit-record-150m-in-2025

References

National Agricultural Export Development Board. (2026b). *NAEB crowns top coffees at Best of Rwanda 2026, setting sights on higher export revenues*. https://www.naeb.gov.rw/1/updates/news-detail/naeb-crowns-top-coffees-at-best-of-rwanda-2026-setting-sights-on-higher-export-revenues

National Audit Office. (2019). *Completing Crossrail* (HC 2106). https://www.nao.org.uk/reports/crossrail/

National Audit Office. (2021). *Crossrail: A progress update*. https://www.nao.org.uk/reports/crossrail-progress-update/

National Bank of Rwanda. (2025). *Annual report 2024–2025*. https://www.bnr.rw/documents/Annual_Report_2024_25_English_Full_Version_RwYAWN0.pdf

National Bank of Rwanda. (2026). *Rwanda CBDC proof of concept report*. https://www.bnr.rw/documents/Rwanda_CBDC_PoC_Report.pdf

National Cyber Security Authority. (2021). Consent, ownership and lawful data processing. https://cyber.gov.rw/updates/article/consent-ownership-and-lawful-data-processing-2-1/

National Institute of Standards and Technology. (2023). *Artificial Intelligence Risk Management Framework (AI RMF 1.0)* (NIST AI 100-1). https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.AI.100-1

National Institute of Standards and Technology. (2023). *Artificial intelligence risk management framework (AI RMF 1.0) (NIST AI 100-1)*. U.S. Department of Commerce. https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.AI.100-1

National Institute of Standards and Technology. (2023). *Artificial intelligence risk management framework (AI RMF 1.0)*. https://www.nist.gov/itl/ai-risk-management-framework

National Institute of Standards and Technology. (2024). *Artificial Intelligence Risk Management Framework: Generative Artificial Intelligence Profile* (NIST AI 600-1). https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.AI.600-1

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (n.d.). *FinScope survey (2024)*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/business-establishment-finance-trade/finscope-survey-2024

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2024). *FinScope Survey 2024*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/business-establishment-finance-trade/finscope-survey-2024

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2024). *FinScope survey 2024: Statistical publication and sampling information*. https://www.alpha.statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/business-establishment-finance-trade/finscope-survey-2024

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2024). *Rwanda FinScope survey 2024*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/business-establishment-finance-trade/finscope-survey-2024

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2025). *Main indicators: Fifth Rwanda population and housing census (2022)*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/data-sources/censuses/Population-and-Housing-Census/fifth-population-and-housing-census-2022/main-indicators-5th-rwanda-population-and-housing-census-phc

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2025). *Rwanda integrated business enterprise survey report 2024*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/sites/default/files/documents/2026-03/IBES2024_Main%20Report_English_0.pdf

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2025a). *EICV7: Main indicators report 2023/24*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/poverty-and-social-protection/eicv7-main-indicators-report-202324

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2025b). *EICV7: Thematic report on multidimensional poverty*. https://www.alpha.statistics.gov.rw/data-sources/surveys/EICV/integrated-household-living-conditions-survey-7-eicv-7/eicv7-thematic-report-multidimensional-poverty

References

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2025c). *The fifth Rwanda population and housing census 2022: Main indicators*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/data-sources/censuses/Population-and-Housing-Census/fifth-population-and-housing-census-2022/main-indicators-5th-rwanda-population-and-housing-census-phc

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2026). *Integrated business enterprise survey (2024)*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/business-establishment-finance-trade/business-establishment-finance-trade/integrated-business-enterprise-survey-2024

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2026a). *Integrated Business Enterprise Survey (2024)*. https://www.statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/business-establishment-finance-trade/business-establishment-finance-trade/integrated-business-enterprise-survey-2024

National Institute of Statistics of Rwanda. (2026b). *GDP national accounts (Q2, 2026)*. https://statistics.gov.rw/statistical-publications/gross-domestic-product/gdp-national-accounts-q2-2026

Nelson, M. W. (2009). A model and literature review of professional skepticism in auditing. *Auditing: A Journal of Practice & Theory, 28*(2), 1–34. https://doi.org/10.2308/aud.2009.28.2.1

Nelson, P. (1970). Information and consumer behavior. *Journal of Political Economy, 78*(2), 311–329. https://doi.org/10.1086/259630

Neslin, S. A., Grewal, D., Leghorn, R., Shankar, V., Teerling, M. L., Thomas, J. S., & Verhoef, P. C. (2006). Challenges and opportunities in multichannel customer management. *Journal of Service Research*, *9*(2), 95–112. https://doi.org/10.1177/1094670506293559

Netemeyer, R. G., Bearden, W. O., & Sharma, S. (2003). *Scaling procedures: Issues and applications*. SAGE Publications.

NIST/SEMATECH. (n.d.). *e-Handbook of statistical methods: Proportions control charts*. https://www.itl.nist.gov/div898/handbook/pmc/section3/pmc332.htm

Noreen, E. (1991). Conditions under which activity-based cost systems provide relevant costs. *Journal of Management Accounting Research, 3*, 159–168. https://u.osu.edu/young.53/files/2016/12/Noreen-JMAR-1991-vrlob7.pdf

Northern Corridor Transport Observatory. (2025). *Northern Corridor quarterly performance dashboard: July to September 2025*. https://top.ttcanc.org/uploads/attachments/cmipkheb600vvc7lj814q8bt5-quarterly-report-july-to-september-2025.pdf

Office of the Auditor General of State Finances, Rwanda. (2026). *Audit reports*. https://www.oag.gov.rw/publications/announcements-2-3

Ohlson, J. A. (1995). Earnings, book values, and dividends in equity valuation. *Contemporary Accounting Research, 11*(2), 661– 687. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1911-3846.1995.tb00461.x

Oliver, R. L. (1999). Whence consumer loyalty? *Journal of Marketing, 63*(4_suppl1), 33–44. https://doi.org/10.1177/00222429990634s105

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. (2015). *Recommendation of the Council on Public Procurement* (OECD/LEGAL/0411). https://legalinstruments.oecd.org/en/instruments/OECD-LEGAL-0411

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. (2015). *Taxation of SMEs in OECD and G20 countries.* OECD Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1787/9789264243507-en

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. (2017). *Algorithms and collusion: Competition policy in the digital age* (OECD Roundtables on Competition Policy Papers No. 206). https://doi.org/10.1787/258dcb14-en

References

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. (2023). *G20/OECD principles of corporate governance 2023. OECD Publishing*. https://doi.org/10.1787/ed750b30-en

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. (2023). *OECD guidelines for multinational enterprises on responsible business conduct*. OECD Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1787/81f92357-en

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. (2025). *OECD guidelines for fighting bid rigging in public procurement (2025 update)*. OECD Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1787/cbe05a56-en

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. (2025). *Tax administration 2025: Comparative information on OECD and other advanced and emerging economies*. https://www.oecd.org/en/publications/tax-administration-2025_cc015ce8-en.html

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, African Union Commission, & African Tax Administration Forum. (2025). *Revenue statistics in Africa 2025: Commonalities and specificities across African revenue classifications*. OECD Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1787/8d3bf3af-en

Otley, D. (1999). Performance management: A framework for management control systems research. *Management Accounting Research, 10*(4), 363–382. https://doi.org/10.1006/mare.1999.0115

Palmatier, R. W., Dant, R. P., Grewal, D., & Evans, K. R. (2006). Factors influencing the effectiveness of relationship marketing: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Marketing, 70*(4), 136–153. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkg.70.4.136

Parasuraman, A., Zeithaml, V. A., & Berry, L. L. (1988). SERVQUAL: A multiple-item scale for measuring consumer perceptions of service quality. *Journal of Retailing, 64*(1), 12–40.

Parliament of Rwanda. (2026, February 12). *Parliament reviews public procurement law*. https://www.parliament.gov.rw/news-details/parliament-reviews-public-procurement-law

Parliament of Rwanda. (2026a, February 12). *Parliament reviews public procurement law*. https://www.parliament.gov.rw/news-details/parliament-reviews-public-procurement-law

Parliament of Rwanda. (2026b, April 2). *Parliament calls for the amendment governing public procurement*. https://www.parliament.gov.rw/news-details/parliament-calls-for-the-amendment-governing-public-procurement-1

Payne, A., & Frow, P. (2005). A strategic framework for customer relationship management. *Journal of Marketing, 69*(4), 167– 176. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkg.2005.69.4.167

Petersen, M. A., & Rajan, R. G. (1997). Trade credit: Theories and evidence. *The Review of Financial Studies, 10*(3), 661– 691. https://doi.org/10.1093/rfs/10.3.661

Podsakoff, P. M., MacKenzie, S. B., Lee, J.-Y., & Podsakoff, N. P. (2003). Common method biases in behavioral research: A critical review of the literature and recommended remedies. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 88*(5), 879–903. https://doi.org/10.1037/0021-9010.88.5.879

Pomeranz, D. (2015). No taxation without information: Deterrence and self-enforcement in the value added tax. *American Economic Review, 105*(8), 2539–2569. https://doi.org/10.1257/aer.20130393

Porter, M. E. (2008). The five competitive forces that shape strategy. *Harvard Business Review, 86*(1), 78–93. https://hbr.org/2008/01/the-five-competitive-forces-that-shape-strategy

Powell, T. C. (1995). Total quality management as competitive advantage: A review and empirical study. *Strategic Management Journal, 16*(1), 15–37. https://doi.org/10.1002/smj.4250160105

Power, M. (1999). *The audit society: Rituals of verification.* Oxford University Press. https://doi.org/10.1093/acprof:oso/9780198296034.001.0001

References

Prahalad, C. K., & Ramaswamy, V. (2004). Co-creation experiences: The next practice in value creation. *Journal of Interactive Marketing, 18*(3), 5–14. https://doi.org/10.1002/dir.20015

Project Management Institute. (2025). *A guide to the project management body of knowledge (PMBOK guide) and the standard for project management* (8th ed.). https://www.pmi.org/standards/pmbok

Rajan, R. G., & Zingales, L. (1998). Financial dependence and growth. *American Economic Review, 88*(3), 559–586. https://www.jstor.org/stable/116849

Rao, A. R., & Monroe, K. B. (1989). The effect of price, brand name, and store name on buyers' perceptions of product quality: An integrative review. *Journal of Marketing Research, 26*(3), 351–357. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224378902600309

Reichheld, F. F. (2003). The one number you need to grow. *Harvard Business Review, 81*(12), 46–54, 124. https://hbr.org/2003/12/the-one-number-you-need-to-grow

Reinartz, W., Krafft, M., & Hoyer, W. D. (2004). The customer relationship management process: Its measurement and impact on performance. *Journal of Marketing Research*, *41*(3), 293–305. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkr.41.3.293.35991

Republic of Rwanda. (2021). *Law No. 007/2021 of 05/02/2021 governing companies*. Official Gazette No. 04 ter of 08/02/2021. https://www.minicom.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/Minicom/Publications/Laws/Companies/10.8.2.1.Companies-Law-No-007-of-2021.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2021). *Law No. 017/2021 of 03/03/2021 relating to financial service consumer protection*. *Official Gazette*, Special Issue of 05/03/2021. https://www.bnr.rw/documents/Law_relating_to_Financial_Service_Consumer_Protection__2021.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2021). *Law No. 058/2021 of 13 October 2021 relating to the protection of personal data and privacy*. Official Gazette No. Special of 15 October 2021. https://dpo.gov.rw/fileadmin/DPO/Law_relating_to_the_protection_of_personal_data_and_privacy.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2021). *Law No. 058/2021 of 13 October 2021 relating to the protection of personal data and privacy*. *Official Gazette*, Special of 15 October 2021. https://rwandalii.org/akn/rw/act/law/2021/58/eng%402021-10-15

Republic of Rwanda. (2021). Law No. 058/2021 of 13 October 2021 relating to the protection of personal data and privacy. Official Gazette. https://rwandalii.org/akn/rw/act/law/2021/58/eng@2021-10-15

Republic of Rwanda. (2022). *Law No. 027/2022 of 20 October 2022 establishing taxes on income*. Rwanda Revenue Authority. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/laws-policies-and-rulings

Republic of Rwanda. (2022). Law No. 031/2022 of 21/11/2022 governing public procurement. *Official Gazette*, Special Issue of 22 November 2022. https://extranet.who.int/cpcd/sites/default/files/public_file_repository/RWA_Rwanda_Law-No-031-2022-governing-public-procurement_2022.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2023). *Ministerial Order No. 001/23/10/TC of 10/10/2023 establishing regulations governing public procurement*. https://www.rppa.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/RPPA/Publications/Legal_Instruments/MINISTERIAL_ORDER/Ministerial_Order_for_p.p_new_Law.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2023a). *Law No. 020/2023 of 31 March 2023 on tax procedures*. Rwanda Revenue Authority. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/laws-policies-and-rulings

Republic of Rwanda. (2023b). *Law No. 049/2023 of 5 September 2023 establishing value added tax*. Rwanda Revenue Authority. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/laws-policies-and-rulings

References

Republic of Rwanda. (2023c). *Law No. 051/2023 of 5 September 2023 amending Law No. 027/2022 establishing taxes on income*. Rwanda Revenue Authority. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/laws-policies-and-rulings

Republic of Rwanda. (2024a). *Law No. 039/2024 of 22/03/2024 establishing the Deposit Guarantee Fund*. *Official Gazette*, Special Issue of 09/04/2024. https://www.bnr.rw/documents/DGF_LAW_2024__002_.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2024b). *Law No. 044/2024 of 30/05/2024 governing banks*. *Official Gazette*, No. 24 Bis of 10/06/2024. https://www.bnr.rw/documents/Banking_Law_2024_yMYGT82.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2025a). *Law No. 009/2025 of 27 May 2025 amending Law No. 049/2023 establishing value added tax*. *Official Gazette*, Special Issue, 29 May 2025. https://www.rra.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/Law_amending_the_2023_VAT_law___May_2025.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2025b). *Law No. 011/2025 of 27 May 2025 establishing excise duty*. Rwanda Revenue Authority. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/laws-policies-and-rulings

Republic of Rwanda. (2025c). *Law No. 014/2025 of 27 May 2025 amending Law No. 027/2022 establishing taxes on income*. *Official Gazette*, Special Issue, 29 May 2025. https://www.rra.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/Law_amending_the_2022_Income_Tax_May_2025.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2026). *Law No. 011/2026 of 26 February 2026 relating to competition and consumer protection*. Official Gazette No. Special of 4 March 2026. https://www.minicom.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/Minicom/Publications/Laws/Consumer_Protection/OG_n___Special_of_04.03.2026__Ihiganwa_mu_bucuruzi_no_kurengera_umuguzi.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2026). Law No. 011/2026 of 26 February 2026 relating to competition and consumer protection. Official Gazette, Special Issue of 4 March 2026. https://www.rica.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/RICA/Publications/Laws/OG_n___Special_of_04.03.2026__Ihiganwa_mu_bucuruzi_no_kurengera_umuguzi__1___1__1_.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2026). Law No. 011/2026 of 26 February 2026 relating to competition and consumer protection. Official Gazette, Special of 4 March 2026. https://www.minicom.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/Minicom/Publications/Laws/Consumer_Protection/OG_n___Special_of_04.03.2026__Ihiganwa_mu_bucuruzi_no_kurengera_umuguzi.pdf

Republic of Rwanda. (2026). Ministerial Order No. 001/26/10/TC of 13/02/2026 determining modalities for award of public tenders related to innovation. *Official Gazette*, Special Issue of 13 February 2026. https://www.rppa.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/RPPA/Publications/Legal_Instruments/MINISTERIAL_ORDER/OG_n___Special_of_13.02.2026__Imitangire_y_amasoko_ya_Leta_ajyanye_no_guhanga_ibishya.pdf

Rogers, E. M. (2003). *Diffusion of innovations (5th ed.)*. Free Press.

Roychowdhury, S. (2006). Earnings management through real activities manipulation. *Journal of Accounting and Economics, 42*(3), 335–370. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacceco.2006.01.002

Ruggie, J. (2011). *Report of the Special Representative of the Secretary-General on the issue of human rights and transnational corporations and other business enterprises: Guiding principles on business and human rights* (A/HRC/17/31). United Nations. https://www.ohchr.org/sites/default/files/Documents/Issues/Business/A-HRC-17-31_AEV.pdf

Rust, R. T., Ambler, T., Carpenter, G. S., Kumar, V., & Srivastava, R. K. (2004). Measuring marketing productivity: Current knowledge and future directions. *Journal of Marketing, 68*(4), 76–89. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkg.68.4.76.42721

References

Rust, R. T., Zahorik, A. J., & Keiningham, T. L. (1995). Return on quality (ROQ): Making service quality financially accountable. *Journal of Marketing, 59*(2), 58–70. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299505900205

Rwanda Development Board. (n.d.). *Business registration: Filing annual returns*. Office of the Registrar General. https://org.rdb.rw/business-registration/

Rwanda Law Reform Commission. (2025). *Report on legal instruments published to the web portal and RLRC's website as of May 2025*. https://www.rlrc.gov.rw/news-details/report-on-legal-instruments-published-to-the-web-portal-and-rlrcs-website-as-of-may-2025

Rwanda Public Procurement Authority. (n.d.). *Rwanda Public Procurement Authority: Home and services*. https://www.rppa.gov.rw/

Rwanda Public Procurement Authority. (2024). *Sustainable public procurement policy framework for Rwanda to drive green growth and inclusive development*. https://www.rppa.gov.rw/updates/sustainable-public-procurement-policy-framework-for-rwanda-to-drive-green-growth-and-inclusive-development

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (n.d.). *Rwanda Electronic Single Window (ReSW)*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/customs-services/rwanda-electronic-single-window

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (n.d.-a). *Calculate PAYE*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/domestic-tax-services/employment-tax-paye/calculate-paye

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (n.d.-b). *Corporate income tax (CIT)*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/taxes-fees/domestic-taxes/income-tax/corporate-income-tax-cit

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (n.d.-c). *Declare income tax*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/taxes-fees/domestic-taxes/income-tax/declare-income-tax-1

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (n.d.-d). *VAT filing frequency and declaration*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/domestic-tax-services/value-added-tax/penalties-and-interest

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (n.d.-e). *VAT registration*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/domestic-tax-services/value-added-tax/default-title-1

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (2023). *Changes in tax laws: October 2023*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/CHANGES_IN_TAX_LAWS_Oct_2023.pdf

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (2024). *Other controls initiated in the 2024 income tax declarations*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/en/details?cHash=be175d2b9826e0ca5c0d4552d70e4ecb&tx_news_pi1%5Baction%5D=detail&tx_news_pi1%5Bcontroller%5D=News&tx_news_pi1%5Bnews%5D=2426

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (2025a). *Annual report 2024–2025*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/fileadmin/Folder_for_2025/ANNUAL_REPORT_2024-2025_Final_version.pdf

Rwanda Revenue Authority. (2025b). *Rwanda Revenue Authority tax handbook 2025*. https://www.rra.gov.rw/fileadmin/Folder_for_2025/RRA_Tax_Handbook_2025.pdf

Rwanda Standards Board. (n.d.). *Products with S-marks: Product certification directory*. https://www.rsb.gov.rw/certifications/directories/products-with-s-marks-1

Rwanda Standards Board. (n.d.). *Training services: RS 184, Food safety system based on hazard analysis and critical control points (HACCP)*. https://www.rsb.gov.rw/standards/training-services

Rwanda Standards Board. (n.d.-a). *Overview of national standards*. https://www.rsb.gov.rw/standards/about-standards/overview

References

Rwanda Standards Board. (n.d.-b). *About national certification division*. https://www.rsb.gov.rw/certifications/about-ncd

Rwanda Standards Board. (n.d.-c). *Product certification*. https://www.rsb.gov.rw/certifications/product-certification

Rwanda Standards Board. (2018). *Rwanda quality policy 2018*. https://www.rsb.gov.rw/fileadmin/user_upload/Quick_links/RWANDA_QUALITY_POLICY_2018.pdf

Samson, D., & Terziovski, M. (1999). The relationship between total quality management practices and operational performance. *Journal of Operations Management*, *17*(4), 393–409. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0272-6963(98)00046-1

Schramm, V. B., Cabral, L. P. B., & Schramm, F. (2020). Approaches for supporting sustainable supplier selection: A literature review. *Journal of Cleaner Production, 273*, Article 123089. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.123089

Serra, C. E. M., & Kunc, M. (2015). Benefits realisation management and its influence on project success and on the execution of business strategies. *International Journal of Project Management, 33*(1), 53–66. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijproman.2014.03.011

Serrador, P., & Pinto, J. K. (2015). Does agile work? A quantitative analysis of agile project success. *International Journal of Project Management, 33*(5), 1040–1051. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijproman.2015.01.006

Seuring, S., & Müller, M. (2008). From a literature review to a conceptual framework for sustainable supply chain management. *Journal of Cleaner Production, 16*(15), 1699–1710. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2008.04.020

Shah, R., & Ward, P. T. (2007). Defining and developing measures of lean production. *Journal of Operations Management, 25*(4), 785–805. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jom.2007.01.019

Shapiro, B. P., & Jackson, B. B. (1978, November). Industrial pricing to meet customer needs. *Harvard Business Review*. https://hbr.org/1978/11/industrial-pricing-to-meet-customer-needs

Sharpe, W. F. (1964). Capital asset prices: A theory of market equilibrium under conditions of risk. *The Journal of Finance, 19*(3), 425–442. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-6261.1964.tb02865.x

Sheeran, P. (2002). Intention–behavior relations: A conceptual and empirical review. *European Review of Social Psychology, 12*(1), 1–36. https://doi.org/10.1080/14792772143000003

Sheffi, Y., & Rice, J. B., Jr. (2005). A supply chain view of the resilient enterprise. *MIT Sloan Management Review, 47*(1), 41– 48. https://shop.sloanreview.mit.edu/store/a-supply-chain-view-of-the-resilient-enterprise

Shenhar, A. J., Dvir, D., Levy, O., & Maltz, A. C. (2001). Project success: A multidimensional strategic concept. *Long Range Planning, 34*(6), 699–725. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0024-6301(01)00097-8

Sheth, J. N. (2011). Impact of emerging markets on marketing: Rethinking existing perspectives and practices. *Journal of Marketing, 75*(4), 166–182. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkg.75.4.166

Shewhart, W. A. (1931). *Economic control of quality of manufactured product*. D. Van Nostrand.

Shields, M. D. (1995). An empirical analysis of firms' implementation experiences with activity-based costing. *Journal of Management Accounting Research, 7*, 148–166.

Shostack, G. L. (1984, January). Designing services that deliver. *Harvard Business Review*. https://hbr.org/1984/01/designing-services-that-deliver

Sila, I., & Ebrahimpour, M. (2005). Critical linkages among TQM factors and business results. *International Journal of Operations & Production Management*, *25*(11), 1123–1155. https://doi.org/10.1108/01443570510626925

References

Simchi-Levi, D., Kaminsky, P., & Simchi-Levi, E. (2021). *Designing and managing the supply chain: Concepts, strategies and case studies* (4th ed.). McGraw Hill.

Simons, R. (1995). *Levers of control: How managers use innovative control systems to drive strategic renewal*. Harvard Business School Press.

Skinner, W. (1969). Manufacturing—Missing link in corporate strategy. *Harvard Business Review, 47*(3), 136–145. https://hbr.org/1969/05/manufacturing-missing-link-in-corporate-strategy

Slack, N., Brandon-Jones, A., & Burgess, N. (2022). *Operations management* (10th ed.). Pearson.

Slemrod, J. (2019). Tax compliance and enforcement. *Journal of Economic Literature, 57*(4), 904–954. https://doi.org/10.1257/jel.20181437

Sloan, R. G. (1996). Do stock prices fully reflect information in accruals and cash flows about future earnings? *The Accounting Review, 71*(3), 289–315. https://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=2598

Smith, W. R. (1956). Product differentiation and market segmentation as alternative marketing strategies. *Journal of Marketing, 21*(1), 3–8. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224295602100102

Spear, S., & Bowen, H. K. (1999). Decoding the DNA of the Toyota Production System. *Harvard Business Review, 77*(5), 96–106. https://hbr.org/1999/09/decoding-the-dna-of-the-toyota-production-system

Spiro, R. L., & Weitz, B. A. (1990). Adaptive selling: Conceptualization, measurement, and nomological validity. *Journal of Marketing Research*, *27*(1), 61–69. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224379002700106

Srivastava, R. K., Shervani, T. A., & Fahey, L. (1998). Market-based assets and shareholder value: A framework for analysis. *Journal of Marketing, 62*(1), 2–18. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224299806200102

Stephen, A. T. (2016). The role of digital and social media marketing in consumer behavior. *Current Opinion in Psychology*, *10*, 17–21. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.copsyc.2015.10.016

Stiglitz, J. E., & Weiss, A. (1981). Credit rationing in markets with imperfect information. *American Economic Review, 71*(3), 393–410. https://ideas.repec.org/a/aea/aecrev/v71y1981i3p393-410.html

Stiglitz, J. E., & Weiss, A. (1981). Credit rationing in markets with imperfect information. *The American Economic Review, 71*(3), 393–410. https://ideas.repec.org/a/aea/aecrev/v71y1981i3p393-410.html

Suchman, M. C. (1995). Managing legitimacy: Strategic and institutional approaches. *Academy of Management Review, 20*(3), 571–610. https://doi.org/10.5465/amr.1995.9508080331

Suri, T., & Jack, W. (2016). The long-run poverty and gender impacts of mobile money. *Science, 354*(6317), 1288–1292. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aah5309

Tabassi, E. (2023). *Artificial intelligence risk management framework (AI RMF 1.0)* (NIST AI 100-1). National Institute of Standards and Technology. https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.AI.100-1

Tadelis, S. (2012). Public procurement design: Lessons from the private sector. *International Journal of Industrial Organization, 30*(3), 297–302. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijindorg.2012.02.002

Talluri, K. T., & van Ryzin, G. J. (2004). *The theory and practice of revenue management*. Springer. https://business.columbia.edu/faculty/research/theory-and-practice-revenue-management

Tang, C. S. (2006). Perspectives in supply chain risk management. *International Journal of Production Economics, 103*(2), 451–488. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpe.2005.12.006

References

The Institute of Internal Auditors. (2020). *The IIA's three lines model: An update of the three lines of defense*. https://www.theiia.org/en/content/position-papers/2020/the-iias-three-lines-model-an-update-of-the-three-lines-of-defense/

The Institute of Internal Auditors. (2024). *Global internal audit standards* (Effective 9 January 2025). https://www.theiia.org/en/content/standards/complete-global-internal-audit-standards/

Too, E. G., & Weaver, P. (2014). The management of project management: A conceptual framework for project governance. *International Journal of Project Management, 32*(8), 1382–1394. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijproman.2013.07.006

Tourangeau, R., Rips, L. J., & Rasinski, K. (2000). *The psychology of survey response*. Cambridge University Press.

Toyota Motor Corporation. (2011b, April 22). Toyota outlines timeline for production normalization. https://global.toyota/en/detail/251215

Toyota Motor Corporation. (n.d.). *Basic concept of the Toyota Production System*. https://www.toyota-global.com/company/history_of_toyota/75years/data/automotive_business/production/system/change.html

Toyota Motor Corporation. (n.d.). *Toyota Production System*. https://global.toyota/en/company/vision-and-philosophy/production-system/

Toyota Motor Corporation. (2011a). Annual report on Form 20-F for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. https://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1094517/000119312511172686/d20f.htm

United Nations Conference on Trade and Development. (2024). *Digital economy report 2024: Shaping an environmentally sustainable and inclusive digital future*. https://unctad.org/publication/digital-economy-report-2024

United Nations Industrial Development Organization. (2024). *Industrial Development Report 2024: Turning challenges into sustainable solutions: The new era of industrial policy*. https://www.unido.org/idr/idr2024

Van der Stede, W. A. (2000). The relationship between two consequences of budgetary controls: Budgetary slack creation and managerial short-term orientation. *Accounting, Organizations and Society, 25*(6), 609–622. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0361-3682(99)00058-6

Vargo, S. L., & Lusch, R. F. (2004). Evolving to a new dominant logic for marketing. *Journal of Marketing, 68*(1), 1–17. https://doi.org/10.1509/jmkg.68.1.1.24036

Verhoef, P. C., Kannan, P. K., & Inman, J. J. (2015). From multi-channel retailing to omni-channel retailing: Introduction to the special issue on multi-channel retailing. *Journal of Retailing, 91*(2), 174–181. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jretai.2015.02.005

Waller, M. A., & Fawcett, S. E. (2013). Data science, predictive analytics, and big data: A revolution that will transform supply chain design and management. *Journal of Business Logistics, 34*(2), 77–84. https://doi.org/10.1111/jbl.12010

Webster, F. E., Jr., & Wind, Y. (1972). A general model for understanding organizational buying behavior. *Journal of Marketing, 36*(2), 12–19. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224297203600204

Wedel, M., & Kannan, P. K. (2016). Marketing analytics for data-rich environments. *Journal of Marketing, 80*(6), 97–121. https://doi.org/10.1509/jm.15.0413

White, K., Habib, R., & Hardisty, D. J. (2019). How to SHIFT consumer behaviors to be more sustainable: A literature review and guiding framework. *Journal of Marketing, 83*(3), 22–49. https://doi.org/10.1177/0022242919825649

References

Williamson, O. E. (1985). *The economic institutions of capitalism: Firms, markets, relational contracting*. Free Press.

Woodruff, R. B. (1997). Customer value: The next source for competitive advantage. *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science, 25*(2), 139–153. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02894350

World Bank. (2021, December 1). *World Bank provides $100 million to accelerate Rwanda's digital transformation*. https://www.worldbank.org/en/news/press-release/2021/12/01/world-bank-provides-100-million-to-accelerate-rwanda-s-digital-transformation

World Bank. (2023, April 21). *World Bank releases Logistics Performance Index 2023*. https://www.worldbank.org/en/news/press-release/2023/04/21/world-bank-releases-logistics-performance-index-2023

World Bank. (2026, March 18). *Project information document: Digital Acceleration Project (P173373)* (PIDIAF0263). https://documents.worldbank.org/en/publication/documents-reports/documentdetail/099031826112528245

World Bank. (2025). *Procurement regulations for IPF borrowers* (7th ed., September 2025). https://thedocs.worldbank.org/en/doc/c84273d1b230aeb2b0b8134de5dc8cd7-0290012025/original/Procurement-Regulations-7th-Edition-Sep-2025.pdf

World Bank. (2025). *The Global Findex Database 2025: Connectivity and financial inclusion in the digital economy*. https://www.worldbank.org/en/publication/globalfindex/report

World Customs Organization. (n.d.). *The Revised Kyoto Convention*. https://www.wcoomd.org/Topics/Facilitation/Instrument%20and%20Tools/Conventions/pf_revised_kyoto_conv

World Health Organization. (n.d.). *Five keys to safer food*. https://www.who.int/activities/promoting-safe-food-handling/five-key-to-safer-food

World Trade Organization. (2017). *Agreement on Trade Facilitation*. https://www.wto.org/english/docs_e/legal_e/tfa_e.htm

Zeithaml, V. A. (1988). Consumer perceptions of price, quality, and value: A means-end model and synthesis of evidence. *Journal of Marketing, 52*(3), 2–22. https://doi.org/10.1177/002224298805200302

Zu, X., Fredendall, L. D., & Douglas, T. J. (2008). The evolving theory of quality management: The role of Six Sigma. *Journal of Operations Management*, *26*(5), 630–650. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jom.2008.02.001